This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

**Usage guidelines**

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

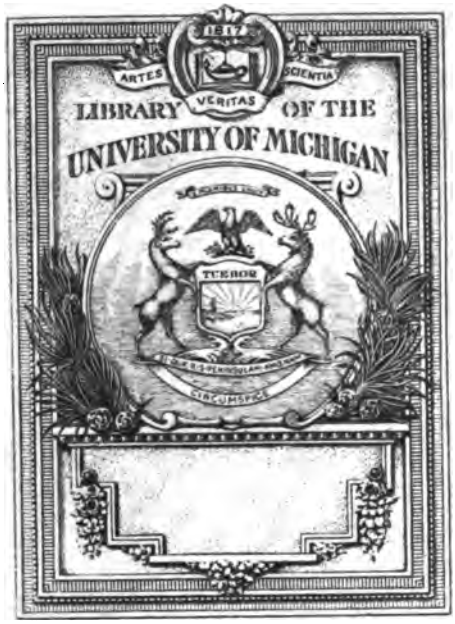
We also ask that you:

- *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

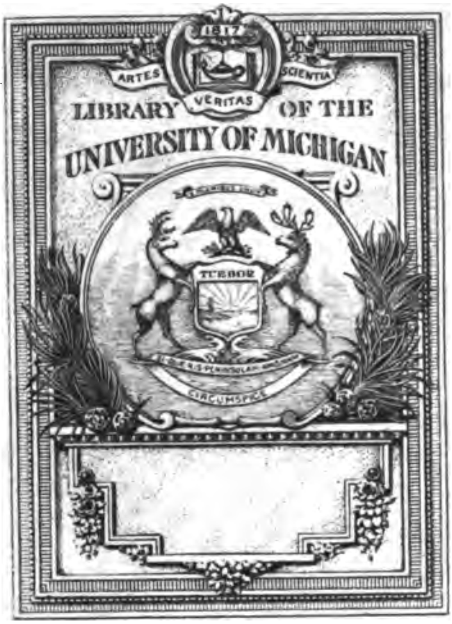
**About Google Book Search**

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

B 477812 DUPL


1817
ARTES VERITAS SCIENTIA
LIBRARY OF THE
UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN
TUEBOR
SI QUAERIS PENINSULAM AMOENAM
CIRCUMSPICE

Science Lib.
QE
125
.A5


1817
ARTES
VERITAS
SCIENTIA
LIBRARY OF THE
UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN
TUEBOR
SI QUAERIS PENINSULAM AMOENAM
CIRCUMSPICE

Science Lib.
QE
125
.A5

# REPORT

OF THE

# STATE BOARD OF GEOLOGICAL SURVEY

# OF MICHIGAN

## FOR THE YEAR 1906

---

ALFRED C. LANE
STATE GEOLOGIST

BY AUTHORITY

LANSING, MICHIGAN
WYNKOOP HALLENBECK CRAWFORD CO., STATE PRINTERS
1907

SEPTEMBER 10, 1907.

R G

## BOARD OF GEOLOGICAL SURVEY

1906

---

EX OFFICIO:

THE GOVERNOR OF THE STATE,
HON. F. M. WARNER, *President.*
THE SUPERINTENDENT OF PUBLIC INSTRUCTION,
HON. PATRICK H. KELLEY, *Secretary.*
THE PRESIDENT OF THE STATE BOARD OF EDUCATION,
HON. W. J. McKONE.

## BOARD OF SCIENTIFIC ADVISORS

PROF. W. B. BARROWS.
PROF. W. J. BEAL.
PROF. W. H. HOBBS.
DR. L. L. HUBBARD.
PROF. F. C. NEWCOMBE.
PROF. J. REIGHARD.
PROF. I. C. RUSSELL.*

---

*Deceased.

174863

## PERMANENT STAFF

### LANSING

**Alfred C. Lane**, State Geologist.

**W. F. Cooper**, Assistant.

**H. R. Wight**, Clerk.

### HOUGHTON

**A. H. Meuche**, Engineer in Charge.

# CONTENTS.

Papers included.

Page

THE SURFACE GEOLOGY OF PORTIONS OF MENOMINEE, DICKINSON AND IRON COUNTIES, MICHIGAN: BY I. C. RUSSELL.

Table of contents .......... 5
Index to same .......... 83

PEAT, ESSAYS ON ITS ORIGIN, USES AND DISTRIBUTION IN MICHIGAN, BY C. A. DAVIS.

Table of contents .......... 97
Index to same .......... 363

A GEOLOGICAL SECTION FROM BESSEMER DOWN BLACK RIVER, BY W. C. GORDAN.

Table of contents .......... 401
Index to same .......... 503

CRATAEGUS IN SOUTHERN MICHIGAN, BY C. S. SARGENT.

Table of contents or index of species .......... 513
Index to same .......... 567

ANNUAL REPORT OF THE STATE GEOLOGIST.

Index to same .......... 595

# THE SURFACE GEOLOGY

OF PORTIONS OF

# MENOMINEE, DICKINSON AND IRON COUNTIES,

MICHIGAN.

BY

ISRAEL C. RUSSELL.

---

PUBLISHED BY THE STATE BOARD OF GEOLOGICAL SURVEY AS A PART OF THE REPORT FOR 1906.

---

LANSING, MICHIGAN
WYNKOOP HALLENBECK CRAWFORD CO., STATE PRINTERS
1907

# LETTER OF TRANSMITTAL.

OFFICE OF THE STATE GEOLOGIST,
LANSING, MICHIGAN, Nov. 20, 1906.

*To the Honorable the Board of Geological
Survey of Michigan:*

Hon. Fred M. Warner, President.
Hon. W. J. McKone.
Hon. Patrick H. Kelley, Secretary.

Gentlemen: I herewith transmit and recommend for publication as a part of your report for 1906, the following report by Prof. I. C. Russell, whom Ann Arbor has recently lost.

This may be the last work to appear from this gifted writer and eminent geologist, and certainly represents the fruits of his last field season in the summer of 1905.

The manuscript was put in my hands toward the end of the following winter, and returned to him with some slight suggestions which we talked over. It was found on his table after his untimely decease, with all the matters we had talked over adjusted, so that it is ready for the printer.

Your report for 1905 was already as large as a report should be, and it seemed wise to let it with the report of his co-worker, Prof. C. A. Davis, begin the report of 1906. Prof. Russell was more than a scientist. He was an artist. This shows not merely in the many beautiful descriptions of scenic effects which he gives, in his account of his trip up Mount St. Elias, but in his choice of words and attention to style, and lends to his writings an enduring charm.

Very respectfully,
ALFRED C. LANE,
State Geologist.

# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

Page

INTRODUCTION.

Method of work ........ 7
Object of the reconnaissance ........ 8

TOPOGRAPHY.

Plains ........ 9
Valleys ........ 10
Hills ........ 11

STREAMS.

The Menominee River ........ 12
Stream development ........ 16

LAKES.

THE PRIMITIVE FOREST.

Basement complex ........ 21
Algonkian system ........ 23
Paleozoic system ........ 24
Fossils ........ 26

TOPOGRAPHY OF THE HARD-ROCK SURFACE.

SURFACE GEOLOGY.

Classification of glacial records ........ 28

RECORDS OF GLACIAL ABRASION.

Striæ ........ 29
Crescentic cracks ........ 31
Roughened rock-surfaces ........ 34
Changes in hard-rock topography ........ 34

GLACIAL DEPOSITS.

Till ........ 40
Till sheets ........ 42
Drumlins ........ 42
Moraines ........ 45

TWO GLACIAL LOBES.

Moraines of the Green Bay lobe ........ 47
Moraines of the Chippewa lobe ........ 50

GLACIO-FLUVIAL EROSION.

The Norway spill-way ........ 53

GLACIO-FLUVIAL DEPOSITS.

Eskers ........ 54
Kames ........ 59
Kame terraces ........ 62
Sand and gravel plains ........ 64

THE STURGEON PLAIN.

POST GLACIAL STREAM EROSION.

Stream terraces ........ 78

SOILS.

# ILLUSTRATIONS.

| | | | | Facing Page |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Plate | I. | | Lower Twin Falls, Menominee River | 12 |
| Plate | | B. | Horse Race Rapids, Menominee River | |
| Plate | II. | | Geological map of Michigan | 20 |
| Plate | III. | | Map of Menominee region, showing surface geology | 32 |
| Plate | IV. | A. | Crescentic cracks in quartzite | 34 |
| Plate | | B. | Rock surface roughened by glacial abrasion | |
| Plate | V. | A. | Glaciated summit of quartzite ridge view with the bedding | 36 |
| | | B. | Glaciated summit of quartzite ridge across the bedding | |
| Plate | VI. | A. | Glaciated hill showing stoss and lee sides | 38 |
| | | B. | Characteristic section of till | |
| Plate | VII. | A. | Perched boulders of gneiss resting on quartzite | 40 |
| | | B. | Boulders in a sand and gravel plain | |
| Plate | VIII. | | Map of drumlins near Hermansville | 48 |
| Plate | IX. | A. | Model of drumlins near Hermansville | 50 |
| | | B. | Section of drumlin | |
| Plate | X. | | Till in the central portion of a drumlin | 52 |
| Plate | XI. | A. | An esker | 54 |
| | | B. | Section of an esker | |
| Plate | XII. | A. | Model of gravel bars near Sturgeon Falls | 57 |
| | | B. | Gravel bars near Sturgeon Falls | |
| Figure | 1. | | Cross-profile of a drumlin with attached drumlin trough | 45 |

# THE SURFACE GEOLOGY

## OF PORTIONS OF

# MENOMINEE, DICKINSON AND IRON COUNTIES, MICHIGAN.

BY ISRAEL C. RUSSELL.

### INTRODUCTION.

During the summer of 1905, I visited Menominee, Dickinson and Iron counties, in the southwest portion of the Northern Peninsula of Michigan, at the suggestion of Dr. A. C. Lane, State Geologist, for the purpose of studying the surface geology of the region. The examination was in continuance of similar work done the year previous, an account of which has been published.[1] The region visited is indicated on the map forming Plate III, and includes, essentially, the western half of Menominee County and the southern portions of Dickinson and Iron counties; in all about 1,000 square miles.

Field work was begun at Menominee on July 6th and terminated at Iron River on August 29, 1905. During this time I received much assistance and advice from Professor C. A. Davis, of the Department of Forestry of the University of Michigan, who traveled with me for the purpose of continuing investigations previously made in the Southern Peninsula of Michigan, concerning the nature, mode of origin, etc., of peat, together with other problems of a combined geological and botanical nature. Throughout the journey, I was also accompanied by Mr. A. P. Frapwell, who rendered efficient service as a field assistant.

*Method of Work:* The portion of Michigan visited was formerly almost completely covered by a dense forest, but as settlement progressed, and important iron mines were exploited in Dickinson and Iron counties and an extensive lumber industry developed, a portion of the land was cleared, wagon roads constructed, and several lines of railroad built. Aside from the railroads, intercommunication is almost wholly over wagon roads, and in carrying on geological work, the only practicable means of travel and transportation was found to be with horses and wagons. The main roads, and particularly the state and county roads, are good, but the secondary roads, many of them formerly used in connection with lumbering and now abandoned for that purpose, are in general in a bad condition and difficult to traverse. While considerable portions of the counties named above have been cleared for farming purposes, extensive tracts are still clothed with primitive forest, consisting on the uplands principally of hardwood trees, such as the maple, birch, elm, together with basswood, hemlock, etc., and in the low-lands, particularly when swampy, of spruce, tamarack and cedar. The hardwood forests are frequently sufficiently open to permit one to walk through them with ease, but the swamps are almost as difficult to traverse as a tropical jungle. The formerly extensive pine forests have almost entirely disappeared, owing to the invasions of lumbermen, and fires have swept the regions they occupied and completed the desolation. On the burnt areas, young trees and shrubs have taken root and grown vigorously, forming dense tangles nearly as difficult to traverse as are the cedar and tamarack swamps.

---

[1] Report of the State Board of Geological Survey of Michigan for the year 1904. Lansing, Mich., 1905, pp. 30-150.

Mention has just been made of the means used for transportation and of the difficulties in the way of exploration, for the purpose of indicating that the work I was enabled to do was not of the nature of a detailed survey, but should be considered simply as a rapid reconnaissance. This statement will, perhaps, be better appreciated when it is remembered that the region studied is approximately 1,000 square miles in area, and the time devoted to its examination but fifty-four days.

*Object of the Reconnaissance:* The immediate object of the field work which furnished the data for the present report, was the furtherance of the preparation of a soil map of Michigan soon to be published by the State Geological Survey. This map, drawn to a scale of six miles to an inch, will show the distribution of various classes of soils, with considerable detail, and the localities where the rocks older than the glacial drift come to the surface. The purposes of the map fall mainly in two groups, which may be designated as commercial and educational.

The commercial uses of a soil map are suggested by the fact that from it can be readily ascertained much in reference to the agricultural possibilities of the region it represents, the location and nature of such superficial deposits as clay, sand, gravel, marl, peat, etc., as well as the places where the solid rocks come to the surface and may be utilized for building-stone, road metal and other purposes. Intimately associated with the agricultural interests of a state, are its possibilities in reference to forestry. From a soil map can be readily determined the location and extent as well as the facilities for transportation, of tracts of land like the so-called jack-pine regions of Michigan, which, in many instances, are of little or no value for agriculture, but may, in the near future, be in demand for tree-culture. The reforesting of the now desolate pine-lands of Michigan, has just begun, and as there are many reasons for believing, will develop into an extensive and important industry. As a basis for this and other occupations dependent directly on the soil, such as sugar-beet raising, fruit culture, etc., a knowledge of the soil, in order to make the best use of it possible, is of primary importance. It is with the view of encouraging future developments in the directions just indicated, that the Board of Geological Survey has wisely concluded to furnish all the information practicable in reference to the soils of Michigan.

The educational importance of a knowledge of the superficial deposits of a state is perhaps not exceeded by the direct money value of such information. Only a suggestion, however, can be given in this connection at present. To a large extent, and in fact almost wholly, the superficial deposits which form nearly the entire surface of Michigan, were either directly or indirectly placed where they now occur, by glaciers. One of the most astonishing facts in the geological history of the earth, is that vast areas in various continents, now highly fruitful and containing populous cities, were formerly deeply buried beneath ice sheets. A well-established part of the chapter of geological history referred to, is the fact that an ice sheet, similar to the one now covering Greenland, formerly occupied the region of which Michigan is a part. Not only was there one advance of the ice from the north over this region, but several such invasions, with intervals of mild climate intervening, during which forests flourished. This series of stupendous physical events and their attendant influences on plant and animal life, as well as the direct bearing of the conditions they produced on human history, when once understood and thoroughly appreciated, produce a profound impression on an enquiring mind and awaken an earnest desire to know more concerning the earth on which we live. Such an awakening of interest is one of the main factors of education.

It is for the purpose of systematically and accurately recording the data pertaining to the glacial and other of the later chapters of the geological history of Michigan, that the publication of a soil map of the State has been undertaken.

The present report is a minor contribution to the preparation of the map referred to, the larger part of which will be based on detailed work continued through several years, by Mr. Frank Leverett, under the auspices of the U. S. Geological Survey.

This report is addressed to the people living in the region to which it relates, and is an attempt to translate the records of nature into the language of every-day life. It is my hope that the reader will find in the following pages suggestive facts which will aid in the development of industry, particularly in the direction of agriculture, forestry and the use of water power, and also derive from them some knowledge of the interesting geological history of the region described.

## TOPOGRAPHY.

The region represented on the map forming Plate III, is nowhere mountainous, and at only a few localities can it be truthfully claimed to be even moderately impressive on account of the height or boldness of its hills. Considering simply the present relief, the land forms may be classified in the three groups, plains, valleys and hills, but a more critical study will show that each of these divisions contains several members, with diverse characteristics and widely different histories.

*Plains:* On the west side of Green Bay there is a plain which extends some fifty miles westward, and is bordered on its inland margin by a more elevated region with a moderately rough surface. The plain, however, is separated into several portions, and in various parts is mildly diversified by low hills.

Bordering Green Bay on the west is a sandy strip of country, mostly in the condition of a cedar swamp, from five to six miles wide, which was formerly submerged beneath the waters of a lake, known as Lake

Algonquin, that occupied the basin of Lake Michigan, and may, be termed a lake plain. To the west of the high water line of the former lake, the land is, in general, nearly flat and largely in the condition of a swamp, but has numerous well-drained uplands which, in places, rise sufficiently above the general level to form low hills. The depressions and hills alike are for the most part underlain or composed of sandy and stony clay or *till* as it is technically termed by geologists. The flat or nearly flat portions are frequently several square miles in area, as may be seen along the State road leading north from Menominee, and have a surface covering of till. Although the till is frequently concealed beneath peaty soils that have accumulated in the depressions, the fact that it forms a nearly continuous covering on the hard rocks beneath, may be readily determined, and gives warrant for the term *till-plain* as the best descriptive name to apply to the region. Rising from the plain to a height, in general, of thirty or forty feet, there are three classes of hills which will be described later under the titles *drumlins, eskers and kames.* Of these the drumlins are the most numerous and most characteristic, and appear as smooth, oval hills and ridges which, on account of the fine texture of their soils, favorable exposure, etc., have, to a great extent, been cleared of their primitive tree-growth, and are under cultivation. Examples of the hills referred to, are abundant in the central and northern portions of Menominee County, where they occur in large numbers and are the dominant features of the relief. The eskers and kames are ridges and knolls composed of sand and gravel, situated for the most part in the midst of swampy tracts, and rising, in general, to a height of twenty to thirty feet, but in a few instances as much as sixty feet above the till plain which occupies nearly the whole of Menominee County.

Beginning in the vicinity of Sturgeon Falls, there is a series of sand and gravel plains which extends far westward, along the general course of Menominee River and into the lower portions of the depressions or valleys drained by its larger tributaries. These plains, in some instances fifty or more square miles in area, are known in part to the residents of the region, as jack-pine plains, in reference to the most characteristic of the trees growing on them. They are underlain by thick sheets of sand and gravel, and in numerous instances have conspicuously pitted surfaces. The sand and gravel of which they are composed was deposited by streams that flowed from former glaciers, and they may, with propriety, be termed fluvial plains. Examples of plains of this character occur in the vicinity of Menominee River near Iron Mountain, Crystal Falls, etc., and extensions from them occupy many of the tributary valleys.

*Valleys:* The valley-like depressions bordered by uplands, less extensive than the till and alluvial plains, may be divided into two groups. These are the usually narrow and irregular low-lands separating rocky hills, and the channels excavated by streams during modern times, in alluvial deposits.

The rock-bordered valleys are represented by the numerous irregular depressions in Dickinson and Iron counties, which extend in an irregular manner among the numerous rocky hills, and are of ancient date. For the most part they are partially filled with alluvium and thus shown to antedate the period when the alluvial plains and connecting valley gravels were laid down. Examples are furnished by the irregular depressions occupied by the several principal tributaries of Menominee River, and their secondary branches.

The alluvial-bordered valleys represented by the immediate or inner valleys of Menominee River in the vicinity of Norway, Iron Mountain, etc., are margined by terraced escarpments, simulating great stairways, which connect the present flood-plain of the river with the higher and widening sand and gravel plains. The broad alluvial plains referred to, are simply ancient flood-plains, in which the present streams have excavated modern valleys. It is only at localities, however, where the ancient stream-laid deposits have a conspicuous thickness that the modern trench-like valleys have been excavated.

Associated with the alluvium-bordered valleys and, in several instances, connecting one section of such a valley with another section in the same drainage channel, there are short, narrow, steep-sided, rock-bordered gorges or canyons. In the same manner that the alluvium-bordered valleys record the work of streams in modern times in deepening and broadening their channels in loose material, the gorges in resistant rock represent the changes produced by streams where their tasks were more difficult. Examples of the rock-walled channels referred to, are furnished at each of the localities along Menominee River and its tributaries, where cataracts and rapids break the generally even descent of the streams. Of these short canyons, the most picturesque is the narrow gorge above Big Quinnesec falls, known as the Horse Race, a photograph of which is presented on Plate IB.

*Hills:* In the western portion of the Menominee region, hills are as characteristic features of the relief, as plains are of the topography of the eastern portion of the same region. The line of demarcation between these two sharply contrasted provinces, trends north and south and passes near the town of Waucedah, and is located at the junction of nearly horizontal sedimentary beds on the east and highly inclined and largely crystalline rocks on the west. The sedimentary beds consist principally of limestone, which are weak in reference to their degree of resistance to the agencies of erosion, while the crystalline rocks and their associated terranes are not easily dissolved and not readily removed by the friction of débris laden streams. The line of junction between these two provinces is irregular and cape-like projections and island-like areas of the nearly horizontal beds, characteristic of the province of the east, occur to the west of the general boundary and form conspicuous hills, of which the bold uplands in the vicinity of Norway and Iron Mountain are examples.

Throughout Dickinson County, and extending west from its western border into Iron County, the most conspicuous features in the topography are hills and ridges composed of crystalline rocks, such as gneiss, schist, and granite, or of various dark, basic, igneous rocks. The more prominent hills have a height of four or five hundred feet, but in general the differential elevation between the depressions and elevations is less than two hundred feet. The hills are seemingly lacking in systematic arrangement, but exceptions to this generalization are furnished by certain ridges of white quartzite and of dolomite in the iron-bearing formations, and ridges or ranges of hills due to the presence of dikes. Systems such as pertain to stream-sculptured topography, or the characteristic profiles of ice-eroded eminences, are not at all conspicuous. The reason for the lack of plan, as will be explained more fully later, is due principally to the fact that glacial and glacio-fluvial deposits have been superimposed on a surface which had previously been sculptured both by streams and glaciers, and to a considerable extent mask the features of the underlying hard-rock topography.

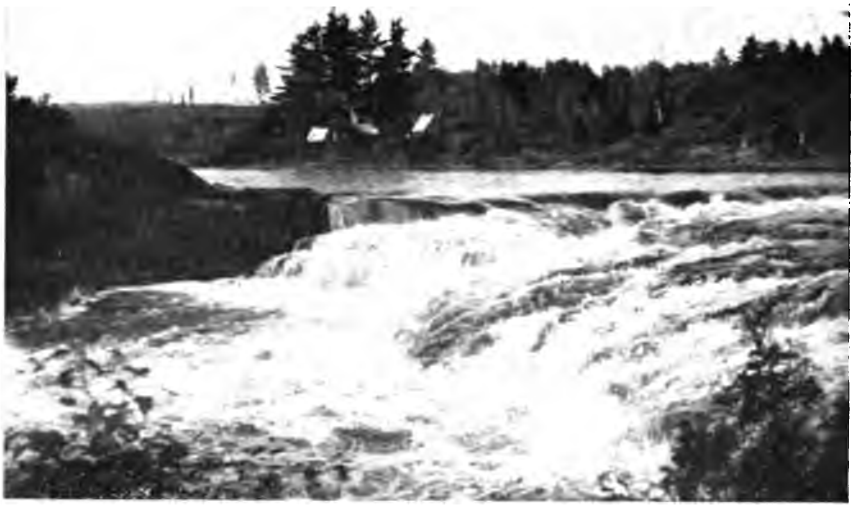
Examples of the hills referred to, occur in the vicinity of Vulcan, Norway, Iron Mountain, Metropolitan, Crystal Falls, etc., and furnish illustrations of the general character of the elevations that are present throughout the western portion of the Northern Peninsula of Michigan. Something of the general appearance of the hills may be seen in the photograph reproduced on Plate V, of a rounded and glaciated ridge of white quartzite near Loretto.

The rocky hills impart to the land a moderately rough surface, but there are no conspicuously prominent elevations. A striking feature in the relief is that the higher hills throughout areas of many square miles, rise approximately to the same height, although the rocks of which they are composed are of various degrees of resistance to the agents of erosion. This feature becomes especially significant when it is noted that certain hills and ridges are composed of rocks which occur in nearly vertical layers, and as is known are remnants of truncated folds. Evidently the land has been eroded to a generally uniform horizon, and the plane surface thus produced roughened by subsequent erosion and this process supplemented and the relief to a considerable extent subdued by the subsequent deposition of material by glaciers and streams.

In addition to the numerous hills and ridges composed of hard rock and in part superimposed upon them, there are numerous and for the most part minor elevations of the same character as the drumlins, eskers, and kames, which vary the monotony of the till-plain in Menominee County. With these constructional topographic forms are also included the irregular heaps and piles of till left by glaciers, and known as *moraines*. Examples of these several glacial and glacio-fluvial deposits, with the exception of drumlins, are present as minor features of the topography, in the province underlain by crystalline rocks and the iron-bearing formations, to the west of Waucedah, and extending westward to beyond Crystal Falls. Still further west, and especially in Iron County, moraines become conspicuously prominent and cover extensive areas, so as to almost completely mask the topography of the underlying rocks. About Iron River, for example, bold rounded hills, composed to a depth of two hundred feet or more of stony clay, dominate the landscape, and impart to the country a characteristic relief, which is conspicuously different from the topography of the country to the eastward where rocky hills, fluvial plains, till plains, etc., form the prevailing features of the surface of the land.

### *Streams.*

*Menominee River:* The region described in this report is drained almost entirely by Menominee River which forms a portion of the boundary between Michigan and Wisconsin.



A.—LOWER TWIN FALLS, MENOMINEE RIVER.

B.—HORSE RACE RAPIDS, MENOMINEE RIVER.

MTOU

The Menominee and its tributaries constitute the largest and longest river system which discharges into the Great Lakes, in the Northern Michigan-Wisconsin region. The trunk stream is formed by the junction of the Bois Brulé and the Michigamme, and has a length of approximately 104 miles. It is a fine stream of usually clear but brownish water, the color being due to the vegetable matter held in suspension or in solution, which is contributed by the numerous swamps along its course. The extent of the area drained by the river, or its hydrographic basin, is not accurately known, but is approximately of 4,000 square miles of which 2,240 square miles is situated in Michigan and the remainder in Wisconsin. The principal tributaries to the trunk stream in Michigan are the Bois Brulé, which forms a part of the Michigan-Wisconsin boundary, Iron River, a tributary of the Bois Brulé, Michigamme River, Sturgeon River and Little Cedar River. Of these the Michigamme is the longest and has the largest volume; its source is in Michigamme Lake, in Marquette County, which is supplied by several streams, the sources of which are within some ten miles of Lake Superior. The tributary second in importance, is Sturgeon River, the hydrographic basin of which lies to the east of the country drained by the Michigamme. This stream, after following a tortuous course through a comparatively wide and densely forested valley, passes through a water-gap in a prominent quartzite ridge near Loretto in Dickinson County, where it forms a short but picturesque rapid, and joins the Menominee about half a mile above Sturgeon falls.

The Menominee and its several tributaries are characteristically clear-water streams and furnish an illustration of the manner in which a thick covering of vegetation and porous soils lead to the filtration of surface waters. Another result of these same conditions is that the streams have but small seasonal variations; a feature which has an important bearing on their utilization for water power.

The Menominee is of special interest to the geologist, owing to the fact that its course is in a conspicuous manner independent of the composition and structure of the hard rocks underlying the region it drains, and has been determined, to a great extent, by the glacial deposits left on the surface of the land at the time of the melting of the last ice sheet which covered it. Interest centers in this fine river, however, principally because of its commercial importance. It is nowhere navigable, but its strong current and numerous rapids and falls afford important sources of power. Accurate surveys of the river are not available and no comprehensive study of its water-power has been made, but suggestive estimates in this connection are contained in the reports of the Tenth Census of the United States,[1] from which the following table has been compiled, showing approximately the available water power in the trunk portion of the river.

---

[1] Vol. 10, Part 2, Washington, 1887, pp. 57-67.

*Principal Rapids on Menominee River and their Estimated Theoretical Power.*

| Name. | Fall in feet. | Horse-power. |
|---|---|---|
| Bad Water rapids | 5 | 455 |
| First Twin Fall | 12 | 1,130 |
| Second or Lower Twin Fall | 12 | 1,130 |
| Pine River rapids | 6 | 566 |
| Big Quinnesec falls | 120 | 14,950 |
| Little Quinnesec falls | 80 | 9,936 |
| Sand Portage rapids | 40 | 5,078 |
| Sturgeon falls | 12 | 1,831 |
| Nose Peak rapids | 4 | 605 |
| Pemena falls and rapids | 70 | 11,115 |
| Chalk Hill rapids | 8 | 1,302 |
| White rapids | 20 | 3,275 |
| Grand rapids | 25 | 4,954 |
| Twin Island rapids | 10 | 1,995 |
| Schappee rifts | 7 | 2,024 |
| Rapids at Marinette | 19 | 3,930 |
| Total | 450 | 64,231 |

As stated in the report from which the above table has been compiled, the figures given are largely estimates, but such tests as I have been able to make, indicate that they do not vary greatly from the truth. The table refers to natural conditions and it is to be remembered that the available power could, in most instances, be materially increased by constructing dams.

Since the estimates quoted above were made, the U. S. Geological Survey has begun a critical study of the water power of the Menominee and its tributaries. The reports thus far issued,[1] contain a large amount of valuable data, from which the following data have been compiled:

The volume of Menominee River, as shown by a number of measurements made near Iron Mountain, in 1903 and 1904, varies from 1,558 to 9,490 cubic feet per second; the mean of 12 gaugings made between May and November, during the years mentioned, was 4,666 cubic feet per second. (U. S. Geological Survey, Water-Supply and Irrigation Paper No. 97, p. 475, and ibid No. 129, p. 21.)

Again, estimates based on a large number of gauge readings at the same locality as just mentioned, in 1902, '03 and '04, but not including the months of January, February and March, during which the presence of ice interfered with the correct reading of the gauge, the minimum flow was 1,032 and the maximum flow 11,770 cubic feet per second; the mean being 3,925 cubic feet per second. The highest stage of the water during 1903 and 1904, so far as recorded, occurred in May of each year, and the lowest condition of the river was during the late summer and early fall months. (U. S. Geological Survey, Water Supply and Irrigation Paper No. 129, p. 23.) Conspicuous variations in volume of the river are recorded during each month concerning which measurements are available, but it should be understood in this connection that, during low water stages, the practice of retaining the water at certain times, by means of dams and of flushing the river so as to aid in the transportation of logs, makes the recorded fluctuations much greater than they would be under natural conditions.

---

[1] Newell, F. H. Report of progress of stream measurements for the calendar year 1902, U. S. Geological Survey, Water-supply and Irrigation Paper No. 83, pp. 250-262.

Hoyt, J. C. Report of progress of stream measurements for the calendar year 1903, U. S. Geological Survey, Water-supply and Irrigation Paper No. 97, pp. 474-483.

Horton, R. E., E. Johnson and J. C. Hoyt. Report of progress of stream measurements for the calendar year 1904, U. S. Geological Survey, Water-supply and Irrigation Paper No. 129, pp. 20-24.

The purpose in mind in presenting the above table at this time, is to direct attention to the truly remarkable facilities for developing water-power along the Menominee River. The resources in this respect are not all told, however, when the main river is alone considered. Several of its branches are of sufficient size to merit being termed rivers, and as is indicated in the table given below, also compiled from the reports of the Tenth Census, furnish facilities for the development of power.

*Tributaries of the Menominee.*[1]

| Name. | Length in miles. | Drainage area in square miles. | Estimated low-water discharge in cubic feet per second. | Theoretical horse-power under 10 feet head. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Bois Brule, including the Mequacumecum (Paint river) | 42 | 1,013 | 465 | 528 |
| Michigamme river | 72 | 756 | 347 | 391 |
| Pine river (in Wisconsin) | 53 | 586 | 269 | 305 |
| Sturgeon river | 50 | 409 | 188 | 214 |
| Pembinebemon river (in Wisconsin) | 23 | 163 | 75 | 85 |
| Pike river (in Wisconsin) | 43 | 292 | 134 | 152 |
| Little Cedar river | 32 | 149 | 68 | 77 |

While the above table is not to be understood as presenting precise measures, it serves to show that the tributaries of the Menominee are worthy of careful consideration when a demand arises for the abundant power they are capable of furnishing. As is apparent, even from a very imperfect inspection of these streams, they afford favorable sites for factories. Especially suggestive in this connection are the rapids in the Sturgeon near Loretto, in the Michigamme near Mansfield, and in Iron River and Iron Mountain. The water-power briefly considered above, is now utilized in part, but to only a small fraction of its total amount in any one instance. Dams constructed near the mouth of the Menominee, at Marinette, have been in operation some thirty years, mainly in connection with the lumber industry, and for similar purposes, dams of somewhat temporary character to the number of about 25, have also been placed at various localities along the main river and its tributaries, but at the present time are mostly out of repair and may be considered as things of the past.

Besides the use of the Menominee for transporting logs, two important developments of its water-power have been made. An extensive paper mill, at Little Quinnesec Falls, now utilizes about one-half of the available 10,000 horse power at that locality. At Big Quinnesec Falls an air-compressing plant has been erected, which delivers compressed air, by means of a large iron pipe, to the iron mines at Iron Mountain, but uses only a small fraction of the power the river is capable of furnishing at the fall referred to and at the neighboring rapids. Plans have also been perfected for utilizing Sturgeon Falls for compressing air for use in the iron mines at Vulcan, but as to the extent of the proposed developments I am not informed.

---

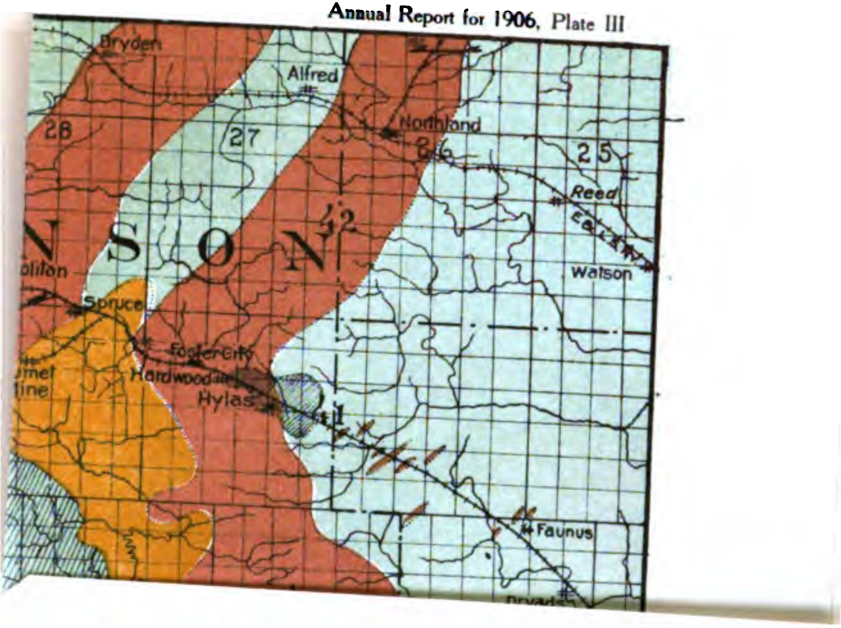
[1] To this table can now be added Iron River concerning which information is given in U. S. Geological Survey, Water-supply and Irrigation Paper No. 97, pp. 476-483, and No. 129, p. 24.

Persons seeking more information in reference to the water-power of the Menominee and its tributaries, will do well to consult the report of the Tenth Census and of the U. S. Geological Survey referred to above. An important increment to the industrial development of the Menominee region will, no doubt, be furnished by the careful measurements of volume, etc., now being carried on by the U. S. Geological Survey, but in connection with this study an investigation of the timber, mineral and agricultural resources of the region and their relation to means of transportation should be made. Water-power is here classed with the other industries mentioned, because it should be recognized as one of the leading natural assets of the region under consideration. This region was formerly a center for the production of pine lumber, but the formerly magnificent pine forests have disappeared. It is now the source of vast quantities of iron ore, but there is a limit to the ore deposits and if the active demands now being made on them continue for a few years or a few score years, the supply will, no doubt, be exhausted. Concerning the water-power, however, there will be no diminution with use, but on the other hand by means of storage reservoirs, the natural amount can be materially increased.

*Stream Development:* The streams of the Menominee region have had at least two important episodes in their history. The earlier of the two series of events referred to, occurred in ancient geological times, when the streams deepened their channels until they cut through a layer of nearly horizontal stratified rock, namely, the Potsdam sandstone, and uncovered a lower and older series of rocks which is folded and in part consist of nearly vertical strata. The later episode occurred after the Glacial epoch, during which the region was covered with a surface blanket of loose material, principally sandy clay and gravel, and the streams, displaced from their previous channels, took new courses and excavated their beds until, at numerous localities, they reached the hard rocks beneath the superficial covering of rock waste.

In reference to the first of the episodes referred to, many features of the present streams will be made clear, when it is remembered that the Potsdam sandstone formerly extended far to the west of the present position of its western margin in the region about Norway, Iron Mountain, etc., and as seems probable covered the whole of Northern Michigan and much of the adjacent portion of Wisconsin. Other formations of later date than the Potsdam and resting on it, had a similar but as yet not definitely known, westward extension. Movements in the earth's crust in the region now drained in part by the tributaries of the Menominee, caused the sediments of the Potsdam and late seas to be upraised and form land. The courses the streams took on this land were determined by the slope of its surface, or were what are termed

Annual Report for 1906, Plate III



i
s
ε
c
w
g
n
th
w

th
P
pc
ta
ga
tic
lm

*consequent streams.* The streams excavated channels and valleys for themselves and developed many branches. Erosion progressed until all of the Potsdam sandstone was removed from the extensive areas in the Menominee region where granite rocks and the iron-bearing formations now appear at the surface, and the streams were lowered on to these rocks in the positions they had occupied on the formations formerly covering it. That is, the drainage was superimposed from the nearly horizontal Potsdam sandstone, etc., upon the folded and highly inclined formations which occurred beneath it. The surface left exposed by the removal of the Potsdam sandstone, had previously been a part of a land area, and, on account of erosion, was moderately rough, the hard rock having been left in relief as the softer rocks adjacent were removed and valleys produced. Across this surface the streams flowed in channels inherited from the vanished cover of nearly horizontal rocks. The streams are not confined to the broader valleys, but, instead, give little heed, so to speak, to the hardness or softness or to the relief of the surface or the structure of the formations they cross.

The second episode referred to in the history of the streams, occurred when the glaciers which formerly covered Michigan, etc., finally melted. The glaciers left a sheet of sandy and bouldery clay or till spread over the country they had occupied, in places forming conspicuous moraines and oval, smooth-surfaced hills termed drumlins, which will be more fully described in a later page, but in general not sufficiently thick to mask the relief of the hard rocks on which it rests. During the last retreat of the ice, however, the heavily debris-charged streams fed by its melting, deposited great quantities of sand and gravel over the land adjacent to the margin of the ice. These glacio-fluvial deposits formed widely extended outwash-plains, and acquired sufficient thickness in several extensive regions, to bury not only the previously deposited till, but to conceal many eminences on the irregular surface of the land that had been re-exposed by the removal of the Potsdam sandstone. The broad outwash plains referred to, are typically illustrated by the so-called jack-pine plains adjacent to Menominee River, near Iron Mountain and Crystal Falls, and also have a wide development in Wisconsin, as for example, in the vicinity of Florence.

As the ice withdrew for the last time from Northern Michigan, the present streams came into existence, and in part followed the courses of pre-glacial rivers, but in the main took new courses over the surfaces of the glacial and glacio-fluvial deposits which had been left as a blanket of rock-waste over the land.

In the case of Menominee River and the lower portions of several of its larger tributaries, the waters at first flowed over gently sloping, but irregular and in part conspicuously pitted, sand and gravel plains, which conceal all but the higher knobs and ridges of the underlying hard-rock surface. As the streams deepened their channels, they here and there reached the rocks beneath the superficial deposits, and renewed the task of sculpturing them, which had been delayed during the Glacial epoch. Where the tops of knobs and ridges of resistant rock were met and crossed by the streams, rapids and water-falls came into existence. Several and as it appears, all of the rapids and falls of the Menominee had their sites determined in this manner. This interesting story can be read in great detail, in the records afforded in the vicinity of Big and Little Quinnesec Falls, at Sturgeon Falls, etc., and at several localities along the larger tributaries of the Menominee.

The two great interruptions in the progress of stream work referred to, the first caused by the subsidence of the land, which permitted the ocean to cover it and deposit thick sheets of sediment; and the second, due to the advance of glaciers over it and the laying down of glacial and glacio-fluvial deposits, have certain features of the same general nature. Each episode was characterized by the deposition of material on a previously deeply denuded land, thus giving it a new surface on which streams began afresh to deepen and widen valleys, and finally reached the underlying rocks which were more resistant and have a different structure than the beds resting on them. The last cycle of erosion is as yet in its infancy, and its duration has been brief, in comparison with the cycle of erosion that preceded the Glacial epoch. As yet but a small advance has been made in the task of removing the deposits the former glaciers left as a record of their invasion. In fact, numerous depressions in the surface of the glacial and related deposits, still endure and are occupied by swamps and lakes.

The outline sketch just given of the last great episode in the lives of the streams of the Menominee region, is perhaps sufficiently suggestive to permit persons living in the region under consideration, to fill in the details pertaining to a special locality. More facts, however, relating to the glacial and associated deposits will be presented later.

### *Lakes.*

A highly characteristic feature of the portion of North America formerly occupied by ice sheets, is the multitude of lakes it contains. In the Menominee region, however, this result of the changes produced by glaciation is less pronounced than in many neighboring areas, the general reason being that the glacial deposits present are comparatively thin, and that the valleys and depressions in most instances became more or less completely filled with gravel and sand deposited by streams flowing from the last of the former ice sheets during its retreat. But notwithstanding these adverse conditions, several lakes of considerable size, and many lakelets as well as innumerable swamps, are present, and furnish some of the most pleasing features of the scenery.

All of the lakes owe their existence to the former glacial conditions, and may be classified in reference to the mode of origin of their basins, in two groups, namely; those retained by morainal dams, or held in depressions in the irregular surfaces of the glacial débris, and those occupying pit-like depressions, mostly of small size, in the surface of alluvial deposits. The lakes of the former class include all of the larger examples, such as lakes Fumee and Antoine near Iron Mountain, and Fortune, Chicagon, Stanley, Sunset lakes, etc., in the vicinity of Crystal Falls and Iron River. Although the lakes in general measure only a mile or two in their greatest diameters—the longest is Fortune Lake, which has a length of a little over four miles, but is exceptionally narrow—they are important on account of their beauty and utility. In several instances they are almost completely surrounded by forests, the primitive wildness of which has escaped the destruction that accompanies the advance of civilization. Chicagon and Stanley lakes are especially interesting on account of the unmarred beauty of the densely tree-clothed hills that are mirrored in their tranquil waters.

The lakes referred to, owe their existence, for the most part, to the irregularities present in the surface of the widely spread covering of stony clay which conceals the older rocks as with a blanket, but to the west of Crystal Falls the till deposits form massive morainal hills, among which most of the larger lakes of the region are interspersed. In but few instances does it appear that the deposition of moraines in pre-glacial valleys has led to the formation of well-defined dams, but in the case of Lake Antoine, the presence of an irregular moraine on its west border, shows that a true morainal dam was there formed in the bottom of a comparatively large valley bordered by rocky hills, and checks the free escape of its waters.

Of the lakes contained in pits and basins in alluvial deposits, abundant examples are furnished on the broad sand and gravel plains between Crystal Falls and Menominee River, and in several similar but smaller areas. The basins of these lakes are sunken in the surfaces of nearly level tracts of sand and gravel, and their steeply-sloping borders are composed of the same material. For the most part they are only a small fraction of a mile in length and in general are from a few to perhaps thirty or fifty feet in depth. The origin of the basins or pits they occupy is accounted for on the hypothesis that bodies of ice formerly occupied their sites, and were surrounded by sand and gravel laid down by streams, or else, that ice was covered by such accumulations and melting left depressions.

The largest and best example of the class of the lakes referred to appears to be Runkle Lake, near Crystal Falls, which occupies a depression about one mile in diameter and some sixty to seventy feet deep, in a broad sand and gravel plain, and is without a surface outlet.

In some instances lakes have resulted from the deposition of sand and gravel at the outlets of small valleys bounded for the most part by rocky hills, as is the case of Hanbury Lake in the vicinity of Norway, or are due to similar obstructions adjacent to the irregular border of morainal hills, as is indicated by the conditions at Crystal Lake near Iron Mountain.

The numerous swamps of the Menominee region which occupy irregular depressions in the general sheet of glacial deposits or occur in sags and hollows in sand and gravel plains, in part indicate the position of former lakes that have been filled by accumulations of vegetable matters. These areas, in many instances, are now cedar and spruce swamps, and in the case of the less completely filled examples, present meadow-like expanses of sedge, or are densely overgrown with water-loving shrubs. On the sand and gravel plains there are also numerous depressions similar to those holding lakelets and swamps, but sufficiently well underdrained to be dry at all seasons, and in the nature of their vegetation, do not differ in a conspicuous manner from the surrounding areas with their dense growths of sweet fern and its usual associates.

Although the lakes of the Menominee region present important scenic features and are of commercial value on account of the fishes inhabiting them, their chief interest to the geographer and geologist centers in the mode of origin of the basins they occupy. This phase of their history, however, is included in the account of the surface geology given on later pages.

### *The Primeval Forest.*

In a state of nature essentially the whole of the Menominee region was occupied by a forest. The only exceptions were small isolated areas where rocks outcropped, and portions of the broader and more sandy alluvial plains which were too dry to be favorable for tree growth.

The forest presented conspicuous variations dependent on soil conditions, which, when understood, permit of a quite accurate determination of the kind of trees that grew on a given type of soil, or knowing the kinds of trees, to make prediction in the reverse direction.

On the soils composed of till, when so situated as to be more or less well drained, the primitive forest, much of which still remains, consisted principally of maples, birches, elms, basswoods, iron-wood and hemlocks. The last named trees, however, were less widely distributed than the hardwood trees, and usually grew in isolated groves.

Where the uplands were more sandy, and in consequence the soils less humid, pines flourished, and extensive tracts were well covered with Norway and white pine. These trees have now almost completely disappeared on account of the destructive lumbering processes that have been carried on. Associated with the pines just mentioned but growing on still drier soils and especially characteristic of sand and gravel plains, was the jack-pine, which is of but little value for industrial purposes, but on account of its picturesque shape adds greatly to the beauty of the scenery.

The low lands, where drainage was imperfect and marshy conditions prevailed, are the home of the cedar and spruce, together with a multitude of shrubs and luxuriant growths of lowly, flowering annuals. The lake margins and swamps upon the black muck soils are permanently wet and are clothed with thick growths of sedges and other water-loving plants.

The most conspicuous change that man has made in the forest conditions is in the removal of the pine, and in the results of the extensive fires that followed the work of the lumbermen. The sandy tracts of land denuded of their pines, and burned until even the vegetable portion of the soil over extensive areas has been destroyed, are now for the most part densely overgrown with bushes and young trees. The destruction wrought by fire, however, has been so nearly complete that but few young pines, other than the jack-pine, have reappeared. The denser portions of the hardwood forests have been but little changed. Recently, however, a demand for the lumber they furnish has arisen. Owing to the comparatively small amount of forest litter on the ground under natural conditions, fires do not sweep through them so as to destroy the larger trees, but as their utilization progresses this danger will be augmented.

The swamps have, to a great extent, been invaded by lumbermen in quest of cedar, and in recent years the spruce they contain has come into demand as a source of pulp-wood. Here also fires have burned the refuse left on the ground by lumbermen, and consumed the resinous living trees as well.

From a knowledge of the relation of trees to soil types, and hence to geological conditions, as stated above, the distribution of the species of trees may serve to indicate the nature of the deposits in which they grow.

Geological Survey of Michigan.

Annual Report for 1906. Plate II.

In the Menominee region the hardwood forests show where till occurs, either in moderately well-drained plains, or forming morainal hills and drumlins. The white and Norway pines, now for the most part represented by their scorched and blackened stumps, are indicative of light, sandy soils, so situated as to be well drained, and mark the localities where sandy outwash from the former glaciers, margin terminal moraines, or eskers and kames are present. The jack-pines are, for the most part, confined to the broad sand and gravel plains, such as occur adjacent to Menominee River. A characteristic associate of the jack-pine on the plains, is the so-called sweet fern, which almost everywhere densely clothes the surface. Where the sweet fern is less abundant than usual the ground is frequently purple with blue berries and huckleberries in late summer.

The cedars and spruces indicate exceptionally humid soils and grow on any kind of material that is permanently wet. Usually, however, the peaty soil of the swamp is underlain by sand or gravel.

## HARD ROCK GEOLOGY.

A classification of the geological formations of Michigan, of older date than the superficial blanket of glacial drift, etc., is presented in connection with the geological map forming Plate II. On the map, the surface distribution of the larger divisions of the "hard-rocks" of the state is indicated, and the general reader may obtain much assistance from it while reading the following sketch of the earlier chapters in the geological history of the Menominee region.

The brief popular account here attempted, of the geological formations of older date than the Glacial epoch, is based almost entirely on the detailed and carefully prepared reports of several geologists, and especially C. R. Van Hise, W. S. Bayley, J. M. Clements, H. L. Smyth and others, who have studied the iron deposits of Michigan. The reports referred to,[1] should receive special attention from persons living in the vicinity of the iron mines of Michigan, as they contain a vast amount of information, not only of economic importance but of great educational value.

As may be read on the map forming Plate II, the rocks of older date than the Glacial epoch, belong to four of the larger divisions of geological history. These are in ascending order, the Basement Complex (Laurentian and Keewatin of Plate II), and the Algonkian[2] (Huronian), Cambrian and Ordovician systems.

*Basement Complex:* In the region here considered, the rocks included under this term are crystalline, and consist principally of gneiss, granite and schist, together with various igneous intrusions. Examples are furnished in an extensive tract of country with a rough topography, which begins on the south, adjacent to the iron-bearing rocks about Norway, Iron Mountain, etc., and extends north to beyond Metropolitan, and also by the rocks about Sturgeon, Little and Big Quinnesec falls.

---

[1] Monograph No. XXXVI, of the U. S. Geological Survey: "The Crystal Falls iron-bearing district of Michigan," by J. Morgan Clements and Henry Lloyd Smyth, with a chapter on the Sturgeon River tongue by William Henry Bayley and an introduction by Charles Richard Van Hise, Washington, 1899. Quarto, pp. I-XXXVI. 1-512, 46 plates, and 14 figures. Price $2.00.

Monograph No. XLVI. of U. S. Geological Survey: "The Menominee iron-bearing district of Michigan," by William Henry Bayley, Charles Richard Van Hise, Geologist in charge, Washington, 1904. Quarto, pp. 1-513, 43 plates, and 54 figures. Price $1.75.

Folio No. 62, of the Geological Atlas of the United States: "Menominee special Folio," by C. R. Van Hise and W. S. Bayley, U. S. Geological Survey, Washington, 1900. pp. 1-14. 2 maps. Price 25 cts.

These reports may be obtained at the prices stated, by addressing the Director, U. S. Geological Survey, Washington, D. C. These reports contain full abstracts of the work of this survey under Rominger, C. E. Wright and Wadsworth, which are now mainly out of print.

[2] In view of Russell's decease, I did not feel at liberty to change the use of his term. Algonkian. In this report, however, it is equivalent to the term Huronian, as used by previous writers, and the State Survey.—Lane.

These rocks are among the oldest on the earth of which a knowledge has been obtained, and are designated by certain geologists as being of Archean age. They consist chiefly of material that was once in a fused condition or a magma, which, on cooling, formed igneous rocks. But the original rocks have been greatly altered on account of the passage through them of water which produced chemical changes, and by heat and pressure, accompanied in part by movements in the material; that is, *metamorphism* has occurred. In part the present gneisses, schists, etc., may have been sedimentary deposits, of the nature of mud and sand, and later metamorphosed, but after intense metamorphism has occurred, it is difficult to determine what the previous state of a terrane may have been. In many instances the rocks have been intensely folded, owing to movements that have affected them, and are traversed by dikes of igneous rock, consisting of magmas which were forced into fissures after the receiving rocks attained their present condition.

The Basement Complex has no definite lower limit, but is supposed to merge by insensible gradations with the highly heated material forming the vast centro-sphere of the earth. Its upper limit in Northern Michigan is usually well defined, by an unconformable contact with later and less completely changed sedimentary beds, but in other regions rocks of the same character merge by insensible gradations with less metamorphosed sedimentary formations, and the surface of demarcation is indefinite.

Several widely divergent views have been advanced in reference to the mode of origin of the Basement Complex, but the one perhaps most generally accepted has been summarily stated by Van Hise as follows: "The Archean [Basement Complex] is igneous and represents a part of the original crust of the earth or its downward crystallization." But this view, like most other related explanations, is based on the assumption that the earth has cooled from a state of fusion so as to form a surface crust. With the substitution of the planetesimal hypothesis in the place of the nebular hypothesis to account for the origin of the earth, however, our ideas concerning the history of the Basement Complex must necessarily be revised. Under the planetesimal hypothesis, the earth is supposed to have been formed by the coming together of cold, solid masses of matter, like the meteors that reach the earth at the present time, which, previous to their aggregation, moved independently through space. With this mode of origin the earth's surface may never have been highly heated, and a crystalline outer crust not formed. The present heat of the interior of the earth as explained by T. C. Chamberlin, the author of the planetesimal hypothesis, is due to compression, and movements produced by gravitation as the planet grew in size. Beginning with a solid earth with a cool, rigid surface, an explanation of the crystalline or metamorphosed condition of the more ancient rocks near the surface, may be due to their having been depressed, owing to movements of the material forming the earth's outer portion, and the deposition of sediments, until they became highly heated, owing to the conduction outward of heat from the earth's interior. Under such conditions, rocks formed at the surface, owing to the arrival of meteorites or produced by the processes of erosion and deposition, might be metamorphosed and recrystallized in the various ways known to produce such changes. Not only the earlier sedimentary beds and their associated igneous intrusions, might be metamorphosed in the manner suggested, but formations of any age and of any character may have been altered in a similar manner.

This view of the origin of the Basement Complex seems to satisfy such tests as can be legitimately applied, and explains why the upper limit of the metamorphic rocks may be at any horizon in the geological succession, down to within the Tertiary division of geological history.

All explanations of the origin of metamorphosed rocks agree in the conclusion that the changes which gave them their crystalline structure, took place at a depth of at least several thousand feet in the earth. Where such rocks now form a part of the earth's surface, it is evident that upheaval and deep denudation has occurred. In the Menominee region the rocks of the Basement Complex were upraised until they stood above sea level, and deeply eroded before the next younger rocks of the region, i. e., the Algonkian [Huronian] terranes, or the iron-bearing formations, were deposited.

Between these two great systems of rocks there is an unconformity, which records a long interval during which, so far as the records show, no sediments were deposited in the region under consideration.

The great antiquity of the Basement Complex in Michigan, is indicated by the fact that sediments deposited elsewhere during the next succeeding Algonkian era, contain the oldest records of life of which we have definite evidence. Since the crystalline rocks referred to, were upheaved and eroded, essentially all recognizable sedimentary rocks thus far discovered, with their records of many successive floras and faunas, have been laid down. Not only do the hills of Michigan, composed of the crystalline rock in question, carry one back in fancy to beyond the beginning of what may be termed recorded geological history—the records being the stratified rocks and the fossils they contain—but the hills themselves, as topographic forms, are also of vast antiquity, as will be explained in advance, under the title "topography of the hard-rock surface."

*Algonkian* [Huronian] *System:* The formations next younger than the Basement Complex, in the Menominee region, includes the sedimentary beds and associated igneous terranes, which were deposited during the Algonkian period of the earth's history, so named after the Indian tribe which inhabited, and still occupies in part, the region where the rocks of this period form the surface.

The Algonkian system includes the iron-bearing formations, typically displayed about Waucedah, Vulcan, Norway, Iron Mountain, etc., in the Menominee iron district, and about Metropolitan, Crystal Falls, Mansfield, Amasa, Iron River, etc., in the neighboring iron districts. The rocks consist of definitely stratified quartzite, dolomite, slate, etc., and are clearly of sedimentary origin, although at present somewhat metamorphosed.

The Algonkian rocks in the Menominee iron district, as determined by Van Hise and Bayley, have a thickness of from 3,650 to 6,400 feet.

In the Crystal Falls district, as shown by J. M. Clements and others, they have a still greater vertical extent, but include a far greater proportion of igneous material. In each district, several well-defined subdivisions of the system have been recognized, separated by unconformities which record times of upheaval and erosion. Several of the more important members of the system, such as the Sturgeon quartzite, Randville dolomite, Vulcan formation, Hanbury slate, etc., have names which refer to typical localities at which the several divisions are well exposed.

From an economic point of view, the one prominent fact concerning the Algonkian rocks in Northern Michigan, is that they contain all of the great iron deposits of that region. From an educational point of view, however, the interesting records they contain are numerous and varied. A few salient facts in this connection are: The rocks are well stratified and consist of sedimentary beds, such as gravel, sand, clays, calcareous muds, etc., now hardened, cemented, and otherwise changed, so as to form conglomerate quartzite, shale, dolomite, etc. The lowest members in the series rest unconformably on the eroded surface of the underlying Basement Complex. In other words, the rocks composing the Basement Complex had been crystallized, upraised above sea level, and deeply eroded before the waters of the Algonkian ocean, owing to their having been again depressed below sea level, advanced over them. The Algonkian rocks, originally essentially horizontal sheets of sediment, are now highly inclined and in part occupy vertical positions. Their deformation was accompanied by folding and also by breaking and faulting. After they had been crushed into a series of great folds, and raised above sea level, the land thus formed was deeply eroded, and a plane produced. During the process of erosion the rocks were weathered and water passing down along the strata dissolved the iron they contained, and in part redeposited it, thus enriching the portion of the iron-bearing beds which were below the zone of weathering and leading to the concentration of iron ores. The long period of erosion, during which the Algonkian rocks were planed away nearly to sea level, was terminated by a movement in the earth's crust, which depressed the Menominee region, in common with a vast area of which it formed a part, and permitted the ocean once more to advance over it. This submergence occurred during the Cambrian period of geological history, and the first sheet of sediment laid down in the ocean waters, unconformably on the eroded surface of the previous land, is known as the Potsdam sandstone.

*Paleozoic Systems:* The rocks formed during the portion of the earth's history immediately succeeding the Algonkian period, constitute the Paleozoic system, and in the Menominee region include the Potsdam sandstone, the Calciferous cherty limestone, and the Trenton limestone.

The Potsdam sandstone is represented by brown and red, but in part white, sandstone of the Lake Superior region, and is largely used for building purposes. About Waucedah, Norway and Iron Mountain it forms the summit portions of prominent hills, as, for example, Brier and Iron hills, where it rests in a nearly horizontal position on the eroded and truncated edges of the steeply inclined strata of the iron-bearing formations. It also outcrops at White Rapids in Menominee

River, and, passing beneath the later sheets of sediment, principally limestone, with a gentle downward inclination to the southeast, underlies the whole of Menominee County. Its thickness in Brier Hill, near Norway, is about 150 feet, and at the shore of Green Bay, as shown by the records of dug wells, it is approximately 166 feet thick and its surface over 550 feet below the surface of Lake Michigan.

Resting conformably on the Potsdam sandstone near Iron Mountain, Norway and Waucedah are remnants of a sheet of silicious, magnesian limestone or dolomite, which, like the sandstone beneath, dips to the southeast at a gentle angle, and, to the east of Hermansville, passes beneath the next succeeding sheet of marine sediment. On account of the exposure of the Calciferous near Hermansville, the portion of the series present in the Menominee region has been named the Hermansville limestone.[1] Its maximum thickness is reported to be about 100 feet, but in the several exposures about Norway, Iron Mountain, etc., erosion has removed its upper portion.

Beginning near Hermansville, and extending east, and forming the surface portion of the hard rocks beneath the glacial drift, etc., is the Trenton limestone, which underlies nearly the whole of Menominee County. Its maximum thickness, where not eroded is (including the Galena) about 300 feet,[2] and like the immediately underlying beds, it dips gently to the southeast.

The Potsdam, Calciferous and Trenton series furnish a record of submergence and of the advance westward of the Paleozoic ocean over a previous land area. The first sheet of sediment laid down consists of sand derived from the waste of the land to the west and north. The next succeeding sheet of sediment formed when the subsidence became greater, is largely calcareous but contains sand grains and much silica precipitate in openings after the rock became compacted. The presence of sand in the highly calcareous material indicate that the margin of the land, although distant, was not so far removed from the localities where the ocean sediment was principally of organic origin, but that the currents brought some sand grains to it. During the deposition of the Trenton limestone, subsidence had progressed so that the margin of the land was far distant and only calcareous deposits derived from the life in the waters settled on the bottom.

The widely extended downward movement of the earth's crust just referred to, which permitted of the deposition of extensive sheets of marine sediments in a nearly horizontal position, was followed near the close of the Paleozoic era, by an upward movement which raised the beds above the sea and exposed them to the erosive agencies of the air. The center of the uplifted area was to the northwest of the Menominee region. During the time this upward movement occurred to the northwest, the region to the southeast, involving the whole of what is now Southern Michigan, and a wide extent of territory about its borders, continued to subside.[3] The results of the change from a region of upheaval to the northwest, to a region of subsidence to the southeast, becomes manifest in the vicinity of Waucedah. To the northwest of that locality, the rocks were raised higher than to the southeast, and in consequence were more intensely eroded.

---

[1] Bayley, W. S. "The Menominee iron-bearing district of Michigan," Monograph of the U. S. Geological Survey, Vol. XLVI. Washington, D. C. 1904, pp. 31, 494.

[2] See annual report of the Geological Survey of Michigan, for 1903, pp. 126–136.

[3] Some account of the downward movement in the region now occupied by Southern Michigan, which permitted of the accumulation of thick sheets of Paleozoic sediments, and its influence on industrial development in recent years, may be found in the report of the State Geologist of Michigan for 1904, pp. 42–57.

Where the elevation was greatest, the Paleozoic sediments have been eroded away, once more exposing the underlying Algonkian rocks, or the still older Basement Complex, but where the elevation was less, as to the east of Waucedah, the Paleozoic sediments still persist. Along the border, between these two regions, outlying remnants of the Paleozoic rocks are present, as in the hills between Waucedah and Menominee River to the west of Iron Mountain.

*Fossils:* As stated on a previous page, no direct evidences of life have been found in the Basement Complex. It does not follow from this, however, that life was not present on the earth during the time the rocks in question were formed. Intense metamorphism has affected the rocks referred to, and even if they are in part of sedimentary origin, and formerly contained fossils, all evidence favoring such a conclusion has been obliterated.

In the Algonkian rocks, in the Menominee region, obscure and as it seems doubtful evidence of the presence of footprints of crustaceans, and equally indefinite impressions thought to represent plants, have been obtained.[1] Rocks deposited during the same period of the earth's history in other regions, however, have yielded evidence that an extensive and varied fauna existed previous to the Cambrian period. The oldest record of life as yet discovered in the rocks of Michigan, concerning the true organic nature of which there is no question, have been obtained in the Potsdam sandstone. These records, however, are meager, and consist of fragments of the hard parts of crustaceans (Trilobites), and the shells of mollusk-like animals (Brachiopods), obtained from the brown sandstone at Iron Mountain, referred by Walcott to the Ptychaspis zone.

Fossils are present in the Calciferous rocks near Hermansville, and at certain localities the Trenton limestone is highly fossiliferous.[2]

### *Topography of the Hard Rock Surface.*

So far as the surface features of the Menominee region are concerned, the most important conclusion reached by the several geologists who have made critical studies of the iron-bearing formations during recent years, relate to the preservation to the present day, of the relief of the surface of the Basement Complex and Algonkian terranes, as it existed in pre-Potsdam times. This interesting result came about owing to the deposition of the Potsdam sandstone on the roughened surface of a preexisting land, thus preserving it until it was re-exposed owing to upheaval and the removal by erosion of its protective covering.

"The pre-Cambrian topography," as stated by Bayley,[3] "though in the main similar to that of the present time, nevertheless differed from it in some minor respects. The hills of the earlier period were not so lofty as the ones now existing, but they were sharper and more rugged. Moreover both hills and valleys were cut by deep and narrow gorges, which have been preserved to us by sandstone filling. The Cuff mine, for example, is situated at the top of an ancient north-facing bluff, for the sandstone, which forms a thin covering over the surface at the shaft, is found again at a considerable depth at the north ends of the mine levels. Prospect Bluff was narrower in these earlier times. The north side sloped steeply and its apex was sharp. A deep gorge crossed Hughitt Bluff on the property of the Pewabic mine. North of the Quinnesec mine, well up on the slope of a high hill, was formerly a deep basin, in which were accumulated boulders of ore and hematite sand worn from shores carved in Huronian [Algonkian] rocks. Finally, drill borings have shown that a deep narrow channel crossed the plain east of the Norway mine."

---

[1] Gresley, W. S., Transactions of the American Institute of Mining Engineers, Vol. 26, 1872, pp. 527-534.

[2] Geology of the Lake Superior Land District by Foster and Whitney, Part II; also, report of C. Rominger, Geological Survey of Michigan, Vol I. Part III.

[3] Bayley, W. S., U. S. Geological Survey, Monograph V. Vol. XLVI, p. 129.

The uncovering of a long-buried land surface, or a fossil landscape, as it may be termed, is a unique but not unprecedented event in the physiography of the earth.

In the Menominee region, as the evidence seems clearly to prove, the present relief of the surface where rocks of the Basement Complex and of Algonkian age are exposed, together with their numerous igneous intrusions, etc., is essentially the same as when the Cambrian sea advanced over the region and laid down the Potsdam sandstone. How widely this pre-Potsdam land surface is now exposed to view is not safe to state with assurance, but the evidence indicates that throughout much if not all of the western portion of the Northern Peninsula of Michigan, and large portions of adjacent states, where pre-Cambrian rocks form the surface, the pre-Potsdam topography is present. The chief exceptions occur where the relief of the surface is due to the work of glaciers and of the streams flowing from them and where modern streams have excavated channels or spread out sediments.

The hills of quartzite, gneiss, schist, etc., have a systematic relation, in reference to the elevation of their summits, and form points in seemingly regularly sloping plains. Near Loretto the hills referred to rise to an elevation of about 1,000 feet; to the north of Lake Fumée, 1,200, and near Crystal Falls, some thirty or forty miles farther west, are 1,400 to 1,600 feet above sea level. These measures represent the net elevation or the algebraic sum of all up and down movements that have affected the region since the plain referred to was produced, less a small measure of erosion. The hill tops represent approximately the present position of the plain of erosion to which the rocks were reduced previous to the deposition of the Potsdam sandstone.

The surface of the pre-Potsdam land, as stated in the quotation presented above, is not a smooth plain, but moderately rough and diversified by hills and valleys. The roughness seems to indicate that the old land, after being worn down to a plain approximately at sea level, was upraised a few hundred feet and its surface weathered and eroded before the succeeding submergence. Over this irregular surface the Cambrian sea advanced and deposited the Potsdam sandstone. As already stated, the pre-Potsdam land is now in part re-exposed, owing to its having been elevated above its original position and its protecting cover eroded away, but it still retains essentially the form imparted to it previous to the Cambrian period.

The erosion which removed the Potsdam sandstone from the western portion of the Menominee region, probably began after the close of the Paleozoic era, and continued to the present day. A submergence of the region perhaps occurred during the Cretaceous period, but no conclusive evidence in this connection has been obtained:

In the region to the eastward of Waucedah, where the Potsdam sandstone and later formations still remain, the hard-rock surface has a gentle downward inclination towards the southeast, but does not furnish evidence that it was roughened by erosion previous to the Glacial epoch. It is nearly a flat plain and controls the surface topography as efficiently as does the rough surface of the older rocks in the topographic province to the northwest.

The hard-rock surface in the Menominee region on which the glaciers of the Glacial epoch advanced, as already stated, presented two somewhat sharply contrasted portions: 1st, a plain seemingly without eminences, which extended from the border of the Lake Michigan basin westward to about the longitude of Waucedah, and 2nd, the hilly region to the west of Waucedah, consisting principally of rocks of the Basement Complex and the Algonkian system.

As will be shown later, the hard-rock surface was but slightly modified, owing to the abrasion of the glaciers which advanced over it, but as the ice melted, was left with a nearly continuous covering of glacial and glacio-fluvial deposits.

### *Surface Geology.*[1]

While the term "hard-rock geology" and "surface geology" are somewhat indefinite, the differences between the formations referred to are well marked and distinct. The former term includes the rocks which, in general, have become more or less compact on account of pressure, cementation, etc., and are of older date than the Pleistocene division of geological history; and the latter term is used to indicate such superficial material as sand, gravel, clay, glacial till, etc., which, in general, has not been notably compacted since its deposition, and is Pleistocene or younger in age. The contact between Pleistocene and earlier terranes is always an unconformity of fully as much importance as any other similar break in geological history.

The surface sheet of unconsolidated debris in the Menominee region, is composed almost entirely of material deposited by former glaciers, or by the streams flowing from them, and hence the study of the surface geology, deals principally with the history of the Glacial epoch.

*Classification of Glacial Records:* The more common records made on the surface of the land during the Glacial epoch, may be classified as follows:

---

[1] The record here presented concerning the surface geology of the Menominee region, is a continuation of an account given of the glaciation of a part of Northern Michigan, published in the Annual Report of the State Geologist of Michigan for 1904, pp. 57–150.

| | |
|---|---|
| Glacial corrasion. | Smoothed, planed, polished and striated or grooved hard-rock surfaces, which also, at times, bear tapering ridges on the lee side (in reference to ice motion) of hard nodules imbedded in softer material, as well as chatter marks, crescentic cracks, etc. Roughened hard-rock surfaces due to the removal of blocks of rocks by glaciers, i. e., "glacier plucking." Pre-Glacial or hard-rock hills rounded by ice abrasion or steepened and roughened by ice plucking. Glacial erosion of previously deposited till, sometimes produces smooth, oval hills termed drumlins, with equally smooth concave troughs or grooves between them. |
| Glacial deposition. | Till consisting usually of sandy and stony clay, boulders, moraines of various kinds, and as claimed by certain authors, drumlins similar to those produced by glacial erosion. |
| Glacio-fluvial corrasion. | Canyons, gorges and valleys excavated by glacial streams. |
| Glacio-fluvial deposition. | Ridges of sand and gravel termed eskers. Irregular hills and knolls of the same kind of material, known as kames, and sand and gravel plains formed by glacial streams. |

### *Records of Glacial Abrasion.*

At many localities in the portion of Michigan represented on the map forming Plate III, the surface of the hard rock is smoothed, striated and bears other records of the fact that glaciers have passed over it. From this and other evidence it has been demonstrated that Michigan in common with approximately the northern half of North America was formerly covered by continental ice sheets of the same nature as the one beneath which Greenland is now buried.

*Striæ:* The localities at which the direction of ice movements, as recorded by scratches and grooves on rock surfaces, was definitely noted, are tabulated below. The bearings given are compass readings, and no corrections have been applied for the normal variation of the compass (about three degrees east of north), or for local magnetic attraction, which is considerable at certain localities where the rocks of the Basement Complex and the Algonkian system are near the surface.

### *Measurements of the Direction of Striæ.*

(The compass readings as stated, indicate the direction from which the ice came.)

| Locality. | Character of Rock. | Bearings of Striae. |
|---|---|---|
| Nathan, Menominee county. Two to three miles south of T. 38 W., R. 28 E., sections Nos. 26 and 35. | Limestone. | N. 67° E |
| | “ | N. 45° E. |
| | “ | N. 60° E. |
| | “ | N. 61° E. |
| | “ | N. 60° E. |
| | “ | (Dominant direction N. 60° E.) |
| Spalding, Menominee county, one mile east of Ford river, Delta county. | Limestone. | N. 38° E. |
| | “ Strong series | N. 17° E. |
| | Weak earlier series | E. or W. |
| Hermansville, Menominee county, T. 38 W., R. 27 E., N. E. ¼ of sec. 11. | Limestone | N. 58° E. |
| Little Quinnesec Falls, Dickinson county. | Schist | N. 80° E. |
| Loretto, Dickinson county, one mile north of. | Quartzite. | N. 73° E. |
| | “ | N. 88° E. |
| One half mile south of Metropolitan, Dickinson county. | Diorite. | N. 70° E. |
| Vita, 2½ miles S. W. of Waucedah, Dickinson county. | Slate. | N. 82° E. |
| Norway, Dickinson county. | Sandstone. | S. 70° E. |
| | “ | S. 80° E. |
| Lower Twin Falls, Dickinson county. | Schist. | N. 82° E. |
| | “ | N. 75° E. |
| | “ | N. 85° E. |
| | | (Dominant direction N. 80-85° E.) |
| Iron Mountain, at Traders' Mine. | Slate. (Local attraction.) About | N. 60° E. |
| Camp 6, 1½ miles north of Mansfield, Iron county. | Quartzite. | N. 80° E. |
| | Slate. | N. 90° E. |

| Locality. | Character of Rock. | Bearings of Striae. |
|---|---|---|
| Crystal Falls, Iron county, ½ to two miles west of. | Schist. | N. 16–18° E. |
| | " | N. 20° E. |
| | " | N. 47° E. |

(Two series of striæ, the older and principal series, N. 18° E., the younger, N. 47° E.)

| Locality. | Character of Rock. | Bearings of Striae. |
|---|---|---|
| Amasa, Iron county. | Schist. | N. 62° E. |
| | " | N. 16° E. |
| | " | N. 25° E. |
| Amasa, 1 mile south of. | Schist. | N. 16–25° E. |
| Amasa, ¼ mile north of. | Schist. | N. 42° E. |
| | " | N. 47° E. |
| Balsam, Iron county, 1¼ miles south of. | Schist. | N. 22° E. |

The principal direction of ice movement at each of the localities mentioned above, is represented by an arrow on the map forming Plate III. As an inspection of the map will serve to show, the ice advanced from the northeast and as it moved over the land tended to change its direction of flow to an approximately east and west direction. The striæ observed were made by the last or Wisconsin ice sheet of the Glacial epoch, it is presumed, and pertain to the western portion of an ice lobe which had its position determined by the depression now occupied by the waters of Green Bay, as was demonstrated several years since by T. C. Chamberlin.[1]

In generalizing in reference to the direction of ice motion from the striæ left on rock surfaces, allowance should be made for the fact that irregularities of the surface over which the ice passed, influenced its basal currents, as is manifest in the hilly region about Iron Mountain, Crystal Falls, etc., where the striæ on the hill tops frequently differ in direction from those on hill sides and in valleys. It should also be remembered that striæ made during an early ice advance may be preserved, owing to the protection afforded by deposits laid down on the glaciated surface, and be closely associated with similar markings produced during a later ice invasion.

*Crescentic Cracks:* Concentrically arranged cracks are sometimes abundant on glaciated surfaces, as has been described by T. C. Chamberlin[2] and others, and are among the characteristic records which glaciers leave on melting. The cracks referred to occur most frequently on plane, glaciated surfaces, particularly of brittle rock, and form concentric series from a few inches to a foot or more in length. The individual cracks are from a fraction of an inch to several inches apart, and vary in length up to eight, ten or more inches. At times, one series of cracks overlaps another series, and the surface common to the two series, is broken into lozenge-shaped surfaces bounded on each side by a fracture. The depth of the cracks in the larger examples, is sometimes from two to three inches. In the case of a specimen of glaciated quartzite, referred to below, from near Loretto, cracks about two inches in length penetrate the rock to the depth of from half an inch to nearly an inch.

---

[1] "Terminal moraine of the second Glacial epoch," in third annual report of the U. S. Geological Survey, Washington, 1883, pp. 291-402; see maps forming Plates XXVIII and XXIX.

[2] "The rock-scorings by the great ice invasion," in seventh annual report of the director of the U. S. Geological Survey, Washington, 1888, pp. 221-222.

Cracks of the nature just noted are common on the surface of the prominent ridge of white quartzite which passes about one mile north of Loretto, two and one-half miles north of Norway, etc., and trends about northwest. The joint faces present on the surface of the ridge, have, in many instances, been well striated, and are also covered by numerous sets of crescentic cracks. A photograph of a portion of such a surface is reproduced on Plate IVA, and shows several sets of crescentic cracks, as well as parallel striæ. The specimen is a part of a joint-face, which is inclined at an angle of 36 to 37°, and faces east. The ice advanced from the east and ascended the slope. The bearings of the striæ vary but a degree or two from true east. In this and numerous other instances observed on the quartzite ridge referred to, the crescentic cracks are concave towards the direction from which the ice came. The direction of ice motion is shown not only by the striæ, but by knobs and trains, rounded shoulders of ledges that face east, the irregular surfaces and edges of similar ledges facing west, are still other evidences.

In some instances curved cracks similar to those described above, occur in the glaciated surface of the quartzite, which present their convex sides to the direction from which the ice came, but these, so far as observed, do not occur in definite series. The evidence seems to show, as has been explained by Chamberlin, that crescentic cracks may generally be accepted as evidences of the direction of flow of the ice which produced them. Exceptions occur, however, and other similar fractures, but with a different curvature to simulate those under consideration.[1]

Crescentic cracks have not been observed in the Menominee region except on the glaciated surfaces of quartzite. They are abundant also in quartzite in other regions, and occur less commonly and less well-defined, in certain glacial limestones. The conditions leading to their formation appears to be inherent in the nature of the rocks over which glaciers pass, and not determined by local peculiarities of the glaciers themselves. The rocks, so far as known, in which they are best displayed are quartzite and compact fine grained limestone. These rocks break readily on their edges when sharply struck, and may be said to be brittle.

The precise manner in which the passage of a glacier over a rock surface causes it to become fractured in the manner noted above, is not known. The conditions present, however, are, heavy pressure of the moving ice and the presence of stones and boulders in its basal portion, and in contrast with the rock beneath. As the stones and boulders are forced along by the ice, the friction on the rock-floor is concentrated where the larger fragments are present. An inspection of glaciated rock-surfaces bearing crescentic cracks and striæ, renders it apparent that stones of various sizes were instrumental in producing the fractures. This is indicated not only by variations in strength, depth, etc., of the striæ, but by the fact that the larger cracks as a rule are less sharply curved than the shorter ones—although the shorter cracks are at times nearly straight—and are more widely spaced, and also, in general, form longer series. Judging from the conditions present beneath glaciers and the nature of the records, it appears that the short crescentic cracks are produced by the forcing along of pebbles or other small rock fragments, while the larger cracks indicate the passage of cobbles or large boulders.

---

[1] In my previous paper (Report of the state board of geological survey of Michigan for 1904, p. 65) I made the statement that certain crescentic cracks near Garden, "present their convex sides to the northwest, the direction from which the ice came." This may be an error of record, or possibly the cracks were made by ice which flowed northwest from the Lake Michigan basin. It is to be borne in mind, however, that two series of glacial records may be made on the same surface, and also that two sets of crescentic cracks, or one set in company with striae made by ice coming from some other direction, might occur together.

While no satisfactory hypothesis as to the origin of crescentic cracks has been published, I am indebted to G. K. Gilbert for the suggestion that they owe their origin to the production of an elastic wave in the rock over which pebbles and boulders were forced along under heavy pressure. That is, a stone carried forward under such conditions, would tend to compress the rock over which it passed, at its front and to exert a pull on the rock in its rear. The forward compression would tend to cause an elevation of the surface of the nature of a wave, and the pull as the stone advanced, would tend to produce a trough or depression. In either case if the elastic limit of the rock was exceeded, fracture would result. In the case of a nearly spherical boulder, the cracks produced at its front should be convex in the direction the boulder advanced, and those originating in its rear should be concave in the same direction. But as it seems, the tension in the rear of an advancing stone has a greater tendency to produce ruptures than the accompanying wave of compression in its front, and the resulting fractures as observation indicates, are most commonly concave in the direction the ice advanced.

This possible explanation seems to account not only for the characteristic shapes of the cracks under consideration, and the manner in which they occur in well-defined series, but also from the more common occurrence of cracks concave in the direction from which the ice advanced, than of cracks convex in that direction. Another fact to be noted in this connection is, that the crescentic cracks are most frequently from three to about six inches in length, although both longer and shorter ones do occur, and are abundant in certain instances. The greater prevalence, however, of cracks of what may be termed an intermediate size, suggests that there is both an upper and lower limit to the size of stones which, under like conditions of motion, pressure, etc., will cause fractures in the rocks, over which they pass. Above a certain limit in size the stones may be considered as presenting a broad surface of contact, thus distributing the pressure, while small fragments failed to localize enough force to break the rock on which they rested.

In brief, such information as is in hand concerning the mode of origin of crescentic cracks, seems to indicate that they are produced most commonly by the frictional pull in the rear of stones set in the bottoms of glaciers, and forced along under great pressure. The cracks are formed particularly in brittle rocks, as a stone passes, and extend at right angles to its direction of motion, but curve forward from the center of origin.

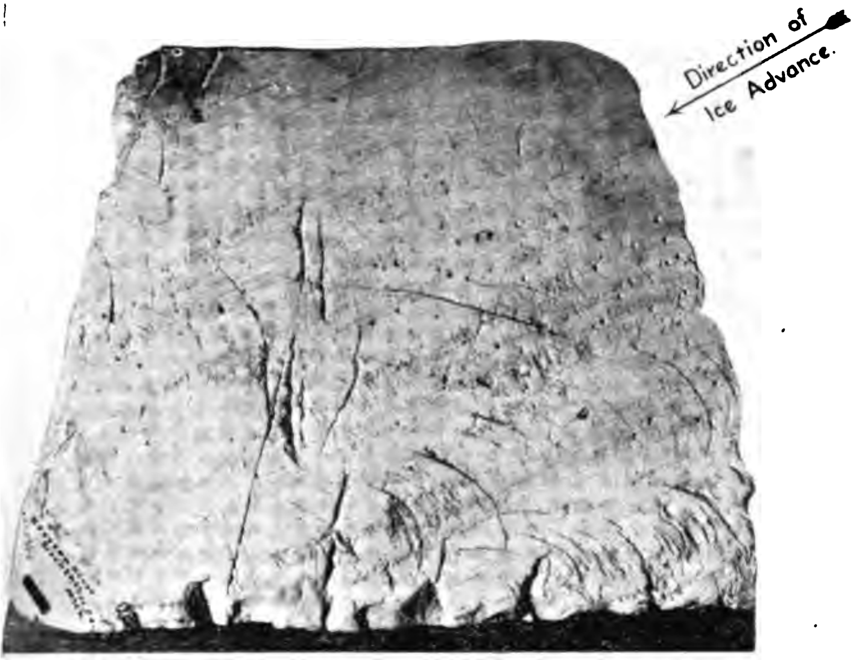
*Roughened Rock-surfaces:* Smoothed and rounded rock-surfaces occur so frequently in regions formerly occupied by glaciers, that they have come to be recognized as the characteristic products of glacial abrasion. The fact should be recognized, however, that glaciers, under certain conditions, roughen the surface of rocks over which they pass. These opposite results from the action of the same agency, are dependent on the nature of the rock that is subjected to abrasion. The conditions present in rocks which favor the smoothing of their surface and the rounding of elevations, under glacial abrasion, are a high degree of compactness, hardness, massiveness and fineness of grain. The conditions which favor the production of a rough surface, are principally, the presence of fractures, particularly joints, and steep inclination of planes of division such as accompany lamination, schistosity, etc.

The influence of joints in producing rough surfaces under the abrading influences of a glacier, is well shown on the lee side of certain of the quartzite hills to the north of Norway, etc., where glacial plucking has occurred. In some instances, also, blocks bounded by joints were removed by the ice from the stoss or scour sides of the same hills. In this connection, persons visiting the hills referred to, should note that some of the smoothest and best striated surfaces are joint faces, which have been exposed by the plucking away of adjacent blocks, and but slightly affected by glacial abrasion.

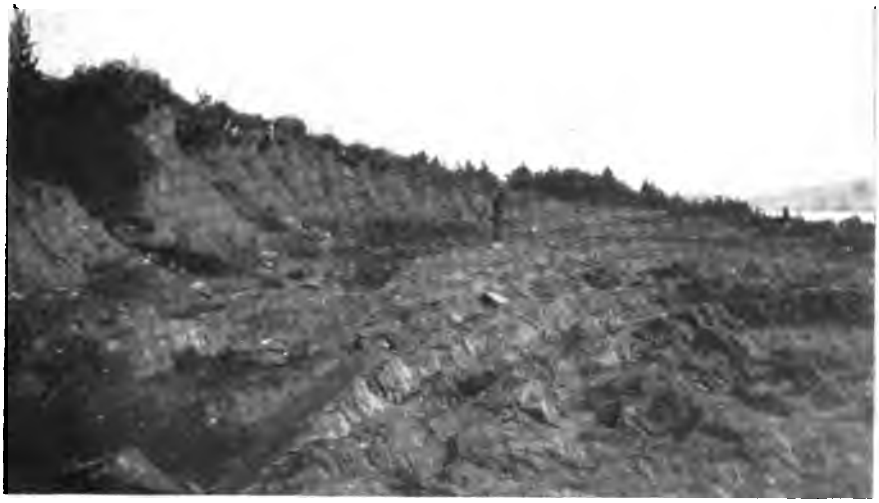
Illustrations of the manner in which glaciers sometimes roughen the surface of an outcrop in which the bedding planes are steeply inclined, are furnished at a number of the openings made for mining purposes, between Waucedah and Iron Mountain. In several of these instances the strata are nearly or quite vertical and were crossed by the ice-sheets at a high angle with the strike. Under these conditions, especially when the strata are thinly laminated slates, the rock is crushed and fragments plucked away leaving a rough angular surface. An example of a nearly flat surface, roughened in this manner, is presented on Plate IVB, which shows a portion of the outcrop of the ferruginous slate at the Traders' Mine, near Iron Mountain, from which a layer of till, about 12 feet thick, has been artificially removed. In this and other similar instances, the edges of hard cherty layers are smoothed and striated, while the edges of less rigid, and easily cleaved slate are crushed down in the direction the ice flowed. This crushing of the edges of weak laminated strata, causes them to resemble the edge of a book which has been sharply bent, except that the rock-leaves are frequently cracked and broken.

*Changes in Hard-rock Topography:* The records made by glaciers, briefly considered above, pertain to the surface features of hard-rocks when studied near at hand, but not as elements of a landscape. In their production, however, certain conspicuous changes in the relief of perhaps extensive areas are sometimes produced. Of the larger records of glacial abrasion only such are here cited as pertain to the Menominee region.

An ice sheet, in moving over a plane or nearly plane rock-surface, as is well known, tends to wear it away, but does not alter in a conspicuous manner its general topographic expression. An ice sheet in advancing



A.—CRESCENTIC CRACKS IN QUARTZITE.



B.—ROCK SURFACE ROUGHENED BY GLACIAL ABRASION.

over a rough rock-surface, however, abrades the sides of the elevations against which it impinges, i. e., the stoss or scoured side, and removes or plucks away loose rock fragments from the opposite or down-current side, i. e., the lee or plucked side.

The portion of Michigan under consideration, as has already been stated, presents two rather sharply contrasted divisions in reference to the topography of the hard-rock surface. East of Waucedah, where nearly horizontal sheets of Paleozoic sedimentary rocks occur, the hard-rock surface is nearly flat, and as seems probable had this characteristic before it was crossed by the ice sheets of the Glacial epoch; but to the west of Waucedah, the highly inclined Algonkian beds, and the schist, etc., of the Basement Complex with its numerous igneous intrusions, form conspicuous hills.

With these general features of the pre-glacial hard-rock surface in mind, a person familiar with the topographic changes produced by glacial erosion, would expect that the plain underlain by nearly horizontal rocks in the eastern portion of the field, would retain its pre-glacial monotony of surface, but that the irregularities in the western portion of the field would have been rubbed down, its eminences to a considerable extent removed, and such hills and bosses of rock as did survive, would present conspicuous contrasts between these stoss and lee sides. These expectations, however, were found on traversing the region to be fulfilled only in part.

The country occupied by nearly horizontal strata to the east of Waucedah, is still a plain, except for the glacial deposits laid down upon it, and the rocks wherever exposed reveal evidences of abrasion. The freshness of the striated surfaces, together with the absence of residual soils, etc., is evidence that a considerable thickness of the pre-glacial hard-rock surface has been removed. But how deeply the moving ice wore away the rocks, there are no means of determining.

In the hilly region to the west of Waucedah, it is evident that the glaciers either produced the present irregularities of the hard-rock surface, or failed to remove pre-existing elevations. As the hills and ridges are composed of resistant rock, and are adjacent to valleys which are underlain by less resistant rocks—that is, the relief is such as is produced by weathering, the action of streams, etc—and also because the elongated hills and ridges do not trend in the direction of former ice movements, but in many instances make a high angle with that direction, it must be concluded that the major features of the present hard-rock surface, were not produced by glacial abrasion, but are an inheritance from pre-glacial conditions. The glaciers passed over a conspicuously rough surface, and under the generally accepted view of the influence of a thick, moving ice-sheet on such a surface, should exhibit conspicuous evidence of ice erosion. One of the most surprising results of my examination, however, is the slight extent to which the relief bears evidence of having been shaped by the abrasive action of glaciers.

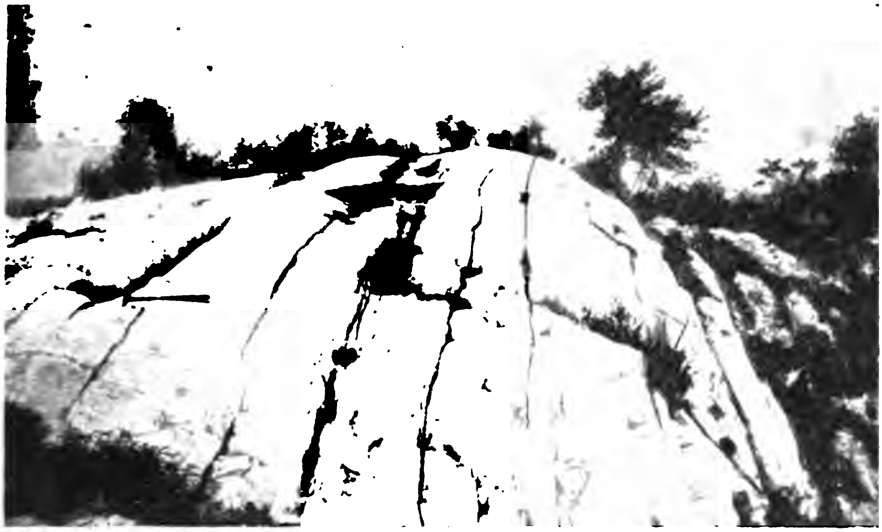
Favorable localities for studying the modifications of topography by glacial abrasion, are furnished by a prominent ridge of white quartzite to the north of Loretto. The ice crossed this ridge, as previously stated, with a direction of flow, as recorded by striæ, etc., of N. 73° to 88° E, that is, at an angle of from 35 to 45 degrees with its trend. The abrasion performed by the ice is clearly shown in the rounded and smoothed surfaces of the several hills forming the ridge, as is illustrated by the photograph reproduced on Plate V. In certain instances, also, the hills have smooth slopes facing the northeast, or their stoss sides, and abrupt and angular cliffs facing southwest, or their lee sides, but this relation is reversed in many instances, and a comparison of a large number of hills fails to show that cliffs with angular faces are more common on their southwest sides than when facing in the opposite direction.

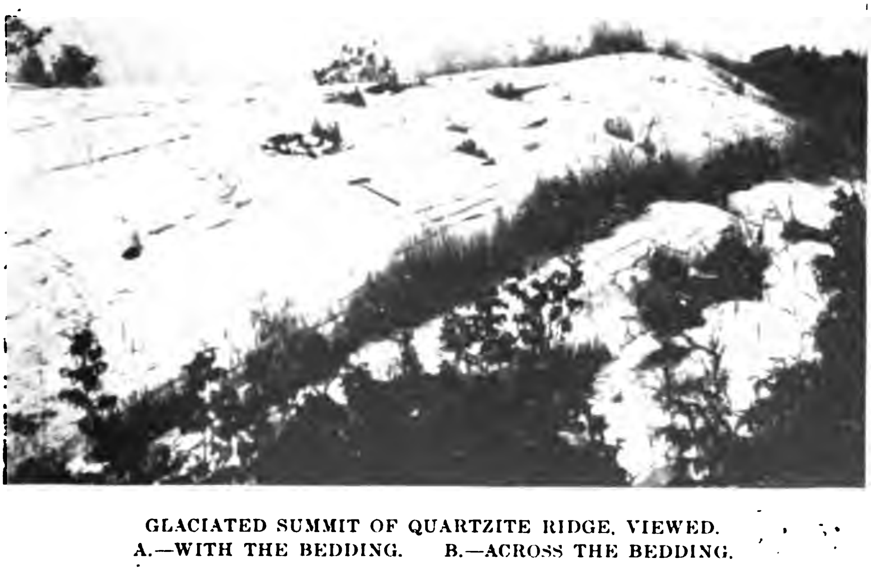
An example of a glaciated hill, which appears to present a stoss and a lee side, is furnished by a prominent boss of gneiss, situated about three miles northeast of Norway (T. 40, N., R. 29 W., near the center of Sec. 35). A picture of this hill looking N. 50° W., or nearly at right angles to the direction of former ice motion, is presented on Plate VIA, and shows the rounded contours of the side facing the northeast, i. e., the stoss side, and the precipitous character of the opposite or lee side. The stoss side has been strongly abraded, as is clearly shown by the smoothness of the rock-surface, and by striæ, etc., while the lee side presents steep slopes, on which there is but slight evidence of ice abrasion, but angular ledges, such as might result if the ice, as it flowed over and around the hill, had carried away blocks of stone bounded by joints or otherwise loosened.

While several hills in the Menominee region have shapes more or less similar to the one just referred to with their rounded and their angular sides similarly oriented, there are seemingly as many examples in which the steeper angular sides met the onset of the ice and the rounded sides face the opposite direction. Most commonly, however, there is no conspicuous difference or systematic arrangement, in the slope and character of the hill sides with reference to the direction of ice movement.

In certain instances where a gentle or rounded northeast or east slope does occur, associated with a precipitous escarpment facing in an opposite direction, the controlling conditions do not include glaciation. The bold hill, for example, between Norway and Loretto, has a steep escarpment at its western end, and slopes gently to the eastward. The trend of its longer axis is about N. 70° W. and glacial striæ at its western end bear N. 70° to 80° W. This approach to a coincidence between the trend of the hill and the direction of ice movement, suggests that the major features in the relief were produced by glacial abrasion. But the hill is capped with stratified Paleozoic sandstone and limestone, which have a gentle dip to the eastward, and as the bluff at its west end is formed of the broken edges of these strata, a cliff in about the position of the one that is present would be expected from the action of the normal agencies of erosion if glaciation had not occurred. It is important to note, however, that other hills in the same region, capped with similar stratified beds, as, for example, Iron Hill to the north of Norway, the bold hills near Iron Mountain, etc., in several instances, present their steeper and more rugged slopes to the westward. While there is no doubt but that the passing ice assisted in shaping the hills in question, its influence is not conspicuously shown.

Another test of the degree to which the hard-rock surface has been modified by ice, is furnished by the valley in which Mansfield is located. This valley, now occupied by Michigamme River, is less than half a





GLACIATED SUMMIT OF QUARTZITE RIDGE, VIEWED.
A.—WITH THE BEDDING. B.—ACROSS THE BEDDING.

TCU

mile wide, trends north and south, and has bold, well-defined borders of resistant rock, rising to a height of a hundred or more feet above its bottom. The direction of ice motion over the region, as abundantly recorded by striæ, etc., was from east to west. The striæ occur on the tops of the bordering hills, and also well down their sides, nearly to the level of the valley's floor, showing that the depression is not of post-glacial origin. It is safe to say that if the glaciers eroded the Mansfield region vigorously, the hills on the west side which met the onset of the ice, should be rounded, and present other features characteristic of the stoss side of glaciated hills, and that the eastern border of the valley should be abrupt, and furnish evidence of plucking, etc., as is the case of the lee side of rocky knobs which have been shaped by glacial abrasion. A careful inspection of the borders of the valley, however, from various points of view, and in varying degrees of illumination, failed to show that one border is noticeably different than the other, in so far as a possible modification of form by glaciers is concerned.

Not only does Mansfield valley fail to show differences in the way the former glaciers modified its borders, but there is an absence of evidence to show that the ice cut deeply into the rocks. The valley was in existence before the glaciers occupied the region, and is evidently due to stream erosion, for the reason that it is underlain by weak slates and other thin bedded layers in a vertical position, and bordered by much more resistant rocks, that is, occupies such a position as would result from stream adjustment. Then, too, the valley trends at a right angle to the direction of flow of the former glaciers, thus confirming the conclusion that it is not due to ice erosion.

The fact that the valley was in existence before the Glacial epoch, is seemingly not questionable, and the fact that it still exists, shows that the bordering uplands were not planed away by the ice so as to remove the depression that separated them. To what extent the crests of the bordering uplands were lowered by ice abrasion, cannot be determined, but judgment, based on the general relief of the region, and all other considerations that seem to have a bearing on the question, lead to the conclusion that only a very moderate amount, in fact but a few feet, of the surface of the uplands in excess of their weathered portions has been removed.

The absence of evidence of vigorous ice abrasion of the bluffs bordering Mansfield valley, is no less instructive than the fact that the valley was not deeply filled by glacial deposits. There is, it is true, a layer of till, a few feet thick, in its bottom and also many boulders, but no indication that the depression was ever deeply filled with such material. As the evidence reads, the valley was crossed at a right angle by a great ice sheet, but was neither obliterated by ice erosion, or deeply filled with glacially deposited debris. In fact, the pre-glacial topography seems to have undergone but slight modifications on account of abrasion or deposition, during the passage over it of the former ice sheets.

The importance of Mansfield valley as an index of the slight topographic changes an ice sheet may produce, will, perhaps, raise the question: was the depression, excavated by a stream during some inter-glacial interval, instead of being of truly pre-glacial origin? No positive reply can at present be given to this inquiry, as there is an absence of local evidence to show that more than one ice sheet occupied the immediate region. So far as general considerations point to a conclusion, however, the valley at Mansfield, underlain by weak rocks—like the hills of the entire Menominee region composed of resistant rocks—is to be classed as a pre-glacial topographic form.

Other evidence in reference to the small extent of glacial abrasion is furnished by the hills in the neighborhood of Mansfield and Crystal Falls. Rising above the surface sheet of loose material, in this region, there are a number of hills, ridges, and isolated bosses of resistant igneous rock,[1] which owe their prominence to differential erosion. The rocks composing them are more resistant, mainly on account of their hardness, than the surrounding rocks, and were left in relief as adjacent areas were lowered by weathering and erosion. The general character of the hard-rock topography is such as is known to result from the work of wind, streams, etc., on a surface composed principally of rocks less resistant than certain other rocks, mostly dikes, which occur in it. Knowing that this rough surface has been crossed by at least one ice sheet, and presumably by several such sheets, it is to be expected, in case glaciers habitually modify in a systematic manner, the hills and bosses of rock over which they pass, that evidence of ice erosion should be declared by the topography of the eminences in question.

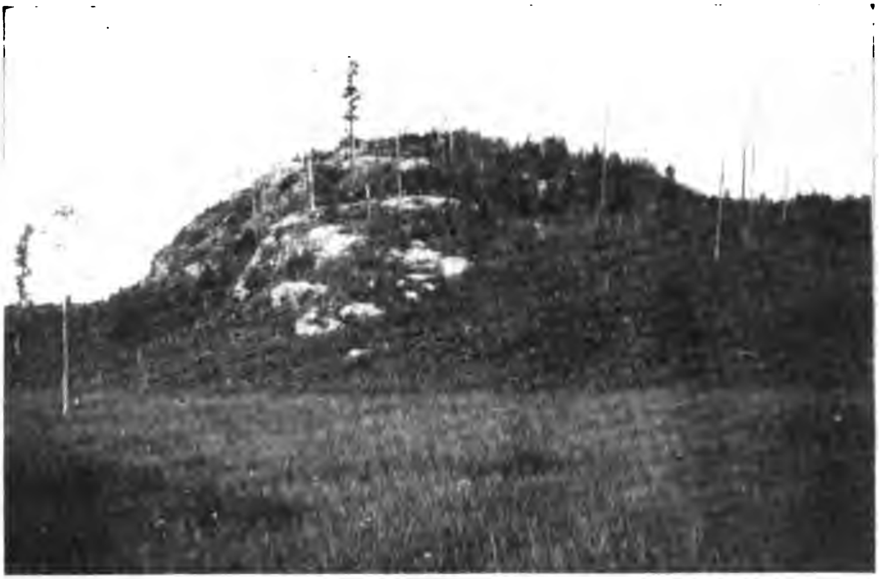
An examination of the hills and ridges about Mansfield and Crystal Falls, however, failed to show that they systematically or generally present gentle or rounded slopes in one direction, and precipitous or angular surfaces in an opposite direction, as is characteristic of glacial erosion in certain other regions. If a dozen or more hills are examined, it will be found that their steepest slopes face various points of the compass, and characteristically rounded slopes, such as give expression to the stoss sides of well-glaciated eminences, are absent. This generalization was found to be true in reference to the several isolated hills which rise through the extensive sand plains to the southeast of Crystal Falls, and in the case of ridges which trend approximately in the same direction as the flow of the former ice sheet, as shown by a prominent outcrop of dolerite, 3½ miles north of Crystal Falls, as well as by ridges which are aligned in a north and south direction or athwart the bearing of the glacial striæ on their sides and crests as in the case of the ridges of diorite at Mansfield. Not only do the shapes of the ridges, fail to reveal recognizable evidence of glacial abrasion, but the same is true of the subordinate elevation of which they are composed.

Briefly summarizing the conclusions just presented, it appears that throughout the Menominee region there is lack of evidence to show that glaciers have produced conspicuous changes in the relief or altered in a characteristic manner the profiles of the pre-glacial hills and ridges.

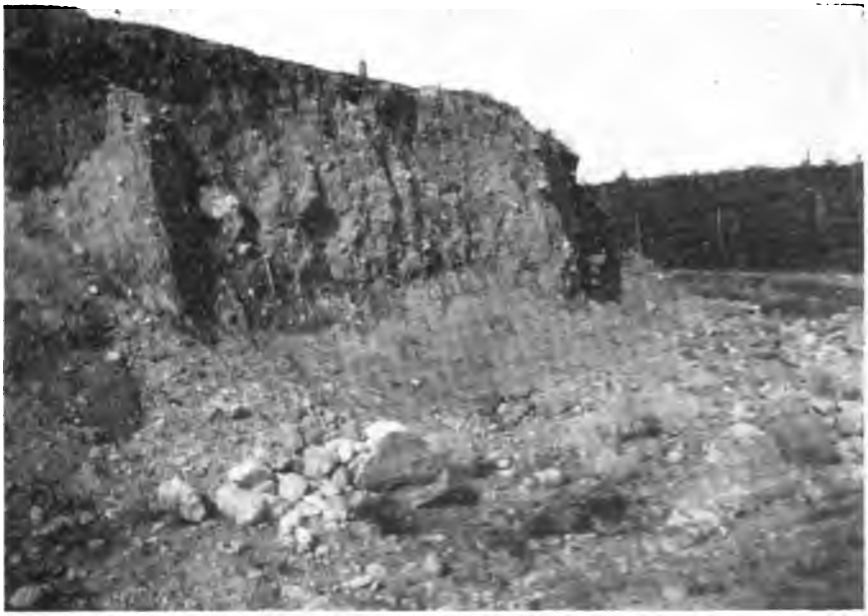
The evidence is such as to warrant the conclusion that glaciers passed over the land without deeply abrading it, unless the energy of the moving ice was to a great degree expended in removing Paleozoic formations which rested unconformably on the rough surface of the Basement Complex and Algonkian systems and their associated in-

---

[1] The isolated areas referred to, consist of altered diabase, gabbro, granite, etc., and are represented on the geological map accompanying Monograph No. XXXVI of the U. S. Geological Survey.



A.—GLACIATED HILL SHOWING STOSS AND LEE SIDES.



B.—CHARACTERISTIC SECTION OF TILL.

trusive terranes. As has already been stated, outlying detached areas of Potsdam sandstone occur to the west of the western margin of the region bordering Green Bay, where the Potsdam and later Paleozoic terranes occupy the entire surface beneath the glacial drift. Possibly when the glaciers advanced over the country the Potsdam and later formations, extended in a continuous sheet much farther west than at present, and much of the energy of the moving ice was expended in removing this covering from the irregular surface of the older formations present beneath it. This hypothesis seems worth considering, for the reason that the deposit left by the glaciers is to a large extent sandy, and to the east of Fortune Lake, almost wholly of a red color, thus suggesting that it was derived largely from the erosion of the red Potsdam sandstone. In the eastern half of Northern Michigan there is no formation except the Potsdam which could have yielded notable quantities of red, sandy débris, but to the west of the region referred to, in addition to the Potsdam, there are several terranes, notably the Keweenawan formation, which would furnish similar material if mechanically eroded. In Canada, also, to the east of Lake Superior, the formations now forming the hard-rock surface would, in several instances, supply red, sandy débris if abraded. The basin of Lake Superior is seemingly underlain by the Potsdam and Keweenawan formations, and from this source the glaciers must certainly have derived red, sandy débris. With so many and such widely extended sources of supply for red, sandy débris, for glacial transportation, it cannot be said that in the Menominee region the abundance of such débris implies a former wider extent within its limits of the Potsdam formation.

The line of evidence just suggested, however, does not demonstrate that the Potsdam was not far more extensive at the beginning of the Glacial epoch than at present. In reference to this question some basis for reaching a decision is furnished by the topography of the isolated areas of Potsdam sandstone about Norway, Iron Mountain, Metropolitan, etc. At these localities the Potsdam sandstone forms prominent hills of such a character that they can be most reasonably accounted for on the hypothesis that, in the main, they were spared by stream erosion which excavated the valley between them, and are not remnants of a much more widely extended sheet of rock, the greater part of which had been removed by ice erosion. This conclusion seems valid, since, as is well known, stream erosion tends to roughen a region at least up to a certain stage in the process of subaërial denudation, while an ice sheet moving over a region of mild relief tends to plane away its surface and reduce the irregularities.

So far as the evidence now in hand points to any conclusion in reference to the origin of the hills capped with Potsdam sandstone, it favors the view that they were in existence and had essentially their present forms, except for the blanket of till, which covers them, previous to the Glacial epoch. This conclusion carries with it the additional inference that the ice sheet which passed over the Menominee region did but little in the way of abrading its surface.

In order to make the above interpretation of the evidence more apparent, attention is again directed to the statement that if the Potsdam sandstone was not widely extended as a continuous sheet to the west of its present margin, so as to shield the uncomformable rock-surface beneath, the ice, in passing over the region, not only failed to remove the capping of sandstone present on the hills in its path, but also failed to wear away the general surface so as to obliterate depressions like Mansfield valley, which were sunken below the general level of the country. The ice also failed, as has been explained, to impart characteristic topographic forms to the isolated hills and ridges which stood in its path.

Additional considerations in reference to the slight degree to which ice has abraded the Menominee region, is furnished at Iron River. Beneath thick accumulations of gray drift, in an artificial exposure at the iron mines south of the town, the surface of the iron-bearing formation is broken and weathered and does not present evidence of ice abrasion. Between the drift and the underlying iron-bearing formations, a bed of stratified gravel intervenes between the till and the subjacent slate and chert, showing that the ice passed over the country without removing loose stream deposits, previously laid down. The manner in which glaciers can over-ride loose deposits depends[1] on the fact that their basal portions become charged with débris, thus lessening the plasticity of the ice and enabling it to remain stationary while the clearer ice above passes on.

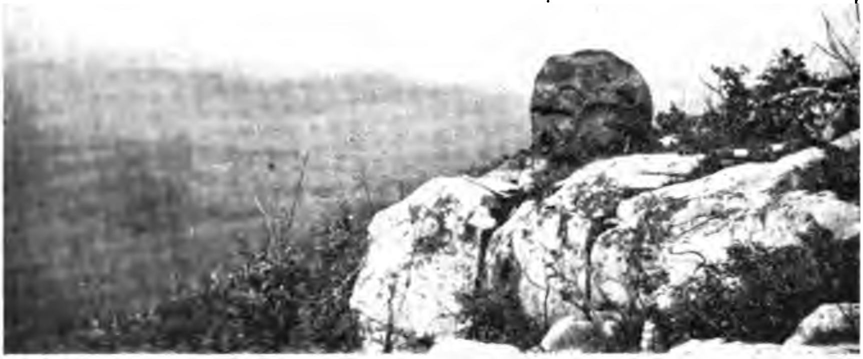
The facts bearing on the question of the amount of the glacial erosion in the Menominee region, has been presented somewhat at length, for the reason that geologists are divided in their opinions as to the efficiency of glaciers to deeply abrade the solid rock. While the evidence cited above is inconclusive, it favors the view that deep glacial abrasion did not occur. This is not equivalent, however, to saying that glaciers in general or under exceptional conditions do not vigorously erode the rock surfaces over which they pass. A glacier, like a river, may erode in one part of its course and deposit material at some other locality, and to fully consider the work that it does, all portions of its bed should be studied. The Menominee region includes but a small fraction of the total area covered by the ice sheet which crossed it, and as will be shown later, received a coating of glacially deposited débris, thus showing that during a part of the time the ice covered the country, deposition and not erosion was in progress. These considerations suggest that, in order to find evidence of maximum erosion performed by the former continental glacier of this continent, search should be made near the sources of the ice sheets.

### *Glacial Deposits.*

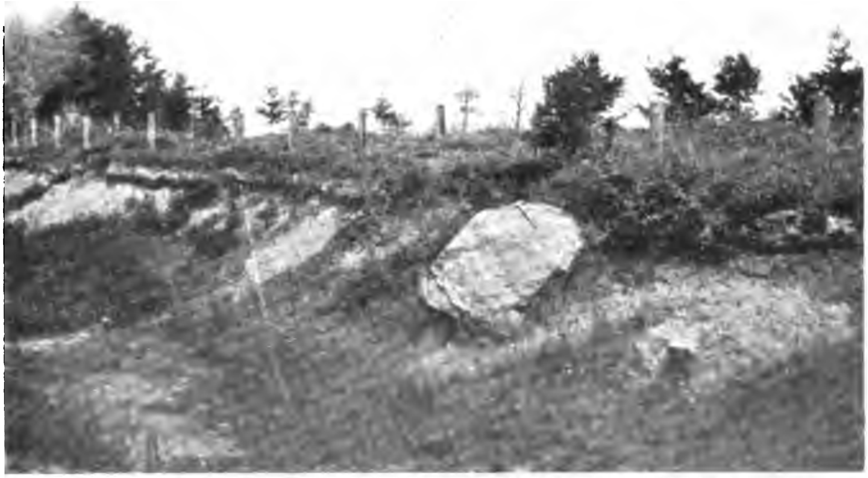
The principal subdivision of glacial deposits are *till-sheets, drumlins* and *moraines.* This classification relates to topographic forms, as well as mode of origin. The members of each class are composed of *till.* By this Scottish term is meant the usually firm, tough, sandy clay, deposited by glaciers, which frequently contain large stones or boulders. Great variations in composition occur, however, ranging from nearly pure sand containing few if any stones, to nearly pure clay, perhaps highly charged with rock fragments. Its most characteristic features are absence of stratification, although one till sheet sometimes rests

---

[1] Russell, Israel C., "The influence of debris on the flow of glaciers," in the Journal of Geology, Vol. 3, 1895, pp. 823-832.



A.—PERCHED BOULDER OF GNEISS RESTING ON QUARTZITE.



B.—BOULDERS IN A SAND AND GRAVEL PLAIN.

MrcU

on another of different character, and the presence of many kinds of rock fragments which are usually angular or but imperfectly rounded, although frequently battered and striated, and of various sizes up to several feet in diameter. These features, so far as they pertain to heterogeneity in size, absence of bedding, etc., are shown by the photographs of characteristic exposures reproduced on Plates VI, IX and X. The deposits may be of any color, dependent principally on the color of the rocks from which the débris was derived, but are usually bluish, changing to yellowish in their superficial and more or less weathered portions. Throughout large portions of Northern Michigan, however, the till is red, but to the west of Crystal Falls, gray till occurs over large areas. The superficial, weathered portion of the red till is frequently nearly white, on account of the removal of the iron oxide it contained through the solvent action of surface water charged with organic acids.

As stated above, two leading varieties of till are present in the Menominee region, i. e., red till and gray till. These subdivisions are of interest, not only because they indicate the direction in which two different lobes of the former ice sheets advanced over the land, but for the reason that they differ in agricultural value. The red till, as indicated on Plate III, extends from near the shore of Green Bay westward to the vicinity of Chicagon and Trout lakes, and is then limited by a line not as yet well determined, which divides it from the gray till forming the surface of the region about Iron River.

The red till, as implied in its name, is almost invariably reddish or pink in color. It is conspicuously sandy, and, in general, highly charged with stones of all sizes, up to some four or more feet in diameter. When the underlying rock is limestone, as in the region to the east of Waucedah and Foster City, the stones of such size as to be recognized by the unaided eye, are largely of the same character as the rock in the vicinity, but the larger are more massive boulders and consist principally of crystalline rock, of the same general nature as the rocks known to occur in places in Canada, and in the western portion of the Northern Peninsula of Michigan. On crossing the region occupied by red till, from east to west, and passing from the area where limestone is the country rock, to the area where the slate, quartzite, jaspilites, etc., of the Algonkian system, or the gneisses, schists, etc., of the Basement Complex, form the country rock, there is an abrupt change in the composition of the till, the principal feature of which is the disappearance of limestone fragments. The Algonkian terranes contain beds of dolomite, however, and fragments of this material occur sparingly in the till to the west of Waucedah, Foster City, etc., but should not be mistaken for fragments of the Calciferous or the Trenton limestone.

Not only is there a conspicuous difference in reference to the presence or absence of limestone fragments, as just stated, in the eastern and western portions of the Menominee region, but the few chemical analyses of soils that were available, indicate that the finer material of the till, below the influence of weathering, exhibits a similar contrast.

The relation of the till to the underlying or neighboring hard rocks just cited, is not peculiar to the Menominee region, but as is well known, pertains to similar deposits elsewhere. That is, a large percentage of till present in any region is usually of local origin and has been removed but a few rods or a few miles from the localities where the glaciers found it.

The fact that the till to the west of the west border of the Paleozoic limestones is without fragments of those formations, while to the east of that boundary boulders of iron ore, native copper and crystalline rocks, similar to the rocks outcropping in the northwestern portion of Northern Michigan, are present, suggests, as will be discussed more fully on a later page, that the glaciers which deposited the red till, moved from the northwest towards the southeast. At a later stage, during the Glacial epoch, as seems evident, an advance of ice from the northeast occurred in the same region.

The gray till, as the term implies, is of a gray color, and in this respect is conspicuously different from the red till, and must have been derived from a different source. In other respects, however, as in heterogeneity, presence of large boulders, etc., it has the features common to till deposits in general. As indicated on the map forming Plate III, the gray till occurs to the west of the region occupied by red till, and, as seems evident from the incomplete examination that has been made, was deposited by a lobe of the last or Wisconsin ice sheet, which extended southwest from the Lake Superior basin and invaded Chippewa valley, Wisconsin, after which it has been named.

*Till-Sheets:* Throughout the Menominee region where red till occurs, it forms a nearly uniform covering on the hard-rocks, but in certain localities, some of them many square miles in area, is itself concealed beneath later glacio-fluvial, lacustral and swamp deposits or accumulations. At certain localities, also, the till forms comparatively thick deposits, known as moraines and drumlins. Its most characteristic feature, however, is its nearly uniform distribution as a superficial sheet in general from fifteen to thirty feet thick, which extends over hills and forms the floors of valleys and depressions. It is literally a surface blanket of débris, beneath which the hard rocks are concealed. The great extent of the regions where the till has been spread out or a nearly uniform sheet, in comparison with the size of the areas in which it was bunched in moraines, or left as drumlins, is indicated on the map forming Plate III.

Characteristic exposures of till occur at many localities along the rail and wagon roads of the Menominee region, and in the numerous excavations made in searching for iron ore in the vicinity of Waucedah, Iron Mountain, Metropolitan, Crystal Falls, Amasa, Iron River, etc.

*Drumlins:* The leading characteristics of the smooth, oval hills composed of till and known as drumlins, were described in my previous report,[1] and a number of facts concerning those in Menominee County presented.

An attempt has been made to represent the distribution of the drumlins of the Menominee area on the map forming Plate III, but the result is far from satisfactory. One of the most notable facts brought out on the map, is the symmetrical change in the direction of the longer axes of the drumlins, indicating that there were currents in the glaciers to which they owe their origin.

But little remains to be added to the description previously given in reference to the absence of cores or nuclei of rock beneath the drumlins, or concerning the shapes of the hills, their uniformity in elevation over large areas, the characteristic smoothness of their surfaces, relation to striæ on neighboring outcrops of solid rock, composition, absence of lamination, etc.

---

[1] Report of the State Board of Geological Survey of Michigan for 1904, pp. 69-76.

In my previous report attention was directed to the presence of boulders of iron ore and of native copper in certain drumlins near Nadeau, etc., which seems to indicate that the glacier which transported the material of which they are composed, moved from the northwest toward the southeast. To this evidence may now be added the finding of native silver in association with native copper, in till of the same character as that composing the drumlins, at a locality on the border of Menominee River, about five miles south of Koss. This occurrence strengthens the deduction previously stated in reference to the direction in which the till was transported, but cannot be considered as conclusive, since both copper and silver are present on Michipicoten Island in the eastern portion of Lake Superior, and iron-bearing formations occur on the adjacent mainland.

The drumlins in the Menominee region are too numerous to be described in detail, but a representative group has been carefully surveyed, which exhibits their normal characteristics and one exceptional feature. The group selected for detailed description is situated about one mile west of Hermansville, and is represented on the contour map made by W. C. Gordon, which forms Plate VIII. A photograph of a model made from the map forms Plate IXA. These illustrations represent the drumlins in question with a high degree of accuracy, and need but little supplementary description.

The drumlins rest on the nearly level surface of the Hermansville limestone, as named by Bayley and Van Hise, a part of the Calciferous system, which is exposed in their vicinity, as indicated on Plate VIII. They are composed of reddish, sandy till, and contain many boulders of crystalline rock, as well as fragments of Potsdam sandstone and Hermansville limestone. The general appearance of sections of these and associated drumlins is shown in Plates IXB and X.

The main group of drumlins, as shown in the illustrations, consists of four members, those adjacent to each other being separated by concave troughs or grooves. Similar grooves are present between the drumlins in all instances in the Menominee region where they occur in groups, and are as characteristic of such groups, and seemingly as suggestive as to mode of origin as are the smooth-surfaced hills they separate.

The exceptional features presented by the group of drumlins under consideration, is the steepness and straightness of the west side of the hill farthest to the west. As shown on the map, and also by the profiles accompanying it, the hill referred to is essentially half a drumlin, cut parallel to its longer axis, and the western half removed. On the surface, which the drumlin would occupy if complete, the country rock is either exposed to view or but thinly covered with till. At one of the exposures glacial striæ are present, and parallel with the longer axis of the drumlin. The direction of glacial motion was from the northeast towards the southwest. The drumlins have been cleared and furnish excellent farming land. The stones and boulders formerly strewn sparingly over their surfaces have been removed, and the hills and the equally characteristic concave trough between them, are conspicuously smooth and even, and reveal in an admirable manner the gracefully curving contours so characteristic of drumlin topography.

There are two hypotheses entertained by geologists in reference to the mode of origin of drumlins. The generally accepted explanation is that they are due to the deposition of débris beneath glaciers, in a manner analogous to the formation of sand and gravel bars in streams; but a few geologists, following the lead of N. S. Shaler, consider that certain examples at least were given their characteristic forms by ice-erosion of previously deposited accumulations of till. The former of these hypotheses is based on the normal form that drumlins present, while the latter derives its main support from their irregularities and from the nature of the trough which so frequently separates them when they occur in groups. The evidence furnished by the drumlins of the Menominee region, in my opinion, as stated in my previous report, favors the ice-erosion hypothesis, and seem to show that a till sheet about fifty feet in thickness, was eroded by ice which advanced over it from the northeast and excavated troughs, leaving smooth, oval hills between them. In several instances, after well-shaped "drumlin-troughs" and "drumlin hills" had been produced by ice-erosion, a continuation of the process removed portions of the previously well-modeled surface; that is, portions of drumlins and of the trough separating them, were eroded, leaving other portions of the previously normal forms undisturbed. In support of this conclusion, several abnormal examples were described in my previous report, and notably a drumlin about one mile northwest of Spalding, which has a well-defined groove about its northeast end, and extending along its sides.

To the irregularities previously described, is now added the half-drumlin represented on Plates VIII and IXA, which seems to have been spared by ice-erosion which removed a large portion of the westward side of a previously complete example, and left an abnormally steep and obscurely horizontally-grooved or fluted surface on the eroded border of the part remaining.

It should be noted, in connection with the explanation just suggested, that adjacent on the west, to the southwest end of the half-drumlin represented in the illustration just referred to, a group of complete drumlins is present. It is difficult to understand, however, the nature of the process by which a half of one drumlin could have been eroded away, leaving intact the adjacent hill which is nearly in line with the part assumed to have been removed. Possibly future studies of drumlins will show that both ice-erosion and ice-deposition was concerned in shaping of drumlin topography. Under this composite hypothesis, the complete drumlins at the southwest end of the incompleted examples near Hermansville, may be considered to have been formed by the deposition of débris at the same time, or subsequent to the removal of a part of its incomplete companion. The mode of origin of drumlins is still a subject of discussion among students of glacial phenomena, and the Menominee region furnishes an admirable field for the continuation of the investigation.

In certain instances, as stated in my previous report, drumlins have portions of their bordering troughs still attached to them, although the companion drumlin, on the opposite border of the trough, has been removed. The portions of drumlin troughs referred to, left attached to drumlins, appear as terrace-like shoulders on their sides. The terraces, however, have approximately the same convex longitudinal profiles as the drumlins with which they are associated, and resemble the grooves or flutings frequently to be seen on the border of glaciated valleys and the sides of glaciated hills, but in well-preserved examples, present concave cross profiles of the same character as drumlin troughs.

A good example of a drumlin with a broad terrace on its side is present about half a mile southeast of the area shown on the illustration just referred to. The drumlin is traversed by means of a cut, by the Minneapolis, Saint Paul and Sault Ste. Marie Railroad. A portion of the north border of the cut is shown on Plate IXB. A sketch profile of this drumlin and its attached terrace, as seen in the north side of the railroad cut, is here reproduced with the addition of a dotted line to indicate the position of a companion drumlin which, as is presumed, has been removed by ice-erosion.

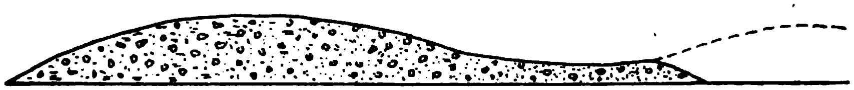


FIG. 1. Cross-profile of a drumlin and remnant of a drumlin-trough, near Hermansville, Mich.

Many other examples occur in the Menominee region, to show that a number of the incomplete drumlins now present may reasonably be considered as remnants spared by ice-erosion, of formerly complete drumlins or of groups of drumlins. The series contains incomplete isolated drumlins, and similarly detached examples with portions of drumlin troughs connected with them, as well as groups of hills separated by troughs, like the one shown on Plates VIII and IXA, in which a portion of a former hill remains. Groups of drumlins, as thus indicated, are, as it seems, but remnants of formerly more extensive assemblages.

Perhaps the most suggestive conclusion furnished by the study of the Menominee drumlin area, is that drumlin troughs, as designated above, are fully as characteristic of drumlin topography as are the hills they separate. In certain instances, the troughs are conspicuous, while the intervening hills lack the symmetry of true drumlins. These criteria pertaining to ice-erosion, as indicated also by tests made in other regions, as, for, example, about Ann Arbor, Mich., seem to furnish a means for determining the mode of origin of certain grooves and valleys in till-covered regions which cannot be accounted for as products of stream-erosion, or as resulting from glacial deposition.

*Moraines:* The term *moraine,* as used in this report, refers to the irregular accumulations of till deposited by glaciers about their margins. No distinction will be introduced between "dump moraines" and "shovel moraines," as each of these varieties is marginal in reference to the glaciers to which they pertain. An intimate association frequently occurs between marginal moraines and the heaps and piles of sand and gravel formed by glacial streams, and known as kames, but such deposits will be considered later.

Moraines are distinguished from till-sheets by the fact that the former are more or less local accumulations, conspicuously irregular both in thickness and in relief, and in many instances effectively conceal all but the larger elements of relief of the surface on which they rest; while the latter are characteristically of broad extent, and moderately uniform in thickness, and without conspicuous variations in relief, and do not materially modify the topographic control exerted by the underlying surface. Moraines frequently occur at the margin of a till-sheet most remote from the center of dispersion of the glacier that formed it, or its outer margin, but moraines and till-sheets frequently merged one with the other without a well-defined line of junction. Moraines are understood to record halts in the recession of glaciers during which the onward flow of the ice was counterbalanced by melting, and the débris carried by the glacier was concentrated; while till-sheets indicate a continuous recession, the débris the ice contained, or carried on its surface, being left without local concentration in a more or less even blanket-like deposit on the surface of the land vacated.

A series of concentric moraines record successive halts of a glacier during its retreat, and from such a series the successive positions of the ice margin and changes in its alignment may be determined. Associated with moraines there are frequently deposits of sand and gravel concentrated by streams flowing away from the glacier which produced it, and known as outwash aprons, valley trains, etc. Such deposits are formed on the side or margin of a moraine opposite to the one adjacent to the parent glacier and furnish one of the criteria for determining in which direction former glaciers flowed. Assistance in this connection may also be had from the fact that the inner border of a moraine, i. e., the border formerly margined by ice, is usually bolder and steeper than the outer border.

The trend of moraines of the nature of those occurring in Michigan, is at a right angle, or nearly so, to the direction of movement of the glacier which produced them. This deduction may, in many instances, be clearly demonstrated by noting the trend of striæ on rock surfaces in the vicinity of the moraines. The ice sheet, however, which formerly covered the northeastern portion of North America, formed lobes at its margins with embayments between the lobes, and at such localities *interlobate moraines* were deposited. Such moraines, while trending at a right angle to the direction of ice movement immediately adjacent, for the reason that the ice of each lobe tended to expand fan-like from its central axis, in some instances are nearly parallel to the general direction of the advance or retreat of the ice.

### *Two Glacial Lobes.*

As already stated, there are two sharply contrasted varieties of glacial deposits in the Menominee region, namely, red till and gray till. These two tills may evidently be correlated with two great lobes of the border of the last or Wisconsin ice-sheet which occupied Wisconsin, Michigan, etc., and described by Chamberlin,[1] as the Green Bay lobe, the position of which is indicated by the red till, and the Chippewa lobe which deposited massive moraines of gray till at least in the western portion of the region discussed in this report.

---

[1] Chamberlin, T. C. Terminal moraines of the second Glacial epoch, U. S. Geological Survey, 3d annual report, Washington, 1883, pp. 291-402.

The Green Bay lobe occupied the basin of Green Bay, and extended southwest to the vicinity of Madison, Wis., but expanded westward. The Chippewa lobe was initiated in a similar manner by Keweenaw Bay, on the southern border of the Lake Superior basin, and expanded over the region to the south now occupied by the western portion of the Northern Peninsula of Michigan and the adjacent portion of Wisconsin. These two lobes met at the margins in the vicinity of Chicagon Lake, in Iron County, Michigan, and formed an important interlobate moraine. As the Glacial epoch drew to a close and the Wisconsin ice-sheet melted, the Green Bay lobe was contracted in width, owing to the melting especially of its western border which extended westward across the Menominee region, while the Chippewa lobe receded northwestward and northward.

*Moraines of the Green Bay Lobe:* At various localities during the shrinkage of the Green Bay lobe, halts occurred, during which more or less definite moraines were deposited. Between the moraines which record a lingering of the ice margins for a time at certain localities, a till sheet was spread over the country, and to the west of the various moraines in several instances outwash aprons were laid down by glacial streams, on the surface of the previously deposited till. The moraines, however, are seldom massive or well-defined and for this reason and also in part because they are to a great extent concealed by forests through which there are but few roads, their position and outlines have not as yet been well determined.

To the west of Crystal Falls and Mastodon, or more definitely about Bush and Fortune lakes, and to the east of Chicagon Lake, the red till effectively conceals the underlying rocks, and has the irregularities of surface characteristic of moraines. Although this region has not been examined in detail, enough is known concerning it to indicate that its covering of till is a part of the most westerly deposits made by the Green Bay lobe, and is of the nature of an interlobate moraine. Adjacent on the east, to this deeply moraine covered region, as at Crystal Falls, Mastodon Mine, etc., the till covering barely conceals the underlying rock, and, as it seems, can with greatest propriety be termed a till sheet.

Eastward from Crystal Falls and Mastodon Mine to beyond the valley of Michigamme River, the valleys are in the main occupied by sand and gravel, but the uplands are veneered with till. Adjacent to Michigamme River in the east, the uplands are composed of red till, which has an irregular surface and contains many boulders, thus indicating that it is of the nature of a broad moraine, which is several miles broad and trends about north and south. This tract of hilly country extends to Menominee River, and separates sand and gravel plains on its west border from similar plains at a lower level on its eastern border. The sand and gravel plains to the west may be interpreted as being in part due to the outwash of débris from the retreating glaciers, but supplied principally by the streams which flowed towards the ice front and were partially dammed and turned aside by it; while the sand and gravel plains to the east, have a similar history, but were formed late at a time when the ice front had withdrawn still farther eastward.

In recording observations concerning the moraines referred to above, and other similar deposits farther eastward, I wish to avoid giving the impression that the ridges and hills the glaciers left, are in all or even in many instances strongly defined. There is an indefiniteness in the records, and obscurity due to the density of vegetation, which makes the mapping of the boundaries of the moraines exceedingly difficult. Coupled with the indefiniteness of the moraines, is the fact that they merge with the nearly universal till-sheet, and in many instances it is impracticable to decide whether a given deposit is a somewhat thickened till-sheet, or a true marginal moraine.

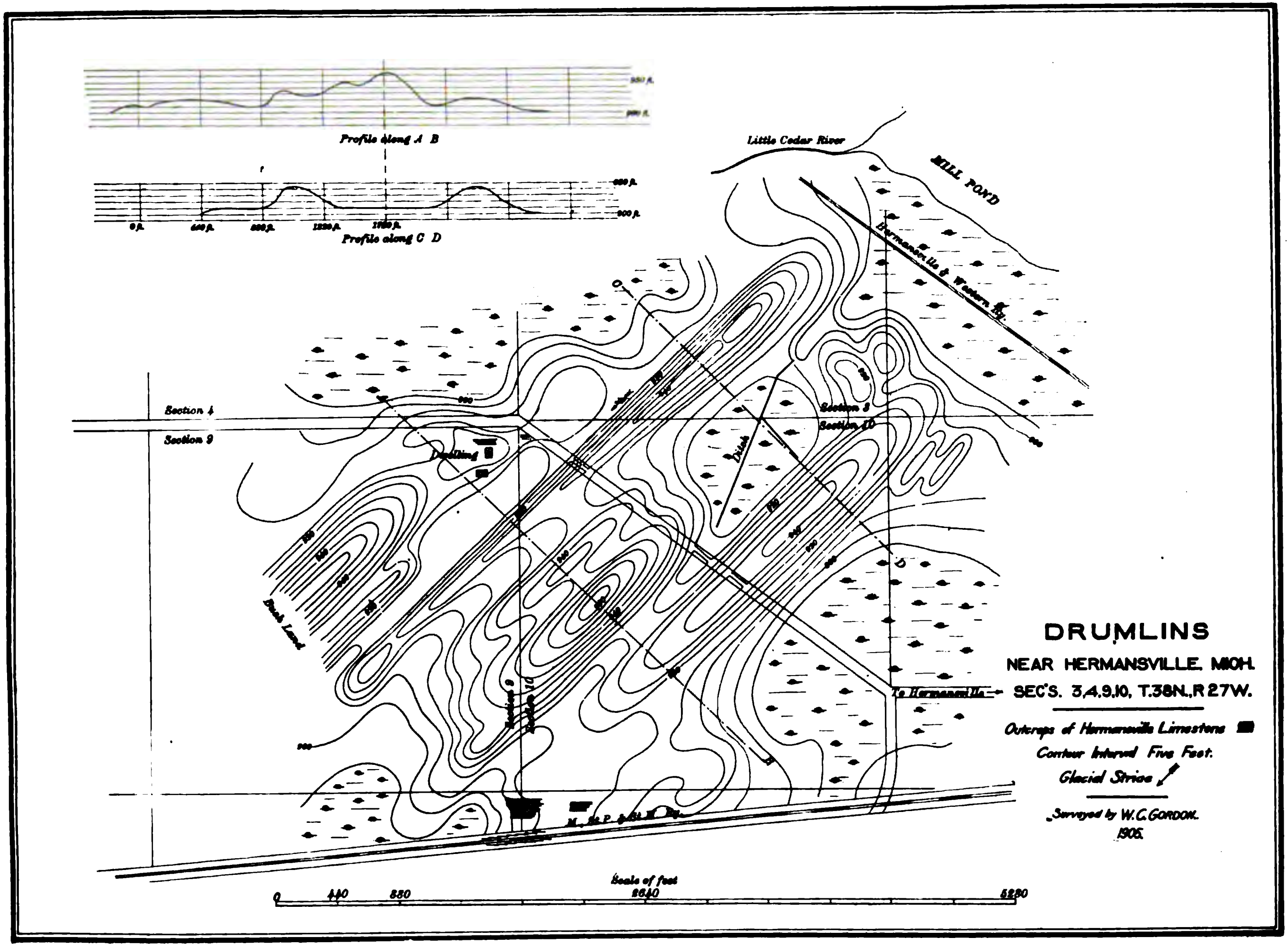
Another feature of the deposits in question, and one which will perhaps be found to be characteristic of other glaciated regions, is the presence of hilly tracts with morainal topography, which are not clearly portions of marginal moraines, and not systematically arranged with reference to the direction of ice retreat. These local thickenings of the general till-sheet, due as it seems to the addition of boulders and other débris to the surface, are considered provisionally, as owing their origin to local accumulations of morainal material on the surface of the former ice-sheet, on account of its having been concentrated in depressions in the ice, and lowered upon the sub-glacial till as melting occurred. Examples of the local moraines referred to, occur in the rough region of crystalline rock, between Norway and Metropolitan, in the hills east of Runkles Lake, etc., and are deemed worthy of more attention than has as yet been devoted to them.

When the last ice-sheet withdrew eastward from the country between Iron Mountain and Waucedah, where bold hills and ridges of hard rock trend about east and west, and coincide with the direction of ice recession, the margin of the glacier had decreased in thickness so that it occupied the valleys after the hills were exposed. The records on which this inference is based, are small moraines trending north and south athwart the valleys, but failing to cover the intervening hills.

Valley moraines of the nature referred to, are present near Iron Mountain, where they occupy an area of about a square mile to the west of Silver Lake, and again on the west side of Lake Antoine. Similar moraines occur about Lake Fumee, which, like its companion, Lake Antoine, owes its existence to a morainal dam, in the bottom of a valley which trends east and west.

A good example of a valley moraine is present about a mile southeast of Iron Mountain, and extending from the base of a prominent hill on the north, to Menominee River at Big Quinnesec Falls, on the south. It has an irregular knob-and-basin topography, with elevations rising about a hundred feet above its visible base, and separates a sand and gravel plain on its western side from a similar plain about one hundred feet lower, on its eastern side. To the west of the moraine and merging with it are kame hills, and the lake is also bordered in part by the irregular and much-pitted margin of the higher of the two adjacent sand and gravel plains.

Eastward from the region about Iron Mountain, small moraines occur, for the most part directly assimilated with the range of hills intervening between Iron Mountain and Norway, as at Quinnesec, and again midway between Quinnesec and Norway, and crossed by the highway connecting the two towns. These are local deposits, and indicate



MAP OF DRUMLINS NEAR HERMANSVILLE.

that the retreating glacier did not halt at the localities where they occur, for a sufficient length of time to permit of the formation of a moraine completely across the valley in which they occur.

When the ice had withdrawn eastward so that the terminus of the portion occupying the valleys of Menominee River and of Pine Creek, respectively, was situated near the present site of Vulcan, a halt again occurred and two moraines were formed, one in each of the valleys mentioned. One of the moraines is situated about a mile south of Vulcan, and the other a mile and a half northeast of it. Each moraine trends about north and south and the two are approximately in line, but separated by the bold till-veneered elevations designated as Brier Hill on the Menominee Special Map, issued by the U. S. Geological Survey. The moraines are small, being less than a mile in length in each instance. The southern one is conspicuously irregular, and culminates in a conical hill which rises about eighty feet above the adjacent Sturgeon River plain, at its eastern base; and the other is from 20 to 30 feet higher than the surface of the irregular country about it. In each case the deposits consist principally of sand, but contain irregular stones and a few large boulders. Their topography is conspicuously irregular and comprises prominent knobs and undrained basins. The moraines are transverse to the valley in which they are respectively located, but do not at present completely dam them. The one at the north has been cut through at its southern end by Pine Creek, and the one to the south terminates at its southern end at the margin of Menominee River. To the west of each moraine there is an out-wash apron forming a sand and gravel plain, showing that at the time they were formed, the glacier which they margined completely closed the valleys in which they are located. To the east of the northern moraine, there is a bouldery till-plain, but at the eastern base of the south moraine, glacial silt deposits conceal the underlying till. The moraines do not cross the intervening portion of Brier Hill, thus indicating that at the time they were formed, ice occupied the valley, leaving exposed the hills it margined and partially surrounded.

The halt in the eastward retreat of the ice from the Menominee region recorded by the two small moraines just described, was seemingly brief, but the records it left are well defined. The next halt as the ice continued to retreat eastward, occurred when its margin was located approximately along what is now the west border of Menominee County, and extended northward, curving to the northeast, past Waucedah. This rather broad but indefinitely defined morainal belt is indicated in a very general way on the map forming Plate III.

The moraine is represented, in the western portion of Menominee County adjacent to the river of the same name, by low hills of reddish, bouldery till, which begin at the south, about four miles from the river's mouth, and extend in an irregular belt from one to some two or three miles wide, northward into Dickinson County. These same topographic features are continued southward into Wisconsin, but as to the course the moraine takes after crossing the Menominee, I have no information.

The range of hills in question is, as a whole, but poorly defined, although at certain localities its morainic character is well pronounced, and its course, as indicated on the accompanying map, is much generalized. From its first appearance at the south, on the east bank of

Menominee River, northward to Koss, the irregular hills marking its course, reveal morainal topography, but no outwash apron on their western side has been recognized. At Koss, and extending north to Kells, morainal hills merging on to the west with hills and ridges of gravel and sand, furnish a record of a halting of the former glacier. To the west of this belt lies a swampy plain, in part composed of till, and in part of sand and gravel which appears to be of the nature of a glacial outwash. Still farther north, there are still other irregular hills composed of bouldery till, as for example about Pemene Falls, and Nathan, and thence northward past Faithorn Junction to Summit. A probable continuation of this morainic belt has been traced by Frank Leverett, northeastward from its northern portion, as represented on Plate III, a few miles into Marquette County, to where it becomes associated with a moraine with northwestward trend. To the east of the morainic belt just described, lies the till plain of the central portion of Menominee County, on which are numerous drumlins, many eskers, and small kames, but no definite evidence of the presence of moraines is known. The next halt of the retreating ice margin appears to be rendered by indefinite drift hills in Delta County to the west of Escanaba, but concerning this inference the information in hand is indefinite.

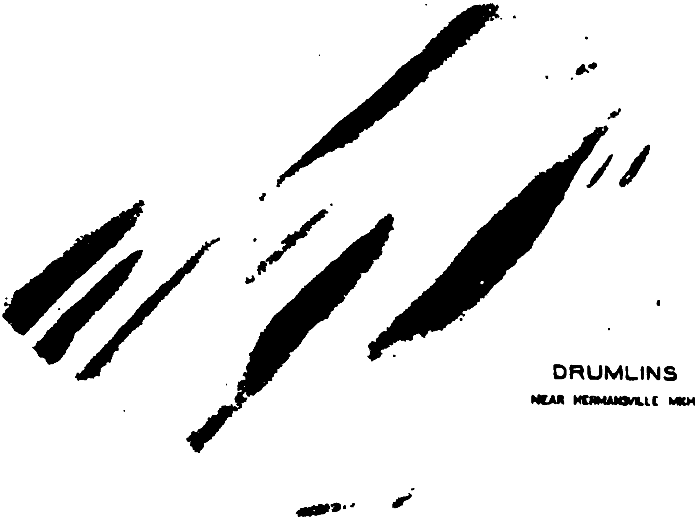
The retreat of the ice outlined above, taken in connection with previously recorded information, indicates that the region considered in this report, which is mantled with red till, was occupied by the Green Bay lobe of the Wisconsin ice-sheet. The axis of the lobe lay in the central portion of the basin of Green Bay, and its western expansion occupied the Menominee region. As the ice melted, the width of the lobe was contracted more rapidly than its length, and the lobation was maintained up to a late stage in the process of melting. It was for this reason that the retreat of the ice from Menominee region was eastward.

*Moraines of the Chippewa Lobe:* In traveling west from Crystal Falls on the road leading to Iron River, one passes from a region where red till forms a veneer on the surface underlying rocks, to a region of massive moraines composed of gray till. The change occurs at the slough connecting Chicagon and Trout lakes, but whether these two lakes and the sluggish water channel connecting them are precisely on the boundary or not remains to be determined.

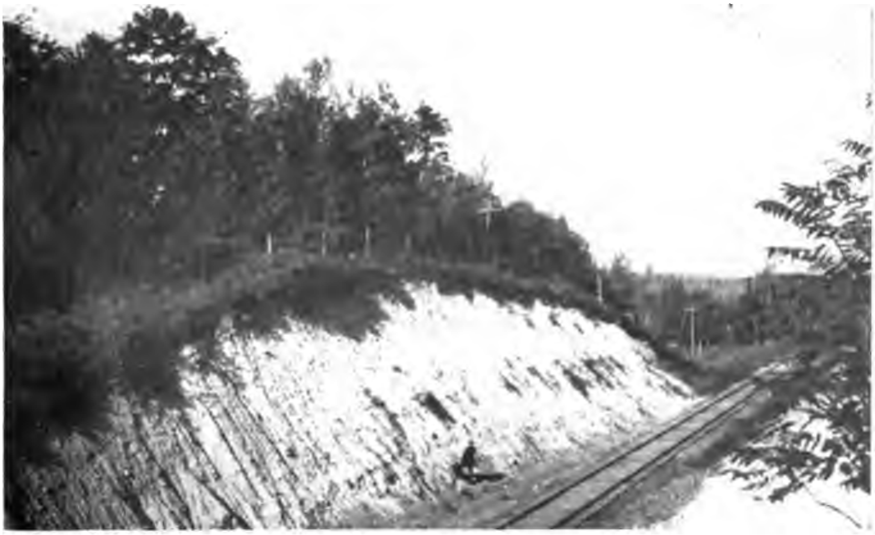
The boundary referred to, not only separates two regions in which the color of the soil is different, but several other contrasts in conditions accompanying this change, such, for example, as the thickness of the surface blanket of débris, prevalence of hard-rock outcrops, character of the topography, abundance and nature of the boulders strewn over the surface, etc., as well as variations in the aspect of the forests and conditions favoring agriculture. These contrasts are so definite and important that they demand a somewhat detailed consideration:

The red till on the uplands in the vicinity of Crystal Falls, is on an average some ten feet thick, and forms merely a veneer on the glaciated rock surfaces. The gray till in the numerous bold hills to the west of Chicagon and Trout Lakes, is in general from one to two hundred feet thick, and at least one locality, as shown by a well at Bates, is in excess of 212 feet deep.

In the region occupied by the red till, particularly where the Base-



A.—MODEL OF DRUMLINS NEAR HERMANSVILLE.



B.—SECTION OF DRUMLIN.

ment Complex and Algonkian systems are present, outcrops of solid rock are common, and the summits of the hills are bare or but imperfectly concealed beneath a thin covering of débris; to the west of Chicagon and Trout Lakes, solid rock outcrops are rare and occur principally in the bottoms of the valleys.

The topography in the region where the red till forms the surface, is controlled, to a great extent, by the relief of the hard-rock on which the till rests, and the hills are characterized by the comparatively small size and irregular outlines; while the topography of the gray till, as for example between Chicagon and Stanley lakes, has for its dominant features, bold, steep sided, convex hills, with symmetrically curved bases, which efficiently conceal the relief of the rocks on which they rest. Accompanying this change in topography is an increase in the general elevation of the land above sea level. As one travels westward from Green Bay, the land rises gradually and in the vicinity of Iron Mountain and Crystal Falls, etc., the hill tops in general have an elevation of from 1,400 to 1,500 feet, but in the region to the west of Chicagon and Trout Lakes the broad uplands attain an elevation of 1,700 feet, and, in some instances, approach 1,800 feet. The marked increase in elevation that occurs where one passes westward from the red to the gray till, coincides with the increase in the thickness of the glacial débris, and seems to be due principally to this cause.

The heavy moraine of gray till, to the west of Chicagon and Trout Lakes, has a breadth of at least ten miles, and trends approximately northeast and southwest. No striæ have been observed which might serve to demonstrate the direction of glacial flow, but, judging from the topography and the presence of gravel and sand deposits in the valleys of Iron and Brulé Rivers, etc., the ice lobe which formed the moraine lay to the northwest, and, on melting, its margin withdrew in that direction. Although only a beginning has been made in the study of the gray till, the conclusion is ventured that in the region examined, it pertains to the terminal moraine of the Chippewa lobe of the Wisconsin ice-sheet.

The gray till is less sandy than the red till adjacent to it on the east, and as is judged, contains a larger percentage of clay-like material. A mechanical analysis of a representative sample is presented on page 80, together with similar data concerning several samples of red till. This one sample, however, as is shown by a comparison with the other samples in the list, is not richer in fine silt-like material than certain samples of the red till. As shown in connection with the mechanical analysis, the gray till is lacking in calcium carbonate. The till is conspicuously bouldery, and large masses of metamorphic and igneous rocks are abundant on the surface and throughout the deposit, but there is an absence also of limestone fragments. The cleared fields are, in general, surrounded by piles of stones that have been gathered from their surfaces, and in part built into walls. In this and other respects, as for example the gray color of the soil and the contours of the bold hills, the region resembles the moraine-covered portions of New England. Throughout the area where the gray till occurs, the land, when first traversed by white man, was almost completely covered with a fine hardwood forest, by far the greater part of which is still in its primitive condition. Swamps are less numerous than in the region of the red till, owing to the greater extent and more pronounced relief of the hills, but in the generally narrow valleys, there are sand and gravel deposits, formed by glacial streams, and at a few localities, as in the valley of Paint River, near Atkinson, sand and gravel plains, with open growths of jack-pine and its usual associates, exhibit, on a small scale, the characteristic features of the similar plains bordering Menominee River.

The physical condition of the gray till, the free drainage of the moraines it forms, and the favorable results obtained where its surface has been cleared and cultivated, show that the region it occupies is destined to become highly valuable for agriculture. The large extent and, in general, favorable slopes of the gray moraines, favor their use, especially for hay and grazing lands.

Certain suggestive facts in reference to the relation of the red to the gray till may here be mentioned, although they require supplementary evidence before their full significance can be satisfactorily determined. At the excavation made in connection with iron mining near Iron River and Stambaugh, gray till rests on reddish stratified gravel, and along the road between Iron River and Atkinson, to the northwest of a belt of bold moraines composed of gray till, the surface deposits consist of red till of the same general character as the main body of red till which extends eastward from Crystal Falls, etc. These occurrences and others of a similar nature, seem to show that the gray till was deposited at a later time than the red till and overlaps its westward extension. That such is in reality their true relationship, however, is little more than a suggestion, but certain observations made by Rollin T. Chamberlin,[1] in the western portion of Wisconsin and adjacent part of Minnesota, are significant in this connection.

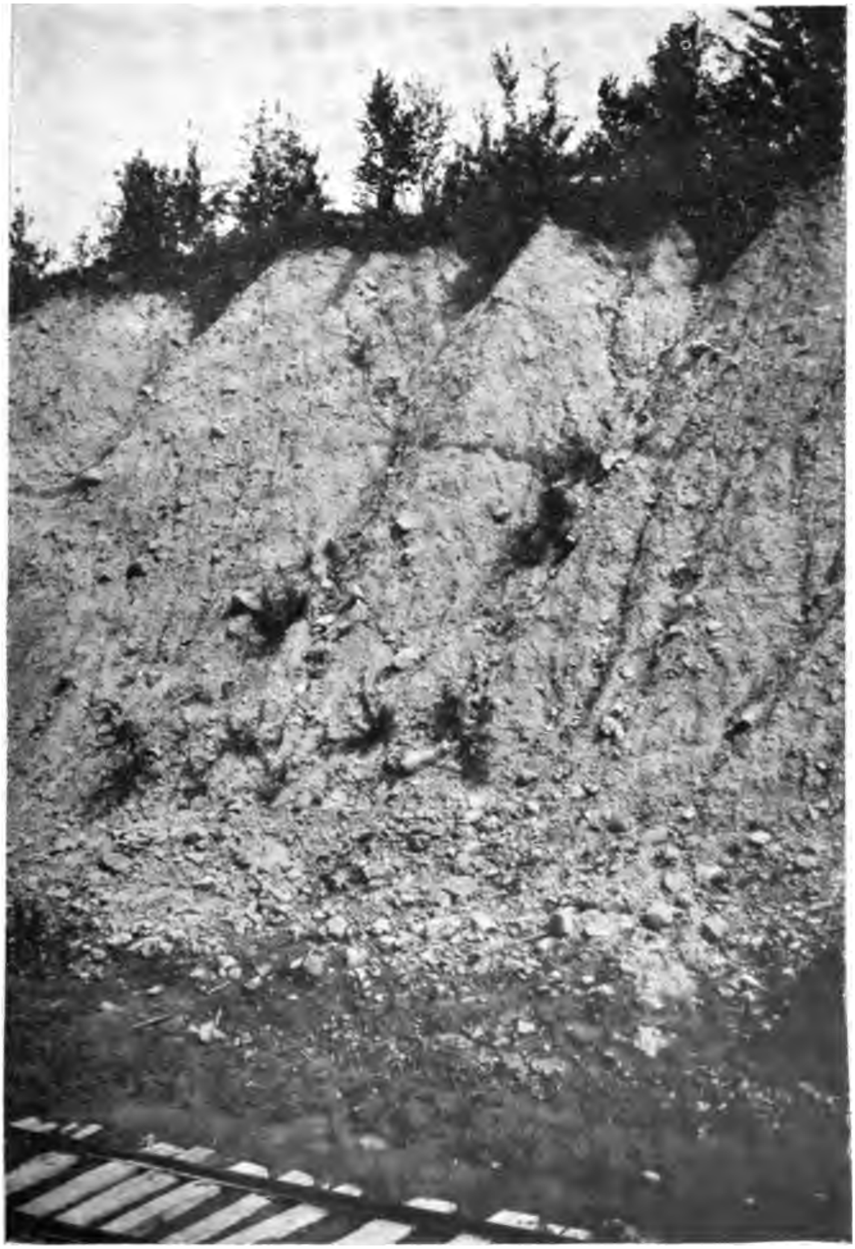
According to Chamberlin, there is red sandy till in the St. Croix region, which was deposited by a lobe of the Wisconsin ice-sheet that advanced over it from the northwest, and, resting on the red till, is a gray till deposited by a later ice advance which came from the west. These two till-sheets, so far as can be judged, are closely similar and have the same relative positions as the red and gray tills of the Menominee region. These two regions, however, are some two hundred miles apart, and the conditions present on the St. Croix are here referred to, simply for the reason that they suggest problems for investigation when the surface geology of the country to the west of the Menominee region is studied.

### *Glacio-Fluvial Erosion.*

The streams flowing in tunnels beneath glaciers and also the surface streams produced by the melting of glaciers, supplemented by rain and, in some instances by the drainage of adjacent land which is not ice covered, leave records in two principal ways, i. e., by eroding the rocks over which they flow, and by depositing débris. These changes, produced by streams in association with glaciers, may be classified as glacio-fluvial erosion, and glacio-fluvial deposition. Of these two classes of records, those produced by deposition are the more common, and

---

[1] "The Glacial Features of the St. Croix Dalls Region," in the Journal of Geology, Vol. XIII, 1905, pp. 238-256.



TILL IN THE CENTRAL PORTION OF A DRUMLIN.

will be discussed below, but at least one instructive example in the Menominee region, of erosion by a glacial stream, deserves to be mentioned.

*The Norway Spill-way:* As the ice front receded eastward in the vicinity of Norway, as already stated, its thin margin was divided into two lobes of small dimensions, by the east-and-west trending hill to the east of the site of that town. One of the lobes occupied the valley of Menominee River, and the other and more northern one, partially filled the valley of Pine Creek. The position of the extremities of these two ice tongues at a certain stage in their existence, is recorded by small moraines trending north and south, as already described. Each of the ice lobes referred to, obstructed the valley it occupied, and the streams on the land to the west of the ice flowed toward the obstructions. In the Menominee valley the waters were turned aside, and, as seems probable, skirted the margin of the glacier, but the waters of Pine Creek and its tributaries, were ponded and formed a lake which became almost completely filled with sand and gravel. The lake found an outlet to the south, across a ledge of rock near the Curry Mine, in the eastern part of Norway, over which it plunged, forming a small cataract, and flowed to the Menominee, through the now swampy channel occupied by a small brook which has its source near Norway and its mouth about a mile west of the locality where Sturgeon River joins its master stream.

The former spill-way near Curry Mine, is a notch from 80 to 100 feet wide and some 50 feet deep, in hard siliceous breccia. Its depth, however, is due to only a small extent to stream erosion, as it is one of the features of the pre-Cambrian land surface exposed to view by the removal of its protective covering of Potsdam sandstone.

The bottom of the spill-way is nearly on a level with a sand plain in the valley of Pine Creek, and the hard rocks forming its floor still bear the polish imparted to them by sand-charged waters. The polish extends upward only a few feet on the side-walls of the channel, thus indicating that the former stream was not deep. At the south end of the spill-way there is a steep descent of about 20 feet into a marshy basin, now in part cultivated, and from this "plunge-basin" an irregular depression with a sandy bottom, extends southward to Menominee River, as stated above.

Spill-ways, similar to the one at Norway, are well known in other formerly glaciated regions, and may be seen with streams still flowing through them, about the margins of existing glaciers, as is the case of Malaspina glacier, Alaska, for example. They should be looked for on the sides of valleys formerly occupied by glaciers, and in localities where ice-sheets withdrew down the slope of the land. In the Menominee region the glacial streams were heavily loaded with débris, and in most all instances aggraded instead of eroding their beds. The example just described is the only instance noted in the portion of Michigan under consideration, where a well-defined spill-way occurred, in which the waters were enabled to erode.

### *Glacio-Fluvial Deposits.*

The streams flowing from glaciers, as is well known, are usually heavily charged with silt, sand, gravel and large boulders, and, in many instances, make deposits of greater volume than the moraines with which they are frequently associated.

These glacio-fluvial accumulations may be divided into two groups: 1st, those laid down by streams in immediate association with the glaciers from which they flow, as for example, *eskers* and *kames,* and 2nd, those deposited after a stream leaves a glacier and is no longer directly influenced by it, and termed *outwash aprons, valley trains,* etc.

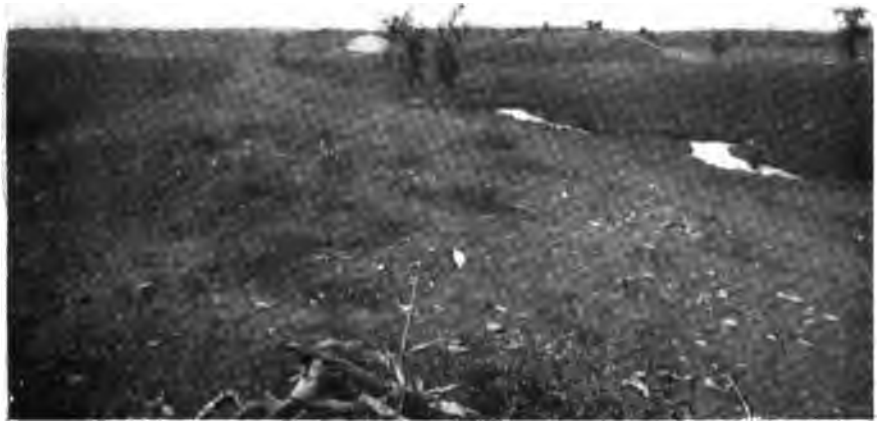
*Eskers* are ridges of sand and gravel, which, in some instances, contain boulders or have large rock masses on their surfaces, and are believed by most geologists to have originated in tunnels beneath or in the basal portions of stagnant ice-sheets. They are frequently forty to sixty or more feet high, have rounded crests and follow sinuous and frequently interrupted or broken courses, which, in a general way, correspond in direction with the direction of flow of the glacier beneath which they were formed.

At various localities in the region represented on Plate III, characteristic examples of eskers are present. In my previous report already referred to, attention was directed to several ridges of the type just mentioned, in the vicinity of Spalding, Powers, etc., and a brief account given of two instances where they rest on the surfaces of drumlins and are thus shown to be subsequent to them in time of formation. This association is consistent with the generally accepted idea, that drumlins are produced by moving or flowing ice-sheets, and that eskers originate in connection with ice-sheets that have become stagnant and are traversed by tunnels. In my former report, also, a description was given of an esker near Spalding, which extends each way from the ends of a steep-sided notch in the surface of a drumlin, at a right angle to its longer axis. The significance of this association is that the esker was formed in a tunnel at or near the base of an ice-sheet.

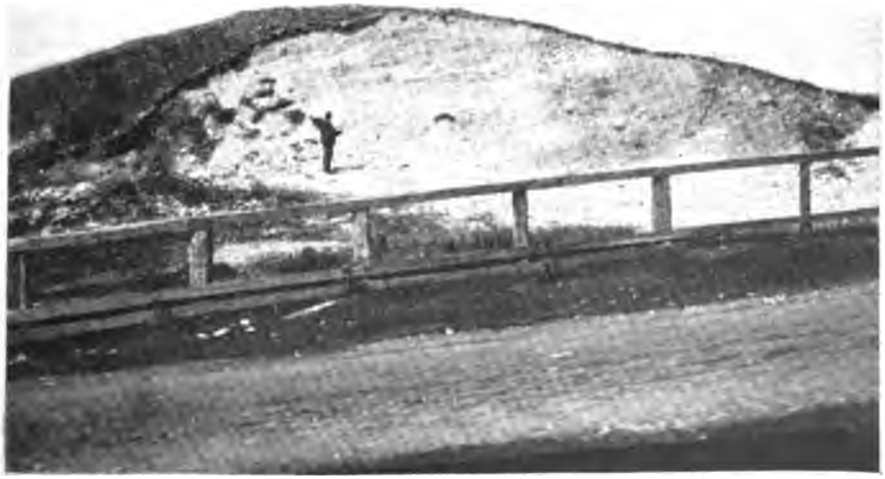
During the journey which furnished the basis for the present report, a number of eskers, in addition to those previously examined, were observed, and their location is in part indicated on the map forming Plate III.

As a rule the eskers occur in valleys, and trend in about the same direction that the last ice-sheet of the Menominee region advanced, but several conspicuous exceptions to this rule are present, as, for example, the esker near Spalding, referred to above, which extends about east and west or at a right angle to the direction of advance and retreat of the last ice lobe that occupied the region. In general, also, the eskers occur near existing streams, which occasionally cross their trend by passing through gaps which break their courses. The significance of this association is, that the sub-glacial streams had their general direction determined by the depression in the land which the former ice-sheet occupied, and when the ice melted the surface streams which came into existence took similar courses. Although a similarity exists in the direction of flow of the esker-building and its uneven streams in the Menominee region this association is believed to be somewhat exceptional, as one of the general characteristics of eskers is their independence of associated topographic features, and may be apparent rather than real, on account of the small differences in relief of the hard rock surface beneath the till.

Of the numerous eskers examined during the past field season, per-



A.—AN ESKER.



B.—SECTION OF AN ESKER.

in
w

1

haps the most instructive is situated about nine and one-half miles north of the city of Menominee, in Sections 29 and 32, T. 33 N., R. 27 W., and is traversed by the State Road leading north from that city. It is well exposed to view for the reason that it occurs in cleared fields, and furnished a good example of the type of topographic forms to which it belongs. Its observed length is about one mile, but at the north it enters a tree-covered swampy region, into which it was traced but a short distance. A similar ridge, however, about a mile in length, occurs a mile to the eastward of the locality referred to, and the two are probably portions of the same deposit, but separated by a natural break or gap.

A photograph of the eskers near the State Road, taken from the north end of the portion which has been cleared and looking south, forms Plate XIA. The course of the ridge is tortuous and its crest line irregular. It is not continuous, but broken into segments of various lengths by gaps, one of which is traversed by the brook to be seen in the picture, which flows south through the opening, and another is occupied by the State Road, which passes a white bluff also recognizable in the accompanying illustration. The bluff referred to, is the wall of a gravel pit, in which a good section of the esker is furnished. A near view of this excavation forms Plate XIB. The ridge extends about half a mile south of the gravel pit and terminates on the border of a swamp through which Menominee River flows.

The esker is about 250 to 300 feet wide at the base, and 30 to 40 feet high. It is composed of assorted and in part well-smoothed and rounded pebbles, and sand, in distinct layers which reveal current bedding. The pebbles are, in many instances, from 5 to 6 up to 10 to 12 inches in diameter; a few are composed of limestone and a considerable number consist of reddish spotted sandstone (Potsdam), but for the most part they have been formed by the wear of fragments of crystalline rock. The pebbles and the sand between them are well packed and adhere so firmly that it is difficult to loosen them with the hand. The compactness of the material permits the wall of the pit that has been dug to stand vertical, and furnishes a reason for the preservation of the steep side-slopes of the ridge, which have retained their original constructional shapes. As shown in Plate XIB, the main bedding planes of the gravel and sand are oblique and descend from the west side of the eskers towards its east base. This oblique bedding is exceptional, as eskers usually reveal in cross sections a more or less complete arching of the strata, due in part, as seems probable, to the lateral sliding of the material after the bordering walls of ice were removed.

As shown indefinitely in the foreground of the picture forming Plate XIA, a second ridge joins the one just described, on its eastern side, nearly at a right angle to its course, and is prolonged eastward. This second ridge is composed almost wholly of sand, and a continuation of it occurs, but at a lower level, to the west of the main esker, is recorded by a covering of sand, and expands at its west end into a sand plain several acres in area. The sand esker is lower than the main or gravel esker and has less steep sides and a broader crest. The conditions observed seem to show that the sand esker is not a branch of the gravel eskers, but was formed first and subsequently crossed by its companion.

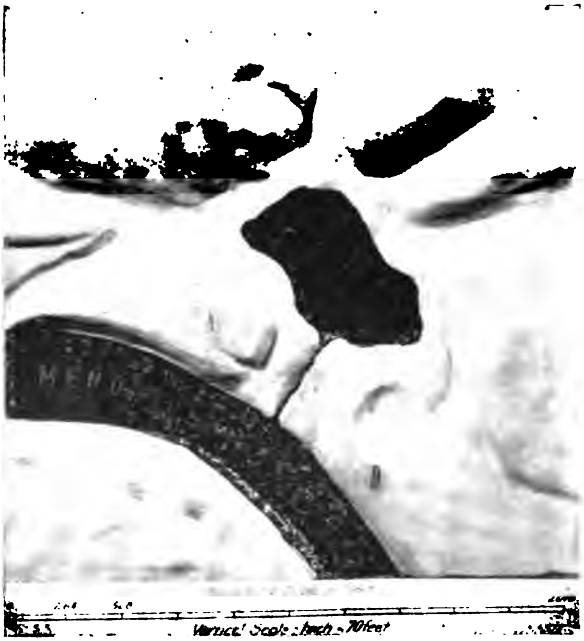
Eskers similar to those just described are present at several localities in the Menominee region, as is indicated in part on the map forming Plate III, and when the more complete studies are made many others will, no doubt, be discovered. In general, those observed are composed mainly of coarse gravel, and, in many instances, large boulders are present on their crests, or, as revealed where excavations have been made, embedded in their interiors. With the gravel there is always more or less sand, and in most instances their sides and margins are more sandy than their crests, for the reason that the sand has been washed down from their higher portions since they were exposed to the rain, and concentrated on their sides. This same process of rain wash also furnishes a reason in part for the usually greater abundance of boulders on their summits than on their sides.

To the topographic forms usually assigned to eskers, those under consideration furnish an additional variety; namely, knolls and hillocks composed of sand and gravel and occasionally containing large boulders, which are situated on their crests. Good examples of such elevations occur on an esker in Menominee County, about a quarter of a mile north of Birch Creek station, which have a height of ten to fifteen feet above the adjacent portion of the summit of the ridge. The most prominent knolls are situated at localities where abrupt bends occur in the ridge on which they are located. The crest of the ridge adjacent to the knolls on each side is, in several instances, nearly level and regular, showing that the elevations are constructional forms, and have not resulted from a sagging or displacement of portions of the material of which the deposit is composed, leaving other portions in relief.

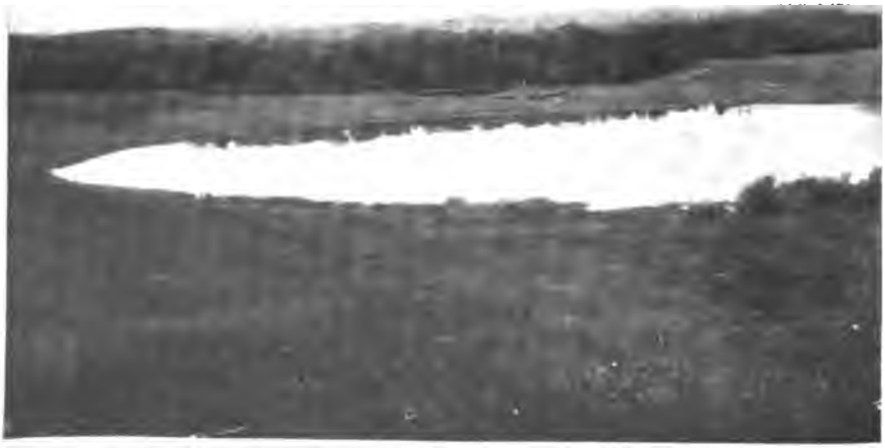
An explanation of the manner in which knolls and hillocks of the nature of those just cited, were produced, is difficult, for the reason that a stream flowing in a tunnel and depositing débris on its bottom, as in the case of a surface aggrading stream, must have a slope down which to flow. The crest of an esker should be considered as representing the graded channel of a stream, and departures from a uniform slope are evidently due to secondary conditions, supplementary to those which govern the normal action of such streams.

The departures from an even slope presented by the crest lines of eskers form two classes, 1st, elevation such as knolls and hillocks, which rise above its general level, and 2nd, sags, notches and gaps, which form depressions below the general level of the crest, where most uniform and continuous. In the former class, it is evident that material has been added to the surface of an esker, and in the latter instance, as observations indicate, there was less than the normal amount of deposition, or else material has been displaced.

The addition of material to the surface of an esker so as to produce knolls and hillocks on its crest, may reasonably be assumed to be due to contributions of débris brought by streams which descended through openings in the roofs of the ice tunnels in which it was formed, as is suggested by the well-known fact that streams on the surface of glaciers frequently plunge into crevasses and form *moulins*. While perhaps as a rule, erosion occurs at the bottom of a moulin, as is suggested by the pot-holes they are known to produce, it is evident that under certain conditions, as, for example, when much coarse débris is carried into them, deposition might result. Under this hypothesis the knolls on the crests of eskers are to be considered as being of the nature of kames,



A.—MODEL OF GRAVEL BARS NEAR STURGEON FALLS.



B.—GRAVEL BARS NEAR STURGEON FALLS.

and analogous to the alluvial cones formed by surface streams on emerging from a steep gorge and entering a plain. The suggestion which presents itself in this connection is that eskers are formed by streams flowing in channels in a stagnant ice sheet, and that these sub-glacial streams had tributaries some of which joined them from above, by descending through well-like openings in the ice. So long as the sub-glacial stream was vigorous the débris brought by the descending tributaries was carried away and utilized in the general process of aggrading, but when the trunk stream was too weak to remove all the material brought to it from above, deposition occurred and mounds were formed on its bed. The process here outlined is analogous to the manner in which slow-flowing surface streams sometimes receive more débris from swifter tributaries than they are able to remove, and obstructions are produced. Such locally abundant deposits on the beds of sub-glacial streams would vary in their effects on the flow of the streams themselves, from a slight check of velocity to complete damming. Where prominent elevations are present on the crests of eskers, as is apparent in several observed instances, the esker-building stream on reaching the obstruction ceased to flow.

The idea that sub-glacial and englacial streams may receive tributaries at any angle with the trend of their channel, and situated in any plane from horizontal to vertical, may at first seem novel, but is consistent with the conditions pertaining to tunnels in ice. The fact that eskers frequently branch or are joined by lateral or secondary ridges, has long been known, and is explained on the hypothesis that the streams which formed them were connected after the manner of surface streams. It is evident, however, that the conditions pertaining to streams flowing in tunnels or caverns, differ from those controlling the development of surface streams, and that tributaries may join them from the side at the same level, or descend obliquely or even vertically through the enclosing ice forming their roofs. The deposits made by tributaries which joined an esker-building stream at greater or less vertical angle, but not vertically, would be displaced when the enclosing ice melted, and the record destroyed, but in the case of vertical tributaries, if deposition occurred, heaps of débris similar to alluvial cones and eskers might remain intact.

The reasons for sags and notches in the crests of eskers, and the presence of gaps which divide them into segments, may, perhaps, be best understood when it is remembered that eskers are stream deposits and represent the "fills" that sub-glacial streams have made in the process of aggrading their beds, and establishing an even gradient. Streams flowing in tunnels which are not completely filled, grade their channels in the same manner as surface streams; that is, by filling depressions, and cutting at localities where the current is sufficiently swift to bear along all the débris present, thus preventing sedimentation.

If a stream flowing through a glacial tunnel completely fills its conduit, the water will be under pressure, as, for example, in the case of the water-mains of a city supplied by a reservoir at a higher level, and deposition of débris might occur, but under different conditions than if the tunnel was not completely occupied. In a tunnel without a uniform gradient, and varying from place to place, in area of cross section, it is evident that sedimentation might occur in depressions of the bottom and where the opening was exceptionally wide, even though completely occupied by water. In this manner deposits might be made in certain portions of an ice tunnel and not in other portions.

Before attempting to apply the principles briefly stated above, in explaining the irregularities of eskers which are depressed below the general level of their crests, one should know whether the streams in glacial tunnels completely fill them or not. In this connection observations show that both conditions are present in the tunnels beneath existing glaciers, and as there is no reason for doubting, the same is true concerning the tunnels in former ice-sheets. The most rational conclusion concerning esker-building streams, seems to be that they flowed through irregular tunnels, and at certain localities eroded their bottoms and at other localities made deposits upon them. The conditions seem to have been the counterpart of what may be observed in caverns at the present time, as the Mammoth Cave, for example, through which streams are flowing. Such subterranean streams, as is well known, in portions of their courses do not completely fill the caverns, but behave in essentially the same manner as surface streams, and in other portions of their courses do completely occupy the opening, in the same manner as the water in the water-mains of a city.

Sub-glacial and en-glacial streams, as it appears from the above brief discussion, should deposit débris at certain localities, and corrade their channels at other localities. The bottom of a glacial tunnel may consist of drift or rock or of ice, or of rock in part and in part of ice, and in localities where drift or rock was corraded, a channel should remain as a record of the streams' work when the glacier melts. A case in point is the notch in a drumlin near Spalding, described on page 44, which is in line with the eskers extending in each direction from it. If one portion of the floor of a glacial tunnel is composed of ice and adjacent portions consisted of stream deposited débris, when the glacier melts, a break would appear in the esker left exposed, thus explaining the gaps that form such a common feature of most gravel ridges of the class under consideration. The sags and notches in eskers evidently permit of a similar explanation.

So long as a stream does not completely fill the glacial tunnel through which it flows, and this, as it seems, is the most usual condition, it would tend, especially if heavily loaded with débris (which is also a normal condition), to establish a uniform gradient through the combined action of corrasion and deposition, in the same manner as surface streams. Hence, in general, the crest line of an esker should have an even descent in the direction of flow of the stream to which it is due, unless deformation of the deposit has occurred since the melting of the glacier within which it was formed, or material has not been laid down upon it.

This principle furnishes an important aid in the study of eskers, and should apply to all such deposits unless they were formed by streams that completely filled the tunnels through which they flowed. Such a condition, however, was seemingly of rare occurrence, and a temporary phase in the history of a given stream.

Having ascertained the normal gradient of an esker, special explanations should be sought for knolls and hillocks situated on it, due, in part if not generally, to deposits made by vertical or nearly vertical tributary streams, and for sags, notches and gaps, due, in general, to the melting of the sub-esker ice or of ice which formed the floor of the esker-building streams at localities were deposition of gravel, sand, etc., did not occur, or were small in amount. In addition to these two classes of irregularities, there are frequently others due to the displacement of the deposit on account of the melting of the glaciers in which it was accumulated, thus removing lateral support. Such irregularities, however, are usually easily assigned to their true cause, for the reason that the displaced material is near at hand and, as in the case of a landslide, corresponds in volume, etc., with the notch or sag from which it was derived.

*Kames:* On formerly glaciated areas there frequently occur knolls and hills known as kames, which are composed, principally, of gravel and sand, which, in some instances, contain till masses, irregular stones and even large boulders.

These piles of water-laid débris sometimes form isolated conical hills, but more often are indefinitely grouped and annear as irregular mounds, hills and short ridges, with depressions and undrained basins among them. The height of the piles is as irregular as their shape, but frequently ranges from fifty to seventy feet and, at times, exceeds one hundred feet. Their irregular shapes frequently cause them to resemble dump-moraines. In many instances such piles of stratified material merge with true moraines, and it is evident that a glacier and the streams flowing from it deposited débris in the same or closely associated areas. When two or more isolated kames or groups of kames occur in the vicinity of each other, their general alignment records the position occupied by the margin of a glacier during its retreat, in much the same manner as do terminal moraines.

The conditions which controlled the formation of kames, were evidently various, but they are distinctly stream-formed in association with glaciers. A stream on leaving a glacier, usually experiences an abrupt decrease in gradient, and for this reason being no longer able to continue to transport the débris carried in its swifter upper courses, lays it aside. This process is the same as that by which surface streams form alluvial cones, but the ice against which the alluvial deposit rested in the case of the alluvial cone of a glacial stream finally melts, leaving the accumulation in what may be termed a free or detached position.

In distinction from eskers, the class of glacial-stream deposits here considered, seems to have been laid down principally by streams flowing down the surface of glaciers, rather than in tunnels, and to have deposited débris on leaving the ice. This distinction is not strictly true, however, since any stream leaving a glacier, whether it emerges from a tunnel or not, might undergo an abrupt decrease in gradient and thus be forced to lay aside a portion of its load. But in most instances the streams flowing on the surfaces of glaciers appear to be the ones that make the most voluminous and most conspicuous deposits about their borders.

The mental picture of the most usual conditions under which kames were found, embraces a bold ice front with notches or embayments in its margin, due to the melting of the ice by outflowing streams, and serving to concentrate the water furnished by the melting of the ice. The embayments, as is illustrated about the margins of certain of the glaciers of Alaska, being of the nature of steep-sided valleys or canyons with walls of ice. Into these depressions the streams from the glaciers brought débris, and as their currents slackened, owing to a flattening of their gradients, or perhaps greater freedom for the water to expand laterally, sedimentation took place. The deposits rested on or against the margin of the glacier, and when the glacier receded they were left as isolated piles. When ice was present beneath them, their irregularities were increased when it melted.

Another variation in the combined process of glacial and stream work, which should be considered, is, as is well known, that the streams flowing on the surface of glaciers frequently enter crevasses which are enlarged by melting until they become well-like openings, termed moulins. A stream in plunging into a moulin carries with it the débris it sweeps along, and boulders may also fall into the opening from its walls or from the adjacent surface. The conditions at the bottom of a moulin are usually considered as favoring erosion, and the pot-holes present in many glaciated regions are clear evidence that a conspicuous amount of grinding frequently takes place at the bottom of such glacial mills. Under other conditions, however, and especially if a large amount of débris is swept into a moulin, deposition might occur, and a deposit of irregularly bedded material result. This might happen, especially in a stagnant ice-sheet, and when the ice melted, a conical pile of irregularly bedded débris or a *kame,* would result. Certain conical kames, surprisingly regular in shape and standing on broad plains, can be best accounted for under the hypothesis just outlined, and are, in fact, the most complete alluvial cones that have been observed.

More or less extensive areas within which kames form the leading features of the topography, occur in various portions of the Menominee region, principally in valleys and near the present streams, but in certain instances, especially to the west of Iron Mountain, are present among morainal hills and in association with somewhat prominent hard-rock outcrops. The number of known kame areas is perhaps a score, and are indicated on the map forming Plate III, but the total number which would be discovered if the forested tracts were thoroughly traversed is, no doubt, several times as great. Only a few of the more characteristic examples that were observed can here be described, but these may be taken as types, and together with the general account of kames given above, will enable residents of the region under consideration to recognize other examples which may be known to them.

In the western portion of Mellen Township, Menominee County, in Section 21, T. 27 N., R. 34 W., there is a group of prominent sand-hills occupying an area of several score acres, the highest of which is a conical pile rising about 80 feet above the surrounding plain. The deposits consist almost entirely of yellowish quartz sand, and are sparsely clothed with vegetation. A person standing on the highest summit is enabled to see for a distance of many miles in all directions over the top of the forest growing on the surrounding country, and cannot avoid being impressed with the fact that the hill beneath his feet is a peculiar and exceptional topographic feature. No other similar hill can be recognized from its summit. It rises with steep slopes from a widely extended till-covered and in part sandy plain, and there seems no escape from the conclusion that it is a kame, composed of sand. The only explanation of its mode of origin which seems tenable, is that the sand of which it is composed was carried by water which flowed over the surface of a former glacier and entered an opening in the ice of the nature of a moulin, and there deposited its load. The glacier subsequently melted and the sand was left as a mound on the plain it vacated.

A mile or two to the west and southwest of the sand kame just described, and near Menominee River, there are several much lower knolls composed of sand and well-rounded gravel, which are evidently kames of the normal type. Much of the west-central portion of Mellen Township is occupied by sand resting on the universal till-sheet, which, at various localities, forms low hills and ridges resembling flattened and subdued dunes. Although much of the present relief of this deposit is plainly the result of the work of the wind, its concentration is seemingly due primarily to the action of glacial streams.

Conspicuous sand and gravel hills, with an irregular relief and surrounding undrained basins, occur about Wallace, near the center of Mellen Township, and illustrate the normal characteristics of kames.

In Stephenson Township, short eskers and kames are present in considerable numbers adjacent to the streams flowing to Haywood Lake, and also at numerous localities along the course of Cedar River. In fact, throughout the length of Cedar River and its principal tributaries, low mounds of sand and gravel are a feature of the smaller elements of the relief of the surface. In many instances these kames and also the eskers of the same region, are crossed by roads, and furnish gravel for road grading.

About Koss (or Fisher as it was formerly termed), where the Wisconsin and Michigan Railroad crosses Menominee River, about six miles west of Ingalls, there is an extensive group of hills and knolls of gravel and sand, interspersed with numerous undrained basins containing marshes and lakelets, which furnish typical illustrations of kame topography. The hills rise with steep slopes, some 50 to 60 feet above the adjacent basins, certain of which contain perhaps 10 to 20 feet of water and peaty material. Adjacent to this deposit of outwash débris and merging with it on the east and south, there are low hills and ridges composed of till, which are morainic in character, and, as previously stated, record a halt in the eastward recession of the last ice-sheet which covered the region.

Irregular knolls, composed of sand and gravel with swampy areas interspersed among them, form a characteristic feature of the surface over an area of several square miles situated to the south and southeast of Waucedah, and are a part of the series of kames associated with the moraine previously described which margins the west side of Menominee County, and extends northward across the southeast corner of Dickinson County.

At Big Quinnesec Falls, and extending north to the base of the prominent hill east of Iron Mountain, there is a series of kames, associated with a small terminal moraine, and having undrained basins among them. Similar hills occur about Fumee and Antoine Lakes, and also throughout an area of several square miles adjacent to Menominee River on the east, at Twin Falls.

Kames are present, also, at several localities in Iron County, as, for example, about the town site named Balsam, and in the valleys of Hemlock and Little Helmolck Rivers, near Amasa. Again, in the valley of the Bois Brulé, from near Armstrong down stream to the junction of that river with Paint River, there are many gravel knolls, adjacent to basins several of which hold lakes and swamps, which have characteristics of kames. The valley of the Bois Brulé, however, is in general a pitted sand and gravel plain, as will be described later, and it is difficult to discriminate between the hills and ridges of the in part conspicuously pitted plain, and true kames.

The journey which furnished the data for this report did not permit of such an examination of the country visited as would admit of the mapping of all the kame areas. Even those which were discovered were not in all cases completely examined, for the reason that they are usually forest covered, and more time would be required to traverse them than was available.

*Kame Terraces:* When a glacier occupies the central portion of a valley, but fails to fill it from side to side, débris washed from the adjacent uplands or contributed by the glacier itself, may accumulate in depressions between the ice and the sides of the valley, and when the glacier melts, deposits of débris formed in this manner, are left as terraces on the sides of the depression it occupied. Such shelves or steps are analogous to kames but have the general characteristics of terraces and are termed kame-terraces.

The conditions leading to the formation of kame-terraces are not confined to narrow valleys, however, but whenever there is a depression between the border of a glacier of any type, and adjacent uplands, it may become more or less completely occupied by débris, and when the glacier melts, a terrace-like deposit remains on the slope formerly bordered by the ice.

Kame-terraces may be composed wholly of gravel and sand. but they frequently contain angular stones and boulders especially on the border formerly margined by a glacier. In some cases, also, the margin of the terrace which was formerly supported by ice, is higher than its general surface, but this is not a distinctive feature. Then, too, the marginal escarpment of such a deposit which was formerly supported by ice is usually conspicuously steep, and at times suffers deformation, owing to the occurrence of land slides.

In the Menominee region, during the melting of the last ice-sheet which formerly occupied it, the margin of the glacier withdrew eastward, but its front was irregular and tongues of ice simulating valley glaciers, lingered in the depressions trending east and west, after the intervening uplands had become uncovered. The ice lingering in the valley melted most rapidly on its borders, particularly where the adjacent land rose steeply, and in the depressions thus produced débris was deposited. Where the land sloped southward the conditions were more favorable for this process than where northern slopes descended to an ice margin, but still more favorable conditions seem to have been furnished where the eastern end of a hill or ridge between two ice tongues, occupied a reentrant angle between them. In brief, as the ice withdrew towards the east, kame-terraces were formed in several instances on the sides and particularly at the eastern ends of the steeper and more prominent hills.

Perhaps the best examples of kame-terraces in the region here considered, occur at Norway, on the eastern and southern slopes of the hill which rises to the west of the town. The higher portion of the town itself is situated on the deposit referred to. The terrace is composed of fine yellow sand, which is banked against the hill-side, and presents a steep escarpment towards the adjacent valley. The terrace has a maximum width of perhaps two or three hundred yards, is essentially level, and has an elevation of about 1,035 feet. Its surface is 60 to 70 feet above the sandy plain at the foot of its margining escarpment. Its valley border is conspicuously irregular in ground plan, and an eastward extension from its main portion forms a narrow flat topped ridge with precipitous borders, nearly half a mile long, which terminates at the east at a rugged knob of solid rock near the Curry Mine. The knob of rock referred to, forms the western border of the former stream channel or spill-way, already described on page 53, on the eastern border of which is another similar rocky eminence. To the east of the second knob mentioned, and resting against the slope of the bold hill next east of Norway, there is another sand terrace on the same level as the one on which the western portion of the city is situated. These two terraces were no doubt formerly united, but have been separated by stream erosion.

It is apparent that the sand forming the terraces at Norway could not have been deposited in its present position unless the margins of the deposits facing the adjacent valley had been supported. The support, as already suggested, was furnished by an ice body which occupied the valley, the surface of which was at least as high as and no doubt considerably above, the level of the surface of the terrace. The margin of the ice was irregular and gave an irregular outer border to the sand deposited against it. A narrow opening was present between the ice which occupied the valley of Menominee River to the south of the site of Norway, and a similar ice body in the valley of Pine Creek to the north of that locality, and in this opening the sand forming the flat-topped ridge mentioned above was deposited. When the ice which occupied the valleys melted, the sand on its border, in part, flowed down into the space it vacated, producing the present marginal slope of the deposit.

Other deposits similar in character and mode of origin, to the kame-terraces at Norway, occur at several localities in the adjacent region, but none of them, so far as known, consist of such well-assorted sand.

At Quinnesec a terrace, composed of sand and gravel, banked against a southward and eastward facing hill-side, presents a steep slope some 40 feet high, towards the adjacent valley, and illustrates the normal characteristics of kame-terraces. Again, at a locality between one and two miles west of Quinnesec, adjacent to the wagon road leading to Iron Mountain, there is a similar terrace composed principally of sand, which rests against a southward sloping hillside, and presents a steep escarpment some 60 feet high, facing the valley on the south. Still other examples of a similar character occur on the sides or ends of rocky hills in the vicinity of Iron Mountain, etc., and, no doubt, when the region is more completely studied, many additional examples of like character will be discovered.

While the presence of kame terraces is to be expected, particularly along the southern border and at the eastern ends of the higher hills in the Menominee region, it does not follow that they will invariably occur at localities where the topographic conditions are favorable for their production. In the case of ice-sheets bordering uplands, tunnels in the ice may permit of the escape of the water which would otherwise be wholly or in part ponded in marginal depressions, as is well illustrated in the case of the Malaspina glacier, Alaska, at the present time, and the formation of kame terraces be prevented.

*Sand and Gravel Plains:* In a brief account given above, of the characteristics and mode of origin of kame-terraces, no limits were stated in reference to the breadths such deposits might attain. If a broad glacier or a lobe of a continental glacier withdraws down the slope of a region, it is evident that kame terraces of such great width might be produced, that they would lose their terrace-like aspects and become sand and gravel plains. The withdrawal of an ice-sheet, however, in the manner referred to, frequently leads to a ponding of water and lakes are formed. In some instances both of these results follow the withdrawal of an ice-sheet and kame terraces margining sheets of lacustral sediment are left.

Again, if an ice-sheet recedes from a region whose downward slope is in the opposite direction from the line of ice retreat, that is, away from the glacier border, the streams flowing from the melting glacier may be so heavily loaded with débris that deposition will occur when they leave the ice and continue in channels with a less gradient than they had above that locality. In this manner deposits of sand and gravel, known as *valley trains, outwash aprons*, etc., are produced. Such accumulations present a wide range of variation, dependent principally on the nature of the load with which the glacial streams were supplied, its amount relative to the volume and velocity of the streams, the topography of the land on which deposition occurred, coarseness or fineness of the débris transported, and still other conditions.

One feature of outwash deposits of special significance, is that their generally level or gently undulating surfaces, in numerous instances, contain basins or pits, with steep borders composed of the same kind of material as the surrounding plain. These basins frequently contain swamps or lakelets. The depressions vary in size from a few rods to a mile or more in diameter, and may be nearly circular or conspicuously irregular in outline. In some instances they are widely scattered and furnish an exceptional feature in the topography of the broad plains in which they occur, and in other instances are so numerous and closely set that they are the leading factors in the relief of areas embracing several square miles.

The explanation of the mode of origin of the pits and basins referred to is that the sand and gravel forming the plains in which they occur, was spread out by streams over bodies of ice or surrounded isolated ice-masses, and that when the ice melted cavities resulted.

Two leading variations in the topographic conditions in connection with which sand and gravel plains are produced, were noted above; one in which a glacier in its retreat withdraws down the slope it occupies and plains of the nature of broad kame-terraces are produced by the deposition of débris in the space vacated by the ice; and the other, when the downward slope of the region in front or margining a glacier draining it, had freedom to flow away. Each of these combinations of conditions formerly obtained in the Menominee region.

A highly characteristic feature of the relief of the land building each side of Menominee River, from the vicinity of Vulcan, westward to the locality where Paint and Bois Brulé rivers unite to form the main stream, is the presence of broad sand and gravel plains, which at numerous localities have pitted surfaces. Continuations of this same series of alluvial deposits occur along Paint and Bois Brulé Rivers, and on a less extensive scale adjacent to the Michigamme, Iron and other streams of the same system. Bordering the smaller streams, however, and on the upper or headward portions of the larger tributaries of the Menominee, the sand and gravel deposits in the valleys are narrow, and form alluvial terraces.

The general sequence of events which should be retained in mind while studying the valley gravel just referred to, is that the last ice-sheet of the Menominee region, which occupied the country to the east of Chicagon Lake, receded eastward, as already stated, or down the slope of the land. That is, the land drained by Menominee River was first freed from ice near the head waters of the tributaries of that stream and the margin of the glacier withdrew in the same general direction that the river flows. This process was equivalent to the recession of a dam down the course of the river, and a succession of lakes would have been produced, had it not been that the land to the south was in general low and of mild relief, and the water escaped in that direction at different localities as the ice margin receded. So far as known, the records of only one glacial lake in the region here considered, are at present distinguishable. The lake referred to occupied the valley of Sturgeon River, where it merges with the valley of the Menominee, as will be described later.

The control that the receding glacier exerted on the direction of flow finally assumed by the Menominee is indicated by the fact that each of its principal bends, as one descends its course, forms an offset to the south. This may be seen by inspecting the map forming Plate III, and indicates that the river was striving, so to speak, to follow an eastward course, but was turned southward each time the glacier halted. There is also a direct relation between the principal right-hand bends of the river, and the moraines which cross its course or margin its left bank.

The water concentrated in front of the receding glacier was supplied in part by its melting, but principally by streams from the still ice-covered land lying to the north, and deposited vast quantities of débris, thus aggrading the valleys through which it flowed. The courses of the heavily loaded glacial streams, may be traced by the abundant deposits they left, which have since been modified in only a minor way, and, as is judged but not as yet demonstrated by observation, the southward deflection of the Menominee referred to above, should be recorded by extensive valley trains on the Wisconsin side of its present course.

At localities where the glacier halted during its retreat, moraines and kames were deposited, on the outer or western border of which alluvial plains were spread out. This process was repeated several times during the ice retreats and alluvial plains at successively lower levels resulted.

In the description of local examples of alluvial deposits, which follows, attention is directed principally to the broad sand and gravel plains, but it should be remembered that these are a part of an extended system of valley gravels, which extends widely throughout the low-lands of the portion of Northern Michigan under consideration. Where the valleys are narrow, the alluvium in their bottom appears for the most part in stream terraces, owing to the fact that the streams have deepened their channels since the time active aggradation was in progress; and where the valleys are broad, extensive sand and gravel plains still remain, and are essentially wide terraces bordering the narrow channels which the streams that formed them have since excavated. The entire system of valley deposits along the Menominee and its principal branches, is for the most part in adjustment in reference to surface slope, and has a descent in the direction in which the present streams flow, but the surface slope of the highest of the terraces and of the sand and gravel plains is a little greater than the gradient of the present streams. Exceptions to this generalization are furnished by alluvial deposits in valleys which at present have no surface streams, and by localities where the direction of flow of the glacial streams was different from that of their modern representatives.

In the following account of the sand and gravel plains of the Menominee region they are considered in their general order from west to east, in which direction also they occur at successively lower and lower horizons.

A characteristic sand plain about a square mile in area, occurs in the valley of Paint River, at Atkinson, Iron County. Its surface elevation is about 1,480 feet, or from 30 to 40 feet above the river which has cut a channel across it. The plain is occupied by an open growth of jack-pine, and its usual associates—illustrative of the response of vegetation to soil conditions. Rising through the sand plain there is a prominent rocky crag, forming a rugged island-like elevation about 80 feet high, from the summit of which a comprehensive idea of the relief of the region about it may be obtained. Along Paint River, below the sand plain, there are characteristic stream terraces. As is judged from the data given on the contour map forming the Iron River quadrangle, published by the U. S. Geological Survey, a sand plain similar to the one at Atkinson, with a surface elevation of 1,430 feet A. T. is present at the mouth of Net River.

To the north and east of Crystal Falls, there is a good example of the several sand and gravel plains to which attention is here invited. The outline of the plain is irregular as it extends into lateral valleys opening from the one through which Paint River flows, and its monotony is broken by a number of rocky hills, in some instances coated with ten to twenty feet of reddish till, which rise above its surface like islands, to heights ranging from a few to over a hundred feet. By estimate, the area of the plain is about four square miles, but on the east and northwest, it merges with extensive swampy tracts which may be underlain by an extension of the same sheet of sand and gravel. Sunken in the portion of the plain situated on the east side of Paint River, opposite Crystal Falls, is the basin of Runkle's Lake, which is eight-tenths of a mile long from east to west, and on an average one-fourth of a mile wide, and is without a surface outlet. The banks of the lake are approximately thirty feet high, and several soundings in its central portion gave a depth of thirty-seven feet of water. This is a typical example of the numerous lakes in the western portion of the Menominee region, which occupy pits or depressions in sand and gravel plains. As the conditions present clearly indicate, the basin of Runkle's Lake was formerly occupied by an isolated or residual mass of glacial ice which was left in the central part of the valley after its marginal portions had melted, and became surrounded with stream deposited sand and gravel. Other depressions in the surface of the plain can be satisfactorily accounted for on the hypothesis that ice has melted from beneath or within it, and that irregular settling of the material of which it is composed has taken place.

Since the plain was formed, Paint River has cut a channel through it, and reached the underlying bed rock at the small cascade from which the town of Crystal Falls derived its name. The sections exposed in the banks of the river, as well as the depth of Runkle's Lake, show that the sand and gravel deposit is, in general, about seventy feet thick, but the surface on which it rests is irregular, and, as stated above, eminences rising from it in several instances extend above its present surface. Beneath the sand and gravel, as is the case generally beneath similar plains of the same region, there is a sheet of reddish, sandy and bouldery till, of the same character as that blanketing the uplands. Paint River in deepening its channel in the vicinity of Crystal Falls, after the sand and gravel plain was formed, removed the finer débris it encountered, but left the larger boulders. The effect of this process of concentration of coarse material, and particularly of large boulders, is well shown on the sloping surface in the eastern portion of Crystal Falls, adjacent to the river.

The surface elevation of the sand and gravel plain about Runkle's Lake, and of its extension northward along Paint River for some four miles, is about 1,390 feet. The surface rises gradually, however, towards the northwest, or up stream in reference to the direction of flow of Paint River. The presence of this gradient is difficult to demonstrate, owing to local irregularities and minor undulations, but can be detected by using a hand level. A rise is also apparent when the plain is traced into the tributary valley opening northward from it, through which no streams at present descend. The significance of these conditions is that the sand and gravel flooring of the valley was deposited by several streams, but chiefly by the main river. Consistent with this deduction is the fact that the narrow valley of Paint River, to the northwest of the broad sand and gravel plain north of Crystal Falls, is, in part, occupied by an extension of the same deposit, through which the river has excavated a channel, leaving well-defined alluvial terraces.

During the time Paint River was re-excavating its channel as just stated, new streams were developed on the sand and gravel plain, and became tributary to it. One of these streams has its source near the southern border of Runkle's Lake, and joins Paint River about a mile south of Crystal Falls. It is a mere brook about a mile long, which is in adjustment at its mouth with the river to which it is tributary, and has excavated a steep-sided channel, some thirty feet deep. The brook is supplied principally by the percolation of water from its banks and by springs near the head of the more northern of the two branches into which it divides. Attention is here directed to the brook, not only because it is an example of a number of streams which have originated on sand and gravel plains, and are engaged in the process of dissecting them, but for the reason that the springs, which are its main source of supply, are fed principally by water derived from Runkle's Lake. The water percolating through the sand and gravel forming the borders of the basin of the lake, emerges as a series of springs at the head of the gulch the brook has excavated, and an extension of the gulch headward, due to the undermining of the banks above the springs by outflowing water, is in progress. The distance from the lake to where the springs appear, is in the neighborhood of a thousand feet. If the present process continues, as no doubt it will, an instructive example of an enclosed lake acquiring a surface outlet may be witnessed in the course of a few years.

The plain about Runkle's Lake is bordered on the south by a descending escarpment about forty feet high, which divides it from a far larger plain of similar character, bordering Paint River on each side, and extending south to Menominee River. The full extent of the plain is unknown, but its area is not less than fifty square miles. It has also a broad development on the south side of Menominee River, as for example, about Florence, and the portion in Wisconsin is thought to be of even greater area than the portion situated in Michigan. The boundaries of the portion of the plain on the north side of Menominee River, are indicated in part on the map forming Plate III, but its eastern border has not been determined. Such facts as are known concerning its eastern margin, however, indicate that it extends some two to four or five miles east of Michigamme River, in the lower six or eight miles of its course. Its limit on the east seems to be determined by a moraine which crossed Menominee River between three and six miles below the mouth of the Michigamme.

The general surface level of the plain is about 1,370 feet, but many extensive portions are below this horizon, and numerous depressions, basins and pits, are also present, some of which have a depth of forty to sixty or more feet, and, in a number of instances, are occupied by swamps and lakelets.

The plain is about thirty feet lower than the one in which Runkle's Lake is situated, and, as stated above, the descent from the higher to the lower plain is abrupt. At the locality where the change occurs, about a mile southeast of Crystal Falls, the valley of Paint River, at the level of the higher plain, is less than a mile wide, and is bordered on each side by till-covered uplands. The presence of till in the escarpment separating the two plains, suggests that a moraine there crosses the valley, but in this connection the information in hand is inconclusive.

The fact that the two plains just referred to are at different elevations, as well as the abruptness of the escarpment separating them, suggest that the higher one was formed while a receding glacier still occupied the country to the south. This explanation is consistent with the history of other similar plains farther down the course of the Menominee, but difficulties in the way of accepting it, without the support of more evidence than has as yet been obtained, are suggested by the fact that no avenue for the escape of the water which assisted in forming the higher plains—under the supposition that the narrows a mile south of Crystal Falls were closed by ice at the time the higher plain was formed—has been found. A suggestion, however, may be offered in this connection, namely, that an escape for the water was provided by a tunnel in the ice.

The next extensive sand and gravel plain to the southeast of the one just described, begins at the north in the vicinity of Twin Falls and extends along Menominee River to Big Quinnesec Falls. Its general surface level in its broadest portion, to the south of Iron Mountain, is about 1,130 feet, or approximately 240 feet lower than the similar plain near Crystal Falls. The present descent of Menominee River in the same distance is approximately 200 feet, or something less than the difference in surface elevation of the two plains.

At Big Quinnesec Falls, and extending north to the base of the bold hill situated east of Iron Mountain, there is a small knob and basin moraine, with associated kames, as briefly described on a preceding page. This short range of till and gravel hills intervene between a gravel plain to the west, the one referred to in the preceding paragraph, and another similar plain to the east, which has a surface elevation of 1,120 to 1,130 feet. That is, the surface of the plain on the east side is about 100 feet lower than the surface of the similar plain on the west side of the intervening moraine.

The higher plain is conspicuously pitted near its junction with its limiting moraines, thus indicating that the margin of the glacier which built the moraine, and associated kame, became buried beneath the sand and gravel deposited about its border. The higher summits of the till and gravel hills referred to, rise about sixty feet above the surface of the plain to the west, and the depressions between them are on a level with it.

The evidence just outlined, shows that the last glacier which withdrew eastward from the Menominee region, halted for a time at the locality where the moraines and kames extending north from Big Quinnesec Falls, is located, and to the west of its margin an extensive sand and gravel plain was formed.

The sand and gravel forming the plain was contributed principally by Menominee River, as is shown by the fact that its surface rises when followed up the course of that stream.

Although the plain is conspicuously flat, and seemingly horizontal over an area of about four square miles, just above its bordering moraines, the same deposit, when traced northward to the vicinity of Twin Falls, about eleven miles up stream, measured along the windings of the river, rises gradually to about 1,100 feet. Extensions of the same deposit, near Twin Falls, which were laid down by small streams coming from the uplands to the northeast, also have an upward gradient towards the sources of the streams with which they are associated.

Since the alluvial plain extending west and north from Big Quinnesec Falls, was formed, the Menominee has excavated a channel through the deposit, leaving well-defined terraces on the borders of the recent channel. In the process of re-excavation, the river was lowered upon an eminence in the bed rock at Big Quinnesec Falls, and a channel about 100 feet deep and a mile in length has since been excavated in the highly resistant material encountered.

It was the discovery of a rocky eminence beneath the sand and gravel of the plain which led to the origin of Big Quinnesec Falls, and of the Horse Race rapids above them. The work the river has done since its present course was established, is shown principally by the steep-sided canyon above the falls, a photograph of which is presented on Plate IB.

The sand and gravel plain below Big Quinnesec Falls, extends down the course of the Menominee to the vicinity of Vulcan, and there terminates abruptly against another small moraine trending north and south, which meets the river about half a mile west of the mouth of Sturgeon River. The relation of this plain to its limiting moraine, is essentially the same as the relation of the plain above Big Quinnesec Falls to the moraine with which it is associated. The lower plain is conspicuously pitted near its junction with the small moraine south of Vulcan, showing that in part the débris of which it is composed was deposited on or about residual masses of ice. Its surface, although seemingly level in its broader portions between the pits and basins and where spared by recent stream erosion, descends from about 1,020 feet near Quinnesec to approximately 900 feet adjacent to its limiting moraine. This descent is not gradual, however, but occurs principally on the west border of the small stream tributary to the Menominee, which has its source in the city of Norway. This valley was not excavated by the brook flowing through it, but the brook inherited the depression so to speak, from the preceding glacier. It is conspicuously irregular in outline, floored in part by till and bordered by escarpments of sand and gravel, which rise steeply to the border of the adjacent plain. The plain to the west has a surface elevation of about 1,020 feet, and extends westward to the moraine at Big Quinnesec Falls, and the much smaller plain on the east has an elevation of 900 to 920 feet, and merges with the moraine south of Vulcan.

The significance of the conditions just described is that the irregular valley, now occupied by the brook which flows southeast past Norway, was occupied by ice during the time the adjacent sand and gravel deposits were laid down, and is of the nature of a large pit or basin, similar in origin to the more definite and usually smaller and more regular pits in the surface of outwash deposits formed on the margins of glaciers.

The sand and gravel plain below Big Quinnesec Falls, like the similar plains up stream from that locality, has been extensively eroded by Menominee River, and conspicuous terraces produced, especially on the north side of the recent channel. The lowest of the step-like shelves in the series is the present flood plain of the river, which, in places is half a mile wide. Little Quinnesec Falls came into existence when Menominee River, in deepening its channel in the broad alluvial plain it had previously spread out, encountered an eminence in the bed rock beneath. The history of the falls is essentially the same as in the case of Big Quinnesec Falls, referred to above.

The thickness of the sand and gravel forming the plain below Big Quinnesec Falls, as shown by sections in the borders of the recent channel, is, in general, about eighty feet. Beneath the alluvium, is a sheet of reddish till, which is of the same character, and plainly a part of the extensive sheets of the same nature as the veneer of till on the adjacent uplands.

*Special Features:* The examinations that have been made of the sand and gravel plains briefly described above, serve to illustrate certain characteristics pertaining to such deposits, more completely than has, perhaps, previously been described.

One instructive series of facts is that the plains are not horizontal but have a downward slope in the direction of flow of the streams that formed them. Again, they are compound deposits and along each stream entering the depressed areas where they occur, extensions from their main or central portions are present, each tributary having a downward-sloping surface corresponding essentially with the grade of its associated stream, but as it seems with a somewhat steeper slope. In some instances extensions of the main alluvial deposits occupy valleys or depressions in which there are at present no surface streams. On leaving the broader portions of the deposits, where they form extensive plains, and entering the tributary valleys, one finds that the plain-like character changes to a narrow, valley-floor of alluvium, which, if trenched by a stream, is usually terraced on the sides of the channel that has been excavated.

The general features just referred to show that even the broader plains were stream-formed, and do not differ in mode of origin from the alluvial terraces of many stream valleys.

The surfaces of the alluvial deposits where they form plains tens of square miles in area, are not in general flat, as they would appear if affected only by the gentle slope the depositing stream gave them, but broadly undulating, and consist of a series of gentle swells perhaps half a mile or a mile across, separated by usually narrower depressions. The difference in elevation between the swells and sags, is, in general, some twenty or thirty feet.

The reason for this unevenness of surface seems to be due to unequal settling of the deposits in various parts since they were laid down. The depressions, however, merge by insensible gradations with well-defined basins and pits, such as are due to the melting of ice which was at one time covered or surrounded by the deposits, and some of the broad undulations may have been produced by a similar cause.

The bottoms of the larger and better defined basins and depressions are, in some instances, floored with till, and occasionally the elevations of the surface of the till rise higher than the surrounding plain of sand and gravel. In some instances, also, a depression of this nature is margined for a part of its periphery by till hills, and throughout the remaining part, by a sand and gravel plain. These features evidently indicate that the basin was formerly occupied by ice, thus preventing the deposition of alluvium. At times the isolated ice masses lay adjacent to till hills and were only partially surrounded by alluvium, and, in other instances, were completely margined by the alluvial deposits.

In association with certain well-defined pits in the plain to the south of Iron Mountain, there are large boulders imbedded in the sand and gravel deposit. One of these, exposed in a cut on the line of the Chicago, Milwaukee and St. Paul Railroad, about half a mile north of

Menominee River, is shown in the photograph forming Plate VIIB. To the north of where the boulder occurs, and beginning about 700 feet distant from it, is an extensive group of pits and basins. The explanation of the presence of the boulders in the midst of a broad deposit of sand and gravel, at a distance of fully two miles from the nearest upland, is that it was contained in or, rested upon the surface of a detached mass of ice, which, on melting, gave origin to the neighboring depressions. This suggestion needs further confirmation, but, as it seems, the boulder rolled to its present position from the surface of an elevated mass of ice, which formerly occupied the depression referred to. Another suggestion which is pertinent in this connection, is that the boulder may have been carried to its present position by the stream which deposited the associated sand and gravel, assistance having been had from ice frozen to the stone. This process is illustrated, at the present time, by our northern rivers which break their coverings of ice during spring freshets and boulders buoyed up by attached ice are floated down their courses.

In one instance, about a quarter of a mile north of Menominee River, midway between the upper and lower Twin Falls, a depression in a sand and gravel deposit is margined for about two-thirds of its periphery by a raised rim of till. The basin is approximately five or six hundred feet across, and the rim partially enclosing it some twenty to forty feet high. In this instance, the débris composing the raised rim, seems to have come from the ice body which formerly occupied the depression.

The reason why elevated rims about the pits in sand and gravel plains are not more common, and also the scarcity of large boulders in the vicinity of such depressions as in this bottom, is, as one seems justified in concluding, because on the melting of the ice which once occupied the depressions, the adjacent material left unsupported, flowed into the cavities that were left, and the material which immediately margined the ice, was displaced and more or less completely buried.

### *The Sturgeon Plain.*

To the east of the small moraine south of Vulcan, referred to above, there is a plain with a remarkably even and nearly flat surface, some four or five square miles in area, across which Sturgeon River flows in a narrow channel, for about four miles on nearing its junction with Menominee River. The plain is about half a mile wide where it margins Menominee River, but from a mile to two miles up the course of Sturgeon River, widens to two miles, and again contracts when followed farther to the northeast, and unites in the vicinity of Loretto, with ordinary alluvial terraces in the narrow valley which continues far to the northward. The surface of the deposit declines in the direction the Sturgeon River flows, but in its expanded lower portion is a seemingly flat plain. The material of which the deposit is composed, is, in large part, a coarse, well-worn gravel near Loretto, but in the plain near the Menominee, consists of exceedingly fine silt, which forms a layer about ten feet thick resting on coarse gravel.

The features of the alluvial deposit just referred to, and still others which it does not seem necessary to record at this time, indicate that it was laid down principally by Sturgeon River, and is of the same character as the Glacial or post-Glacial alluvium in many neighboring valleys, except in its broadly expanded southern portion adjacent to Menominee River. In this part the fineness of the silt of which it is composed and its essentially flat surface, shows that the waters of Sturgeon and Menominee Rivers were ponded and formed a lake at the time the silt was deposited. There are no terraces on the morainal hills bordering the plain, such as a deep lake might have been expected to leave, but the evidence indicates that the water was shallow, and the lake became completely filled with silt. The obstruction that held the lake was the rocky ridge which is crossed by Menominee River half a mile below the mouth of Sturgeon River and produced Sturgeon Falls. The river at the falls flows through a short post-Glacial gorge similar to the gorges at Little and Big Quinnesec Falls. The post-Glacial deepening of the channel of the Menominee at Sturgeon Falls has led to the drainage of the lake which formerly existed just above that locality, and permitted the streams, which subsequently flowed across its abandoned bed, to excavate channels in the silt of which it is composed, to a depth of between thirty and forty feet. The silt is yellowish or perhaps pinkish-brown in color, very fine in texture and sufficiently coherent to stand in vertical escarpments for several months and, as it appears, for one or two years. It is obscurely jointed, the joints being vertical or nearly so, and on the steep river banks favor the breaking away of portions of the material, leaving vertical and sometimes slightly overhanging escarpments.

Under the microscope, the silt is seen to consist principally of sharply angular quartz fragments, with which there are occasionally well-rounded sand grains of appreciably larger size. Some of the small angular grains adhere one to another as if lightly cemented, and as tests fail to show the presence of calcium carbonate, it is presumed the cementing material is silica or iron oxide. Occasionally a brownish or yellowish grain of some mineral other than quartz is present, which assists in giving a faint color to the material.

On subjecting a typical sample of the material to mechanical analysis, the results presented below, in the column headed silt, were obtained.

*Mechanical Analysis of Silt and Loess.*

| | Silt. | Loess. | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Material retained on a 12-mesh sieve[1]........ | 0.00 | 0.000 | per cent |
| Material retained on a 50-mesh sieve........ | 2.40 | 0.110 | per cent |
| Material retained on a 100-mesh sieve........ | 4.69 | 0.285 | per cent |
| Material retained on a 200-mesh sieve........ | 5.34 | 0.575 | per cent |
| Material passing a 200-mesh sieve............ | 82.57 | 99.030 | per cent |
| | 100.00 | 100.00 | per cent |
| Calcium carbonate, ($CaCO_3$)........... | None | 0.98 | per cent |

On examining the portions retained on the coarser sieves with a microscope, it was apparent that they consisted principally of masses of fine angular grains of the same character as those which passed through the 200-mesh sieve, but are adherent and apparently cemented together. Allowing for the grains thus united, it is judged that over ninety-five per cent of the material is sufficiently fine to pass through the finest sieve used.

---

[1] The sizes given refer to number of meshes to the linear inch.

10

The appearance of the silt in the field, and especially its yellowish color, evenness in texture, absence of stratification, and the manner in which it stands in vertical walls as well as its fineness of grain, etc., indicate a similarity to the loess of the Mississippi valley and other regions. Some comparison of the size of the grains composing the silt, and those of a typical sample of loess from near St. Louis, Mo., is given in the above table.

The Sturgeon River plain is highly favorable for agriculture, on account, as seems evident, of the physical condition of the soil, thus again suggesting a similiarity to loess. The silt, like the loess, also, is deficient in calcium carbonate, as is shown by the partial chemical analysis given above.

The incomplete comparison of the silt and loess, just made, is presented not only as an aid in describing the silt, but as a suggestion tending to strengthen the hypothesis that loess, in certain instances at least, is a stream deposited silt, and, in other instances, has been blown away from dry-flood plains and deposited on adjacent uplands.

The source of the quartz grains composing the silt of the Sturgeon plain is evidently the region occupied by crystalline rocks, presumably gneiss for the most part, which is drained by Sturgeon River. Some of the grains were, no doubt, derived from the quartzite near Loretto and perhaps also from the Potsdam sandstone in the same region. It is an assorted portion of the glacial meal which former ice-sheets ground from the surface of the rocks over which they passed.

The silt plain of Sturgeon River, as stated above, extends to Menominee River, on the north border of which it terminates in an escarpment about thirty-five feet high, which descends to the water. Adjoining the plain, and on a level with its surface, is a sand and gravel deposit which extends, for several miles, up the valley of the Menominee above the mouth of Sturgeon River, and forms a stream terrace. Below the highest terrace margining the river there are several other terraces. These features are similar to the corresponding records in many other portions of the valley of the Menominee, and of associated streams, but in one particular there is a conspicuous and instructive exception. On the north border of the river, a mile west of the mouth of Sturgeon River, there is a lake which is connected with the Menominee by a short water-way or bayou. The lake has an area of perhaps eight acres, and is adjacent on the west, to the south end of the small moraine referred to above as forming the west border of the Sturgeon plain. The basin of the lake is bordered on all sides by morainal hills and kames, except to the southwest where it is in part separated from Menominee River by conspicuous embankments of sandy gravel.

The conditions mentioned are represented on the photograph of a model of the lake basin and associated gravel deposits which form Plate XIIA. The model was made from the data presented on the contour map known as the Menominee Special Map, published by the U. S. Geological Survey, supplemented by field sketches, photographs, etc., but is not based on a detailed survey, and is to be considered simply as a sketch map. Photographs of the gravel bars partially enclosing the basin, are presented on Plate XIIB. The gravel bar marked A on the model, is a continuation eastward of the highest terrace on the north border of the valley of the Menominee upstream from the locality under consideration, and, as indicated in the illustration, is bounded on all sides, except the west, by a steep escarpment. The surface of the gravel bar is nearly level, and about thirty-five feet above the adjacent lake. Crossing the gravel bar near its west or proximal end, is an irregular steep-sided channel approximately seventy-five feet wide at the top, and about ten feet deep. This channel, at its southern end, opens out into the recent channel of the Menominee, and coinciding with it in elevation is a stream terrace. The bottom of the channel descends, when traced northward, to the level of the lake with the basin of which it communicates. This cross channel, is a small "hanging valley," its southwest end being above the bottom of the depression into which it opens. The appearance of the bar, as seen from the north shore of the lake it borders, is shown on Plate XIIB.

To the southeast of the broad distal end of the bar just described and also in part separating Menominee River from the adjacent lake, is another gravel deposit, having a tapering end which is curved and extends into the lake basin, as shown on Plate XIIA. Something of the form of this gravel spit may also be recognized in the photograph forming Plate XIIB., where it is marked by the letter B. This curved or hooked spit, like its associate, is composed of gravel and sand. Its broad southeast portion has the same elevation as its companion to the west of the bayou, and on the east expands and becomes a part of the adjacent Sturgeon plain. In reference to the direction of flow of Menominee River, the curved spit is directed up stream, and its curved distal end is prolonged into the lake basin.

Between the two gravel deposits, as shown in the accompanying illustrations, the ground is low and marshy, and during times of high water in Menominee River, is flooded, and the lake becomes larger than during low water stages.

The mode of origin of the gravel deposits to which attention has been invited, was as follows: The basin of the lake partially enclosed by them, is of the nature of a pot-hole, left when the last ice-sheet melted, which formerly covered the region. As the border of the former glacier withdrew eastward, the lower portion of the valley of Sturgeon River was occupied by a shallow lake, which extended into the valley of the Menominee up stream from the locality where the Sturgeon now joins it, and flooded the pot-hole referred to. The water contributed by the Menominee formed a current in the narrow arm of the former lake which it entered, and the débris brought by the river was deposited and formed the broad, flat-topped embankment to the west of the bayou. After this embankment had acquired its present form, a current from the west set across it and excavated the curving channel which crosses its distal portion. This cross channel continued to be occupied by water until the Menominee subsided to the level of the second terrace bordering its modern channel. At the same time that the western embankment was being built, an eddy flowed into the embayment formed by the lake basin from the southeast, and built the curved spit. When the lake, which occupied the Sturgeon plain, was drained, owing to the deepening of the channel of the Menominee at Sturgeon Falls, the river excavated its present channel, the depth of which is about thirty-five feet below the surface of the embankments under consideration.

The valley of Menominee River, for a distance of a few miles above the mouth of Sturgeon River, has, to a considerable extent, been cleared of its primeval forest, and is now under cultivation. The river terraces are well exposed, and together with the associated gravel embankment, moraines, kames, silt plains, etc., serve to make it one of the most instructive as well as one of the most beautiful portions of the Menominee region.

Below Sturgeon Falls, no alluvial deposits similar to the extensive sand and gravel plains, etc., have been definitely recognized on the Michigan side of the Menominee, but, as is presumed, extensive accumulations of the nature referred to, will be discovered, when search is made for them, on the Wisconsin side of the river.

### *Post-Glacial Stream Erosion.*

Since the widely extended alluvial plains and valley gravels described above were deposited, the streams to which they owe their origin, have, in a large number of instances, excavated channels in them. It is evident that the streams which at one time deposited gravel and sand in the valleys through which they flowed, so as to deposit débris and *aggrade* them in a conspicuous manner, have been able to remove a part of the material they previously laid aside.

The explanation of the change referred to, as is well known, is that the streams, as long as they were supplied directly by the melting of glaciers, received more débris than they could carry away, and deposition occurred. This process led to a steepening of the gradients of the streams in an endeavor, so to speak, to produce a slope sufficiently steep to insure greater velocity and hence better facilities for transportation. As soon, however, as the glacier disappeared, the chief source of supply of débris for transportation was discontinued and the streams, although perhaps of smaller volume than before, were no longer overloaded, and in flowing down aggraded slopes of considerable declivity, began to carry away the material they had previously laid aside. That, is, a readjustment of the grade of the stream channels was begun to meet changing conditions. When the streams began to erode instead of aggrade, they deepened their channels along the courses they chanced to occupy on their previously formed flood-plains and alluvial bottoms of valleys, and did not necessarily follow their pre-Glacial channels, but took new courses in many instances and especially in crossing broad sand and gravel plains. During the preceding process of aggrading, the stream deposits were laid down on a more or less uneven, till-covered, rock-surface. In places rocky hills and ridges were surrounded by alluvial material, and still stand like islands above the surfaces of the alluvial plains, but in other instances considerable elevations were completely buried. When the streams, in excavating their modern channels, chanced to cross a buried hill or ridge, their work of erosion was delayed, cascades and rapids produced, and the energy of the stream above the obstructions was largely directed to the broadening of their valleys and the spreading out of new flood plains.

Illustrations of the encountering of bed rock by the post-Glacial streams, in the manner just cited, and the occurrence of water falls or rapids on the down stream side of the sills of hard rock that were encountered, are furnished at each of the several falls in Menominee River and its larger tributaries. The most conspicuous example of stream erosion of post-Glacial date, is furnished by the picturesque gorge of the Horse Race rapids, just above Big Quinnesec Falls, a photograph of which is reproduced in Plate IB.

The industrial importance of the numerous water-falls and rapids just referred to, is indicated by the data concerning the water-power along the Menominee, presented on a previous page, and furnishes an illustration of one of the many ways in which the Glacial epoch exerted a direct and important influence on human affairs.

When a stream, after deepening its channel in alluvium, and encountering bed rock, continued to deepen its channel, the rate was not uniform, but the stream was held by certain sills of resistant material, longer than at other horizons. At each halt in the process, the stream above the obstruction widened that portion of its channel, perhaps leaving portions of previous and higher flood plains as terraces. Throughout the post-Glacial stream channels of the Menominee region terraces on the sides of the modern channels, are of common occurrence. Conspicuous and beautifully shaped examples occur above Sturgeon Falls, and above Little Quinnesec Falls, particularly to the south of the town of Quinnesec, and are present adjacent to the Menominee to the south and west of Iron Mountain, along the border of Bois Brulé, Iron, Paint and Michigamme rivers, and, in fact, along every considerable stream of the region.

In the numerous instances referred to, when a series of terraces is present, the highest is the surface of the alluvial deposit left by a stream when supplied with glacial débris, and represents the level to which the valley it occupies was formerly filled. In the case of the recent channels excavated by Menominee River, through broad alluvial plains, the highest terrace is the surface of the plain itself, and, in some instances, is from five to ten miles across. The lower terraces are portions of flood plains, left in succession from above downwards, as the streams deepened their channels, and the lowest of all, usually not recognized as a terrace, but which may, in part, be left as a terrace of the adjacent stream continues to deepen its channel, are the present flood plains or bottom land.

The process of terrace forming outlined above is, however, not the only one by which stream terraces may be produced.

If a stream which has aggraded its valley enters a lake, and later the surface of the lake is lowered, the stream will seek a new adjustment with its receiving water body, and deepen its channel at its mouth to the lower horizon. This would give greater energy to the stream in the lower part of its course, and the process of deepening, progressing up stream, would lead to the abandonment of the previous flood plain, and the production of another flood plain at a lower horizon. During this process, portions of abandoned flood plains might remain as terraces. It is evident, also, that a similar result might be produced if the land down which streams flow to a lake, should be elevated, the lake surface retaining its former position.

In the Menominee region the streams flow to Green Bay, an arm of Lake Michigan. The water occupying the Lake Michigan basin, however, formerly stood higher on its shores than at present, and one or more terraces along the lower courses of the streams which discharge directly into Green Bay, corresponding with former levels of the water in that basin, should be present. Sufficiently critical studies to bring out the correlation of terraces with lake levels, however, have not been made.

In the case of each of the changes in conditions just cited, namely, variations in the rate at which a channel is deepened across a sill of rock, and the lowering of the surface of a lake into which a stream flows, the terraces that result are up-stream from the locality where the changes occur which furnish the control. In certain instances, however, as below Sturgeon Falls, terraces are present below an obstruction, through which a channel was excavated, and appear to have resulted from another variation in the conditions present.

As already stated, when a stream receives more débris in its upper course than it can carry through its less steep lower course, deposition results; and in case the supply of débris is stopped or sufficiently decreased in amount, the stream will begin to erode a channel in its previously formed deposits, and terraces may result. In the case of the obstructions which lead to the production of Big Quinnesec Falls, and of other similar falls and rapids in the Menominee region, the river above the obstructions flowed across thick deposits of sand and gravel, and when their channels were lowered in the resistant sills, rapid erosion was initiated up stream from where the change occurred, and, as it seems, the débris removed furnished too great a load for the stream to carry in the portion of its course below the sill in which it had cut a notch, and deposition resulted. Later, when the portion of the river above the obstructions became adjusted to the change in conditions, the supply of débris from above decreased in amount, and the stream was enabled to deepen its channel in the débris deposited below the obstruction, and terraces may result.

Terraces formed in this manner are due to changes that take place up stream from the locality where they occur. That is, the controlling condition is located where the terraces begin as one descends a stream, and not at their down-stream ends, as is most commonly the case.

Examples of terraces which, so far as indicated by the evidence in hand, seem to have been formed in the manner just considered, are present on the border of the post-Glacial gorge of the Menominee, below Sturgeon Falls, and are best displayed on the Wisconsin side of the river. The terraces have a conspicuous down-stream gradient, and begin at their up-stream ends at the falls. How far down stream they extend has not been determined, but the steepness of their gradients, indicate that they cannot be prolonged for more than a few miles before reaching the level of the present stream. And, besides, no obstruction is present in the river below the falls, which would lead to such an accumulation of débris as is indicated by the terraces present, although, as is obvious, a former ice dam may have performed this function.

The suggestion just offered in reference to the origin of the terraces immediately below Sturgeon Falls, seems to be applicable also to similar terraces present down stream from other falls in the same river, but in these instances the records are more complex, and other conditions than those just referred to appear to have exerted the major control.

The explanation just suggested of the mode of origin of certain terraces down stream from obstructions in the course of Menominee River, is not based on sufficient evidence to make it worthy of unqualified acceptance, but is offered provisionally, and with the hope that it will stimulate additional observations, on the part of future visitors to the instructive localities referred to.

### *Soils.*

Owing to the scouring action of the glaciers which have passed over the Menominee region, practically all the products of pre-Glacial rock-disintegration and decay, which may have been present, were removed and only an insignificant amount of weathering of the hard rocks has subsequently taken place. All of the blanket-like deposit of loose débris covering the land and consequently the soil, is essentially of glacial, or glacio-fluvial origin. To some small extent the material has been removed and redeposited through the action of post-Glacial streams, and over large areas the partially decayed vegetation of swamps and marshes, has accumulated and formed layers of peat. The surface portions of these various deposits are suitable in various degrees for the growth of plants, and may be designated by the general term soil. Beneath the surface film, usually of a few inches deep which is more or less enriched by vegetable débris, is the sub-soil, consisting of essentially the same material as the soil, but lacking its organic ingredients. The soils and sub-soils grade one into the other, and in the present discussion are not separately considered.

As the soils are a portion of the superficial blanket of rock waste, and for the most part owe their leading characteristics directly to the nature of the deposits on which they rest, and into which they merge by insensible gradations, they may, with the exception of the swamp accumulations, be classified in the same manner as the various glacial, glacio-fluvial deposits, etc., to which they pertain.

Knowing the character of the soil pertaining to each of the classes of deposits which is indicated on the map forming Plate III, the map can be read in terms of soil and much be determined in reference to the agricultural nature of the region represented. It should be remembered, however, that, owing to the small scale of the accompanying map, no attempt has been made to represent the many swampy areas in which peat or muck soils overlie the deposits of glacial, fluvial and lacustral origin. Swampy areas occur throughout the Menominee region, and, as is probable, nearly one-half of its entire surface is at present too wet to permit of cultivation. With proper drainage, however, large numbers of the swamps can be rendered serviceable for agriculture, but it is doubtful if such reclamation, on a large scale, will be profitable for several decades to come.

On areas represented on the accompanying map as being covered with till, except in the swampy depressions as already stated, the soils are sandy loams, at times containing numerous stones and boulders. Of the till soils there are two general classes; one the red sandy loam of the region formerly occupied by the Green Bay lobe of the Wisconsin ice-sheet, and, in general, extending from Chicagon Lake eastward to Green Bay; and the other the gray sandy loam of the moraines deposited by the Chippewa lobe of the same ice sheet, and forming the surface to the west of the lake mentioned. The red and gray soils differ in composition, as is indicated by the nature of the stones and boulders they contain, and is shown also by a few partial chemical analyses that have been made.

The red till, particularly to the east of Waucedah, consists largely of limestone fragments, and its finer portions are calcareous, except when leached by weathering; while the gray till, so far as observed, is without limestone fragments, and, as shown by one analysis, is free from calcium carbonate. The gray till is more stony and contains a larger proportion of clay-like material than the red till, and, as it seems, is also better adapted for agricultural purposes. The favorable returns obtained from cultivating the soils composed of gray till, is an assurance that the region it occupies will, in time, become one of the richest agricultural portions of the Northern Peninsula of Michigan.

The red till presents some variations, the most pronounced of which is the fineness of the surface portions of drumlins and of drumlin troughs in contrast with the generally coarse material at a depth in excess of a few inches. Some account of these soils and of the advantages the drumlin areas for farming purposes were stated in my previous report.

The physical character of the till soils is indicated to some extent by the following mechanical analyses of several samples from various localities. The samples, after pebbles or stones, if any were present, were removed, were separated into different portions by means of sieves ranging from 12 to 200 meshes to the linear inch, as stated in the following table:

### *Mechanical Analyses of Soils.*

BY R. A. PLUMB.

| | No. 1. | No. 2. | No. 3 | No. 4. | No. 5. |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Residue on 12-mesh sieve... | .88 | 6.63 | 1.39 | 1.52 | 2.4 |
| Residue on 50-mesh sieve... | 18.16 | 20.60 | 26.58 | 19.69 | 38.44 |
| Residue on 100-mesh sieve... | 8.59 | 44.62 | 25.52 | 17.67 | 18.00 |
| Residue on 200-mesh sieve... | 12.44 | 9.8 | 12.73 | 10.23 | 3.32 |
| Passed thro' 200-mesh sieve.. | 59.93 | 18.37 | 33.78 | 49.1 | 37.84 |
| Total ................ | 100.00 | 100.00 | 100.00 | 100.00 | 100.00 |
| Per cent of Calcium Carbonate, $CaCO_3$........... | None | 24.72 | 10.75 | None | None |

Sample No. 1.—Red till from one foot below surface of a drumlin, one-half mile south of Faithorn Junction (N. E. ¼ of Sec. 21, T. 38 N., R. 28 W.) Underlying formation; Basement Complex.

Sample No. 2.—Red till from six feet below surface of a drumlin, one mile west of Hermansville (N. W. ¼ of Sec. 10, T. 38 N., R. 27 W.) Underlying formation; Calciferous.

Sample No. 3.—Red till from one foot below surface of till sheet, two miles north of Waucedah (Sec. 15, T. 39 N., R. 28 W.) Underlying formation; Potsdam sandstone.

Sample No. 4.—Red till from one foot below surface of till-sheet at Mastodon Mine (Sec. 1, T. 42 N., R. 33 W.) Underlying formation; Algonkian [Huronian].

Sample No. 5.—Gray till from one foot below surface of moraine, five miles west of Iron River (Sec. 7, T. 45 N., R. 35 W.) Underlying formation; Algonkian.

The fractional parts of the several samples, when examined with a microscope, are seen to be composed principally of angular quartz sand. In the case of the red till the color is due, for the most part, to a ferruginous incrustation on the sand grains.

Determination of the per cent of calcium carbonate, as was surmised, might indicate whether or not the till in the several instances was derived from the neighboring bed rock, but the data in this connection are too incomplete to be of much value. The depth at which samples were taken seems to be an important condition in this connection, as the leaching of the surface portions of the deposits has produced changes in the per cent of the more soluble constituents they contain. In order to make a satisfactory comparison of the chemical composition of the material forming till-sheets, drumlins, etc., and of the neighboring hard rock formations, samples of the former, from a uniform depth below the superficial zone of weathering, need to be collected.

The till soils are, in almost all instances, highly favorable for agriculture, providing the conditions of slope insure sufficient drainage, which is usually the case. The best of the till soils, however, are those occurring on the surfaces of drumlins and of drumlin troughs, and on the gray moraines. In a few instances, as in the case of the small moraines near Vulcan, the till soils are conspicuously sandy, resembling in this respect the soils of eskers, kames, etc., and too light for general agricultural purposes. The surfaces of the moraines referred to are in part under cultivation, however, and at least during humid seasons produce favorable results when sown with certain cereals.

The soil of the eskers, kames and alluvial plains are, in almost all cases, highly sandy and open textured, or "light" in distinction from more clayey or "heavy" soils. They are not, in general, favorable for agriculture, and especially on the broad sand and gravel plains, are so thoroughly under-drained that the upper limit of the zone of saturation, or water-table, is deep below the surface and only such plants as are adapted to dry soils can survive. For the most part, the sand and gravel plains are occupied with an open growth of jack-pine, which serves as a label indicating this usually dry condition.

The peat or muck soils which occupy the depressions among the morainal hills, drumlins, etc., are, in many instances, so far as physical and chemical conditions are concerned, favorable for agriculture, and especially for celery raising, etc., but, owing to their permanently wet condition, are at present uncultivated. The principal economic value of the extensively wet area seems to be for the growth of timber, such as spruce and cedar, and on account of the peat they contain. The moss, *Sphagnum*, growing in many of the swamps, furnishes a desirable material for certain stable uses as bedding for stock and for packing living plants, such as nursery shrubs, for shipment.

Although lumbering and mining are at the present time the leading industries of the Menominee region, even the hasty examination of the soils that has been made, and such facts as are known concerning the climate, as well as the evident prosperity of the comparatively few farms that are under cultivation, show that the future industrial development will, to a large extent, be based on agriculture. The principal agricultural industry for which the region is best adapted, is hay raising and dairying, the growing of cereals, sugar beet and other root crops, and hardy fruits and vegetables. The lands that are now under cultivation are, for the most part, occupied by immigrants from central and northern Europe, and every inducement should be offered which will lead to an increase in the numbers of these people.

# INDEX.

12

# INDEX.

A. Page.

- Agriculture, Sturgeon River plain 74
- Algonkian System 23, 24
- Amasa, glacial striae 31
  - kames near 62
  - till sheets 42
- Analyses, mechanical of soils 80
- Analysis, mechanical silt and loess 73
- Antoine lake, 18
  - kames 61
  - valley moraines 48
- Atkinson, sand and gravel plains 52
  - sand plain 66

B.

- Balsam, glacial striae 31
  - kames 61
- Basement Complex 21–23
- Bates, gray till 50
- Bayley and Van Hise, Hermansville limestone 43
- Bayley, W. S., hard rock geology 21, 23
  - pre-Cambrian topography 26
- Big Quinnesec Falls, kames 61
  - origin 70
  - Post-Glacial erosion 77
  - sand and gravel plains 69, 70
  - terraces 78
- Birch Creek Station, esker 56
- Bois Brule, horse power 15
  - terraces 77
- Bois Brule River, sand and gravel plains 65
- Bois Brule valley, kames 62
- Brier Hill, moraine 49
- Bush lake, red till 47

C.

- Calciferous formation 25, 26
- Cedar river, kames 61
- Chamberlin, R. T., red and gray till 52
- Chamberlin, T. C., planetesimal hypothesis 22
- Chicagon lake, 18
  - bed rock 51
  - glacial lobes 47, 50
  - gray till 51
- Chippewa lobe, 46, 47
  - moraines 50
  - terminal moraine 51
- Clements, J. M., hard rock geology 21, 24
- Consequent streams 17
- Copper, native, near Koss 43
- Crescentic cracks in quartzite, plate 6
  - Menominee region 31

Page.

- Cretaceous period, uplift 28
- Crystal Falls, glacial abrasion 38
  - glacial striae 31
  - red till 50
  - sand and gravel plains 66, 67
  - till sheets 42
  - topography 27
- Crystal lake 19

D.

- Davis, C. A., surface geology 7
- Dickinson county, surface geology 1
- Drumlin, soil analysis 80
- Drumlins, defined 10
  - Menominee region 40, 42, 43, 50, 54
  - origin of 44

E.

- Englacial streams 57
- Esker soils 81
- Eskers, Menominee region 10, 50, 54–59

F.

- Faithorn Junction, moraines 50
  - soil analysis 80
- Fisher, see Koss 61
- Florence, plain 68
- Forest, Menominee region 20
- Fortune lake, 18
  - red till 47
- Fossils, Menominee region 26
- Frapwell, A. P., surface geology 7
- Fumee lake, 18, 27
  - kames 61
  - valley moraines 48

G.

- Geological map of Michigan, plate 20
- Gilbert, G. K., crescentic cracks 33
- Glacial abrasion, records of 29
- Glacial corrasion 29
- Glacial deposition 29
- Glacial deposits, Menominee region 40
- Glacial lobes 46
- Glacial records, classification 28, 29
- Glaciated rock surfaces, crescentic cracks 33
- Glacio-fluvial corrasion 29
  - deposition 29
  - deposits 53
  - erosion 52
- Gneiss, origin of silt 74
- Gordon, W. C., drumlins 43
- Gravel deposit, Menominee region 75
- Gray sandy loam 80
- Gray till moraine 51
- Gray till, physical condition 52
  - soil analysis 80, 81
  - topography 51
  - west Crystal Falls 41, 42, 46, 50, 51, 80
- Green Bay lobe, 46, 47, 50
  - moraines 47
- Green Bay, Potsdam sandstone 25
  - terraces 78

H. Page.

- Hanbury lake ........ 19
- Hanbury slate ........ 24
- Hard rock geology ........ 21
- Hard rock surface, topography ........ 26
- Hardwood forests, Menominee region ........ 21
- Haywood lake, kames ........ 61
- Hermansville, Calciferous fossils ........ 26
  - drumlins ........ 43, 44
  - figure drumlin ........ 45
  - glacial striae ........ 30
- Hermansville limestone, ........ 25
- Hermansville, map of drumlins, plate ........ 48
  - red till analysis ........ 80
- Hillocks on eskers ........ 56
- Hills, Menominee region ........ 11, 12
- Horse power, Menominee river ........ 14
- Horse Race rapids, origin ........ 70
  - plate ........ 12
  - post-glacial erosion ........ 77
- Hughitt Bluff, pre-Cambrian topography ........ 27
- Huronian System ........ 23, 24

I.

- Illustrations, list of, Russell's paper ........ 6
- Interlobate moraines ........ 46
- Iron county, surface geology ........ 1
- Iron deposits ........ 24
- Iron Mountain, abrasion of Potsdam ........ 39
  - glacial striae ........ 30
  - kame terraces ........ 63
  - kames ........ 60
  - knob and basin moraine ........ 69
  - plain south of ........ 71
  - Potsdam sandstone ........ 24
  - rough rock surfaces ........ 34
  - till sheets ........ 42
  - valley moraines ........ 48
- Iron river, glacial abrasion ........ 40
  - gray till analysis ........ 80, 81
  - red and gray till ........ 52
  - sand and gravel plains ........ 65
  - terraces ........ 77
  - till sheets ........ 42

J.

- Jack pines, Menominee region ........ 21
- Joints, producing rough surfaces ........ 34

K.

- Kame soils ........ 81
- Kame terraces, Menominee region ........ 62
- Kames, Menominee region ........ 10, 50, 54, 59, 60
- Kelley, P. H., Secretary Geological Survey Board ........ 3
- Keweenaw Bay, Chippewa lobe ........ 47
- Knob and basin moraine ........ 69
- Knolls on eskers ........ 56
- Koss, kame deposits ........ 61
  - moraine at ........ 50
  - native silver and copper at ........ 43

L.

- Lake Michigan, terraces ........ 78
- Lakes, Menominee region ........ 18, 19

Page.

- Lane, A. C., letter of transmittal 3
- Leverett, Frank, surface geology 9
- Little Cedar river, water power 15
- Little Quinnesec Falls, glacial striae 30
  - origin 70
  - terraces 77
- Loess, mechanical analysis 73
  - Sturgeon river plain 74
- Loretto, crescentic cracks 32
  - glacial striae 30
  - north of, topographic modifications 35
  - quartzite, origin of silt 74
  - topography 27
- Lower Twin Falls, glacial striae 30
  - plate 12

M.

- McKone, W. J., Geological Survey Board 3
- Mansfield, glacial abrasion 38
  - glacial striae 30
  - valley, hard rock surface 36, 37
- Mastodon Mines, red till analysis 80, 81
- Mellen township, kames 60
- Menominee county, drumlins 50
  - eskers 50
  - kames 50
  - moraine 49
  - surface geology 1
- Menominee region, drumlins 44, 45
  - glacial abrasion 39, 40
  - kame terraces 62
  - map of surface geology, plate 32
  - topography 28
- Menominee river, 12–15
  - glacial lobe 53
  - horse power 14
  - Horse Race rapids, plate 12
  - lake 75
  - Lower Twin Falls, plate 12
  - moraine 50
  - plain 68
  - sand and gravel plain 69, 70
  - terraces 77
- Metropolitan, abrasion of Potsdam 39
  - glacial striae 30
  - local moraines near 48
  - till sheets 42
- Michigamme river, red till 47
  - sand and gravel plains 65
  - terraces 77
  - water power 15
- Michipicoten, native silver and copper 43
- Michigan geology, map of 20
- Mississippi valley loess 74
- Moraines, Chippewa lobe 50
- Moraines, defined 12
  - Menominee region 40, 45, 46, 48
- Moulin streams, forming kames 61
- Moulins on eskers 56

N.

- Nadeau, drumlins 43
- Nathan, glacial striae 30
  - moraine at 50

Page.
Norway abrasion of Potsdam ... 39
    crescentic cracks ... 32
    glacial striae ... 30
    glaciated hill near ... 36
    joints ... 34
    kame terraces ... 63
    local moraines near ... 48
    mine, pre-Cambrian topography ... 27
    Potsdam standstone ... 24, 25
    spill-way ... 53
Notches in eskers ... 57

O.

Outwash aprons, Menominee region ... 54, 64

P.

Paint river, basin near ... 66, 57
    sand and gravel plains ... 52, 65
    stream terraces ... 66
    terraces ... 77
    water power ... 15
Paleozoic Systems ... 24–26
Paper mill, Little Quinnesec Falls ... 15
Peat soils ... 81
Pemene Falls, moraine ... 50
Pike River, Wisconsin, water power ... 15
Pine creek, moraine ... 49
Pine river, Wisconsin, water power ... 15
Plains, Menominee region ... 9, 10, 68, 70
Planetesimal hypothesis ... 22
Plumb, R. A., mechanical analyses of soils ... 80
Post-Glacial stream erosion ... 76–79
Potsdam sandstone, ... 24, 25
    erosion of ... 39
    origin of silt ... 74
Power, Menominee river ... 14
Powers, eskers ... 54
Pre-Cambrian topography ... 26
Primeval forest, Menominee region ... 20
Prospect Bluff, pre-Cambrian topography ... 27
Ptychaspis zone, Iron Mountain ... 26

Q.

Quartzite, crescentic cracks ... 32
    crescentic cracks in, plate ... 34
Quinnesec, kame terraces ... 63
    small moraines ... 48

R.

Randville dolomite ... 24
Rapids, origin of ... 17
Red sandy loam ... 79, 80
Red till, Menominee region ... 41, 42, 46, 47, 50, 52, 80
    soil analysis ... 80, 81
    topography ... 51
Rock surface, roughened ... 34
Runkle lake ... 19
Runkle's lake, formation of outlet ... 68
    sand and gravel plains ... 66, 67
    surface elevation ... 67
Russell, I. C., surface geology of Upper Michigan ... 1–82

S.

Sags in eskers ... 57

Page.
St. Croix region, red till.... 52
St. Louis, Mo., loess.... 74
Sand and gravel plains, Menominee region.... 10, 64, 69
special features.... 71
Shaler, N. S., origin of drumlins.... 44
Silt, analysis, mechanical.... 73
Sturgeon plain.... 73, 74
Silver lake, valley moraines near.... 48
Silver, native, near Koss.... 43
Smyth, H. L., hard rock geology.... 21
Soils, mechanical analyses of.... 80
Menominee region.... 79
Spalding, drumlins.... 44, 58
eskers.... 54
glacial striae.... 30
Stambaugh, red and gray till.... 52
Stanley lake,.... 18
gray till topography.... 51
Stephenson township, kames.... 61
Stream development, Menominee region.... 16
Streams, Menominee region.... 12
Striae, direction of.... 30
glacial.... 29
Sturgeon Falls, gravel bars, plate.... 57
terraces.... 77, 78
Sturgeon plain.... 72–74
quartzite.... 24
river, lake.... 75
sand and gravel plain.... 70
water power.... 15
Sub-glacial streams.... 57
Summit, moraine at.... 50
Sunset lake.... 18
Surface geology.... 28, 29
Swamps, Menominee region.... 19
Swampy areas, Menominee region.... 79

T.

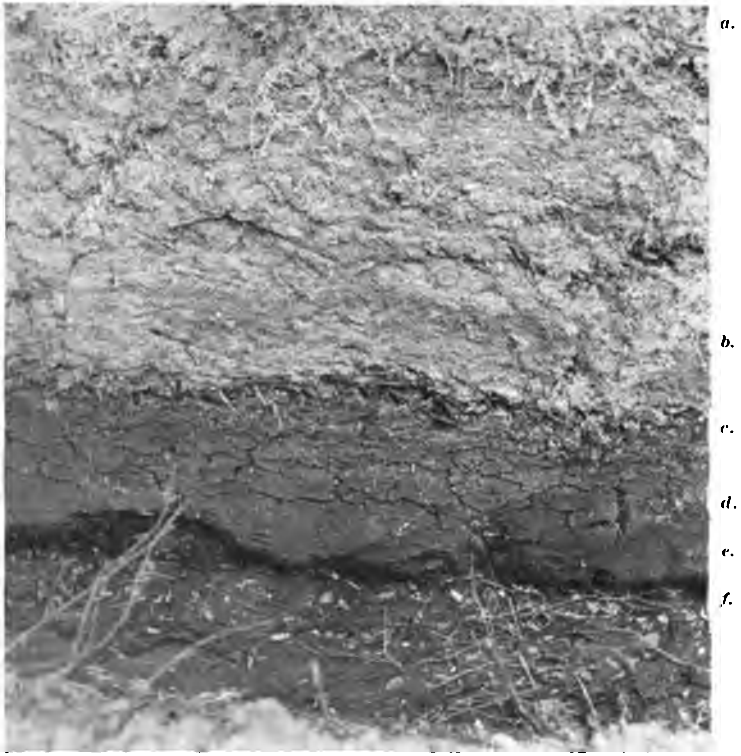
Terraces, Menominee region.... 77, 78
Till, Menominee region.... 10, 40, 42
Till soils,.... 81
mechanical analyses.... 80
Topography, hard rock, changes.... 34
hard rock surface.... 26
Trenton limestone,.... 25
fossils.... 26
Trilobites, Iron Mountain.... 26
Trout Lake, bed rock.... 51
Chippewa lobe.... 50
Twin Falls, kames.... 61
Lower, plate.... 12
sand and gravel plains.... 69

V.

Valley moraines.... 48
Valley trains, Menominee region.... 54, 64
Valleys, Menominee region.... 10, 11
Van Hise, C. R., hard rock geology.... 21, 23
Vita, glacial striae.... 30
Vulcan formation, Menominee region.... 24
moraines.... 49, 70
plain near.... 72
sand and gravel plains.... 70

W. Page.

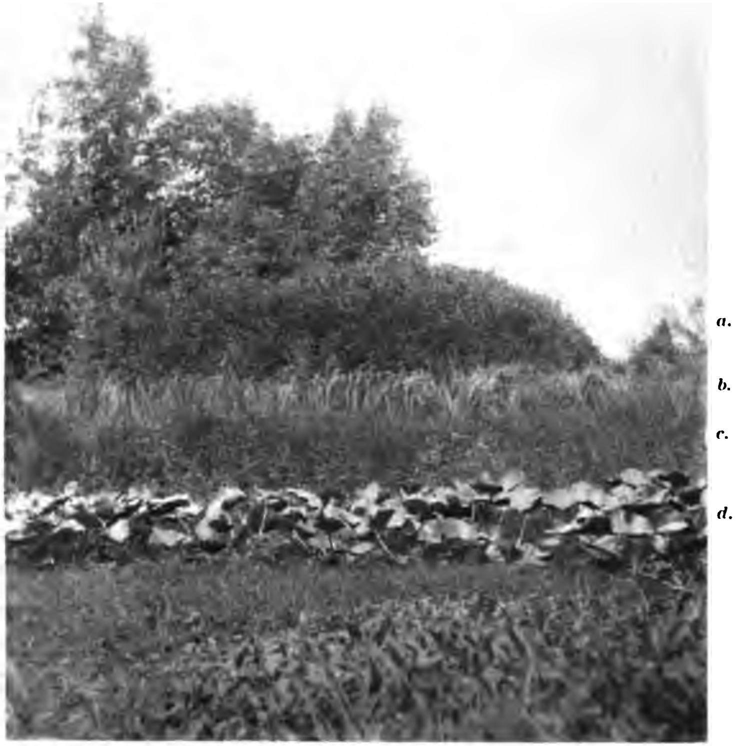
Wallace, kame deposits .... 61
Warner, Fred M., President Geological Survey Board .... 3
Water-falls, origin of .... 17
Waucedah, east of, hard rock geology .... 35
  Potsdam sandstone .... 24, 28
  red till .... 80
  red till analysis .... 80, 81
  rough rock surfaces .... 34
  sand and gravel knolls .... 61
  till sheets .... 42
  upheaval .... 26
  west of, hard rock surface .... 35
White Rapids, Potsdam sandstone .... 24
Wisconsin ice sheet, glacial striae .... 31
  red till .... 52



A.

Section of ditch near Vestaburg, showing light Sphagnum peat over dark peat.

LEGEND A.
(a.) Living Sphagnum.
(b.) Sphagnum peat.
(c.) Shrub remains.
(d.) Sedge rootstocks.
(e.) Pond Lily rootstocks.
(f.) Laminated peat.



B.

View of surface near ditch, showing corresponding vegetative zones.

LEGEND B.
(a.) Shrub zone.
(b.) Grass zone.
(c.) Sedge zone.
(d.) Pond Lily zone.

# PEAT

ESSAYS ON ITS

# ORIGIN, USES AND DISTRIBUTION IN MICHIGAN

BY

CHARLES A. DAVIS

Published by the State Board of Geological Survey, as a part of the report for 1906, and a contribution also to the Biological Survey of the State, authorized by Act 250, Session 1905.

LANSING, MICHIGAN
WYNKOOP HALLENBECK CRAWFORD CO., STATE PRINTERS
1907

# LETTER OF TRANSMITTAL.

OFFICE OF THE STATE GEOLOGIST,
LANSING, MICHIGAN, November 20, 1906.

To the Honorable, the Board of Geological Survey of the State of Michigan:

Hon. Fred M. Warner, President.
Hon. W. J. McKone.
Hon. Patrick H. Kelley, Secretary.

Gentlemen:—I herewith transmit to you for publication in your report for 1906, a series of papers on peat, prepared by C. A. Davis, of Ann Arbor. They are the fruit of a happy marriage of botany with geology, and should not be separated. While on the one hand they are an original and important contribution to the botany of peat and the peat producing flora, they are of value in many ways to the geologist, and to any one interested in the promotion of legitimate industry. Information about peat has been too much left to the one-sided investigation of the promoter, who, in his over zeal, may ruin a really desirable development by over estimates of the profits and under estimates of the cost.

Prof. Davis has endeavored to make clear, in the following papers, some of the facts regarding the peat deposits of Michigan which should be of practical value to those who contemplate developing such deposits for commercial purposes.

Some of the more important of these facts are:

That peat deposits are quite variable in structure and origin, but their structure is primarily dependent upon the form of the land surface upon which they are found, and the height of the water above this while they are being formed.

That the most important peat deposits and those most likely to be of commercial value, are found in depressions, or valleys, which have been filled, or partly filled, with peat, through the growth and decay of various groups, or associations, of plants, which succeed each other in a very definite and orderly manner, according to certain laws of plant growth.

That there are many species of plants concerned in peat formation, but of these, the ones growing in the water and a few grass-like plants growing slightly above the average level of the water, are much more important than any others.

That there usually is no relation between peat and the vegetation growing upon its surface. The character of the vegetation is entirely governed by certain laws of plant growth, and primarily by the level of the water in the deposit. The surface vegetation generally gives no clue to the quality of the peat.

That Sphagnum moss is not an important plant in peat formation in the area under discussion, as it is not present until late in the history of the development of any class of peat deposits.

That certain types of peat deposits are of irregular structure and others are free from irregularity, but only careful study of sections can demonstrate these facts for given deposits.

Very respectfully,
ALFRED C. LANE,
State Geologist.

# CONTENTS.

## PART I.

### THE ECOLOGY OF PEAT FORMATION IN MICHIGAN.

Page

Introduction .......... 105

Chemical composition of vegetable matter .......... 105

Agents of decomposition of vegetable matter .......... 106

Varying rate of action of decomposing agents .......... 106

Description and occurrence of peat .......... 108

Geographical distribution of peat .......... 110

Distribution of peat in Michigan .......... 111

Classification of Michigan peat deposits .......... 114

Peat deposits classified according to the form of land surface upon which they have been formed .......... 115

Classification according to method of development .......... 120

Classification according to surface vegetation .......... 121

Principles underlying the relation of plants to peat deposits .......... 128

The formation of peat in depressions .......... 130

- (a) In shallow depressions .......... 131
- (b) Upon flat areas .......... 134
- (c) In deep depressions, from sides and top .......... 135

Effects of consolidation and raising the surface of the deposit .......... 138

The water plants and sedges in relation to the peat .......... 152

Succession of plants upon the peat after the grounding of the sedge mat .......... 158

Some ecological factors which control this succession .......... 160

Deposits behind dams .......... 167

Conclusion .......... 170

Bibliography .......... 173

## PART II.

### THE FORMATION, CHARACTER AND DISTRIBUTION OF PEAT BOGS IN THE NORTHERN PENINSULA OF MICHIGAN.

OBJECTS OF THE SURVEY.

Introduction and acknowledgments .......... 183

Itinerary and areas studied .......... 185

Methods of work on peat .......... 187

Types of locality examined .......... 188

General distribution of the plants of Northern Michigan .......... 188

Soil and topography of the region in relation to the plant societies .......... 190

Types of forest .......... 191

THE DRUMLIN REGION PEAT DEPOSITS. VALLEY BOGS, THEIR CHARACTERISTICS. IMPORTANT PLANT ASSOCIATIONS OF THIS TYPE.

Partially filled lakes of this area; ways in which they are filled .......... 195

- Hayward lake .......... 195
- Pond in peat bog at Nathan .......... 198

Page
Completely filled lake or basin near Nathan .... 201
Algal lake .... 203
Merryman's lake .... 210
Bogs near Hermansville .... 212
    A mature valley bog .... 212
    A cleared bog .... 214
Bogs near Faunus .... 214

PEAT IN THE MORAINAL REGIONS.

Bogs in sand-plain near Vulcan .... 217
Lake near Menominee river south of Norway .... 219
Lake Antoine, a large basin beginning to fill .... 219
Sphagnum bog near Lake Antoine, Iron Mountain .... 221
Mature valley bog near Granite Bluff .... 223
Badwater lake, north of Iron Mountain .... 224
Bogs near Badwater lake .... 224
Bogs near Twin Falls .... 226
Lakes near Sagola .... 227
Bogs and lakes north of Crystal Falls .... 228
    A mature bog .... 228
    Camp lake, a partly filled lake .... 229
    Spring bog near Camp lake .... 230
Bogs near Amasa .... 231
    A river-flooded lake .... 231
    A mature bog .... 231
Spruce bog at Balsam .... 232
Lakes and bogs in the sand plains south of Crystal Falls .... 233
    A rejuvenated sedge bog near Clara lake .... 233
    Two shallow lakes in the sand plain .... 233
    Deep lakes near Stager .... 234
    Mature bogs near Mary lake .... 236
Bog near Iron river .... 237
Mature peat bog north of Bessemer .... 238
Lakes and bogs in the Keweenaw peninsula .... 240
    Bogs near Winona mine .... 240
    Lake near Winona mine .... 241
    Bear lake .... 243
    Buried peat, on the shore of Lake Superior .... 243
Lakes near Marquette .... 245
Lakes and bogs between Newberry and Lake Superior .... 246
    The Great Swamp .... 246
    Small lake, T. 47 N., R. 10 W .... 246
    McLeod's lake .... 247
    Bog at Stuart's lake .... 247
    Lakes at Deer Park Life Saving Station .... 248
    Lakes between Grand Marais and Newberry .... 248
Bogs near Trout Lake Junction .... 249

PEAT OF THE SAND DUNES.

Formation of peat in sand dune areas near Lake Superior at Marquette .... 251
    Buried peat near Marquette .... 252
Formation of peat in sand dune areas near Lake Michigan at Manistique .... 254

PEAT IN THE HURON MOUNTAINS.

Types of swamps and bogs .... 262

GENERAL CONCLUSIONS REGARDING PEAT FORMATION IN THE NORTHERN PENINSULA OF MICH.

Comparison of northern and southern lakes in process of filling .... 269
    Important types of filling .... 270
    Factors controlling the width of the mat or marginal zone .... 271
    Periodicity of growth of the mat .... 271

THE SPECIES CONCERNED IN PEAT FORMATION.

Page
Relation of Sphagnum to peat formation in the Northern Peninsula.............. 274
Distribution and abundance of peat.............................................. 276

ECONOMIC CONSIDERATIONS.

Necessity of careful prospecting.............................................. 277
Other fuels available.............................................................. 278
Peat coke in relation to the iron industry...................................... 278
Agricultural possibilities of the peat bogs...................................... 279
Other uses to which peat might be put.......................................... 280
List of the common names, and the equivalent scientific names of the plants mentioned in this report.............................................. 281

## PART III.

## ECONOMICS OF PEAT.

### MISCELLANEOUS USES OF PEAT.

Introductory......................................................................... 289
Uses in agriculture................................................................. 289
  Importance of muck soils in Michigan agriculture.............................. 289
  Difficulties in growing crops on muck or peat soils............................ 290
  Methods used in reclaiming swamp lands....................................... 292
  Peat as a fertilizer.............................................................. 293
  Stable or barnyard litter on farms............................................. 295
  Peat as a disinfectant for farm use............................................ 296
  Peat as stock food.............................................................. 297
Peat as a deodorizer and disinfectant in towns and cities...................... 297
Destructive distillation of peat................................................... 299
  Peat coke and by-products....................................................... 299
  Peat gas.......................................................................... 305
Paper pulp, paper and cardboard.................................................. 307
Woven fabrics from peat........................................................... 308
Packing material.................................................................... 309
Roofing and sheathing paper....................................................... 309
Non-conducting packing material.................................................. 309
Paving and building blocks........................................................ 310
As a source of electricity.......................................................... 310
Peat dye............................................................................. 310

### PEAT AS FUEL.

Historical development of the peat fuel industry in Europe...................... 311
  In America........................................................................ 313
  In the United States............................................................. 313
  In Canada......................................................................... 313
  In Michigan....................................................................... 313
Methods of prospecting............................................................. 315
  Prospecting tools................................................................ 316
  Final sampling................................................................... 316
  Importance of thoroughly proving a deposit.................................... 317
Factors affecting commercial value of deposits................................. 318
  Market and transportation...................................................... 318
  Area and depth................................................................... 318
  Physical condition............................................................... 319
  Deep bogs with thin stratum of peat with water or marl below................ 319
  Sampling for other purposes than fuel......................................... 319
  Chemical composition and ash.................................................. 319
  Possibilities of draining........................................................ 320
  Character of the surface growth............................................... 320
  Acidity............................................................................ 320

Page
Sources of contamination producing high ash content .......... 320
  Importance of ash .......... 320
  Flooding by streams .......... 321
  Flooding by rain wash .......... 321
  Spring and terrace bogs .......... 321
  Shore wash in lakes .......... 322
  Mineral matter from water .......... 322
    In suspension .......... 322
    In solution .......... 322
      Precipitated by plants .......... 322
        (1) Higher plants. (2) Algae .......... 322
Relation of deposits of peat to the bottom .......... 323
Summary .......... 324
  Color .......... 324
  Weight .......... 324
  Texture .......... 325
  Relation of ash to commercial value .......... 325
Location and extent of peat beds in Michigan .......... 326
Fuel value of peat .......... 332
  Compared with other fuels .......... 333
  As affected by methods of preparation .......... 336
  As affected by cost of preparation .......... 342
  Conclusions .......... 342

MACHINERY FOR THE PREPARATION OF PEAT FUELS AND PEAT LITTER.

The slayne or slane as used in different countries .......... 343
Machinery for making cut peat .......... 344
Machines for compressing or condensing peat .......... 346
Machines for drying and briquetting peat .......... 352
Methods of coking peat .......... 357
Machinery for the preparation of peat litter .......... 357
Devices for carrying peat from bogs to factory .......... 358
Peat factories and peat prospects in Michigan .......... 359
Conclusion and acknowledgments .......... 361

# LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS.

## PLATES.

Page
XIII. A. Section of ditch near Vestaburg showing light colored sphagnum over dark peat .......... 93
B. Horizontal view in same bog .......... 93
XIV. Beaver dam near Negaunee, photograph by R. H. Pettit .......... 166
XV. Beaver meadow near Negaunee, photograph by R. H. Pettit .......... 168
XVI. Map of swamp distribution, after Farmer .......... 172
XVII. Map of original vegetation of Upper Peninsula .......... 182
XVIII. Old White Pine forest near Koss, Menominee county .......... 188
XIX. Mature conifer bog near Mansfield, rejuvenated .......... 193
XX. Sedge marsh on the margin of a sand plain lake .......... 196
XXI. Lake margin at Nathan, Menominee county .......... 198
XXII. Border of mature bog near Nathan, Menominee county .......... 200
XXIII. Pine "Island," Lake Antoine, near Iron Mountain .......... 212
XXIV. North side of lake near Badwater lake .......... 216
XXV. Western margin of the same lake as Plate XXIV .......... 220
XXVI. Old growth of stunted Black Spruce at Balsam, Iron county .......... 228
XXVII. Spruce-Shrub-Sedge bog near Lake Mary .......... 236
XXVIII. A. View of peat deposit on rock, Bentley's camp. Photograph by C. Bentley .......... 260
B. Black Spruce-Heath Association, Bentley's camp. Photograph by C. Bentley .......... 260
XXIX. A peat bog, an old time slane, and an Ames slane .......... 288
XXX. Peat fuel .......... 300
XXXI. Leavitt peat machinery .......... 356

## FIGURES.

2. Section of bog, after Shaler .......... 127
3. Showing structure of peat bed built up from the bottom .......... 135
4. Showing how plants fill depressions from sides and top .......... 137
5. Ideal sketch of Grand Trunk track as laid on the bog at Haslett Park .......... 154
6. Map of displacement of track .......... 155
7. Sketch of track after new grading .......... 155
8. Profile at the same point as figure 5 .......... 156
9. Sketch map of Algal lake, Menominee county .......... 204
10. Ideal section of peat deposit of Algal lake .......... 209
11. Plant zones in small lake near Merryman's lake .......... 211
12. Section through a mature peat deposit near Hermansville .......... 213
13. Diagram showing way in which Andromeda and Cassandra build out over the water in a lake near Stager .......... 235
14. Section of a bog north of Bessemer .......... 239
15. Section of a bluff with buried peat, shore of Lake Superior, two miles east of Portage canal .......... 244
16. Buried peat bed near Marquette .......... 253
17. Illustrating maintenance of ponds on slopes covered with sand dunes .......... 259
18. Peat samplers .......... 317
19. Peat cutter after Brosowsky .......... 345
20. Plans and section of peat factory inserted facing page .......... 347

# PART I.

# PEAT AND ITS ORIGIN.

## THE ECOLOGY OF PEAT FORMATION IN MICHIGAN.

# ECOLOGY OF PEAT FORMATION IN MICHIGAN.

## *Introduction.*

While peat has been commonly used for fuel in northern and western Europe from remote antiquity, and its use is still large and apparently increasing in Germany, Holland, Russia, Denmark and Sweden,[1] it has not been brought to the attention of the people of Michigan until recently, that great quantities of this fairly efficient fuel exist within the boundaries of the state, as much as one-seventh of its entire area, or about 5,200,000 acres, being estimated as swamp or muck land,[2] although not all of this is underlain by peat. The prolonged strike of the hard coal miners in 1902-3, followed by the scarcity and high prices of all sorts of fuel, taken in connection with the rapidly disappearing forests of the state, led to the consideration of all possible sources of increasing the available fuel supply, and among these, peat was mentioned and its availability investigated. After some preliminary tests, at several places in the state, plants were projected for the purpose of putting peat into such form that it could be transported cheaply and placed upon the market, in competition with other fuel, especially with coal. A brief preliminary report upon peat in Michigan, prepared by the State Geologist, Mr. Alfred C. Lane, appeared in the Annual Report of the State Geological Survey for 1902, and to the writer was assigned the task of making some more extended investigations into the method of peat formation and accumulation, the causes for its variations in structure and appearance, and its distribution within the state, especially in the Southern Peninsula, and out of these investigations the present paper has developed.

In a discussion having the scope attempted here, certain elementary principles must be laid down in order that the position of the writer may be clear, especially since the paper is intended for the non-technical as well as the technical reader, but such statements will be made as brief as is consistent with clearness.

## *The Chemical Composition of Vegetable Matter.*

All organic matter, whether of animal or vegetable origin, is made up principally of three, or, at most four, chemical elements, of which one only, carbon, is a solid, the others being gases. Besides these three or four important elements, others, including some of the metallic elements, are always present in vegetable matter, but only in small quantity, and are grouped together as ash in the analyses and may be neglected as immaterial in the present paper.

---

[1] Carter, W. E. H., Peat Fuel; Report of Ontario Bureau of Mines, 1903, p. 193.
[2] Towar, J. D., Mich. State Ag. College Ex. Station, Bull. 181, p. 157, 1900.

When uncombined, or only partly combined with oxygen, carbon is the most important fuel element, and all forms of fuel have it as a chief constituent and are good or poor, as they have much or little of this element in available form in them. In vegetable matter, such as wood, the leaves and the stems of plants, carbon is associated with two gases, hydrogen and oxygen, to form, among others, the complex substances, cellulose, or ordinary vegetable fiber ($C_6H_{10}O_5$) and lignin, or woody fiber ($C_{35}H_{24}O_{20}$). Nitrogen, also a gas, is present in small quantities in certain vegetable substances, associated with the three elements already named.

In both cellulose and lignin, as will be seen from the chemical formulas, the three elements are built into complicated molecules, having many atoms of each, and hence, relatively to the more simple inorganic molecules, unstable and easily decomposed.

### *Agents of Decomposition of Vegetable Matter.*

When allowed to remain exposed to the air, in the presence of moisture, it is well known that most forms of vegetable matter rot, and finally disappear entirely, and such decay has been described as a form of oxidation,[1] similar to, if not identical with, that which occurs when the same sort of material is burned; that is, as a purely chemical process. This process is not, however, directly due to the action of the air, or any of its gaseous constituents, or to moisture. Perfectly dry vegetable matter will keep indefinitely in the air, as is shown by innumerable articles in common use. In like manner, we find that wood and similar material of vegetable origin will keep for very long periods of time when entirely submerged in water. The decay of vegetable matter is really a series of complicated changes, due to the growth and development of living organisms in the decaying matter. These use part of the material of which the vegetable tissue is composed for their own nourishment and growth, and thus break it down into simpler compounds. The organisms which thus produce decay are mainly plants of simple structure, and often of microscopic size, and when they are not so small, their lack of color, and their intimate association with the tissues in which they grow, render them very inconspicuous. These plants are bacteria and fungi, and are aided in bringing about decomposition by many types of animals.

Like all other plants, these decay-producing forms need both air and moisture in order to grow, and, moreover, the moisture must be present in proper amount, too much water being as detrimental to their growth as too little, and where air is excluded they do not thrive.

### *Varying Rate of Action of the Decomposing Agents.*

When the conditions are favorable for these plants to grow (that is, sufficient moisture, air, and a favorable temperature), they may develop with great rapidity, and bring about quick and complete reduction of vegetable material to simple gaseous compounds, such as carbon dioxid ($CO_2$), ammonia ($NH_3$), and water, and the vegetable matter as such, ceases to exist. Thus, in moist woodlands, even the hardest wood soon becomes rotten, then loses its woody structure entirely, and finally vanishes, leaving possibly a trace of dark soil to show that it once existed, but nothing that shows that it was wood. The fallen leaves in the forest last much less time than wood and soon become indistinguishable from the soil of which they become a part.

---

[1] Scott, W. B., Introduction to Geology, 1897, p. 133.

If conditions are less favorable the bacteria and fungi do not thrive, the decay of wood and leaves goes on more slowly and is less complete, so that in wet woods, where the temperature is low, wood and leaves may lie for several or many years with little change, and in dry woods such débris may accumulate until a thick layer is formed, only the lower parts of which are decomposed. If, because of very unfavorable conditions, some kinds of the destructive organisms cannot exist, and others are reduced in numbers, a slow and partial decomposition may take place, in which the more easily broken-down compounds of the vegetable matter disappear, leaving the more resistant ones almost unchanged. In such cases, the original mechanical form of the affected tissues may be entirely lost, while the chemical composition of the larger part of them is only slightly affected, and such changes as do take place go on slowly.

In some cases, where water containing mineral matter, or certain organic matters in solution, is present in large excess, chemical changes not produced by organisms may occur and in such cases it is natural that part of the gaseous elements of the molecules which are undergoing change, being chemically more active than the solid carbon, and more free to move, should separate from the molecule first, and leave the carbon associated with smaller proportions of hydrogen and oxygen.

### *What Peat Is.*

From the foregoing considerations it is apparent that vegetable matter may undergo decomposition under a variety of conditions, dependent upon which the amount of change will vary. Some of these conditions permit the changes to result finally in complete decay, and in nearly complete disappearance of the substances, and others simply allow the process to result in the loss of the more easily changed compounds, and of the gaseous elements, while the greater part of the material retains its original form and mechanical structure.

Peat, when examined with a view to determining its origin, will usually, even to the unaided eye, show vegetable structure, and frequently well-preserved plant remains will be found in it in large quantity. If decay and disintegration have gone so far that the larger plant structures have disappeared, it is still usually possible to identify the vegetable tissue-elements, cells, or parts of cells, by the aid of a compound microscope. It is then clearly demonstrable that peat is vegetable matter which has become partly decomposed. In the process of decay, it has been more or less completely changed chemically, and usually mechanically, but in such a way that it still retains a large part of the carbon, together with more or less of the other more readily dissipated volatile matters which wood and other forms of plant structures contain.

### *Description of Peat.*

When dry, peat is of a color varying from a light yellowish brown to nearly black, and when wet the shades of color are all much deepened, the darker ones appearing quite black. It also varies in texture and structure from a loosely felted, slightly coherent mass of plant remains having low specific gravity, to a compact, structureless material which is relatively heavy, quite plastic and sticky when wet, and which dries into firm, tough masses. There seems to be, in general, a close relationship between the color and texture of different types of peat, the lighter colored types being coarser in texture, and approaching ordinary dried vegetable litter in appearance, while the darker sorts are nearly as structureless as clay. In most deposits of peat which have been undisturbed by human agencies, there is a progressive change in color from light to darker shades, and, in texture, from coarse and loose, to fine and compact, as the bed is cut through from top to bottom. The chemical composition of the different types of peat also varies, as shown by the following analyses cited by Ries[1] from Johnson.[2]

| Material. | Analyst. | Carbon. | Hydrogen. | Oxygen. | Nitrogen. |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sphagnum, | Websky | 49.88 | 6.54 | 42.42 | 1.16 |
| Peat, porous, light brown, Sphagnum. | " | 50.86 | 5.8 | 42.57 | .77 |
| Peat, porous, red brown, | Jaeckel | 53.51 | 5.9 | 40.59 | |
| Peat, heavy brown, | " | 56.43 | 5.32 | 38 25 | |
| Peat, dark red brown, well decomposed, | Websky | 59.47 | 6.52 | 31.51 | 2.51 |
| Peat, black, very dense and hard, | " | 59.7 | 5.7 | 33.04 | 1.56 |
| Peat, black, heavy, } Best for fuel, | " | 59.71 | 5.27 | 32.07 | 2.59 |
| Peat, brown, heavy, } | " | 62.54 | 6.81 | 29.24 | 1.41 |

From these analyses, which neglect the ash, it is apparent that in the denser and darker peats there is a larger amount of carbon and a smaller amount of oxygen than in Sphagnum, or in the more porous, lighter colored types, amounting to from 8 to 12 per cent increase in carbon and from 8 to 12 per cent decrease in oxygen.

*Muck* is the name given to dark colored, thoroughly decomposed peats in which there is a considerable mixture of mineral matter, but as this is very variable in quantity, there is no sharp distinction to be made between peat and muck, as all peat contains some mineral matter, which appears as ash when the peat is burned.

In the natural state, peat is always saturated, or nearly saturated, with water, except in the uppermost layers, and in very dry times.

### *Occurrence.*

Peat usually occurs upon gentle slopes, flat areas, and in more or less shallow depressions in the earth's surface, which have either no direct drainage, or are poorly drained, so that the surface is always wet or covered by water. In these places are formed eventually the accumulations known as "bogs," "marshes," and "swamps." Names for the same forms of deposit are "morass,"[3] "moor"[4] and fen, but these, in America, are not common terms, or are not in use, and do not need discussion. The first three, however, are used so interchangeably that it may be well to define them in the sense in which they are used in this paper. The writer has not adopted the use of the German word "moor" as a substitute for "bog," because the English word "moor" is already in use with a fairly constant meaning, namely, to designate a broad, flat upland with light soil, covered with grasses and shrubs, and while such moors may be more or less covered with peat in some cases, they are not generally peat deposits. A bog is an area of wet, porous land, on which the soil is made up principally of decayed and decaying vegetable matter, so loosely consolidated, and containing so much water, that the surface shakes and trembles as one walks over it. The vegetation upon the surface is variable, but it is characteristically either some species of moss or of sedge, or grass, or a combination of two or more of these with shrubs and even small trees. This is in part identical with Cowles'[1] undrained swamp, and is well illustrated by many examples in various parts of the Southern Peninsula, of which Mud Lake, in sections 1 and 12, T. 1 S., R. 5 E., about one and one-half miles west and nine miles north of Ann Arbor, the south and east border of Half Moon Lake, in Gratiot county, in sections 5 and 6, T. 12 N., R. 4 W., and a bog near Hobart Station, 5 miles southwest of Cadillac, on sections 30 and 31, T. 21 N., R. 9 W., and the region adjacent are types.

---

[1] Ries, H., 21st Report of the New York State Geologist, 1901, pp. r. 58, 59.
[2] Johnson, Peat and its uses, p. 24.
[3] Shaler, N. S., Fresh-water Morasses of the United States, U S. G. S. 10th An. Report, p. 261.
[4] Coulter, J. M. Plants, Chicago, 1900, p. 187.

A marsh has a firm soil; that is, not easily shaken when walked upon, although it may be soft and very wet, even submerged, and the vegetation upon it is principally grass-like; that is, with long narrow leaves, and weak, short-lived aerial stems. Shrubs may occur upon marshes, and where they are present not infrequently form thickets. The development of typical marshes is much greater than that of bogs as defined above, and much larger areas of marsh are to be found in more or less accessible places. In the southern part of the state, the Detroit and St. Clair rivers, the shores of Saginaw bay, in Akron and Wisner townships, Tuscola county, and inland, a considerable part of James township, Saginaw county (T. 11 N., R. 3 E.), several sections on the Ann Arbor R. R., in T. 9 N., R. I W., and considerable areas of the shores of the lakes about Lakeland in Livingston county, are examples. In marshes of this character the depth of peat may be slight or considerable.

A swamp, according to the writer's usage in this paper, has trees and shrubby plants as the most important part of the vegetation, the soil being, as in the case of the marsh, firm, but wet, even, at times, to flooding. The swamps are even more common than marshes and great areas of the state were formerly covered by this type of formation, which have long since been cleared, drained, and converted into agricultural land. One of the most extensive swamps seen in the Southern Peninsula of Michigan, by the writer, is located due west from West Branch, in Roscommon county, and is traversed by a state road to Houghton Lake. The timber in this tract is largely Tamarack, *Larix laricina* (DuRoi) Koch, and Arbor Vitæ, *Thuja occidentalis* L. Smaller swamp areas in nearly natural condition exist in many parts of the southern tiers of counties, notably at various points along the rivers, and around many of the lakes which occur here.

These types all intergrade more or less among themselves, and with swamps and marshes in which the soil is not of vegetable origin; hence no absolutely sharp differentiation can be made unless a rather elaborate set of compounds be devised. Not infrequently the three types may exist in the same basin and, as at Mud Lake, referred to above, it is possible to pass from one type to the other in crossing the deposit around the lake, and in many other cases around lakes the same relationship exists, the bog lying next the lake, the marsh next inshore, and the swamps extending back often to the high ground which may have formed the shores of the lakes originally. This, as will be seen later, is a perfectly normal arrangement, and one easily explained.

---

[1] Cowles, H. C., The Physiographic Ecology of Chicago and vicinity, Bot. Gaz. XXXI, 3, pp. 147-154.

Of the three terms, "bog" is the one most often used in describing deposits of peat, but this is perhaps an inheritance from English and other European literature on the subject, for in northern Europe the peat is very often found in bogs, as described above.

Since peat is formed on undrained areas or in depressions, the extent and depth of a given deposit is generally determined by that of the plain or basin in which it lies, but as pointed out by Shaler,[1] it is possible for the area of peat formation to be extended outward from a center under certain climatic conditions by the encroachment of certain species of plants which may be good peat formers upon the area occupied by those which are not large contributors of vegetable matter. This has not been noted by the writer in his studies in Southern Michigan. Since, as will be shown later, the conditions for rapid accumulations of peat are more favorable in shallow basins than in deep, and in those of limited extent than in large, there are many more small deposits than large ones, and it is rare to find accumulations of more than forty or fifty feet in depth, although deeper ones are known to exist.

### *Geographical Distribution of Peat.*

The conditions favoring the formation of peat are such that it is found most commonly in moist and cool or cold parts of the earth, hence in northern Asia, Europe and North America it occurs in great abundance, but that it is not lacking in the southern hemisphere is shown by the account of the extensive deposits of this substance on the islands on the southern coast of South America by Charles Darwin,[2] who states that the climate of the southern part of America appears particularly favorable to its production. Ries[3] states that, "Peat deposits are found chiefly in north temperate climates, especially in moist ones. Many thousand acres of the North German plain are underlain by deposits of peat, while in Ireland alone it is estimated that there are 1,576,000 acres of flat bog, and 1,254,000 acres of mountain bog. Russia is said to have 67,000 square miles of peat land, and there are several million acres in Norway and Sweden, while extensive deposits are not lacking in France and Holland. Peat bogs are common in New York, Pennsylvania, Michigan, Wisconsin, and Minnesota."

Le Conte[4] quotes estimates by Dana, that Massachusetts has 15 billions of cubic feet of peat and also states that California has large areas of imperfect peat in the "tule lands" about the mouth of the San Joaquin river and elsewhere and that extensive swamps exist in Virginia, and North Carolina. In Europe 1-10 of the whole surface of Ireland, large parts of Scotland, England and France are covered with peat. The bog of the Shannon river is fifty miles long and three miles wide, that of the Loire in France is 150 miles around. In Canada, according to Carter,[1] peat bogs are numerous, and, in extent and wideness of distribution are probably not exceeded by those of any other country of equal area. North of the height of land, say 50 miles south of James Bay, peat muskeg covers the face of the earth for hundreds, perhaps thousands of square miles, and stretches northward along the westerly shores of Hudson's Bay. In the United States it is estimated that there are 75,000,000 acres, or 120,000 square miles of swamp land.

---

[1] Op. cit., pp. 284-285.
[2] C. Darwin, Naturalist's Voyage around the world; 1888, pp. 287-288.
[3] Op. cit. p. 65.
[4] Le Conte, J., Elements of Geology. 1896. p. 147.

This distribution of peat deposits seems to be due in large measure to a combination of factors, among which are abundant precipitation, regularly distributed throughout the year, slow percolation and slight evaporation from the surface, and small run off of the surface water, because of poor drainage. There must also be a mild season sufficiently long to permit plants to grow with vigor and abundance enough to furnish accumulations of débris from which peat may develop. These factors are all operative in the cold temperate regions of the continents mentioned above as areas of extensive peat deposition. They are poorly drained, since they have been abandoned recently by the ice of the glacial period, and abound in depressions and broad flat divides, and other plains from which the water is but slowly drained by existing streams. The growing season is long enough so that the vegetation is luxuriant, and in the regions of greatest peat deposition it is cool and moist. The soil temperature is low, which tends to hinder percolation from the upper to the lower levels of the soil by increasing the viscosity of the soil water, while the low average temperature of the air is a check upon evaporation from the soil or from water surfaces, since at low temperatures the air is very readily saturated with moisture. The effect of these factors is to keep the surface of the soil constantly wet, and to permit the water which falls upon it to remain there, and accumulate in all depressions.

### *Distribution of Peat in Michigan.*

*Location:* Michigan lies between the parallels 41° 45′ and 48° 20′ N. latitude and between 82° 25′ and 90° 34′ W. longitude. It is divided naturally by the Great Lakes into two distinct parts, the Upper or Northern, and the Lower or Southern Peninsulas. The greatest length of the northern portion is from east to west and is 318 miles, the width from 30 to 164 miles. The southern portion has its greatest length from north to south, 277 miles, and its width at the widest part is 259 miles. The total area of the state is 58,915 square miles, and the coast line is over 1,600 miles in length.

Since the studies from which conclusions have been drawn in the present paper were made in the Southern Peninsula, only that part of Michigan will be considered in the following brief discussion of the climate and physiography.

The fullest account of the climate of the state is by the late Prof. A.

---

[1] Carter, W., E. H., "Peat Fuel; Its Manufacture and Use," Report of Ontario Bureau of Mines, 1903, p. 202.

Winchell[1] which still is; in general, correct in its conclusions, although many additional data have been collected since its publication.

*Precipitation:* Lane[2] gives the average precipitation for this portion of the state as some 32 inches, and in the rainfall maps of climate charts of the United States[3] the Lower Peninsula lies in the region having between 30 and 40 inches normal precipitation with a small area about Little Traverse Bay having over 40 inches.

The same series of charts show that the precipitation is between 6 and 9 inches in the first quarter of the year, January to March; between 9 and 12 inches for the second and third quarters; and between 6 and 9 inches for the fourth quarter. The period included in these charts is from 1870 to 1896.

The following table cited by Lane[4] from Winchell shows substantially the same thing regarding the distribution of the precipitation during the year:

*Distribution of Precipitation in Michigan by Seasons.*

| Season. | Upper Peninsula. | Lower Peninsula. | The State. |
|---|---|---|---|
| Spring | 19% | 25.8% | 23.8% |
| Summer | 27 | 28.7 | 28.3 |
| Autumn | 28.8 | 27.3 | 27.7 |
| Winter | 22 | 19.1 | 20 |

These data make it appear that the season of greatest rainfall is the summer and fall, and as this coincides with the season of greatest heat and consequent evaporation, it is evident that this distribution of rainfall is an important aid in the peat formation[5] and in the warmer parts of the state, may be the primary factor, since it prevents the great drying out of the soil moisture which would take place if seasons of long drought occurred annually.

The rainfall is not evenly and uniformly distributed over the Southern Peninsula but in the southern part, especially the southwestern, is an area of greater precipitation than occurs further north, and the valleys of the Saginaw tributaries have less to a marked degree than is found elsewhere, except in small areas. The western side of the Southern Peninsula has a larger rainfall than the eastern, except a narrow strip from the mouth of Saginaw Bay northward. The differences in the total amount of rainfall are not however large, and taking into account differences in temperature, soil and surface configuration, it is probable that there are few areas of the same size in the United States more evenly watered than that under discussion.

*Temperature:* The average annual temperature of Southern Michigan varies nearly 10 degrees in going from the southern to the northern ends of the peninsula, and the same may be said of the average maximum and average minimum temperatures, but the isotherms do not run uniformly at right angles with the north and south axis of the state but are variously curved[1] showing that the temperature is profoundly influenced and modified, (1) by the presence of the great lakes on three sides of it, (2) by the great land mass to the south and the southwest, (3) by the high lands in the northern part of the interior of the peninsula. Lake Michigan is especially important in its effects, modifying both the maximum and minimum temperatures very decidedly and as a result of this the climate is more even and milder than that of the region in the same latitude west of the lake. Yet the annual range of temperature is about 116° F. The range of the average mean temperature of the portion of the state under consideration is from 49° at the southern and southwestern parts to 41° in the Straits of Mackinaw, the lines of equal temperature bending northward in the western and southeastern parts, and southward in the high areas in the region northwest and southeast of Saginaw Bay. That is, the western and southeastern parts are warmer and the highlands cooler than those immediately adjacent to them.

---

[1] Winchell, A., in Tackabury's Atlas of the State of Michigan, ed. by H. F. Walling. 1st. ed. 1873, 2nd. ed. 1884. Proceedings Am. Assoc. Adv. Sci., Troy meeting, 1870.

[2] Lane, A. C., Water Resources of the Lower Peninsula of Michigan, Water Supply and Irrigation Papers, U. S. G. S., No. 30, 1899.

[3] Climate Charts of the U. S. Weather Bureau, Washington, D. C., 1900. See also Jefferson Report Mich. Acad. Sci., VIII., 1906, and Leverett, F., Flowing wells and Municipal Water Supplies of the Southern Peninsula of Michigan, W. S. & I, Paper 183 U. S. G. S., 1907, p. 10.

[4] Op. cit. p. 49.

[5] Shaler, op. cit. p. 263.

*Sunshine:* The amount of direct sunshine a region receives is important in a discussion of the vegetation of that region, and the following has been compiled from the maps referred to above.[2] The Southern Peninsula receives, with Wisconsin, part of Illinois, Indiana and Ohio, parts of Pennsylvania and New York, and a portion of New England, between 40% and 50% of sunshine during the year, compared with less than 40% in the Northern Peninsula and more than 70% in the arid region of Arizona and adjacent territory.

During January this sinks to less than 20% in a considerable portion of the western part of the peninsula and is only above 40% in the southeastern part. The area below 20% is the only one in the United States. In July, on the other hand, a very considerable part of the peninsula has over 60% of sunshine, the area extending across Indiana into northern Illinois to the Mississippi, and constituting the only area with so high a total of sunshine east of that river. The rest of the Southern Peninsula has between 50% and 60%. The effect of this relatively large amount of sunshine, during the growing season should be to increase the development of vegetation and to promote its vigorous growth, as well as cause a relatively high range in temperature.

It is thus evident that the Southern Peninsula of Michigan has a sufficiently mild and moist climate to produce abundant plant growth, and that the rainfall is so evenly distributed that no long periods of excessive drought normally occur, but on the other hand, the periods of greatest heat are also times of largest precipitation. The differences between the average temperature of the southern and northern parts are large enough to make a marked difference in the humidity of the climate, if the amount of precipitation is approximately the same, because the air of the cooler region will be constantly more near the saturation point. In this part of the state, also, the periods of greatest heat are shorter and less frequent than in the southern portion, which fact is important in considering evaporation effects upon vegetation and moist or wet surfaces. That is, in the northern part of the Southern

---

[1] See Lane, op. cit. pp. 49-53.

[2] U. S. Weather Bureau. Op. cit.

Peninsula, because of the differences in temperature alone, more of the land surface will be available for the formation of peat than in the southern part of the same area, because the drying effects of highly heated air are absent there. The efficiency of this agency is relatively greater for the higher temperatures than for lower ones, since the capacity of the air to take up moisture increases more rapidly above 50° F. than it does below it.

*Physical Features:* To these climatic conditions which are, on the whole, favorable to the abundant formation of peat, are added certain physical surface features which are also very favorable. Shaler[1] says, "In the conditions which determine the formation of swamps, the shape of the land is generally of most importance." The Southern Peninsula of Michigan is, geologically speaking, new land, recently exposed to the erosive agencies which have not yet had time to develop a complete drainage system. Because of this, there are great numbers of deep hollows, slight depressions and flat areas, in and upon which water accumulates and from which it drains away very slowly, or not at all, forming lakes. Moreover, the agencies which shaped a great part of the surface of Michigan, were such that they left it exceptionally rough, after entirely obliterating the older surface and its systems of drainage, at so recent a time that the new drainage is still in an undeveloped stage. In traveling over the Southern Peninsula one is constantly impressed by the facts that about its borders, for a varying distance from the Great Lakes, the country is quite flat and free from either marked elevations or depressions. Proceeding inland however, the character of the surface changes and often abruptly, becoming rolling, the plain giving place to a series of ridges and hollows, which seem distributed over the land without order or plan. Often between areas of such rolling country will be found broad plains and valleys, which, though relatively flat, are not smooth, but contain frequent depressions in which are found lakes and marshes. The broader plains have a somewhat different geological history from the interior rolling country, but it is sufficient to say that in the marginal plains, while rarely considerable deposits of peat are accumulated, in general such accumulations are shallow and not of commercial extent. In the rough and rolling areas, however, as has been pointed out above, there are many undrained depressions and places where water stands above the land surface permanently, and in this territory, the region of moraines, gravel and till plains, left by the ice of the last glacial period, there are very numerous deposits of peat, many of which are extensive enough to warrant commercial development, and when all the available deposits, large and small, which are to be found in this region are taken into account, they represent an enormous amount of stored-up fuel.

### *Classification of Michigan Peat Deposits.*

Various methods of classification for swamps and peat accumulations have been proposed, and more or less satisfactory schemes for grouping them may be made.

Shaler[2] considering all inundated lands, uses a system based upon, first, the kind of water by which the land was covered, fresh or salt, and then under fresh water swamps, considers the source of the water, whether from rivers, lakes, etc.

---

[1] Shaler, N. S., Op. cit. p. 263.
[2] Shaler, N. S., Op. cit. p. 264.

Schimper[1] under the paragraph "moors," states that rich formation of peat on wet soils leads to the production of moors, which occupy very large areas, especially in the cool and moist districts of the cold temperate belt, and classifies them according as they have or have not a limey substratum as "meadow-moors" rich in lime, and "high-moors" poor in lime, with the center built up higher than the margins, hence the name. The same nomenclature was adopted by Fisher,[2] Fruh,[3] Koller[4] and others, and is evidently the ordinary usage in Germany since Eiselen[5] says that, "in East Friesland, Holland, the Holstein region, etc., they usually divide peaty areas into the so-called high and meadow moors."

A very casual study of peat bodies will convince any careful observer that not all of them have been formed in the same way, and a little consideration of the possibilities of each formation will make it apparent that there may be a number of possible methods by which such accumulations have come about. For convenience of discussion the writer has grouped the peat deposits of Michigan in several ways, taking as a basis of the classification, various points of view and elaborating each under a separate head.

### *Peat Deposits Classified According to the Form of Land Surface Upon Which They Have Been Formed.*

This seems the most fundamental basis for a scheme of classification, and hence is considered first. Peat is formed over:

A. Depressed surfaces or hollows.
B. Surfaces not hollowed out.

Class (A) may be subdivided more or less minutely, but of easily recognizable forms of closed depressions, the following are most worthy of consideration:

1. Lake basins of the "tarn" type.
2. Shallow lake basins of the ordinary type.
3. Hollows not permanently filled with water.
4. Hollows in sand dunes.
5. Hollows formed by dams.
    a. Dams formed by differential uplift or tilting.
    b. Dams formed by hard rock outcrops.
    c. Dams formed by glacial ice, morainal dams.
    d. Dams formed by wave, wind, and ice action along the shores of the lakes.
    e. Dams formed by rivers and streams at flood time, cutting off portions of their flood plains, or of their channels.
    f. Driftwood dams in sluggish streams.
    g. Beaver dams.

---

[1] Schimper, A. F. W., Plant Geography upon a Physiological Basis. Trans. by Fisher. 1903. p. 657.

[2] Fisher, Chem. Technol. der Brennstoffe, 1897.

[3] Fruh, I., Torf und Dopplerit, Zurich, 1883.

[4] Koller, T., Die Torf Industrie, Wien, 1898.

[5] Eiselen, J. C., Handbuch oder............Anleitung zur............Kentniss des Torf wesens, Berlin, 1802.

Class (B) may also be subdivided into:

1. Poorly drained till plains.
2. Broad divides.
3. The floors of glacial drainage valleys.
4. Lake and stream terraces.
5. Deltas of streams.
6. Slopes over which seepage spring waters flow.
7. Northern bogs, in which peat forms on slopes, i. e. "climbing bogs."

Among the thousands of small lakes in the Southern Peninsula, there are several well-marked types, among which two, tarns and ordinary lakes, from their frequency, may be cited. These are formed in hollows in glacial moraines, or in the depressions which occur so frequently in the gravel plains, which mark the lines of drainage from the front of the glacial ice. The term "tarn" is applied to any of these small lakes in which there is no visible inlet, and such lakes as the "Sister Lakes" a short distance west of Ann Arbor, Whitmore Lake, 10 miles north of that city, and Bass and Rock Lakes near Vestaburg, Montcalm county, are examples of this class. Whitmore Lake is also an example of the type filling a depression in a plain, as are Rock and Bass Lakes. Many of the lakes in Lyndon Tp., T. 1 S., R. 3 E., are excellent examples of morainal lakes, and several of these, like Cedar Lake, in section 9, are tarns as well. Lakes of the ordinary type, with well marked inlets and outlets are so numerous as to need no illustration, since they occur so frequently that hardly a portion of the Southern Peninsula, except the region about Saginaw Bay, is without them.

There are abundant illustrations also of the third class of depressions, those not filled permanently with water, especially in the morainal parts of the state, which, while they have considerable water in them at times are not continuously occupied by lakes and may be termed intermittent lakes in some cases, while in others, they may represent filled lakes, or may be merely marshy. Peat accumulates in them, in some cases, and in others does not, the general rule seeming to be that in the southern part of the state, if shallow, they contain little peat, while north, they are usually partly filled with peat, whether shallow or deep.

The sand dune regions of the Southern Peninsula are chiefly in the immediate vicinity of the Great Lakes, and here between dunes will often be found swampy areas, formed apparently by the fact that the dunes rest upon a clay substratum, upon which the water which soaks into the sand of the dunes, accumulates in sufficient quantities to induce bog, swamp or marsh conditions. The shores of Lake Michigan, where not too high, the region around Saginaw Bay, and of Lake Huron north of that Bay, give numerous examples of this type of depression, while in Vassar township, Tuscola county, may be found occasionally a swamp which has developed in an inland dune region.

The types of basins formed by dams are not always easily distinguished from other depressions, but frequently the dam itself is still easily identifiable, and as the depressions were in many cases originally stream valleys they are often long, and narrow in proportion to their length. The long narrow lakes on the west shore of the Southern Peninsula are, many of them, such stream valleys according to Lane,[1] which have been sunk by differential uplift and later closed by bars thrown across the mouth of the valley by wind and wave action. In a region so generally covered by glacial moraines as the higher parts of the Southern Peninsula it would seem easy to point to moraina dams in numbers, but relatively few are known to the writer. Such a dam crossed the Huron river valley at Ann Arbor at an early stage in the retreat of the Maumee Lobe of the ice sheet to the Lake Erie basin, but it was apparently a very temporary affair, and was soon washed out, and this is apparently the fate of most of such dams to stream valleys, for we find not infrequently that streams have been crossed by moraines which at one time converted their valleys into temporary lake basins. Such a dam held back the waters of the Cass river near Vassar for a time, and the Pine river near St. Louis, and also near Alma, was evidently dammed by small moraines. The height of these dams and their looseness of texture was usually unfavorable to their permanence, for as soon as the water began to run over them they rapidly washed out.

Much more permanent are the barriers, which are built by wave and current action and ice shove in the winter, across the mouths of indentations on the shores of the larger lakes, and which tend to straighten the shore line by cutting off the bays and making them into independent basins. Almost every lake which had originally any irregularities in its shore line shows some such cut off bay. The best illustrations of dams of this type may be found upon the west shore of the state, where wind, waves and current action are all working together to straighten the shore line, and such lakes as Pine Lake near Charlevoix and Intermediate and Torch Lakes on the east side of Grand Traverse Bay and a large number of others show how efficient these dams are.

An excellent example of this type of lake on the eastern side of the state, is Tobico Lake, in Bay county, a short distance north of West Bay City, where the long current-formed sand spit has cut off from the main body of water, what was until recently a bay. Here also may be seen, a short distance to the west of the present Tobico Lake, and at higher levels, two swamps, formed by the filling of lakes, which were cut off in identical fashion from the main bay during the time when the lakes which preceded Lake Huron covered the land. Tobico Lake is shallow and supports an abundant growth of aquatic plants, and is apparently filling rapidly.

These larger examples are cited because they are so conspicuous, but Littlefield Lake in northern Isabella county, T. 16 N., R. 5 W., has six basins, which have been cut off from the main one, in this case by marl, which has closed up mouths of what were formerly bays. The shore of Saginaw Bay, especially on the east side, has many small, shallow ponds just behind the present shore line, which have been made by the sand ridges heaped up by wind and wave action.

The basins formed by stream action differ in shape and are usually, in Michigan at least, of smaller size than those formed by the agencies just mentioned. They are of two types, the marginal and the "ox-bow." The marginal type is usually developed on the shoreward edge of the flood plain of the stream valley, by the elevation of the bottom of the existing channel of the stream by depositions during seasons of high water. This gradually raises the part of the flood plain in which the stream runs, and leaves the remoter margins lower, so that when the banks overflow the water finds its way to those lower places and remains there, or finds its way slowly to the stream lower down in its course. Most streams with a wide valley and rather sluggish current show ponds and lakes caused by this form of dam in some parts of their course. Maple river, a tributary to the Grand, the Saginaw river, the Pine river, near Alma, and many other streams are examples showing this form of dam. The type of depression formed by the changes which streams make in their channels during times of flood is best illustrated by the "ox-bow" lakes, but these are by no means the only forms which occur. Streams in the lower and flatter parts of their courses, where their valleys are wide and the material easily eroded, are most likely to furnish illustrations of this form of dam. The streams in this part of their valleys are likely to meander widely and make very tortuous channels for themselves, and in flood times, when the current increases in velocity, and the amount of water is so great that the streams are out of their banks, they cut new channels, straighter and more direct, and close up, in part at least, the old ones, leaving them as elongated depressions of greater or less extent, which are usually wholly or partly filled with water. The Huron river below Ypsilanti, and in fact the greater number of the streams flowing in broad flat valleys throughout the state, afford examples of cut off channels and bends, so that no student of the subject need go far to seek illustrations.

---

[1] Op. cit. p. 65.

In early times in the Southern Peninsula the streams were often blocked for considerable distances with dams of drift wood, the trunks of trees, washed out from along the banks by freshets, and by the undermining of the banks by shifting currents during the ordinary stages of water. These were usually cleared out of streams as soon as lumbering began, and, except in the wilder and more inaccessible parts of the state, will not be allowed to accumulate again, but the following account of such dams by Desor[1] is interesting and shows how extensive such obstructions formerly were. "We had sailed a day and a half on the principal branch of the Manistique, when we were stopped by an accumulation of tree trunks, forming an obstacle across the river. The rafts, which the Canadians called 'embarras,' are by no means rare in the forest, wherever the gradient of the river is slight. A tree trunk uprooted by the current, and dragged along by the river catches on the side of a meander; if the current does not dislodge it, a second trunk coming along is stopped, others come along and their branches interlacing, they end by forming a barrier, which increases indefinitely. There are some of these barriers which have a considerable area and are very old, since they are often found covered with bushes which have taken root upon the floating trunks. The one we encountered here was not of this kind; it was evidently of recent formation, because it was not more than a dozen fathoms in width. The tree trunks were dry and mainly of the Arbor Vitae."

Another of these obstructions in the same stream is described as several hundred fathoms long and very old, covered by shrubs, among others, the raspberry, which grew "as parasites" on the half rotten trunks of the birches and spruces.

---

[1] Desor, E., La Foret Vierge, pp. 28-30, Paris, 1879.

It is not to be questioned that such obstructions in streams did much to hold the water back and create marsh and swamp conditions for considerable distances above them.

Of beaver dams little need be said here, since they are discussed at length in another place, except to point out that the extensive deposit of peat at Capac, seems, in part at least, to have been formed in the ponds created by beavers, since their dams were cut through in developing the drainage system of the deposit, and that the remains of the animals and their dams are frequently found in draining swamps and marshes in the central part of the state.

Types of flat areas belonging to class (B) are widely distributed over the Southern Peninsula and only single instances need be cited to show the characteristics of each. The "till plain" is a nearly level area which probably is the ground moraine of a portion of the glacial ice sheet which melted back at a uniform rate faster than the ice advanced, so that no morainal ridges were formed. Such a plain of rather small extent is found in Washtenaw county north of Ann Arbor. The soil is usually bouldery clay and sufficiently impermeable so that the water stands upon the more level parts of the surface, a part of the time at least, thus tending to cause the development of swamps.

The broad flat divide between the tributaries of different drainage systems is a well marked character of young topography, and is frequently found in the Southern Peninsula, in the higher parts especially. Many of these divides are parts of till plains, and are swampy for the same reason that the plains are. The extensive swamp areas between the Pine river and the Maple river in Gratiot county may be considered as examples of this form of land surface.

By glacial drainage valleys are meant those in which the water from the front of the melting ice sheet flowed away to some lake or to the sea; or in some cases they are undoubtedly the temporary outlets of the great lakes which accumulated for a time between the front of the ice sheet and the high land from which it had recently retreated. These valleys are sometimes of great length, and of considerable width, and may or may not be occupied by streams at the present time. Such a valley is usually very flat in the bottom, and where it is not too sandy or gravelly, may become swampy. The series of marshes and swamps extending southward from Huron county to Imlay City and thence southwestward, is such a channel, while the well known celery swamp south of Ann Arbor and those about Kalamazoo are other examples.

Lake and stream terraces are often nearly flat and because of being covered by impervious clays do not quickly absorb rain water, or that which flows over them from higher levels. The wet shores of Saginaw Bay, the well marked marshy areas about the western end of Lake Erie, and the swamps and marshes upon the terraces of such streams as the Saginaw, the Maple and Huron rivers may be taken as typical of these forms of plains.

Streams, besides forming dams along their courses are continually depositing material at their mouths by which they build up a more or less extensive plain of wet soil to the level of the body of water into which they run. These plains are not usually of great extent, but may develop until they fill large areas of the lakes into which they are built. The delta of the St. Clair river in Lake St. Clair described by J. Leon Cole,[1] and that of the Saginaw river are two of the extensive deltas easily accessible and typical of this form of plain, but in nearly every lake which has a stream flowing into it a more or less extensive delta may be found, and upon these it will be seen that there are very favorable conditions for marsh and swamp development.

In many places in the Southern Peninsula, clay or compact till slopes have at their tops, or superimposed upon them, sand or gravel beds, through which the water which falls as rain percolates until it reaches the clay. This it follows until it reaches the expanse of clay and running over the slopes forms a favorable place for the development of peat. Such slopes with bogs upon them occur at Ortonville in Oakland county, in the valley of Huron river, north of Ann Arbor, and at a short distance west of Chelsea, near the line of the electric railway, and in many similar places.

The northern or climbing bog has not been observed in the area studied, but the type may occur in the extreme northern end of the peninsula and has been reported from the Northern Peninsula by Shaler and others.[2]

### *Classification According to Method of Development.*

A second method of classification of peat deposits may be based upon the way in which the deposit was developed, whether from the bottom, or the sides and top, and here again at least two main types are to be distinguished.

(C) Those built up by successive generations of plants, starting from what is now the bottom of the peat.

(D) Those which have been formed by growth at the sides, or at the top of the basin, or both.

Peat deposits of type (C) occur invariably in the shallower depressions, and upon slopes and plains, and since the depth of the water in which even aquatic plants will grow is limited to a few feet, it is evident that no deposit of peat of this kind can be more than this depth, unless from time to time the water level is raised, as the deposit is built up, or it is formed by floating aquatic plants of the higher types, or by algae.

(D) For the same reason it is clear that the filling of deep lakes with peat, so that twenty, thirty or even fifty or more feet of peat may be formed, can only take place in relatively few ways, such as: (1) The washing of dead and decaying vegetation from the shores into deeper parts of the lake basin.

(2) The drifting in of such matter from the tributary streams.

(3) Vegetation may grow out from the shores to form floating mats, which finally extend themselves to cover the entire water surface.

It is probable that it not infrequently happens that there may be filling from the sides, until the water has become shallow enough to enable water plants to attach themselves to the bottom thus formed, and from this time on, the building up from the bottom begins, although the development of peat from the remains of submerged aquatic plants must be very slow, because these contain such small amounts of vegetable matter relative to the semi-aquatic and land plants.

---

[1] Geological Survey of Michigan, Vol. IX., Part I.

[2] See also Part II of this report.

(4) In rather rare instances in the southern, and more frequently in the northern part, in small, quiet, sheltered bodies of water, floating, rootless species of plants may develop in sufficiently large numbers at and near the surface to become important factors in the work of filling the deeper parts.

### *Classification According to Surface Vegetation.*

Still a third system of classification is frequently adopted by prospectors for peat, by botanists, and others, which, while it is purely superficial, would, in general, probably be considered as the most natural. This is based upon the kinds of plants growing upon the surface of the deposit, and the inference, which has led to much misapprehension in this respect, is that the peat below is formed by vegetation which at any given time may be growing upon its surface, and is governed by this in its character.

In giving names of this sort to peat deposits, usually some conspicuous species of plant, or sometimes more than one, gives its name to the formation, despite the fact that many others are associated with it, which may be more important as peat formers. Any classification made upon this particular basis would include at least the following types in Michigan:

(1) Elm and Black Ash[1] swamps.
(2) Tamarack swamps, marshes and bogs.
(3) Cedar (Arbor Vitæ) swamps.
(4) Spruce swamps.
(5) Willow and Alder swamps.
(6) Heath (Blue-berry, Cranberry and Cassandra) swamps, marshes or bogs.
(7) Grass and sedge marshes and bogs.
(8) Rush marshes (Cat-tail and Bullrush marshes belong here).
(9) Moss bogs (including Sphagnum bogs).

Elm and Ash swamps are among the most common types of the swamp forest of Southern Michigan and may occur in any locality where the drainage is sufficiently poor, whether peat is present or not. In fact, it is probably true that this type is less frequently found upon pure peat than upon mineral soils, but it may appear as a characteristic forest type upon the poorly drained surface of beds of peat, which have become thoroughly decomposed, and which are rich in mineral matter. Hence in river swamps and delta swamps, on shallow peat approaching muck and humus, they are common. On deeper peat they are found at intervals in the margins of the lake swamps, but there seems to be no way in which these are to be distinguished from those where the substratum of peat is very shallow.

This association of plants occurs upon peat several feet deep at Half

---

[1] Throughout this report, at the request of the State Geologist, and as a convenience both to printer and the general reader, English names are used for the different species, but in general in a perfectly definite sense, and a table of the latin equivalents in specific names for the English names used will be found at the end.

Moon Lake, in Seville township, T. 12 N., R. 4 W., sections 5 and 6, and at Mud Lake, in the same township, there was formerly an extensive forest of this type, now cut off, on peat more than four feet deep. Burns[1] reports elm and maple growth (in which the black ash is also an important constituent) at Dead Lake, upon from 5 to 10 feet of solid peat. A very extensive swamp of this general character occurs in sections 7 and 18 in T. 3 S., R. 4 E., in Washtenaw county, where, in places, the peat is more than three feet deep.

(2) Tamarack is a much more commonly recognized indicator of peat deposits than the elm, and is probably a much more certain one as well, especially in the southern part of its range, in Southern Michigan, but it is by no means confined to peat deposits. Throughout the morainal region, wherever there are undrained or poorly drained areas even in the lake plain, there are likely to be found tamarack swamps, and hence a few localities only need be mentioned. Near Ann Arbor the type is poorly illustrated by a small area at the First Sister Lake, three miles west of town. This has been drained and partly cleared, but north of the city a few miles are more extensive tracts about the small lakes, and in the undrained spots in the vicinity of Whitmore Lake, and from thence north on the line of the Ann Arbor R. R. to Durand, they are frequent and typical. Farther north, in Gratiot and Isabella counties, they are again numerous, and still farther north, in the vicinity of Cadillac, extensive areas are occupied by this type. In the borders of lakes the Tamarack frequently is found scattered singly or in groups over the grass and sedge marsh, and such a development is to be seen in the marshes around Lakeland, Livingston county, especially in those which lie north of the station a mile or more. In fact, it is usually true that the species spreads out into an open marshy area near which it may grow, as will be shown later, so that it may be found as a characteristic bog or marsh plant anywhere within its range, in sufficient numbers to become an important element of the vegetation.

The White Cedar, or Arbor Vitæ (*Thuja occidentalis* L.) characterizes a type of swamp which is northern in its distribution, and which has not been observed by the writer south of the central part of the state, but from northern Gratiot county north, the type occurs with great frequency in lake margins, in springy situations, and along the terraces of streams. One of the more southern points at which the type has been observed is at Riverdale, Gratiot county, where such a swamp formerly occupied a sloping terrace at the foot of a gravelly moraine. The accumulation of peat here was small. At Lake Orion, in Oakland county, is another southern locality for this characteristic species, where it occurs in association with the Tamarack and the Black Spruce. This illustrates a fact which should be constantly borne in mind, namely, that while any of these species may occur without admixture of others, in swamps which they characterize, they also frequently are found in mixed associations, so that a tamarack swamp may be a spruce or a cedar swamp as well, or even an ash swamp.

As one proceeds northward, the cedar swamp is more and more of common occurrence, and may indicate extensive peat deposits, or may not. At Hobart, in Wexford county, peat was more than 20 feet deep under a heavy growth of cedar, while at Littlefield Lake, in Isabella county, the peat, under equally good growth, was, in places, less than two feet deep, and nowhere more than four feet in depth.

---

[1] Burns, G. P., Formation of Peat in Dead Lake, Mich. Acad. of Science, 6th report, 1905.

Spruce (*Picea Mariana and Picea brevifolia* Peck) swamps, like the cedar swamps, are of more northern distribution in the Lower Peninsula than the Tamarack swamps, but they extend somewhat further south than those characterized by the Cedar, occurring in southern Livingston and northern Washtenaw counties, either as pure spruce swamps or as those in which there is a mixture of Spruce and Tamarack. Such a mixed type occurs at Mud Lake, a mile and a half west of Whitmore Lake, where both Spruce and Tamarack are scattered over a considerable area of deep peat upon the north side of the swamp, while the Spruce is nearly entirely wanting on the south side. In the region farther north, Isabella county and northward, Spruce swamps are of more frequent occurrence and are more dense, while in the Northern Peninsula extensive areas of this type are characteristic features of the greater part of the Peninsula.

In the southern part of the area under consideration, the Willow swamp, or marsh, is a common type. In this the ground is more or less densely covered by shrubby Willows of various species, often accompanied by Poplars, the growth reaching a height of from five to twenty feet, or more. The growth may be very dense upon moderately well-drained peat or may be scattered upon that which is wet. The Willow swamp frequently borders a grass marsh, and the relationship is a genetic one, as will be pointed out below. Small Willow swamps are common over the greater part of the area studied, and are often found occupying the swampy areas along streams where there is little, if any, peat. The Alder swamp is much like the Willow swamp, except that it is usually more densely covered by the bushes, and that these grow to a greater height, and also is more northern in its region of frequent occurrence. Like Willows, the Alder is frequently the dominant growth in the wet valleys of streams, and in the region north of the central part of the Lower Peninsula, Alder swamps are very common, and may develop where there is considerable depth of peat. At Mud Lake, mentioned above, is a considerable area of Willow swamp near the western end of the peat deposit, which has accumulated there.

Alder is the characteristic shrub in a large peat swamp near Half Moon Lake in Gratiot county, and is generally a more or less important constituent of the flora of swamps along streams in the region to the north of the center of the Lower Peninsula, as well as in the other types of swamps. The chief species of Alder found in the Alder swamps of this range is *Alnus incana* (L.) Willd., and while both Willows and Alders may grow in any wet open situation, they frequently grow upon the deepest peat. These plants frequently follow clearing, draining, burning or destruction by floods of other types of vegetation.

Another type of bush cover upon peat deposits, and the one which is more likely to indicate peat of considerable depth in the Southern Peninsula of Michigan than any other kind of woody growth, is that formed by the members of the Heath family, of which the Blueberries, *Vaccinium corymbosum* L., and other species of the same genus are the best known representatives. Heath swamps are rare or absent over very considerable areas in the lake plain district, and in some portions of the morainal areas, but in others, and upon the till plains in the northern and north-central parts of the state, they are of rather frequent occurrence. The various heaths are usually associated with the moss *Sphagnum,* and the locations cited below will usually serve for both types. The association is not invariable, however, and some of the heaths have been found in extensive tracts where little, if any, *Sphagnum* was present, as on sections 25 and 26 in Dexter township, Washtenaw county (T. 1 S., R. 4 E.). Heath swamps are illustrated by a portion of the swamp about Mud Lake, already referred to, by a number of areas between Perry and Lansing, along the line of the Grand Trunk R. R., by several examples near Vestaburg in Montcalm county, in the southwest part of T. 12 N., R. 5 W., and by others in the vicinity of Boyce Lake, Roscommon county, in T. 21 N., R. 3 W. Often with the heaths will be found other shrubs, which, in the southern part of the state, may be quite as conspicuous, or even more so, but for which it does not seem necessary to make a special class here.

The grass and sedge types of marsh or bog are well known and are often called "hay marshes," because they are cut for hay. The prevailing vegetation is grass-like and may be either sedges or grasses or mixtures of the two types, although frequently there are practically no species of one or the other of the two present in quantity. Generally the sedges are found upon rather wetter situations than the grasses, but both grow finely upon peat. The wide "prairies" of Saginaw and Bay counties, extending up into Tuscola and Huron are chiefly sedge marsh, in which various species of *Carex* are the most conspicuous plants, but in the same region there are numerous limited tracts in which the grasses are the chief vegetation. The marshes of the lake borders of the vicinity of Lakeland, Livingston county, and of Four Mile Lake, near Dexter, Washtenaw county, and those along the Detroit and St. Clair rivers are chiefly sedge marshes, although in most cases, all of these pass gradually into rush marshes or bogs as one goes from the shore outward to the lake or river.

As indicated in the preceding statement, the rush swamp or bog is wetter than the sedge type in the majority of cases and may be found associated with it, and, in the localities named above the rush type is found in close proximity, or even intruding upon the other. The plants taken as characterizing this wet type of marsh are the Cat-tail Flag and the Bulrush, and, as is also true of the sedge and grass marshes, both may, and often do, grow in places where there is no peat whatever, but, on the other hand, all may grow upon peat of great depth, though where these plants are present, the peat is frequently very wet and soft.

The moss bogs are those in which some species of true moss is a marked constituent of the surface cover and rarely may be the only type present. The mosses most likely to become dominant in these places are (1) in the wettest places aquatic species of *Hypnum;* (2) in somewhat dryer areas, but still very wet, *Sphagnum;* (3) in the dryest places in bogs, or after they have been drained, *Polytrichum;* or, in shady places, the high ground species of *Hypnum;* with *Polytrichum* not uncommonly occurs the lichen *Cladonia* Sp. The heath bogs mentioned above all have more or less *Sphagnum* present, while the great peat deposit at Capac was densely covered in many places by a species of *Polytrichum,* as was the bog (swamp) at Chelsea, Washtenaw county, now being developed for fuel manufacture.

In discussing these schemes of classification it is evident that if the discussion is to serve any definite purpose, the life relations of the plants concerned in the formation of peat, the principles which govern their distribution, not only areal, but also into associations, and their adaptation to environment, must be carefully considered, since in general peat deposits have been built up by the continued addition of the dead parts of plants which have lived upon the surface of the deposit, while it was being built. It must also be borne in mind that not all such plants are of equal importance as peat formers, since some of them are of less frequent occurrence, are less vigorous in growth, and because of simple structure, furnish less vegetable matter than others.

The subject of the formation of peat has been written upon frequently for more than a century, but the discussion has been carried on mainly by European writers, who have dealt with conditions existing in colder, moister and less variable climates than that of the part of Michigan which is here discussed, and the developments described are evidently quite different from those studied here.

A brief review of the literature makes this apparent, as shown by the following citations:

Geikie[1] states that "these deposits are largely due to the growth of bog mosses and other aquatic plants, which, dying in their lower parts, continue to grow upward on the same spot." "In a thick bed of peat, it is not infrequently possible to detect a succession of plant remains, showing that one kind of vegetation has given place to another during the accumulation of the moss * * * the lowest part of the peat may contain remains of reeds, sedges, and other aquatic plants which choked the lake. Higher up the peat consists almost entirely of the matted fibers of different mosses, especially of the kind known as Bog-moss or *Sphagnum.* The uppermost layers may be full of roots of different heaths which spread over the surface of the bog."

Jukes-Brown[2] makes the following statements: "In England and Europe generally, some species of moss constitutes the greater part of the mass, but elsewhere other plants contribute largely to the growth of peat. In the English Fen country, peat is chiefly formed by a moss called *Hypnum fluitans,* but in the mountain bogs of Ireland and Scotland the moss is a species of Sphagnum."

According to Sir J. Rennie,[3] many of the peat bogs or "mosses" of Europe occupy the sites of great forests, some of which have been destroyed in historic times. The fallen timber by obstructing the natural drainage, and causing the ground to become wet and marshy has conduced to the growth of mosses which produce peat.

Brown[4] states that "on the continent (of Europe), turf formation is said to be rare on calcareous and frequent on silicious bottoms, though in Ireland the rule does not hold true, probably owing to local circumstances, not permitting of the water draining away as easily as it does in a limestone country generally." Also that 'turf' (peat), has received various names indicative of the plants from which it is derived, such as 'moss-turf,' 'grass turf,' 'heath turf,' 'wood turf,' etc. The Irish often speak of a 'sod' of peat."

---

[1] Geikie, A., Class Book of Geology, 1890, pp. 82-88.
[2] Jukes-Brown, A. J., Hand Book of Physical Geography, 1892, p. 211.
[3] Rennie, J., Essays on Peat, p. 65.
[4] Brown, Robert, "Our Earth and Its Story," Vol. 1, 1887, pp. 60-62.

Speaking of the peat of Lincolnshire, Wheeler[1] says: "This peat consists of the remains of mosses, water grasses, reeds, flags, and other fresh-water plants, common to ditches and ponds, the most abundant being the *Hypnum fluitans* and the *Arundo Phragmites*."

Koller[2] makes the statement that "practically all plants except the fungi may form peat, but the bog mosses are most important, as owing to their spongy nature, they tend to produce a high water level in the pond or swamp."

Of American writers upon the subject, there are two classes, those who have written as geologists and those who have described the vegetation upon the surfaces of various types of peat deposits, from the point of view of the botanist.

Desor,[3] quoting from a letter from Lesquereux, gives as the origin of Cedar swamps along the Manistique river, the following: "When a river overflows its banks, the slimy sediment is deposited, of course, at the edge of the current, and where its force ceases; and thus a ridge is formed along the banks, behind which, on the retreat of the river, there remains stagnant water. This is the origin of peat bogs. The first growth of the still water is Chara, a plant of a peculiar composition, containing a large quantity of silica, and to the decomposition of which I attribute, in a great measure, the formation of the clay found in peat bogs. * * * Next to the Chara comes the Sphagnum. To enable these plants to grow, requires only a hollow in which moisture can lodge and a few fragments of woody fiber." Here follows a discussion of the structure, and properties of Sphagnum, and the writer concludes: "Upon the basis of these facts you may easily follow the operations of nature in the formation of Cedar swamps."

"When a little water remains in a hollow and becomes saturated with humic acid by the decomposition of vegetable substances, Sphagnum immediately establishes itself. * * * As these mosses spread * * * a favorable soil is formed for the Cedars."

Lesquereux[4] later attributed the formation of peat in the Great Dismal Swamp largely to Sphagnum, an observation which later explorers[5] dispute.

The persistence of the idea which Lesquereux advocated, and which is evidently correct for northern Europe and a portion of North America, is shown by its almost universal restatement in geological text-books and by even very recent writers upon peat. This Shaler[6] says: "In the northern section of the United States, speaking of those regions in which the mean annual temperature is below 55° F., the water mosses, especially the species of *Sphagnum*, are by far the most important swamp-breeding plants. * * * Its value as a peat producer is, throughout the section within the glacial belt, probably greater than that of all the other water loving plants."

---

[1] Wheeler, W. H., The Fens of S. Lincolnshire, 2nd Ed. 1896.

[2] Koller, T., Die Torf-Industrie, pp. 4-5.

[3] Desor, E., in Foster, J. W. & Whitney, J. D., Report on the Geology of the Lake Superior Land District, Part 2, 1851, pp. 240-242.

[4] Lesquereux, L., "Torfbildung im grossen Dismal Swamp," Zeitschr. der deutschen geolog Gesellsch. IV, 1852, pp. 695-697.

[5] Kearney, H., Report on the Botanical Survey of the Great Dismal Swamp Region. Cont. U. S. Nat. Herb. VI, No. 6. 1901, p. 429.
Also Shaler, N. S., Op. cit. 320-321.

[6] Shaler, Op. cit. pp. 285-286.

This writer, to illustrate the importance of Sphagnum as a peat producing plant, uses the diagram which we reproduce as Fig. 2—one which has been widely reproduced in text-books of geology and elsewhere. It should be noted, in connection with this classic figure, however, that conditions, such as it represents, with Sphagnum as the mat forming, lake covering plant, do not and can not occur in the region here discussed. The real relation of plants in the formation of a cover, such as is here represented, is shown in Fig. 4 of this paper.

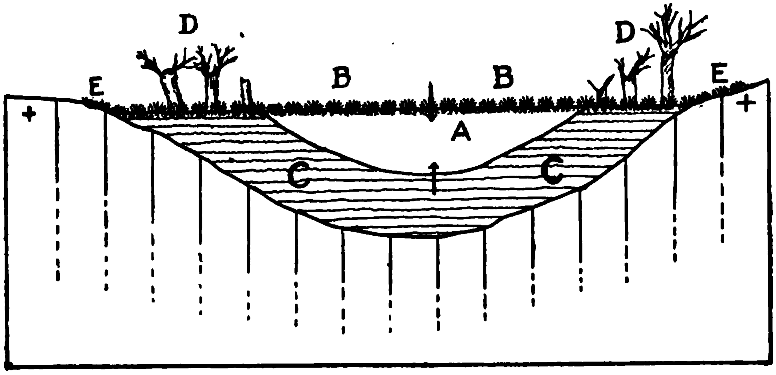


FIG. 2. Reproduced from Shaler, "Fresh-water morasses of the United States, Tenth Annual Report of the U. S. G. S., p. 257. See text and compare Fig. 4.

Dana[1] says: "In temperate climates it is due mainly to the growth of mosses of the genus *Sphagnum.*"

Scott[2] has the following: "In northern regions the peat is formed principally by mosses, and especially by the bog moss *Sphagnum.* Elsewhere, as in the Great Dismal Swamp of Virginia, the leaves of trees and various aquatic plants are the sources of supply. * * * "The bogs of northern latitudes are due principally to the bog moss, *Sphagnum,* which forms dense and tangled masses of vegetation, dead and decaying below, green and flourishing above."

Tarr,[3] speaking of the filling of small lakes in the northern states, says: "One form of plant is of particular importance in this respect. A moss, the *Sphagnum,* grows luxuriantly on the shores of these tiny ponds and lakelets and by its life and death, builds a bog which is sometimes several feet in depth."

Ries,[4] in discussing the formation of peat says: "Since most peat is formed from the moss *Sphagnum* peat bogs are formed only in cold, temperate, humid climates, for the reason that *Sphagnum* does not grow in dry air, etc."

Alexander Winchell,[5] on the other hand, as early as 1860, makes the following statement: "Around the shallow margins of these lakes is always a belt, abounding in various forms of aquatic vegetation, which, decaying, form a deposit of vegetable matters, resting upon the marl, from the water's edge to the inner limit of vegetable growth. With the filling of the interior, the shallow belt extends towards the center and the vegetable deposit continually encroaches upon the lacustrine area until the whole lake becomes a peaty marsh."

---

[1] Dana, J. D., Text book of Geology, 5th Ed. 1897, p. 107.

[2] Scott, B. W., Introduction to Geology, 1897, p. 133-135.

[3] Tarr, R. S., Elementary Geology, 1897, pp. 190-192.

[4] Ries, H., Op. cit. p.r 58.

[5] Winchell, A., First Biennial Report, Geological Survey of Michigan for 1860-1861, p. 130. Also see Winchell, Geological Studies, pp. 81-82.

From the botanists who have written upon the subject, a somewhat different idea of peat formation is obtained, namely, that many types of plants are concerned, especially water plants.

Cowles[1] makes this apparent in his discussion of the plant societies of the vicinity of Chicago.

Atkinson[2] intimates it in describing the "atoll moors" of the region about Ithaca, N. Y.

Mills,[3] in a recent paper, points out that "Chara, the water lilies, *Castalia* and pond lilies *Nymphaea,* are rapidly reclaiming the bottom of a small lake in Indiana.

Whitford[4] makes an equivalent statement in discussing the swamp societies of Northern Michigan.

### *Principles Underlying the Relation of Plants to Peat Deposits.*

From these citations it would appear that the writers either had different types of formation in mind, had made merely superficial examinations or had studied the tracts which they have described as fixed phenomena. In attempting to reconcile what seem to be conflicting statements the writer began comparative studies of the flora of the peat deposits of Michigan to see if it were possible to discover any law of development by means of which a satisfactory understanding of these formations could be reached. In addition to the studies of the flora, sections of the peat were made wherever practicable, the remains of such plants as could be recognized were studied, and depth of the water level below the surface was noted, and, in many cases, the temperature of the surface and of the subsurface of the soil were taken and compared with that of the air above the surface at the same time.

The following facts were also taken into consideration, which may be stated as follows:

(1.) Relatively very few of the large and more highly organized seed plants can grow entirely submerged in water. Of the (nearly) 2,150 seed plants of Michigan but one Composite, *Bidens Beckii* Torr., a single member of the Campanulaceæ, *Lobelia Dortmanna* L., the majority of the Bladderworts, *Utricularia* species, a few of the Umbelliferæ for a portion of the season, the greater number of the Water-milfoil family, including six species of *Myriophyllum* and two of *Hippurus*, one *Proserpinaca*, and a single *Podostemon,* rarely observed have this ability. The Cruciferæ also have a single representative, *Roripa Americana* (A. Gray) Britt. The Crowfoot family is somewhat more fully represented by two species of *Batrachium*, and two of *Ranunculus*, and the Hornwort family furnishes the well-known *Ceratophyllum.* The Water Lily family sends only its leaves and flowers to the surface or slightly above it, and is an important group, having three genera and six species which may be counted as members of this class.

---

[1] Cowles, H. C., Op. cit. pp. 146-147.

[2] Atkinson, G. F., Elementary Botany, New York, 1898, p. 386-7.

[3] Mills, W. M., A Physiographic and ecological study of the Lake Eagle (Winona Lake) Region, Indiana, 28th report. Dept. Geol. and Nat. Res., Ind. Indianapolis, 1904, p. 380.

[4] Whitford, H. N., "The Genetic Development of the Forests of Northern Michigan." Bot. Gaz. Vol. XXXI, No. 5, May 1901, p. 313-4.

Trans. Kansas Acad. of Science, Vol. 15, 1898, p. 23.

The Endogens furnish a much larger proportion of this type of plants, including the important *Heteranthera dubia* (Jacq.) MacM., and the members of the Naidaceæ, the Pondweed family, including *Potamogeton,* but altogether the list is a short one when compared with the total number of plants.

(2.) Of these plants which will grow in water, only a few, mainly *Potamogetons* or pond weeds, can establish themselves at a depth greater than ten feet from the surface, while the majority of submerged plants grow in less than six feet of water, unless it is unusually clear. Reed[1] reports species of *Potamogeton* reaching down into 18 feet of water, and Pieters,[2] in Lake St. Clair, found Potamogetons at about 23 feet, as the maximum depth at which any seed bearing plants occurred.

The writer has frequently tested the depth of the outer limit of the growth of the seed plants and has found it to range from 15 to 25 feet in many ponds and lakes. As this outer or deeper limit is approached the number of species is reduced. The reason for this limitation seems to be that the amount of light and heat which is available at greater depths is not sufficient for the needs of the plants.

To the plants which establish themselves in deep water must be added the Algæ, especially Chara of various species, which grow at considerably greater depths, and which, by their activities, as was pointed out by the writer[3] in previous papers, are instrumental in forming marl deposits, which raise the level of the beds of lakes, and eventually fill them.

On the other hand there are some species of plants which are able to grow luxuriantly in water in which they are unable to reach the bottom, i. e., they grow without root attachment. These are chiefly Utricularias or Bladderworts, and Myriophyllums, and they may be so abundant as to cover the entire surface of a small sheltered lake. *Utricularia vulgaris* L., has thus been noted in a number of bays and small lakes, and more rarely *U. intermedia* Hayne, and on one occasion *U. purpurea* Walt. was the species. In exposed lakes these floating plants are blown about, and are often thrown up on the shore in considerable quantities, hence in such lakes they are not usually important factors in the flora.

(3.) There are very few plants that grow partly submerged, which will grow at a depth greater than six feet, while many of this type, and among these, the most important of the peat forming species, do not grow where the water is over two feet in depth.

Among the plants which have this habitat are the cat-tail flags, *Typha,* the Bur reeds, *Sparganium,* especially *S. eurycarpum* Engelm., the Water-plantain, *Alisma plantago-aquatic* L., several Arrow-heads, *Sagittaria* species, some grasses, especially *Zizania aquatica* L., the Wild or Indian Rice, *Phragmites phragmites* (L.) Karst, Reed-grass, and *Panicularia fluitans* (L.) Kuntze, Floating Manna-grass. Among the members of the sedge family are many forms which grow in shallow water, the one which reaches the greatest depth being *Scirpus lacustris* L., the Lake Bulrush, which, in Saginaw bay, grows in water more than six feet deep. Other important plants of shallow water are species of the genera *Carex* and *Eleocharis,* also sedges. The Pickerel-Weed Family furnishes *Pontederia cordata* L., the common Pickerel weed. One other important species should be mentioned, although already listed among the wholly submerged plants, namely, the Yellow Pond Lily, *Nymphæa advena* Soland, which grows sometimes in water more than six feet deep and frequently forms very dense masses of plants of large extent, as do also the White Pond Lilies, *Castalia* sp.

---

[1] Reed, H. S., The Ecology of a Glacial Lake. Bot. Gaz. Vol. XXXIV, Chicago, 1902, p. 129.
[2] Pieters, A. J., "Plants of Lake St. Clair," Bull. Mich. Fish Commission, No. 2, 1894.
[3] Davis, C. A., Jour. Geol. 8 : 485 and 498. Also Report Mich. Geol. Survey, 8 : 66-96.

(4.) Plants which grow on the dry land, or in moist soil, will rarely endure conditions where the soil is constantly saturated with water, hence they are unable to grow in such places. This seems to be due, in part at least, to the lack of available oxygen supply for the roots. A few plants growing habitually in wet places, have special adaptations to enable them to get air for their roots, and for other parts where it is needed. The best illustration of this adaptation among our native plants is found in *Decodon verticillatus* (L.) Ell. the Swamp Loosestrife in which large masses of thin walled tissue, called aerenchyma[1] develop on the stem and the pendulous branches where they come in contact with the water and apparently serve as aerating organs. The thickness diminishes above the water, the tissue changing into ordinary cortical tissue. This plant is more fully described in another section of this report. In the Tamarack a possible aerating system was observed by the writer in 1902 in the swamps where the water level was abnormally high. This consisted of very long (some a yard or more) root-like organs sent off from the older roots above the water level. Structurally these organs were composed chiefly of parenchyma and were very delicate, reddish in color and of varying thickness. Other forms of adaptation for this purpose are the large air passages which are found in the petioles of the leaves, and in the stems of the pond lilies and of many of the rushes and sedges growing in the water or in marshy soils.

(5.) In addition to the sensitiveness to lack of air in the soil, many plants are very sensitive to shading, to the presence of injurious dissolved substances, such as the ulmic, humic acids, etc., developed by the partial decomposition of vegetable matter, and to the constant low temperature about their roots, while their leaves are exposed to very varying and often high temperatures from the sun's rays.

(6.) Nearly all species of plants are affected by a change of climatic conditions, growing more vigorously in warm than in cold climates, and seem to be less sensitive to shading, as the average temperature of the growing season and also the light intensity increases.

### *The Formation of Peat in Depressions.*

In considering these few elementary facts of plant growth in their relation to the schemes of classification given above, it is evident that depressions filled with water to a depth greater than 25 feet, would seldom or never be filled by plants of a type above the algae, growing from the bottom and gradually filling the basins by their growth and decay. Such basins must be filled either by the algae, by floating species of seed plants with no attachment to the bottom, by sedimentation from streams, by accumulation of débris from the shores, or from plant growth extending out from the shores, or by combinations of two or more of these methods. That is, in general, they are filled from the sides and top, if peat is the filling material, and the deep basin, if it were originally filled with water, must be filled in such a fashion whatever its origin, under such conditions as prevail in Michigan.

---

[1] Schenck, H., Ueber das Aerenchym, ein dem Kork homologes Gewebe bei Sumpf-pflanzen, Pringsheim's Jahrbucher Bd. XX, 1889.

### *Formation of Peat in Shallow Depressions.*

(a) Making application of the principles to shallow depressions, it is apparent that if these are less than 25 feet in depth, such plants as will grow in water of that depth will establish themselves in the deepest parts, and will eventually form a slowly rising deposit upon the bottom, assisted by other sediments, which may be derived from the tributary streams or from vegetation in shallower parts of the depression. As soon as this has been raised near enough to the surface of the water to enable the shallow-water plants to grow these establish themselves, and because of, their greater luxuriance of growth, and firmer tissues they build up the deposit faster, until the water surface is reached, when a still greater number of plants are able to grow. When the surface of the deposit has been raised above the water level, the conditions are again improved, and again the plants are increased in number of individuals and of species, but here a new factor in the progress of the up-building comes in, for the dead material is now brought into contact with the air, and the heat of the sun, which dry out the excess of water, permit the growth of organisms producing decay, and, when a certain amount of elevation above the water level is attained, there can be no further building up, because of the drying and the thorough decay of all the dead parts of plants which fall to the surface.

No case is ever so simple, probably, as the imaginary one just cited, because of the complications which would arise in the course of the filling from fluctuations of water level, interference with established drainage, and the slow settling of the mass of sediment as it was built up, the failure of certain species of plants to become established, and the excessive development of others, the unfavorable occurrence of certain kinds of soil at the bottom of the depression, aiding in this. Thus, in many cases, for some cause not known, Chara seems able to hold the entire bottom of the deeper types of lakes and by its growth fills them with marl, upon which the seed plants establish themselves very slowly. Such deposits are illustrated by Cedar and Marl Lakes in Montcalm county, by Mattison Lake in Gratiot county, Nich-e-waugh Lake, Sec. 25, Green Oak township, Livingston county, and Four Mile Lake in Dexter township, Washtenaw county, and many others. In these there are usually large areas of shallows upon which no vegetation appears except Chara, *Scirpus lacustris* L., the bulrush and scattering plants of some species of *Potamogeton,* frequently very much dwarfed, together with the floating *Utricularia vulgaris L.* But eventually from these plants, and by the addition of organic matter from other sources, the soil becomes less calcareous and later peaty, and then other plants appear, and filling follows the usual course. At Nich-e-waugh Lake this process is now going on around the shores and upon an island of marl upon which the water was about a foot deep in June, 1904, and which was nearly covered by a growth of *Nymphaea advena* Soland, the Nuphar or Yellow Pond Lily, with which were growing species of *Potamogeton, Utricularia* and *Myriophyllum* in an impure marl in which the organic matter was plainly visible. In other portions of the shallows along the margin *Typha latifolia L., Scripus lacustris L.,* and *Decodon verticillatus* (L.) Ell. had established themselves forming a zone shoreward from the Nuphar.

The water level of this lake was formerly higher than at present and upon the gently sloping terrace was a shallow layer of peat, upon which, and extending out into the shallow water on to the marl, were *Typha latifolia* L., forming a broad zone and in places mixed with *Phragmites Phragmites* (L.) Karst., inshore from which was an open marsh, with a shallow substratum of peat, which merged into a Tamarack swamp, where the peat was still deeper.

At Cedar Lake this process of peat formation had been developed until at the time when the land was cleared, the filled portion of the lake was occupied by a cedar swamp extending over the entire peaty area, upon which the peat was in no place more than three feet deep and usually less, while at Marl Lake, less than a mile away, there was an entire absence of peat over a great part of the marly shallows, and only very sparse vegetation, consisting chiefly of bulrushes, in a few spots upon them.

In other places, parts of the lake where the water is shallow, where there is no apparent reason for their absence, plants will not occur. The western shore of Bass Lake in Montcalm county and the northeastern shore of Whitmore Lake, in southern Livingston county as well as other parts of this lake have very few plants upon them. At Bass Lake the soil is very hard and stony which may prevent the establishment of such plants as may get a foothold, while at Whitmore Lake, the fact that the plantless area is exposed to strong winds and is sandy in consequence, may be an explanation of the lack of vegetation, since the waves created by strong winds may prevent some species from getting a start, while ice blown by the winds during the spring may tear out others which have started. A soft oozy mud bottom seems much more favorable for the growth of many types of water plants than either hard clay or shifting sands. This may be due to its more easy permeability, or to the fact that such soils are richer, which, according to Pond[1] would increase the growth of water plants.

From the foregoing it may safely be inferred that as the deposit was built up, there would be a change in the character of the vegetation as the water decreased in depth and that the plants concerned in the formation of the deposit would occupy such places as were suited to their requirements in a definite order. The same conclusion would be arrived at by studying the plant growth from the margin to the center of any shallow lake which is in the process of filling, for it would be found that the plants definitely arrange themselves according to the depth of the water, and if the slope of the bottom is uniform and the character of the bottom practically the same throughout, the plants of given types usually grow in well marked bands or zones, entirely around the shores. The descriptions of such lakes are numerous in botanical literature both European and American and the zonal arrangement of the plants in these locations a well recognized ecological phenomenon.

---

[1] Pond, R. H., Report U. S. Fish Commission, 1903.

In studying a series of such lakes the conclusion must be reached that as fast as conditions are favorable, the vegetation of the shoreward zones, i. e. that growing in shallower water, moves toward the center, and is replaced by that from nearer the shore. This is due not only to the shoaling of the water and the increased light which reaches the plants growing upon the bottom, but also to increased heat, since the shallower water is more quickly warmed than the deeper, to improved aeration due to more frequent stirrings by wave and surface current-action, and to the improved physical and chemical condition of the substratum. In the majority of more than fifty small lakes and ponds studied in various parts of Michigan during the present investigation, the order of succession of seed plants was as follows: First, in the deeper water appeared the Potamogetons, often spreading over the whole central part of the lake, as in Rock Lake in Montcalm county, at a low water stage a few years ago, and several small lakes seen in Oakland county. Shoreward of this was frequently a partial or complete zone of the White or Yellow Water Lilies or both. In some small shallow ponds the Yellow Pond Lily was found covering the entire surface of the depression with no other plants visible, and at Mud Lake, Washtenaw county, both the White and Yellow Water Lilies, *Castalia tuberosa* (Paine) Greene, and *Nymphaea advena* Soland, nearly covered the surface of the remaining parts of the lake but associated with various species of Potamogeton and Utricularia. In many cases this group or zone was bordered by a wide one of the Lake Bulrush *Scirpus lacustris* L., in which were to be found on the outer margins, the plants of the outer zones, and shoreward were the sedges, or frequently, a well marked zone of *Scirpus Americanus* Pers., the "Three Square," with some other rush-like semiaquatics. At Whitmore Lake the common plant of this zone is *Eleocharis palustris,* R. & S., the Creeping Spikerush. With this, some of the sedges, various species of Carex, occur, establishing themselves above the water line, the species apparently depending upon the kind of soil and the amount of drainage, as well perhaps, as upon the accident of becoming established first.

These characteristic plants were sometimes arranged in limited areas rather than zones, or were wanting, or were replaced by other types, but they were present so often that they should be mentioned as those usually found.

The movement forward in any zone is in most cases a relatively slow one, possibly dependent upon recurring cycles of dry seasons, as is the change of condition which makes the movement possible, and on the border between two zones occurs a mixture of the characteristic plants of the two, to which the term "tension line" has been applied by various writers, in which the shoreward plants are at first in the minority, then in about equal numbers and then in the majority, as the shallow water type is generally more aggressive. Thus in those lakes where the Yellow Pond Lily is abundant, its large, thick and numerous leaves resting upon the surface or rising above it, so shut off the light, while its large rhizones and spreading roots occupy the soil below, that the submerged Potamogetons do not thrive where it is well developed and disappear when forced to compete with it, while in those lakes where the Yellow Pond Lily is absent, as at Silver Lake, Green Oak Tp., (Sec. 22, T. 1 N., R. 6 E.) the Potamogeton may occupy a much wider zone.

When the surface of the water is nearly reached by the slowly rising bottom, and the semi-aquatic types of plants give place, through the same sort of competition, to those which can live in moist soils on land, for from this time on,. during some portions of some seasons, the surface of the soil is above water, and plants growing upon it must be able to accommodate themselves to this condition of variation of the water level.

*Peat Formation upon Flat Areas:* In applying the principles stated above to the flat, undrained areas, and to wet slopes, a slightly different set of conditions prevail, for here during a part of the year the water before peat deposition begins, may be merely sufficient to keep the soil moist or wet, while during the remainder of the time, in rainy seasons, it is possible that it may cover the surface in a thin sheet. In such cases, the conditions are much like those which exist upon the surface of a filled depression, and usually the plants which grow upon the two types of surface are identical in character and often in species. If it is assumed that the original surface was bare at the outset, such plants as will grow upon wet soils will establish themselves, and, in a relatively short time the cover of vegetation causes the drainage to become poorer, by retarding the run off. The first plants in such cases may be some species of Liverwort, like Marchantia, or of moss, like some of the Hypnums, and in cool and damp climates, of Sphagnum, while in dryer ones it may be rushes, sedges, or grasses at once. This, in turn, makes the soil still wetter, and favors the accumulation of vegetable matter in a partly decayed state upon the surface of the ground and this still more retards the flow of water, until the surface may be covered with standing or slowly moving water for a considerable portion of the year. These conditions eliminate many species of plants which may have established themselves for a time, because they are not able to live where the water level is so high, and the suppression of these sensitive forms, gives the more hardy species full opportunity, and soon the ground is all occupied by species which are adapted to the conditions. If the water level is continuously raised as the surface is elevated by vegetable accumulations, these plants will usually continue to form the dominant growth and the peat which is deposited will be made up of the remains of relatively few species and will be homogenous. The shallow beds of peat which are formed in the marshes about Saginaw Bay seem to belong to this type, the dominant plant forms being principally sedges of the genus Carex, with a few species of grasses associated with them. Certain types of terrace and valley peat deposits also belong in this group, especially those where the terrace or slope is watered by the water from seepage springs, which are constant sources of supply. These sedges, frequently *Carex stricta* Lam. are the chief surface plants of these types, and from the hygrophilous (water-loving) character of these, have probably been so from the beginning of the formation. In the northern and north central part of the Southern Peninsula, some of the mosses, not infrequently Sphagnum, may occur as a member of the surface association of plants, along with certain tree species, especially the Arbor Vitae. Such an association suggests the probability that it represents a mature condition of the deposit, in which the water level is not as high as it was in earlier states, but the type of deposit has not been carefully studied, and the series traced through.

If, however, there are periods in the growth of the deposit when the water level is rapidly raised, and remains high for a time, or is lowered and is low for a considerable period, then other types of plants establish themselves, the original flora is displaced and the deposit will take on a heterogeneous character, varying with the type of plant growth, and exhibiting well marked stratification, which makes the changes.

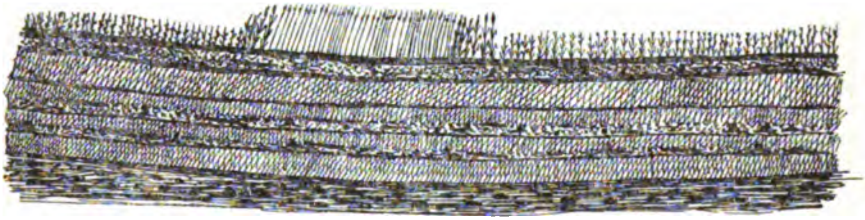


FIG. 3. Diagram showing structure of a peat bed built up from the bottom by successive elevations of water level.

Such changes may be due to the establishment of better drainage or to clogging of the drainage outlets, or to the irregular but no less potent, periodicity of rainfall and drought periods, which has been pointed out by Harrington,[1] Horton,[2] Rafter,[3] Lane[4] and others.

The accumulation of peat is a slow process, under any conditions, and during the building up of any thickness of it, there will be many periods of excessive dryness, or of great rainfall and these would inevitably cause changes in the soil, and the soil water and drainage conditions, sufficient to make radical changes in the flora, provided that they were of sufficient duration, periods of at least more than two successive years being necessary in most cases to affect a marked change.

*How Depressions are Filled from the Sides and Top:* The opposite extreme in the system of classification proposed above, the type of peat deposit formed by filling deep basins from the sides and top, furnishes a rather more complicated case than any of the others discussed, because here the material is accumulated in deep water, and to a considerable extent the action of the waves and currents must be taken into account.

---

[1] Harrington, M. W., Bulletin C, Weather Bureau, U. S. Dept. Agric. Washington, D. C.

[2] Horton, R. E., Water Supply and Irrigation Paper No. 30, U. S. G. S.

[3] Rafter, Geo. W., Water Supply and Irrigation papers, No. 80, U. S. G. S. Washington, 1903, pp. 13-15.

Lane, A. C., Michigan Geological Survey Report, Volume VII, Part 2, pp. 38-39.

The early stages of the formation of such deposits are probably to be found in the deeper lake basins which have more or less complete zones of aquatic plants, such as those described above, and which may cover the shallower parts of the basin, as at Whitmore Lake, Half Moon Lake, and others in various parts of the state. These rings of vegetation may be broad or narrow according as the slope of the bottom is gradual or steep, and the debris from the decay of this, and such fine mineral matter as is stirred up by the waves, or is brought in by the inflowing streams, is spread over the bottom, along the surface of the vegetation zones, where it is held by the leaves, stems and roots of the plants, and in coves or indentations in the shore line, to which it is borne by the more or less constant shore currents, caused by the winds.

Such deposition as this, however, must be exceedingly slow and basins in which it is the only method show little filling, even where relatively small and shallow, as in the case of Independence Lake in Webster township, Washtenaw county, Park Lake in the same township, and Rock Lake in Montcalm county, which though in the neighborhood of filled basins have no considerable deposits of peat.

In this type of basin where filling has progressed so far that it is evident that it will soon be completed, but is still going on, the process of filling may be studied. The first marked difference between this and the type where no filling has been done, which the basin presents, is a marsh of greater or less width, the lakeward extension of which is afloat, and which is of the nature of a mat or raft, built up by the interwoven rhizomes or horizontal stems of sedges or rushes. These apparently are able to build the mat out from the shore and the filling of the water is accomplished under the margin of the mat.

Superficially the sedges resemble grasses, and in the ordinary or vegetative condition are distinguished from them mainly by having, in the kinds more important in this discussion, triangular stems, not prominently jointed nor hollow, while the grasses have hollow, jointed and round stems. In addition to these vegetative characters, the fruiting parts of the two types are very different. *Carex* is the most important genus of the sedge family, in number of species and is the one furnishing the species most efficient in the construction of mats out over the surface of the water, and of the genus, the species which in the region studied by the writer is by far the most important in this work, is *Carex filiformis* L.

This plant is not easily distinguished in the vegetative form, from other species of the same genus which grow in similar situtions, but it has very long, tough, narrow leaves, tapering to a fine thread-like point, which grow from a horizontal, subterranean or subaquatic stem, or rhizoma, from the nodes of which also grow the long slender roots. These underground stems will often grow horizontally more than a foot in length in a season, bearing at the end a terminal bud, from which new plants rise to send out in turn a new series of horizontal stems. When conditions are unfavorable for the rhizomes to grow outward into open water, they sometimes grow diagonally downward over the edge of the mat, the terminal bud developing just beyond the margin, and thus, the mat is strengthened as well as extended by the growth of the plant. These stems are tough, buoyant, and very durable, and it is by the interlacing and development of these and their roots that the mat mentioned above is built up and out over the water. Other plants of the same family, and others not related, are occasionally important in building similar structures, but the mats formed by these are not so extensive nor as firm as those built by the *Carex filiformis.*

Extensive bogs and marshes are formed by these plants by building out from the shores of lakes, the felted and interwoven mass of their submerged stems and roots making a buoyant structure capable of supporting considerable weight. It is important to note here that the sedge can, and does, grow with its rhizomes submerged a foot or more below the surface of the water, and with roots extending much farther downward.

The filling of lakes by similar developments has been described by Shaler,[1] Ries,[2] and others, but as the process as noted in Michigan, is essentially different from that described by these authors, and is of much interest and importance in the region under discussion, the following account and illustrations are given:

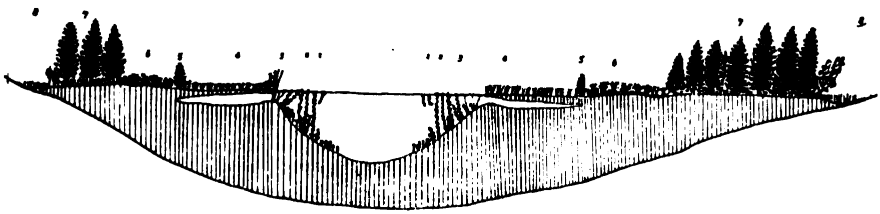


FIG. 4. Diagram showing how plants fill depressions from the sides and top.

Legend to Fig. 4.
1. Zone of Chara and floating aquatics.
2. Zone of Potamogetons.
3. Zone of Water Lilies.
4. Floating Sedge mat.
5. Advance plants of conifers and shrubs.
6. Shrub and Sphagnum zone.
7. Zone of Tamarack and Spruce.
8. Marginal Fosse.

The sedge mat being the most important and the most frequent in the region under discussion will be the one chiefly considered, and the account below will refer principally to this type.

It seems probable that the sedges are somwhat dependent upon a certain amount of preparation of the parts of the lake over which they advance, before they can proceed with their constructive work, because the margin of the mat and the water beyond it, are usually occupied by a considerable number of species of floating and submerged water plants, some of which, like the Nuphar and Potamogetons, have extensive roots and rhizomes, and require some sort of soil in which to grow. In other instances the plants along the margin of the mat are wholly unattached, such as the Bladderworts, Utricularia species.

It is possible that these plants are the pioneer forms which start the building and aid in extending the growth lakeward by furnishing a sort of substratum for the roots and rhizomes of the sedges, although in one case at least, that of Long Lake, in Fenton township, Genesee county, the rhizomes of the Carex were found extending into open water, and it seems certain from numerous examinations in various places that the mat gets no support from this substratum. The mat is actually floating for some distance from its outer margin, because any added weight causes it to sink rapidly, while holes through it not only end abruptly in water, but the water which pours up through these, wherever the surface is weighted down, is clear, and quite free from suspended matter. Near the lakeward edge, the mats are from a few inches at the margin, to about 18 inches or two feet in thickness back where the weight of a man may be safely borne. In a series of sections through the mat, from the water margin shoreward, the water will be found to become more and more full of finely divided matter as one proceeds toward the shore, until, at a variable distance from the water's edge the deposit is nearly solid and the mat no longer floats.

---

[1] Shaler. Op. cit. p.
[2] Ries. Op. cit. pp. r. 56-57.

A study of the mat itself in the same sections, will show it to be of no great toughness, for holes are easily dug with the hands, but the material of which it is made is readily seen to be, in all its parts, the rhizomes and leaves of the sedges, which retain their structure and characteristics throughout the entire thickness of the mat, below which, all structure abruptly ceases, even where the mat is grounded.

This structure makes it evident that the peat deposit is not built up by the sinking of the mat under the added weight of the growth of vegetation of successive seasons, for in that case there would be a transition structure from the definitely fibrous and coherent mat, to the structureless mass below, and there would be not a space of open water between the mat and the rest of the deposit. Therefore the material which accumulates under the mat must come from the dropping down of débris from above, from the under side, and from the margins, in which case it may possibly be carried under it by some system of circulation, the causes of which need not be discussed here.

Whatever the causes of this accumulation, as the mat spreads out from the shore, at a fairly constant distance from the margin, the peat becomes rather dense and solid, so that the bog no longer floats, loses much of its quaking character and becomes firm. When this stage is reached, other plants than the sedge and the rushes begin to establish themselves upon the mat, and these eventually build up the surface, and by shading and overgrowing it destroy the sedge, which is sensitive to shading. It is possible, however, even after this has happened to show that the sedge has done its work by making a section through the superficial layers of the deposit to the level where the mat was formerly, for the remains of the rhizomes of the sedge may be found at that level in greatest abundance, as will be shown later. The peat below such a mat is usually fine grained, structureless and well decomposed, and nearly black in color.

### *Effects of Consolidation and Raising the Surface of the Deposit.*

In no other type of peat deposit is it possible to see so clearly the marked effects which are caused by a slight change in the level of the surface, upon the flora growing above the deposit. As long as the mat is afloat the sedge is able to grow freely and keep out all competitors except such as grow in the water associated with it. Rarely the mat itself is pushed above the water level by being compacted and compressed laterally by ice thrust in the winter.

When the mat has become grounded, however, the surface is gradually built up until it is above water, at least a part of the year, and other plants appear in large numbers and in considerable variety, but always in a definite order. The number of species is not large for each level built up, but when that level has been reached, some or all of the species which should be present appear, and these, because of greater vigor in growth, in a variety of ways such as height, greater amount of foliage, and of roots, etc., usually cause the disappearance of the sedge. While the species of Carex mentioned is the most efficient and the most abundant and frequent of the genus in the sedge mats it is not the only one which is able to make extensive growths of the sort, *Carex aquatilis* Wahl., *C. Sartwellii* Dewey, and *C. utriculata* Boott, all having been noted in such mats, either alone or associated with *C. filiformis* L.

It is apparent that if the sedge mat, as long as it is afloat does not support any considerable number of other types of plants, and if the peat is gradually built up under the mat until that no longer floats, the sedge is the chief agent in forming the deposit, not even second to the water plants which grow in most cases at its outer margin. While it is not clear how the consolidation comes about, the present investigation has led to the conclusion that in no other way than that stated can the existing observed facts be accounted for, unless, as suggested above, a remarkable and not easily explained circulation exists in the water below the mat, by means of which the débris which is formed outside its edge is carried under it for considerable distances. This does not seem probable, but no final statement can be made at this time.

Among the lakes visited in which the sedge mat and attendant phenomena are well illustrated in Mud Lake[1] on the line between sections 1 and 12, Webster township, Washtenaw county, (T. 1 S., R. 5 E.). This is one of a series of depressions in a till and gravel plain lying north of Ann Arbor and bordered at the northwest by a strong moraine. These depressions are, or have been, occupied by lakes in various stages of the process of filling with peat. Of these Mud Lake is probably in the most advanced stage before the actual closing and complete covering of the waters occurs. The remaining open water is now divided by narrow strips of sedge and broken by islands of other plants, and that which would be open is well nigh covered with leaves of the pond lilies, *Castalia reniformis* (Paine) Greene and *Nymphaea advena* Soland, with *Potamogeton* of various species and other aquatics intermixed.

In the smaller holes in the sedge mat near the larger spaces of open water the *Nymphaea* is the usual lily, and associated with it are *Typha latifolia* L., the Cat-tail, growing on the shoaler places, *Pontederia cordata* L. the Pickerel-weed, and *Peltandra Virginica* (L.) Kunth., the Arrow-arum, which are able to establish themselves in water a foot or more in depth upon a very poorly compacted substratum. In places along the margins of the open pools the Lake Bulrush was present either reaching out over the lily plants or forming clumps which were minature islands and occasionally small groups of *Decodon verticillatus* (L.) Ell., the Swamp Loosestrife, grow in the margin of the sedge mat, or forming small clumps in the shallow water. These islands are evidence that the bottom of the pools is not very far from the surface in the places in which they occur, although it may be much deeper in areas where other plants occur.

---

[1] Since the following account was written, a description of this locality has been printed. See Pennington, L. H., "Plant Distribution at Mud Lake." Report Mich. Acad. of Sci., Vol. VIII, 1906.

The sedge mat upon the south and east sides has a very different character upon the shoreward margin from that of the north, but upon the lakeward areas it is very similar all around to the open water except as noted below. It is wide, very wet, the sedge plants growing in from 8 to 12 inches of water, floating, so that it is strongly shaken when walked upon, and for several hundred feet back from the open water the principal plant species present is *Carex filiformis* L. with which is associated in the wettest places—often small depressions among the sedge plants—a few surviving and stunted plants of the Yellow Pond Lily, and in the water, overshaded by the sedge culms and leaves, is abundant *Utricularia intermedia* Hayne, which is a common plant also in open water as well. With this are algae, and the minute seed plants *Lemna,* frequently *L. trisulca L.*

In addition to these a more conspicuous plant was *Typha latifolia L.* which was scattered all over the marsh and entirely replaced the sedge at the east end and upon the west and northwest sides of the lake. In some places back from the edge of the mat, where the *Typha* is found in the marsh, the turf seems firmer than in others, but in general the conditions where this plant is found are quite as wet or wetter than in the pure sedge mat.

A conspicuous plant upon the sedge marsh and somewhat common with the *Typha* and one of some significance with regard to the dryness of the substratum, i. e. the height of the water level, is the Marsh Shield-fern, *Dryopteris Thelypteris* (L.) A. Gray, which, although it is found in the young stage in the western part of the sedge mat, where the sedge plants are somewhat scattered, is the dominant plant upon the areas of the mat where for some cause the surface level is very slightly higher and the turf firmer and more compact, possibly from ice thrust in the winter or the accumulation of drift material on which the sedge plants do not thrive, or are absent altogether.

This fern is very light green in color, in this kind of situation, so its position is easily seen, and it is usually accompanied by quite an extensive flora which has reached out from the more stable, open and better drained marshes near the shore, and with these, in low spots, usually are remnants of the aquatic and semi-aquatic vegetation which the sedge has not crowded out completely. The plants of this association which are from the shoreward regions, are:

*Bochmeria cylindrica* (L.) Willd., False Nettle. Very common.
*Eupatorium purpureum* L. Joe-Pye Weed.
*Eupatorium perfoliatum* L. Thoroughwort.
*Aster junceus* Ait. Rush Aster.
*Lycopus communis* Bicknell. Bugle-weed.
*Larix Laricina* (Du Roi) Koch. Tamarack.
*Osmunda regalis* L. Flowering Fern.
*Galium* spp. Bedstraw.
*Triadenum Virginicum* (L.) Raf. (*Elodes companulata* Pursh) Marsh St. John's wort.
*Impatiens biflora* Walt. Spotted Touch-me-not.
*Viola alsophila* Greene (*Viola blanda palustriformis,* A. Gray.) Marsh White Violet.

*Carex limosa* L. Mud Sedge.
*Ophioglossum vulgatum* L. Adder's Tongue Fern.
*Limnorchis hyperborea* (L.) Rydb. (*Habenaria hyperborea* R. Br.) Tall Leafy Green Orchis.

The list of those from shallow water is smaller and includes the following:

*Sagittaria latifolia* Willd. (*S. variabilis Engelm.*) Broad-Leaved Arrow-Head.
*Peltandra Virginica* (L.) Kunth. (*P. undulata* Raf.) Arrow-arum.
*Typha latifolia* L. (not common here.) Cat-tail.
*Carex filiformis* L. Slender Sedge.

This list is given because of the fact that most of the species from the shoreward group are quite constant in their association with the marsh shield fern, and, while all of them are not invariably found with it, in such places, some of them are, and they undoubtedly help prepare the surface of the sedge mat for succeeding plant associations. The Tamaracks which are found with the ferns thus far out upon the bog are usually of small size and quite young, but as soon as they get tall enough to produce shade they are accompanied by a less number of species, some of them evidently persisting from the open fern association.

Under a group of young Tamaracks, which were 8 to 10 feet in height, and formed a rather dense thicket 10 to 15 feet in diameter, somewhat farther shoreward than the most advanced stations of the ferns, the following species were found and the association is typical on this sort of growth:

*Dryopteris Thelypteris* (L.) A. Gray. Marsh Shield-fern.
*Viola alsophila* Greene. Marsh White Violet.
*Onoclea sensibilis* L. Sensitive Fern.
*Menyanthes trifoliata* L. Buck-bean.

And little else, the shade being quite dense. The *Dryopteris* in these thickets was much taller and larger and of darker green than that in the open bog.

In some of the areas of fern it was evident that another change had begun, for upon these were small and apparently recently established colonies of Sphagnum, practically the only growth of the moss upon the south and east sides of the entire marsh area. Still farther towards the shore the areas of fern were somewhat less numerous and the sedge became more dense and taller, and the surface of the marsh seemed a little lower, with more water upon it. Here the *Carex filiformis* was mixed with two other species, possibly more, but certainly with *Carex Sartwellii* Dewey, Sartwell's Sedge and some *Carex teretiuscula* Good, the Lesser-Panicled Sedge.

Here also were found associated with the sedges, more or less frequently, *Menyanthes trifoliata* L. and *Comarum* (*Potentilla*) *palustre* (L.) Marsh, the Marsh Cinquefoil.

Bordering this area and extending along the whole length of the south and east sides of the marsh was a narrow zone of shrubby willows of several species, and immediately back of this, away from the marsh, was a belt of tamaracks, several rods, or even more, in width. The plants found beneath the tamaracks which were from 20 to 40 feet in height, were as follows. In considering this list it must be remembered that the water level is below the surface of the roots of the trees, and some of the shrubs, so that these form elevated stools, covered with sufficient soil to give root-hold to various plants, hence so far as water level and drainage is concerned the species may have a considerable variety of habitat in what is often treated as a single type. No attempt is here made to indicate the water relation of the different species, although some species seemed practically confined to the low hummocks formed by roots and stumps, and others to the depressions between these; all were well within the shade of the tamaracks and were thrifty in this situation.

### *Woody Plants of the Tamarack Zone.*

*Acer rubrum*, L. Red Maple.
*Betula pumila* L. Dwarf Birch.
*Cornus stolonifera* Mx. Red Osier.
*Cornus candidissima* Mill. Panicled Cornel, or Dogwood.
*Gaylussacia resinosa* (Ait.) T. & G. Huckleberry.
*Ilex verticillata* (L.) A. Gray. Black Alder.
*Juniperus communis* L. Ground Juniper.
*Picea brevifolia* Peck. Black Spruce.
*Rhus Vernix* L. (*Rhus venenata* D. C.) Poison Sumach.
*Rosa Carolina* L. Swamp Rose.
*Rubus Americanus* (Pers.) O. A. F. Dwarf Raspberry.
*Solanum Dulcamara* L. Wild Potato. Nightshade.
*Ulmus Americana* L. White Elm.
*Oxycoccus Macrocarpus* (Ait.) Pers. (*Vaccinium Macrocarpon* Ait.) Large Cranberry.

The Maples, Elms and Spruces were all small, the shrubs mostly well developed plants, but not old or large. Of herbs, the following list contains the most prominent species, and those which are probably most significant in the history of the development of peat.

*Dryopteris Thelypteris* (L.) A. Gray. Marsh Shield-fern. Here very abundant and thrifty.
*Boehmeria cylindrica* (L.) Willd.
*Carex sterilis cephalantha* Bailey. (*C. echinata cephalantha* Bailey.) Prickly Sedge.
*Carex leptalea* Wahl. (*C. polytrichoides* Willd.) Bristle-stalked Sedge.
*Carex tenella* Schk. Soft-leaved Sedge.
*Carex trisperma* Dewey. Three-seeded Sedge.
*Coptis trifolia* (L.) Salisb. Goldthread.
*Equisetum fluviatile* L. (*E. limosum* L.) Swamp Horsetail.
*Eriophorum polystachyon* L. Tall Cotton-grass.
*Galium trifidum* L. Small Bedstraw.

*Glyceria nervata* (Trin.) Nerved Manna-grass.
*Panicularia nervata* (Willd.) Ktze.
*Impatiens biflora* Walt. (*I. fulva* Nutt.) Spotted Touch-me-not.
*Leptorchis Loesellii* (L.) Mac M. (*Liparis Loesellii* Rich.) Fen Orchis.
*Unifolium Canadense* (Desf.) Greene. (*Maianthemum Canadense* Desf. False Lily-of-the-Valley.
*Menyanthes trifoliata* L. Buck-bean.
*Osmunda cinnamomea* L. Cinnamon Fern.
*Osmunda regalis* L. Flowering Fern.
*Comarum palustre* (L.) Marsh. (*Potentilla palustris* Scop.) Marsh Cinquefoil.
*Rumex Brittanica* L. Great Water-dock.
*Sarracenia purpurea* L. Pitcher-plant.
*Sphagnum*. This occurred sparingly in depressions below the water level.
*Spathyema foetida* (L.) Raf. (*Symplocarpus foetidus* Nutt.) Skunk Cabbage.
*Vagnera trifolia* (L.) Morong. (*Smilacina trifolia Desf.*) Three-leaved Solomon's Seal.
*Viola alsophila* Greene. Marsh White Violet.

Of these the *Boehmeria, Dryopteris, Osmunda, Galium, Impatiens, Menyanthes, Comarum, Sphagnum* and *Viola* are found in the preceding list, and were common in the open marsh, the *Comarum* and *Menyanthes* in the water, the others somewhat above water level. Of the other species, the *Carices* except *C. sterilis cephalantha* are species most often found in shaded swamps, often under tamaracks, and rarely in open bogs. The *Coptis* is a northern plant, found in rich woods in New England and in the Northern Peninsula and in swamps in the more southern part of its range. The *Equisetum* and *Eriophorum* are water-loving species, usually found in the open marsh, the latter often a conspicuous species in the sedge mat, but able to persist after the Tamarack has invaded this, by keeping in the more open places.

The *Galium* and *Impatiens* are plants very widely distributed in wet places, both in the open and under shade, the latter often being the only herb in the dense shade of very wet swamps.

*Leptorchis, Sarracenia* and *Vagnera* are plants which are usually found in peat bogs, the *Sarracenia* as frequently, or more frequently in the open than in the shade, in fact, while it will endure partial shade for a time, as this becomes more dense it seems gradually to disappear. It is frequently found growing very abundantly in deep *Sphagnum*, but may grow to perfection in wet sedge marsh, as is shown by its occurrence in many such marshes.

The *Leptorchis*, like other members of the Orchis family, is often found in the open marsh and sometimes grows perched as an epiphyte among the culms of *Carex stricta* Lam., several inches above the water.

*Vagnera trifolia* is, like *Coptis*, a plant of northern range, growing generally in tamarack and cedar swamps, and while it is sometimes found growing in open places where *Sphagnum* is abundant, it is more frequent in the shade and seems to need it for its best development. The Violet mentioned, the Swamp White Violet, is common in shaded wet places of various types and will grow in shade where apparently little else is found, and where the soil is very wet at certain seasons.

Of the other plants found here, the *Sphagnum* occupied the wet places, growing in the depressions between the roots of the trees and shrubs, and often in the standing water in these. More rarely it formed very small patches above the water level but it formed at the time these studies were made, no important part of the plant covering in this area. *Spathyema foetida,* the Skunk Cabbage, was much more abundant in some parts of the tamarack growth than in others, and often covered the ground entirely with its broad leaves where the soil was wet and the shade dense. It is an abundant plant in boggy and peaty soils which do not dry out, but seems to make a good growth in the beginning only under the shade of taller vegetation, but once established, it persists as long as the drainage conditions are not improved after the removal of the shade. It may establish itself at times in open springy places, where the conditions are favorable.

After passing through the belt of Tamarack just described, a second sedge marsh is passed before reaching the original shore. This, however, is gently sloping, and the surface is covered with *Carex stricta* as the most abundant plant and as this plant grows in tufts, the culms building up dense compact stools of peat, the associated plants are perched in part upon the dryer site thus afforded. The soil here is still very wet about the roofs of the *Carex* until late in the summer at least, but a number of plants found here occur in the slightly dryer types of marshes, and this would indicate that the slight slope gives some drainage. Associated with the *Carex stricta* were the following species:

*Cornus stolonifera* Michx. Red Osier Dogwood.
*Dasiphora fruticosa* (L.) Rydb. (*Potentilla fruticosa* L.) Shrubby Cinquefoil.
*Rhus vernix* L. Poison Sumach.
*Salix Bebbiana* Sarg. (*S. rostrata* Rich.) Bebb's Willow, and others.
*Rubus strigosus* Michx. Wild Red Raspberry.
*Rosa Carolina* L. Swamp Rose.

These shrubs were few in number and scattered at various distances from the margin of the swamp. The herbs were the following:

*Dryopteris Thelypteris* (L.) A. Gray.
*Boehmeria cylindrica* (L.) Willd.
*Geum strictum* Aiton. Avens.
*Solidago Canadensis* L. Canada Golden-rod.
*Verbena hastata* L. Blue Vervain.
*Lycopus Americanus* Muhl. (*L. sinuatus* Ell.) Cut-leaved Water Hoarhound.
*Thalictrum purpurascens* L. Purplish Meadow-Rue.
*Asclepias incarnata* L. Swamp Milkweed.
*Aster puniceus* L. Purple-stem Aster.
*Eupatorium purpureum* L. Joe-Pye Weed.
*Calamagrostis Canadensis* (Mx.) Beauv. Blue. Joint.
*Iris versicolor* L. Blue Flag.
*Asclepias Syriaca* L. (*A. Cornuti* Dec.) Common Milkweed.
*Potentilla Monspeliensis* L., (*P. Norvegica* L.) Rough Cinquefoil.

The appearance of *Calamagrostis Canadensis* in this area marked a definitely lower water level during the growing season in the places where it was found than do the sedges.

Returning to the sedge marsh on the lakeward side of the Tamaracks, and following around to the eastward the sedge was found to be replaced by Cat-tail, *Typha,* at the east end, except in limited areas, and there were indications that the latter was increasing the territory occupied by it, such as the presence of large numbers of young *Typha* plants among the sedge, and the close relationship of the position of the fern covered areas to that of the *Typha.* The probability that this was the case was strengthened by the fact that at Whitmore Lake within three years there has been a permanent elevation of the water level of more than a foot, and at Dead Lake a similar rise has occurred so that it is certain that one has taken place at Mud Lake, and those parts of the sedge mat which did not rise promptly with the water would become wetter than before, a condition which would favor the rapid increase of *Typha* in the vicinity of places in which it was already established. Near the Tamarack, as this part of the marsh was crossed, were a few spots where the Cassandra, *Chamaedaphne calyculata* (L.) Moench., had established itself in about the same relationship to the tamarack zone as the willows were on the south side, but it was not a marked constituent of the flora here. It was also noted that along the east end of the marsh there were numbers of young specimens of Tamarack growing with the *Typha.*

The tamarack growth surrounded the entire lake with a nearly perfect elliptical border, and as this was followed along around the east end to the north side, a very abrupt change took place in the character of the vegetation in the tamarack zone and the shrub zone immediately lakeward from it. The Tamarack became mixed with a considerable percentage of Spruce, and beneath these trees numerous shrubs occur which were not found on the south side, and the surface of the ground was covered with a heavy coating of *Sphagnum* moss. The shrub zone instead of being covered by species of *Salix* was occupied by Cassandra and other species of heaths, and extending lakeward was a dense growth of *Sphagnum* with scattering Cassandra plants, the *Sphagnum* growing sometimes in the water on the sedge mat, but not extending more than a few yards lakeward. The "islands" of fern in the sedge mat here had Cassandra and large amounts of *Typha* upon them than appeared in similar places on the south side. Considering these different associations as before, the floras of the sedge mat and the open water were practically identical to those of the south side except that *Eriophorum gracile* Koch., *Scheuchzeria palustris* L. and *Carex limosa* L. were more conspicuous, growing at the same water level with the *Carex filiformis.*

The plants characteristic of the fern islands upon the south side, here made a more definite zone, which in places was well marked a short distance lakeward of the shrub zone, which invaded it at intervals; the *Sphagnum* also often apparently found favorable conditions for growth here.

The shrub zone was, as has already been stated, characterized by Cassandra, but there were other interesting species, some of which give evidence that the marsh had not long been in possession of the shrubs. Such were:

*Carex filiformis* L.
*Carex limosa* L.
*Dulichium arundinaceum* (L.) Britt. (*D. spathaceum* Pers.)
*Comarum palustre* (L.) Marsh.
*Decodon verticillatus* (L.) Ell.
*Eriophorum gracile* Koch.
*Eriophorum polystachyon* L.

which were usually missing where the Cassandra was dense. The shrubby plants in this outlying Cassandra zone were few, the Cassandra constituting the great bulk of individuals, and being the most conspicuous as well, but frequently either mixed with it or in nearly pure growth, was found the Andromeda, *Andromeda Polifolia* L. (L.) Britt., while the cranberries *Oxycoccus Oxycoccus* (L.) McM. and *Oxycoccus macrocarpus* (Ait.) Pers. were noticeable upon the surface of the Sphagnum, sometimes on the lakeward side of the zone forming dense mats of their delicate vines, but they also were present among the Cassandra bushes. Here also were occasional specimens of *Sarracenia* and of various species of orchids, but none of these were important members of this association. The zone was broken for short intervals here and there by depressions below the water level, and in and around these various plants of the lakeward zones persist. An indication of the future development of the plant growth was found in the numbers of small seedlings and young specimens of the Tamarack which were to be seen among the Cassandra plants and upon the Sphagnum.

The Cassandra in much of this zone was nearly buried by the upward growth of the Sphagnum around its stems, which seemed to serve as supports for the moss. The main root system of the shrub and its underground propagating shoots were often two feet below the surface of the Sphagnum, and practically below the level of the ground water during most seasons, but as the Sphagnum surrounds the stems of the shrub, adventitious roots are developed, which, if they serve no other purpose, must increase the supply of air taken in by the plant. It is evident from this relationship of the Cassandra and the Sphagnum that the shrub must establish itself as soon as the moss or before it, since the root system is at the very bottom, and often below the moss formed peat, and a section of the bog here shows that immediately below the layer of shrub remains the characteristic structures of the sedge mat are to be easily identified.

The width of this zone, including the fern association, was only two or three rods over a large part of its length, which was an eighth of a mile or more, and it was narrower than this in places. It was bounded on the shoreward side by the tamarack zone here composed of both Tamarack and Black Spruce, *Picea brevifolia* Peck, which, as indicated above, is a very different formation from that found on the south side of the lake. Here the trees were very densely crowded in some places and scattered in others, but immediately along the border of the zone they were generally dense.

At the east end was a portion of the zone with trees which are 10 to 15 feet high, mostly Tamarack, with dead and dying Cassandra under them, the dead plants easily recognizable by their well-preserved stems.

A short distance shoreward (north) of this area was the beginning of a wide Sphagnum-Cassandra bog, which is described below.

Continuing west in the tamarack zone, from the part just described, the trees were taller and more dense, and the following plants are found growing in their shade:

*Vaccinium corymbosum* L. Swamp Blueberry.
*Ilicioides mucronata* (L.) Britton. (*Nemopanthes fascicularis* Raf.) Mountain Holly.
*Aronia nigra* (Willd.) Britt. (*Pyrus arbutifolia melanocarpa* Mx.) Chokeberry.
*Gaylussacia resinosa* (Ait.) T. & G.
*Oxycoccus Oxycoccus* (L.) MacM.
*Oxycoccus macrocarpus* (Ait.) Pers.
*Rhus vernix* L.
*Chamaedaphne calyculata* (L.) Moench. (Seldom.)
*Ilex verticillata* (L.) A. Gray. Winterberry.

The herbs include:

*Menyanthes trifoliata* L. (In wet places.)
*Sphagnum.*
*Cypripedium acaule* Ait. Stemless Ladies' Slipper.
*Vagnera trifolia* (L.) Morong.
*Carex pauciflora* Lightfoot. Few-flowered sedge and other species.
*Dryopteris Thelypteris* (L.) A. Gray.
*Woodwardia Virginica* (L.) J. E. Smith. Virginia Chain-fern.

Other species occurred, but so sparsely in the shade that they need no mention here. An interesting species, common here, is *Monotropa uniflora* L., the Corpse plant or Indian Pipe, whose saprophytic habits render it indifferent to shade.

A study of the substratum of peat in this area showed that below the Sphagnum was a stratum of woody remains and the roots of the shrubs and trees, which was about a foot thick, the lower parts of this being poorly decomposed and easily recognizable as shrub remains. There had apparently been some sinking of these upper layers of peat, for the bottom of the woody zone was, so far as could be determined, several inches below the level at which shrubs are recognizable on the lakeward zone, while the water level stands at about the same distance from the surface at any given time. Below the stratum of woody remains, at a depth of less than two feet, the top of the sedge stratum was reached, containing the characteristic and well-preserved parts of the rootstocks of *Carex* and the other plants of the sedge mat.

Following along to the west in the tamarack zone or along the marsh, about half way down the north side of the lake, the Cassandra zone was abruptly displayed by *Typha.* The Tamarack persisted in a narrow zone, but the *Typha* passed through and behind it, while from 50 to 100 feet lakeward in the *Typha* marsh were numerous young Tamaracks a few feet high. Shoreward of the Tamarack was a rather dense growth of Willows, Poplars, much *Rhus vernix* L., *Rubus strigosus* Mx. and a few young Elms, *Ulmus Americana* L., White Ashes, *Fraxinus Americana L.*, and Red Maples, *Acer rubum* L. The Sphagnum became very rare, as did the low shrubs, which, until this place was reached, had been very abundant, while *Vaccinium corymbosum* L., the Blueberry, which had been a characteristic plant, disappeared entirely. There were numerous hollows, in which water stood, and the shrubs and trees were all on the low hummocks which covered the ground between these. The shade of the woody plants was so dense that there were few herbs to be found, and the few that were present were unimportant as constituents of the association. The numerous dead tamarack poles, and the peculiarly sharp transition from one type of vegetation to the other, as well as the peculiar association of plants which existed, all pointed to some sudden and violent change of conditions, by which not only was the old vegetation entirely destroyed, but the soil and soil water relations so changed that the area could not be restocked from the unaffected part to the east, before the plants from higher ground came in and occupied the vacant space. The indications all pointed to severe fire during some dry period at no very remote date, as the agency most likely to have caused such a wholesale change and the fire marks on the tamarack stumps were additional evidence in this direction. The fire not only killed and removed the vegetation but also burned off the loose layers of vegetable débris from the top of the peat, and improved its mechanical and chemical composition and thus fitted it for the types of plants which now occupy it, but this very removal of the surface material brought the surface so much nearer the water level that the *Typha* was able to invade the area, and if any prolonged period of high water occurs the new association of plants will be destroyed and the former will then be able to close in again. This was already indicated by the presence, in the Typha marsh on the lakeward side, of young Tamaracks and patches of Cassandra, which were not losing ground in this situation.

At the west end of the lake was a sedge bog, apparently a floating mat, with *Carex filiformis* L. as the dominant plant. Shoreward were abundant *Typha* plants and many Tamaracks from 5 to 10 feet high were scattered over it.

Returning to the eastward, beyond the path of the old fire, and crossing the bog towards the north, an open Cassandra-Sphagnum tract was found. Here the principal plants were the shrubs, Cassandra and Andromeda, but Tamaracks and Black Spruces were scattered over the bog in considerable and increasing numbers, as was shown by the numerous young individuals. In addition to the trees, there were several species of tall shrubs which formed a dense growth around the borders of the Cassandra and were spreading rapidly into and over it, as could be seen in many places where the lower shrubs were already dead under the taller ones. The plants growing here were:

*Vaccinium corymbosum* L. Swamp Blueberry.
*Vaccinium Canadense* Richards. Canada Blueberry.
*Vaccinium Pennsylvanicum* Lam. Dwarf Blueberry.
*Andromeda Polifolia* L. Andromeda.
*Kalmia glauca* Ait. Pale Laurel. (Rare.)
*Gaylussacia resinosa* (Ait.) T. & G.
*Ilicioides mucronata* (L.) Britton. (Border.)
*Aronia nigra* (Willd.) Britton. (Border.)
*Oxycoccus Oxycoccus* (L.) McM.

*Oxycoccus macrocarpus* (Ait.) Pers.
*Populus tremuloides* Michx. American Aspen.
*Picea brevifolia* Peck.
*Larix laricina* (DuRoi) Koch.
*Carex pauciflora* Lightfoot.
*Carex oligosperma* Michx. Few-seeded Sedge.
*Eriophorum vaginatum* L. Sheathed Cotton-grass.
*Eriophorum Virginicum* L. Virginia Cotton-grass.
*Scheuchzeria palustris* L.
*Sarracenia purpurea* L.
*Monotropa uniflora* L.
*Sphagnum.*
*Polytrichum.*

Charred stumps and other remains of trees, mostly Tamaracks, showed that here again fire had been instrumental in removing the older vegetation, and in bringing about a renewal of former conditions by letting in the light and lowering the level of the ground.

Here, as in the Sphagnum-Cassandra zone, the Sphagnum nearly buried the shrubs Cassandra and Andromeda, but where the former was very dense, the moss does not persist, and the same was true of it under the young Spruces, where it was entirely absent in many cases but went on growing upward around the circle formed by the branches of the trees until it built up for 18 or 20 inches with a steep slope on the side under the trees, where the surface was often more than a foot lower than that outside. These banks of Sphagnum were commonly covered with the vines of the Cranberries and with Andromeda, and less frequently *Sarracenia, Cypripedium acaule* Ait., *Monotropa uniflora* L., and young Spruces grew upon them. The water level, in early summer, was above the level of the lowest parts of this area, above that in which the roots of the shrubs lie, but in dry times it gets considerably lower. At this place the indications were that the Sphagnum has built up as high as it can, when it has reached a height of about two feet above the ground water level, and in a few cases it was found that upon the top of partially dead mounds of Sphagnum, another moss, Polytrichum, had established itself. This is a dry ground type and seemed to thrive in this place, as it does upon the surface of more thoroughly decomposed peat. The fate of this Cassandra-Sphagnum bog was plainly to be read by a brief study of the area which lay between it and the higher ground to the north, for in passing across this, the margin around the bog was covered with dense growth of taller shrubs, *Vaccinium corymbosum* L., *Aronia nigra* (Willd.) Britt., *Ilicioides mucronata* (L.) Britt. and *Ilex verticillata* (L.) A. Gray. Of these, the *Aronia nigra* (Willd.) Britt., the Chokeberry, is particularly aggressive in occupying new ground or that occupied by lower plants, for it sends out long underground stems, which in turn develop vertical leafy branches, which grow up through the moss and Cassandra thickets, and, overtopping them, soon destroy them. In parts of the area to the north of the Cassandra bog, there were remnants of an old Tamarack growth under which were tall mature shrubs of most of the species mentioned above, forming a sufficiently dense shade to keep most of the ground bare except for mosses and some few small herbs. Among the Tamaracks there were also good sized trees of *Betula lutea* Michx. f., and less frequently *Acer rubrum* L. and *Populus tremuloides* Michx. In the lighter and more open places here, the following herbaceous plants were found:

*Aralia nudicaulis* L. Wild Sarsaparilla.
*Cypripedium acaule* Ait.
*Unifolium Canadense* (Desf.) Greene.
*Woodwardia Virginica* (L.) J. E. S.
*Sphagnum*. (In lowest wet places, in best light.)
*Carex canescens* L. Silvery Sedge.
*Carex trisperma* Dewey. Three-seeded Sedge.
*Pteridium aquilinum* (L.) Kuhn. (*Pteris aquilina* L.) Common Brake.
*Coptis trifolia* (L.) Salisb.

In addition to the shrubs, young specimens of *Betula lutea* Michx f. and *Acer rubrum* L. were common.

The peat here was of a granular structure near the surface, and is reddish brown in color. In early summer, the water stands near or at the surface of the low places and unless the season is very dry, does not get very low at any time. The top layers of peat were composed of the remains of branches, and other woody parts of trees and shrubs, with well-marked layers of leaf remains intermixed, extending down a foot or more from the surface. This layer was compact, and filled for several inches with the living roots of the trees and was coarsely granular in structure.

The peat in the Cassandra zone was much less granular, was softer and wetter, and was made up of the easily identified remains of Sphagnum for about a foot or a foot and one-half from the lowest places upon the surface. Below this was a thin stratum of shrub remains, characterized by well-preserved branches and stems of the shrubs, and under this within two feet of the surface, where the tests were made, the sedge turf was reached and abundant root-stocks and other parts of the *Carex* and accompanying plants were present and were brought to the surface.

Bordering upon this region of mature Tamaracks and covering a large part of the shoreward residue of the swamp, was a very dense growth of Poplars and Willows, interrupted frequently by shallow pools of small extent. These pools were bordered by *Typha*, various species of *Carex* and often by the low growing shrub Willows. Everywhere through this area were found the scorched remains of Tamaracks and Spruces, in many places the stumps with the roots almost entirely exposed, showing a considerable lowering of the surface level of the peat. It was evident that here again fire had changed the conditions, modified the structure of the soil and lowered its surface, and the present plant growth was of very recent origin. The presence of young Tamaracks under the Poplars was an indication that a new cycle has begun, which may eventually restore the Tamarack to its dominant position.

At the outer edge of the north side was a well-marked fosse, or marginal ditch—an open space usually covered with water from 1 to 2 feet deep, and supporting a dense growth of *Carex riparia* W. Curtis and *Typha*.

This sort of depression is nearly always present about the margins of peat deposits of this type, often extending entirely around them, and is generally wholly or partly filled with water, at least in wet seasons, and has an association of plants similar to that found here, the list of which might be considerably extended.

Similar phenomena have been discussed by McMillan,[1] who attributes the formation of Sphagnum atolls to "a season of gradual recession of the waters, followed by a season of comparatively rapid increase in area and level." Atkinson[2] attributes this ditch to the rapid and luxuriant growth of the original plants which establish themselves three or four meters from the shore and build up a deposit, from which the filling begins to work lakeward, "shutting off the shallower water near the shore from the deeper water of the pond."

In the numerous examples of this part of swamps and bogs of Michigan examined by the writer, it has seemed that the efficient cause in their production was the fluctuation of the water level through rather brief intervals and the constant recurrence of such fluctuations. These, as has already been pointed out, are attendant upon the variations in the rainfall, and the water level in the lakes, and depressions, may vary one, two, or more, feet every few years, and may remain at the low water stage for several years in succession, as has been shown is the case at Whitmore Lake, where the low water period was sufficiently long to enable young Red Cedar (*Juniperus Virginiana* L.) trees to establish themselves and reach a height of several feet on the abandoned lake bottom, before the water rose again. A similar drop in the water level took place at Rock and Bass Lakes in Montcalm county, the water being over two feet lower in 1894-1897 than in 1904. In like manner many shallow depressions which have been under cultivation during dry periods are, at the present writing, ponds. It is also a matter of observation that, during dry times, the water does disappear from these marginal ditches for long periods during the summer and fall, the bottoms becoming quite dry and this has the effect of destroying much of the hydrophytic vegetation which has established itself and also of thoroughly decomposing and disintegrating the organic matter which has accumulated during periods of high water, thus lowering the surface below that of the area directly above the zone of permanent water, which, being covered by a thicker layer of vegetable débris, is kept wet by the upward capillary movement of the water from below its surface.

Besides Mud Lake, a considerable number of other lakes were visited in which the sedge, *Typha* or similar floating mats were present, and in each of these practically the same plants were found. An interesting variant from the mat described above is that at Frain's Lakes, in Secs. 9 and 10, Superior township, Washtenaw county (Tp. 2 S., R. 7 E.) at a small pond on secton 11, Northfield township, Washtenaw county (T. 1 S., R. 6 E.), at Long's Lake, Davison township, Genesee county (T. 7 N., R. 8 E.), and in parts of other lakes visited, in which the plant making the advance from the margin was *Decodon verticillatus* (L.) Ell., mentioned as occurring at Mud Lake rather rarely. This made dense borders around the entire body of water on the two last lakes cited above, and was present upon the entire front of the advancing mat at Frain's Lakes. This plant is capable of forming masses of stems which bend over and root at the tips, at the same time making rather dense shade. The stools which they form are slightly higher than the water surface and such plants as can endure the shade and water, associated with the *Decodon* by establishing themselves upon these stools, and following in behind the advance of the *Decodon,* the sedges or *Typha* occupy the surface of the deposit. The *Decodon* stems die down each year and the advance of the plants at Frain's Lakes could be demonstrated by the existence of a number of concentric lines in the sedge mat, parallel to the present shore, in which there were a few plants of *Decodon,* less thrifty and smaller than those at the present water margin.[1] At Frain's Lakes the filling was in the middle of a long narrow depression, the mat having apparently built out from the north shore towards the south for a portion of the length of the valley and the rest of it, except at the east end of the east lake, is practically without any peat. The filled portion of the valley is nearly a fourth of a mile long and is, much of it, still covered by floating mat, through the lowest part of which is a channel connecting the two lakes.

---

[1] McMillan, C., Geol. & Nat. Hist. Surv. of Minn. Bull. 9, Part 1, p. 13. Minneapolis, 1894.
[2] Atkinson, G. F., Op. cit. p. 389.

Lakes with sedge mats are illustrated by the south shore of Half Moon Lake, in Gratiot county, by numerous examples in Livingston, Washtenaw, Isabella, Oakland and Ingham counties. In Roscommon and Wexford counties the localities visited were depressions which had been completely closed in, and, while it was apparent that the same plants as those noted in Mud Lake were present and had been actively engaged in the process of filling, the advanced stage of the deposits made the exact steps of the process not so apparent.

### *The Water Plants and Sedge in Relation to the Peat.*

If the sedge or Typha mat, as long as it is afloat, does not support any considerable number of other species of plants than those making it, and these are superficial upon the surface of the mat, and if the peat is gradually built up under the mat until this no longer floats, it is evident that the sedge must be considered as the chief agent in filling in the space between the under surface of the mat and the top of whatever deposit the water plants and other agencies have formed below, unless a circulation of water below the mat brings in and deposits débris formed outside its edge. This hardly seems probable to the writer, but his investigation has not gone so far as to lead to a final conclusion. Until such a conclusion is arrived at the alternative that the completion of the filling of the area under the mat is due in part to thickening of the mat, and, in part, to material which falls from the under side of it while it is being thickened by the growth of sedge above, must be accepted.

The final stage in the filling of deep depressions is reached when the mat closes over the water surface entirely, and the water below is so filled with peat that the entire surface becomes firm. After this the surface is built up above the water level by succeeding plant societies which are represented in the zones at Mud Lake.

After the water of the entire lake has been covered it is usually difficult to determine whether the method here described has been that by which it was accomplished or not, but if soundings show the basin to be a deep one, a vertical section will usually give proof that the sedge has been a chief factor in the later stages of lake destruction.

---

[1] For a further discussion of the importance of this plant in peat formation, see the account in Part II. of this Report.

Following the time when sedges or other advancing plants have closed in over the surface of the open water of a lake or pond, however, the mat slowly thickens, as has already been pointed out, both by the building up of the surface, through the accumulation of vegetable débris and by the sinking of the mat, partly through the replacement of air and other gases held in the plant tissues by the water, water-logging, but more because of the increased load upon the surface, after the heavier tree associations become established. This sinking is, however, a slow process, and only goes so far as is necessary to establish equilibrium, i. e., until the mat is built up sufficiently to sustain the weight upon it. The thickness of this mat, even at its maximum development, is small relative to the entire depth of the deposit, rarely more than 3 or 4 feet, and in but a single case in the series examined, showing as much as 6 feet of material, which could be considered true mat, before the fluid, or semi-fluid, structureless peat below the mat was reached.

In considering the phenomenon of the thickening of the mat in this type of peat deposits, it is probable that in some cases there has been a gradual and permanent elevation of the water level, amounting to a foot or more, due to interference with the drainage from the basin, as the mat covers more and more of the water contained within it, and a lessened evaporation from the surface as the area of open water becomes more and more contracted by the growth of the mat. This interference with the drainage can readily be seen in most lakes with outlets, which are partly covered by sedge mats, but the difficulties in the way of securing absolute confirmation of the effects of such interference on the water-level, are such that none can be presented here.

Another factor to be considered in accounting for the thickening of these structures is the periodic elevation of the water surface due to cycles of increased rainfall, during which, for longer or shorter times the ground water level is raised, together with that of lakes, as has been pointed out in another place. While the floating mat undoubtedly rises with the water level to a considerable extent, there are parts of it which do not respond quickly to changes of level, and upon these the water is increased in depth in times of high water, so that water plants may establish themselves, and the plants already present may grow above the level at which they did before the rise occurred, thus increasing the thickness of the mat by adding to its upper layers new strata of rootstocks and roots.

It seems to be generally true, however, that whether the water has risen over the mat, or the mat has sunk below the water, the changes have gone on very slowly, often at about the rate at which the surface of the mat has been built up, since sections of these thickened surface structures show that during a large part of their history the plants forming them have been those which thrive either at or just below the water level.

The fact that many of the apparently filled lakes of Michigan have been covered by such thickened mats as those described above, rather than filled, has been discovered, to their great cost and embarrassment, by the railroads of the state and the engineers in charge of their construction and maintenance. The level, comparatively open surface of such bogs, as well as the apparent stability of the substratum offer special attractions for laying out railroad lines, which have often been irresistible to locating engineers. Apparently the errors have come from false estimates of the solidity and stability of the peat, gained by the use of inefficient sounding tools in the preliminary tests made to estimate the depth and stability of the substratum, for these tools will give samples which are very deceptive, since they generally show solid peat from all depths if they pass through a few feet of it, near the top of a deposit, bringing nothing from the fluid mass below.

This relatively thin covering stratum, usually only 3 or 4 feet thick, for a time after the line has been constructed, has borne the additional weight of grade and track and has endured the traffic, but sooner or later the track has sunk under an unusual load imposed upon it, by the passage of a heavily loaded train, or has persistently moved from its proper alignment under stress of continued use, because of the unstability of the peat substratum. Such bogs have given much trouble along the lines of the Pere Marquette, Ann Arbor, Michigan Central, Grand Trunk and other railroads in various places, and in the Northern Peninsula are still causing more or less anxiety along the lines of some of the more recently built roads.

A case notable in the annals of railroad engineering is described by Waterbury,[1] from whose paper the accompanying facts and Figs. 5 to 8 have been taken.

The road was originally built with a single track, and a large amount of timber was used to form a foundation for the roadbed, which was built above it. This is shown in Fig. 5. For a considerable time this single track was sufficient for the needs of the road, and little difficulty was experienced from the instability of the substratum until 1902, the track was doubled. In the process of this work "the dirt, which was dumped by the side of the existing embankment, gradually sunk

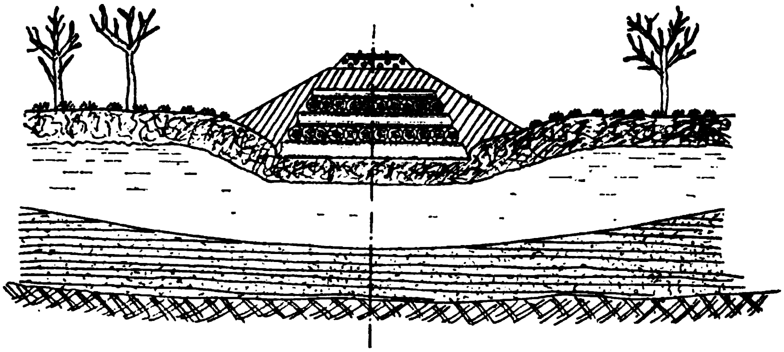


FIG. 5. Cross section showing original construction of Grand Trunk railway upon floating mat of a bog near Lansing. (Waterbury).

---

[1] Waterbury, L. E., Haslett Park sink-hole on the Grand Trunk Railway. The Michigan Engineer 1903, p. 38.

out of sight, leaving a pond of water, at the same time forcing the track and right-of-way fences out of line." (Fig. 6.)

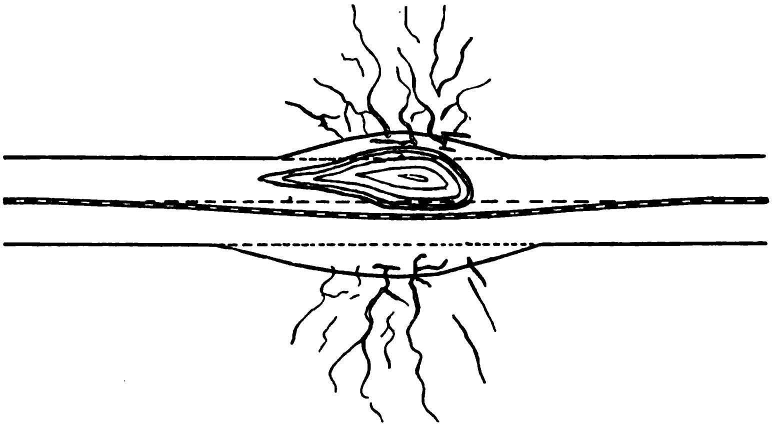


FIG. 6. Sketch map showing distortion in alignment, and cracks at sides. The dotted lines show the original positions of the fences and tracks.

The displacement of the fence was 38 feet from its original position, and of the track more than 19½ feet. The weight of the material for widening the old embankment broke the mat, carried down with it a portion of the old filling as well as the peat below it, so that the track sank whenever trains passed, sometimes a half foot, and this would have to be raised by filling before the track could be used again. In filling the opening permanently about 30,000 cubic yards of material were used before the track stopped sinking. (Fig. 7.)

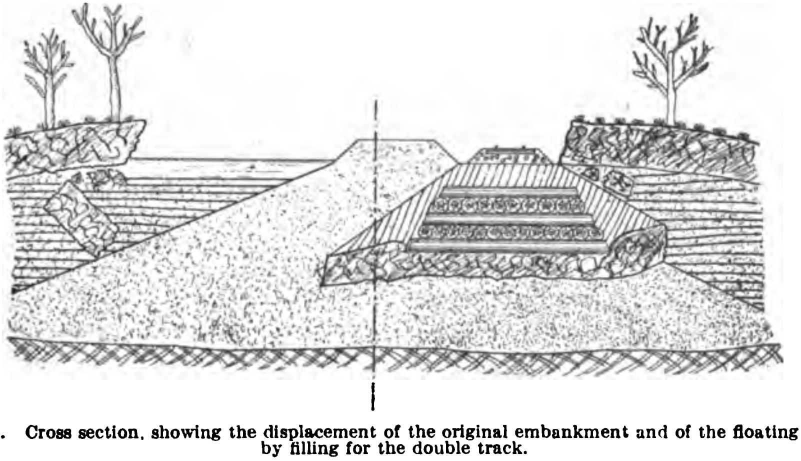


FIG. 7. Cross section, showing the displacement of the original embankment and of the floating mat, by filling for the double track.

In this figure also is shown the peculiar rising up of the mat, which amounted to at least 6 feet, caused by the displacement of water and soft peat below it, by the material used for filling.

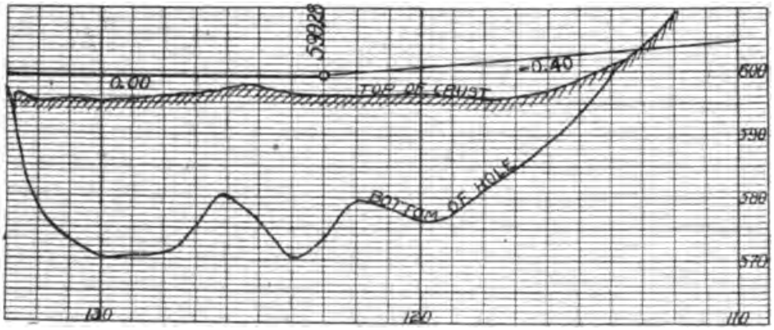


FIG. 8. Profile of a section of the bog along the line of the track. Figures on the right, elevation above the sea level.

In Fig. 8 is shown a profile of a section of the bog along the line of the track, the greatest depth being about 28 feet. In another, larger bog, on the line of the same railway, and less than 6 miles from the one described, there were used more than 60,000 cubic yards of filling in making the changes from single to double track. This depression was 55 feet deep.

The bog at Haslett Park was visited by the writer in June, 1905, and while considerable change had taken place in the vicinity of the sink-hole as described above, the elevated portions of the mat were still 4 feet above the water level, the shrinkage being in part due, in all probability, to the drying of the peat and to a certain extent, also, to changes of water level.

The surface of the bog was covered by the remnants of a forest of broad-leaved trees, mixed, in places, with *Larix laricina* (Du Roi) Koch, Tamarack, especially near the place where the sinking of the track had occurred. The following broad-leaved species of trees and shrubs were noted here:

*Ulmus Americana* L. White Elm.
*Quercus macrocarpa* Michx. Bur Oak.
*Quercus platanoides* (Lam.) Sudw. Swamp White Oak.
*Quercus rubra* L. Red Oak.
*Acer rubrum* L. Red Maple.

and a few other species forming a partly cleared zone around the shoreward margin. In a somewhat more open area extending from the edge of this to the sink-hole were scattered young specimens of some of these species, together with larger and more mature ones of:

*Larix laricina* (Du Roi) Koch. Tamarack.
*Populus tremuloides* Michx. Common Aspen or Poplar.
*Salix nigra* Marsh. Black Willow.
*Betula lutea* Michx. Yellow Birch.
*Fraxinus nigra* Marsh. Black Ash.

As undergrowth appeared the shrubs:

*Corylus Americana* Walt. Hazelnut.
*Rhus Vernix* L. Poison Sumach.
*Betula pumila* L. Dwarf Birch.
*Aronia nigra* (Willd.) Britt. Choke-berry.
*Rosa Carolina* L. Swamp Wild Rose.

*Sphagnum* was found covering small areas north of the right of way of the railroad and, in spots along the recently made cut through the raised portion of the mat. Sphagnum peat formed hummocks from 1 to 3 feet high above the general surface. A section through one of these gave the following results:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Living *Sphagnum* .......................... | | 6 in. |
| Light colored, poorly decomposed moss peat with remains of shrubs and other plants.... | 2 ft. | |
| Light colored moss peat with abundant rootstocks of *Dryopteris Thelypteris* (L.) A. Gray. Marsh Shield-fern .................. | | 3 in. |

Below which was:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Coarse brown peat with tree roots and stumps | 2 ft. | 6 in. |
| Shrub remains ........................... | | 2 in. |
| Finer and darker peat with sedge remains abundant ............................... | 2 ft. | |

In a section through the most elevated part of the upturned mat, where there was no *Sphagnum,* measured from the top to a distance of a foot below the water level, the following strata could easily be made out:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Surface litter ............................ | | 6 in. |
| Brown, coarse, poorly decomposed peat filled with tree roots and occasionally stumps... | 2 ft. | 3 in. |
| Shrub remains ........................... | | 3 in. |
| More compact darker peat with rootstocks of the Marsh Shield-fern abundant........... | | 2 in. |
| Fine grained, dark colored peat, without remains of woody plants, but quantities of sedge and Bulrush fragments............. | 2 ft. | 6 in. |

In some parts of the cut, layers of charcoal, the evidence of former fires were noted from 1 to 2 feet below the surface of the pushed up portion of the bog. The thin strata between the shrub and sedge remains, which had masses of the characteristic and easily identified underground stems of *Dryopteris Thelypteris,* the Marsh Shield-fern, were not always present, but were found in several places in the cut.

Below the stratum of sedge remains it was not easy to determine the remaining strata because of the depth of water present, but the peat was very dark colored and had little structure, although fragments of sedge leaves and rhizomes were occasionally found.

In a mass of this sort of material, probably from a lower level than any of the sections above, seen on the south side of the electric railway and at the west end of the uplift, the fine grained, structureless character was very noticeable, yet, even in this, fragments of the characteristic sedge remains could readily be made out, although not so abundant in it as in the material in the other sections.

In a second uplift, to the east of the one described, and on the south side of the Grand Trunk Railway, the elevation was a little over 4½ feet above the water with great cracks a foot or more wide, radiating from it, to the south. A section of this uplift gave the following strata from the top down:

| | |
|---|---|
| Litter and living plants | 4 in. |
| Coarse peat with tree roots | 2 ft. 6 in. |
| Shrub remains | 6 in. |
| Fern rootstocks | 2-4 in. |
| Sedge rootstocks, leaves, etc. | 1 ft. to 1 ft. 4 in. |

Water-level, below which no examination was made.

From these sections it is evident that in this instance the foundation of the mat was built up, as has been already shown, by the water-loving sedges, but that the upper portions had been formed largely by the woody plants, of which the trees, with their attendant plant associates, were the most important.

In these sections it will also be noted that the orderly succession of types, described as occurring on the surface of many similar localities, is here clearly recorded in the superposed layers of the mat which is the substratum of a mature swamp forest.

### *Succession of Plants Upon the Peat After the Grounding of the Sedge Mat.*

There are certain types of plants which apparently are always ready to reach out from the dryer places, and establish themselves in the open areas which are offered by the surface of a peat deposit formed as indicated above, and whenever a change in the elevation of the surface takes place in any way they are quick to take advantage of it. Chief among the plants to appear upon the sedge mat, even before the surface has been raised above the water level are several species of aquatic and semi-aquatic mosses, the most noticeable ones belonging to the genus *Hypnum,* or more rarely, *Sphagnum.* On the first elevations, an inch or two above the surface of the water, the plants which appear first are principally herbs, the most conspicuous and generally distributed species being the Marsh Shield-fern, *Dryopteris Thelypteris,* which is usually accompanied by a considerable number of plants found with it at Mud Lake, all of which are more or less able to add to the deposit upon which they grow and build up the surface, when they, in turn, are displaced by more aggressive types.

The *Dryopteris* and its accompanying species not infrequently form well-marked zones where conditions are favorable, but they are more often found in patches, in places where drift material has lodged at high water, or in scattered small groups, or on hummocks formed by the stools of sedge, stems of *Typha,* etc.

The fern association was not always a noticeable element of the flora of the sedge mat, but as the same may be said of all other types as well, this is not significant.

Following the fern, the *Sphagnum* moss is often found encroaching upon the sedge, usually starting upon the fern "islands," so that where the fern association is well represented, all stages of its introduction are to be found. Sphagnum grows with erect, more or less branching stems, which crowd so closely together that they form a dense cover to the surface of the parts of the bog upon which they grow, the upper parts of the plant continuing to grow after the lower part is dead, and in favorable places they may build the surface up to a height of two feet or more, especially where they are associated with shrubs. Some species persist and even thrive when the mat is flooded by water. These mosses are so much more vigorous in their growth than the *Hypnums* that they are more easily seen and more generally known, and to them is frequently attributed the formation of all peat, in fact they are known as the "peat mosses." The *Sphagnums* are not invariably found in Michigan in the types of swamps under discussion, in fact they rather seldom occur in places where they might be expected, less than 30 per cent of the number of lakes, marshes and bogs visited on the course of this investigation, having any *Sphagnum,* even when other bog plants were present. The order of the appearance of the *Sphagnum* is apparently invariable, so far, at least, as the species which build the abundant surface coverings of the marshes and bogs to which they give the name are concerned, for not only does it exist in the south, as illustrated by the Mud Lake and Dead Lake developments, but in Gratiot county at Half Moon Lake, Montcalm county at the west end of Bass Lake near Vestaburg, in Wexford county, in the bog near Hobart Station, and in several localities in Roscommon county, especially near Boyce Lake in Tp. 21 N., R. 3 and 4 W., it is the invariable order of succession.

The same relationship has been noted by the writer and is shown by Whitford[1] to exist in the northern part of the state on the islands in Lake Michigan and is indicated less clearly by Coulter[2] for the same region.

At about the same time, or level, at which these mosses appear, sometimes with them, sometimes by themselves, before them, certain shrubs, and a few species of trees make their advent in sufficient numbers to give character to the vegetation.

While these may appear often as scattered individuals upon the sedge mat or with the ferns, they are there simply stragglers, but at the level slightly higher than that at which the ferns are most prominent, Willows of a number of species, a variety of heath plants, the Dwarf Birch, and other shrubs, such as *Myrica Gale* L., the Sweet Gale, and *Lonicera oblongifolia* (Goldie) Hook, the Swamp Honeysuckle, become common, make good growth and often cover the surface completely. The tree species which first establishes itself is the Tamarack, which often appears as isolated individuals on the open bog in advance of other woody species, but in denser growth is apparently restricted to the same level as the shrubs or a slightly higher one.

---

[1] Whitford, H. N. Bot. Gaz. 31. 1902, pp. 313-314.

[2] Coulter, S. M., An Ecological Comparison of Some Typical Swamp Areas. Rept. Mo. Bot. Gard. 15, 1904, p. 46.

### *Some Ecological Factors Which Control This Succession.*

The plants of this association have given students of the peat bog flora much difficulty, and writers upon plant ecology have made many attempts to explain their peculiarities of structure, and to reconcile these to their habitat, but no wholly acceptable theories have yet been advanced.

The shrubs which make their appearance at the water level indicated above, have especially well-marked adaptations to reduce the transpiration of water, that is, they are xerophytes[1] or drought plants while they live under conditions where there is a large excess of water, apparently always available. Some of the adaptations found in these shrubs are thickened leaves, thick, dense cuticle, glaucous (or waxy), or, less frequently scurfy, woolly, or hairy, and, in case of *Gaylussacia,* resinous, covering for the leaves, especially on the under side and for the young twigs. The leaves are elongated or narrowly linear in form, often rolled, i. e., reduced in size, or in the case of the conifers, short needle or awl-shaped, or reduced to scales.

Schimper[2] attributes this peculiarity to impeded absorption of water by the roots, caused by the presence of humus acids in the peat. Livingston,[3] however, has pointed out that "Bog waters do not have an appreciably higher concentration of dissolved substances than do the streams and lakes of the same region," and it is therefore evident that any effects produced by the humus acids must be chemical, if they are present at all, because the osmotic effect of bog water is that of ground water generally, and will be as readily absorbed by roots.

Whitford[4] adds to the above the factor of "insufficient aeration of the soil, which prevents a healthy growth of the root system of land plants, and also bars the presence of nitrifying bacteria." Adding that "These probably bring about xerophytic structures of the plants so commonly seen in hydrophytic habitats." Cowles[5] states that N. H. Nillson attributes the differences between the hydrophytic and xerophytic swamps to differences in food supply. It has also been suggested that the differences in temperature between the water about the roots and that of the air around the foliage of the plants in the open swamps and bogs, produces a tendency to excessive transpiration accompanied by slow absorption from the soil, the roots' activity being reduced while that of the leaves is accelerated, thus producing a need of protection against the loss of water which causes the xerophytic structure mentioned.

A comparative study of the plants of this shrub society and its habitat has made the following interesting facts apparent:

1st. The area of swamps upon which these plants become dominant is fixed so that it no longer rises and falls with fluctuations of the water level of the lake, hence the water rises and falls in the peat as it does in other soils, often as much as 15 feet in peat deposits around ponds.

2nd. During periods of minimum rainfall, the water level may fall sufficiently to leave the *Sphagnum* and the upper layers of the peat very dry, sufficiently so that they will readily burn, as is shown by the extensive areas burned over at Mud Lake and in a number of other localities visited, in which from one to three feet of peat have been burned off. These dry periods may last for several years and during their continuance the habitat is actually, not potentially, very dry.

---

[1] Schimper, Op. cit. pp. 3-17.

[2] Schimper, A. F. W., Op. cit., pp. 4 and 111.

[3] Livingston, B. E., Bot. Gaz. 37 : 383-385, May 1904.

[4] Whitford, H. N., Op. cit. p. 314, 315.

[5] Cowles, Loc. cit. pp. 75-76.

3rd. From peat, unless thoroughly decomposed, because of its mechanical structure, it is difficult to extract water by any means except heat, the water being held in the cell and vessel cavities of the partially disintegrated vegetable matter so firmly that the strongest pressure will not force it out, beyond a certain limited amount, and centrifugal force is equally ineffective.

These facts have been established by experiments in attempting to prepare peat for fuel without heat, and make it apparent that plants growing with their roots in peat in which the water content does not approach saturation will have difficulty in extracting sufficient for their needs. In other words, peat above the water level is structurally a very dry soil. Moreover, when it is once thoroughly dry, or even only air dry, peat does not readily absorb more than a small per cent of water, and a block of the material may be exposed for days to water without becoming wet through, because certain soluble matters in it become colloidal in drying and form a nearly insoluble coating in the outer layers. This property tends to prolong the period of drought in a bog that has been dried out.

Direct experiment with plants has demonstrated the soundness of these conclusions, for as long ago as 1875, according to Warrington,[1] Heinrich[2] reported that various crop plants required much more water when grown in peat to prevent wilting than in other kinds of soils, and that in the case of the potato the amount of water required was 41.4 per cent of the weight of moist, or 70.8 per cent of dry peat. This amount is very much greater than that required in any other soil, as is shown by the following table:

*Parts of Water per 100 of Dry Soil.*

| Type of soil. | When plants wilted. | Absorbed from moist air. |
|---|---|---|
| Coarse sandy soil | 1.5 | 1.15 |
| Sandy garden soil | 4.6 | 3.00 |
| Fine humus sand | 6.2 | 3.98 |
| Sandy loam | 7.8 | 5.74 |
| Calcareous soil | 9.8 | 5.20 |
| Peat | 49.7 | 42.30 |

In experimenting with crops on peaty lands, it has been demonstrated that the peat must contain more than 60 per cent of its weight of water to yield productive crops.[3] If these results are correctly reported, it appears that peat may appear very wet, and yet contain no water which is available for plants growing in it, so that those which habitually grow at levels of peat bogs where the surface strata can dry out, must have xerophytic adaptations if the climate is such that drying out of these levels may occur. These conclusions are supported, in part at least, by the testimony of many farmers in the region under discussion, who report that crop plants suffer more severely from drought during dry times on muck or peat soils than upon other types. Experiments with our native plants have been planned to test the correctness of these conclusions, but it is too early to report upon them at this time.

---

[1] Warrington, R., Physical Properties of Soils, 1900, pp. 63-64.
[2] Heinrich, Jahresb. Agrik. Chem. 1875-6. p. 368.
[3] Biedermann's Central-Blatt fur Agrik. Chem. 1885, p. 279.

(4.) Not only must perennial plants endure, from time to time, the difficulties of real drought in peat bogs, but they must also be able to stand excessive wetness about their roots for long periods and the heath plants, *Betula pumila,* and several species of *Salix* and a few others are able to do this for at least three years without being injured, for the writer has had these species under observation where the water level has been raised more than a foot above its former height upon a heath bog for that length of time, and the plants still survive in a fairly good condition, while other species, more sensitive to water, have died.

(5.) In the heath zones and heath swamps of the southern part of the Southern Peninsula of Michigan there are more species of shrubs and trees near the water level than in the north, and as the surface of the peat is drained even slightly, species of plants occupy it which never, so far as observed by the writer, are found in the same sort of habitat at the north, but grow in the dryest and poorest soils there.

A most striking example of this is *Aralia hispida* Vent., which was a common species on the peat deposit at Chelsea, now being utilized for the manufacture of fuel. Proceeding northward some species leave the peat soils entirely and are only found upon dry and poor soils, while others still remain in them but only around their borders at a well-defined distance above water level, while others still are found at the water level as far north as observed. The following notes illustrate this:

*Gaylussacia resinosa* is common at Ann Arbor, both in and out of the bogs, growing as freely on light sand as it does in the bogs, but not so tall.

In Gratiot county it was rare in bogs, but very common in the dryest places on poor sandy soils, while in Roscommon county it was not noted at all in the swamps although very abundant as a sand plant. In Tuscola and Huron counties it occurred as a sand-dune plant. It endures shading well wherever found.

*Dasiphora fruticosa* (L.) Rydb., at Ann Arbor, is an occasional constituent of the open bog and marsh flora, in the heath zone, but occurs upon a very dry hillside at Lakeland and further north in Huron and Tuscola counties it was found only upon sandy shore lines; still farther north, however, it was noted in bogs, as well as on sandy soils.

*Vaccinium Canadense,* in the vicinity of Ann Arbor, is found usually, if not always, in the peat bogs, and in Gratiot county it is still a peat plant, but is found growing upon mineral soils in dry places as well, while in Roscommon county it is the most common sand and dry ground blueberry, covering sandy ridges and flats, wherever the ground was open enough, and was not listed from the peat bogs at all.

*Vaccinium Pennsylvanicum* does not occur in the lists made by the writer about Ann Arbor, except at Mud Lake, as noted above. At Alma, Gratiot county, it is found upon the dry and sandy knolls, but sometimes in the margins of swamps as well. In Roscommon county it occurs on dry sand commonly and was not noted elsewhere.

*Vaccinium corymbosum.* In Southern Michigan wherever found is a plant of the heath association, often in the very wet part of the swamps, and persisting after the surface gets quite dry, and also under the shade of the taller shrubs and trees. At Alma it is still a plant of the same association, and was not seen in the bogs examined farther north, but in New England it grows commonly on high and dry ground as well as in the swamps.

*Aronia arbutifolia* and *A. nigra* (Willd.) Britt., the latter more frequently, grow very commonly and with great luxuriance in many of the heath swamps in Washtenaw and Livingston counties. In Gratiot county the latter species occurred both in the peat and on dry sandy soils, and in Roscommon county it covered the sandy hillsides from the top down nearly to the water level, but was not recorded in the swamps, except as a straggling plant in the dryer parts.

*Ilicioides mucronata* (L.) Britton, is always a plant of the heath swamps about Ann Arbor, so far as observed, and is often found growing in very wet Tamarack swamps in the shade, to large size. At Alma it was not common, but grew in wet swamps where found. In Roscommon county it grew only on the borders of the bogs, often forming a distinct zone on the mineral soil on the borders of the bogs, from about a foot above the water level to 3 or 4 feet above it, starting in above the Cassandra. In Wexford county it was found growing in a rather dry and shallow peat deposit, near the margin.

*Ilex verticillata* is rather common in the vicinity of Ann Arbor, in the wet parts of peat swamps, often in the shade. It also grows well in other swamps and on mineral soils near the water level, where it endures the shade well. In Gratiot county it is very common in wooded and open swamps, and is not uncommon in the borders of swamps. In Roscommon county it was found mainly on the borders of the open swamps with *Ilicioides,* but was also found well distributed in the Cedar and Tamarack swamps, and was noted as growing from these up to a height of 3 or 4 feet above the water level on the mineral soil.

Cassandra, as found in the south, is always a plant of peat bogs and of the wettest parts of these, probably never establishing itself more than a foot above the water level, and has not been observed in the region of Ann Arbor, growing on mineral soil. In Gratiot and Montcalm counties it is usually found in the peat bogs, but at Bass Lake it grows well upon an ice-formed sand ridge at least three feet above the level of the lake, and shows in some of the bogs a tendency to grow above the water level.

In Roscommon county, while it makes luxuriant growth in the swamps and bogs, it seems to avoid the very lowest parts of these and is found making well-marked fringes around the wet sedge bogs extending out into these upon fallen logs and creeping up the sandy banks of the Sphagnum swamps, where it also covers the whole surface. It was noticed well established near Boyce Lake as much as 4 feet above the water level, growing in sand, and mixing with the Sweet Fern, which covered the higher parts of the slopes.

*Kalmia glauca* Ait. is a rather common plant in the region studied and associated closely with Cassandra, but was not seen outside the bogs.

*Andromeda Polifolia* L. is found at Ann Arbor in the wet part of the heath zone, and as far as studied shows no indication of leaving the water level or of growing in mineral soil, for in Roscommon and Wexford counties it was always found as far out in the sedge zone as any shrubby plant.

*Betula pumila* L., as it occurs about Ann Arbor, is common in the wet parts of the swamps and marshes in which it occurs, but persists after the water level has been lowered by draining and in a single case has been found in a moderately dry situation growing in mineral soil, at least three feet above the water level. Farther north it keeps in the peat bogs in the very wet places and does not get above the water level.

*Myrica Gale* L. was only found in Roscommon county growing in the wet zones of the marshes and bogs with the sedges. Farther north, however, it was seen frequently in sandy soil above the water level.

*Ledum Groenlandicum* Oeder, the Labrador Tea, was another species found only in the northern part of the region studied. In Hobart bog it was growing in the higher levels of the Sphagnum zone and in the tree zone, where it bore the shade well. In the vicinity of Boyce Lake it was apparently more plentiful in shade than in the open, and grew in the better drained situations slightly above the water level and sometimes in mineral soil.

*Salix myrtilloides* L. and *S. candida* Fl., the most interesting of the various Willows which grow in the heath swamps show little change in their relation to the water level throughout the region studied, both keeping near the water and showing no greater tendency to grow away from it at the north than at the south.

*Spiraea tomentosa* L., an Ann Arbor, is occasionally found growing in the peat bogs and more rarely on the wet shores of lakes, a foot or so above the level of the water. In Montcalm county this plant grows on the borders of a few bogs, but was not found growing in them. In New Hampshire the species is frequent in dry and barren pastures, where it takes the poorest and dryest places.

The Tamarack, in the region about Ann Arbor and southward, is a bog or swamp tree, seldom occurring outside of peat deposits, and usually very near the water level. It has been planted on high ground in the city and has grown well there. In Gratiot county the tree is sometimes found on high ground around swamps, while on Mackinac Island it is found growing at all elevations and in all kinds of soil, making a fairly constant element in the second growth forest.

Enough species have been cited to show the marked tendency which these bog shrubs and trees have to leave the bogs for higher ground and a type of soil where the water level is low and the soil moisture scanty, and to indicate that in the more southern part of their range plants may be confined to the bog habitat and in the northern to truly xerophytic conditions on mineral soil.

From the consideration of these facts follows the conclusion that many, if not all the "bog xerophytes" of the peat swamps of Michigan are bog plants only in the southern part of their range, and that many of their obvious adaptations for protection against drought are needed in their ordinary habitat in the region of their greatest frequency and widest dispersal and these enable them to persist in bogs and swamps during constantly recurring dry periods towards the southern limits of their range.

(6.) The plants given in the above list, many of them, have fleshy fruits, which are attractive to birds, and aid in securing the dispersal of their seeds. An observer has only to visit one of these heath swamps during the time when the various fruits are ripe to see how attractive these are in color, form and size, to the fruit-eating birds, as well as to man, for a little watching will show that more than one species is at work gathering fruit. In the late summer and early fall, the migrating season, the swamps are full of birds, and flocks of robins and blackbirds may be found at work in them at almost any time, but especially in the morning and late afternoon. In fact several species make these swamps regular migration routes as they move southward, and by them the seeds are carried from north to south each season and scattered where, if conditions are favorable, they will be most likely to germinate, namely upon thoroughly moist soil in the swamps, which keeps the seed coats, already softened by passing through the digestive system of the birds from drying again. It would seem that no other factor need be considered to account for the occurrence of the great number of shrubs which characterize the heath swamps of Michigan.

(7.) With the appearance of the shrubs and trees upon the sedge marsh, another biotic factor than tolerance of water enters into the matter of deciding what types of plants will finally occupy the ground. This is the relative need of light of the various species, or their tolerance or intolerance of shade. Those plants which live from year to year grow to different heights, and the taller ones finally overtop the shorter and unless these can endure shading they must succumb. An extended series of observations upon the woody plants growing with the *Sphagnum* upon the marshes under consideration, and others as well, establishes the fact that many of the species are unable to bear a weakened light, and as soon as shade of any density develops in their habitat, they disappear and their places are taken by species which will grow in the shade. The more aggressive species, such as *Aronia nigra,* are aided by their method of propagation, a system of long underground branches sent horizontally from the parent plant in every direction and these, at their ends and along their sides, send up vertical leaf-bearing stems which soon establish themselves and make new centers of dispersal. Such species may advance as much as six feet in a season upon any of the lower shrubs like Cassandra and in a few years after becoming established hold the entire ground. The Tamarack is taller than most of the plants with which it is associated upon the marshes, hence it shades them, and, while its shade is not dense, it seems to be effectual in stopping the growth of a number of species and finally exterminates them. Cassandra is often shaded out by the Tamarack and the only record left is that which the dead and dry stems of the lesser plant give, and the partly decayed débris in the peat below. The Blueberry, *Ilex verticillata* and *Ilicioides mucronata* on the other hand, are more tolerant and often make large growth in the shade, the last named species sometimes reaching a height of 20 feet under old Tamaracks. In like manner the Black Spruce is a taller plant than its associated species, except a few trees, and makes a denser shade than the Tamarack, and under its shade few species survive, even the *Sphagnums*, which are able to get along with less light than most of the marsh plants, give way before it. Again, the Tamarack seedlings cannot grow in the shade of the Spruce, while those of the Spruce grow readily under the Tamarack, as do those of the Cedar, so that often the Tamarack lasts but a single generation, being succeeded by the more tolerant species. The Tamarack also cannot grow up in the shade of the Red Maple and Birches and other broad leaved species and if overtopped by them at any age, is generally killed, so it gives place to these species when they succeed in establishing themselves in competition with it, and it is either driven to wetter open spots farther out upon the marsh or disappears entirely.

The Tamarack will grow under the lighter shade of Poplars and Willows, and thus may succeed a growth of these species, since they do not live when shaded by it.

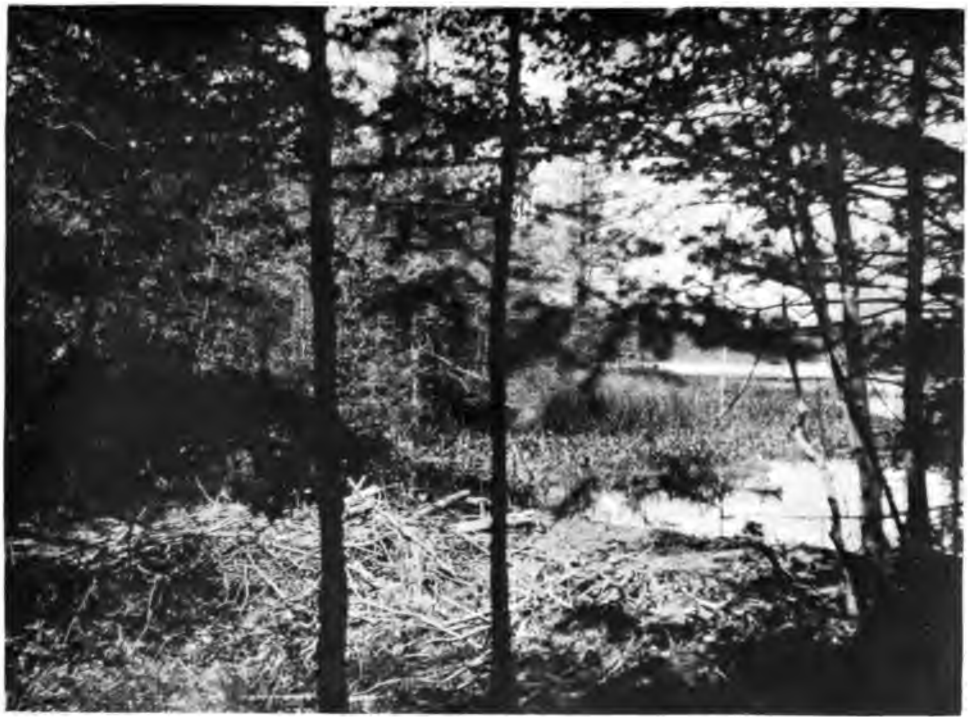
From the foregoing discussion it is evident that the plants upon the surface of a peat deposit are not necessarily nor usually an indication as to the character of the peat below, and in general are relatively a short time in places where they are found. In the filled basins, and in other types of peat deposit as well, the character of the vegetation is certain to change with fluctuations of water level, which may occur as the result either of prolonged drought, periods of less than normal rainfall, or periods of excessive precipitation, the latter being especially effective in causing change, because plants which may have been years in establishing themselves in places which they occupy, may be killed in a very short time of high water and the ground which they have been occupying thus be left free from growth of such species as are able to live under the new conditions.

A change in the elevation of the outlet of the basin, if one exists, will produce the same effects as the variations in precipitation, drying out if it is lowered, and flooding if raised.

If such an elevation of the water level is at all permanent, the whole cycle of plant growth may be passed through with again. Elevations of the water level from six inches to one foot are efficient in producing complete change in some of the swamp associations.

From the lateness of appearance of the *Sphagnum* moss upon the deposit made by the water plants and the Carices it is easy to see that no great thickness of peat is built up by it. The height to which this could go on is limited by the height to which the water level may be raised after the appearance of the moss, or that to which it will rise in the *Sphagnum* through capillary action. Under climatic conditions such as prevail in Michigan, this is about 2 feet and, unless the surface of the peat slowly settles as consolidation of the material below the surface goes on, the formation of the peat ceases, so far as *Sphagnum* is concerned, at that level. In the cases where this was tested, sections at Mud Lake, and at Oxford, Oakland county, show that in less than two feet all of the deposit which can be attributed to the moss is passed through. Above this deposit there may be as much as a foot of living moss, though usually less.

A section made near Vestaburg, Montcalm county, through an island of *Sphagnum* gave 21 inches from the top of the living moss to the bottom of the moss peat, below which were 1 to 2 inches of shrub remains, probably *Cassandra*, which was still growing in the "island."



Beaver Dam near Negaunee, Mich., shows pond and marsh along border.
Photo. by Prof. R. H. Pettit, M. A. C.

U of M

Below this were remains of sedge rootstocks and roots for an inch and at from 4 to 5 inches below the bottom of the *Sphagnum* was a well marked zone an inch or more thick with large quantities of rootstocks of the Yellow Pond Lily, with numbers of the seeds in the peat above. Below this, to the bottom of the section, the peat was more homogeneous, but was easily separable into laminae, which when split apart showed large numbers of the leaves of grass-like plants.

Similar sections through the *Sphagnum* in Roscommon county, gave similar results.

### *Deposits Formed Behind Dams.*

In the hollows which have been formed by dams of some of the types mentioned in a former paragraph, the effects of changes of the water level are shown most clearly, as in these there may be a periodical elevation of the barrier to a greater height, and this in turn holds the water impounded back to a greater height, which at once reacts upon the vegetation and changes the type of growth more or less completely.

Beaver dams were probably the most common type of dam which resulted in the formation of peat in the region of which Michigan is a part. Speaking of them and their occurrence in the state Desor[1] says: "They cite in Michigan, rivers of considerable size which are barred by dams, making thus a quantity of lakes and ponds which would not exist without them. It is evident from this that without these dams the lake and peat deposits, which are found at the bottom of these ponds, would be less numerous. The beavers have thus exercised an influence not only on the distribution of waters, and the consequent fertility of the soil but also up to a certain point even upon the distribution of recent rock formations."

The importance of the beaver as an agent in the formation of peat in the Southern Peninsula is also mentioned at some length by Bela Hubbard,[2] of the first Survey, one of the keenest writers who has ever written upon the geology and natural history of Michigan, and even earlier geologists.

In this article the writer says: "Not one or two, but a series of such dams were constructed along each stream so that very extensive surfaces became thus covered permanently with the flood. The trees were killed and the land converted into a chain of ponds and marshes with intervening dry ridges. In time, by nature's recuperative process—the annual growth of grasses and aquatic plants—these filled with muck or peat, with occasional deposits of bog lime, and the ponds and swales became dry again.

"Illustrations of this beaver-made country are numerous enough in our immediate vicinity. In a semi-circle of 12 miles around Detroit, having the river for a base, and embracing about 100,000 acres, fully one-fifth part consists of marshy tracts or prairies, which had their origin in the work of the beaver. A little further west, nearly a whole township in Wayne county is of this character."

Taking the beaver dam as an illustration, since it is small, rarely more than 5 or 6 feet high[3] and relatively rapid in its effects, the course of development of this type of peat deposit would depend upon the following considerations.

---

[1] Desor. E., La Foret Vierge, p. 57. Paris. 1879. 57.

[2] Hubbard. B., Memorials of a Half Century. pp. 362-3. N. Y., 1888.

[3] Melton and Cheadley. North West Passage by Land, p. 178.

In regions of comparative flatness, the building of even a low and weak dam, such as beavers erect, will flood a considerable area. This is clearly stated by Melton and Cheadley, who report that the former operations of beavers in Canada must have been on a very extensive scale, for nearly every stream between the Pembina and the Athabasca except the large Macleod river appeared to have been destroyed by the agency of these animals.

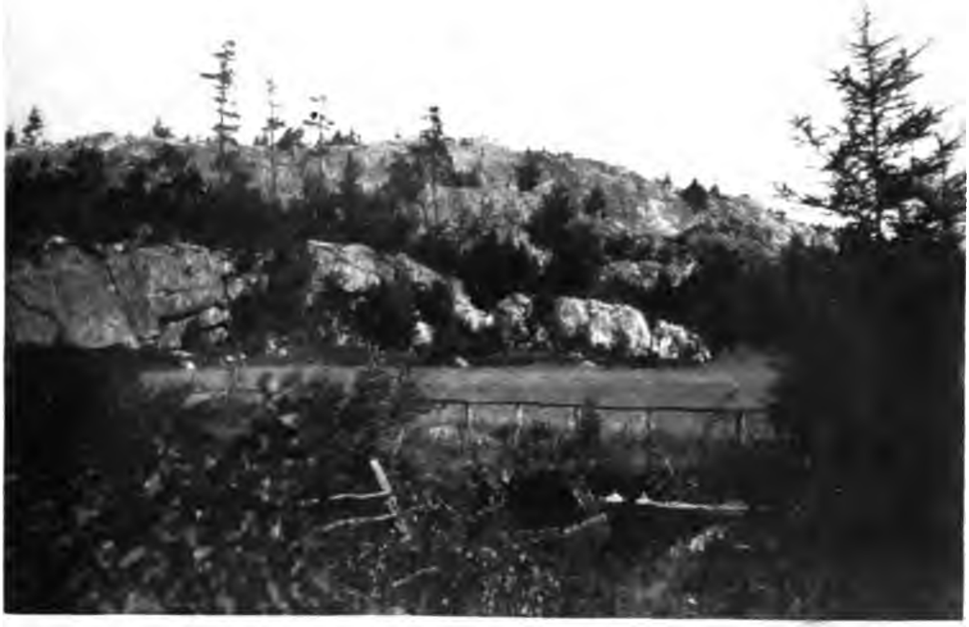
At one place they found a long chain of marshes formed by the damming up of a stream which had ceased to exist, the beaver huts had become grassy mounds and the dam a green and solid bank.

If such an area was covered at the time when the water level was raised by a growth of trees or shrubs, these would be killed, and some would be cut down by the beavers for food and construction purposes, the rest would decay and fall to the ground or into the water, where they would shortly be overgrown and buried. The destruction of this taller growth would enable the marsh plants bordering the stream and the water plants growing in it to spread out, first upon the margins of the flooded area, then because the water is shallow, over the whole impounded surface. Such an area of shallow water would fill rapidly with vegetable débris, and as reedy and grassy types of vegetation obtained a foot-hold and became abundant the water area would be restricted, until perchance, the animals built their dam higher or abandoned it for a new place.

In the former case there would be a new advance of water plants over the marsh vegetation, while in the latter, the marsh would become at first covered with stages or *Typha* and later by grasses, one of the first to be established being probably *Calamagrostis Canadensis,* the Blue Joint, of which stages, good examples are the so-called "beaver-meadows," so often utilized as sources of hay by early settlers in Michigan and other parts of North America. At the last period as the drainage improved, Willows, Alders and other shrubs would appear on the surface and finally the forest would close in again.

The fact that the original course of the stream had been obstructed by even a weak dam would tend to cause accumulations of drift material upon the obstructed area in time of floods, and eventually this might form such a check to the drainage that the water level might be raised faster than the vegetation could build up the surface. In such a case the tree growth would be destroyed, and again the area would be covered by water and marsh vegetation, to go through the cycles as before.

In undisturbed natural conditions it is probable that the beavers would occupy a favorable site again and again as the surface of the deposit was built up and their favorite food plants re-established themselves within reach from the place where a dam could be maintained, and in at least two cases which have come to the writer's notice such dams as these have been found in cutting into peat deposits. The first of these was cut through in draining a peat bog in Sec. 2, in Arcada township, Gratiot county, where the dam was buried under about three feet of peat and seemed to be about three feet high. A case of recent reoccupation of an old dam site by a colony of beavers was observed by the writer in the Northern Peninsula, where a very old dam had been rebuilt



Beaver Meadow near Negaunee, Mich. Photo. by Prof. R. H. Pettit, M. A. C.

U of M

within the present year (1906), flooding about 50 acres of Spruce and Tamarack woods.

This dam was located in section 2, T. 49 N., R. 30 W., and was about 4 feet high in the channel of the stream which was closed by it, so that the water level was raised to that extent. The outside of the dam was a tangled mass of brush, sticks and pieces of wood both freshly cut and in all stages of decay, the animals evidently using whatever material they found near the place. The top of the dam was about a foot wide and had a number of small stones placed irregularly upon it, and the water side of the structure was heavily plastered with mud.

The dam was nearly water tight, only a small amount of water running under or through it, the greater part of that which escaped from the pond was going over the ends, which were slightly lower than the middle, or over the long side wing, built to increase the height of the water by the former tenants of the dam, and repaired by the present generation. The main structure was strong enough to bear the weight of a heavy man without yielding. The dam was built across the brook where the valley was divided by a slight elevation, and after the main part was done, the builders found it necessary to construct a long wing from the elevation across a marshy place to the other wall of the valley. This wing was from 1 to 2 feet high and about 200 feet long, and the old structure completely overgrown by shrubs and other plants, was visible, having simply been repaired in the broken places and raised in the low ones, from the pond side, by the use of small sticks and mud. The repair work was apparently very frail although fairly efficient. An interesting feature of the main dam was the fact that the arc curved irregularly down the stream. Down the same valley and extending nearly up to the dam described was a broad flat swampy area covered with shrubs and sedges, with a few scattered small trees. At the lower end of this was another ancient dam completely overgrown but easily traced as a sharp ridge across the narrow part of the valley.

Since beavers have been protected by the game laws their dams are becoming common in the wilder parts of the state and around Trout Lake Junction and other places in the Northern Peninsula, the flooding of timber lands and the destruction of trees upon them as well as the interference with railroads is reported as caused by the disturbance of the established drainage by these animals.

In draining the extensive bog at Capac, near the outlet end, or the south end of the marsh, beaver dams were cut through in making the ditches which had in the uppermost 4 feet, a second 10 feet and a third 12 feet of peat over the top, while the section of the bog in the ditches, was formed of successive and superposed layers of vegetable débris showing that several times forests had been succeeded by grass or sedge marshes. In its final stage this deposit was a Cedar and Tamarack swamp, with practically no natural outlet, the water which fell upon it either draining by seepage to the Belle river or evaporating from the surface.

At present the surface of this deposit is bare of tree growth having been denuded by fire and cutting, and while both seedling poplars and certain types of bog plants are present, the most abundant plant when visited was a species of *Polytrichum*, a moss which is usually found in bogs where the surface is very dry, and which indicates the end of peat building.

In either of the cases mentioned the resulting deposits of peat would, upon careful analysis, show a definite stratification, the strata repeating themselves in an order which would give a history of the deposit, with the remains of the more completely preserved plants identifiable. In such a deposit, at the bottom, might be found the roots and stumps of trees, above which the remains of water plants would be present to some thickness, then a mass of fibrous remains of the sedge and grasses, and possibly then the débris of mosses and shrubs, and, (showing the end of the cycle) roots, trunks and other tree débris. At Capac several strata containing tree remains were seen as noted above, but the opportunity was not offered to make a more detailed study. Where such formations of peat are found they show conclusively that the conditions under which the deposits have been formed have not been constant, but have varied, and in a definite order.

### *Conclusion.*

The foregoing discussion makes it evident that in the Southern Peninsula of Michigan, peat is chiefly formed by plants which grow below or very near the water level, aquatic plants in connection with sedges, and other grass-like plant; *Sphagnum* does not appear until late in the history of the formation, if at all, and develops only shallow, superficial layers of peat and usually grows best in association with certain shrubs, which may become prominent before the *Sphagnum* appears, and which may also reduce its effectiveness in peat forming by developing dense shade.

The ecological factors controlling the succession of plants, which by their growth and decay, under the necessary conditions, form peat in the area under consideration have been indicated, but may be summed up as follows:

(The effects of these factors on the form of organs, i. e., adaptations, is not here considered.)

Light: That which may be considered of first importance, since a wet habitat is assumed, is the light factor, because this limits the development of peat deposits through limiting the growth of plants, both below and above the water level.

Plants which make abundant vegetative growth in northern regions must have full light, and this is not obtainable in the deeper water in depressions, or in the dense shade of other species. Direct deposition by living plants therefore is limited by the depth of water through which sufficient light may penetrate to induce vigorous plant growth, or to develop such species of plants as send leaves to the surface through earlier stages of growth, before their leaves reach the surface, and by the amount of shade in which peat-forming species can develop. The water of many lakes in the northern part of the state, while free from sediments, is dark colored from dissolved organic matter, and in such lakes there is little vegetation to be found.

Soil: A second group of factors of importance are those termed the edaphic or soil factors. Both the physical and chemical characters of the substratum in which the underground parts of plants grow are important in determining their distribution, and in many cases control the type of vegetation in a given area, or account for the presence or absence of certain types.

It seems probable, from the present state of our knowledge, that many species of the important peat-forming aquatic plants are greatly dependent upon the mechanical structure, the compactness, and the penetrability for the roots of plants, soil-water, etc., as well as the chemical composition of the soil in which they grow, and it may be demonstrated that both species and individuals are much more numerous where there are beds of loose, finely divided material, rich in plant food than where the substratum is compact, hard and poor. This is in part due to the requirements of many species for abundant food, and in part to the greater ease with which the stems and roots penetrate the less compact soils; and as the stems, or rhizomes, of a large number of such plants are propagating organs, a favorable soil for the growth of these, favors the dispersal of the species over the bottom of a lake.

Temperature: Heat is a third factor of importance, and its absence tends to reduce the number of species and number and the size of individuals, therefore in the southern part of the state many more species are found in the aquatic societies than in the northern, and these are therefore more efficient in building up peat south than north, so that it may be safely assumed that the filling of lakes goes on more slowly, and is caused by fewer plant species in the north than in the south.

The facts that the mean temperature of the air is lower during the summer season, and the periods of maximum temperature are shorter and fewer, cause decreased evaporation from wet soil and from water surfaces and render these more stable as to the water level at the north. This, because of the more uniform temperature, does not fluctuate, and changes in plant associations take place more slowly and with less frequency, north than south. The result is obvious in checking the advance of the shoreward associations to regions of high water level, since they chiefly advance in periods of low water, and in the less rapid upbuilding of the surface.

The lower soil and water temperatures at the north also tend to increase the physiological dryness of the soil in the habitat under discussion, and its physical dryness, when once dry, because the greater viscosity of water at low temperatures retards percolation and thus make it increasingly difficult for species to establish themselves in it, going from south to north.

The daily fluctuations in temperature of the air in depressions, because of lack of circulation during the day, and of the downward flow of cold air during the night, is much greater than that upon the surrounding higher lands. The minimum temperature in many of these reaches the freezing point during every month in the growing season, even in the southern part of the Southern Peninsula and this fact alone affects the composition of the associations above the sedge zone to a very considerable extent, keeping out southern plants which would otherwise establish themselves. The species near the open water of partly filled lakes or growing in it, on the other hand, probably are favored by an even temperature, and a somewhat prolonged growing season.

Air: The difficulty of getting a sufficient supply of air from soil saturated with water or from water directly, excludes from the plant associations concerned in peat formation, all plants which do not have special adaptations or cannot develop them, for the purpose of getting oxygen under the conditions presented. This limits the number of species which grow in the water, and with roots below the water level, to a few, and reduces the competition between types and species to a minimum, thus favoring good development of the types which can live under the conditions. Above the water level this factor still has its influence in excluding species which are deep rooted in favor of those which are shallow rooted, thus again reducing competition and simplifying the associations.

The other important influence of air which may be considered is in its effects as wind. In the wide stretches of open marsh or bog, plants are freely swept by winds both winter and summer, and transpiration is greatly increased thereby, a fact which again influences the composition of the plant associations growing in peat deposits with leaves exposed to the air, those which are not protected against excessive transpiration being excluded in favor of those which are, and again the composition of the associations may be simplified in number of species by this factor.

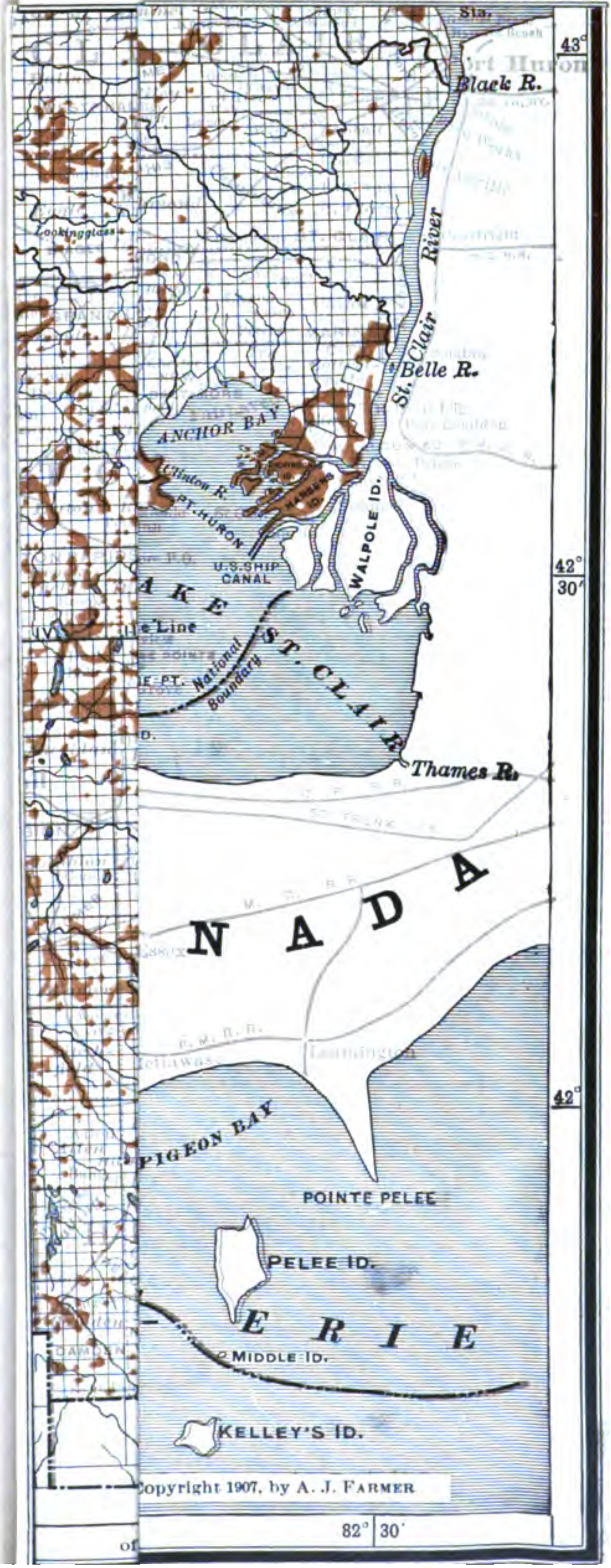
The wind, on either hand, has a profound influence in aiding in the distribution of most aquatic plants along the shores of the bodies of water in which they grow and a great many of the species of this type are provided with adaptations which insure the transportation of propagating buds, fruits and seeds from one point to another by wind and currents created by winds, and the leeward side, which is frequently the eastward one, of any body of water in which plants are growing will give numbers of illustrations of the importance of this factor.

Plants: After the length to which the subject has already been discussed it is scarcely necessary to do more than mention that the influence of most species of plants upon some of those with which they are associated is important, in a greater or less degree, according to the closeness of the association and the extent to which they have the same or similar requirements, since each species exerts some influence upon all others with which it competes for light, air, soil and water. By such competition species are eliminated from plant societies more frequently than by any other factor.

Of even more importance in affecting the composition of plant associations, and the places which these shall occupy is the influence which plants exert upon their habitat, by affecting drainage conditions as pointed out above and by concentrating mineral and other beneficial and noxious substances near the surface of the soil by their growth and decay. Each bog plant society so modifies its habitat, that sooner or later it can no longer hold it in competition with more aggressive associations and gives way before them. This modification proceeds until the rate of change produced by the plants about balances the change caused by ordinary weathering and decay, but it is of the greatest importance in considering the relations of the type of plant societies which have been under consideration.

The conclusions reached in this discussion, if valid for the region covered by the investigation, should have a much broader application than is given them, and as is shown in another paper, they have proven valid, when applied to the conditions existing in the more northern region of the Northern Peninsula of Michigan and should do so for any other.

ANNUAL REPORT FOR 1906. PLATE XVI.



Copyright 1907, by A. J. Farmer

an
sh
w
su
p
p
fo
ti

o

## SELECT BIBLIOGRAPHY.

So many comprehensive lists of works relating to peat, its formation, and especially its utilization have been compiled and issued within a short time, that it has not been thought necessary to add another, which would perforce, largely duplicate those already in existence, and only such titles are here listed as have been especially cited or consulted in the preparation of this paper, or which seemed definitely to pertain to the problems involved in it, or to the distribution of peat bogs and peat-forming plants in the region in which most of the work of the investigation has been carried on.

The annotations are intended to call attention to some especial features of the works to which they are appended.

Adams, C. C.
An Ecological Survey in Northern Michigan.
Ann. Rept. Mich. Bd. of Geol. Surv., 1905. Lansing, 1906.
Adams, C. C.
The Post Glacial dispersal of the North American Biota.
Biological Bull. IX, 1. 1905.
Atkinson, G. F.
Elementary Botany. New York, 1898.
Beach, A.
Peat Fuel. Inst. Civ. Eng. Proc. 147. 1900-1.
Beal, W. J.
Michigan Flora. Rept. Mich. Acad. Sci. V. Lansing, 1904.
Bordollo, J.
Peat Fuel Production. Engineer XLIII. Chicago, 1906.
Briquettes as Fuel in Foreign Countries. Special Consular Repts. XXVI. Washington, 1903.
(Discusses the manufacture and use of peat and other briquetted fuels in Europe.)
Brown, F. B. H.
Plant Societies of the Bayou at Ypsilanti, Michigan.
Bot. Gaz. XL. Chicago, 1905.
Brown, R.
Our Earth and Its Story. London, 1887.
Burns, G. P.
Formation of Peat in Dead Lake. Rept. Mich. Acad. Sci. VI. Lansing, 1904.
Carter, W. E. H.
Peat Fuel, its Manufacture and Uses. Rept. Ont. Bur. Mines for 1903. Toronto, 1904.
(Full Account of Canadian Conditions and Methods of Peat Manufacture.)

Chamberlin, T. C.
Native Vegetation of Wisconsin. Geol. Surv. Wis. II. Madison, 1877.
Cole, L. J.
The St. Clair Delta. Geol. Surv. Mich. IX, Pt. 1. Lansing, 1903.
Coulter J. M.
Plants. Chicago, 1900.
Coulter, S. M.
An Ecological Comparison of Some Typical Swamp Areas.
Rept. Mo. Bot. Gard. XV. St. Louis, 1904.
Cowles, H. C.
The Physiographic Ecology of Chicago and Vicinity.
Bot. Gaz. XXXI. Chicago, 1902.
Cowles, H. C.
The Physiographic Ecology of Northern Michigan.
Science, XII. New York, 1900.
Clark, H. L.
Notes on the Flora of Eaton County, Michigan. Rept. Mich. Acad. Sci. III. Lansing, 1902.
Dana, J. D.
Text Book of Geology. 5th Ed. New York, 1897.
Dana, S. L.
Muck Manual. 1842.
Daniels, F. P.
Ecology of the Flora of Sturgis, Michigan, and Vicinity.
Rept. Mich. Acad. Sci. IV. Lansing, 1904.
Daniels, F. P.
The Flora of the Vicinity of Manistee, Michigan. Rept. Mich. Acad. Sci. Lansing, 1904.
Darwin, C.
Naturalist's Voyage Around the World. New York, 1888.
Davis, C. A.
Contributions to the Knowledge of the Flora of Tuscola County, Michigan. Rept. Mich. Acad. Sci. I. Lansing, 1900. Bot. Gaz. XXV. Chicago, 1898.
Davis, C. A.
A Contribution to the Natural History of Marl. Jour. Geol. VIII, Chicago, 1901.
A Second Contribution to the Natural History of Marl.
Jour. Geol. VIII, Chicago, 1901.
The Natural History of Marl. Geol. Surv. Mich. VIII. Lansing, 1903.
Davis, C. A.
The Flora of Michigan Lakes. Rept. Mich. Acad. Sci. I. Lansing, 1900.
Desor, E.
La Foret Vierge. Paris, 1879.
Desor, E.
In Foster & Whitney's Report on Geol. of Lake Superior Land District, Part 2. 1851.

Eiseln, J. C.
Handbuch, order....anleitung zur......Kentniss des Torfwesens, Berlin, 1802.
Ells, R. W.
Peat Industry of Canada. Rept. Ont. Bur. of Mines. II. Toronto, 1893.
Früh, J. and Schroeter, C.
Die Moore der Schweiz, mit Berücksichtigung der Gesamten Moorfrage. Beitr. Geol. Schweiz, Goetech. Ser. III. Bern, 1904. (A very comprehensive treatise on the peat deposits of Switzerland, and a discussion of the general distribution of peat deposits over the earth. Has a very extensive bibliography.)
Fruh, I.
Torf und Dopplerit. 1883.
Geike, A.
Class Book of Geology. London, 1890.
Harrington, M. W.
Bull. C., U. S. Weather Bureau. Washington.
Hill, E. J.
Notes on the Flora of the Lake Superior Region. Bot. Gaz. XV. Chicago, 1890.
Hill, E. J.
The Menominee Iron Region and its Flora. Bot. Gaz. IX. Chicago, 1884.
Holmes, J. A.
Preliminary Report on the Operations of the Fuel-Testing Plant of the U. S. Geological Survey at St. Louis, Mo. U. S. G. S. No. 290. Washington, 1906.
(Reports peat tests, and has a considerable bibliography on the technology of peat.)
Horton, R. E.
In Water Resources of the Lower Peninsula of Michigan.
W. S. & I. Papers, U. S. G. S., No. 30. Washington, 1899.
Hubbard, Bela.
Memoirs of Half a Century. New York, 1883.
Jefferson, M. S. W.
Rainfall of the Lake Country for the last Twenty-Five Years.
Rept. Mich. Acad. Sci. VIII. Lansing, 1906.
Johnson, S. W.
Peat and Its Uses. New York, 1866.
Jukes-Brown, A. J.
Handbook of Physical Geography. 1892.
Kearney, T. H.
Report on the Botanical Survey of the Great Dismal Swamp Region. Cont. U. S. Nat. Herb. VI. 6. Washington, 1901.
Kedzie, R. C.
Michigan Soils. Mich. Agric. Exp. Sta. Bull. 99. Lansing, 1893.
Koller, T.
Die Torfindustrie. Wein, 1898.
Kümmel, H. B.
The Peat Deposits of New Jersey. Econ. Geol. and Am. Geologist, II, 1, 1907.

Lane, A. C.
Peat. Ann. Rept. Mich. Bd. Geol. Surv. 1902, 1903, 1904. Lansing, 1905.
Lane, A. C.
Rept. Mich. Geol. Surv. VII, Pt. 2. Lansing, 1900.
Lane, A. C.
Water Resources of the Lower Peninsula of Michigan.
W. S. & I. Papers, U. S. G. S., No. 30. Washington, 1899.
Leavitt, T. H.
Facts About Peat. Boston, 1867. Reprinted, Boston. 1904.
LeConte, J.
Elements of Geology. New York, 1896.
Lesquereux, L.
Torfbildung im grossen Dismal Swamp.
Zeitschr. der deutsch. Geol. Gesellsch. IV. 1852.
Lesquereux, L.
Origin of Coal. Ann. Rept. Penn. Geol. Surv. 1885.
Leverett, F.
Review of the Glacial Geology of the Southern Peninsula of Michigan. Rept. Mich. Acad. Sci. VI. Lansing, 1904.
Leverett, F.
The Illinois Glacial Lobe. Monograph XXXVII, U. S. G. S. Washington, 1899.
Leverett, F.
Glacial Formations and Drainage Features of the Erie-Ohio Basins. Monograph XLI, U. S. G. S. Washington, 1902.
Livingston, B. E.
The Distribution of Plant Societies of Kent County, Michigan. Ann. Rept. Mich. Bd. Geol. Surv. 1901. Lansing, 1903.
Livingston, B. E.
Physical Properties of Bog Water. Bot. Gaz. XXXVII. Chicago, 1904.
Livingston, B. E.
The Relation of Soils to Natural Vegetation in Roscommon and Crawford Counties, Michigan. Ann. Rept. Mich. Bd. Geol. Surv. 1903. Lansing, 1905.
Livingston, B. E.
The Soils and Vegetational Possibilities of the Michigan Forestry Reserve. Rept. Mich. Forestry Comm. for 1892. Lansing, 1903.
MacFarlane, T.
Moss Manure. Bull. 97. Lab. Inland Rev. Dept. of Canada, Ottawa, 1904.
MacMillan, C.
On the Occurrence of Sphagnum Atolls in Central Minnesota. Geol. and Nat. Hist. Surv. of Minn. Bull. 9. Pt. 1. Minneapolis, 1894.
MacMillan, C.
On the Formation of Circular Muskeag in Tamarack Swamps.
Bull. Torr. Bot. Club. XXIII. New York, 1896.

Michigan State Board of Agriculture Reports.
Peat Analysis '65.
Peat Deposits of Wayne County, '55.
Peat Deposits of Monroe County, '55.
Peat Deposits of Michigan, '53.
Peat as a Fertilizer, '78.
Peat vs. Muck, '86.
Peat Swamps After Drainage, '86.
Peat Swamps, Improvement of, '86.

Mills, W. M.
A Physiographic and Ecological Study of the Lake Eagle Region, Ind. Ann Rept. Dept. Geol. & Nat. Resources of Ind. XXVIII. Indianapolis, 1905.

Morgan, L. H.
The American Beaver and His Works. 1868.

Parmelee, C. W. & MacCourt, W. E.
A Report on the Peat Deposits of Northern New Jersey.
Ann. Rept. State Geologist of N. J. for 1905. Trenton, 1906.
(Has many analyses and a bibliography.)

Parsons, A. L.
Peat, Its Formation, Uses and Occurrence in New York.
Ann. Rept. of the State Geologist XXIII. Ann Rept. State Museum, LVII. Albany, 1904. (Has many analyses and a bibliography.)

Pennington, L. H.
Plant Distribution at Mud Lake (Washtenaw county, Mich.)
Rept. Mich. Acad. Sci. VIII. Lansing, 1906.

Pettee, E. E.
Plant Distribution in a Small Bog. Rept. Mich. Acad. Sci. VII. Lansing, 1905.

Pieters, A. J.
Plants of Lake St. Clair. Bull. Mich. Fish Comm. II. Lansing, 1904.

Pond, R. H.
Influence of Soils on the Growth of Aquatic Plants.
Rept. U. S. Fish Comm. 1903. Washington, 1905.

Reed, H. S.
The Ecology of a Glacial Lake. Rept. Mich. Acad. Sci. III. Lansing, 1902. Bot. Gaz. XXXV, Chicago, 1902.

Ries, H.
Uses of Peat and Its Occurrence in New York.
Ann. Rept. State Geologist XXI. Albany, 1903. (Has analyses and bibliography.)

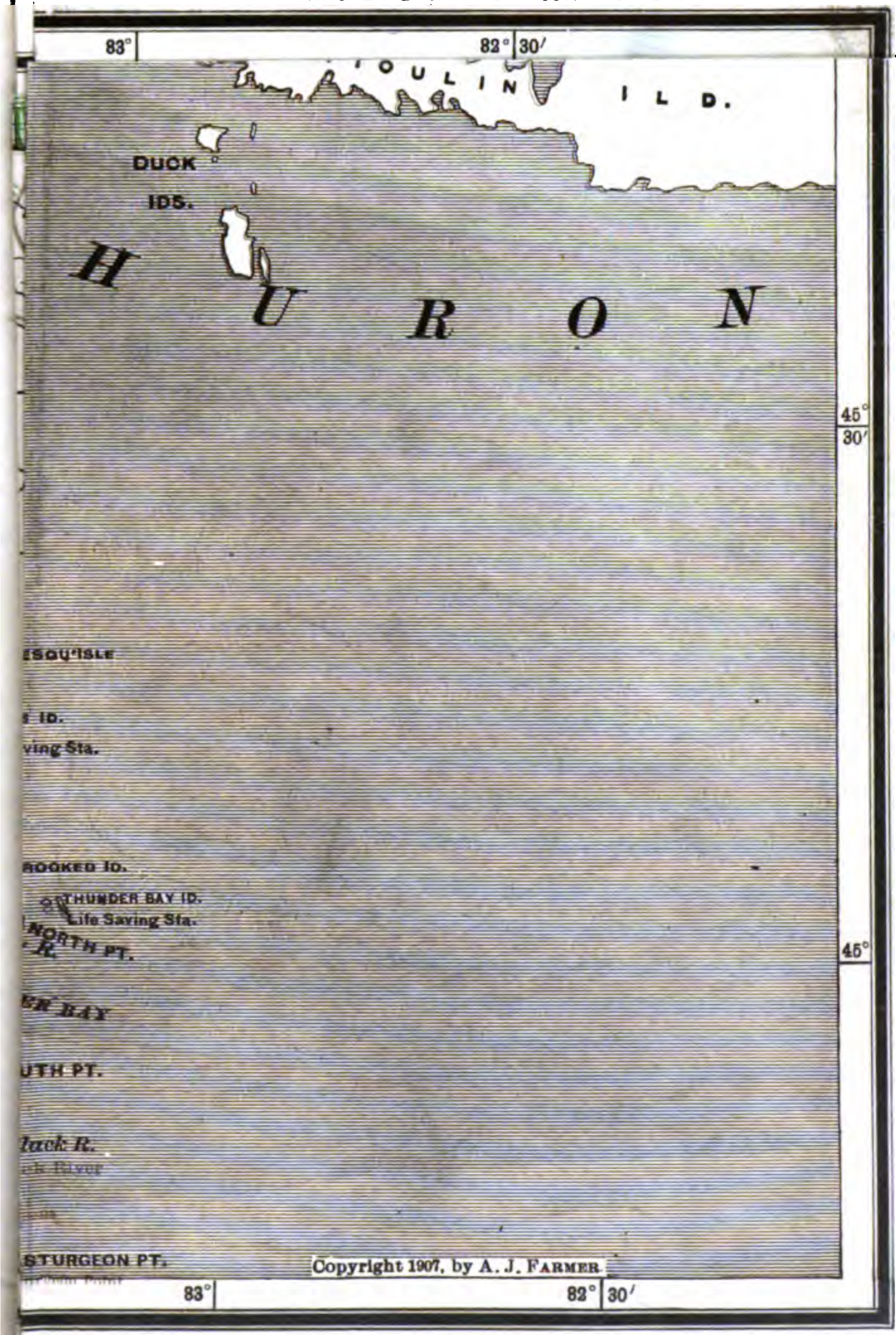
Russell, I. C.
A Geological Reconnaisance along the North Shore of Lakes Huron and Michigan. Ann. Rept. Mich. Bd. Geol. Surv., 1904. Lansing, 1905.

Russell, I. C.
The Menominee Region. Ann. Rept. Mich. Bd. Geol. Surv. 1906. Lansing, 1907.

Schimper, A. F. W.
Plant Geography on a Physiological Basis. Trans. by Fisher. Oxford, 1903.
Scott, W. B.
Introduction to Geology. New York, 1897.
Shaler, N. S.
Fluviatile Swamps of New England. Am. Jour., Sci. III. Ser. XXXIII, 1887.
Shaler, N. S.
Fresh Water Morasses of the United States. Ann. Rept. U. S. G. S., X, Pt. 1. Washington, 1890.
Shaler, N. S.
Origin, Distribution and Commercial Value of Peat Deposits. Ann. Rept. U. S. G. S., XVI, Pt. IV. Washington, 1895.
Shaler, N. S.
Peat and Swamp Soils. Ann Rept. U. S. G. S. XII. Washington, 1891.
Shaler, N. S.
Swamps of the United States. Science VII. 1886.
Sherzer, W. H.
Geological Report on Monroe county, Michigan. Rept. Mich. Geol. Surv. VII, Pt. 1. Lansing, 1900.
Smyth, B. B.
The Closing of Michigan Glacial Lakes.
Trans. Kansas Acad. Sci. XV., Topeka, 1898.
Towar, J. D.
Mich. Agric. College Exp. Sta. Bull. 181. Lansing, 1900.
Transeau, E. N.
The Bogs and Bog Flora of the Huron River Valley. Bot. Gaz. XL, XLI. Chicago, 1906.
Transeau, E. N.
Climatic Centers and Centers of Plant Distribution.
Rept. Mich. Acad. Sci. VII. Lansing, 1905.
Transeau, E. N.
Forest Centers of Eastern North America. Am. Nat. XXXIX. Boston, 1905.
Transeau, E. N.
On the Geographic Distribution and Ecological Relations of the Bog Plant Societies of Northern North America. Bot. Gaz. XXXVI. Chicago, 1903.
United States Department of Agriculture, Bureau of Soils.
Soil Survey of the Alma Area, Michigan, Washington, 1905.
Soil Survey of the Munising Area, Michigan, Washington, 1905.
Soil Survey of the Owosso Area, Michigan, Washington, 1905.
Soil Survey of the Pontiac Area, Michigan, Washington, 1904.
Soil Survey of the Saginaw Area, Michigan, Washington, 1905.
(These surveys all have maps showing the distribution of the soil types and swamps for the given areas.)

United States Consular Reports.
Nos. 45, 49, 182, 224, 230, 248, 252, 256, 261, 266, 268, 271, 275, 279, 281, 285, 286, 287, 291, 292, 296, 297. (These numbers contain more or less extended notes regarding peat utilization .in foreign countries.)
Utilization of Peat on a Large Scale.
Engineering, May 12, 1905.
Warrington, R.
Physical Properties of Soils. 1900.
Weld, L. H.
A Peat Bog and Morainal Lake. Bot. Gaz. XXXVII. Chicago, 1904.
Wheeler, W. H.
The Fens of Lincolnshire. 2nd Ed. 1896.
Whitford, H. N.
The Genetic Development of the Forests of Northern Michigan. Bot. Gaz. XXXI. Chicago, 1901.
Winchell, A.
Geological Survey of Michigan for 1860. Lansing, 1861.
Winchell, A.
In Tackabury's Atlas of the State of Michigan. 2nd Ed. 1884.
Also in Proceedings A. A. A. S. Troy meeting, 1870.
Winchell, N. H.
Glacial Lakes of Minnesota.
Geol. Soc. of America. Bull XII.

ANNUAL REPORT FOR 1906. PLATE XVII.



Copyright 1907, by A. J. Farmer.

# PART II.

THE

# FORMATION, CHARACTER AND DISTRIBUTION OF PEAT BOGS

IN THE

# NORTHERN PENINSULA OF MICHIGAN

BY

CHARLES A. DAVIS

## *Introduction and Acknowledgments.*

On July 1st, 1905, the writer, acting under instructions received from A. C. Lane, State Geologist, a few weeks before, left Ann Arbor for Bay City, where a brief study was made of the conditions existing along the shore of Saginaw Bay a few miles north of the city, upon some interesting stages of the formation of a minor lake from a portion of the Bay, which is being cut off from the main body by bars and a long spit, built by wave and current action aided by the growth of various plants. The lake thus formed is also being filled by the combined action of silt and the growth of water and shore plants.

This work was greatly facilitated by Mr. G. M. Bradford of Bay City, who pointed out favorable localities for study, and in other ways extended most hearty cooperation.

On July 4th Bay City was left for Frankfort, en route for Menominee, at which place the party of Professor I. C. Russell was to be joined. Having to wait a half day for the ferry boat across to Menominee, the time was spent in the study of the relation of the vegetation to the water level along the shore of Lake Michigan and upon the high bluffs bordering the lake on the south side of the mouth of the river.

A series of very interesting facts regarding the air currents blowing from the lake, upon and around the bluffs was noted as the day was unusually favorable for making such observations. The probable bearing of these facts upon the distribution of the plants upon the bluffs is of considerable ecological interest, but the discussion of them is not germane to the subject matter in hand, so they will not be recorded here, but will form the basis of a later paper.

Menominee was reached late in the evening of July 5th and on the following day I joined Professor Russell in camp on the banks of the Menominee river, a few miles north of the city. The objects of a visit to this section of the state were several, so defined in the letters of Mr. Lane and in conversations which we had upon the subject, and these finally settled themselves in the following order.

(1.) A continuation of the study of the development and characteristics of peat bogs, begun in the Southern Peninsula two years before, to determine, if possible, whether the principles worked out in that portion of the state were applicable throughout.

(2.) An ecological study of bogs and marshes to determine if the plants concerned in the formation of the peat were the same as those of the Southern Peninsula and also whether they followed the same succession in appearing upon the surface of the bogs, and in the swamps.

(3.) To find out the depth, degree of decomposition and the extent of the peat deposits visited, with a view to ultimate commercial utilization.

(4.) To study the distribution of the plants and plant societies which were found, to find out the zonal affinities of the flora, and in this way to gather data upon which to base a judgment as to the character and adaptability of the soil and climate to various branches of agriculture.

(5.) To examine uncut and cut-over timber land with a view to their future economic development, either for agriculture or forestry.

(6.) To note the occurrence, range and distribution of as many species of plants as it was possible to do in connection with other work.

From the outset, according to instructions, it was understood that the work which had been assigned to me was to be subordinate to that of Prof. Russell, so long as I was in his party, and that it was not in any way to hamper him nor to interfere with the general plan of his work. As the result of this understanding, the district covered by the investigation was limited, while I was with him, to that assigned to Prof. Russell.

This district, however, proved to be of great interest and gave a large number of excellent examples of various types of peat swamps, which more extended studies over wider areas, proved to be fairly representative in character, and in later studies no types were found which did not occur in this district. Aside from this it proved to be quite varied in topography and soils, so that it was possible to secure a large amount of material for the study of the general distribution of plant societies in a part of the state which has been but rarely visited by botanists, and about which little was known concerning the plant life.

The area studied while with Prof. Russell lies in the southwestern corner of the Northern Peninsula, and includes a greater part of Menominee county, and those parts of Dickinson and Iron counties which lie south of the north line of Township 42 N., and east of Range 35 W., a district which includes practically all of the settled portions of these three counties, and lies nearly all within the valley of the Menominee river, since that part of Menominee county which is drained by the Cedar river was not usually visited, although it was at times touched here and there.[1]

The excellent photographs, except those accredited to others, from which the plates accompanying this paper have been prepared, were made by Prof. I. C. Russell whose rare skill and trained judgment in selecting subjects and times for photographing, were always at the service of the writer, during a greater part of the field work on which this paper was based. The films were furnished and developed and prints were furnished by the U. S. Geological Survey, co-operating with the Michigan survey.

The writer would also acknowledge in this place, his appreciation of the unfailing patience and courtesy of Prof. Russell, who furthered in every way in his power, the special investigation of the writer, and by his kindly interest and friendly criticism, did much to increase the value of the present paper, and it is a matter of profound regret that he did not live to see the completed work.

Acknowledgment is also made in this place of the obligations of the writer to Mr. Alfred C. Lane, State Geologist, for his constant and most helpful co-operation in securing material, pointing out favorable places for study, and literature relating to the region, as well as for the time spent with the writer in the field, and in other ways, while assisting in the collection of data for this work.

---

[1] For a detailed account of this district the reader is referred to the paper by Prof. Russell in another section of this volume.

To Mr. Frank Leverett, of the U. S. Geological Survey, the writer would express his thanks for his kindness and assistance, during the few days spent with him, in the region between Newberry and Grand Marias.

The studies made in the Huron Mountains in 1906 were made possible by the kindness of Mr. Cyrus Bentley of Chicago, who extended to the writer the hospitality of his camp in the heart of this interesting region, and gave every facility possible for its examination. Thanks are due to him also for the illustrations from the region, Plates XXVIII A & B.

### *Itinerary and Area Studied.*

The investigation of this region was carried on in somewhat the following manner. The party, consisting of Prof. Russell, a camp keeper and cook, and myself, would fix upon a camping place from which the country around would be worked over in such a manner as the requirements of the geological work demanded, and, while this was being done, my notes and studies were made. The roads traversed were so frequently cut through standing forests, and undrained swamps, that it was not necessary to go far from them to get satisfactory opportunities to study the flora, and as a general thing much of the material gathered was picked up while the writer was accompanying Prof. Russell in his work, and it was rather infrequently the case that it was necessary to delay him or to leave him to take time for independent work, although this was at times done.

The time for which the camp was located in one place was varied from a single night to nearly a week, this depending upon the character of the country and the quality and number of the roads which could be profitably reached from the point where the camp was placed. In all, 17 camps were made, in the 8 weeks during which I was with the party, and some of these camping places furnished most important data bearing upon the problems under investigation, and the others furnished most interesting problems in themselves, some of which still remain unsolved.

The study of the swamps and the plant societies of the uplands of this area was of such interest that it was deemed best to continue it to the limit of Prof. Russell's journey northward, especially as it was known that in the vicinity of Crystal Falls there were numerous small lakes, about which it seemed probable that a number of phases of swamp development would be found, which had not been seen so far to the north by the writer. This expectation was fully realized, and it was not until Aug. 26 that I finally left Prof. Russell in the last camp he made, at Iron River, and acting under advices recently received from Mr. Lane, I went to Bessemer by rail to make comparative studies of an extensive tract of "typical peat bog" which lies some 8 miles to the north of that city.

Leaving Bessemer on the 30th of August, I joined Mr. Lane at Houghton on the 31st and made further comparative studies of swamps and bogs in that region, both to the south of that city, in the vicinity of the Winona mine, and to the north, in various places.

On the 5th of September, in accordance with a modification of the original tentative plan which was made early in the season, Marquette was visited and 3 days were spent in studying the bogs and marshes along the shores of Lake Superior near that city, especially those formed behind dune lines, a phase of peat formation which I had not previously been able to carefully investigate. In each of these three regions, some attention was given to the plant societies inhabiting other types of locality than the bogs, and some valuable matter pertaining to the distribution of some of the more critical species of plants was obtained.

The final stage of the investigation was begun at Newberry, Luce county, on the 9th of September, when I joined Mr. Frank Leverett of the U. S. Geological Survey, and spent nearly a week with him in the region lying to the north and west of Newberry, and extending to the shore of Lake Superior. This region was traversed partly by driving, but chiefly by walking, and not only were a number of swamps and bogs visited, but a fine opportunity was afforded to examine a number of types of forest, and to observe the plants in the duny littoral region of Lake Superior, between the mouth of Big Two Hearted river and Grand Marais. A very short time was spent upon the shore of Grand Sable Lake and on the "Sable Banks" as the region to the west of Grand Marais is called, and a few notes upon the vegetation in that vicinity were made.

The return trip to Newberry was made in a single day and little time was available for detailed work, but the region was one of the most primitive visited, and a careful examination of it would probably lead to some very interesting results, as the hardwood forests are extensive and dense and at present very little disturbed.

A brief examination of the extensive peaty deposits in the vicinity of Newberry, yielded very little that was new, but the time available for the purpose was very short and it may be possible that a careful survey would show more that is of interest.

My return to Ann Arbor was made by the way of Trout Lake Junction and Manistique. At the former place opportunity was afforded by poor railroad connections to examine a series of swamps situated a short distance from the Junction, which had been formed between the sand ridge of the old shore line of one of the high level glacial lakes, Lake Algonquin. These swamps have been more or less frequently visited by fires and show a variety of stages of development of the surface flora.

A day was spent at Manistique in making an examination of the plant societies present upon the shores of Lake Michigan, west of Manistique and in studying the development of peat bogs between the sand dune ridges which were nearest the shore of the lake, as well as the stages by which the surface of these ridges became covered by a fixed plant population.

From Manistique, Lake Michigan was crossed to Frankfort, and again a part of a day was spent in the study of the vegetation upon the bluffs, for the sake of comparing the dominant types of herbs during the fall season with those which had been noted at previous visits to the same locality. My return to Ann Arbor was made the same day—September the 18th.

### *Methods of Work on Peat.*

1. The plan of work adopted for the study of the peat deposits of this region was essentially that which had been used with good results in the work done in the Southern Peninsula, namely to visit as many of such deposits as possible, and examine them as thoroughly as the time at my disposal would permit: (1.) Making soundings to determine the depth and character of the peat: (2.) Noting the plants growing upon the surface of the deposit: (3.) Studying the relation of these plants to the water level, to the peat and to each other: (4.) Making notes upon the surrounding flora whenever this was possible. The time at my disposal was so limited and the difficulties of traveling through the swamps were so great that it was entirely impossible to make estimates as to the area of any of the deposits covered, nor did this seem desirable in most cases.

In order to compare the genetic development of these deposits with those of the southern part of the state, and to determine the plants most important in the formation of peat it was soon found that here, as there, that it was necessary to make studies along the margins of the ponds and lakes, or in the open swamps, since the tree covered areas represented practically the end of the cycle, that is, they were the final or climax stages in the history of the formation of the peat, and little bearing upon the problem of its development could be learned from them.

Around the open lakes, however, often a series of stages was found giving quite completely the history of the bog from the time it appeared above the surface of the water, just as has already been stated in the paper which relates to the Southern Peninsula, and it was in these open swamps that a very considerable part of my time was spent, making descriptions of the conditions existing in them.

2. On other problems. The extent of the territory visited and the brief time which could be given to any locality made the exact and detailed study and mapping the areas of any size, even in a very general way, impracticable if not impossible. After a good deal of consideration it was decided to see as much of the district as possible, and to learn what the most important types of locality and their attendant plant associations were, and then by gathering full data in a good many places where these types occurred, work out the details of the chief plant associations.

In addition to these descriptions of average conditions, all species of plants, which were only seen a few times, or but once, were recorded and notes made on their place of occurrence, abundance and habitat, as a matter of record for determining the limits of distribution, and, a considerable number of species hitherto supposed to be confined to the Southern Peninsula were thus noted.

In all cases where there was doubt as to the identity of any species which was found, specimens were collected and pressed for further study, if final determination could not be made without this, and all new records of distribution were confirmed in the same way, but no general collecting was done, because of the amount of time required for properly caring for the specimens in so moist a climate, and the difficulty of transporting the necessary presses and drying papers from camp to camp.

### *Types of Locality Examined.*

The types of locality chosen for comparative study were (1) Swampy areas of all kinds: (2) Clay till ridges, both moraines and drumlins: (3) Sand plains and ridges of a number of kinds, so far as origin goes, such as eskers, sandy moraines, etc.: (4) Outcrops of sedimentary, metamorphic and crystalline rocks: (5) Sand dunes, especially those along the shores of Lake Superior: (6) The waters of lakes and streams: (7) Cut-over lands, especially pine lands.

In making records in these types of locality, the soil, its condition, the amount of moisture and humus, the dominant vegetation, the slope and exposure to winds, the amount of disturbance to which the vegetation had been subjected, etc., were generally taken into account and a full list of all the plants found over a considerable area was made, with notes of abundance and such other items as might help in understanding the association of species as recorded.

### *General Distribution of the Plants of Northern Michigan.*

Making the form of the land surface, or the topography, the basis of classification there were three fairly well characterized districts in the region visited.

The first of these lay relatively near the shores of Lake Michigan and extended from Menominee well north, nearly to the iron region. This was characterized by relatively large areas of flat or slightly rolling plain, with isolated, low, long and narrow, stony clay hills, or short ridges, known as drumlins, scattered over it, either singly or in groups. In the valleys between these there were frequently found irregular, often winding, gravel or sand ridges, called eskers, which were also of no great length, a few miles at the most, and associated with them were sand and gravel knolls and hills, called kames.

Near the shore of Lake Michigan the surface was more sandy and much smoother than it was inland and had several well marked terraces at different levels above the lake, and, in places, practically continuous ridges of sand roughly paralleled with the present lake shore, which mark the shore lines of former levels of the lake and its predecessors.

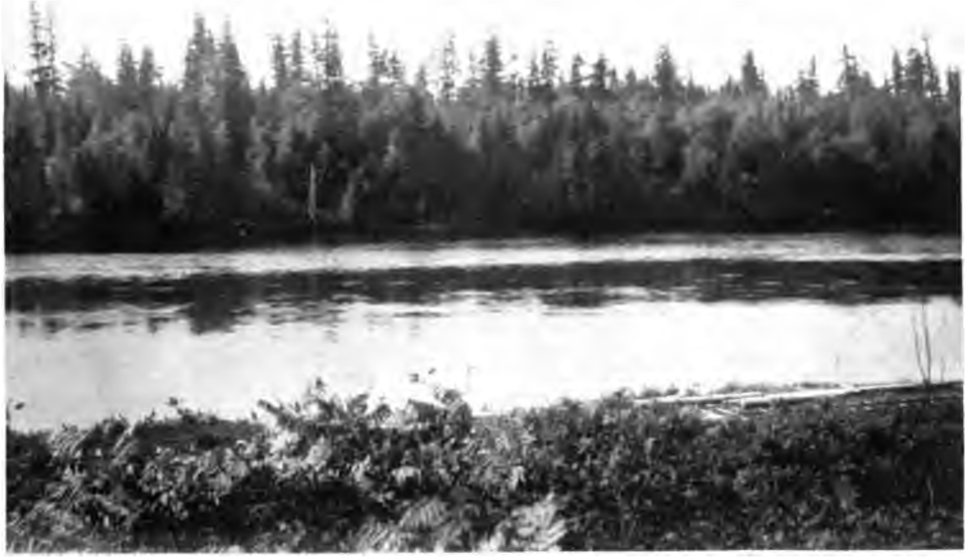
The origin and nature of these types of ridges are fully discussed by Russell[1] for this region, and need no consideration here.

The drumlins were covered originally by heavy forests of mixed broad leaved species, of which the Hard Maple, Beech, Basswood, White and Rock Elms and Ironwood were the most common, with usually a considerable percent of Hemlock and scattering individuals of Balsam and White Spruce and in the northern part of the district, more or less Yellow Birch, which ultimately replaces the Beech entirely in this association a little farther to the north.

Upon gravelly or sandy ridges, whether of the esker, the beach or the

---

[1] Russell, I. C. A Geological Reconnaissance along the North Shore of Lakes Huron and Michigan. Annual Report, Michigan Geological Survey, 1904, pp. 65–95, Lansing, 1905. Also in this Vol., The Menominee Region.



Old White Pine forest with hardwood and lower growing conifers below, near Koss, on Menominee river.
The forest is on the Wisconsin side of the river.

UofM

dune type, and upon sandy stream terraces and sand plains, the forest was formerly almost pure Pine, usually White Pine, but upon the lighter sands, the Norway and Jack Pines often were mixed in considerable abundance, or even formed nearly pure stands of one or the other, or of an even mixture of both species. In some areas along the Menominee river, and in other localities as well, where there was an admixture of clay and sand, or where there was a thin layer of sand over a pebbly clay loam, there were "two storied" forests, the upper story of very tall old White Pines, and the lower one of mixed broad leaved species, with Hemlock, Balsam, White Cedar, and White Spruce, as in the case of the forests of the drumlins. In these mixtures the White Pines tower high above the other species and practically all their branches are above the top of the lower story.

An excellent example of this type is shown in Plate XVIII, an old White Pine forest, with hard wood and lower growing coniferous trees forming the lower story, near Koss, on Menominee river. The forest is on the Wisconsin side of the river.

In this case, and in others as well, there was good White Pine reproduction, showing that the type tends to perpetuate itself.

Examples of these types are rare now, since the Pines have been cut or fires have destroyed them and the areas formerly covered by them are now growing up to Aspen, the large-toothed Poplar, Scarlet Oak, White Birch, and Red or Pin Cherry and to Sweet Fern and Bracken Fern.

The bottoms of the valleys, especially where these were poorly drained, were swamps in which Cedar or Arbor Vitae, Tamarack and Black Spruce were the most abundant tree species, although in some there were Black Ash, White Elm and Yellow Birch, usually associated with the three species first mentioned, and, much more infrequently, without them.

The second type of district, lying to the north and northwest of the first, and merging into it, may be termed the rock ridge type, in which the general surface was rather level or slightly undulating, with the relief in the form of high ridges of rock, these extending as lines of hills for miles across the country, with the flatter areas between them.

In this district the hardwood or broad-leaved type of forest was again found covering the ridges, and often the rock surface was entirely covered by thin soil, upon which, if undisturbed, was supported a fine growth of large trees. In many places, however, the timber had been cut and consequent fires, washings by rains, and denudation by the winds, had entirely removed the soil, so that the rock was quite bare, except in crevices in which grew a few stunted specimens of the more hardy trees such as the Aspen and the White Birch.

The better drained of the flatter areas here, unless sandy, were covered by hardwood forests with a mixture of Hemlock, Balsam, White Spruce and Arbor Vitae, while the terraces of the streams, sand and gravel plains, and the eskers which occurred frequently in the valleys, were formerly covered by White Pine, unless the sand was very light, when the Norway Pine took its place, and more rarely the Jack Pine. As in the former case, the pine forests have been cut, and following the cutting, the ground has been burned over again and again until there is very little Pine now on it, the only trees being the Poplars and other species mentioned in describing cut-over lands above.

In this district, the valleys were often quite extensive and well marked and the bottoms were covered by swamps, in which the same trees mentioned under this type of habitat above, were the characteristic species, and form the usual growth.

The third type of country was found to the northward and northwestward of the other two and in it, besides the rock ridges mentioned under the second type, there were extensive ridges of bouldery clay loam or "till" similar to that which makes up the drumlins, and of the same origin, namely, deposited by the melting ice of the last glacial ice sheet, which at one time covered the whole country. The ridges under discussion were formed at the melting margin of the ice from materials which had been carried in it or were pushed up by it, and are called moraines. They were often more than a mile broad, of varying height above the rest of the country, and ran for miles across it in practically unbroken lines, while between them and the sand and gravel plains which accompany them were numerous depressions in which occur lakes of various sizes. The broad valleys between these ridges were sometimes sandy upon the sides and bottoms, but more often they were so flat as to be poorly drained and covered by swamp forests of large extent.

Extensive deposits of sand and gravel, both in the form of plains and of terraces and ridges along the sides or bottoms of the valleys were sometimes the accompaniments of the moraines.

The forests upon this type of ridge were chiefly of Hard Maple, Elm, Basswood, Yellow Birch and Black Birch, with Hemlock, Balsam, White Spruce and Arbor Vitae generally present, the latter three species as undergrowth, and in some places forming a considerable part of the timber. The Beech was not seen in this part of the area studied, being replaced by the Yellow and Black Birches. The Hard Maple was often the most important species along the tops of the moraines, making up from 50 to 70 per cent of the forest and in such places there would be no coniferous trees at all, or only a few small specimens of White Spruce or Arbor Vitae. On the other hand on the lower slopes of the ridges and on the flat lands adjacent, if not too wet, the Hemlock and the Balsam and White Birch will be numerically in the ascendancy, and the Maples few in numbers.

### *Soil and Topography of the Region in Relation to the Plant Societies.*

Sandy ridges, the better drained valleys with sand bottoms, and gravel and sand plains, were formerly densely stocked with pine forests, the poorest and lightest sands having chiefly Norway Pine and Jack Pine, while the better sands and the gravel supported White Pine, here as elsewhere, but they now, except in rare instances, are covered by Poplar, White Birch and other poor kinds of broad-leaved trees, little Pine of any species persisting at the present time, except where accidental isolation has preserved small numbers of individuals from destruction by the fires which followed lumbering.

The poorly drained valleys and till plains and all other places, where there was an abundant supply of water, were covered by a dense growth of Tamarack, Black Spruce, and Arbor Vitae, either growing together or quite as frequently with one or the other species predominating—the Black Spruce especially in the bogs around partially filled lakes and the Arbor Vitae mixed with the Balsam on the higher parts of swampy margins of streams and in springy places.

The Tamarack was most often found in extensive growths, forming dense, pure stands upon wet marshy tracts, either around lakes, in swampy valleys, or in any poorly drained place not already covered by other dense tree growth.

It is evident, therefore, that throughout the entire region, there was a well marked relationship between the type of soil, considered with regard to its water-holding power and drainage, and the plant association covering it. The main distinction which was noticed in this portion of the state as compared with other parts which have been visited, was that here comparatively slight disturbances of the drainage produced permanent swamp conditions, and this tendency increased, apparently, the farther north the investigation was carried until the valley of every rill was filled by a swamp.

On the other hand, except on rock hills, where sometimes 2 to 3 feet of humus had accumulated, there was usually only a slight development of humus upon the tops and sides of even the clay ridges, where the forest cover was most dense, although these gave evidence that they must have been covered by vegetation from almost immediately after the retreat of the glacial ice, in that there were practically no indications of rain erosion, even upon very steep slopes.

### *Types of Forest.*

In order to more clearly present the general relationship between the swamps and the surrounding vegetation, an attempt has been made to classify the whole flora into a series of easily recognizable and fairly constant and characteristic types.

Summing up, there seems to occur in all these types of habitats, five fairly distinct and well-marked forest types, which may be characterized as follows, in the order of the extent of areas covered:

(1.) *The Broad-leaved, Hardwood or Deciduous Forest.*—This was the type which covered the better class of well-drained uplands, including the rock hills in undisturbed regions, and was the important forest of much of the region visited. The dominant species of trees in this type were Hard Maple, Elm, Basswood, Beech, in the south, and Yellow and Black Birch in the north, with more or less mixture of conifers, especially Hemlock, which sometimes is present to a considerable extent, and Balsam, White Spruce and Arbor Vitae, usually, when present, evidently recent comers, growing up in the shade of the hardwoods. In some cases White Pine was a constituent of this type, occurring as scattered individuals or small groves in the more sandy places or near the borders of swamps. In other areas all conifers were absent for long distances from the higher lands where the hardwoods reached their best development.

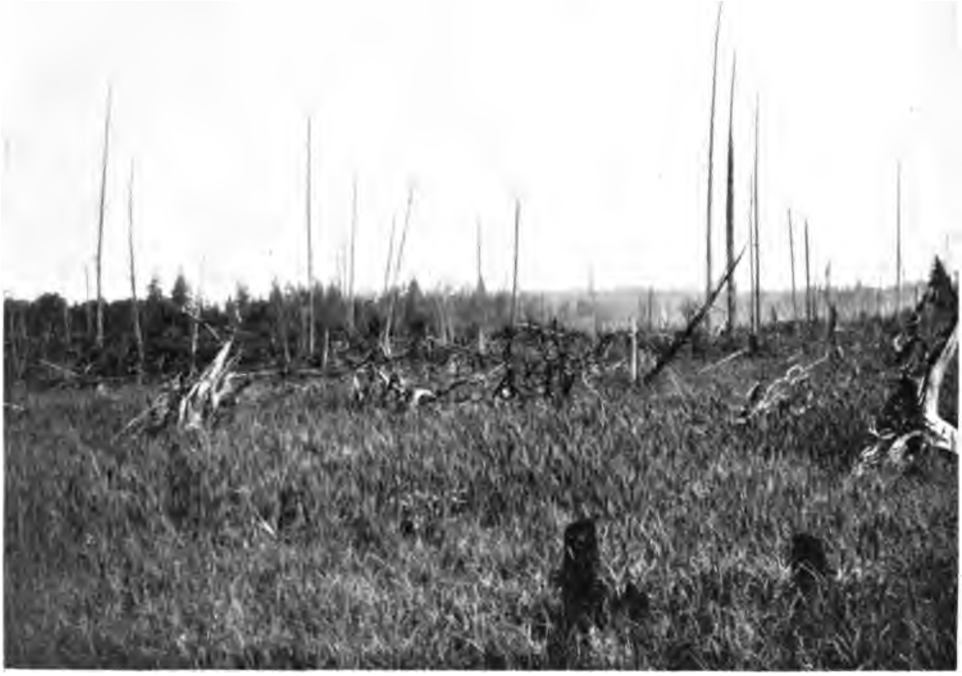
(2.) *The Coniferous Swamp Forest.*—This covered all of the undrained or poorly drained flat lands, including the peat bogs. The more mature swamps had what has been called by the writer the Cedar-

Tamarack-Spruce Association, in which frequently the Arbor Vitae or Cedar, was the dominant species, with a larger or smaller mixture of Black Spruce and Tamarack. The Tamarack, however, was very often abundant or dominant, and the Black Spruce sometimes covered considerable tracts with very few individuals of the other species present. In numerous cases the Cedar was wanting from the association where the other two species were present in about equal numbers. In this type also occurred at times the White Pine, the Jack Pine, and sometimes a few scattering Norway Pines and upon the borders, Balsam and White Spruce; Black Ash, White Elm, Balsam, Poplar, Red Maple and a few other species of swamp trees also were present in numbers sometimes sufficient to give a mixed character to the type, but this was rather unusual.

(3.) *The Hemlock-White Spruce-Balsam Type.*—This is also a coniferous type, and was found on well-drained flat lands and upon gentle slopes on the sides of the valleys. It had as fairly constant constituents, the White Birch, Yellow Birch and, in many cases, Arbor Vitae; in fact, most of the species of other types of associations occurred in it at times, but the species given were so frequently found together that an easily recognizable type can be maintained, which, in general, grows in situations intermediate in characters between the Hardwood and the Swamp sites. Hemlock was the dominant species of the association and more frequently formed dense pure stands than either of the other species, which, rather rarely, were found in groves.

(4.) *The White Pine Type.*—Much more variable than any of the others was the type of forest in which the White Pine was the dominant species, from the great variety of conditions in which that noble tree will grow and thrive. Unfortunately the greater part of the White Pine in the regions traversed had been cut, but a few remnants remained, and the large areas of stump lands showed that at one time the type had been an important one. In this type are included all the mixtures in which the White Pine was the leading species in point of numbers, so that the range is from the two-storied White Pine and hardwood forest in which the old pines rise above the lower growing species, through the pure stand of White Pine, to the mixture of the three species of pines in which the White Pine was the important species numerically. This would include all soil types, from gravelly loam with considerable clay in it, to poor but rather moist sands. This type apparently did not cover great connected areas as did the Hardwood type, but was confined to relatively small and disconnected areas of gravelly deposits of various geological history, and to partially covered rock outcrops.

(5.) *The Norway and Jack Pine Forest.*—Of more restricted distribution still was this interesting type, which seems to have been confined to tracts of dry, deep, thoroughly drained sand, whether in the form of ridges or plains, and the borders of tracts of this type of forest were often very sharply defined. Glacial sand or gravel plains, deltas, and sand dunes were the common habitats of the type, which is made up of rather open stands of the two species of pines which characterize it, mixed with some broad-leaved species, such as Poplars, Scarlet Oak and Red Maple, which grow with the pines in the most barren places. The type also occurs on sand ridges, a foot or so above the water level in many swamp areas, and sometimes invades the swamps themselves. The



Mature Conifer bog, near Mansfield, rejuvenated to wet-sedge stage by severe fire, and now occupied by dense growth of Cat-tail. The surface was lowered at least two feet by the burning as shown by the upturned roots of the trees, from around which the peat was completely burned away. Uninjured swamp in the background.

U of M

accumulation of humus under this type amounts to very little, in many cases to nothing apparently, although no evidences of fire could be discerned even by careful inspection. The Jack Pine, in young dense stands, was sometimes found growing in dryer parts of peat deposits.

### *The Drumlin Region Peat Deposits; Valley Bogs, Their Characteristics: Important Plant Associations of this Type.*

The examination of deposits of peat began in the vicinity of Menominee, where, a short distance to the north of the city, there are numerous and practically unmodified Cedar, Spruce and Tamarack swamps which have an abundance of peat in them, and which afford interesting examples of the partial filling of shallow valleys by the growth and decay of vegetation.

The valleys in this locality are, in part, formed behind the ridges which mark the beach lines of higher levels of Lake Michigan and its predecessors, and in part lie in the grooves between the drumlins and the drumlin-like hills which are found in considerable numbers for many miles to the north of the mouth of the Menominee river.

These valleys are relatively broad and very shallow, with generally sandy bottoms, which may have a thin covering of fine clay, or, in a number of cases, what appears to be a grayish marl. Sometimes small streams run through these valleys, but frequently they have no running water in them, draining slowly towards the streams, the passage of the water being much retarded by the peat accumulations. The thin layer of clay or marl, which is found at the bottom of these beds of peat, seems to indicate that, in the beginning the valleys were occupied by very slow moving streams or shallow ponds, because such conditions favor the deposition of the fine mud or the growth of the aquatic plants which deposit the calcareous material which forms the marl. In no place visited in this vicinity were there any indications of the early stages of the process of filling these valleys and the order in which the plants forming the peat have invaded them, except that mentioned above, i. e., the marl. If, in the earliest stages, the valleys contained shallow ponds, it is highly probable that the first stages of the filling were done by aquatic plants, and that these were succeeded by the marsh plants.

The depth of the peat in these deposits is not great, many of them being but 2 or 3 feet deep, and they rarely exceed 8 feet, but the quality of the peat in them was better than that in the deeper deposits which were examined later, and after the surface layers, containing stumps, fallen logs and the roots of growing trees were passed through, much of it seemed sufficiently compact and well decomposed for economic uses. The color varied from light to dark brown, or, rather rarely, to black, and the amount of water was not excessive. There were in the aggregate, large areas of this kind of peat bog within a few miles of Menominee.

The plants growing upon the surface of these deposits where they had not been cut or burned over, were usually a mixture of the following tree species: Tamarack, Black Spruce and White Cedar or Arbor Vitae. These were dominant or leading species, but with them were frequently small numbers of Balsam Fir, Black Ash, Balsam Poplar, Yellow Birch, White Birch, Red or Soft Maple and Mountain Maple. The accompanying species were only present in a part of the swamps, and in these were usually found around the borders, or in partial clearings.

In the best examples of this plant association seen in the region under discussion, that is, in which the trees were fully mature or past maturity, the marketable Cedar had been cut out, leaving the Tamarack and Spruce in numerical excess, and in rather open growth, while beneath these was usually a rather dense growth of low shrubs, chiefly those belonging to the Heath family.

Of these, the Cassandra was usually the dominant species and with this were present, in greater or less numbers, other species of the same family, of which Andromeda, the Pale Laurel, the Labrador Tea, and one of the low bush Blueberries, were the most frequent and noticeable. The Andromeda is especially conspicuous from its pale, bluish-green, narrow leaves, which are nearly white when young, and the Labrador Tea from the yellowish green color of the upper surface of its leaves and their dense woolly covering below. With these Heaths it was usual to find the Dwarf Birch, and not infrequently the Swamp Honeysuckle, which, in places, became the most abundant shrub. In spots where conditions were favorable, and especially where fire had destroyed the older vegetation, the Common or Speckled Alder was frequently the most important species present, and even in apparently undisturbed places in the peat swamps, it was sometimes seen in greater or less abundance, although it was not so common in this type of habitat, as along streams.

The herbaceous vegetation of these tree and shrub covered swamps in this particular area was made up largely of sedges belonging to the genera *Carex* and *Eriophorum*. Other types of herbs were present in the association, but were not large or constant constituents of it, and *Sphagnum*, the peat moss, was more often absent than present in the places visited, in fact, is noted as rather rarely occurring.

In places where fire has swept lightly over these swamps, simply destroying the surface vegetation, there frequently springs up a dense growth of young Tamaracks, which seem to be more hardy and more able to endure the conditions presented by this type of habitat than either of the other species of conifers, which, in other conditions, associate with them.

Here, as in the other regions visited, many instances of the effects of severe fires in changing the entire character of the vegetation growing upon the surface of peat deposits were noted. If the fire burned the peat so severely that the surface was lowered to such an extent that it was below, or very near, the subsequent ground water level, this area became covered by a growth of Cat-tail more frequently than by any other species, and as evidence that it was fire which had brought about the change, among the flags could usually be seen the dead and charred stumps of the trees which had formerly occupied the ground. Not uncommonly the edge of the fire scar would be abrupt, and this border would be marked by a fringe of tall old trees, and the accompanying shrubs which characterize the mature swamps.

One of the best of many examples of this form of accidental lowering of the surface of a peat deposit, was seen on the road from the Mansfield Mine to Crystal Falls, in an extensive valley swamp, a part of which is shown in Plate XIX.

In a relatively small area of sandy plain which lies in the big bend of the Menominee river, about 20 miles north of Menominee, there were numbers of shallow deposits of peat, from 1 to 3 feet deep, upon which were growing old Tamarack and Spruce trees in stands as dense as these trees usually form, a fact which is indicative of the unreliability of the indications of the surface vegetation as to the depth of the peat upon which it may be growing. In this area, in Tp. 35 N., R. 28 W., the following species of plants were noted growing under a forest of large and tall old Tamarack in a shallow depression in the plain:

Young White Cedar, Young Black Spruce, Young White Pine, Young Balsam Fir, Common Alder, Dwarf Alder or Buckthorn, Red-osier Dogwood, Swamp Honeysuckle, Dwarf Raspberry, Bunch Berry, Twin-flower, Swamp White Violet, Bristle-stalked Sedge, Little Prickly Sedge, Porcupine Sedge and Marsh Shield-fern.

In this locality there was very little Sphagnum. Another swamp of the same type, so far as tree growth is concerned, had the following species, not noted in the list given above, so abundant that they constituted practically the whole of the ground cover:

Cassandra (very abundant), Labrador Tea (growing on the elevations formed by the roots of the trees), Dwarf Birch, Hoary Willow (scattered among the other shrubs), Choke-berry (on the higher stools formed by the tree roots, etc.), River-bank Sedge (in the wettest places between clumps of shrubs), and Tussock Sedge.

Most of the herbs mentioned in the lists above, were present as minor constituents of the association, growing on the more exposed elevations above the water.

### *Partially Filled Lakes of This Area: Ways in Which They are Filled.*

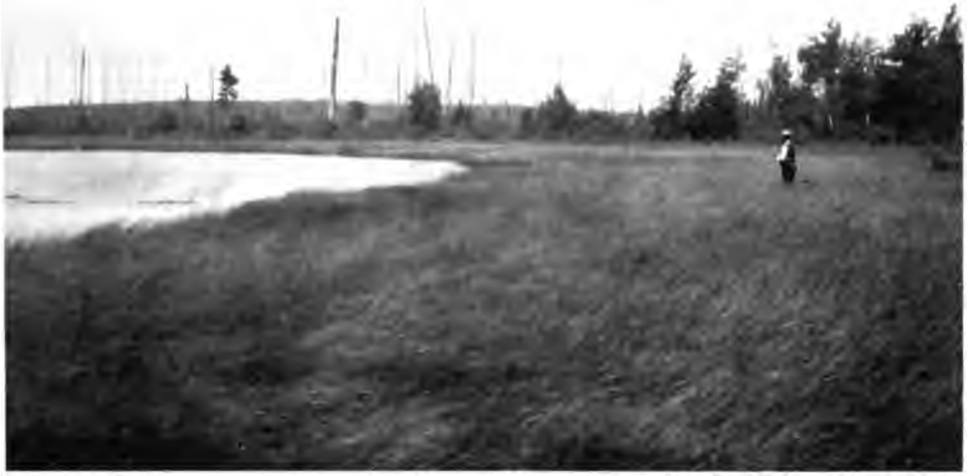
A few lakes were found in this area and of these, Hayward Lake, occupying parts of sections 2, 3, 10 and 11, T. 34 N., R. 26 W., situated about five miles east of Ingalls station on the Chicago and Northwestern R. R., was the largest and first visited. This lake occupies a shallow depression near the border of the glaciated region and is surrounded by low drumlin-like elevations. There are several small islands in the lake and it seemed quite shallow from the north shore, which was the one visited. A large part of the shore was swampy, only two or three limited areas being high enough to support a dry ground flora to the edge of the water. The major portion of this swampy shore was covered to the water's edge by shrubs, of which the Dwarf Birch and Swamp Honeysuckle, several species of Willow, of which the Hoary Willow was the most conspicuous, and a constant admixture of Sweet Gale, which became nearly pure in a zone of varying width at the lakeward margin, where it was growing vigorously in water from a foot to 16 inches deep. The zone of shrubs had a width of from 40 or 50 feet, up to several hundred feet, in the part of the shore visited and was practically afloat with water several inches deep, only the elevations about the bases of the bushes being above water at that time, early in July. The margin was quite unstable in places, scarcely firm enough to bear the weight of a man, and settling perceptibly as it was stepped on. In the water beyond this quaking margin, were scattered plants of the Yellow Pond Lily, the White Pond Lily, and the Pickerel Weed, together with patches of Lake Bulrush, in somewhat deeper water. In some places the latter plant with the Cat-tail, formed a more or less extensive border outside the shrubs; several of the islands mentioned above were covered by the same plants and upon one of them a small tract of Tall Reed Grass was established, while still others bore shrubs and trees. The peat, in the places where the depth was tested along the margin of the lake, was from 8 to 9 feet deep, and was soft and contained much water. Below this were 6 inches of fine reddish clay, then hard bottom.

In a small indentation in the shrubby margin on this shore, the often-mentioned Slender Sedge and the Cat-tail had built a floating mat a couple of rods or more in width, upon which the Sweet Gale and some few small patches of Cassandra had established themselves, together with the Marsh Shield-fern, Reed Grass, the Swamp Persicaria, the Marsh Cinquefoil, the Myrtle-leaved Willow, and three species of sedge, the Water Sedge, the Bristly Sedge and Lesser-Panicled Sedge; the Water Persicaria and the Marsh Cinquefoil were more abundant back near the shoreward margin of the sedge mat, and of the shrubs, the Sweet Gale seemed to be making the most vigorous growth. There was 6 feet of soft peat below this mat and 6 inches of sandy marl before hard bottom was struck.

Shoreward of the shrub zone, extending around nearly the entire lake, was a zone, of varying width, of pure Tamarack, under the shade of which were relatively few other plants, which were not listed. The water here was not so deep as in the shrub zone, in fact did not stand above the surface, although the ground was saturated with water an inch or two below the general surface, the roots of the trees alone furnishing a firm footing. Farther shoreward, where the ground became firmer and dryer, the Arbor Vitae and Black Spruce were dominant trees; in wetter places, the Black Ash and White Elm occupied considerable areas. Under these two species, the water was sometimes knee-deep in the depressions between the trees. In a well-marked zone, between the Cedar-Spruce zone and the high ground vegetation, at the foot of the slope, was a mixture of White and Yellow Birch and Balsam Fir, the first named species attaining a diameter of nearly two feet and being the dominant tree species. The high ground forest, covering a low ridge of clayey till lying to the north of the lake, was chiefly a mixture of Beech, Hard Maple, Basswood and White Elm, the trees all of large size, and forming a dense shade, under which but few species of shade plants were growing.

Later it was reported that there were extensive cranberry marshes near the lake, but no indication of these appeared in the area examined, as the shrub and Tamarack zones were very dense as far as could be seen, and as noted above, extended practically all around the margin.

The indications were in favor of the hypothesis, that at the time it was visited, the water of this lake was at least a foot higher than its normal level, as it seems hardly probable that some of the species of shrubs then growing in the water, would have been able to establish themselves where the water was so deep as in the places where they were found, and it is likely that the heavy rains, known to have prevailed a short time before, had recently raised the water level. Enquiries in the neighborhood regarding this point were fruitless, as the people living in



The sedge marsh on margin of a sand plain lake, shows besides the marsh: (1) Scattered Pond Lily leaves on the surface of the water; (2) Lake Bulrush in small quantity in the shallow water; (3) Standing stubs of burned White Pines; (4) Scattering young trees of the same species (on the left); (5) Young Pines and Poplars (on the right.)

this vicinity, said they rarely went to the lake, and knew nothing of the conditions existing at that time.

Apparently, filling in this basin is proceeding very slowly, and the greater part of it is being done by water plants, which are rather sparsely distributed along its shores in the shallow water, the absence of any extensive areas of sedge and the replacement of these by shrubby growth, pointing to relatively slow encroachment upon the open water by the plants, since the shrubs noted here, do not spread rapidly in the ways in which do the sedges.

The second lake or pond examined was a small one, of about 40 acres in area, in Sec. 3, T. 35 N., R. 28 W., in the sand plain mentioned above. This lake differed from Hayward lake in being surrounded by a pure sedge-marsh on all sides except on the southwest, where there was a growth of Tamarack and shrubs shoreward of the sedge border next to the water. The species of sedge which occurs here was, so far as seen, entirely the Slender Sedge, and it occupied practically all of the margin of the lake basin from the sandy region above the water level to a distance of from one to two hundred feet out, where the water was more than two feet in depth.

At this distance from shore, the plants were growing in a soft oozy deposit of partly decomposed remains of water plants and growing algae, among which a species of Chara was easily recognizable by its whorled branches and peculiar odor. In this ooze the sedge was so lightly attached by its roots as to be practically floating, and it could be easily pulled away and turned over. The ooze was only a foot or two in depth below the edge of the growing sedge, and rested upon a sandy bottom in the places where it was tested. Growing in the water, beyond the edge of the sedge growth, where the depth was from two and one-half to five feet, was more or less of the Lake Bulrush, distributed in patches, usually of small extent. In the same zone and often associated with the Bulrush, were the White and Yellow Pond Lilies, and, more abundant than either here, the Water Shield, a small flowered member of the same family, together with the Floating Pondweed, and the Common Bladderwort, these, together, forming a rather sparse and broken zone, as far as the shore was examined.

Along the shoreward margin of the sedge zone, were logs which had fallen into the marsh from the shore, or had drifted thither during stages of high water and upon these were colonies of Marsh Shield-fern, and Cassandra. These plants were also found in small patches growing among the sedge plants near the dryer edge of the marsh, and there were also specimens of the Myrtle-leaved Willow, other species of Willow and of the Marsh Cinquefoil. Above the level of the water there was a narrow zone of Blue-Joint Grass, which ran directly into the ordinary shrubby flora of the burned-over pine barren. This was not listed for this particular locality, but was made up principally of young growth of Poplars, both the common Aspen and the Large Toothed Aspen and the Wild Red or Pin Cherry, with a dense covering of Sweet Fern, the Bush Honeysuckle, the Common Brake, and a considerable number of low herbs and grasses. There was no time to visit the western shore of this lake, where a shrub and Tamarack zone were developed, but there seemed to be considerable extent of this type of swamp there, and it apparently extended along the outlet of the lake to a stream which flows a quarter of a mile west.

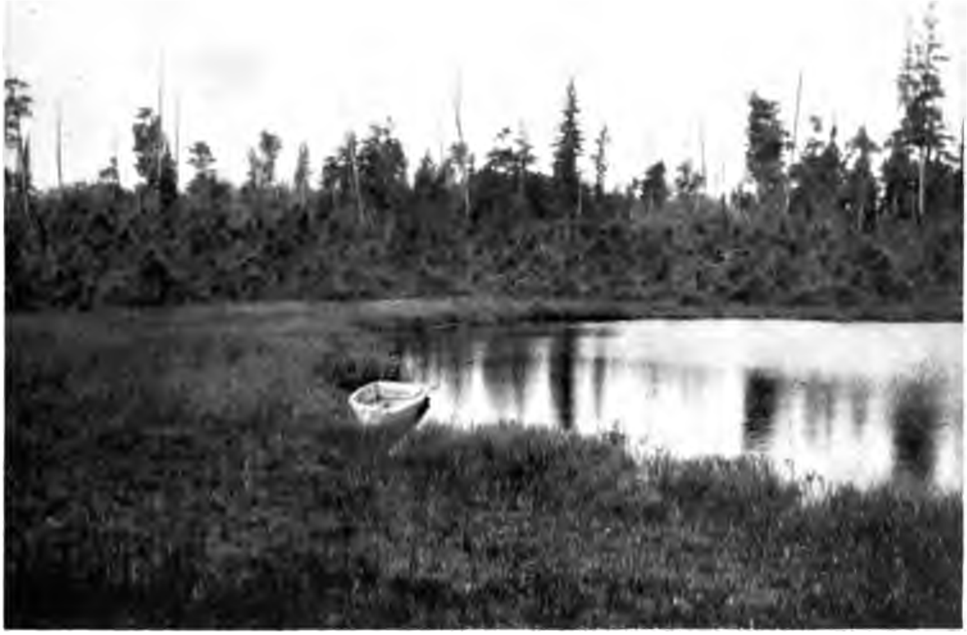
A portion of the margin of this lake is shown in Plate XX. This lake, as a whole, seems to represent a much earlier stage of the process of filling an extensive basin by vegetation, than does Hayward lake, and in every way, even to the species of the plants concerned, closely corresponds to the earlier stages of the process as worked out for the same type of basin in the Southern Peninsula, the only possible difference which could be noted being in the greater luxuriance of the growth of the water plants in the south as compared with that in this locality. Here the plants of the aquatic type were scattered and formed a very broken zone, but even this difference was probably no greater than would often be noticed in adjacent lakes in the south or even in neighboring parts of the same lake, in which, in one place, there will be a very luxuriant growth of this type of plants and in another a very sparse and poor one.

If a comparison of the plant associations of these two lakes is made, it becomes evident that the dominant association of Lake No. 2 corresponds very closely to the group of plants on the margin of the little inlet which was found at Hayward Lake and described above, but it is also clear that there is nothing at Lake No. 2 to represent the wide zones of bush and tree swamp which constitute the conspicuous features of the former in that part of the latter which has been described. The presence of some of the shrubby species which constitute the greater part of the association of the marginal zone of Hayward lake, upon logs and along the shoreward edge of the sedge marsh, is an indication that a distinct zone of shrubs will eventually be developed as the sedge marsh extends out over the lake, or at any time when the water level of the lake is lowered sufficiently to permit the shrubs to become established. It also seems probable that at Hayward Lake there has been a period of low water rather recently, during which the shrubs advanced to the margin of the sedge mat and so shaded it that the sedges were nearly exterminated, and have not yet had time to reestablish themselves since the water has risen, although conditions found farther north indicate that this is by no means certain.

### *Pond in Peat Bog at Nathan.*

The third pond visited in this region is located at Nathan, a station on the Wisconsin and Michigan R. R. (Sec. 24, T. 37 N., R. 28 W.). This is a small pond of a few acres in area, a short distance west of the railway station, and surrounded by a peat bog of considerable extent and of a very interesting type. (Plate XXI.) The bog represents a stage quite near the end of the process of filling a lake basin similar to that last described, a shallow depression in a nearly flat country, which, however, in this case, was not sandy but covered by bouldery clay.

The surface of the bog seems to slope gently from the border to the margin to the lake, and actually does, to a slight degree, as was shown by the standing water in a ditch cut from the road which runs west from Nathan to the lake, but the effect is probably heightened by the fact that the Sphagnum, which covers the surface, is much more luxuriant



Lake margin at Nathan, Menominee County, shows: (1) The characteristic absence of aquatic vegetation in the northern peat bog lakes; (2) The narrow marginal zone of Cassandra in and over the water; (3) The Sedge-Sphagnum zone shoreward of this; (4) In the background, a dense growth of shrubs, stunted Black Spruce and taller Tamaracks.

U OF M

in its growth some distance back from the edge of the water, than it is near it.

Vegetation of the aquatic type, is practically wanting in the lake, the only plants noted being a small amount of an aquatic moss, *Fontinalis* sp., and small patches, near the shore, of the thread-like leaves of Water Club-rush, while upon small areas of bare peat, just above the water surface, were, here and there, stunted plants of the Yellow Pond Lily and of a Pondweed, probably a form of the Floating Pondweed. The bottom of the pond was apparently entirely made up of dark-colored peat of rather coarse texture and very soft. Above the surface of the water the vegetation was abundant and at different parts of the shore was quite different in character and species. In general, on all sides of the lake, however, the marginal zone consisted of occasional stools of Tussock Sedge with more abundant plants of Creeping Sedge, and in much greater amount than either of these Cassandra and Andromeda sending out branches into the water, upon which as supports, the sedges and the Large Cranberry grew, and helped to form a mat upon which grew Sphagnum, and later, other species. Both species of sedge mentioned formed independent masses extending short distances from the shore. At a varying distance from the edge of the water, but never beyond the advancing shrubs, usually more than one foot and often several feet back, there was a dense growth of Sphagnum, forming a well marked zone from one to several yards in width. Growing with this and often confined to this zone exclusively, were:

Creeping Sedge, Mud Sedge, Sheathed Cotton-grass, White Beaked-rush, Large Cranberry, Small Cranberry, Buckbean,[1] Sundew,[2] Pitcher Plant,[3] Andromeda,[4] Cassandra,[4] and Pale Laurel.[4]

The surface of the Sphagnum in this zone varied but little from a foot above the surface of the water in the pond, and the moss itself was saturated with water. In some places the moss was less thickly crowded than in others and in some spots it was nearly absent, in which cases the surface was somewhat lower and wetter than where it was present, as would naturally be expected, and in such places the sedges were usually more thrifty than where the moss was more dense.

The shoreward margin of this zone was marked by a border of taller shrubs, of which Cassandra was the most conspicuous in point of numbers and size, and by large numbers of stunted Black Spruces from three to eight feet in height, together with a few small and slow growing individuals of Tamarack. The Spruces were also evidently making very slow growth, as shown by the short leaders and narrowness of the rings in stumps examined. They were also badly infested with the Small Mistletoe and many of the individuals showed the characteristic "Witches' brooms,", which this parasite causes before the tree dies.

Associated with the Cassandra and Spruce was the Labrador Tea which did not occur at all in the Sphagnum zone near the water and grew here in the higher places, on the hummocks and stools about old stumps. Andromeda on the other hand was not abundant in this zone and was only seen occasionally in the part of the area visited. Aside from these plants the following occurred: Pale Laurel was abundant and of large size. The Pitcher Plant was not common and the plants seen were in poor condition as though not in a favorable situation, the leaves were small and few and the plants had not bloomed this season. In spots where openings in the shrub growth had developed, the Cranberries were able to cover the ground, but as a usual thing they were not present in this zone, but the little Creeping Snowberry was frequently seen running over the surface of the Sphagnum. The Three-seeded Sedge, the Sheathed Cotton-grass, and the Three-leaved Solomon's Seal were the only herbaceous plants seen besides those mentioned, the last named being very common. In the places which seemed the dryest, there were also occasional patches of the Canada Blueberry.

---

[1] More common at the landward edge of this zone nearly buried in the Sphagnum.

[2] Also growing upon the bare mud near edge of the water.

[3] The leaves of this plant were practically buried in the Sphagnum, only the openings showing in many cases.

[4] The plants of these shrubs here were all short, many of them apparently young and recently established.

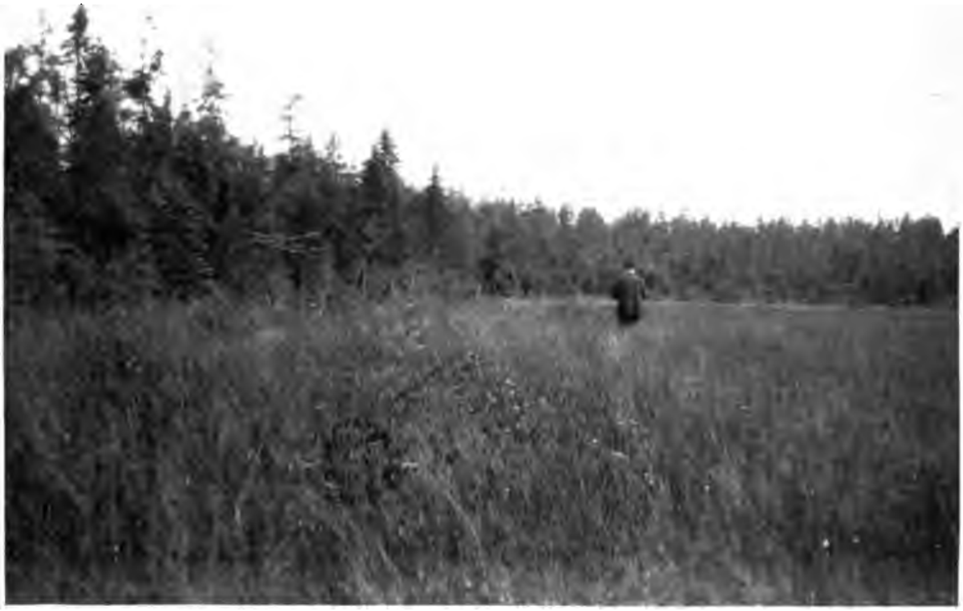
A rod or two back from the lakeward edge of this zone the Sphagnum was often very pale in color and quite dry at the top, as though dead, and it was only in the depressions and under the shade of the thin-foliaged, sickly specimens of Black Spruce that it seemed to be growing, and was green and fresh. Areas of several square feet in extent were frequent that were covered by the Reindeer Lichen which formed a dense mat upon the surface of the dead Sphagnum, apparently showing a condition of great dryness, since the Reindeer Lichen grows in this latitude only in the dryest situations.

In a few places the Sphagnum had built up mounds by the aid of the growing Cassandra bushes to a height of nearly 2 feet above the lowest part of the moss-covered surface, or slightly more than 3 feet above the water level, but the general surface of this part of the bog was from 18 inches to 2 feet above the level of the water, and it seemed apparent from the general condition of the Sphagnum plants that there would be very little growth above that level, unless the level of the water should rise, or the evaporation from the surface be checked in some way.

The peat here was more than 10 feet deep in every place where it was tested, and from the surface, through the first 6 feet, it was of rather coarse texture, compact and of a marked and unusually deep reddish color, quite different from the dark brown of ordinary peat. Below this it was finer grained, lighter in color and very soft and wet, but coherent enough to be brought to the surface in the sampler.

In the marginal zone, wherever the Sphagnum grew, the bog was firm and strong enough to permit walking over it with safety, but it was easily shaken, and lakeward of the Sphagnum would sink when stepped upon. In the zone of shrubs and spruce, the surface could not be shaken for more than a short distance even by jumping upon it with considerable force, so compact was the substratum.

This bog, more than any other which had been seen by the writer up to that time, would lead the casual observer to the conclusion that the lake was being filled by the advance of the Sphagnum over the surface. It was however, easy to see that such was not actually the case, for in no place around the entire margin of the open water was the Sphagnum growing in the water, in advance of other plants, and in the greater part of the margin it was a foot or more back from it, as has been noted above. Sometimes, however, the moss would be growing nearly at the edge of the zone of the advancing plants and the fact that it was not



Border of mature bog near Nathan, Menominee County, shows: (1) The abrupt transition from sedge-marsh with slight admixture of shrubs to coniferous swamp. The conifers at the left are Tamarack, Black Spruce and some Arbor Vitæ: on the right is less dense growth of stunted Black Spruce and shrubs with Sphagnum below.

growing in the water beyond the pioneers, the sedges and the shrubs, was only determined by careful inspection.

It is evident, upon comparing this with the other two lakes described, that this is quite different from either, in the stage of its development, and represents very late steps in the process of which they were early ones.

The nearness of this bog to the railroad, its heavy covering of Sphagnum, and the probable freedom of the peat from objectionable sedimentary matter, make this deposit worthy of further study, with the view to making some commercial use of it, for although it is not of so great superficial extent as some other tracts seem, the moss upon it is unusually good, and the depth of the peat is greater than common.

### *Completely Filled Lake or Basin Near Nathan.*

Considering the bogs as a series, the best example of a deposit which seemed to represent the final stage of the complete closing of a lake by plants was found about 1½ miles east of Nathan, on sections 19 and 20, and extending north and south in Tp. 37 N., R. 27 W. Here, the open water had disappeared entirely, but there was a wet marsh covered with sedges and small areas of Lake Bulrush, which occupied the wettest places, where the water was an inch or two above the surface. Growing with the Bulrush in the water were the Buckbean and the Flat-leaved Bladderwort, and, indicating the approach of the end of the wet cycle, were an abundance of the well established, though small, plants of Sweet Gale, and not a few individuals of the Dwarf Birch, Cassandra, and Andromeda, as well as the Pitcher Plant, growing among the Bulrush stems.

Under one of these wetter places the peat was found to have the following section:

| | Feet. | Total depth in feet. |
|---|---|---|
| Turf | 1 | 1 |
| Rather soft, poorly decomposed peat | 3 | 4 |
| Sludgy or very watery peat | 3 | 7 |
| Dark colored marl | 1 | 8 |
| Light colored marl | 1 | 9 |
| Sand at bottom | | |

The marsh around these areas of Bulrush was slightly higher, having the water level about two inches below the surface, and was covered with sedges, of which the Slender Sedge, the Twig-rush, the Alpine Cotton-grass and the Sheathed Cotton-grass, with occasional plants of the Lake Bulrush, were the most important species. There were also a large number of low plants of the shrubs mentioned as occurring among the Bulrushes and here again was found the Pitcher Plant, and small specimens of Tamarack.

The whole surface of this area, except the "islands" described below, could be easily shaken with a relatively slight effort. The "islands" were groups of trees of various sizes which had established themselves upon the open marsh, the principal tree thus appearing upon the marsh being the Tamarack. One of these islands not far from a considerable area of nearly pure lake Bulrush was about 75 feet in length and half as broad. In this area were several Tamaracks, 20 to 30 feet tall, one Black Spruce and one Arbor Vitae, while forming a rather dense growth beneath and around the border of these, were the following shrubby and herbaceous species: In the shade of the trees, were the Labrador Tea, the Sweet Gale, here much larger and taller than in the marsh, the Buckthorn, the Swamp Honeysuckle, the Large Cranberry, the Pitcher Plant and some low sedges. The Andromeda was growing abundantly around the outer edge of the island, but not under the shade, and the Bulrush grew close up to the island, but not in the shade of the trees. The surface of the marsh was no higher where these islands occurred, but the peat seemed somewhat firmer and less easily shaken on them, and the water level was slightly lower, but still less than 6 inches below the surface. There was no Sphagnum on the island described, nor on others, and none over a greater part of the sedge marsh, although near the shoreward margin it was seen in small patches either among the sedges, or more often, about clusters of shrubs.

Around this open marsh, on the west side, was a mature tree-covered swamp, Arbor Vitae, Black Spruce and Tamarack with an occasional White Pine, making the growth. The Tamaracks were the tallest, and presumably the oldest trees in this association, overtopping the other species and appearing of greater age. The ground was covered by Sphagnum and a growth of shrubs, of which the Labrador Tea was the most abundant species, having some Cassandra and the Small Cranberry mixed with it in the more open places. The herbs noted here were the Twin-flower, trailing over the Sphagnum, the Swamp Valerian, the Sweet White Violet and the Kidney-leaved Violet, the Bog Wintergreen, the Three-leaved Solomon's Seal, and the Soft-leaved Sedge. The peat here was 9 feet deep, in places slightly more, firm and structureless below 7 feet. The water level was about 1 foot below the average surface. Quite different was the plant association of the border upon the eastern side of the marsh, where the Black Spruce in a stunted form made up a large part of the tree growth. Here the surface of the bordering zone rose abruptly in many places, nearly or quite 18 inches, as though a wall had been built along it. This wall was of Sphagnum, and marked the edge of a dense growth of the shrubs, Sweet Gale, Cassandra, Andromeda, Dwarf Birch, and Labrador Tea, and occasional plants of the Hoary Willow. The Spruce trees were small, stunted, and were scattered thickly among the shrubs, with a few small Tamaracks and Arbor Vitae, while trailing over the surface of the Sphagnum, or growing in it, were the Creeping Snowberry, the Small Cranberry, and Three-leaved Solomon's Seal. Shoreward from the margin of this Sphagnum and Spruce growth the trees were larger and more numerous than near it, but all had a generally stunted appearance. (Plate XXII.)

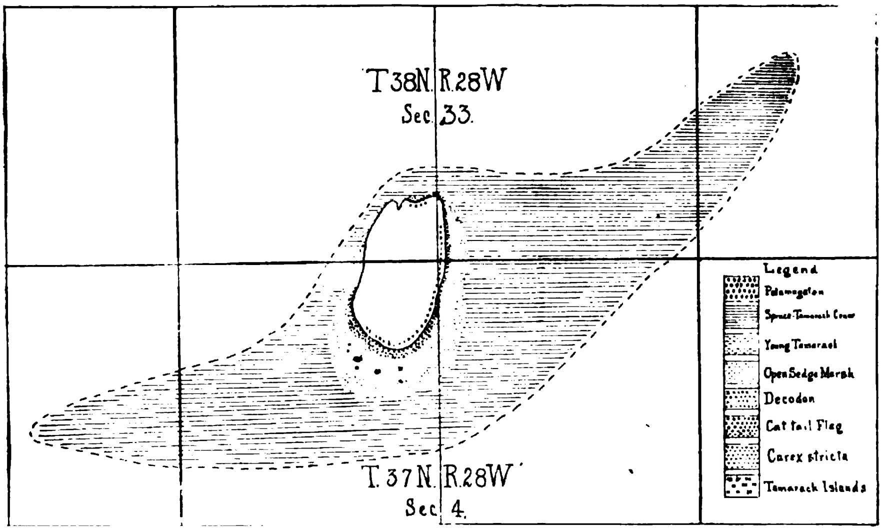
Beyond the general border of the Sphagnum on this side of the open marsh, there were many plants of Cassandra, Andromeda, Sweet Gale and Dwarf Birch growing in the marsh, usually in small dense stools or clumps, and, about some of these clumps of shrubs, as centers of growth, but only occasionally, the Sphagnum would be found established, building up a mound a foot or more above the general surface, and apparently forming an advance colony from the compact shrub-Sphagnum-Spruce association. Upon such colonies of Sphagnum growing around shrubs, the Labrador Tea would sometimes occur, but it was not noted in the sedge marsh except in these elevated spots. These conditions, as described, seem to point to the advance of shrubs and trees and Sphagnum to a rather sharply drawn line which has been maintained for a considerable period, during which existing conditions were constant, and only recently, apparently for only a few years, has there been a change. It seems probable, in the light of what was observed elsewhere, that the sharp border of the marsh with its wall of shrubs and Sphagnum, is the former shore of the pond, which was later covered with sedges and rushes until the present marsh was formed, and that now the surface of this is being covered by trees and shrubs, which under the present stage of rather high water are making slow progress. The absence of the remains of trees and shrubs, and the structure of the turf where this was examined, seem to confirm the opinion that this area had not been before occupied by woody plants, at least not at the level of the present surface.

To the north of the area just described, at a distance of about 200 yards, the tree growth bordering the open marsh was found to be nearly pure Tamarack, under which there was very little Sphagnum, but an abundance of Lesser-panicled Sedge, Small Cranberry, Pitcher Plant, Buckbean and Dwarf Birch, which were the principal members of the association growing beneath the Tamaracks, with which were occasional plants of broad-leaved forms of Andromeda, and Labrador Tea, growing in the shade, and of the Alpine Cotton-grass. Here also were noted the Marsh Arrow-grass, Swamp Saxifrage, Marsh Shield Fern, Sartwell's Sedge, Tall Cotton-grass, Showy Ladies' Slipper, Arethusa and Calopogon. The moss most common with this association was a species of Hypnum, and Sphagnum was not noted.

This Tamarack-Sedge association gradually changed, as the distance from the open marsh increased, to a Spruce-Tamarack-Sphagnum association, and this again near the western margin of the swamp was found to contain a large percent of Arbor Vitae. It would seem probable that the Tamarack covered portion of the marsh border is practically of the same age as the shrub-Sphagnum portion, but in the former, the Tamarack seeded in uniformly and thickly and grew so dense that the shrubs and Sphagnum were unable to establish themselves and have only appeared in the Tamarack association after the trees have begun to thin out, owing to excessive competition of the individuals with each other.

A detailed account of this very interesting bog has been given to show how varied may be the plant associations forming the covering of adjacent areas of the same bog, where there is so slight a change in the level of the surface and the ground water, that only the careful use of a spirit level would enable one to measure it in passing from one association to another, except where Sphagnum has become an important member of the association, and to explain all the peculiarities noted, would require an extended series of observations.

*Algal Lake:* Of a unique type was a rather extensive bog surrounding a small lake near Merryman's Lake on section 33, T. 38 N., R. 28 W., and section 4, T. 37 N., R. 28 W., and lying in the same basin with it. This lake was in a depression surrounded by low drumlin-like hills covered, in the main, by a hardwood forest, chiefly Beech and Maple, with some admixture of Basswood, Birch, Elm and Hemlock. The present lake is roughly elliptical in form and is only a few acres in extent, but is surrounded by a wooded swamp which is approximately a mile and a half long and which connects with the swampy margin of Merryman's Lake to the northwest. The sketch map, figure 9, shows the approximate shape of the lake and of the swamp surrounding it.



After traversing the Tamarack-Spruce-Cedar swamp for some distance, the northern end of the lake, at which the tree association reaches nearly to the open water, was reached and a most striking fact relating to the marginal zone was at once apparent; it was made up nearly exclusively of the curious Swamp Loosestrife, which, up to this time, had never been observed in the Northern Peninsula, and indeed not far north of the central part of the Southern Peninsula. This plant is worthy of more than mere mention, since it is especially adapted to the lake margin habitat, and also because some of its adaptations enable it to make an advance outward from the shore each year when conditions are favorable, from the position it has been occupying and thus build a mat which will eventually cover the entire surface of the water. The plant is a perennial, forming clusters, or stools, of stems which are herbaceous, and die down each year, above the water, and have curiously thickened woody bases, which live through the winter, below it. The thickening is due in part to an enormous development of spongy, white, or pinkish tissue in the bark, which is supposed to aid the plant to increase the aeration of the submerged parts, since it forms only on parts of the plant below the surface of the water. This tissue is called aerenchyma, and is made up of a multitude of thin-walled cells. The thickening of this part of the stem is also due to actual increase in the diameter of the stem below the water and to a considerable development of hard, woody tissue, so that the real diameter of the stem below the water may be several times that of the herbaceous, aerial parts.

The method of propagation of the plant is also of exceptional interest, for it not only bears and matures large quantities of seeds, but like many other plants growing in and about the water, it has developed a special vegetative method of establishing itself in new places. As they mature, the stems reach out in all directions from the top of the stools and after ascending obliquely to a height of 3 or 4 feet, curve at the tips and turn downward towards the water. Some of these continue to grow downward until they touch the water and reach below it a short distance, after which there is a development of the spongy tissue in the bark, and of wood in the submerged parts, and also of roots, which form in considerable numbers, and may eventually reach the bottom if it is near enough to the surface. From this submerged and rooted tip, buds arise and a new plant develops from these the next season if not before. In the fall the herbaceous or aerial part of the stem is killed by freezing, but the woody part remains alive, moored to the parent stool by the dead stem. This holds the tip with its roots and buds in an erect position, as well as prevents it from being washed away before it has become fairly rooted, and thus a new plant is not only established, but is held in place for a year or more, at a distance of from 2 to 3 feet, or even more, from the shore, advancing the shore line in this way with considerable precision and symmetry. As the plants send out their branches in all directions, some of them do not reach the water but come to the ground shoreward of the stool. These branches may run along the ground for several feet, as many as 6 or more, without becoming woody or forming any roots; such stems perish at the end of the season, so the greatest number of new plants are constantly established on the open water side of the old ones. As soon as the plants set off from the margin of the lake have become fixed in place and begin to increase in size, the water-loving mosses, the algae, the Marsh Shield Fern, and a number of seed plants begin to grow about the roots, and on the stools, and soon reach across to and from the older plants and bind the whole together, at first by a loosely aggregated tissue of stems, but later by a compact turf. In the locality here described, the compacting of the first structure is due to the rapid occupation of this by the shrubs, Cassandra and Andromeda, and by the sedges which soon, or even immediately, are followed by Sphagnum. After the sedges appear upon the stools of the Swamp Loosestrife, the latter plant is apparently unable to persist, for frequently the dead stems and remains of stools may be seen in the sedge marsh behind the zone of living stools at the water's edge.

In the lake under discussion, the Swamp Loosestrife was the chief marginal species around a greater part of the border of the open water, except in two limited areas where the Cat-tail disputed the ground with it, and for a short space on the east side, where the Tussock Sedge formed the margin. The latter plant will probably be displaced eventually by the Swamp Loosestrife, because the Sedge is unable to advance over the water rapidly, building high tussocks or stools by its growth and not a compact turf. The Swamp Loosestrife, therefore, once established among the stools of the sedge, would be able to reach out to the open water beyond them and thus become the marginal plant. At either end of the sedge area, the beginnings of this process of displacement could be observed.

The relatively high level above the water, of the surface of the stools made by the Swamp Loosestrife, affords a chance for a much greater variety of plants to grow than the wetter parts of the sedge mats, hence it is easy to see that after the surface is once covered by the pioneer species, its flora will be more diverse than that of the sedge mat, and will be built up more rapidly to a stage where it will support vigorous tree growth. In this particular instance there was a rather narrow zone just shoreward of the marginal zone in which the surface was higher than that still further shoreward, and upon this young Tamaracks and Sphagnum with several shrubs, such as Cassandra and Andromeda had established themselves, while in the wetter zone shoreward, as is pointed out below, these plants are wanting or are present in lesser amount. It is evident that the Swamp Loosestrife had not been present, at least in this part of the lake, for a very long time, since its remains could only be found in the area where the surface was higher, and this area was in many places only a few feet broad, and nowhere very extensive. The plant is then, one which materially hastens the upbuilding of the surface of a bog as well as rapidly extends it in a lateral direction over an area of shallow open water.

In the areas of Cat-tail near the north end of the lake were numbers of young Tamaracks, which here were growing about at water level, and reached nearly to the water's edge. In most other parts of the bog, young Tamaracks formed a rather dense zone, next to the older tree association, or occurred as mentioned, in small groups along the shore, or scattered in the sedge marsh.

In a small area of open marsh formed by clearing off the old timber, shoreward of the border of the Swamp Loosestrife, the following plants were noted: Sphagnum, Marsh Shield-fern, Cinnamon Fern, young Spruce, Tamarack, Arbor Vitae, Nerved Manna Grass, Blue-Joint Grass, Bristle-stalked Sedge, Three-seeded Sedge, Soft-leaved Sedge, Magellan Sedge, Hairy Wood-rush, Wild Lily-of-the-valley, Clintonia, Calopogon, Buckbean, Bunch-berry, Canada Blueberry, Wild Sarsaparilla, Goldthread, Marsh Marigold, Round-leaved Sundew, Small Cranberry, Small Bishop's Cap, Small Goose-grass, Marsh White Violet, Dwarf Raspberry, Red Raspberry, Star-flower, Tufted Loosestrife, Twin-flower, growing on rotting logs, and Creeping Snowberry, growing on fallen logs and over the top of the Sphagnum mounds. The peat here was firm and moist at the surface, the water level about one foot below the surface, and the total depth of the peat 12 feet. The station was about the only place where the Cedar-Spruce-Tamarack association had reached nearly to the margin of the open water.

Associated with the Cat-tail were quantities of the Marsh Shield-fern, growing slightly above the water level, on the débris of the dead flags, and of the Buckbean, in the water. Scattered plants of Swamp Saxifrage, Marsh Marigold, Marsh Cinquefoil and False Nettle, were frequent, and Swamp Loosestrife and Lesser-Panicled Sedge formed stools here and there in the more open places.

In a rather open part of the Cedar-Spruce-Tamarack zone, was a small pool of clear water, in which grew the Smaller Bladderwort, Water Starwort, Lesser Duckweed, one of the smallest of our flowering plants, Water Arum or Wild Calla Lily, and the Lesser Panicled Sedge. On the margin of this pool were numerous plants of False Nettle, Marsh Shield-fern, and Bristle-stalked Sedge. In the same zone in the dense shade of a clump of young White Cedars was much bare ground, with occasional scattered tufts of Sphagnum, and a few plants of Small Bishop's Cap, Marsh White Violet, Marsh Shield-fern, Wild Sarsaparilla, Goldthread, Clintonia, and Wild Lily-of-the-valley. The mosses were the most abundant type here. The Cinnamon Fern was abundant among the young Cedars, making a striking display with its large tufts of long fronds.

In going east along the north side of the lake, the Cedar-Spruce-Tamarack zone gradually leaves the water margin, while the zone of young Tamaracks becomes wider and the Cat-tail area narrower. Sphagnum follows rather closely the outer borders of the older growth, where it is abundant in the more open places, as far as the lakeward margin of this zone, beyond which it stops abruptly. In this region the Sphagnum is accompanied by Cassandra, Buckbean, and Pitcher Plant.

As the turn to the south is made, a narrow lane, or zone, of open, wet marsh begins, which runs along the east side of the lake to the south end, growing wider as it extends southward, until at the widest part it is several hundred feet wide. This is bounded for some distance on the lakeward side by young Tamaracks and some young Cedars, which here grow close to the margin of the water on the line of low hummocks built by the Swamp Loosestrife. As noted above, the Sphagnum is abundant in the margin of the old tree growth, and also on the hummocks along the water's edge. For a short distance, a portion of this open marsh was covered by Sphagnum, apparently recently established upon it, since the moss was thin and short and the water only a few inches below the surface. Here Andromeda and the Small Cranberry were abundant, the former very short and small, as if lately established.

The Marsh Cinquefoil; a small leaved form of the Buckbean, Pitcher Plant, the Lesser-Panicled Sedge, Mud Sedge, Prickly Sedge, Slender Cotton-grass, Tall Cotton-grass, Scheuchzeria, and the Tall Green Orchis were the only species present, the whole forming a spongy turf. The same species, in about the same relations, as to abundance and water level, were quite generally present in parts of the open marsh where the Sphagnum was not present. The Marsh Shield-fern and Cassandra, conspicuous members of the society bordering the open marsh, were absent from it, and as the level of the surface of the marsh was from 1 to 2 feet lower than that of the Sphagnum-covered borders, it seems probable that the level of the water may be a controlling factor in the distribution of these plants here.

The open marsh continues along the east side of the lake, becoming wider on the south and southwest sides where the Slender Sedge becomes the most abundant plant, giving a different appearance to the surface, because of its uniformly greater height than the rest of the plants with which it is associated. Here at the south end, the zone of Swamp Loosestrife became 20 to 40 feet wide, and the sedge marsh more than 300 feet. The sedge marsh here has Sphagnum and the Small Cranberry over considerable areas, and islands of young Tamaracks and shrubs scattered over it. Where the Sphagnum is not present, the Pitcher Plant, Cat-tail, Buckbean and Marsh Cinquefoil are most abundant, and over much of the area where these plants were abundant, the water rose very nearly or quite to the surface of the marsh. The same type of marsh, though narrower, and nearly the same plants continued toward the north end of the lake on the west side.

Considering now the marginal zone, and the lake itself, the former was chiefly made up of the Swamp Loosestrife, as has been already pointed out. The stools of this plant were frequently so near together along the margin of the water, that they were separated only by a foot, more or less, of open water, and the tops were a foot or fourteen inches or even more above the water; from the top of these stools the growing stems rise, and the diameter of the stools may be more than a foot. Upon these stools the Marsh Shield-fern is one of the first plants to appear after the mosses. Sphagnum, the Cranberries, Cassandra, and the Marsh Cinquefoil, and several species of Sedge were noted as growing upon the newer stools, while the older ones were completely covered by the advancing vegetation of the Cedar-Spruce-Tamarack zone, including young trees of a diameter of several inches. Some of the marginal stools were still isolated from the mat and were easily overturned. The mat, at the firm margin, was about two feet thick, and below this depth, the substratum was a soft light brown ooze, so filled with water that it was practically a fluid.

A study of the relationship of the zones described, led to the conclusion that the Cedar-Spruce-Tamarack zone, with its rather abrupt margin of Sphagnum and shrubs was older than the rest of the bog, and that after this had been developed, a sedge mat had slowly extended itself over the water. At a comparatively recent period, the Swamp Loosestrife had become established on the lake margin and the zone of young Tamaracks, shrubs and Sphagnum had been built up on the stools of this plant, which gave a surface sufficiently elevated above the water to enable these rapid turf formers to establish themselves at once rather than wait for the slow upbuilding of the deposit by the accumulation of the remains of sedges and other water-tolerant plants. The recent appearance of the Swamp Loosestrife is considered probable because of the narrowness of the marginal Tamarack zone.

The description of the lake itself has purposely been left until the last since it presents the most interesting phase of all. The water, seen from the shore, seemed about a foot deep, as far out as it was possible to see. There were no aquatic plants growing in it, except in a narrow zone, some 15 feet wide, close to the shore, which extended about half way around the lake. This zone was made up of plants of a single species of *Potamogeton,* a small, slender form growing only about a foot in length, and making very little show in the water. On sounding, to test the character of the bottom of the lake it was found that it was simply a soft, flocculent ooze, and in collecting samples of this, it was seen to be of a light brownish pink, or pinkish brown color, entirely structureless to the naked eye and hand lens, and of a salvy consistency very different from ordinary peat, even when thoroughly decomposed. A series of samples was taken from the shore of the lake back into the Cedar-Spruce-Tamarack zone, to see if the same type of material occurred beneath these older parts of the bog, as well as in the present lake. It was found that at the margin of the firm turf, the pinkish material was only two feet below the surface; at a distance of 30 feet from the lake it was about 4 feet from the surface; near the middle of the strip of open marsh, from 60 to 75 feet from the water's edge, it was 5 to 6 feet from the surface and just within the Cedar-Spruce-Tamarack zone it was nearly 8 feet down. (Fig. 10.) This station was estimated to be about 150 feet from the water's edge, where the surface of the bog was nearly two feet above the water level. The change from one type to the other was abrupt, and the overlying material was of a dark color and had the usual coarse texture of the upper layers of a bog of the common type.

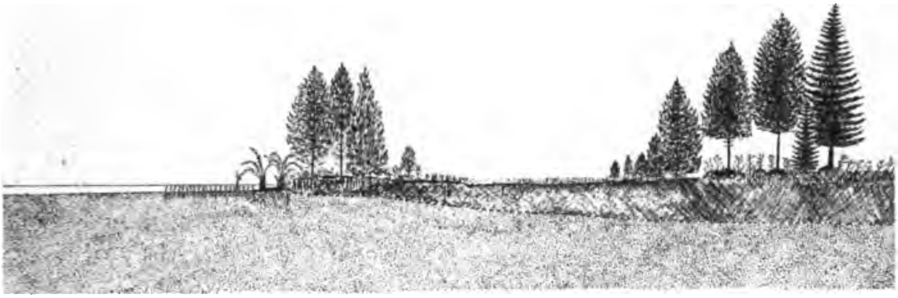


FIG. 10. Ideal section showing the approximate relation (1) of the different types of peat, and (2) the plant societies from the water to the coniferous tree zones at Algal Lake.

The thickening of the coarse material back from the margin of the open water was apparently due (1) to settling of the surface layers, as the weight of the vegetation growing upon them increased, (2) to the upbuilding of the surface above the water level by Sphagnum and other plants, and possibly (3) also to an elevation of the level of the water itself, as the mass of vegetation and vegetable debris upon the surface grew broader and thicker and choked the outlets more and more. It is easy to conceive under such conditions, that the surface of the water would be raised while at the same time there would be a slow building up of the surface of the bog, because of the favorable conditions for the growth of important peat-forming plants, and for the preservation of their remains.

But two small samples of the peat of the lower layers of the deposit and from the lake were preserved for farther examination, but under the compound microscope several important facts were brought out, among which are the following: The material shows the same structure, or lack of it, in both samples; a large part of it seemed to be remnants of minute algae, apparently unicellular forms, with diatoms occasionally or sometimes freely mingled with these. There were no fragments of the tissues of higher plants present and only occasional short segments of the filamentous green algae, but in every slide examined, the most prominent recognizable structures were the peculiar three-celled pollen grains of the conifers, which seemed to have accumulated in vast numbers here. From the fact that there was no greater number of coniferous trees about this lake than many others, where the pollen grains have not been observed in the deposit, it seems evident that they are noticeable here because of the lack of coarser material to hide them and because of the relative small amount of the algal material laid down each year. The pollen grains from 12 feet below the surface, were well preserved and showed as characteristically as those from nearer the surface. Unfortunately, no specimen from the surface of the bottom of the lake was preserved, so that the chief species of algae present were not identified.

The bearing of this observation upon the question of the origin of structureless coals, such as Cannel coal, is worthy of passing mention, for it is apparent that peat of the type under consideration, under proper conditions, would change into a coal which would show little if any structure, no matter how carefully it was examined. The only organic remains which might be identified would be the pollen grains and the silicious shells of the diatoms, just as the spores of some of the Lycopods of the Carboniferous time have been reported as occurring in the European Cannel coal. The possibility suggests itself that, in the Carboniferous age, when all vegetation was of lower types than at present, and the plants now insignificant were then dominant, the simple algae were more abundant, and contributed largely by their activities to the deposits which have since been converted into coal.

### *Merryman's Lake.*

This is a much larger body of water than the small one just described and lies near it. The shores are generally high and there is no extended swamp around it. The water is apparently shallow, for some distance from the shore, as scattering patches of Lake Bulrush extend over a large part of the lake. The margin generally has a narrow zone of the Tussock Sedge and the Slender Sedge. Toward the west end this zone widens, the Slender Sedge being here the most abundant species, forming a broad sedge mat, upon which, however, the Tamarack, Black Spruce, and White Cedar push out to within a short distance of the open water. These trees also form a generally very narrow zone shoreward of the sedge zone, except where fire or man has disturbed the original condition, in which case open ground, or Alder and Willows of various species, replace the conifer zone. In the edge of the sedge zone, on the lakeward border of the conifer zone, near the west end of the lake the following plants were noted in some abundance: The Marsh Shield-fern, abundant, especially on the hummocks about the bases of trees and on sedge tussocks, the Hoary Willow, very common in the marsh, the Marsh Cinquefoil, Calopogon, including a white flowered form, some Cat-tail among the sedges, Arrow-grass, occasional in the same situation; Sphagnum only around the trees, Hypnum more or less common in the wet parts of the marsh. On the hummocks in the marsh, with the Marsh Shield-fern, were the Dwarf Raspberry, the Three-leaved Solomon's Seal, the Cranberries, Hartwright's Persicaria, Creeping Snowberry, Goldthread, patches of Showy Ladies' Slipper, Twin Flower running over logs and stumps, Labrador Tea on hummocks about trees, the Common Horsetail, Bog Wintergreen, the Bristle-stalked and Slender Sedges, a rather common association in the advancing border of the conifer zone. The narrow zone of swamps about this lake, when its water was so shallow, and other conditions were apparently so favorable for swamp formation, is the remarkable thing about it and was not explainable from any facts observed in the limited time devoted to its examination.

### *Small Lakes Near Merryman's Lake.*

In the same vicinity, a small pond was visited which had formerly had a thick growth of Tamarack and Spruce about it, but this had been burned off, and the swamp had grown up to a rather dense thicket of Aspen, common Alder and several species of Willow, with a narrow zone of Cat-tail, Bottle Sedge, and Sartwell's Sedge in shallow water lakeward, with the Lake Bulrush where the water was a foot or more deep. In still deeper water the Yellow Pond Lily formed a nearly complete zone from 20 to 50 feet wide around the entire pond. With the Pond Lilies were numerous specimens of Greater Bladderwort and a species of Water-milfoil, an association common in the Southern Peninsula, but not before seen in the Northern Peninsula.

In Figure 11 the water relations of these plant zones are indicated.

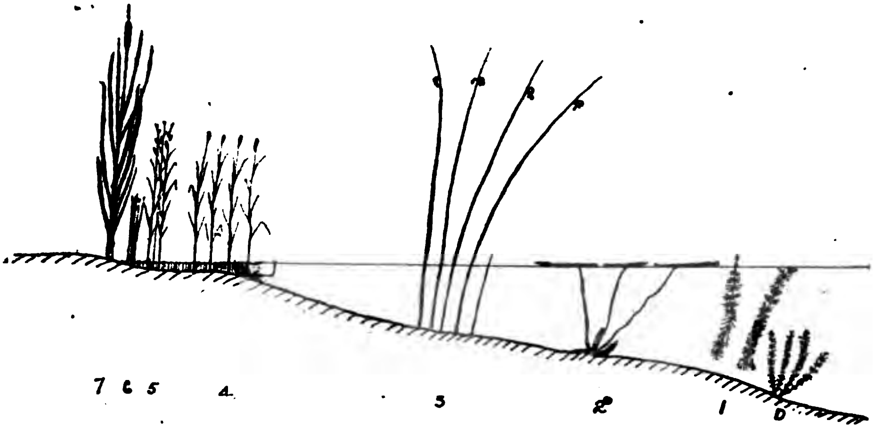


FIG. 11. Diagram of plant zones in small lake near Merryman's lake.

0. Chara.
1. Floating Bladderwort.
2 Yellow Pond Lily.
3. Lake Bulrush.
4. Sartwell's Sedge.
5. Bottle Sedge.
6. Spike Rush.
7. Cat-tails.

In the sedge zone Hartwright's Persicaria, the Larger Blue Flag, Swamp Milkweed, the Marsh Cinquefoil, Joe-Pye Weed, Blue-Joint grass and the Marsh Shield-fern, were the most common plants, with the River-bank Sedge, Shining and Bebb's Willows, Marsh Skullcap, Marsh Bellflower, Nerved Manna-grass, Dark-green Bulrush, and the Swamp Thistle less common, and in the dryer spots the Red-osier Dogwood. This whole association, as will be seen upon comparing it with the others recorded from the vicinity, is remarkably different, closely resembling that found in the southern part of the state in peat bogs which have been partially drained. It is probable that the burning to which this swamp had been subjected made it possible for these plants to find a foot hold here. There was no Sphagnum present so far as observed.

In contrast with this was another swamp a short distance away, with a small lake in it, but which had not been burned over. The swamp was covered with Tamarack and White Cedar, with a few Black Spruces scattered among these, and extending to within about a rod of open water. On the lakeward margin of the coniferous zone, was a narrow zone of Common Alder and various Willows, and then a broader zone of Slender Sedge, which was apparently encroaching slowly upon the lake, since it formed on its lakeward margin, long narrow projections into the open water, which here was quite shallow. In the little bays thus formed the Yellow Pond Lily was established.

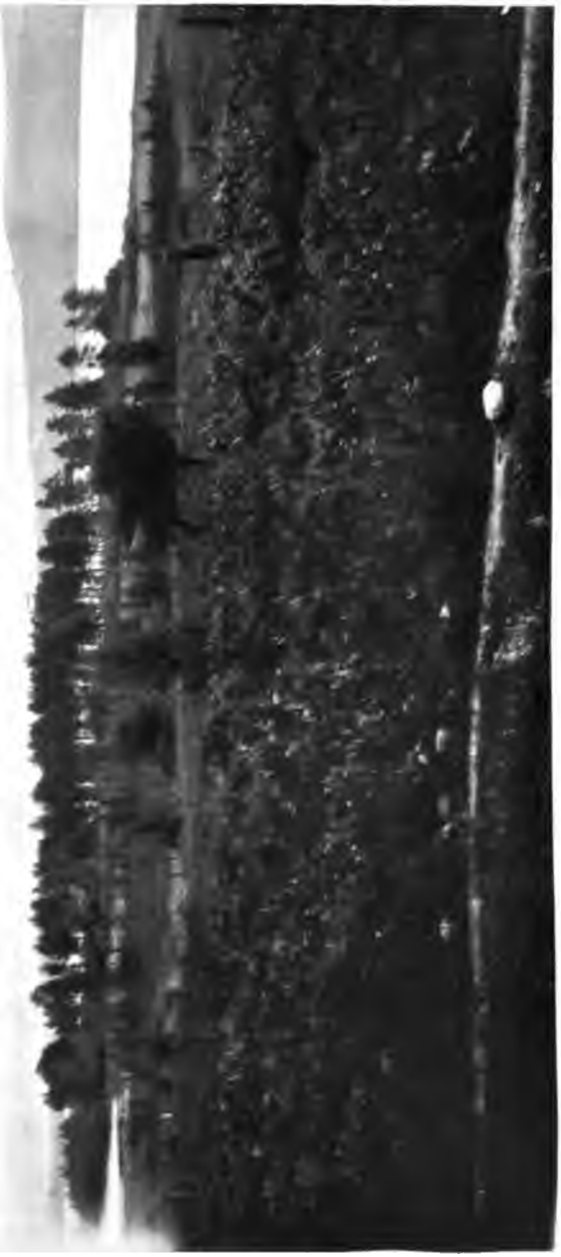
Associated with the Slender Sedge upon the open marsh, were the Hoary Willow, scattered plants of the Cat-tail, the Marsh Cinquefoil, Marsh Shield-fern, Buckbean, and the Shrubby Cinquefoil. The latter plant was most abundant lakeward at the margin of the sedge zone, where, with the Swamp Honeysuckle, it formed in the more open places, a narrow, interrupted zone.

Sphagnum covered occasional spots in the conifer zone, but was nowhere abundant. In the same zone the following species were noted: Spurred Gentian, Twin-flower, Showy Ladies' Slipper, Creeping Snowberry, Buckthorn, Silky Cornel, Low Raspberry, Star-flower, Bog Wintergreen, Common Alder, Yellow Sedge, Labrador Tea, Common Sundew, Small Cranberry, and the Tall Green Ochis. In this lake and swamp it was again apparent that the active plant in covering the open water was the Slender Sedge, aided by the Yellow Pond Lily, which was here able to grow with considerable luxuriance, and, without doubt, contributed considerably to the peat. Here, as elsewhere in this region, Sphagnum was not present upon the wetter parts of the advancing plant zone, nor in the water, but was confined to the older and dryer areas, mostly those in the coniferous zone.

### *Hermansville Bogs.*

(1.) *A mature bog.* In an extensive Tamarack-Spruce-Cedar swamp about a mile east of Hermansville, on Sections 6 and 7, T. 38 N., R. 26 W., and running over into adjoining sections, the Black Spruce was more abundant than usual; the White Cedar large enough for commercial purposes had been cut, but there was some reproduction and young trees of the species were thrifty where seen. Ditches run along the sides of the road east from Hermansville, but they have not drained the swamp to any extent, the water in the ditches being 1½ to 2 feet below the surface and in the swamp from 1 to 1½ feet or 2 feet from tops of hummocks. The removal of the mature Cedar had allowed the light to come in more than usual in such mature swamps, with the result that the shrubs and the other low plant species were numerous and luxuriant in their growth. Sphagnum was also very abundant, forming a quite uniform layer, somewhat uneven at the surface and 1 to 2 feet thick. The shrubs noted here as more or less frequent were the Dwarf Birch, Buckthorn, Swamp Honeysuckle, Hoary Willow, Red-osier Dogwood, Cassandra, Labrador Tea, Andromeda and Dwarf Raspberry; Wintergreen and Creeping Snowberry were found on the tops of the hummocks, the former on the dryest of these, upon which the Reindeer Lichen had established itself. The Small Cranberry was also noted in spots on the Sphagnum, but was not so abundant as this species often is, in similar habitats.

The herbaceous species here, were Slender Cotton-grass, Magellan's Sedge, Soft-leaved Sedge, Bristle-stalked Sedge, River-bank Sedge in de-



Pine "Island," Lake Antoine, near Iron Mountain, showing Spruce, Tamarack, shrub and sedge bogs. Norway Pine on the island; Jack Pine and Common Brake in the foreground.

U of M

pressions, Twin-flower, Gold-thread, Swamp Valerian, Marsh Shield-fern, Wild Lily-of-the-Valley, Three-leaved Solomon's Seal, Swamp Saxifrage, Swamp White Violet, Wild Calla, growing in moist Sphagnum, Bog Wintergreen, Small Bishop's Cap, Showy Ladies' Slipper, Manna-grass, usually in the wetter places, and the Bunchberry on top of the dryest hummocks, with Reindeer Lichen and Wintergreen. Along the road, and in larger openings, were numerous specimens of Common Alder, often forming dense clumps, but this species was not seen in the less disturbed parts of the swamp and seemed to be a clearing plant where it was present.

This section is represented by the diagram, Fig. 12, below.

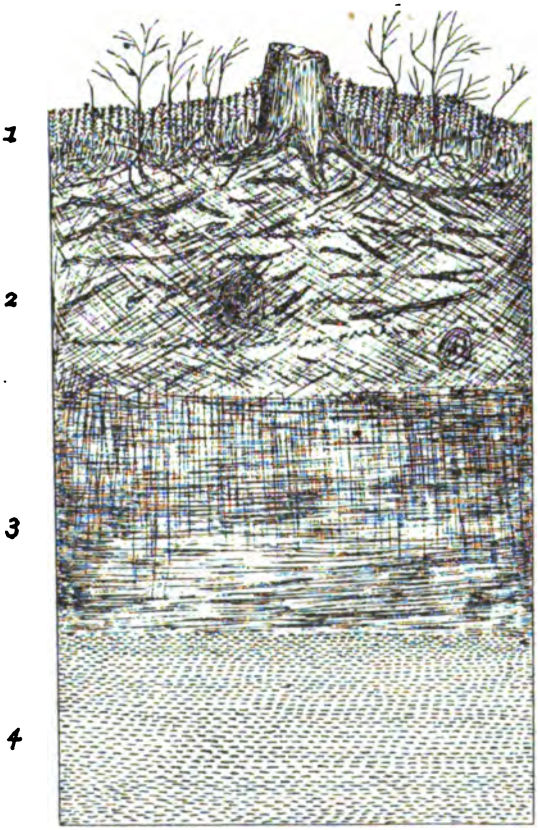


FIG. 12. Section through a mature peat deposit near Hermansville, Menominee county.
1. Surface vegetation.
2. Layer containing roots and coarse vegetable debris.
3. Fully decomposed dark peat.
4. Light colored structureless peat.

The peat was tested near the middle of the swamp, where it was crossed by a road and was about 14 feet deep, the first 5 feet being rather coarse textured and full of roots, fallen logs, etc. Below this for 5 feet it was brown in color, of good texture and quite plastic, while the lower 4 feet were soft and light colored, suggesting the algal peat described above, in color and texture.

Apparently the upper 5 feet of peat had been deposited since the trees and shrubs had established themselves in the swamp while the lowest parts of the deposit seemed to have been formed under water, as the light color of the material precludes the idea of thorough decomposition, since that not only disintegrates the material but blackens it at the same time, often in proportion to the completeness of the decomposition. This deposit was in a poorly drained valley in the drumlin region, and represents the mature type of swamp for the region, except that the flora was rather richer than usual, because of the removal of the Cedar. There was no indication here or elsewhere in the region of the drumlins, so far as observed, of this type of swamp plant association passing into any other tree society, and it seems probable that it is a climax society for the habitat.

(2.) *Cleared Bogs:* It was unusual to find any of these mature peat deposits which had been cleared with a view to cultivating them, but just west of Hermansville, in the depression between two large drumlins, was a small bog which had been ditched and stumped and cultivated for two or more seasons before the owners decided that the soil was not adapted to crop plants, and when visited, was reported not to have been plowed for several seasons, and so it had begun to revert to the wild state again. Some of the cultivated grasses and clovers had established themselves in the loose-textured dry peat, and were growing well; the native plants found persisting, or introduced since the land had been abandoned, were the Common Aspen, Labrador Tea, Cassandra, Canada Blueberry, Bristly Sarsaparilla, The Wild Red Cherry, and an occasional small Tamarack. The herbaceous plants besides the cultivated species mentioned, were the Common Brake, Sheathed Cotton-grass, Few-seeded Sedge (rare), Three Seeded Sedge, forming low stools, the Three-leaved Solomon's Seal, Sheep Sorrel, Great Willow-herb, while in many cases the ground was covered by a dense growth of the Hair-cap Moss, the same, or closely related, species that was found commonly on very dry, sandy soil, or in crevices and on ledges of exposed rocks. The loose texture of the partly decomposed plant remains making up the top layers of this bog, and the drought-resisting or xerophytic character of most of the native plants growing upon it when visited, as well as the depth to the water table, more than 2 feet, in the ditches, point to insufficient or unavailable supply of moisture as an important factor in rendering the ground unfit for cultivation until farther decomposition has compacted the peat and lowered the surface.

Undoubtedly, also, the small amount of mineral food available for plants, as well as other considerations would need to be taken into account in working out all of the contributory causes of failure of crops on the area. At the time it was visited it gave every indication of becoming a brush swamp in a short time. It was reported to have been covered with Cedar before it was cleared.

### *Bogs Near Faunus.*

Near the northern limit of the drumlin region, southeast of Foster City, along the line of the Chicago and Northwestern R. R. is a considerable district in which limestone ledges lie very near or at the surface. These exposures are flat, which makes the surface of the ground level and the drainage poor. These flat surfaces of limestone with thin soils were formerly often covered with Cedar-Tamarack-Spruce swamps, from which the valuable timber has been stripped. Following the lumbering, fires have destroyed some of the remaining trees, but many of the areas still show swamp conditions in the vigorous growth of young Tamarack and Cedar. It is a noteworthy fact regarding these swamps, that the peat upon them is generally very thin, coarse in texture and poorly decomposed, so that here, as elsewhere, the top of even the shallow deposit is often very dry.

It is an interesting fact, also, that in many places where there were well-developed swamps, the rock was so near the surface that telegraph and telephone poles were held in place by stones piled about the bottom, because holes could not be dug sufficiently deep to hold the poles in the shallow soil. Generally in such areas the peat was not more than 18 inches deep and frequently less than this, and was covered, in the burned-over tracts, with a dense growth of Alder, Willow and Poplar, or by young Tamarack, or less frequently, by young Cedar and Tamarack mixed. The flatness and impermeability of the rock surface seem to be the controlling factors in developing these swamps, since they tend to keep the ground water level high. The thin layer of till which may lie below the peat and above the rock surface is usually gravelly and serves to store some of the water which falls on the surface.

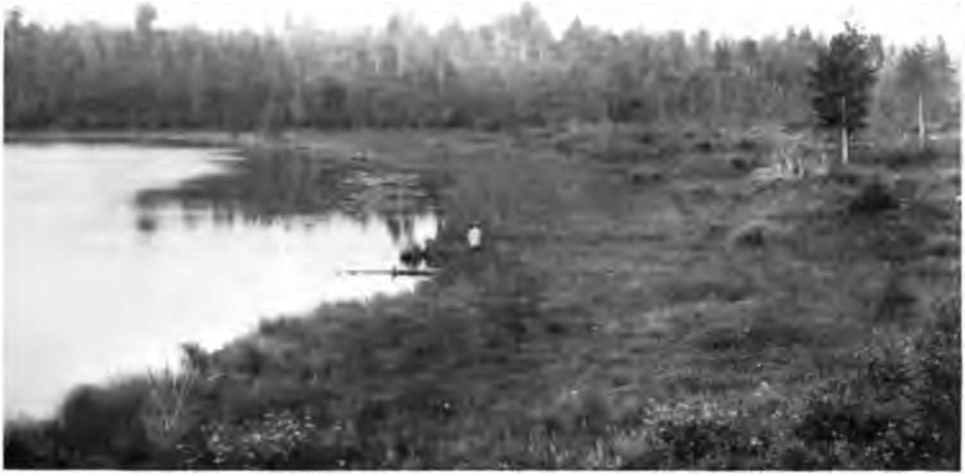
In T. 41 N., R. 26 W., between the water tank on the C. & N. W. R. R. and Faunus station, is a valley swamp bordering a small sluggish stream flowing into Ford river, which gave some exceptionally interesting opportunities for the study of the tolerance of water exhibited by bog plants. The valley was very shallow and the slopes slight, so that drainage was very poor over most of its bottom, which had been covered by a mature Cedar and Tamarack forest before it was disturbed by lumbering and fire. In crossing the swamp, on sections 19, 20, 28 and 29, much of the material for grading up the road bed of the railroad had been dug from the right of way on either side of the grade, leaving shallow ponds and broad ditches in which the water stands to a depth of 18 inches or 2 feet below the surface of the peat on which most of the species of shrubs and perennial herbs of the mature Tamarack-Cedar-Spruce association were growing. These plants, since many of them propagate by underground stems, have grown out into and over the ditches and ponds, until these have been nearly filled up in some places. In a few instances the growth covering the surface of the water was of mosses, chiefly species of *Fontinalis* and *Hypnum*, but in one instance *Sphagnum* seemed to be the form, although the plant was seen from a distance, and the observation is uncertain. A higher type of plants was represented in the Pond-weeds, which are true aquatics and may have been introduced into the ditches from the stream or from a distance by birds or other animals. The plant which was most effective in covering the open water, however, was the Marsh Cinquefoil, which sent out long branches from the sides of the ditches and ponds and often completely covered the surface for some distance. This species was never observed by the writer as the marginal plant over considerable areas along the shores of lakes, but here, around the artificial openings in the turf, it demonstrated its fitness to serve as the advancing plant in open water by forming dense mats, which soon serve as a basis for growth of a number of species of sedge, especially the Creeping Sedge, and for the Wild Calla and a species of *Hypnum* moss. The Marsh Cinquefoil is apparently killed by the encroachment of the Sedge, as, where this was present, the first plant was not as luxuriant as where there was no admixture of other species.

Next to the Marsh Cinquefoil, Andromeda was most frequent in its extensions into the water from the sides of the ditches, and long, rootless branches, 2 to 3 feet, or more, long, reached out into the water, often with only the tips of the terminal leaves above the surface. This plant did not form extensive mats, as the number of individuals along the sides of the ditches was not large in any one place, but the subaqueous shoots were normal and vigorous, and, in time, would serve as the basis for attachment of other species. Cassandra was also abundant, growing in the water in the same way as Andromeda and because of its more compact habit of growth, it was perhaps more frequently the center of development of small islands of other plants, which eventually became joined permanently to the bank of the ditch, and thus formed solid land. Other shrubs which extended out over and into the ditches and pools from the banks, forming more or less compact mats, were several species of Willows, the Dwarf Birch, Alder, and the Buckthorn.

Of herbaceous plants, the Creeping Sedge was found most frequently, forming extensions from the banks, both alone, and as an associate of other species, sending out horizontal, cord-like, leafy stems sometimes 4 feet long, either in the water or over the surface of areas filled by floating moss. This sedge does not form a compact mat, as it forms roots rather infrequently along the prostrate stems, but it serves to bind other species together when its strong stems are overgrown by them.

The Wild Calla was doing similar work, extending its thick, freely rooting, prostrate stems, which bear numerous broad leaves and large flowers, in dense masses from 3 to 6 feet wide, out from shore on a substratum of moss, floating in the water. The plant thus forms a foundation for other species, and at one point the following species were growing with it: The Porcupine Sedge, forming small tufts, the Marsh Skullcap, the Great Water-dock, Blue Joint Grass, a Willow, the Small Bedstraw, and the Bulb-bearing Water Hemlock, a small part of a common open wet marsh society in which usually some species of Sedge is the dominant plant.

Other herbaceous plants which were noted as forming extensions from the shore in the pools were the Cat-tails, Hartwright's Persecaria, and, more rarely, the Buckbean. Growing in the water with the Pondweeds, were the Lesser Bladderwort, Pursh's Buttercup, and a very slender form of the Broad-leaved Arrowhead, while the Swamp Horsetail formed dense masses in some pools, rooting in the peat in a foot or more of water. It appears from the considerable variety of types of plants in this artificially formed habitat, in a locality where the number of species is rather restricted, that for a time, at least, those species which are present and establish themselves first are the ones which are able to occupy the space, but that later, other types come in, and wholly, or in part, dispossess the pioneers.



North side of small lake, near Bad Water Lake, showing: (1) Thin zone of Pond Lilies in shallow water: (2) Narrow zone of Sedges on a gently sloping shore, making a thick turf on sandy bottom; (3) Cassandra and other shrubs forming thick growth up to the higher ground; (4) Background of Norway Pine and White Pine. The area shown in Plate XXV is at the extreme left of the picture.

U of M

### *Bogs in Sand Plain Near Vulcan.*

The first bog visited in the morainal region was in an extensive sand plain south of Vulcan in T. 39 N., R. 29 W., Sec. 15. The bog was a small one in a depression without outlet in the sloping sand plain and was originally surrounded by a forest of nearly pure Norway Pine, now represented by a remnant of a few acres in extent, on the south side of the depression. There was no open water upon the surface of the bog, but it was an excellent example of a type which is perhaps our nearest approach in Michigan, to the European "Hochmoor." In the middle of the bog was an irregularly elliptical tract in which Cassandra was the dominant plant, but with some dwarfed young Tamaracks, a single dead Norway Pine, and some dead Tamaracks of larger size, as well as Andromeda, Pale Laurel, Small Cranberry and the Slender Sedge. The surface here was built up by Sphagnum to about a foot above the water level, around the clumps of the Cassandra, and other shrubs, but this high level was not maintained uniformly, as there were numerous depressions reaching the water, where the Sphagnum had not yet grown as high, in which the Pitcher Plant, Buckbean, and Mud Sedge were common. Shoreward of this raised portion, was a broad zone of apparently pure Slender Sedge, but associated with it, on closer inspection, were found the Marsh Cinquefoil, the Myrtle-leaved Willow, and in the border next the elevated portion, and on the south side of it, Sphagnum growing in the water. On the north side, however, there was no Sphagnum with the Sedge. The water was from 1 to nearly 3 feet deep in this zone and the bottom easily shaken. Nearer the shore, the water was uniformly about 18 inches deep and in this part of the zone the Nerved Manna-grass, Tall Cotton-grass and Marsh Cinquefoil were generally present in abundance. This zone extended shoreward nearly to the water's edge, and merged into a well-defined but narrow zone of Blue-Joint Grass, and this, in turn, into another of Meadow-Sweet, about a foot above the water level, and above this, Alder formed a dense zone to about 3 feet above the water level, above which the Norway Pine association began abruptly and covered the slopes. The chief variation in this zonation was, at the east end, where the Cat-tail formed a partial zone shoreward of the Slender Sedge, and the replacement of the Norway Pine by pasture and cleared-land societies on the north and west sides of the valley. The very considerable depth of water in which most of these bog societies were growing, 2 feet, and more, in parts of the sedge zone, seems to indicate a recent rise of the water level, due to excessive rainfall, and it is probable that most of the zones were established in a time when the water was lower than at present, and, except the trees, have persisted during the rise, which would be very rapid in an enclosed basin of this type; the dead Tamaracks and the Norway Pine would indicate such a rise in the water, as trees are more often killed in this manner than the more tolerant sedges, grasses and other herbs and shrubs. A fire sweeping across the swamp would also destroy the trees, and not, necessarily, the herbs and shrubs, but no marks of fire were observed.

*Other Kettle Hole Bogs Near Vulcan:* A group of small depressions a mile south of the one just described, form an interesting series. The depressions were four in number and situated in Sec. 22, T. 39 N., R.

29 W., near the border of a portion of the gravel plain mentioned above, which had been cleared and cultivated. The larger one of the series had a small pond in it, which was surrounded by a wide quaking bog covered largely by shrubs and sedges. The water in the pond was shallow and had the Yellow Pond Lily scattered over nearly the whole surface, while near the shore there was an interrupted zone of Creeping Spike-rush pushing out towards the center and a mat of Slender Sedge following it. Upon the sedge mat were scattered plants of Dulichium, Scheuchzeria, Buckbean, and Marsh Cinquefoil, and also islands of Cassandra at distances of from 20 to 50 feet from the edge of the open water. Upon this part of the sedge mat the water was about a foot deep, and in the water was an abundance of Hypnum moss, which, near the shoreward margin of the sedge mat, was more or less displaced by submerged Sphagnum. In this part of the mat also were found the Marsh St. John's-wort and the Bulb-bearing Water Hemlock.

Still nearer the shore, the surface rose a foot above the water level and the shrub-Sphagnum zone proper began, though the whole mat was still easily shaken. The plants of this association were Cassandra, Andromeda, Large and Small Cranberry, Tamarack, White and Norway Pines, the latter upon the stools formed by stumps of dead trees, the Tall and the Virginia Cotton-grasses, the Mud Sedge, which was here abundant, Marsh Cinquefoil, Pitcher Plant, Buckbean and Round-leaved Sundew. The presence of old stumps of considerable size in this zone shows that formerly this part of the bog was more heavily wooded than now, but the cause, other than clearing, of the disappearance of the trees was not apparent. Shoreward, near the margin of the bog, was a zone above the water level, of Blue-Joint Grass, with Silky Willow, and Meadow-Sweet, scattered through it. The River-bank Sedge and Nerved Manna-grass were common here in slight depressions. Still farther shoreward was a well-developed zone of Common Alder which covered the bank nearly up to the zone of cultivation.

The second depression was much smaller than the first, and was in the open shrub stage of development, i. e., the shrubs, chiefly heath plants, were the dominant types; the entire surface was covered by a dense growth of Cassandra and Andromeda. Among these plants there were a few large stumps and numerous small ones, showing that rather recently the shrubs had been dominated by trees, at present represented by a single small White Pine, a Tamarack and some White Birches and Common Alders growing on the hummocks around the stumps noted above. In small open depressions below the general level were sedges and patches of Larger Blue Flag. The water level was generally a little over a foot below the surface in this part of the bog. Shoreward of the shrubs was a zone of lower water level, covered chiefly by the Larger Blue Flag, but with it were the Tussock Sedge, Blue-Joint Grass, Cat-tail, Alder, and several species of Willow. Next to the shore and running up on to it, was a zone of Wool-grass, Nerved Manna-grass, Larger Blue Flag and Soft Rush, which reached up to more than a foot above the surface of the water.

The third depression was elliptical in shape, 30 feet wide by 70 feet long, and had in the middle a small pool of water about 10 feet in length, in which were a few plants of the Yellow Pond Lily and a small patch of Lake Bulrush. Around the pool was a dense growth of Cat-tail covering all of the bottom of the depression except for a narrow zone on the shoreward margin, which was covered by a growth of Wool-grass and slightly above this a zone of the Nerved Manna-grass and Larger Blue Flag.

The fourth depression was covered by a dense growth of Common Alder and Willows.

The bogs in this series show the effects of clearing and burning, in the disappearance of large trees from the larger basins, and of all the trees and plants of the mature bog societies from the smaller ones, so that the cycle of development in these has begun anew with water plants. In the larger ones the building of the sedge mat was apparently not interfered with, but the disappearance of the trees caused the shrub society to expand to a much greater width than would be possible under undisturbed conditions. The series well illustrates the influence which man has locally upon the distribution of plants.

### *Lake Near Menominee River, South of Norway.*

In the same section with these bogs in the cleared and cultivated area, was an interesting kettle-hole lake, located on the terrace of Menominee river. The water of the lake was at the same level with that of the river and was connected with it by a short broad outlet, so that the river, in time of flood, caused a sharp rise in the lake and as abrupt fall when the flood was over. On the zone of the lake bank which was thus alternately covered by water and exposed to the sunlight and the air, was a society of plants which is frequently found in the flood plains of the rivers in the Southern Peninsula, but which is not common in the Northern, where the river swamps have not usually been cleared, and where the mature Tamarack-Spruce-Cedar society is the one in possession of such places, except the more recently formed bars or areas of sediments. The principal plants noted in this society were the Sensitive Fern, River-bank Sedge, Slender Rush, several species of Willows, Common Smartweed, Canada Anemone, Purplish Meadow-rue, Yellow Water-cress, Meadow-Sweet, Marsh Pea, Upright Yellow Wood Sorrel, Canadian St. John's-wort, Spotted Cowbane, Bulb-bearing Water Hemlock, Swamp Milkweed, Blue Vervain, Hedge Nettle, Cut-leaved Water Hoarhound, Wild Mint, Monkey-flower, Joe-Pye Weed, Late Golden-rod, several species of Aster, Sneeze-weed, and Philadelphia Flea-bane. The soil here was mostly composed of fine silt, or river sediment, and was moist over the entire slope. The absence of characteristic bog plants is of interest and may be due in part to the clearing which has been done, since in a similar bayou-like lake in another place, some bog plants were noted upon the banks of the lake. A view of a portion of this lake and the connection with the river is shown in Plate XII of Prof. Russell's paper, page 57.

### *Lake Antoine, a Large Basin Beginning to Fill.*

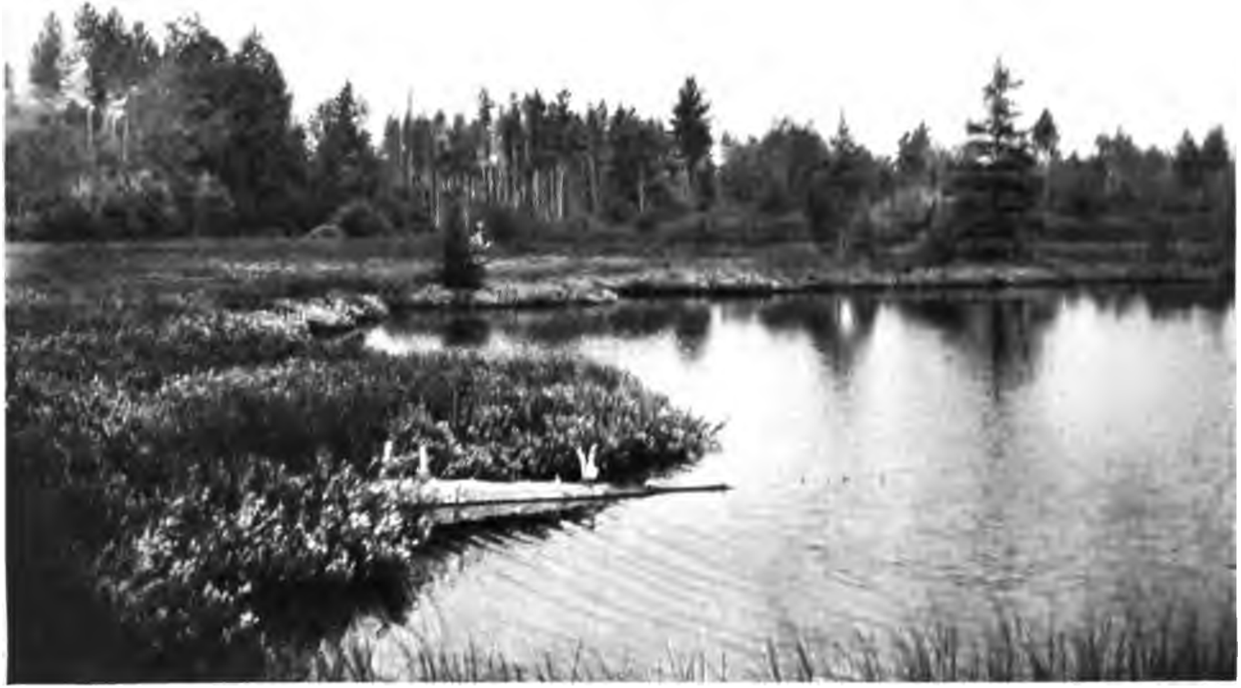
This is a large lake with no inlet and small outlet a short distance northwest of the city of Iron Mountain, T. 40 N., R. 30 W., covering parts of several sections. There is little true bog existing around its shores, a large part of which are high and dry, with a rather steep slope. The lake is mentioned here because of a series of small bogs which exist along the north shore in coves on the west sides of points, and behind an island on the northwest side of the lake. The most remarkable of these bogs is the one connecting Pine Island (Plate XXIII), as it is called, with the mainland, making a peninsula of it. The island lies some hundreds of feet from the shore, the entire space between being occupied by the bog, which is prolonged beyond the island on the western end, and has a well-defined cove at the eastern. Upon the bog are two distinct areas of mixed Spruce and Tamarack, surrounded by typical Sphagnum-Cassandra-Andromeda zones. The borders on all sides are covered by a sedge mat, in which the Slender Sedge is the chief plant, forming a belt from 200 to 300 feet wide. The aquatic plants form two distinct zones outside of this; the lakeward one, where examined, made up chiefly of Pondweeds, of which the Common Floating Pondweed is the most conspicuous and abundant, while next the floating margin of the sedge mat was a zone of varying width, made up largely of White and Yellow Pond Lilies.

The Cat-tail and Dwarf Birch are present in small areas upon the sedge marsh, and the Marsh Cinquefoil forms good-sized patches in places near its margin. The fact that there are two centers of tree growth, and a wide open space extending for a considerable distance between them, would lead to the conclusion that there have been two distinct periods of filling here. The first of these was the time during which the western part was being built up in the shelter afforded by the island, and the other, after the bar thus built had diminished the depth of the water between the island and the shore so much that plants could grow in the water and hold such floating débris and sediment as drifted into the cove thus formed, and this material finally became a center of growth of the bog.

In the coves lying east of the island bog, there are shown several steps in the formation of bogs upon the shores of a large lake. In the first one east of the island, the marginal plant extending over the water was the Slender Sedge, forming a floating bog upon the edge of which were spots of Cat-tail, while upon the bog were some small Spruces and Tamaracks, Alders and Willows, with small areas of Cassandra and Dwarf Birches, and more abundant, the Marsh Cinquefoil, and Marsh Shield-fern. The margin of the mat was entirely free from the bottom, with nearly a foot of water above the surface, and upon this grew small Pondweeds, the Swamp Persicaria, and Greater Bladderwort. In some cases small fragments of the border of the mat, a foot or more across, were free from attachment to it, and formed floating islands, which were moved about by the waves.

In another small marshy area on the west side of a point still further east, the Slender Sedge and the Marsh Cinquefoil were still the dominant plants, but the Lake Bulrush was present in small quantities, and near the landward border of this, as well as the other mentioned above, the River-bank Sedge and the Blue-Joint Grass were of frequent occurrence. There were no aquatic plants noted beyond the margin of the sedge mat here.

The location of all of these bogs on the western side of protecting land masses, and the fact that the eastern sides of these were being washed so strongly that the shores were covered by coarse gravel and boulders, with no vegetation near the water's edge, indicate the existence of a



Western margin of the same lake as Plate XXIV, showing: (1) Absence of aquatic plants; (2) Andromeda, the whitish shrub, growing in and over the water; (3) Cassandra, the darker shrub, forming a mixture near the water, but pure near the shore; (4) Scattered Tamaracks near the water's edge; (5) Norway and White Pine on higher ground.

prevailing current down the lake upon the north side. This current is most probably set in motion by the westerly winds, blowing the water towards the east end of the lake and heaping it up there, whence it returns to the west end again, in part at least, along the north shore, and the island and points mentioned have small eddies on their western sides, which favor deposition of drift material, silt, etc., carried to them by this westerly current, and this, in turn, encourages the growth of plants which have built up the bogs. No soundings were made here on account of the small size of the deposits and the apparent weakness of the sedge mats, but the water below the margin of the sedge mat was probably at least 6 feet deep.

### *Sphagnum Bog Near Lake Antoine, Iron Mountain.*

On Sec. 20, T. 40 N., R. 30 W., a short distance north of Lake Antoine, was a small bog with some features of special interest, especially in the fact that there were stunted White, Norway and Jack Pines growing in the more open parts, besides Tamarack and Black Spruce, also much stunted. Around the shoreward margin, and especially at the northern end, where its width was greatest, was a dense growth of Balsam, Black Spruce and Tamarack with occasional White Pine forming a zone of variable width around the open part of the bog. This was irregularly elliptical in shape with a small pond of open water near the northern end, and was covered by a shrub-Sphagnum society, and the partly consumed stumps and other remains of trees, showed that fire had run over the surface at some recent time and destroyed the mature trees. The water level, at the time the bog was visited, soon after a heavy rain, stood from 1 to 2 feet below the top of the Sphagnum mounds among the shrubs, but was above the surface in depressions.

The water in the pond was more than 5 feet deep off the overhanging edge of the bog, and had no aquatic plants in it except a few plants of the Yellow Pond Lily, which grew so close to the margin that it was not possible to determine whether they grew from under the edge of the bog or not.

The marginal plants here presented a new and most interesting departure from the usual order of advance; the possibility of such a variation had been suggested by the conditions existing at Nathan, and in a more marked degree in the railroad ditches near Faunus. The whole border of the pond was fringed by a zone of shrubs, Cassandra and Andromeda predominating, 10 to 20 feet wide and pushing out into the open water. Of the two species, Andromeda seemed to be the more abundant and more vigorous grower here, frequently occupying considerable spaces and growing out into water several feet deep, for 4 feet or more, with no apparent connection with the bottom. The Cassandra, on the whole, was nearly as frequent in the water as Andromeda, and in one place was seen sending out horizontal, partly submerged branches 6 feet from the shore, in water between 3 and 4 feet deep, but the plant grew taller and larger back from the margin and seemed more thrifty in the dryer parts of the bog, while the Andromeda was neither as abundant nor as thrifty in such places as it was nearer the edge of the water.

After the shrubs had pushed out into the open water in this way and formed a fringe of branches, often other plants would find a foothold with them and would thus build small hummocks. Sphagnum, as would be expected, was one of the first plants thus to take advantage of the chance to extend its range and was to be seen in various places very near the water margin of the shrub growth, but never at it or in open water beyond. With the Sphagnum, a number of other plants were able to grow, including the Small Cranberry, which often followed the Andromeda out into the water without the moss, supporting itself on the stems of the larger and more rigid plants and making a very thrifty growth in such places. Other plants found growing with the marginal shrubs and Sphagnum near the edge of the water were Buckbean, the Round-leaved Sundew and Mud Sedge, but none of these were found advancing beyond the Sphagnum. The association formed a border a foot above the level of the water in its highest parts, but on its shoreward edge the surface was lower, scarcely rising above the water level, over a zone from 10 to 20 feet wide. In this zone, the shrubs were fewer, and there was little if any Sphagnum; the most abundant plants here were the White Beaked-rush and the Mud Sedge, which gave the zone distinct character.

This merged abruptly into the mature Heath-Sphagnum zone, which presented fewer peculiarities, except that in places there were quite extensive patches of the Pale Laurel and where there were trees or stumps, the Sphagnum mounds were built up to a height of 3 feet, or more, above the level of the water. On top of these mounds was found Labrador Tea, which did not grow on the lower ones nor on the sides of the higher ones. The same plant was found in the edge of the well developed Conifer zone, on the shoreward margin of the bog, growing on top of the highest Sphagnum mounds in the shade of the trees.

Other plants in this Shrub-Sphagnum association were the Creeping Snowberry, Small Cranberry, Sheathed Cotton-grass, Virginia Cotton-grass, Few-flowered Sedge, here very abundant, and in the wetter places, near the lakeward border of the zone the Pitcher Plant was very common.

The swamp-conifer border of the Shrub-Sphagnum association was found to end abruptly on the landward side in the thickets of pines which came down the slopes around the bog, except in places where there was a narrow line of Common Alder between them in a shallow trough-like depression, in which also grew the River-bank Sedge. The most common species of pines in the highlands around the depression was the White Pine, but the Jack and Norway Pines were also very frequent and making rapid growth.

In borings near the margin of the lake, the water was found to extend under the mat, to a depth of about 7 feet, below which the peat was coarse and loosely compacted down to 11 feet, where wood was found. At a distance of about 75 feet from the north side of the pond, the peat was compact from 3 feet below the surface down to about 9 feet, where fine clay was reached. The peat was brownish and rather coarse in texture, until near the bottom, where it became rather finer, but not darker in color.

The fact that this bog had been burned over had undoubtedly disturbed the relations of the plants to a certain extent, but this was not the cause of the peculiar lack of a sedge zone next the water margin, as that would be the area to be least affected by fire. The bog was one of a number of similar ones which, as will be shown later, constitute a distinct type, in some of which, at least, no recognizable disturbance has occurred, except such as may have been brought about by natural forces, operating in the usual and general way, such as periods of prolonged drought, or cycles of wet weather, which occur in all regions at intervals.

### *Mature Valley Bog Near Granite Bluff.*

But few mature bogs were examined in this region because of the lack of variety among them, since they were either usually Tamarack-Spruce-Cedar associations, or more rarely, covered with nearly pure Black Spruce, associated with Sphagnum and shrubs, in which the Spruce was usually very much stunted and more or less scattered. A swamp of this type was examined on Sec. 21, T. 41 N., R. 30 W., near Granite Bluff, on the Chicago, Milwaukee and St. Paul R. R. The swamp occupied a valley and extended a considerable distance in either direction (towards the east as far as the railroad), from the part examined, and, as far as seen, showing the same characteristics.

The Black Spruce was the dominant tree species, but was poor and stunted in appearance, and formed a very thin growth, below which was a heavy covering of Sphagnum, with dense Cassandra and Andromeda. As is usually the case, the surface of the Sphagnum was uneven, built up in mounds 18 inches to 2 feet high above the water level in places, and with relatively bare spots or depressions in others. Upon the mounds were the Labrador Tea, Sheathed Cotton-grass, Three-leaved Solomon's Seal, Pale Laurel and Small Cranberry, and more rarely, the top of a mound was covered by the Hair-cap Moss, which, for the time at least, ends the work of the Sphagnum in upbuilding, since the other moss is able to kill it out, when once it is established upon it. In crossing this swamp from one side to the other, the surface was level and the plants named were the only ones seen, until near the shores. These had formerly been covered by a pine forest, and common plants near the foot of the slopes from the higher ground were Sweet-fern, Hair-cap Moss, Canada, Dwarf and Low Black Blueberries, Bunchberry, Wintergreen, Goldthread and Trailing Arbutus. These plants, except Sweet-fern, also grow in the Sphagnum on the margin of the swamp, while the Creeping Snowberry and Mountain Holly were also found in this habitat. On the other hand the Labrador Tea was found more than 2 feet above the water level, the Cassandra, the Black Spruce and Pale Laurel all were found growing in mineral soil above the Sphagnum, some of them competing successfully with Sweet-fern for space; the fires following the clearing of the pine probably affected the composition of the plant societies of this marginal area in a marked degree, but if so, their effects have nearly disappeared, since the peat along the borders of the mineral soil seemed never to have been burned, and there were few if any charred stumps upon the borders of the swamp. The main effects of the burnings were seen on the higher ground and in the absence of pines from the sides of the valley. If these had been present, the plants requiring much light would have been absent from the marginal area.

The peat in this swamp was about 9 feet deep, half way across the valley, in the places where tests were made, and for about 4 feet from the surface was filled with logs, and the roots and branches of trees and shrubs and such coarse plant débris. Below this depth the structure was finer, but even at the bottom of the deposit it was not well decomposed, although the color was quite dark. Below the peat, the bottom was moderately coarse, whitish sand.

### *Badwater Lake, North of Iron Mountain.*

While this is not a peat-bog lake, some interesting phases of peat formation were observed here which were not found elsewhere, and a brief account of them is not out of place here. Badwater Lake is a small lake about 5 miles north of Iron Mountain, and is situated on Sec. 1, T. 40 N., R. 31 W., in a depression which is connected by a wide, bayou-like outlet, nearly one-half mile long, with Menominee river, so that the water of the lake rises and falls with the river, at least in times of flood. This leaves a space from 3 to 4 feet above the level of the lake in ordinary stages, which is flooded periodically but which receives little silt from the river because of the distance from the stream to the lake. Upon this flooded area was a dense growth of shrubs and such trees as Balsam Poplar, White Ash and Willows. The most common shrubs were the Winterberry, Red-osier Dogwood, Common Alder, various species of Willows, Meadow-Sweet and Sweet Gale, the latter a plant usually found in much wetter places. The bush swamp widens out along the outlet and here, on the margin of the water and growing out into it, were the Creeping Spike-rush and Sweet Flag, making a broad zone of marsh, in which were growing the Marsh Cinquefoil, the Swamp Persicaria and a species of Horsetail. Beyond this unusual association was a zone of Yellow Pond Lily and Pondweeds. At the northern end of the lake the aquatic plants were much more abundant than elsewhere and covered considerable areas. From the relationship of the shrubs to these aquatic zones it would seem that the high water of the spring was able to prevent the shrubs from covering the entire area between the high water and low water marks by drowning them out, but was not able to prevent the marginal zone from occupying a space above the low water or ordinary level of the lake, since the species found there are at all stages indifferent to prolonged submergence and to considerable drying out as well. The shores of this lake, on the east and north sides, were high and steep and were covered with Norway and White Pine, which ran down nearly to the high water mark.

### *A Small Lake Near Badwater Lake.*

This was about one-half mile south of Badwater lake, in the same depression, and was remarkable in several ways. Unlike Badwater lake, it had no outlet, and was surrounded by a well-developed peat bog, covered by a vigorous growth of Cassandra and other heaths with relatively few conifers except near the shoreward edge and in small groups near the water. The growth of shrubs was much wider on the western side of the lake than upon the eastern and came down into or very near, the water all about the lake. On the north and east sides

(Plate XXIV), was a narrow zone of the Slender Sedge, growing attached to the bottom, the water being about a foot deep beyond the thick edge of the turf, which the interlaced roots and stems formed. In a few cases the sedge was sending out long sub-aqueous rhizomes, or horizontal stems, a foot or more beyond the edge of this turf, into the clear water, but, in general, the new branches were growing outward and downward, diagonally over the edge of the turf, making, apparently, for the bottom. Growth in this direction would give a slower advance, but would make the resulting turf exceedingly tough and strong. In spots, outside of this sedge, were masses of Creeping Sedge and of Dulichium growing in the shallow water. In the deeper water were a few plants of the Yellow and White Pond Lilies and of Pondweeds, but these nowhere were abundant. On this part of the shore, fallen logs, which reached across the sedge into the water, were covered with masses of Cassandra and Andromeda on all parts above the water level. Above the sedge zone, and mingling with it on the shoreward margin, was a dense growth of Cassandra with some Andromeda. The Cassandra was very large here and, in places, was unaccompanied by other plants, not even moss growing under its dense shade.

Around the south and west shores where the shrub zone was broader, Andromeda and Cassandra were the marginal and advancing plants, the Slender Sedge appearing only occasionally and then as an intramarginal plant, 15 to 20 feet back from the water. (Plate XXV). Andromeda, along these shores, formed a dense fringe, reaching out into and over the water nearly four feet, the stems living and retaining their leaves as long as the leaves were above water, which was here more than 3 feet deep in most places, and more than 11 feet, where the mat was widest, with a soft bottom of vegetable ooze. The stems of Andromeda thus submerged did not send out roots into the deep water in most cases, as they did in shallower water, but were kept alive from the shore until they were submerged, or until the dead material beneath had accumulated in sufficient quantity to form a sort of substratum or soil for them. While this is going on, other plants take advantage of the support which the aerial parts of the stems afford and grow out upon them at and above the surface, binding the mass into a firmer structure. The plants thus growing on and around the advancing Andromeda and Cassandra here, were Sphagnum, Creeping Sedge, Slender Sedge, Prickly Sedge, White Beaked-rush, Small Cranberry, Buckbean, Bulb-bearing Water Hemlock, Round Leaved Sundew, Pitcher Plant, Pale Laurel, and Marsh Cinquefoil, and all of these, but especially the sedges and shrubs, help in compacting and binding together the structure started by the Andromeda and Cassandra. A careful examination of this at its outer edge, showed it to be about a foot thick, firm and tough as though very old. A section through it, 6 inches from the margin, gave the following as its composition: A few inches of Sphagnum mixed with sedge root-stocks and leaves of various plants, then a layer of stems of Andromeda and other shrubs, very little decomposed, and mixed with the roots and rootstocks of sedges, below which was a closely interwoven mass of fine, branching shrub roots and the simpler ones of the sedges, which, together, make a very tough, compact substratum. The sedges had apparently bound the stems of the shrubs together by their roots and stems, and while this was being done the shrubs also sent out numerous finely branching roots which assisted in binding the lower parts of the structure together and added to its thickness. Below this turf, at the place where the section was made, the water seemed free from any sediment for some distance from the margin, but, nevertheless, the mat increased in thickness as one went shoreward. In shallow places, Andromeda was sending out long, slender, much-divided roots from the older nodes of the submerged stems, and it is probable that this occurs in deeper water as well, even where the roots cannot reach the bottom.

Patches of the dead stems of the Andromeda and Cassandra, beyond the present water margin and attached to the bottom in 2 or 3 feet of water, seemed to indicate that the water in the lake is higher than formerly, although it is possible that these masses may have been broken off from the margin in some way and have sunk by becoming waterlogged. The only aquatic plants seen near the border of the shrub mat, where the few plants of the Sweet-scented Water Lily growing very near to the shore in about 3 feet of water.

A small boggy lake on the east half of Sec. 7, T. 40 N., R. 30 W., in which open water covered about 15 acres, presented the following differences in detail from that last described: The shoreward border had a narrow zone of Spruce and Tamarack. There was a Sphagnum-Shrub zone of about 100 feet in width, in which the Pale Laurel, Cassandra and Andromeda were the most abundant plants, but the Buckbean, the Pitcher Plant, and the Tall and Virginia Cotton-grasses were also well distributed over the surface. Andromeda was by far the most active plant of the greater part of the marginal zone, showing distinctly as a pale green border to the open water or even forming islands 25 feet from the shore. The Cassandra formed occasional intrusions into the Andromeda zone, but was nowhere so abundant. In a small inlet on the margin there were patches of the Slender Sedge growing into the water, but not so vigorously as the Andromeda. The water along the margin of the advancing plants was from 2 to 3 feet deep, and a short distance from the shore there was a narrow, interrupted zone of the Yellow Pond Lily and the Common Floating Pondweed, into which, in some cases, the long stems of the Andromeda were pushing. In no part of the marginal zone of this lake was there any Sphagnum present with the advancing Heaths, the moss, in most cases, being several feet behind the advance of the shrubs.

### *Bog Near Twin Falls.*

The final stages of such bogs as those above, were found in a small, steep-sided depression upon the section line between section 7 and section 12 of the next township west, a short distance from Twin Falls of Menominee river. Around the depression was a good second growth of White and Norway Pine growing down the sides nearly to the level of the bog, which covered an area of a few acres only, and had no open water upon it. In the middle of the bog, however, was an irregularly elliptical area, lower than the general surface and much wetter, which probably represented the part of the water surface last covered. Upon this wet portion the principal plants were low-growing specimens of Andromeda, with relatively few of Cassandra and Pitcher Plant, Virginia Cotton-grass, a slender species of Sedge and a small amount of Sphagnum. In the zone which extended shoreward of this, a hundred feet wide, or more, Sphagnum was very abundant, Cassandra covered most of the surface, reaching a height of 2½ feet, while in the center it was but a foot high. In this zone there were old stumps of trees, while Black Spruce, Tamarack and young Norway and White Pines were scattered over its surface. Labrador Tea was present only around the shoreward margin of this bog, forming a well-marked zone, which reached, at its upper limit, a height of 3 feet above the water level. Cassandra and the Pale Laurel also grew in this zone, and were here associated with the Canada, the Common and the Low Black Blueberries, the Twin-flower, Bunch-berry, Barren Strawberry, Wintergreen, Trailing Arbutus, Sweet-fern, Common Brake, and Clintonia, all plants of the high ground associations in this locality, and abounding on the wooded slopes. Sphagnum was found in this zone growing 2 feet above the water level in the bog. No attempt was made in this tension, or meeting, zone between the bog and upland societies, to find the level of the water in the mineral soil, but it was doubtless not far from the surface. Still, the drainage was sufficient so that in the upper part of the zone there was but a slight accumulation of humus, and the plants were all growing in nearly pure sand. The Common Alder grew up the slopes about this bog to a height of about 10 feet above the water level.

This bog gave additional evidence of the step-like advances which plants make over the surface of the water, in the well-marked zonation about the central depression. Apparently the shoreward border of the depression was for a long time the limit of open water, until the bottom was built up nearly to the surface, and then, in a dry period, the closing-in was accomplished and it is now only a matter of a short time when the surface will be of uniform height above the water level, as in a few years, Sphagnum and shrubs will cover the surface of the depression and fill it up, if the usual order of succession of plants goes on in ordinary course.

### *Lakes Near Sagola.*

Of quite a different type from those just described, was a small lake a few miles south of Sagola in T. 42 N., R. 30 W. The lake was in a slight depression in a sand plain and had been surrounded by a Tamarack-Spruce-Cedar swamp, but the trees had suffered severely from fires, the surface of the swamp had been lowered from the same cause, and there were extensive tracts of Cat-tail growing under the dead trees and in depressions. The water in the lake was shallow, and had a good marginal zone of the Yellow Pond Lily and tracts of the same species scattered over the surface. Bordering the open water, was a zone of Sedge and Sweet Gale, extending to below the present water level, and shoreward of this was a zone of Cassandra and other heaths with Sphagnum in abundance, and still nearer the high ground was the Conifer zone. The Sweet Gale was here apparently the most active species in pushing out from the shore, as it was present along much of the margin, lakeward of other plants, and grew luxuriantly in the shallow water. This shrub grows so tall and is so dense of foliage that few other species follow it closely, so it does not build as firm a structure as other species do. From the depth of the water in which this plant was growing in places, there had probably been a rather recent rise of water in this lake.

A small lake, a quarter of a mile or so north of the one just described, and upon the east side of the road, was quite dissimilar in the plant associations which bordered it, although apparently no deeper. In this there were a few plants of the Yellow Pond Lily, much scattered. There was a very narrow zone of Andromeda with Cassandra, the Slender and other Sedges and quantities of the Marsh Shield-fern mixed with the shrubs. Growing up close to the marginal zone, was an open growth of Black Spruce, Cedar and Tamarack, associated with which were Andromeda, Buckbean, Marsh Shield-fern, Cassandra, the Small Cranberry, Marsh Cinquefoil, Cat-tail, Pitcher Plant, Marsh Bell-flower, Common Alder, Joe-Pye Weed, Wool-grass, Myrtle-leaved Willow, Three-leaved Solomon's Seal, and the Tall White Bog Orchis.

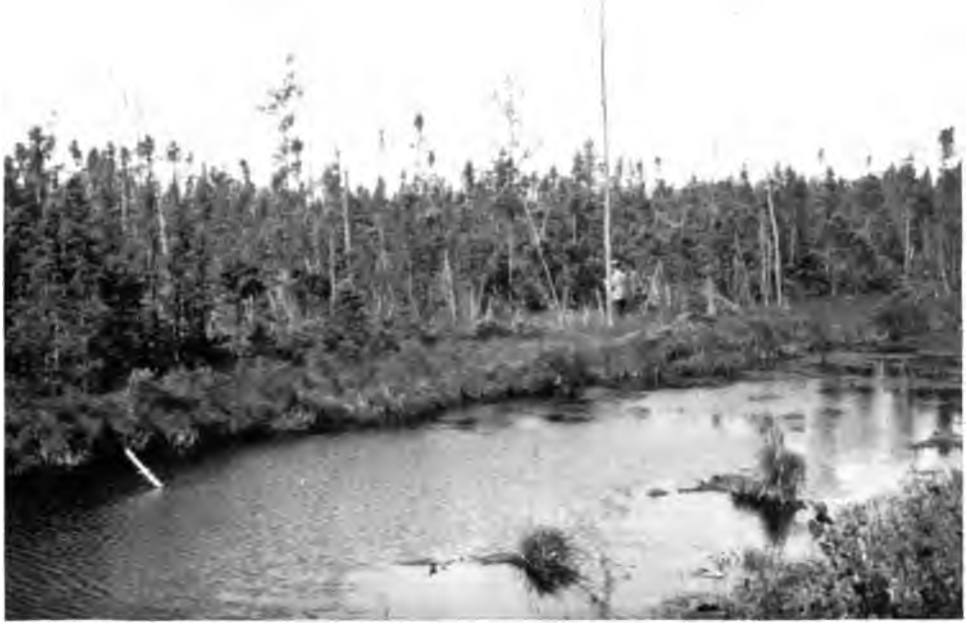
There were no indications here of any recent advance of the marginal zone lakeward, as the trees growing nearly to the water's edge were of good size and were many years old; the narrow zone of Andromeda about and in the edge of the water was thrifty, but was not making much growth into the water, and this may account for the lack of width, but there was no apparent reason for the slow progress lakeward, although a more careful study might reveal one.

### *Bogs and Lakes Near Crystal Falls.*

The region about Crystal Falls, especially to the east and northeast, has many extensive swampy and boggy tracts which are covered by peat to a greater or less depth. These were originally Tamarack-Spruce-Cedar swamps now burned or cut over, and many of them have small lakes with more or less of open marsh in them. In general, these deposits, as far as tested, were found to be shallow, only a few feet in depth, but near the middle of the more extensive ones they were often more than 12 feet deep and the peat was of good quality.

In a few examples studied, the plant societies were noted, all, however, showing the effects of fire at some rather recent period in their history.

*A Mature Bog:* An area 2 or 3 miles north of Crystal Falls was evidently burned over 10 or 15 years ago, at which time the large Spruces and Tamaracks upon it had been killed, but since then a good growth of young trees of the same species has started. The surface was uniformly covered with a dense growth of Sphagnum associated with shrubs, of which the Labrador Tea and Cassandra were the abundant species, with a very little Andromeda, Pale Laurel and Small Cranberry growing with them. The water level was about 2 feet below the surface of the Sphagnum. Of herbaceous plants the Few-seeded Sedge and the Few-flowered Sedge were the most frequent types, but the Sheathed Cotton-grass, Pitcher Plant and Three-leaved Solomon's Seal were somewhat common. The Pitcher Plants were buried deep in Sphagnum, generally only the mouths of the openings in the tubular leaves showing, and as these plants were thriving, an apparent secondary use for the peculiar tubular structure of the leaves is suggested, viz.: that it gives exposure to the light when the leaves otherwise would



Old growth of stunted Black Spruce at Balsam, Iron County. The few Tamaracks are somewhat taller and show more open tops. The open water in the foreground is a ditch cut by the railroad, along which the overhanging Cassandra may be seen.

U of M

M10U

cease functioning, or nearly so, from being overgrown by the Sphagnum. As it is, the expanded lip of the leaf, which is not covered, and the interior of the tube give opportunity for the light to reach relatively large green surfaces, so that photosynthesis is able to go on without difficulty. It is even possible that the water held in the cavity of the leaf aids in diffusing and refracting the light so that it reaches all parts of the interior of the "pitcher."

This bog represents the general character of the mature phases of bog associations in the region. Of the immature phases, where there were lakes with marshes and bogs about them, a number were seen and a few interesting localities were studied.

*Camp Lake, a Partly Filled Lake:* Among these, Camp Lake, situated on sections 27 and 34, T. 44 N., R. 33 W., was visited, and found to have a wet sedge marsh around it, but next to the water was a narrower zone of Cassandra and Andromeda, which, as usual in cases where this occurred, was pushing out over and into the water. The Cassandra stems were extended horizontally more than 3 feet, and those of the Andromeda often 4 or 5 feet, into water at least 3 feet deep.

Under the margin of the advancing shrubs began a well-developed zone of Yellow Pond Lily, which was 50 or more feet broad, and beyond this was an aquatic northern form of Bur-reed growing in the deeper water, and forming a well-marked zone, lakeward of the Pond Lily zone.

Associated with the shrubs were the Slender Sedge, Marsh Cinquefoil, Pitcher Plant, Sphagnum, Marsh St. John's-wort, and the Round-leaved Sundew. The Sphagnum was growing upon the established turf a foot above the water level, and did not extend out into the water among the advancing shrubs. In the sedge zone were patches of Cassandra, extending shoreward nearly to the bank, and in many cases the remains of shrubs, charred by fire, showed that that destructive agent had recently modified conditions in this area. The most common plant of the sedge zone was the Bottle Sedge, but with it were the Slender and Mud Sedges, the Blue Flag, Wild Calla, Marsh Cinquefoil, and Sphagnum and Hypnum mosses below them in the wetter places. The conspicuous plant of this association was, however, the Bottle Sedge, which grew very tall and, with its yellowish foliage and large fruiting spikes, made a striking appearance.

Shoreward of the sedge zone was a well-defined zone of Blue-Joint Grass, several feet wide, which was above the water level and which landward merged abruptly into the plant society of the burned over pine lands.

The unusual relation of the sedge and shrub zones here, and the fact that the shrub zone is higher than the surface of the sedge zone, may indicate that a severe fire, at a time when the water in the lake was low, destroyed much of the peat which had accumulated, leaving only a narrow border near the water in which the peat was too wet to burn; this was the nucleus of the present growth of shrubs at the margin of the lake, and in the depression behind it, the sedges have since established themselves and the water level has risen until a wet marsh is the result. The fact that the lake lies in a region which has been cleared of pine, and that evidences of fire were seen below the water level at the time when the lake was visited, makes the hypothesis advanced seem the more reasonable.

*Spring Bog Near Camp Lake:* Camp lake is a partly filled depression in an elevated portion of a dissected gravel plain and has no outlet above the surface, but about one-eighth of a mile to the west is a steep slope, at the bottom of which, 50 feet below the level of the lake, is a large spring-bog, covered around the margin by an old growth of Cedar, Tamarack and Spruce, with an open bog and small lake in the middle. This is fed by a great number of powerful springs, and is apparently one of the outlets for the water of the lake, although the porous nature of much of the higher land in the vicinity would not preclude the supposition that these are ordinary seepage springs, if it were not for the large number which are to be found over the bottom of the depression and the proximity of the lake without other outlet. The pool formed by the union of the waters of these springs was of considerable size, surrounded by a floating or quaking bog, bordered by stools of the Bristly Sedge, together with quantities of the Marsh Shield-fern and the Sweet Gale. The latter bordered the shallow water of the pond, in which were some plants of the Yellow Pond Lily and many small islands of Sweet Gale. Shoreward of the Sedge-Sweet Gale zone, was a broader one, covered by Sphagnum to a depth of a few inches, where the water level was 4 inches below the surface; and growing in the soil thus formed were Buckbean, Small Cranberry, short, small plants of Andromeda and Cassandra, Cotton-grass, Pitcher-Plant, Marsh Cinquefoil, Mud Sedge, Marsh Shield-fern and several Orchids.

This marsh gave place, landward, to a slightly dryer one, with deeper Sphagnum and larger shrubs in which were clumps and individual trees of young Tamarack. The herbaceous plants here were several species of sedges, among which Magellan's, the Lesser Panicled and the little Prickly Sedges, were the most noticeable, Buckbean, Pitcher Plant, and Orchids, here very abundant, of the three species, the Tall White Bog Orchis, the Tall Leafy Green Orchis and Ladies' Tresses. In parts of this area were beds of Andromeda nearly buried in Sphagnum.

Still nearer the high ground, was the mature Conifer zone, rather open on the pondward side, but dense farther in shore. In this, the Sphagnum had built up mounds, in places from 2 to 3 feet high. At the latter height, however, the Hair-cap Moss was almost invariably on top, and where it was not, the Reindeer Lichen replaced it. On the tops of these mounds, growing among the mosses, were Labrador Tea, Bunch-berry, Creeping Snowberry, Twin-flower, Goldthread, Marsh White Violet, Fringed Polygala, Mountain Maple, young Tamarack, Common Horsetail, Goose grass, Clintonia, Red Raspberry, Three-leaved Solomon's Seal, and Small Bishop's-cap.

Between the hummocks built up by the Sphagnum around shrubs and tree roots, often in the water, were found Wild Calla, Marsh Marigold, Swamp Saxifrage, Pitcher Plant, Round-leaved Sundew, Buckbean, Small Cranberry and Marsh Shield-fern. In parts of this zone, where it was not deeply shaded, Sweet Gale grew with Labrador Tea and Cassandra upon the stools about the roots of trees, 2 to 3 feet above the water level, where Sphagnum was giving place to Reindeer Lichen, thus growing at the greatest distance of any of the marginal shrubs above the water level, as well as below it.

The water in the springs was cold and clear with an irony taste, but the outlets were often clogged with dense masses of Algae, through which the water bubbled up and flowed away in small streams. Around these outlets were sometimes beds of Hypnum moss, with which was usually growing quantities of Smaller Bur-Marigold. The spring outlet-streams were usually lost in the marsh, before reaching the pond, but a few of the stronger ones persisted until they reached it; the surface of the bog sloped slightly from the older timber zone to the pond and apparently had been built up as the result of peat development following the constant outflow of water over the surface, which created conditions favorable to its development. This and a similar bog near Runkle Lake, about a mile and a quarter east of Crystal Falls were the only spring-formed bogs visited. The Runkle Lake bog was also caused by springs which were the only outlet of the lake, but was more nearly of the ordinary type of mature Tamarack-Spruce-Cedar association, such as has been frequently described.

### *Bogs Near Amasa.*

*A River-Flooded Lake:* The point farthest north which was reached in this region was the town of Amasa, T. 44 N., R. 33 W., where on section 5, a small lake near Little Hemlock river, was examined.

The marginal zone here was made up entirely of Sweet Gale, which was advancing over the water, and the Tussock Sedge, shoreward, of which was a continuous zone of Cat-tail, Sweet Gale and Common Alder, sometimes mixed and sometimes in dense patches of a single species. Still nearer the shore was a marsh in which the Tussock Sedge was the dominant plant and had built up tussocks to a height of more than two feet, with nearly dry ground between. Some Sweet Gale grew between the tussocks and upon them were thrifty plants of Cassandra and Blue-Joint Grass. The plants, beside the Sweet Gale, which were found growing with the Cat-tail, were Sphagnum, the Marsh, Willow-herb, Marsh Shield-fern, Marsh St. John's-wort and Marsh Cinquefoil. Under dense patches of Sweet Gale in this zone, there was some Sphagnum and a few small light colored plants of Marsh St. John's-wort and Touch-me-not. The water level in this zone was about 6 inches below the surface of the quaking turf-like structure upon which the plants were growing.

The shoreward marginal zone was made up chiefly of shrubs, of which the Sweet Gale was the most abundant, but the Common Alder, Buckthorn and Cassandra were common, while upon the tussocks of sedge were occasional plants of Labrador Tea. Between this zone and the high ground vegetation, there was formerly a zone of conifers, as charred stumps showed, but when visited no trees existed there. The lake was in a gravel plain and was formerly surrounded by a pine forest.

The close connection of this lake with the river suggests the probability of periodical flooding of the marginal zone, which in turn, may account for the mixed character of the associations of the various zones and the wide distribution of the Sweet Gale.

*A Mature Bog:* On section 6 of the same township, was a well preserved bog of the mature type, which was characteristic of the bogs of the vicinity. The surface was covered by a dense growth of Sphagnum, which was from 1 to 1½ feet deep, and the water level from 1½ to 2 feet below the surface of the growing moss. The trees were chiefly stunted Black Spruces, which were mixed with a few Tamaracks. The shrubs were Cassandra, the dominant species, Andromeda and Pale Laurel, common, and Labrador Tea rather frequent, but growing best on the tops of the Sphagnum knolls and on stumps and roots of trees, and it was the only shrubby heath on the dryer ground of the margin, except the Blueberries which were here associated with it. The herbs growing in the Sphagnum were Pitcher Plant, Three-leaved Solomon's Seal, Sheathed and Virginia Cotton-grass, Three-seeded Sedge, Creeping Snowberry; Mountain Ash was abundant near the shoreward margin with the Labrador Tea. The peat here was full of roots and fallen logs and about 10 feet deep where tested.

### *Spruce Bog at Balsam.*

At Balsam station (section 13, T. 44 N., R. 33 W.) the junction of the Amasa branch of the C. & N. W. R. R. and the Superior division of the C. M. & St. P. R. R., was a fine example of a Spruce bog. (Plate XXVI.) The Spruce was much stunted and rather sparsely distributed over the surface, with a few small Tamaracks mixed with it. The surface of the bog was covered with a Sphagnum-Heath association with Cassandra the dominant plant, and Andromeda and Pitcher Plant abundant.

Over much of the surface the water was less than a foot down, but in places where the Spruces were grouped together the Sphagnum had grown up around them to a height of more than 2 feet above water and in such places, Labrador Tea and Canada Blueberry were frequent on the tops of the hummocks. On some of these hummocks the Hair-Cap moss had established itself and frequently the Reindeer Lichen as well. Besides the plants mentioned, the general bog association included the Small Cranberry, the Virginia Cotton-grass, Three-leaved Solomon's Seal, and Few-flowered Sedge. The Spruces were many of them infested by the parasite, the Small Mistletoe, and there were hundreds of dead Spruces which seemed to have been killed by this pest, while many of the living ones were distorted by its attacks, showing the characteristic "witches' brooms," due to abnormal branching. In the ditches beside the railroads were found Cassandra and Andromeda frequently nearly filling the ditch, while in some places Sphagnum was growing abundantly as an aquatic, one of the very few observations of this character made during the entire trip and apparently a rare occurrence, even in similar situations. Where holes which reach below the water level are cut in the peat upon which Sphagnum is growing, as in the case of these ditches, the moss will sometimes establish itself in the water. That it does not always do so, or even usually, may be due to the fact that the species which can live in the water are not present when the holes are cut.

In places where fire had burned off the surface layers of moss and shrubs so that the water level was near the surface, the Few-flowered Sedge and Pitcher Plant were prominent, but the other plants of the Sphagnum-Heath association were usually present with them and apparently would soon surpass them.

This body of peat, while not of great extent, is near others and most favorably situated for exploitation in connection with the iron mines at Amasa and Crystal Falls. It is, however, rather shallow, averaging about 6 feet in depth where tested, and was only 7 feet, near the middle. The peat was rather light colored and not well decomposed.

In several places, "islands" rising above the general surface were noted. Some of these were burned off and showed a formation of mineral soil, with 2 or 3 feet of peat above the water level. On such islands Labrador Tea grew with great luxuriance. The railroad grades were, in part, covered by grasses, but in places the bog heaths, especially Cassandra, had established themselves upon them, and the Canada Blueberry was often a dominant plant near the top of the 4-foot gravel embankment.

### *Sand Plain Lakes and Bogs South of Crystal Falls.*

In the extensive sand plain, south of Crystal Falls are a large number of depressions, some of which have bogs in the mature stages, while others have lakes with scarcely a trace of filling. Some of these unfilled lakes are shallow, while some of the partly filled ones are very deep off the edge of the boggy margin, so that it seems apparent that depth does not control the rate of filling, although if other things were equal this would be the case. The following examples from this sand plain region illustrate this interesting point, as well as show the conditions of peat formation existing there.

In the vicinity of Clara Lake, T. 42 N., R. 32 W., the open plain is rolling in character with occasionally a rock hill a hundred or more feet above the general surface. The prevailing flora is that of burned over pine lands, and the chief species of pines here are the Jack and Norway, while Scarlet Oak, Poplars, Sweet-fern, the low Blueberries and various dry ground grasses and sedges constitute the greater part of the rest of the flora.

*A Rejuvenated Sedge Bog Near Clara Lake:* In a small depression, a mile or so south of Clara Lake, the water was about 3 feet deep when visited, and in it was a dense mass of Slender Sedge covering the deepest part of the pond. Surrounding this was a well marked zone of Bottle Sedge, growing in water 1 and 1½ feet deep, shoreward of which was a zone of Tall Manna-grass and Blue Flag. From the water's edge up to about 2 feet above it, was a zone of Willows and Meadow-Sweet, and above this, Blue-Joint Grass, Sweet-fern and Tall Blackberry formed a well marked zone around the depression. This was an unusual combination, and was probably the result of rather recent disturbance of plant relations by fires which destroyed the older association, and the ground was then occupied by the plants nearest at hand. There was no indication that the bottom of this depression, shallow as it was, had ever been filled with peat.

*Two Shallow Lakes in the Sand Plain:* In a shallow lake on sections 21 and 22 of the same township, was a more usual association, but one not frequently observed in the region: the Yellow Pond Lily formed a wide zone, in which were some Pondweeds and White Pond Lily plants. The shoreward margin of this, was marked by a narrow zone in which the Lake Bulrush was the dominant plant, but growing with it, the Creeping Spike-rush was abundant in places, as well as the Cat-tail. Near the water's edge, but growing in it, were small areas of Dulichium. At the water's edge or a little below it was a well marked zone of chiefly Sweet Gale, but in places the Slender Sedge and Tussock Sedge replaced it. This zone of Sweet Gale extended up to about 3 feet above the level of the water, where it was replaced by an association in which the Common Alder was the most notable plant. In the Sedge areas were Marsh Cinquefoil, Marsh St. John's-wort, Marsh Bell-flower, Wild Mint, Great Water Dock and in the higher parts of such places were some Sphagnum. Cassandra formed a slight admixture with the Sweet Gale in a few spots. This lake, with abundant aquatic vegetation, was characterized by the narrow zone of marginal plants, which had made no progress away from the shore, so that there was no border of peat.

Another apparently very shallow lake was visited 2 or 3 miles southwest of the last one, which, while it was scarcely more advanced in the filling process than the one above described, was of sufficiently different character to warrant brief description. It is located in a region of steep, high, sand and gravel ridges, which were formerly covered by a dense forest of Norway Pine, now replaced by shrubs and Poplars with a few small pines. In the lake were scattered plants of the Yellow Pond Lily, but nothing approaching a zonal development. The margin of the pond had a border of Cassandra and Andromeda from a few feet to a few yards wide, both species reaching out into and over the water, the latter rather more frequently than the former. In this border were some Spruces and Tamaracks in the part nearest the shore and Sphagnum, with its surface 1 to 2 feet above the water level, was constant in all the lakeward margin of this zone, and in many cases was growing out beyond the limits of the shrubs upon fallen logs, but was nowhere seen in the water in such places. In this Sphagnum-shrub bordering zone were the Buckbean, Pitcher Plant, and Round Leaved Sundew near the water level, and back among the trees on higher places with Cassandra were the Small Cranberry, Labrador Tea, Creeping Snowberry and Choke-berry, here noted for the first time in a bog in this region. These plants ascended the slope to a height of about 3 feet above the water and were competing with the Canada and Low Blueberries, and Common Brake for the ground. In this tension zone were also found the Mountain Holly, and the White and Norway Pines.

*Deep Lakes Near Stager:* South and west of Stager, were two remarkably deep lakes of the tarn type separated by a high, narrow, steep-sided gravel ridge, on which the wagon road runs. The slopes of this ridge were continuous with those of the bottom of the western lake, which was very clear and deep, and apparently also with those of the eastern one in which the water was also very deep. The western lake had only a very narrow marginal zone of Cedar and accompanying plants, and in one place a small area of Slender Sedge. These plants had not begun to advance over the water at any place and the steeply sloping bottom could be seen to a depth of 25 or 30 feet below the surface, and water logged trees and similar débris distinctly seen lying on the slopes.

The bank upon the eastern side of the road was even steeper than that on the western, nearly perpendicular in one place, for several feet, and apparently ran without a change of slope into the lake, which was somewhat larger than the other. About this lake, however, there was a well developed heath bog, several hundred feet wide, all around the open water, in which Cassandra and Andromeda were the dominant plants, except for several rods of the shoreward margin where there was a well developed Tamarack-Black Spruce zone.

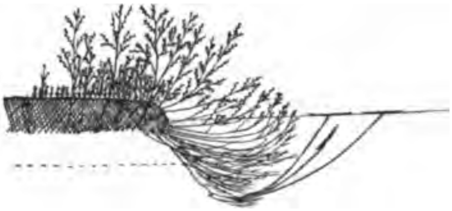


FIG. 13. Diagram showing way in which Andromeda and Cassandra built out a mat over the water in a lake near Stager.

The Andromeda and Cassandra were growing out from the edge of the tough mat, somewhat as shown in Figure 13, over and into the water to a distance of 3 or 4 feet, where the water was so deep that the bottom was not visible, although the water was sufficiently clear to allow the light to penetrate it for more than 10 feet. There were large masses of submerged branches and twigs of the shrubs in the water below the living ones and apparently it was these which furnished the substratum upon which finally the shoots, sent out from the margin of the mat, took root, and gained sufficient stability to permit other plants to grow out upon them. Growing out from under the edge of the fringe of partly submerged shrubs, from an invisible base of attachment, which may have been the lower part of the mass of branches just described, were a few plants of Yellow Pond Lily, but nothing like a zone of this species was present. There were no plants of other species growing upon the partly submerged shrubs, except a few plants of the Small Cranberry, but where the turf was established, Sphagnum was present, and with it the Small Cranberry was very abundant and associated with the Few Flowered Sedge, Pitcher Plant, Tall Cotton-grass, Pale Laurel, Three-leaved Solomon's Seal, Scheuchzeria and Buckbean. Cassandra, Pale Laurel and Labrador Tea were the chief shrubs of the conifer zone.

These two basins were the deepest small ones visited, and no cause was apparent why the larger one should be so far advanced toward filling, or at least toward being covered, while the smaller one, with identical structure and conditions should not have begun to fill, except that the proper plants had not become established about it. Neither was there any assignable cause why this deep lake should have so far advanced in developing into a bog while the much shallower ones described above, with the same plants about some of them, had made little or no progress in such development. In the case of the deep lakes just described there had been no severe fires about them in recent years, since there were mature living trees of several species about their borders.

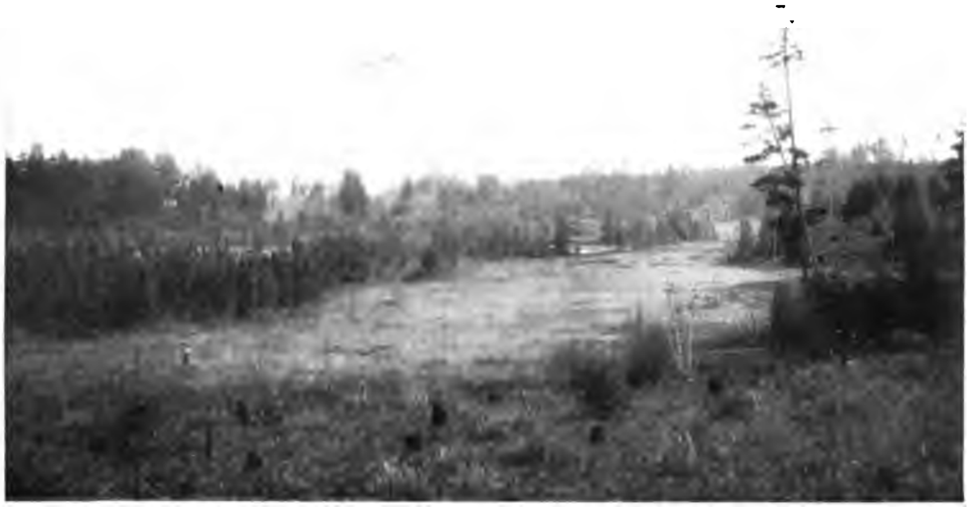
*Mature Bogs Near Mary Lake:* In the vicinity of Mary Lake, T. 42 N., R. 31 W., also in the gravel plain region, two mature bogs were visited. The first of these was a heath bog, highest in the middle, with dense growth of Cassandra and Andromeda on it, around which were either stretches of open water, or a broad zone of Slender Sedge and Bottle Sedge, with water a foot or more deep, while the landward margin from the water level up to 3 feet above it, had a zone of Cassandra again, here growing in sand with Meadow-sweet, Low Blueberry, Bearberry, Twin-flower and other plants, some of which are important members of the Norway Pine association of the surrounding barrens.

A short distance south of Mary Lake was a large depression in which was an extensive sedge marsh, the only one seen in the entire expedition, in which the Few-seeded Sedge was the dominant plant over so large an area. This was apparently a rejuvenated mature bog in which fire had swept away the plant association of the mature stages and at the same time lowered the surface of the peat to the water level; thus conditions favorable for the growth of the sedge were developed, and as the plant is frequent in mature bogs in the more open and moister places, where fire might not destroy it, it may have spread from these places as centers until it covered the whole area. This would be especially the case if there were, at the same time, increase in the rainfall sufficient to make the burned-over peat very wet.

Evidence of burning existed in this bog in the form of numerous charred tree stumps, with more or less exposed roots; these served as the nuclei of islands of Cassandra and Sphagnum. Towards the middle of the marsh the Cassandra became more generally spread over the surface, and here there were stunted Black Spruces and Tamaracks.

Around the Cassandra and other shrubs, and the trees, Sphagnum was usually found building up the surface a foot or two above the water level. This moss was also abundant in the shallow water of the Sedge marsh, rising but an inch or so above the surface, or at most only 6 inches. Aside from the Cassandra plants and groups of Andromeda, Dwarf Birch and the Myrtle-leaved Willow were the centers of Sphagnum islands.

Growing in the water with the Few-seeded Sedge were the Mud Sedge, the Slender Cotton-grass, Scheuchzeria, and Flat-leaved Bladderwort, while the Pitcher Plant and Small Cranberry were occasionally found upon the Sphagnum islands. An unusual association was found in places, in the wet, shoreward margin of this bog, where the Three-seeded and Little Prickly Sedges and Wool-grass formed groups of low hummocks. Still shoreward of this, above the water level and outside the bog, growing in the sand, was a zone of Alder, Dwarf Birch, Pale Laurel, Labrador Tea, Choke Berry and Mountain Holly. These plants were all thrifty and were noticeably larger and stronger than those growing in the bog and grew as much as a hundred feet from its margin. The Labrador Tea was the most abundant of the heath plants here, and in many places covered the ground for a distance of from 50 to 100 feet from the edge of the bog and successfully held it, in competition with the usual sand plain vegetation, here represented by Norway and Jack Pines, Beaked Hazel-nut, Tall Blackberry, Prairie Willow,



Spruce—Shrub—Sedge-bog near Lake Mary. The dense growth of Black Spruce is shown on the left, the small remnant of open water to the right of the center. The hills around have White and Norway Pine, or stump land, with low shrubs and herbs.

U OF M

Sweet-fern, Low and Canada Blueberries, Trailing Arbutus, Bunchberry, Common Brake, Clintonia, Cow Wheat and Hair-cap Moss.

The occurrence of Labrador Tea in this association of well known dry ground plants, is exceedingly suggestive as to its power to resist drought; in the observations made up to this time it had been noted that this plant was practically always found in the dryest parts of the bogs in which it grew, but this was the first observation made, and amply confirmed by later ones, where it was a member in good standing of the drought-resisting or xerophytic association of the sand plains, away from true bog conditions.

The climax of this series of sand-plain bogs was about a mile west of Mary Lake, in a large depression in a rolling part of the sand-plain. (Plate XXXII.)

In one place, to the south of the center, was a small pond of open water, very shallow with a bottom of finely divided peat in which were growing the White and Yellow Pond Lilies and the Water Shield. This pond presented a peculiar problem, in the fact that the borders of it seemed to have been broken up rather recently, possibly by the wallowing of bears or trampling of deer so that its area had increased. The margin was irregular and in places in the water there were masses of dead shrubs with tops standing above the water, not as islands, but as if attached to irregular fragments of larger masses or the submerged remains of the former shore. Around the present margin was a zone of bare peat several feet wide, a very unusual condition, extending nearly around the entire pond. Back from this, was an association very rich in species for this zone, in which Sphagnum was very abundant and covered the surface. Growing in it were Pitcher Plant, Slender and Virginia Cotton-grasses, Mud Sedge, Scheuchzeria, White Beaked-rush, Few-seeded Sedge, Small Cranberry and small plants of Cassandra and Andromeda. This was surrounded by almost pure Black Spruce growth, the trees stunted and scattered, in which Sphagnum had raised the surface in mounds, in places nearly 3 feet above the water level. Here the shrubs and other plants were in about the association usually found in such bogs, but in much of the open space between the trees, the Few-seeded Sedge was rather more abundant than was usual in such places. Towards the shore, the Sphagnum was not as deep, the water was nearer the surface and the Spruces had been killed by fires. In this zone the Few-seeded Sedge and Cassandra were the chief plants over considerable areas, in the wetter places the sedge, and in dryer ones the shrub predominating. The amount of peat in this bog was large, as the depth was over 10 feet in most of the area, but it was very wet, so that in many places near the margin the mass could be shaken without much effort. In dryer times it is probable that there would be less percent of water in the peat, as the water level sank, but it is doubtful if such a deposit could be utilized under present conditions on account of the cost of preparing it for fuel.

### *Bog Near Iron River.*

The only bog visited in the vicinity of Iron River, was found about a small lake 2 miles south of the town. The lake, or pond, was very shallow, showing bare flats in many places, with a peaty bottom and was full of small islands, covered by Broad-leaved Arrow-head, Bristly Sedge, and Creeping Spike-rush. The surface of the water was covered in most places by Pondweeds and Yellow Pond Lily, with considerable of the Arrow-head in shallower places. The marginal zone was from 3 to 5, up to 10 feet wide, in places examined, was easily shaken, and was occupied almost exclusively by sedges, of which the Slender Sedge and the Creeping Spike-rush were the ones making most rapid advance over the mud bottom. The Tussock, Bristly, River-bank, and Porcupine Sedges, were all more or less engaged in forming tussocks along the margin and in this way were aiding in extending the zone. In a few places the Lake Bulrush was established near the shore, but covered no large areas. Dulichium, Buckbean and Marsh Cinquefoil, and in a few places, Sphagnum were also forming small patches here and there in this zone, but Sphagnum was quite rare, and the other plants unimportant. Shoreward of this zone was a much broader one of Sphagnum, with which were growing Tamarack, Common Alder, Cassandra, Pale Laurel, Marsh Cinquefoil, Small Cranberry, Pitcher Plant, Blue Flag and several sedges. Still farther shoreward, was a dense growth of Cassandra, and a zone of Sedges, Andromeda, Pale Laurel and Meadow-sweet growing with thin Sphagnum ground-cover. This portion was practically all above water level, so that the peat was firm and dry, even in paths a foot or more below the general level of the moss. The surface sloped gently upward to higher ground and grew more and more dry, but the heaths persisted into a zone where the Hair-cap Moss replaced the Sphagnum almost entirely. In a part of this, the Pale Laurel was exceptionally abundant and vigorous, while Cassandra and Andromeda also were growing better than usual. With these shrubs were the Marsh Cinquefoil, Sedges, Blue Flag, and some other species. At the top of the slope was a zone of Blue-Joint Grass and still higher a thin growth of Poplars. Fire had swept over a part of this bog, but so long ago that most of the plants had nearly reestablished themselves, although clearing had undoubtedly increased the importance of the shrub and herb societies, above the marginal zone. The fact that the surface of the bog sloped, and that the water was so shallow, suggested a recent lowering of the water by ditching, but no time was available to find out whether this had been done.

### *Mature Peat Bog North of Bessemer.*

During a two days' stay at Bessemer, a trip was made to a large peat bog on Eight Mile Creek, north of the city. This was one of the most interesting bogs visited, in spite of the monotony of the conditions, for it had never been disturbed by fire or by man. The swamp or bog was covered by a growth of Black Spruce with some Tamaracks along the borders and occasionally in other places. The Spruce trees were of small size, slow-growing, as shown by the distance between the whorls of branches and were covered with lichens. The ground was usually covered with Sphagnum and shrubs but in many places the shade of the trees or shrubs was so dense that apparently the moss was unable to grow. Along the creek Cassandra grew very luxuriantly, reaching a height of about 5 feet and forming such a dense cover that nothing was growing under it, although there was a sparse growth of old Tamaracks overtopping it. At a distance of from 8 to 15 rods from the stream the Cassandra was less dense, and Sphagnum and Black Spruce became the most noticeable plants. The Spruces were irregularly grouped with larger or smaller open spaces between them, thus forming a somewhat open stand. In the denser shade of the clumps there were practically no plants with the Sphagnum, when this was found in such places, except the Creeping Snowberry, which was frequently found alone, covering the ground with its delicate tracery. The more open places between the denser clumps of Spruce, had an association in which, besides Cassandra, were Labrador Tea, Canada Blueberry, Pale Laurel, and, rarely Andromeda; Small Cranberry and Creeping Snowberry often formed dense mats over the Sphagnum. The Labrador Tea and Laurel had very broad and large leaves in this locality, probably an adaption to the reduced light, since plants in more open places, had much smaller, narrow ones. The herbaceous plants noted here were Stemless Ladies' Slipper, Indian Pipe, Wintergreen, Three-leaved Solomon's Seal, Pitcher Plant, Few-flowered and Few-seeded Sedges. This association occurred with slight variations as to the number of individuals of the given species, according to the depth of the Sphagnum, or the amount of shade developed by the trees, over wide areas in this bog, in fact in every part visited.

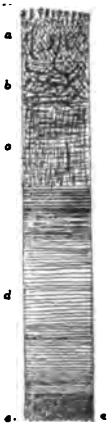


FIG. 14. Section of Bog north of Bessemer.

a. Sphagnum and shrub remains.
b. Sedge and shrub remains, poorly decomposed.
c. Sedge roots and fine material.
d. Structureless peat.
e. Clay and sand.

The peat was tested in several places; the first section gave the following: Sphagnum 1 foot; coarse, poorly decomposed peat with roots of trees and shrubs, 1 foot; below this the peat was finer grained and compact, with an abundance of sedge roots and fragments of rootstocks for 2 feet; at 9 feet fine clay 3 inches, below which were sand and gravel. Water at 1 foot from the surface. (Fig. 14.)

Another test showed the Sphagnum to be from 8 to 19 inches deep, abruptly changing to compact, rather coarse, dark-brown peat, with abundant sedge remains, to a depth of 6 feet, then sand. The water level averaged 1 foot below the surface here. At a third station, a long distance from the second, the Sphagnum was about a foot thick in the lower places and nearly 2 feet in the higher, where it was growing about shrubs, etc., i. e., variations of the surface were largely due to the variation in depth of Sphagnum. Below this the peat was rather coarse and dark colored, to a depth of 9 feet, with 5 inches of fine clay at the bottom and then sand. The water level here was about as it was in the other holes.

It is evident from these borings, and numerous other tests here, that Sphagnum is only a superficial plant, which is of recent introduction upon the surface of the bog, for Sphagnum remains do not appear in the more compact peat below the bottom of the moss. The peat formed by Sphagnum is so characteristic, so different in texture and color from that formed by any other plant, that it is not to be mistaken, when once it has been examined, for anything else, and peat with any considerable amount of the plant present, is very readily recognizable. The tests made point to the fact that this deposit was built up largely by other plants than Sphagnum, and that for a considerable time before the Sphagnum established itself, the sedges were abundant and were efficient in building up the surface of the bog. What the plants were which built up the lower parts of the deposit, was not determined, but there was no indication that they were sphagnum. In this deposit of peat, the plants seemed to have followed the same succession and developed the same association as the climax, as those which were examined further south, and in most respects the flora would be identical with that in spruce swamps throughout the region studied, but it would be very rare in more southern parts of the state to find such an extensive development of peat in so shallow a depression, if any were formed in it at all.

### *Lakes and Bogs in the Keweenaw Peninsula.*

For the sake of comparison, and to determine, if possible, whether any different factors or plants entered into the formation of peat bogs in the northern part of the Northern Peninsula, from those found in the southern part, a brief reconnaissance was made in the region about Houghton, during the first week in September. A trip was made to the Winona mine near which there were several small lakes, partly filled, and some bogs representing completely filled ones.

*Bog Near Winona Mine:* The first locality visited was a small bog in a heavily wooded country, the chief high-ground trees being Yellow Birch and Sugar Maple. The bog was in section 32, T. 52 N., R. 36 W., was elliptical in shape, with a distinct zonal arrangement of the plants about it and had in the center an open marsh in which sedges and shrubby heaths were about equally abundant. This area of open marsh was about 250 feet long by 150 feet wide. The water level was about 15 inches below the surface of the higher parts of the mat of vegetation, and a foot or less in the lower ones. Sphagnum covered the surface and was the cause of its elevation above the water level, and with it, the following plants were found: Cassandra, Andromeda, Pale Laurel, all rather small and low, the Andromeda more common here than in other zones, the Small Cranberry, Pitcher Plant, the Few-seeded, Mud, and Few-flowered Sedges and Cotton-grass. Shoreward of this area was a zone of Black Spruce and Tamarack, the former dominant, with the following associates: Sphagnum, Labrador Tea, Cassandra, Pale Laurel, Andromeda, and on elevations of the surface, with Labrador Tea, the Canada Blueberry. The herbs here noted were Magellan's Sedge, the Sheathed and Virginia Cotton-grasses, and Pitcher Plant. This zone gives place in turn, to one in which the Spruce is wanting, except very young plants, and the Tamaracks are very large. With these were young Red Maples, White Pines and Yellow Birches, and besides most of the shrubs and herbs of the other zones, Creeping Snowberry, Three-leaved Solomon's Seal, Three-seeded Sedge and Cinnamon Fern were found, the last, the most abundant herbaceous species and forming a striking zone by itself on the shoreward edge of the old Tamarack association. Between the Fern zone and the high ground was a slight depression, without standing water, a marginal fosse or ditch, in which grew the Blue Flag, Wild Calla, Three-seeded Sedge, and Sphagnum.

In the open part of the bog the water was about a foot below the surface of the growing Sphagnum, and at 1½ feet, shrub remains were few and the amount of Sedge and Cat-tail débris increased to a depth of 2 feet, when the peat became very watery, and was too liquid to gather samples from, to a depth of more than 10 feet.

In the Spruce zone, the water level was about 1 foot below the surface of the moss, and the turf was composed of shrub and moss débris to a short distance below the water level where the material changed abruptly to Sedge and Cat-tail rootstocks and leaves. Below this the peat remained fibrous, light colored, and very watery to a depth of more than 10 feet. The water level was nearly 2 feet from the surface in the old Tamarack zone and the surface was much dryer, especially around the bases of trees, and it was on these elevations that Labrador Tea and Canada Blueberry were growing most luxuriantly.

The outlet of this bog was a small, badly-clogged brook flowing through a peaty valley, and it seemed quite probable that, as the peat had accumulated in the valley, it had slowly checked the outflow from the basin and thus raised the level of the water in the basin and this in turn had tended to raise the surface of the bog by encouraging the growth of the peat-forming sedges and other plants. It was apparent from the study of sections that the Sphagnum had only recently, compared with the total age of the bog, established itself upon the surface of the deposit which had been covered by sedges and Cat-tail.

*Lake Near Winona Mine:* On section 33 of the same township was a small lake surrounded by steep banks covered by a Birch and Maple forest, except near the foot of the slopes where Hemlock, Balsam and Yellow Birch were the important trees. The lake is about twice as long as wide, and at the north end has a small bog, which was rather hastily studied. In the water along the margin of the bog were patches of Yellow Pond Lily and a Pondweed and in other places, the Submerged Bur-reed, a species of Arrow-head and the Greater Bladderwort were noted.

The chief plants along the water margin were Cassandra and Andromeda, which were generally advancing the turf by the growth of partly submerged branches reaching over and into the water. The plant which here was most closely following the shrubs was the Blue Flag, a very unusual marginal plant in the region which had been traversed up to this time, in fact it was rather rare in the bogs at all, except occasionally along the shoreward margin. Here, however, it made an abundant growth among the shrubs on the edge of the turf nearer the water than any other plant except the Small Cranberry, which was occasionally found growing over the water upon the shrubs.

Immediately shoreward of the Blue Flag zone was Sphagnum, which, however, was unequally distributed, being present in some places and absent in others, over most of the surface of this part of the bog. In the places where it was present, it often built the surface a foot or more above the water level, and growing with it were the Small and Large Cranberries, Scheuchzeria, Pitcher Plant, Mud and Few-flowered Sedges, the Slender Cotton-grass and Dulichium. The Pale Laurel, Marsh Cinquefoil, Cassandra, Andromeda, and Buckbean were present in the open places where the Sphagnum was wanting, and, where water was covering the surface, or very near it, the Horned Bladderwort and White Beaked-rush were often abundant.

An interesting object of study was afforded here by the plants which had established themselves upon a dead tree which had fallen into the water, extending from the shore, across a narrow marshy sedge-border, out about 30 feet before the end was covered by the water. Andromeda was farthest from the shore and the nearest plant to water level, which was from 4 to 6 inches below the part of the log upon which it was growing. Sphagnum and Cassandra were nearer shore, and a fine specimen of the Pitcher Plant was next shoreward, and quite close to the shore, where the top of the log was a foot above the surface of the water were a young Yellow Birch and three thrifty specimens of young White Pine, at least 10 years old.

Back shoreward from the open Shrub Sphagnum association was a Conifer zone, the Black Spruce-Tamarack association, here not well developed, except as to shrubs, which were the same as those mentioned above. Shoreward of this, was a broad marginal ditch, with water a foot deep, and in this, Slender Sedge was growing abundantly, while between it and the Conifer zone was a good growth of Blue-Joint Grass and Alder, making a narrow and incomplete zone. On the sides of the lake where the bog was narrow or wanting, were the same shrubs as on the bog, but frequently also, patches of Slender and Prickly Sedges and the Creeping Spike-rush, growing in the shallow water. In the water in places, the peculiar little Pipe-wort was growing, but not in sufficient quantity to make it a factor in the filling of the lake.

As will be seen by comparing these bogs with others described, they present no marked peculiarities, the chief ones being the presence of the Cinnamon Fern in the first, and of the Blue Flag in the zone of advancing plants, in the second, but these are minor matters and apparently insignificant. The Blue Flag is a water seeking species, and was present, where found, quite probably as the result of disturbance of the normal conditions by man, which gave it a chance to establish itself where it now is.

North of Houghton, in a somewhat extensive bog near the entrance to the Portage Lake ship canal and on its western side, was a marginal zone of Sweet Gale, standing in the shallow water. This bog was, in places, somewhat open, with areas of sedge, but in general, was covered by the Conifer-Shrub association.

*Bear Lake:* Another small boggy development of peat north of Houghton, was examined at Bear Lake, a sand dune lake, at the north end of section 23, T. 56 N., R. 34 W. This was the farthest north that any study was made, and is of interest on that account. The lake was shallow, with evidences of considerable fluctuation in the water level and around much of the margin there was little organic matter, except a thin coating of algal residue mixed with the fragments of shells, and of the larger plants of the lake and its shores. On such shores the vegetation was scant and of ordinary shore plants such as Rushes, Small Spike-rush, Willows and Sedges. Above this strand-flora however, was a fairly constant zone of White Cedar, Sweet Gale, and Cassandra, a foot or more above the water level, which was probably high at the time the lake was visited, because of a very heavy rainfall a day or two before. In a slight embayment on the east side of the lake, was a small quaking-bog which was covered by the Slender Sedge and Sweet Gale on the shoreward side, the latter forming a dense fringe against the Alder zone on the shore. With the Sweet Gale was some Cassandra, Sweet Flag, Marsh Cinquefoil, and a little Sphagnum. Lakeward of the Sedge area was a zone of low plants, mostly a small slender species of Spike-rush, which covered the ground over much of the zone, but had associated with it the Horned Bladderwort, Dulichium, the Bulb-bearing Water Hemlock, Cat-tail, Yellow Pond Lily, growing in the marsh, scattered plants of Lake Bulrush, and along the edge of the water, a slender form of the Broad-leaved Arrow-head. The bottom of the lake was 6 feet below the surface of this bog. Growing in the water at some distance from the shore, were the Yellow Pond Lily, and in places, the Lake Bulrush. In this bog it was difficult to determine whether the plants now on the surface were actually building a mat out from the shore or whether the present structure was built by other plants which had been killed out and their places taken by the present association, but the structure was very weak, as if formed from very frail plants, and it was possibly the result of the growth of the rootstocks of the Spike-rush. As has been noted, the Slender Sedge was shoreward of this part of the bog and Sphagnum, the little which was present, was still nearer the shore, so that here, as elsewhere, it was playing no part in the formation of the peat, except in a very superficial way, after the surface of the deposit had been raised above the water level by the growth of other plants.

*Buried Peat on the Shore of Lake Superior:* In connection with the work at this point, it may be of interest to mention the occurrence of a stratum of peaty material which is exposed in the face of a recently cut bluff on the shore of Lake Superior about a half mile from Bear Lake.

A storm, a few days before, had cut into the base of the bluff and about 8 feet above the water level, on top of a mass of reddish till, was a layer of black, fine-grained, peaty material nearly a foot thick. Above this, was a stratum of gravel 2 feet thick and then wind-blown sand to the top of the bluff.

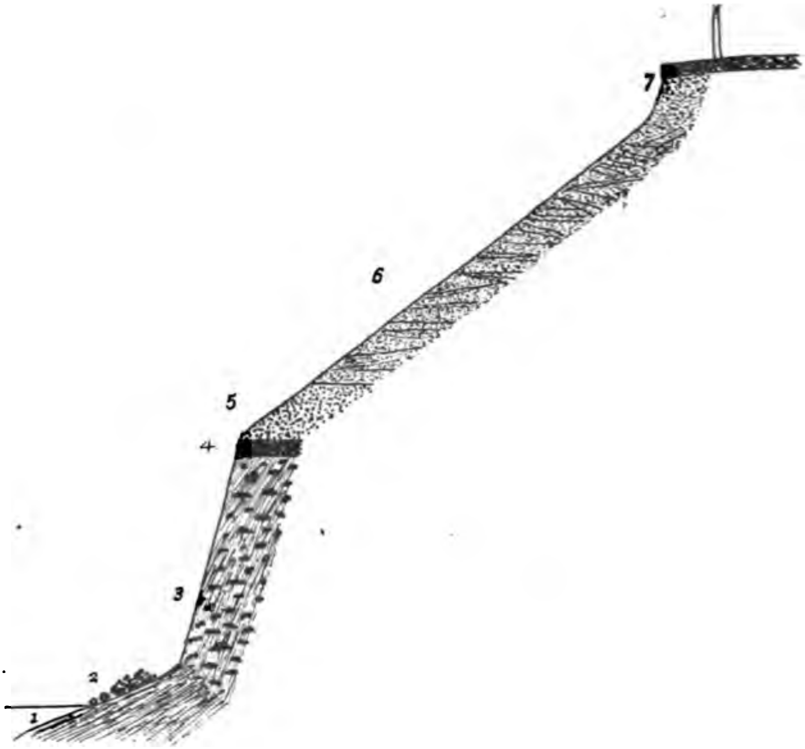


FIG. 15. Section of bluff, shore of Lake Superior 2 miles east of Portage Canal, showing buried peat bed.

1. Water level.
2. Shingle beach.
3. Reddish till.
4. Peaty bed.
5. Gravel stratum.
6. Dune sand.
7. Soil layer.

The peat was probably formed in a shallow bar-formed pond, which later was invaded by storm waves which covered it with the gravel which now overlies it; subsequent changes heaped up the sand over this and lowered the level of the water, or raised the shore, and only recently has the lake begun to cut into the deposit again. But for the gravel stratum it would be a probable assumption that the peat was formed in a shallow depression between dunes, and covered with wind-blown sand, but the gravel above the peat was too coarse to be blown about.

### *Lakes Near Marquette.*

At Marquette two types of growing bogs were studied, those about small lakes and those which were developed between sand dunes, along the shore of Lake Superior. But two lakes were studied here, the first in the N. E. 1/4 of section 10, T. 48 N., R. 25 W., and the second on the line between sections 3 and 4 of the same township. In the first, there was a considerable marshy area on the west side, and the usual peat-forming plants more or less well distributed all around. The chief marginal plant around the greater part of the water was Sweet Gale, which also grew in crevices of the rock outcrop at one point on the lake up to a height of 4 feet above the water. In a selected area, it was found that the Yellow Pond Lily was growing in the water, and shoreward a zone of Slender Sedge, then one of Dulichium and above this was a zone of shrubs, Sweet Gale and Cassandra near the water level, and Common Alder and Mountain Holly above it. This gave each of the usual zones found in many lakes a representation, but in this one, the zonal arrangement was not uniform about the entire pond, nor about much of it, the shrub zone being the one most generally present, as noted above. Some interesting relations were noted here among which were the following: The mature part of the bog had a Conifer-Shrub society, mainly Tamarack and Common Alder; Cassandra and Sphagnum were not found in the parts of the Tamarack-Alder association examined, although Cassandra remains were abundant, suggesting the possibility that the plants had been killed by the shade of the Alders, since the species is sometimes present under pure Tamarack growth. In the same amount of shade where the Cassandra was wanting, the Labrador Tea, Low Blueberry, Wintergreen and Creeping Snowberry were abundant.

The shrubs of the marginal zone, which included Cassandra, Sweet Gale, Mountain Holly, Andromeda, and Labrador Tea, all grew up on the banks of the lake, above the peat of the margin, to sand, and flourished in it, and with them grew Meadow-sweet and Jack and Norway Pines. The Labrador Tea and Cassandra, in the dryer parts of this zone, were associated with the Common Brake, the Low Blueberries, Trailing Arbutus, Wintergreen, Prairie Willow and Jack Pine.

Cassandra was also found growing in crevices in the rocks here, 3 or 4 feet above the water, with Cranberry, Huckleberry, Low and Canada Blueberries, Bearberry, Three-toothed Cinquefoil and the Sweet Gale. These dry-ground plants, higher up on the rocks, were dominant, but were about equal in numbers with the others, where the two types come together and the overlapping area formed a well marked tension zone.

The second lake was quite different in its state of development, having a sedge marsh all around the margin, varying in width in different parts, however. In the rather shallow water was a considerable amount of Yellow Pond Lily, shoreward of which was a zone of Lake Bulrush, then one of the Slender Sedge, with occasional areas of Dulichium and of Sweet Gale bushes, among which Reed-grass was of frequent occurrence; the shoreward border of the Sweet Gale here also having the tall stems of the Reed-grass frequently showing as an associate. This zone is bordered by a good growth of Jack Pine, which covers the high ground in this locality.

From these descriptions it is evident that the lakes about Marquette are again not especially different from those of other parts of the region studied, and that the same plants that have been pointed out as being active in the formation of peat, and in filling and covering lakes, are active here, and no others were especially important or significant in the processes.

### *Lakes and Bogs Between Newberry and Grand Marais.*

The region about, and especially to the north of Newberry, was next visited, in company with Mr. Frank Leverett of the U. S. Geological Survey, in order to study conditions in a region of extensive peat deposits.

*The Great Swamp:* The great swampy area between Eckerman and Newberry deserved special attention and a much more extensive study than could be given it, but from what was seen, it seems probable that the swamp is formed in a very flat, poorly drained, sandy plain, with a great number of low sand ridges which may have been either wave or wind formed, and which farther check the outflow of the water and hold all the rain which falls upon them. The peat beds seem very generally shallow, a foot or two deep, although much deeper in places, and it is evident that draining, followed by drying out, would reduce the thickness to a few inches.

The greater part of this area, except where beavers built dams and flooded considerable areas, was probably originally covered by mature swamp-plant societies, with Cedar, Spruce and Tamarack as the dominant elements, before fires and lumbering produced the many changes which are apparent. At present, however, the places which have been burned over show bog and swamp societies in various stages of rejuvenation and it is possible to get some idea about the way in which plants have built up peat here. The sedges, grasses, Cat-tails, Sphagnum and shrubs all seem to play about the same part here as they do around the borders of lakes, and one sees a sedge marsh with a zone of shrubs around its border, and Sphagnum beneath the shrubs, or in another place, a broad, flat area covered with Blue-Joint Grass or Cat-tail, according as the surface is high or low above the water level, and in uncleared or unburned areas, or those less recently burned, extensive stretches of Cassandra or Cedar, Spruce and Tamarack swamps. Reading past history in the light of present developments makes it seem probable that these extensive and often shallow deposits of peat were largely formed by sedges and grasses, growing in wet or flooded soil, until the deposit grew nearly to or above the water level and then the shrubby plants and coniferous trees gradually covered the ground.

*Small Lakes:* In the region north of Newberry, several small lakes were visited, of which two or three will serve as examples. The first was a small kettle hole lake on section 33, T. 47 N., R. 10 W., in the morainal region, which was here covered by nearly unbroken hardwood forest. The open water had a considerable number of plants of the Yellow Pond Lily and the Water Shield forming an interrupted zone. Shoreward, around the margin, was a zone of Andromeda and Cassandra pushing out by means of their long branches into and over the water, in the manner described in detail elsewhere with Fig. 13. A short distance back from the edge of the water, Sphagnum and the Pitcher Plant and some other herbs were present, and with them were noted the Labrador Tea, Pale Laurel and other shrubs, and near the shore a dense growth of Spruce and Tamarack. This heath- and conifer association was not studied in detail, but no important variation from usual associations were seen, except, it may be of interest here, to note the occurrence on the shoreward margin, of the Choke-berry and White-rod, which had not been found in this relation before, except in a few cases, where the Choke-berry occurred alone in a similar habitat. The Heath zone was practically unbroken around the entire border of the pond, but it was usually not more than a rod or two wide.

*McLeod's Lake,* 10 miles north of Newberry. This was also in the morainal region, so that it may be compared with the other. It was a larger body of water than the first and on the north side had a narrow sedge marsh. On the east side little if any sedge was visible, while in some places on the west side there were patches of Cassandra growing out on the margin of the open water. In a few places on the north side, shoreward of the sedges, were areas of Cat-tail, and some were noted also upon the western shore, where were also seen stools of Blue Flag, Sedge and Bur-reed. In the water was a quantity of a small Pondweed, the species of which was not determined. The most remarkable thing about this lake was the presence in the water to within a few inches of the surface, of a finely divided ooze, which was so soft that it could be easily penetrated by sticks to a depth of several feet, and which seemed to be of the same nature as the algal deposit already described. Here, however, the owner reported that there was a deep deposit of marl below the ooze, which latter was so soft in the deeper parts of the lake, that fish readily swam through it. But a very small part of this basin had been filled by the higher plants, and the steep high banks come down abruptly to the edge of the water in most places, with no peat terrace, and very little beach. The surrounding hills were covered with hardwood timber except where this had been cleared off.

*Stuart's Lake:* The most extensive bog seen about a lake in this region, was at Stuart's Lake a few miles northwest of the Half-Way House and McLeod's Lake. This was a larger basin and lake than either of the others described, and had been extensively filled at the eastern and southern sides. On the south side was a dense hardwood forest, but on the east and north sides, were steep banks which had formerly been covered with a good growth of Pine, now represented by stumps and scattering groves of trees of small White and Norway Pines. Plants of the Yellow Pond Lily and a Pondweed were abundant in the water not far from the edge of the bog on the eastern side and formed a thinly covered zone on a part of the north side as well. The advancing plant on the margin of the water was Cassandra, and the same shrub was exceedingly abundant in the bog as well. The Cassandra marsh, as one proceeded shoreward across it, first had Sphagnum and a mixture of other herbs and shrubs, then scattered, small and stunted Spruces and Tamaracks, and over quite a large area at the eastward end, larger, but still stunted White Cedar, Spruce and Tamarack, forming an open sparse growth. Below, covering the ground, was a dense growth of

Sphagnum often built up in hummocks $2\frac{1}{2}$ to 3 feet above the water level. In the depressions between these was an abundance of Virginia Cotton-grass, and Wool-grass, with the Sheathed and Slender Cotton-grasses scarcely less common. On the taller hummocks, the Hair-cap Moss was commonly the plant making the top stratum, while the Labrador Tea, Cassandra, Pale Laurel, Choke-berry, Mountain Holly and Cranberry, with the Three-leaved Solomon's Seal, Magellan's and Three-seeded Sedges, the King and Cinnamon Ferns, and Pitcher Plant were here associated with the conifers, the shrubs growing chiefly on the hummocks.

On the north side was a steep, sandy bank rising about 30 to 50 feet above the lake, and covered by a series of groves of Norway Pine, with dry-ground shrubs and herbs. At the foot of this slope was a narrow terrace of peat, from less than 10 to more than 20 feet wide, bordered by a well marked ridge of the same material on the lakeward side, formed by ice-shove during the winter. This ridge was 2 or 3 feet high, and, with the bog behind it, was covered by Sphagnum, Andromeda, Cassandra, Huckleberry, Winterberry, White-rod, Labrador Tea, Canada Blueberry, Mountain Holly, and Choke-berry forming a dense growth. The Choke-berry, Andromeda, Cassandra and Winterberry grew down over the lakeward side of this ridge and into and over the water to a depth of two feet. The peat here was a shallow, superficial coating, and in places was wanting entirely, where the sand plants came down to the water, which seemed higher than normal.

*Lakes at Deer Park Life Saving Station:* The largest of these is between 30 and 40 feet above Lake Superior and has sandy bottom and shores. In the water were White and Yellow Pond Lilies, two or more species of Pondweed, the Slender Naias, Bur-reed and a slender form of Arrow-head. The principal plants along the margin were Sweet Gale, and the Common Alder. In no place around this lake did there appear to be any filling by peat, nor in another smaller one lying a short distance to the west. This is in marked contrast to conditions in various lakes and swamps between Deer Park and Grand Marais, where, in the borders of some of them, were found interesting mixtures of the high ground and bog societies. In one sedge marsh (in which the Slender Sedge was dominant) with a Cassandra border, the Cassandra ran up on the bank to a height of 4 feet above the water level, into the zone of Jack Pine and grew with the Blueberries and Dwarf Sand Cherry. The Cassandra did not appear in the marsh at all, except on logs which had fallen into it, and thus furnished elevated spots on which the shrubs established themselves, clearly indicating their preference for dryer conditions than the marsh furnished.

*Lakes Between Grand Marais and Newberry:* In crossing the country from Grand Marais to Newberry, a number of small, as well as large lakes, were visited and briefly examined. One of the larger lakes was Island Lake; this had a sandy shore where it was not covered with plants, in places 10 to 20 feet high, but generally it was surrounded by a peat terrace from 10 to 50 feet wide, or, in places expanding into a broad marsh. In coves and indentations in the margin, there were colonies of Yellow Pond Lily, but no marked zone of this plant was seen. The marginal zone was of sedge, apparently the Slender Sedge, which had a strong admixture of Cassandra and Andromeda. In the border, between the sedge and shrub zones, Sphagnum was present and was abundant in the shoreward shrub zone which was here made up largely of Cassandra, Andromeda and Pale Laurel, with "islands" of White Pine, Black Spruce, and Tamarack. Near the shore there was an abundance of Creeping Snowberry, and Withe-rod. The herbaceous plants noticeable in the shrub zone, were the Few-seeded Sedge, Virginia Cotton-grass, and Pitcher Plant. Where the shores were high the Cassandra was often growing in from 1 to 2 feet of water. The water level seemed recently to have risen here, but the marginal plants were in no way suffering from the excess of water when the lake was visited and apparently even if the elevation of the water were permanent there would be little change in the relations of the plant zones, except that sedges might establish themselves a little more quickly among the shrubs of the present marginal zone, than they would be able to on the bare shore.

A small lake east of Island Lake had a peculiar appearance because of the shallowness of the water and very numerous small islands of plants scattered over the surface. The formation of these islands was due to a sedge, probably one of the turf forming species but this could not be positively determined, as the islands were inaccessible. On the sedge foundation were growing Andromeda, Cassandra, Pitcher Plant, and the Virginia Cotton-grass. Other plants were present but could not be identified with certainty. The marginal plant along the shores of this lake was Dulichium, growing upon the bottom in shallow water. Shoreward of this was a zone of Slender Sedge, one of Cassandra, which in turn gave place to a clearing society in places where White and Norway Pine formerly grew, or to Balsam, Hemlock and various hardwood tree species, where the soil was moist and loamy, and there had been no fires. It was difficult to understand how the small tracts of plants called "islands" above, could establish themselves in this lake, at the present stage of water, and it seemed almost certain that they had not done so, but had started in some period of low water, and had been able to hold on during the rise of the water. Such islands must serve as nuclei of dispersal for the plants growing upon them, and from them there can be little doubt that the oozy bottom of the lake will be covered much more rapidly than from the margin alone unless there should be an elevation of the water sufficient to submerge them and their plant societies entirely for a long time.

From the foregoing evidence it seems apparent that conditions in the swamps and lakes of the region between the railroad and Lake Superior in the great swamp district of the Northern Peninsula are practically identical with those in the other parts visited, and that the same plants as noted elsewhere and in practically the same relations are engaged in building up peat deposits.

More than anywhere else, perhaps, is the importance of water in the process of peat formation impressed upon one, for here, even in very sandy land, if the water level is usually at, or near, the surface, or slightly above it, a shallow layer of peat is formed, even when almost no humus at all is formed upon slight sand ridges a foot or two above the water in and around the depressions, as is very frequently the case, especially in the extensive swamp area mentioned above.

*Trout Lake Bogs:* While none of the lakes about Trout Lake Junction were studied, the extensive bogs lying along the railroad, northwest of the Junction, were visited. These lie in depressions between nearly parallel ridges of wind-blown sand, which are built up on a gentle slope and each ridge acts as a sort of dam to hold the water back from running off down the slope. The peat in these depressions was shallow, said by section men on the railroad to rarely exceed 4 feet in depth, and usually to be about one foot, and, as sand was commonly exposed in the bottoms of the railroad ditches, this statement was probably correct. Many of the bogs were in the climax condition, and such were characterized by a rather dense growth of Black Spruce, as the dominant species, growing to a height of about 40 feet, and having a maximum diameter of 12 inches, but usually of from 6 to 8 inches. The best trees grew on the sides of the low sand ridges, about 3 feet above the water level in the bog. Above the spruces on the ridges, Norway Pine was the dominant species, while the Jack Pine was mixed with both the species, and in places formed dense pure stands in the bogs, entirely replacing other species of trees in such places. Under the spruces on the sand ridges, as well as on the peat, was an undergrowth of Labrador Tea, waist high, and with it Withe-rod, Cassandra, Choke-berry, Mountain Holly, Mountain Ash, Canada, Low Black and Low-bush Blueberries, and the Common Brake. Below these, were Hair-cap Moss, Trailing Arbutus, Wintergreen, Goldthread, Bunchberry, Creeping Snowberry, Clintonia and Wild Lily-of-the-Valley, with some Sphagnum in the hollows. In the lower parts of the swamps, Sphagnum is more abundant and covers the ground. In one place where a test was made, in such an association, there were only 2-4 inches of organic matter or humus above the underlying sand. In some parts of this area the Labrador Tea was found growing up the sides of the ridges, to a height of about 6 feet above the water level, associated with the Common Brake and the Blueberries, and it was very thrifty in such places, reaching a height of about 3 feet. It was generally above all the other bog plants, often forming a zone above the Cassandra and Pale Laurel on the ridges, and was not noted at all in the moister parts of the bogs, except on sand knolls; the Pale Laurel was found growing on the ridges higher up than Cassandra, although in some places the latter species was found on the railroad embankments as high as five feet above the water in the ditches.

In a series of bogs, about 4 miles from Trout Lake, the bog surface was higher on the east side of each successive ridge than on the west side, the general slope being to the west. In some of these bogs, the surface had been burned over or cleared, and in such, Cassandra often formed the dominant plant, but in others the Cat-tail occupied the ground, or grew with the shrubs between the stools. Sphagnum was sometimes present, and various Sedges and the Cotton grasses were more or less common. Not infrequently, where there had been no disturbance of relations by man, the depressions were covered by a Spruce-Tamarack or Pure Spruce association. The tops of the ridges between bogs were covered with White and Norway Pines, with Spruces growing half way up the sides.

For some distance, in a district somewhat nearer to Trout lake than that just described, the Jack Pine was the most frequent tree in the bogs, growing with the same shrubs which are commonly associated with Spruce and Tamarack in similar situations. The trees were growing rapidly and were in denser stands than Tamarack or Spruce usually develop in such situations and were from 6 to 9 inches in diameter. It seemed probable that this species had established itself in the bogs after some severe fire during a dry time, and had afterwards been able to maintain itself in competition with the slower growing swamp trees, after the water level rose again.

### *The Formation of Peat Near the Shores of Lake Superior.*

But a single opportunity presented itself to study marshes near the shores of Lake Superior; at Marquette a series of observations were made on some marshes formed in shallow depressions formed by cutting off a portion of Lake Superior by sand bars in the vicinity of Presque Isle Park, and in the hollows between sand dunes in other places.

At the end of the electric railway to the park, near the ore docks, was quite an extensive wet sedge marsh, formed by the growth of the Slender Sedge. Upon the marsh, growing with the Sedge in a foot of water, were scattering plants of Andromeda, Myrtle-leaved Willow, Marsh Cinquefoil, Buckbean, Bulb-bearing Water Hemlock, and low growing plants of Sweet Gale. In the ditches, by the sides of the road, were the Yellow Pond Lily, a small Pondweed, a moss, probably Hypnum, and Greater Bladderwort, and extending out from the cut turf on the sides, Creeping and Mud Sedges, Myrtle-leaved Willow, Wild Calla, and Marsh Cinquefoil, the latter extending out 5 feet from the shore, and nearly half way across the ditch. The Mud and Creeping Sedges also made good growth in the water, and about their roots and stems were collected masses of algae and Bladderwort. Among the plants of the Pondweed, which were growing in a shallow place, the Slender Sedge had grown out 3 or 4 feet in one place, but was rooted in the substratum. Shoreward of the marsh was a border of Cassandra and Andromeda, which grew up on the sand in company with Norway and Jack Pine, Huckleberry, and Low Blueberries and other dry ground species, and in one case Cassandra was building sand dunes, sending out roots as the sand was piled about it by the winds, just as it does into Sphagnum which grows up around it. It was evident in this place, that there was no difference in the plants, or in the order of their appearance in the bog or of their relations to each other or the water level from what would have been found in any shallow basin and that the formation of peat was going on here just as it would have gone on in a shallow pond inland.

In a broad marsh back of sand dunes, a half miles or more west of this station, the filling had gone a step farther and the heaths were more abundant and trees had established themselves, a group of Tamaracks being noted on one side of the marsh. The Cassandra formed a well-marked zone in places on the shoreward side; the former shore was definitely shown by a zone of Common Alders, between the bog society on one side, and the dune plants on the other. In places, the Labrador Tea, which grew within the Alder zone, was found growing up the landward side of the dunes, and associated with Huckleberry, Wintergreen, Trailing Arbutus, Bunchberry, Twin-flower and Bearberry, the latter a very common plant upon the most exposed part of the dunes.

### *Formation of Peat in Sand Dune Areas Near Lake Superior at Marquette.*

Along the driveway south of the park, near Picnic Rocks, a study was made of a series of shallow depressions between successive dune ridges, and while but a short time could be given to this locality, a probable succession of plants and conditions for these hollows was worked out. Immediately behind the most recent dune line was a wet, open swale with water standing in it in places. This swale was, as is usual in such localities, long and narrow, and the water was probably not over 2 feet in depth. In the water were growing the Slender Sedge, Andromeda and the Marsh Cinquefoil, and upon the shores, a well-developed marginal zone of Cassandra, and shoreward of this, a zone of Common Alder, Poplars and Tamarack, running into the dryer ground association of White Birch and the three species of Pines. Shoreward of a second broad ridge of sand was another depression, in which were pools of shallow water interrupted by slight elevations of moist sand, or sometimes of humus. Around the depressions Cassandra was usually present, and with it were some two or three species of Sedge, and often near the margin of the water or growing in the margin, the Blue Flag and Nerved Manna-grass. Here, also, were found the Myrtle-leaved Willow, the Mud Sedge, Dulichium, Meadow-sweet, Wool-grass and Marsh Cinquefoil. Shoreward of the Cassandra, in the shade of the Tamarack and Black Spruce, were the Labrador Tea and Common Alder, the latter characterizing this zone. A third hollow, landward of the third dune line, was deeper and broader than the others, and was surrounded by the Slender Sedge, shoreward of which are Heaths and Conifers. Higher and older swales were visited and in some of these were small, mature bog societies, including, in some places, Sphagnum. It was apparent here, that the Sedges and some of the Grasses were the first plants to establish themselves about the water in these swales, and that certain of the bog heaths, notably Cassandra, was almost as soon on the ground.

That these shallow depressions are not all overgrown and filled up, is most probably due to the facts that they are so shallow and of such limited area that, in periods of drought, the water entirely disappears from them and leaves only the dry sand for the plants to grow in, and in wet periods they fill with water and drown out the plants which may be growing in the bottom. During the prolonged dry times the humus which may accumulate in wet periods is partly or wholly dried up, so that it often disappears entirely. It is then only in a prolonged wet cycle that the peat can accumulate sufficiently to insure filling such depressions.

### *Buried Peat Near Marquette.*

On the outer dune, which had been cut into by a severe storm a few days before, an interesting section was obtained. The top of the dune was from 10 to 15 feet above the present gravel beach, and its foot was perhaps 20 feet from the water when it was quiet. The storm waves had cut under the base of the dune, the sand had split off and had left a vertical face. At the base of the section was a stratum 6 to 8 inches thick, of reddish brown sand that is, sand stained and cemented by bog iron; immediately above this a stratum, a foot in thickness, of peat, or humus, filled with the unchanged roots of shrubs and of Norway Pine and in the section was the partly decayed trunk of a Pine with its roots in this soil layer. Above the peat stratum was sand for about 2 feet, then a layer of Norway Pine needles well preserved, and within a few inches above this, a layer of black iron sand, from ½ to 1 inch thick. From this to the surface there were irregular strata of sand, mixed with roots of trees, grasses and the leaves of pines. (Fig. 16.)

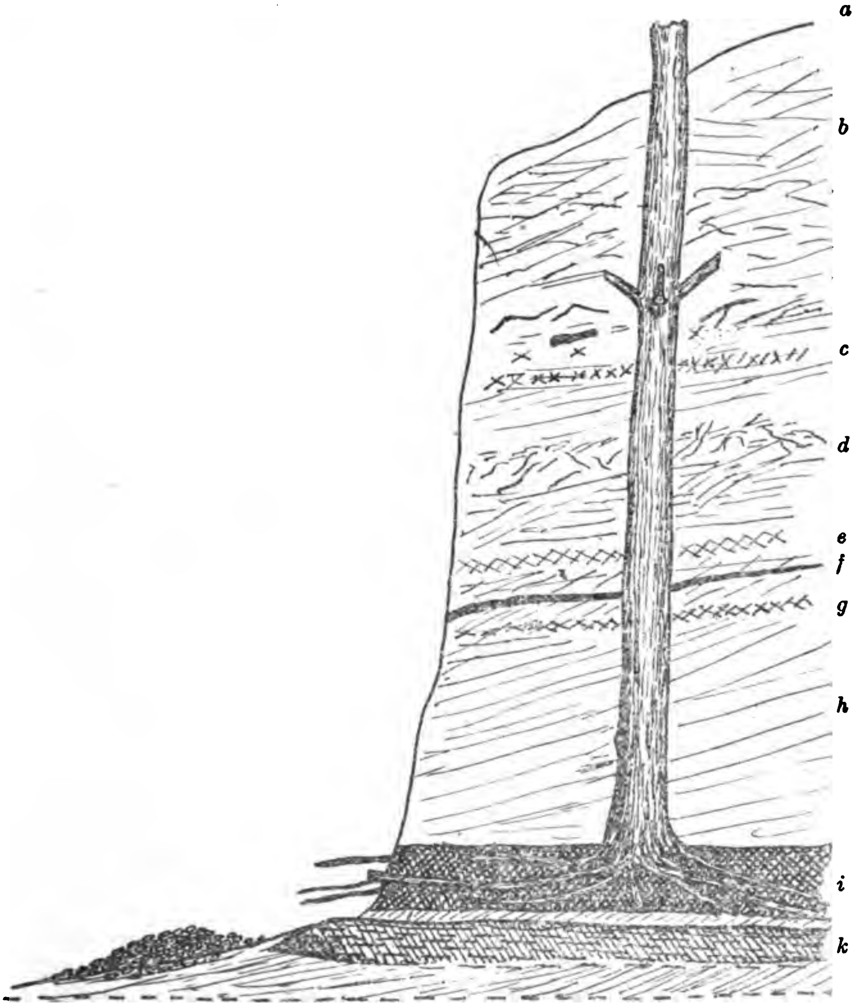


FIG. 16. Buried peat bed near Marquette, with bog iron stratum below and sand dune above. Exposure made by easterly storm.

a. Stump of buried tree.
b. Sand strata with roots and other plant remains.
c. Pine needles.
d. Sand with grass remains.
e. Pine needles.
f. Iron sand.
g. Pine needles.
h. Pure sand, cross-bedded.
i. Peat stratum, with standing pine stump.
k. Bog iron.

From this section it was evident that formerly the shore of the bay extended some distance farther out than at present, when the peat bed was being formed and that after it had reached its present thickness and trees were growing upon it, the existing dune line was established, probably as the result of cutting back the shore through a previously established dune line behind which the peat bed had been formed. The building of the dune killed the tree, and before the wood could decay it reached its present height, only to be cut into by storms during the present high stage of water in the lake. The presence of plant remains of various kinds in the sand shows that the dune was built up gradually, but that the first few feet were heaped up rapidly since in them there were no vegetable remains noticed. The bog iron below the peat bed was formed by the leaching action of the water from the soil bed, upon the iron compounds in the sand, and subsequent decomposition of the soluble organic compounds into insoluble inorganic ones. This form of action of water from marshes and forests is exceedingly common in the Northern Peninsula, where large areas of sandy soil, rich in iron, are underlain by a stratum of "hard-pan," or iron-cemented sand, at a depth of a foot or a foot and a half below the surface, which prevents rapid percolation of water, and enables the soil to support a better type of vegetation than sand usually does. This section is also an excellent one to show in a small way, how coal and iron beds may be related, and how fossils may be preserved by other means than by the action of floods, or any form of submergence by water. The stratum of black sand may be taken as an illustration of the sorting action of wind of nearly uniform velocity. It seems as if the iron sand were blown up with the ordinary kinds by heavy winds, then a time came when, for a period, the lighter grains were moved along and the heavy iron particles left behind and thus concentrated. It is also possible that the iron and sand stratum may represent a severe storm wave action, but this is not probable, unless the present dune line had grown up at the top of a beach when the water of the lake was notably higher than it is at present, for ordinary storm waves, working at the foot of a dune line, cut the sand away and do not deposit.

### *Formation of Peat on the Shore of Lake Michigan Near Manistique.*

A study similar to that made at Marquette, was made near Manistique, under more favorable conditions, for at this station there were larger areas for observation, much less disturbed by fire and clearing than were the tracts near Marquette. The area between the town and the shore of Lake Michigan, on the west side of the river, is covered by ridges of wind-blown sand from 2 to 15 feet high above the general level, and from 50 to 500 feet broad, alternating with long narrow depressions, many of which have bogs or standing water in them. The series is approximately parallel and follows the trend of the shore of the lake. The dunes on this shore were much higher and more massive than those at Marquette, because of the more exposed position and their proximity to the mouth of a large stream, carrying abundant sediments. The dune line nearest the lake is a high, massive ridge, back from the water a distance of several hundred feet, and partly covered by dune grasses and shrubs and with scattered white pines and a few other trees. In the depression behind, or shoreward of this, was found a series of shallow ponds, long and narrow, as at Marquette, but wider and deeper.

Around the open water of these were little, narrow marshes, in which were growing the following plants: Nerved Manna-grass, Wool-grass, several species of Sedges, Blue Flag, several Rushes, Small Bur-reed, and in one place Dulichium was established. Of shrubs, the Common Alder, Meadow-sweet and Sweet Gale grew nearly to the water's edge and the dry ground species from the older, shoreward dunes, extended down to within about 2 feet of the water level; these were the Hair-cap Moss, Huckleberry, the Low Blueberries, Choke-berry and the three species of Pine. It will be observed that the water-loving plants noted above are, almost without exception, those which might be found in any wet place and that most characteristic bog and peat forming plants are absent. No filling of organic matter was observed in any part of the line of pools behind this most recent dune line.

Passing over the second dune line, on which the sand was fixed by a covering of the dry ground plants mentioned above, and by the Pennsylvania Sedge and the Bunch Grasses, a second series of pools of water was found in the depression between this and the next ridge shoreward.

These water holes had evidently been dry for a part of the year, but around them the Nerved Manna-grass and Wool-grass were the dominant plants and, in some of the hollows, the ground was covered down to within about 18 inches above the water level of that date, with a dense growth of Hair-cap Moss, which formed a well-marked line at the lower limits of its growth. Below this, and extending down into the water, was a zone of Sphagnum, the plants just covering the ground, in which were growing Blue Flag, Nerved Manna-grass, two or three species of Rushes, the Lance-leaved White Violet, and Bog Club-moss. None of these plants are known to be important as humus or peat formers except Sphagnum; in connection with the latter plant, it is interesting to note that it maintains on this slope the same relation to the water level and the Hair-cap Moss, that it assumes in bogs, where the two types grow together, i. e., it was below the latter species and near the water. Its presence in the water here may be accounted for by the rise in water, due to heavy fall rains.

The society of plants described above, was apparently a temporary or pioneer society, since most of the species are frequent on the freshly exposed banks of those lakes in which the water is receding and may appear in any moist place. The presence of Sphagnum, on the other hand, was probably significant, and through its development, the ground would probably be kept in condition for the germination of seeds of the plants of the bog societies. Several of the smaller pools in this series had the zone of Hair-cap Moss, with Sphagnum either just starting at the edge of the water, or covering the space between the water and the lower margin of that zone. Around one of the pools, the marginal plant was chiefly Wool-grass; at another the Hair-cap Moss zone was found to have Lance-leaved White Violet, Trailing Arbutus, Bog Club-moss, and a species of Panicum, and in a depression, Sphagnum 2 inches high. Below this zone were various Grasses and Sedges, and at the water's edge a zone of low Sphagnum, in which the Mud Sedge was growing, on the margin of the pool, with several species of Rushes. In the water were the Northern Water Star-wort, covering most of the bottom, and at one end a considerable colony of the small variety of the Creeping Spike-rush, growing with the common Rushes; besides these a few plants of Tall Cotton-grass, stools of Wool-grass, and what seemed to be the Floating Manna-grass, made up the list of species in the shallow water. The Sphagnum made a zone around the pond, but did not grow in the water. In this pool were Sedges capable of starting the filling, by building up peat, but they were so recently established that nothing had as yet been accomplished by them.

A much larger pool in this series and immediately adjacent to the one last described, separated from it only by a slight sand ridge a few feet wide, was in a very different stage of advancement in the development of its plant societies; Dulichium, two or more species of Sedges, the Tall Cotton-grass and Blue Flag, were growing in the water near the margin, while a small Pondweed grew in some abundance in the deeper places, and patches of an aquatic moss could be seen here and there over parts of the open water. Several Sedge islands of small size, upon which were growing Cassandra and Sphagnum and an area of Cassandra extending out 30 feet from the shore where the water was about a foot in depth, reduced the size of the pond and gave prophecy of its ultimate fate. The plants growing on the water's margin were the Blue Flag, Nerved Manna-grass, Common Alder, Winterberry, White-rod and, much more abundant than all of the others, Cassandra, which not only grew at the margin of the water, but in it, and above it 2½ feet up the bank to above the upper border of the Hair-cap Moss zone. With the Cassandra were Sphagnum, Pale Laurel and Labrador Tea.

This pool presented the nearest approach to the bog type of any in the series and was in such a stage of advancement that the end of the story of its complete filling could easily be seen; the causes of the differences seemed to be the larger size and greater depth of the basin, which enabled the water to persist in it during dry periods, and also, probably, to prevent fires from running over it and destroying such peat as was accumulated during favorable times.

The small pool next in the same line had the following conditions: The water was shallower and less in extent than in the other; growing in it were some Rushes, two species of Sedges and the Nerved Manna-grass. The aquatic Moss noted above was present in small quantities here, and there were a few Sedge islands on which the Large Cranberry was growing. There was an incomplete zone of Sphagnum at and slightly above the water's edge, and also areas of Large Cranberry, growing up on the banks to a height of 2 feet above the water level. Cassandra and other heaths formed a higher zone, and only came down to the water in a few places. The Labrador Tea was found here only about 3 feet above the level of the water in the pond. The stage of development here is evidently between that of the larger pond, with its complete shrub zone, and the smaller one, in which none of the heaths are yet present, even as islands.

Crossing over a third dune ridge and descending to the line of pools, but a single study was made. This was upon a long, deep hole, 125 or 150 feet long by 30 or 40 feet wide, in which the water was dark colored, and apparently much deeper than in any of those previously examined, especialy at one end, where the pool was scarcely 10 feet wide. The broader part of this pond was surrounded by a zone of the shrubs, Sweet Gale and Cassandra growing in the water and up to the bank and with them were the Large Cranberry, and the Mud and other Sedges as associates. Sphagnum was not noted here, although it may have been present in places, as conditions were favorable for its growth. The marginal shrub zone was thoroughly established and in places Cassandra was reaching out from the shore for a distance of 3 or more feet and, with the Sedges, formed a narrow marsh. Here, as elsewhere in the series, it was apparent that fluctuations of the water level, especially lowering it in dry seasons, had retarded peat development, but if the present conditions of moisture persisted, it seemed probable that the plants would establish themselves so thoroughly that no drought of ordinary duration would affect them.

Farther back from the shore, the hollows between dunes which were wet enough, were filled with shallow bogs, chiefly of the Cassandra and Conifer type, with abundant Sphagnum and most, if not all, of the shrubs and herbs of mature bog societies. The Conifers were chiefly small Tamaracks and Black Spruces, but not rarely the Jack Pine, and less often Norway and White Pines, were also present in these places. Three examples of these more mature bog societies may help to keep the series more clearly in mind; the first of these may be called a transition type from the early to the latest stage of development. The water of the depression had entirely disappeared before the encroachments of the plants which had built up the surface of the bog so that it was generally about a foot above the level of the water, except upon the elevations around stumps, where it was more, and in places where the Sphagnum had not yet established itself, where it was less. As indicated, Sphagnum was present, but had not yet fully covered the surface of the bog, and the characterizing plants were Heaths and the Few-seeded Sedge. The shrubs forming the association were Cassandra and Andromeda, dominant, but both rather small, the Myrtle-leaved Willow, in depressions, the Pale Laurel, on the higher hummocks, the Dwarf Birch and Small Cranberry; on the borders of the bog and on higher places within its margin, in a sort of zone, were Choke-berry, Labrador Tea, Withe-rod, Huckleberry, and Common Brake. The herbaceous plants generally distributed over the whole surface of the bog were the Few-seeded Sedge, so plentiful that it gave a decided tone to the whole association, since, in places where Sphagnum was not yet established, it formed dense patches, and persisted also in the moss-covered areas in less quantities; the Mud Sedge, with the other, and with Sphagnum as well, Scheuchzeria, in wet parts of the Sedge associations, and Marsh Cinquefoil, commonly as an important member of the same association. Young Black Spruces and Tamaracks were frequent among the shrubs in dryer places.

In the vicinity of this bog was a small pond, which was still open, and around it was a narrow marsh, chiefly covered by the Few-seeded Sedge, but with small areas of the Slender Sedge and Dulichium, along the water's edge. This Sedge marsh was bordered, on the shoreward side, by a shrub zone, in which Cassandra was a conspicuous plant.

The climax, or mature stage in the process of filling the sand dune basins here, was well illustrated by a bog, one of the many similar areas, which was covered by the following plant association. The surface was covered by a deep growth of Sphagnum, which was quite uniform in thickness, although the water level was about a foot nearer the surface at the center of the depression than near the margin. The trees were chiefly rather stunted Black Spruces, with a few White Birches and Tamaracks. The dominant shrubs were Labrador Tea and Pale Laurel, which completely overshadowed the Cassandra, which, though present, was small in size and quantity. The Low Blueberries, Choke-berry, Mountain Holly, Withe-rod, Small Cranberry, Wintergreen and Trailing Arbutus were commonly associated with these shrubs, especially on the shoreward borders of the bog, where most of the species were making their best growth. The Sphagnum in this part of the bog had reached the limits of its upward growth above the present water level and was being invaded by Hair-cap Moss and Reindeer Lichen from the surrounding sand dunes. The Three-seeded Sedge was growing plentifully in the Sphagnum in the moister places, while the Common Brake was creeping into the margin of the bog from the dry soil at the sides. Where the water level was highest, in the middle of the bog, Labrador Tea was much smaller and less thrifty than in other places, either because of the excess of water, or because of its more recent introduction into this part.

In these three localities among the older dune lines, it would seem that the second one represents a stage of filling farther advanced than any of those found in the more recently formed depressions, and the first one of the series a much farther advanced one, where the Sedges have about completed their work, and Sphagnum is beginning its work of building up the surface. In the third, the record seems to show that the Sphagnum is about through, and that the bog will soon have a plant association upon it which will have most of the plants of a fixed dune association, but with a certain admixture of such bog plants as can endure the changed conditions. If, by settling or burning, the surface is lowered, or because of increased rainfall, the water level is raised, the changes may stop, or the cycle begin again at some one of its stages, as was shown in the first of the series of three just described, where the stumps of trees are now overgrown by Sphagnum and shrubs.

It was evident, from the conditions existing in this dune area, that the development of peat can hardly be said to begin, until some of the same plants have established themselves which have been found to be forming it on the borders of lakes and other places where water is abundant; after this, the order of development is the same as that about the lakes and in other depressions; the same species, in about the same relative numbers, maintain themselves through the cycle of development, to such a stage that upbuilding of the peat is about equal to the rise of the water level, or the lowering of the surface, through compacting by settling, drying out, or other causes, when a plant association develops which is relatively permanent and this, because of the ability to perpetuate itself in favorable times and persist in unfavorable periods, is a climax society and is well represented by the one last described.

The chief difficulty which lies in the way of the rapid development of peat deposits in the sand dune basins, is that the depressions are often very small in size and shallow, which makes them easily dried out, not only through evaporation, but also because the underlying sand permits rapid lowering of the water level through percolation and therefore they are likely to greatly vary, from season to season, in the amount of water which they hold, and this, in turn, makes it difficult for the bog plants to get established, or to persist after they are established. This probably accounts for the fact that, while even the most recently formed of the basins described, must be many years old, even many hundreds, judging by its distance above and from the shore of the lake and the size and massiveness of the dune which has been built up on its lakeward side, there is yet little of the bottom covered by organic matter, and very few significant plants about its margin.

As dune basins, here and elsewhere, are commonly filled with water, even while the sides and bottom are relatively coarse sand and the older basins are usually at a successively higher level from those later formed, a few words regarding the sources and maintenance of the water level may not be out of place here, especially since the formation of peat is dependent largely upon these factors.

The water of the pools must all come from the rainfall, since there are no streams running into the basins among and in the dunes, but it is the rain falling upon the porous sand of the dunes themselves as well as in the area of the depression, which fills, or partly fills, the depression with water. This rarely, if ever, runs down the surface of the dunes, as it would in more compact soils, but is absorbed as fast as it falls and finds its way to the ground water level, and then laterally to the part of the depression where the water level is above the surface; that is, the pond. In Fig. 17 the relation of the water level in a series of dunes upon a sloping surface, is shown diagrammatically, as well as how the ground water itself prevents the water from the ponds running from one to the other through the sand. Actual study of the sands in dunes, shows that even in dry times the sand is moist at a distance of a few inches from the surface, and is saturated near the bottom at a varying height above the water table outside the dune. Around the depressions examined at Manistique, was a well-marked zone, extending usually about 2 feet vertically above the water in the pools, where the soil was moist, or wet, and the water level only a very short distance below the surface. This zone was occupied by Sphagnum, in several of the more recently formed basins, and in the older ones was the area in which the peat forming sedges first established themselves. The cause of greater moistness in this zone is close proximity of the water

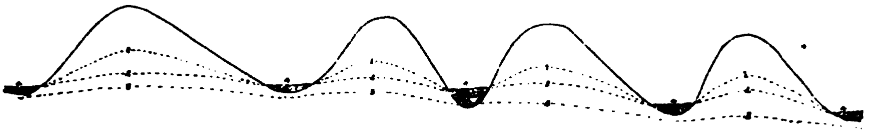


FIG. 17. Diagram illustrating maintenance of ponds on slopes covered by sand dunes in the hollows between the dunes. 1, 2 and 3 ground water level in dunes under different conditions of rainfall. 4, ponds showing the relation of surface to ground water level in the dunes. When the water level is below 2, the ponds would be shrinking, and at 3 would be dry except the deepest. The curve upwards of the surface of ground water helps to hold the pond water back, and keep it from running down the slope.

table to the surface here as it rises in a rather flat curve from the surface of the pond, to the place where the water table is highest; namely, under the crest of the dune; for the water table in ridges follows the contours rather closely, especially where the soil is as homogeneous as is wind-blown sand, except that it takes a much flatter shape, the crest constantly tending to become still lower unless the rainfall is abundant and frequent.

The statement made regarding the correspondence of conditions in bogs near the shores of Lake Superior, at Marquette, with those in lake basins, holds good for those just described, but the series at Manistique was so much more complete that all of the steps in the process of filling these dune basins were more easily and satisfactorily worked out. From the evidence gathered in these places, it seems certain that no different plants are engaged in this work among the dune basins, than are doing similar work in other depressions, whether these are large or small, except that, because of the shallowness of the depressions in the duny tracts, the aquatic plants are likely to play small if any part, since the shallow water, semi-aquatic types, are able to begin their part of the work at once. In places where the sand dune lake basins are larger, the aquatic plants are often present in great abundance, even in very shallow water, but no such lakes were found in the two districts described.

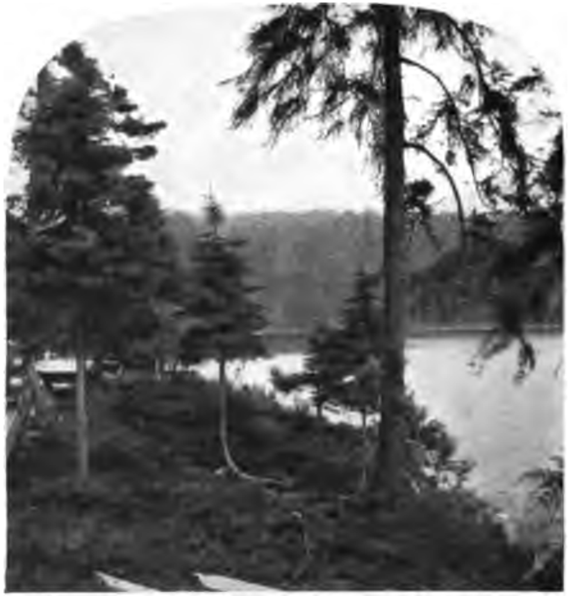
### *Peat Bogs of the Huron Mountains.*

In August, 1906, an opportunity presented itself, in connection with other work, to visit the Archean highland, which lies in Marquette county, to the northwest of the city of Marquette, known to the early writers on the geology of the region as the Huron Mountains.

This area, which covers practically the whole of the region lying north of the main line of the Duluth, South Shore and Atlantic R. R., west of Ishpeming, as far west as the line south from the Copper Country, except a narrow border along Lake Superior, is largely made up of rock hills and rock-walled valleys, many of the latter occupied by swamps, or by small lakes. The rock is chiefly granite, with frequent dikes, by the weathering and erosion of the least resistant of which some of the principal canyon-like valleys seem to have been formed.

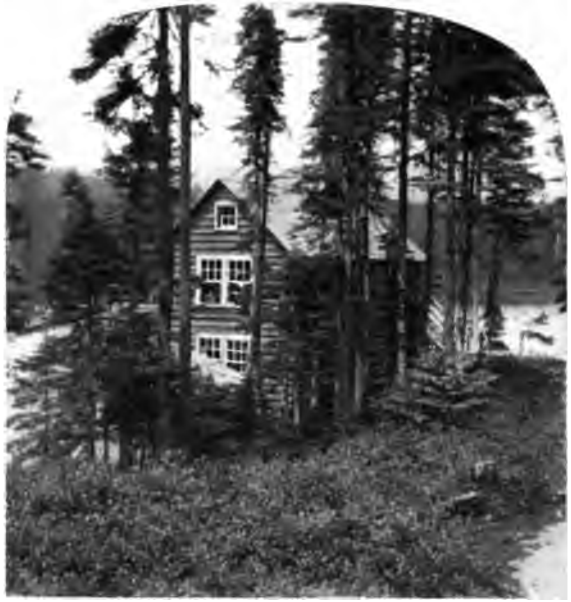
The general elevation of the central portion of this region is very considerable, the tops of some of the hills reaching an altitude of at least 1,950 feet above the sea, and it is probable, in a few cases, they may rise to 2,000 feet, thus reaching 1,350 to 1,400 feet above Lake Superior, 15 or 20 miles to the north. As a general thing, however, the hills are only 150 or 200 feet above the valleys, hence the general level is relatively high and the district is a plateau, or high pene-plain, rather than mountainous.

This considerable general elevation, together with the high latitude, gives to the region a distinctly more boreal climate than exists in other parts of the Northern Peninsula, already described in previous pages, snow accumulating to a depth of 7 feet during some winters and remaining on the ground from late October or early November till May, while even in August the night temperatures are invariably low and frosts are not uncommon in the valleys. As in other parts of the



A

Shows the end of a rock island, with peat covering, Bentley's Camp. The large tree is a Tamarack, with young Black Spruce and a Heath Society below. The hardwood forest on the shore of the lake shows in the background.



B

Shows the top of the island, with old Black Spruces and a Heath Society below.
Photographs by C. Bentley.

MroU

Northern Peninsula, there is a considerable precipitation in the form of dew and fog during the nights, so that even in rainless periods the vegetation, especially in the valleys, apparently never suffers severely from drought.

The boreal climatic conditions are clearly reflected in the vegetation, and in no part of this so evidently as in the plant associations of the bogs and of the rock outcrops. The most conspicuous and frequent forest type over much of the region is, as elsewhere in the Northern Peninsula, the broad-leaved or hardwood type, with coniferous tree species in groups, or as isolated individuals, or in pure stands of considerable extent, in favorable places, scattered through the dominant type. The broad-leaved trees, however, over much of the area, were not of good size and made rather a light open stand, as if under unfavorable site conditions, which could not be wholly attributed to moisture and soil peculiarities, but were apparently, in part at least, produced by unfavorable temperature. The species of hardwood types which were most frequent were the Hard Maple, Yellow and Black Birches, White Elm, Red Maple, White Birch, Basswood, Hop Hornbeam, and Red Oak, about in the order named, the Hard Maple and Yellow Birch much exceeding the other species in point of numbers, however.

In this region, for the first time in the Northern Peninsula, the Black Spruce was found as a common constituent of the Jack Pine forest on the sand barrens, and this species also occurred rather frequently as the dominant member of the plant societies growing on exposed rocky hills. In such places, the species reached a better development than in the swamps, growing into a tall, slender, cylindrical spire, 50 or 60 feet in height, the crown only 6 or 8 feet in diameter and the trunk attaining a diameter of 6 or 8 inches, or, rarely, even a foot. This slender columnar form of crown is unusual in the forests of the eastern part of the county, and is only approached by old Balsams; the type is well shown in some of the trees in Plate XXVIII B.

In the sand plain areas this tree and the more vigorous White Spruce, grow less tall and are, therefore, less conspicuous, especially as they are here associated with the Jack Pine growing into a similar tall, narrowly conical crown, which, taken with its short leaves and persistent pendulous branches makes it resemble the Spruces and probably accounts for its common name in this region, where it is called Spruce Pine.

The lower lying parts of the granite uplift, those which lie below 1,800 feet above sea level, have considerable deposits of glacial till which lie chiefly on the north and east sides of the ranges of hills, the tops and south and west sides of which are bare, often precipitous, cliffs, so that in looking over the country from an elevation a very different impression of its character is obtained, if one looks toward the north, from that received by looking south. If, for example, one looks at the north-facing sides of the hills, in the vicinity of the Huron Mountain Club, T. 51 N., R. 28 W., the forest-clad slopes are covered by notably fine growths of hardwood timber, here strongly mixed with Hemlock. Near the tops of the slopes, in many cases, the hardwood growth suddenly gives place to White Pine, and when the cause of this change is sought, it is found that the Pines are growing in places where the rock is at, or very near the surface. Climbing some one of the mountains back from the shore of Lake Superior in this same neighborhood and looking northward, or viewing the south-facing slopes from one of the lakes which lie nestling among these hills, and a very different scene presents itself. These hillsides, instead of being rather gentle, long and densely tree-clothed, are steep, often precipitous, bare rock with a sparse covering of White and Norway Pines, so that it could easily be imagined that one was in an entirely different region from the first. The same general conditions prevail in going inland from the Lake Superior shores, except that the Hemlock is a less frequent constituent in the hardwood forest after a few miles, and the amount of rock exposure increases in the more elevated parts of the highland, where, formerly, nearly all the hills had White Pine covering their tops, and in the most elevated parts of the plateau, their rocky sides as well. It may be noted, in passing, that the same differences in character of the north and south sides of the hills may be seen in the vicinity of Marquette, near Eagle Mills.

### *Types of Swamps and Bogs.*

As in other portions of the Northern Peninsula, the valleys of the plateau region are covered by swamps or occupied by lakes and bogs, and here also quite extensive swamps occur on portions of the sand plains which lie between the great morainal deposits banked around the higher portions of the plateau.

These swamps of the sand plains are often densely covered with a growth of White Cedar mixed with Tamarack and Black Spruce, or in places by nearly pure stands of Spruce and Tamarack, the former so dense that little lower vegetation occurs with the taller species except in openings, where various shrubs and herbs find conditions favorable for growth.

In such a swamp, on Sec. 7, T. 50 N., R. 29 W., the following species were noted: Black Spruce, quite dense, Tamarack and Balsam Fir occasional. In more open spots among the trees, the Canada and Low Blueberries, Labrador Tea, Red Maple, White Birch and a few young White Pines. Sphagnum was found, but only in spots, and there thin and making poor growth. Cassandra occurred around the borders of wet openings in the swamp. The peat in this swamp was reddish brown and poorly decomposed, and was not tested as to depth.

Similar swamps were found along the courses of the glacial drainage valleys which cross portions of the highland, but they presented no special features, except that sometimes a swamp flora was found growing on exceedingly stony areas and even upon coarse gravels, upon which very little peat had collected, although the ground was quite full of water. The plants noted in such places were the usual swamp trees and shrubs. Some of the more accessible areas of swamps in a glacial drainage valley were seen along the Peshekeme river, near its source, along the grade of the Huron Bay R. R.

A number of lakes were visited in the divide region in T. 49 N., R. 29 and 30 W. These were usually found to have high gravelly or rocky banks, with very little swamp or bog about their margins, except in limited areas and in narrow strips. Generally these lakes are quite deep, with very little visible aquatic vegetation in them, and the water was rather dark colored, sometimes exceptionally so.

In Bulldog Lake, and another small lake connected with it, the bottom was quite soft, very near the surface in many places, and was made up for a depth of several feet of an oozy, very soft peat, which, in color and structure, closely resembled the algal peat described if it was not identical with it. These lakes lie in a long, narrow valley with generally steep rock walls, at the outlet end of which was a morainal dam. Apparently at one time there had been but a single long lake, but gradually the middle portion of the valley had become filled until only a narrow water way, or sluggish stream now connects the end portions, and even this connection has been artificially increased in width and depth through the encroaching swamp. The part of this swamp lying along the stream was rather open, with Tamaracks as the chief tree species, under which was a dense growth of shrubs, chiefly Sweet Gale, Cassandra, Common Alder and Swamp Wild Rose. The Slender Sedge, Wild Calla, Marsh Cinquefoil, Pitcher Plant and other common swamp and bog species were also noted in this area associated with the shrubs along the stream. At the south end of a small lake, in T. 50 N., R. 30 W., was a narrow but quite long bog in which White Cedar, Black Spruce and Tamarack formed the tree association, while Labrador Tea, Cassandra, Andromeda and Sweet Gale grew in dense Sphagnum below. This bog was covering what was formerly a portion of the lake but was apparently making very slow advances over the surface, as the marginal fringe of shrubs was compactly bound together by mosses and other plants and was not making the growth out into the water noted in other similar localities at lower altitudes. On the whole the lakes visited in this region were notable for the small amount of bog about them and for the absence of visible water plants, while the microscopic algæ were apparently very abundant.

An important agency in the formation of swamps in this region were those industrious little animals, the beaver, which, in this unsettled area, have become again quite numerous since protected by the game laws. Their dams were frequently seen and the very considerable areas flooded by them made travel across the stream and swampy valleys difficult; in these ponds where the dam was of recent construction, as many of them were, the dead and dying trees and shrubs could be seen standing forlornly in the shallow water.

Not only were these present ponds noted, but the filled ones or beaver meadows were not uncommon, often of considerable extent, and in various stages of advancement toward the mature tree covered swamp. In these it was usually easy to discover the long, low dam at the down stream end of the tract, often covered by shrubs, while the rest of the meadow was still clothed with grasses or sedges. In one such beaver meadow, in Sec. 2, T. 49 N., R. 30 W., around the margin, was a zone of Black Spruce and Tamarack, evidently of old growth. Bordering this on the streamward side was a well-marked zone of Blue-Joint grass, growing 3 feet high in places, and this gave place to a broad Shrub-Sphagnum zone, in which there were a few young specimens of Tamarack and Black Spruce. The dominant shrub in this area was the Sweet Gale, with which was associated Cassandra, occasional plants of Andromeda, some species of Amelanchier, or June-berry, a form of the

Tall Blackberry, and more numerous specimens of Canada and Low Blueberries, and the Small Cranberry.

The following herbaceous species were noted in this zone: Pitcher Plant, Few-Seeded and Long Sedges, Marsh St. John's-wort, Canada St. John's-wort, Alpine and Virginia Cotton Grass, White Beaked Rush, Closed Gentian, Bugle-weed and Sphagnum, which covered the ground throughout this zone, and the next. Towards the center of the meadow the shrubs were first lower, then practically wanting, giving place to an Herb-Sphagnum association, with the Long Sedge and the White-Beaked Rush the most frequent species, but growing with them were Smooth Golden Rod, larger Blue Flag, Blue Joint Grass, Pitcher Plant, Round Leaved Sundew, Rough Hair-grass, and Small Cranberry.

In the outer border of this zone there were numerous young Tamaracks and shrubs; the latter in the form of small young plants, were also abundant in the Herb-Sphagnum areas, which apparently had been heavily seeded with Sweet Gale, Cassandra and Andromeda not long before.

The dam behind which this meadow had been formed was marked by a well-defined ridge, 2 feet above the bog level, on which was growing dense, very vigorous Sweet Gale, nearly 4 feet in height.

The associations found here were evidently not characteristically different from those found in open bogs in other places, and on comparison, it will be seen that the reclamation of a beaver pond into bog, marsh and swamp goes on as does the filling of any body of water, in a definite and orderly manner.

The most interesting observations made in this region of granite hills were those made upon peat-covered rock outcrops on the hills and upon a small rock island, the top of which was at least 30 feet above the level of the water of the lake in which it was situated.

The number of observations upon this type was not large, but enough of these elevated peat deposits were seen to show that the climbing type of bog, not seen elsewhere in the studies upon which this paper were based, does exist in these cooler, more elevated portions of the Northern Peninsula, especially in the valleys, where almost nightly, during the growing season, fogs occur.

The most interesting of these peculiar bogs was a high, steep, isolated rock hill standing alone in the valley of the Peshekeme river, in T. 39 N., R. 31 W., close to the stream, upon the sides and tops of which was a good growth of Black Spruce, Tamarack and White Cedar and some White Pine, Balsam-fir, White Birch and Mountain Ash, under which were the shrubs Cassandra, Labrador Tea, Sweet Gale, Canada Blueberry and a few others. In spots, on the sides of the rock, could be seen Sphagnum, evidently thrifty and making a good growth, but the larger part of the surface, where it was not too steep for any vegetation to maintain itself, was covered by a heavy growth of Reindeer Lichen, both in the open and under the trees and shrubs. The top of this rock hill was at least 50 feet above the water of the river, which bathed its eastern flanks. The peaty covering of the rock was thin, fibrous, and with very little moisture present.

A small island (Plate XXVIII A and B), was the second of these elevated peat deposits examined and was more carefully studied than that mentioned above. The rock on which this deposit was formed was small, possibly three acres, or a little more in area, had a rounded and somewhat glaciated surface, and rose about 30 feet above the surface of the lake.

The peaty covering was usually thin, a foot or less in thickness, but, in places, was said to be at least 3 feet deep. It was made up of coarse-textured, spongy, partly decomposed, brown peat, which contained the remains of tree trunks not thoroughly rotted, and quantities of the partly decayed roots and stems of shrubs. In early August, when visited, the peat was so dry as to take fire readily and was easily blown by the wind from the openings in the ground cover.

The island had been occupied as a lumber camp some years ago and all of the large Pines had been removed from it at that time, as well as other timber trees which could be used in the various operations connected with the lumbering of Pine. Later the island had been still farther cleared and occupied as a summer camp, but, in general, the natural plant covering, except the trees, had not been seriously disturbed, save where paths had been laid out and houses built. The removal of the trees, by increasing the light, had undoubtedly increased the number of individuals of some of the lower growing plants, and decreased that of others, while with the advent of man, a few weeds and cultivated grasses had been brought in, in packing material and in other ways, from the outside world, but it was still possible to determine, satisfactorily, the original relations of the plant societies found.

Including the species growing in shallow water around the island, there were four fairly distinct plant societies present corresponding to variations in habitat. These were the aquatic, the marsh, the exposed rock, or crevice, and the Conifer-Heath society. The latter covered the greater portion of the island from a short distance above the water level, with the exception of steep and exposed rock faces at various points, and was, by far, the most important and characteristic association growing here, all the others being limited in the number of species and of individuals, and in the area which they occupied, in comparison with this.

In the aquatic society of the shallow water, the following species were noted, all sparingly represented and by very few individuals: Yellow Pond Lily, Floating Manna-grass, Swamp Horsetail, Quillwort, Floating Bur-reed and Water Lobelia. Growing in the water were other species, but these belonged properly with the next society, and are given in the following list of species making up the Marsh society at this station.

Sweet Gale (the plants growing in the water were smaller and of a lighter green color than those in the Conifer-Heath society), Cassandra, Spike-rush, Creeping Spike-rush, Dulichium, Slender Sedge (in a few small areas), Long Sedge, Wool-grass, Marsh St. John's-wort, Bugleweed, Dwarf and Canadian St. John's-wort, Small Bedstraw, Yellow Water-cress and Sweet White Violet. This society was only present in spots and narrow marginal areas of mineral or vegetable débris along the small undulations of the shore of the island, or those parts most protected from winds and waves, and, like the first society, was usually sparsely represented.

The rock or crevice society was made up of the following species, together with shrubs belonging properly to the Conifer-Heath society, present as stragglers: Low Juniper, a few plants on an open, exposed rock mass. Choke Cherry, Red Raspberry, Common Polypody, Small St. John's-wort, American Wood Strawberry, Pale Corydalis, Dog Violet, Wild Oat-grass, and Wire-grass, Mosses and Lichens.

The habitat of this group of plants was chiefly crevices and narrow shelves on the more exposed rock faces, but as there was frequently only an inch-thick covering of the peaty soil where the Conifer-Heath plants were present to the exclusion of those of the crevice society, thinness of the soil was apparently not the factor controlling the distribution of these plants, but from the situation in which they grew, it seemed probable that exposure to full light and heat of the sun, sudden and violent changes of temperature, and drought were all factors in eliminating other possible species from the places where these plants grew, and the latter factor, probably combined with rain-wash and wind effects, had prevented the accumulation of peat where these plants were found.

The Conifer-Heath society covered the larger part of the island, from the Marsh society with which it merged in some places, to the very top, wherever the rock surface was not too steep to permit the peat to form. The mature trees were all of coniferous species, although a few specimens of broad-leaved types had recently established themselves in the more open places. The trees present or represented by the stumps of recently cut individuals, were Black Spruce, dominant in point of numbers, and tallest of the trees now left, Tamarack, Arbor Vitæ, Balsam, chiefly small, White Pine, represented by some medium-sized stumps, by young individuals and a few larger ones, and Norway Pine in places where the soil was very thin and dry. The Spruce, Arbor Vitæ and Balsam were all thrifty and making as good growth as similar aged individuals in the swamps and swamp margins in the same region Where the soil was very thin the young trees were somewhat stunted.

The broad-leaved species of trees noted in young stages were White Birch, Red Maple, Wild Red Cherry, American Mountain Ash and Common Aspen. Beneath the trees there had formerly been apparently a dense growth of low shrubs, chiefly of the Heath family, and even now, the ground was completely covered by these plants, except where clearing or other artificial treatment had broken the cover. There was little zonation apparent, but the Blueberries seemed rather more abundant near the top of the slopes, and Sweet Gale and Cassandra near the water, although even near the foot of the sharper inclines, there were strong admixtures of all species.

The shrubs belonging to this society were the following: Canada, Low, and Low Black Blueberries, Labrador Tea, Cassandra, Creeping Snowberry, Trailing Arbutus, Wintergreen, Fetid Currant, Bristly Sarsaparilla, Choke Cherry, Choke Berry, June Berry, Red-berried Elder, Winterberry, Mountain Holly, Common Alder and Sweet Gale. Of these the Blueberries, Cassandra, Labrador Tea and Sweet Gale were the dominant species, the Cassandra and Sweet Gale occurring abundantly to 20 feet above the water, and Labrador Tea to the very top of the island. The other species occurred scattered over the island, some, like the Fetid Currant, Creeping Snowberry and Mountain Holly, which are commonly considered bog plants were found only on the higher parts of this island, while others were apparently accidentally present in insignificant places. In examining this list, the probability of the agency of birds in transporting seeds of most of these shrubs to the island is evident, 13 out of 18 species here having attractive and edible fruits, many of which birds are known to eat, and upon which several species were feeding during the writer's visit to this locality.

The following herbaceous species were rather sparsely present, associated with the shrubs: Spinulose Fern, Common Brake, Three-Seeded Sedge, Little Prickly Sedge, Hair-grass, Wild Oat-grass, Clintonia, Wild Lily-of-the-Valley, Indian Pipe, Wild Strawberry, Purple-leaved Willow-herb, Fire-weed, Slender Rush, Pearly Everlasting, Winged Cudweed, Sphagnum, Hypnum and other mosses and Reindeer Lichen. The Sphagnum was abundant in flat places to a height of 18 or 20 feet above the water level, while Hypnum and the Reindeer Lichen covered the ground in the dryer places. A few small areas of otherwise bare rock, on the north side of the island, were covered by a mat of Sphagnum and other mosses, and lichens, and in these it seems probable that we have an indication of the way in which the beginnings of the peat covering of the island were made, as when once the moss and lichen stratum is established, other plants soon obtain foothold and from that time on, the formation of peat may go on continuously where moisture conditions are favorable. It may be noted here that small areas of some species of Sphagnum were seen on exposed rock outcrops in several places in this vicinity, usually on northern slopes, but elsewhere in the region they were not noted.

The remaining plants found in this interesting habitat were apparently recent introductions into the native association and included the following species: Rough Cinquefoil, Red Clover, White Clover, Mouse-ear Chickweed, Black Bindweed, Sheep Sorrel, Red Top and June Grass, most, if not all, species which have been introduced with hay or packing material and only found in the clearings about the houses.

In considering the relationship of this type of habitat to others described, it is evident, upon comparison, that it is closely allied by the make up of its chief plant association to mature peat bogs of the wet type. Yet, in this place, as has already been pointed out, below the peat was an outcrop of crystalline rock, with relatively smooth glaciated and rounded surface, sloping on all sides of the water, and with no contact between the present water surface and the peat covering. The only source of water for this habitat, then, is meteoric water, precipitated as rain, snow, fog and dew, so that at times it must become very dry. In fact, as noted above, the peat, at the time of the writer's visit, in early August, was in an approximately air-dry condition; that is, with not more than 50 per cent of included moisture; so that it burned readily, and contained a minimum supply of water which was available for plants. As no rain fell in this region for some weeks after this, the peat must have become still dryer before the leaf fall of the broad-leaved species in October. This condition, which must have been constantly recurring during the time required for the accumulation of the three feet of peat found here, made the habitat, so far as the soil was concerned, an extremely xerophytic one, which could only be occupied by plants which are protected against loss of water by various peculiarities of structure, which have been pointed out in Part I of this report, and which most of the species found growing here possess to a marked degree. The chief question which arose in the mind of the writer, was how any association of plants could grow where there was so little water available, as some of the species had, where they were growing in rather coarse peat, only an inch or two deep, with only the smooth rock below, when for weeks there had been no rain.

In considering this and the related problem of the accumulation of peat in such a situation, it is probable that the location of such deposits in narrow valleys, having considerable elevation above the sea is significant, both in its relation to peat formation in such places as have been described, and to the plant species forming the covering from which the deposits are built up. In such valleys, during the day the air is warm and becomes well filled with moisture from the vegetation and soil, but at night the air is always cool, whatever the temperature may be during the day, because the cool air from the surrounding hills flows into them as soon as the sun sets, precipitating the moisture as dew and fog, and it is no uncommon thing in the large valleys containing lakes to see a small cloud of fog in the early part of the evening at the mouth of each tributary valley, while later, these small clouds spread and cover the whole valley bottom with a blanket of fog. The fog thus formed condenses still more visibly as dew upon the cool surfaces of the branches, stems and leaves of the plants, and may drop to the ground and be added to the ground water, or simply be dissipated in the morning, in which case it still aids the plants by saturating the air about them and in this way enabling them to conserve the supplies which they already have by decreasing the loss of water from their tissues by transpiration. This form of precipitation also undoubtedly helps to keep the soil moist in at least two ways besides that mentioned, first by preventing evaporation into the air, during at least the early part of the day and the whole of the night, and, second, by direct absorption by the upper layers of the peat so that the water of the lower parts is not so quickly drawn off by capillarity and evaporation as it would be in times of long drought. Another interesting and probably important factor in the early history of such deposits, is the condensation of moisture from the air, directly upon the bare surface of rocks, especially during changes from cool to warm weather, where the air is suddenly warmed up before the rocks and soils reach the air temperature. At such times the rocks will become quite wet, the moisture forming visible drops, especially in places not exposed to the direct rays of the sun, and the vegetation upon them will become as green as during a gentle rain. Such precipitation favors the growth of Lichens and Mosses and other pioneer vegetation and undoubtedly also prevents the early layers of vegetable débris formed, from becoming so dry that they would be destroyed by disintegration.

Precipitation in these forms, together with the generally low temperatures of the air during the growing season, which prevents excessive transpiration from the vegetation, and evaporation from the soil, are important if not controlling factors in the development of peat deposits like that described, and in the maintenance of plant societies upon them. That is, the climatic feature which makes the accumulation of peat on elevated rock surfaces in this region a possibility, is the high relative humidity of the air which here is greater than in other parts of the state with equal rainfall, because the temperature averages lower, since here, the elevation above sea level, is greater than in other places of the state of the same latitude. That this same factor of the climate should be taken into account in considering the agricultural possibilities of the soils, in this and adjacent regions, is obvious, because in such a moist climate the poorer types of soil will produce better crops than the same types would in a region of even greater rainfall, where the atmosphere was less moist during the summer season.

The general tendency of all low ground having sluggish drainage to become covered by peat and peat-forming plants throughout the region under consideration is attributable in part, at least, to the same cause.

In this connection, also, it may be well to point out that the close correspondence of the plant society of the elevated dry peat bed described above, with that of the older and more mature parts of those peat bogs having a wet substratum is of the nature of confirmatory evidence that these are true xerophytic habitats.

### *General Conclusions Regarding Peat Formation in the Northern Peninsula of Michigan.*

From the foregoing descriptions of mature bogs in various types of localities, over a very considerable extent of the part of the state covered by this paper and of many classes of depressions in the process of being filled by the development of peat, it seems evident that, in general, the formation of peat goes on there, much as it does in the Southern Peninsula, but with some very interesting and important variations as to detail, the causes of which are not yet clear.

*Comparison of Southern and Northern Lakes in the Process of Filling:* The normal, and usual, boggy lake of the Southern Peninsula, which is being filled with plant débris, has more definitely marked zones of vegetation, and these are more fully developed and have more species of plants below the water level than the corresponding type in the Northern Peninsula. The zones of aquatic plants represented, more or less fully, in a large number of lakes and ponds in the Southern Peninsula, are the Chara zone in deep water, the Pondweed zone, the Pond Lily zone, the Bulrush zone, and the Sedge and Cat-tail zone, which is the highest aquatic zone. In the Northern Peninsula the Chara zone was not seen in a single basin, but no careful examination was made to determine its presence or absence. The Pondweeds were as frequently absent as present, and when present, were usually, though not invariably, sparse-growing and small species, in thin, or broken, zones, or as scattered plants. The Pond Lily zone was also usually poorly developed, or represented by scattered plants, or wanting, and while this is true of many ponds and lakes in the Southern Peninsula, it is not by any means so generally true. The Bulrush was also more often than not found in the shallow water of the lakes of the region studied and a very striking and important aquatic plant zone is thus eliminated from the lakes of the region. The sedge zone, then, is the one which must be considered as being the most frequently present of the aquatic, or semi-aquatic zones, but as has been pointed out, in examining the series of bogs from the southern to the northern part of the western end of the Northern Peninsula, an interesting and important variant from the type of bog which has a zone of sedges, especially the Slender Sedge, as the marginal zone, was found in those in which the shrubs, Cassandra, Andromeda, and, more rarely, Sweet Gale, were the species which were growing upon and within the water's edge, and were the plants building out from the shores and covering the open water, and apparently filling it as well. As the type was much more frequent in the northern than in the southern parts of the region traversed, it seems a fair inference that in the cooler, more humid climate of the north, the shrubs mentioned are able to grow better in the water than they can in the south. Since they can endure the conditions in the water at the margin of the mat upon which they grow, their long, rigid, stolon-like branches, which seem able to live for some years, if necessary, without rooting, are much more efficient in making advance into the open water than the comparatively weak stolons of the sedges, which, to hold themselves upright and bring their leaves above the water, must have some root attachment or grow very close together in short lengths.

It is but fair to state here, that Mr. C. C. Adams reports that on Isle Royale the bogs which were examined there, all had well-developed Sedge zones, and the hypothesis that climatic conditions are the factors efficient in producing the marginal shrub zone, may have to be abandoned as untenable, but at present no other is suggested.

*Important Types of Filling:* The relative absence of the larger and more highly organized seed-bearing aquatic type of vegetation from the lakes of the Northern Peninsula makes it possible for the minuter and simpler kinds to form accumulations of considerable size, and as the result of their development, a type of peat hitherto unrecognized (in this country at least) must be added to those which were known before, namely algal peat, formed almost entirely of the remains of one-celled or few-celled plants. This type has already been described on page 209 and its interesting and important bearing from the geological point of view suggested, but it may be added that the Algae probably play a more important part than has been suspected in the formation of deposits of peat in the southern lakes, where the more conspicuous remains of the tissue-forming aquatic plants, mask the minute particles of vegetable matter into which the cellular types break down. While algal filling of basins of considerable size, must be a very slow process compared with that done by the higher plants, even though the work of the latter is confined to marginal terraces which are built up by their growth. If a deposit of one twenty-fifth of an inch per year were assumed for the Algæ, it would take only 3,000 years to build a bed ten feet thick, which geologically, and relative to the time occupied in other changes upon the earth, is a very brief time, and well within the period since the basins in the drift were abandoned by the ice of the continental ice sheet. It may even be probable that the rate of building was slower than that assumed, but very much less rates may be postulated and still not be unreasonable, and out of accord with conservative estimates of the time which has passed since the last glacier disappeared from the region under consideration.

In summing up the variations in the manner in which the deeper basins are filled with peat in this region, the type in which the Swamp Loose-strife is the marginal plant may not be omitted, for while this plant was present in but a single lake among those visited, the hundreds which were not visited, may include many with this kind of marginal zone. It is not unlikely from the known distribution of the Swamp Loosestrife, that it is rare in the Northern Peninsula but it probably exists in more than a single locality, and where found is remarkably efficient in producing a strong and enduring mat over the surface of the water.

Minor modifications in the types of marginal turf formation, especially in those cases where the sedges are present, are of some importance in determining the succession of plants after the advance has been made, and the consequent upbuilding of the surface so that trees are able to establish themselves.

The important sedges of the turf building type of the marginal zone are (1) the Slender Sedge, (2) the Bottle Sedge, (5) the Tussock Sedge, (4) the Creeping Sedge, (5) the Mud Sedge and (6) the Few-seeded Sedge. Other grass-like turf-forming plants growing on the marginal zone, which occasionally are of importance are Cat-tail, Dulichium and some of the Spike-rushes, but so far as observed, these are infrequent, except in limited areas and never were found to cover the entire margin of larger ponds.

Of the sedges, the Slender Sedge is the one most efficient and frequent as a marginal species, as was the case in the Southern Peninsula, and the slow building up of the surface of the turf made by this species by its own remains and those of other plants, has been made clear, especially where it has frequently been noted as forming wide zones almost free from other species.

*Factors Controlling the Width of the Sedge Mat:* The width of the sedge mat, manifestly must depend upon two factors, at least: (1) the rate at which it pushes out from the margin and (2) the rate at which the surface is built up above the water level so that the species can establish themselves and crowd out the Sedge. The fact that the Slender Sedge mat is usually wide, shows that the species does build out from the shore much faster than the surface is built up. Late in the history of its development, the mat is invaded, along the shoreward margin, by shrubs or Sphagnum, or both, after which the elevation of that part of the surface is rapid.

*Periodicity of the Growth of the Mat:* As has been mentioned elsewhere in this paper, there are indications, very generally found, throughout the Northern Peninsula, that all the plants have periods when they advance rapidly from the shore, and other periods when the advance is checked and all the species remain where they are established, or even, in many cases, disappear, or retreat to the shore again. The most generally operative and effective cause capable of producing such results would be changes in water level, and the advances from the shore of all the species from the marginal types, to the trees, these remaining longest on the shore, seem to be coincident with the periods of lessened rainfall and low water level. In such periods the Slender Sedge marsh may be covered for many yards of its width by shrubs and Sphagnum, while the trees appear in the older parts of the shrub zone at about the same time, and the Sedge grows outward over the marginal terrace developed by various causes beyond its edge.

In wet periods, on the other hand, all the zones, except possibly the sedge zone, simply thicken up by increasing the numbers of individuals in favorable places, and make little, if any progress in other ways; or, if the rise in the water is too great, or sudden, may be set back to some higher level by being drowned out from the lower ones. Only by such changes of water level does it seem possible to account for some apparent anomalies in the intermixture of zonal plants which were frequently noted in bogs of the Northern Peninsula, where the level of the water, when observed, was too high to permit plants growing in it to establish themselves, and some of their associates were evidently of recent introduction and were properly in the habitat where they were found.

During the longer or shorter times when the zones are not making any advance, a thickening of the turf may occur, apparently because of the increase of weight upon it as the shrub and tree associations became more highly developed. This causes a slow sinking, while the surface is built up. The sinking apparently only continues until equilibrium is established and then ceases. When a new advance of the series of zones takes place, the old portion of the mat is much thicker and firmer than the new part and the line of union between the two can usually be determined not only because the plants growing in the newer part are different, and form a simpler association, but also because the newer part is less firm and much more easily shaken, on account of its greater thinness. Sometimes the tree growth is confined to the old part of the mat and sometimes the shrubs and Sphagnum mark its limits.

If the Tussock Sedge is the marginal and advancing plant, the habit which the plant has, of building its stools up above the water level, makes the conditions very different where it occurs, from those where the sedges which make a horizontal growth are marginal. The Tussock Sedge stools, as soon as they are built up a foot, or less, above the water, become the habitat of a number of plants from the Shrub-Sphagnum zone, and these soon bind the separate stools together and form a compact turf from which the Sedge itself is eliminated, so that the marginal zone here is often very narrow, and because of the height of the surface above the water level, the zone of pure shrubs encroaches upon the favorable site to be followed by the trees, almost as soon as the shrubs are established upon it, and the Sedge, the founder of the substratum, is confined to the narrow zone next the open water. The Bottle Sedge, rather a frequent marginal advancing plant, in the Northern Peninsula, is taller and larger than any of the other marginal sedges, having coarse thick, leaves and stems and it seems to build up the surface rather faster than the other species where it is found; hence marginal zones of this plant are narrow in proportion when compared with those in which the Slender Sedge is dominant. The Creeping and Mud Sedges are slender types and are usually capable of making a turf only in connection with other species, but occasionally they form narrow marginal zones and reach out into the water, where other plants follow upon them, but so far as observed, these two species never make extensive marginal mats themselves.

The Few-seeded Sedge is so like the Slender Sedge in its vegetative characters, that it is often impossible to distinguish one from the other, unless in fruit. The Few-seeded Sedge is frequent in low places in the Sphagnum-Shrub zone of bogs, and in a few cases in the more northern bogs visited, bore to that zone, the relation of a marginal plant, as if it had formed the mat upon which the other plants had established themselves. In a few cases also, it was observed in the marginal zone about open water, and there may have been others, where leaves alone were found, where this species was confused with the Slender Sedge, so it is given place here as a turf bearing species.

The manner in which shrubs form marginal zones around lakes and extend the structure of the bog, has already been described in detail elsewhere, page 235. It needs only to be pointed out here, that the purely marginal zone of shrubs is very narrow since, because of the height to which these plants grow above the water, the rigidity and strength of their stems and branches and their perennial habit of growth, other shrubs, sedges and other herbs, Sphagnum and even trees can occupy the structure almost as soon as it is established.

This statement regarding the narrowness of the purely marginal zone, applies equally well to that occupied by the Swamp Loose-strife, since it is also able to build up over the water level and form a substratum upon which most other plants of the bog type of habitat may grow.

It is evident from these considerations, that when most of these marginal species have created a habitat for themselves and have grown in it for a time, they develop by their growth, conditions which so improve the habitat that it becomes available for other species which promptly possess themselves of it, and overwhelm the makers, only to continue the process of improvement and be dispossessed in turn by other types.

This would proceed in a regular order through a definite series of changes to an end type of plant association, which would be able to hold the improved site, or habitat, against all comers, if climatic and all other conditions were absolutely uniform, so that there would be no marked fluctuations in water level, in evaporation, and in the various other important factors, which materially affect the kinds of habitat under discussion. But as has been pointed out frequently in previous pages, these irregularities do occur, and in consequence of them, the bog may reach a certain stage of development and then be set back to a much earlier one, or rejuvenated, or it may reach a mature stage, and continue in it indefinitely, the dry periods causing the surface accumulations to disintegrate sufficiently so that succeeding wet ones are only able to restore what was lost by disintegration and compacting. The plant associations in this stage of development are made up of permanent species, which can endure both wet and dry cycles, and of transient ones, which come and go with the changes of environment brought about by alternate rise and fall of the ground water level.

Still farther, a prolonged dry period may bring about a rapid development of the shoreward zones toward the open water, and an apparent skipping of the usual order of progress in the plant associations. Lastly, in the case of the associations of the mature conditions, certain plants may so raise the surface of their habitat in wet periods, that in dry ones, this becomes very dry, so that only the most drought-resisting species can permanently live in such places, and these migrate into the bogs from the sand plains. On the other hand, however, even these mature associations may slowly bring about changes of their habitat, by affecting drainage, and by producing excessive shade, so that even in such advanced stage, changes may occur. If the drainage is affected so that the water level is raised rapidly, rejuvenation will occur and some of the early stage societies will more or less quickly establish themselves.

Where the growth of tall species, such as Cedar or Spruce, is so luxuriant that the ground is strongly shaded, the lesser species which require much light, are suppressed, which may also mean that the amount of material added to the surface deposits is reduced until the upbuilding no longer goes on. When there is a large development of conifers, the shade may be so dense that no plants grow below them, and the result is a very slow upbuilding, if there is any. Again, if any agency, as wind, insects, disease, competition of neighbors, man, changes of water level, etc., remove these taller species, either as individuals or groups, the increased light usually permits the return of shrubs and herbs for a time.

*Species Concerned in Peat Formation:* It must also be remembered that many species of plants, as well as zones, are absent from both the marginal and aquatic areas of the boggy lakes of the north, which are present in the south. In fact, if the foregoing descriptions are inspected with this in mind, it will be found that while many species common in the southern bogs are wanting in the northern, they are not replaced, to any extent, by more northern plants, but the flora of the northern bogs are really poorer in species than in the southern, the types which do occur growing in greater numbers, and often more luxuriantly, thus fully occupying the ground.

Not all of the plants which grow in the southern bogs are southern in distribution, however, for a number of species found there in abundance, are, in the north, found growing to greater perfection outside the bogs, and in some cases at least, seldom or never in them. These plants after leaving the bogs are found first on the higher spots and landward margins, and then to take two different types of habitat, the one group going into the broad-leaved forest, where the conditions are best, while the other group seems to move out of the bogs into the dryest and poorest of sites, the sand barrens. In the first group are found the Yellow Birch, the Mountain Maple and others, while in the second, various shrubs are the most conspicuous plants, such as the Choke-berry and several heaths, some of which, as the Labrador Tea and the Blueberries, give indications, before leaving the bog habitat, of their relationship to the flora of the dry sandy soils, by always growing in the dryest, highest parts of the bogs. The structure of the leaves and other parts of these plants, as shown in another section, indicates a fitness to live in a very dry habitat.

On the other hand, if aquatics are excepted, the important, active, peat-forming plants are the same at the north, as in the south; the sedges which are the most common and important pioneer plants, are all found in the same general relations throughout their range in the region covered by this paper; the water-plants, when present, are of the same species or closely related ones of the same genera; the shrubs are of more importance at the north than at the south in forming peat as has been shown elsewhere, but their extension of vertical range, and importance, is not accompanied by any change of species, except in a few cases, in which some of the less important kinds, like Sweet Gale, do not reach the extreme southern part of our limits, but their importance, compared with other species which are constant, is very small.

*Relation of Sphagnum to Peat Formation in the Northern Peninsula:* Sphagnum has perhaps been mentioned, more than any other plant, in descriptions of bog plant societies in the preceding pages, because it has been given such an important place as a peat forming plant by many writers upon the subject. In studying the relation of Sphagnum to the formation of peat in Northern Michigan, several things were kept constantly in mind; the most important of these was to determine the relation of the plant to water level, where it grew under natural and undisturbed conditions, for upon this depended, very largely, its capacity to form deep deposits of peat. Because of the importance of this relation, every locality visited was carefully examined to see if Sphagnum showed any tendency to grow in water beyond the margin of the advancing higher seed-plants, as it has been reported to do, and in no single instance was it found beyond the edge of the Sedges or Shrubs which formed the marginal zone upon open ponds. Not only was this true, but in extensive Sedge zones, the Sphagnum was rarely found growing beyond the shoreward margin of the zone, where the water covered the surface of the turf, and where it was thus found, it usually grew more luxuriantly above the water level than below it. In a few instances it was growing in the water among Sedges, but in places where it was clear that there had been a recent rise of water over the whole series of plant zones present. In a few cases the Sphagnum was found growing well in the water of ditches cut through peat beds on which the moss was present as a member of the surface association, and apparently it was at home in the water, where it was seen in such situations, but even in these places, other types of plants were more abundant as aquatics than this, and the farther north the investigation of this subject was carried, the less Sphagnum was in the water, except by the accident of excessive rise of the water due to a heavy rainfall, as in the last open spot in a marsh near Houghton. Sphagnum was found, on the other hand, to appear in the Sedge zone just above the water level and to grow up from this level to a height of from 2 to 3 feet, around shrubs and other plants. At the top of the highest elevations thus built up above the water table of the bogs, another moss, the Hair-cap Moss, or even a lichen, the Reindeer Lichen, was usually found, showing that Sphagnum had reached its limit of growth in the upward direction. The moss was able then to build up a deposit to a height of a little less than 3 feet above the water and then dry ground types of plants settle down on it, and no farther development takes place, unless the water is again raised.

In the extreme southern part of the Northern Peninsula, about Menominee, there was little Sphagnum seen, even in the mature types of bogs, but farther north it was very generally present as a member of the shrub societies; and where the shrubs were pushing out over the water, the moss was among the first plants to follow along after them, but it was very rarely seen growing in the water among the branches of the shrubs, and never beyond them; usually it was found appearing first at a distance of from a yard to a rod, or more, back from the water's edge, on the turf formed by other plants. Sphagnum in this region is entirely a superficial plant, appearing rather late in the history of the development of the bogs, and rarely adds 3 feet of material to the surface. In many cases, the entire deposit of moss remains, together with the living plants, was less than a foot deep, in what seemed to be very old bogs, especially in the north, so that it is evident that the importance of the Sphagnum type of moss as peat formers in the region visited was relatively small. As in the case of other types of plants and even more quickly, because of its rapid growth under favorable conditions, the moss sooner or later creates conditions by its growth, which are unfavorable for it, and it is either replaced by other plants or survives in an enfeebled state, until the conditions change and become more in accordance with its requirements. The main factor which seemed to control the distribution of Sphagnum in the bogs visited, was, as has been stated, height of the ground water level, the amount and kinds of mineral matter present in the water or surrounding soil having apparently no relation to the occurrence of the plant, for it was quite as frequent and widespread in the bogs of the drumlin region, where bed rock was limestone and the soil and soil-waters were highly charged with calcium salts, as in the region of rock hills, where granite and metamorphic rocks furnished the greater part of the materials composing the soils, or in the region still farther north, where sands, largely derived from the Potsdam sandstone, were the characteristic soils, and the soil-waters seemed to have little mineral matter in them. In fact, as Sphagnum grows in the bogs of Northern Michigan, starting above the water level and away from the margin of the open water of lakes, and from the shoreward borders of bogs and building up a mass of vegetable débris until the living plants are at the top of a mound 2 or more feet from the water, it is difficult to see how the soil-water can affect it much, one way or the other, and it would seem as if it must get most of its moisture from the meteoric water coming to it from above, the small amount reaching it from below being sufficient to supply it with the little mineral matter it requires. Even in valley bogs along streams, the conditions are not favorable for large supplies of soil water to reach the Sphagnum-bearing part of the bog, but the moss was found growing in a few cases near springs where the water which it received was noticeably mineralized. The elevated and dry peat deposits of the Huron Mountain region seem to originate in the growth of Sphagnum and other mosses, and lichens on the bare crystalline rock, but this is by no means certain from the few observations made, bearing upon the matter, and if true but farther shows the lack of relation between the Sphagnum and the soil water. In this discussion, it is understood that no one species of Sphagnum is considered, but all which came under observation were noted, so that the statements made above are generally applicable.

*Distribution and Abundance of Peat:* One of the first things which strikes an observer in this region, is the number and extent of the swamps, which, because of their distinctive plant associations, are easily noticeable, and marked out from other types of soils. From a study of the map showing the distribution of the bogs and swamps of the Northern Peninsula, it is evident that the impression gained by traveling over the region is a correct one, and that swamps are an important part of the surface features, but are more frequent in some parts than in others. By far the greatest area of peat swamps, since most of these swamps are peat-bearing, in the state, is in the extensive tract lying in the eastern part of the Northern Peninsula, southeast from Munising and extending eastward nearly to Sault Ste. Marie. This area has a length of nearly 100 miles and its greatest width from north to south is nearly 50 miles, if connected, outlying areas are taken into account, but it is usually much narrower than this. This great expanse is not all swamp, but over much of its extent consists of alternating low, narrow, sand ridges, or, more rarely, clayey ones, and broad swamps and marshes. The flatness of the area, and the fact that an outcrop of hard limestone on the south has interrupted the drainage, by preventing the streams flowing out from it from cutting their valleys, seem to be the chief causes operating to make this a region of swamp. The peat, over much of this area, is very shallow, judging from observation and report, and it seems probable that a considerable part of it is not deep enough to warrant commercial development. The parts of the Northern Peninsula least swampy are the south one-third of Houghton and the greater part of Ontonagon and Baraga counties. These are regions of rather steep clay slopes and rock hills with well-drained valleys between them and conditions are not favorable for peat formation. Over the rest of the Northern Peninsula, areas of swamp are well distributed and vary in area from a few, to many hundreds of acres and the peat in them from a foot, or less, to 20 or more feet in depth. On the whole, this region is more swampy, because less well drained and more moist, than the Southern Peninsula, and the peat has accumulated in shallow deposits where there would be none farther south, or only a thin layer of humus.

The greater moistness of this region is not due, apparently, to much greater rainfall, but to a lower average temperature during the hot part of the year, and especially to the absence of long continued heated spells, which reduces the amount of evaporation from the soil and prevents drying out and complete disintegration of vegetable débris during periods of prolonged drought; cool summer nights with frequent and very heavy dews, and absence of hot drying winds, doubtless also are contributing causes in the same direction.[1]

### *Economic Considerations.*

In considering the economic possibilities of the vast stores of peat in this region, several factors have to be taken into account, aside from the efficiency of this substance as a fuel, which may be assumed to be proven by its extensive use in Europe. First among these, is the quantity available near the centers of consumption. As will be seen by reference to the map, nearly all of the larger towns are near bogs of large extent, and as each acre covered by peat represents on the average 200 tons of prepared fuel for each foot in depth, the amount of fuel piled up in these bogs is, in the aggregate, very great.

*Necessity of Careful Prospecting:* On the other hand must be considered the facts that most of the surfaces of these bogs are uncleared, and are covered by débris which is cleared away with great difficulty, and after the clearing, the upper layers of the peat are so poorly decomposed, as to be of little value for use in manufacturing a finished product that could be easily handled by machinery and which would bear transportation. The quality of the deeper strata of peat of these bogs, is also such that it is doubtful if it could be economically compressed by existing methods because of the incompleteness of the decomposition, and the fact that in many of the bogs, stumps and buried logs are distributed throughout the entire depth. It would be necessary to exercise unusual care in prospecting these bogs of the north, before attempting to develop them, to determine the character of the material and its adaptability to the purposes for which it was planned to use it. The quantity is very large, the quality, in many places, is poor for use in some of the processes of preparation.

---

[1] Data on these points were early published by A. Winchell and may be obtained from the Director of the State Weather Service, C. F. Schneider.

*Other Fuels Available in This Region:* To an observer from a comparatively treeless, settled region, the amount of forest still untouched by the axe in Northern Michigan is astounding, and it would seem as if there were fuel enough in these to last indefinitely, and at the present rate of consumption, such is the case. The experience in other regions, and even in parts of this, shows, however, that when once the forests are attacked according to modern methods of utilization, they soon disappear as sources of fuel supply, and it may not be long before wood will be as scarce in Northern, as it is in parts of the Southern Peninsula; at present, however, except in very limited areas, the wood supply is too large to warrant the development of peat resources for fuel for common uses. If there were no wood to be had, peat fuel would still have a strong competition in coal brought from the Pennsylvania and Ohio fields, as return cargoes by vessels and cars which carry iron ore from the mines to manufacturing centers, and thus supply a large part of the region with the most efficient and desirable fuel known, with which peat fuels cannot at present compete successfully.

If it were possible to establish peat fuel plants upon the same scale that they are reported in Europe, near some of the Northern Peninsula ports on the Great Lakes, it is probable that an industry of importance could be created in shipping the prepared fuel to the larger cities along the lakes, just as is done with wood and mill waste. At present, however, no such work seems feasible, although the cheap water transportation should foster such an enterprise and help to make it a success if it could once be started.

*Peat Coke in Relation to the Iron Industry:* A much more promising possible use for peat, which has passed the experimental stage abroad, is the manufacture of charcoal iron from peat coke. Peat is readily transformed into a form of charcoal or coke, just as wood, or soft coal is, by heating in closed oven. This substance, when made from peat, is in every way as good as coke, which it closely resembles, and possesses the great advantage of being as free from objectionable substances for iron manufacture as charcoal—in fact it is a charcoal, rather than a true coke, since peat is nearer wood than coal in its composition. Already there is a great and growing charcoal iron industry developing in the state, using enormous quantities of wood, which can probably be more economically and quite as profitably used in other industries, and which threatens the extinction of the remainder of our forests at an early date. The great areas of peat in the Menominee and Marquette iron regions, are, in the meantime, entirely unutilized and are exposed to constant danger of damage by fire and overdrainage, as their potential value is not realized and they are considered worthless, when, by following the methods used by the Germans, a very profitable use might be made of them, and of other deposits as well, since in the manufacture of the coke, the objections to which the less thoroughly decomposed peats are open, in making peat briquettes, do not obtain, as the finished product is hard and compact and does not easily deteriorate in handling. If this material could be utilized in this way, existing charcoal plants could possibly be used with but a slight modification, and the by-products, including gas, would be nearly identical in kind, with those now obtained from wood distillation. The main change which would be necessary, would be to install machinery for digging, handling and drying the peat. The general development of the manufacture of the peat coke on a large scale in this region, should be seriously considered by capitalists and others interested in the conservation of the wood supply and the utilization of what should be considered an important undeveloped resource.

*Agricultural Possibilities of the Peat Bogs in This Region:* In most cases, the region traversed by the writer was not sufficiently drained to permit of the use of the peat swamp land for agriculture. The swamps were still in an uncleared and unsubdued condition, and seemed likely to remain so, for several reasons, among which coldness, lack of drainage, and expense of subduing, were the most frequent given. In a few places, however, there had been some agricultural use made of the swamps with varying results. In one instance an area of swamp had been cleared, drained and put under cultivation at considerable expense, only to prove entirely useless for growing crops, because of the undecomposed condition of the peat—it was too dry for any cultivated plants to grow upon; burning off the surface layer, had been tried, but the whole deposit was so poorly decomposed that this did little, if any, good, and, in the opinion of the writer, this will prove to be the case in many of the peaty swamps of this region. The method of treatment which should prove most efficacious with land of this sort, is the use of plenty of barnyard manure, which, by introducing fermentive organisms and fungi, into the peat, helps decomposition, increases its moisture holding power, as well as furnishes readily absorbed food for the crop plants. Around Newberry, the peat has been successfully used for producing a variety of crops, and seemed, where cultivated, to be in all respects in good condition for the purpose, and the celery grown here, in this type of soil, has a well-merited reputation for its excellent quality and flavor.

In conclusion, it may be well to point out that the swamps are the last kind of lands to be fully utilized in any region, and that in many of the older and more thickly settled parts of the state, the bogs and swamps are still in a wild state and are waste land to all intents and purposes, for the reason that, in many cases, attempts to use them have been misdirected and failures on this account. This problem of using this class of land is a difficult one to solve, and while the returns are excellent, if a correct solution is found, the chances are many that failure to see some of the factors of solution, will give an entirely unsatisfactory return for the efforts made, and a few such unsuccessful attempts discourage farther effort in a given locality. If this is true, in the southern part of the state, where the bogs generally have a much better and more fully disintegrated peat, and where decomposition goes on more rapidly than in the north, it is very likely to be more frequently so in the northern part, and it would be unsafe to try cultivation of peat swamps on a large scale in this region, until the conditions to be met there have been thoroughly tested by experiments, carefully conducted after a sufficiently thorough preliminary investigation. In Europe these matters are now generally turned over to commissions or societies of trained experts, partly paid by government and partly by private subscription of land owners and all of the possibilities of a given type of lands are thoroughly investigated and tested and the results reported upon, before private individuals take the matter up. The majority of the countries of Northern Europe now have strong societies, whose sole purpose is the development of the swamp lands of the countries, and great strides have been made in rendering some of such areas productive, through the work of these organizations. Similar work ought to be done in this country, and undoubtedly will be, as the need of properly utilizing the large areas of swamp and bog lands throughout the northern part of the country, becomes more pressing, because of the exhaustion of other lands and the increase in population.

*Other Uses that Might be Made of Peat:* There are other uses to which the extensive peat bogs in the vicinity of the cities might be put to advantage, all, however, requiring rather large investment of capital to make them possible. Among these are the use of the substance in certain manufactures, such as paper pulp or paper, fabrics, etc.; its use in such a way is not, however, probable, when other extensive natural resources, such as the extensive hardwood forests, are not yet being developed.

The establishment of central plants on extensive bogs for the generation of electricity to be transferred to mines and mills at a distance is also one of the possible other uses which might be made of the stores of peat which have been described, but again it does not seem likely that capital will seek such an investment, until some of the many really fine waterfalls, capable of producing, in the aggregate, a vast number of horsepowers of electric current, have been harnessed and this cheap and efficient source of energy developed to something near its capacity, because the water power is more cheaply developed, and is much more permanent than any peat, or other similar deposit could ever be.

Peat, as a source of gas for heating, for use in explosive engines, and for lighting, is a possibility of no mean importance, since the gas can be generated at the bog and piped long distances, and since peat gas is rated as excellent for all purposes mentioned, especially for use in engines. In addition to the gas in such a plant, coke and various secondary products would be obtained which would add to the value of this form of the utilization of peat bogs. It seems unlikely that even this comparatively inexpensive way of developing an industry based on the peat bogs of the Northern Peninsula will be considered practicable and practical in the near future, although for years in Sweden and other parts of Northern Europe peat gas has been used with success for various purposes and is made by comparatively simple and cheap apparatus, but the sparse population, the lack of industrial development, except in certain lines, and prejudice in favor of established methods and against the innovation will tend to prevent such a utilization of peat as that suggested even in connection with mining operations, where it could be most profitably used in a variety of ways.

In this section of the report, stress has been laid upon the history of the development of the bogs, because so little was known of it in this region, and also because the technical aspects of the question are more fully developed in another section of the work.

Below is given a list of the plants mentioned in this section of the reports, giving the scientific names equivalent to the common names of species which have been listed and discussed in connection with descriptions of lakes, bogs and other features which have been considered in the preceding pages, for the use of botanists, teachers and others who may wish to be sure of the identity of the plants named.

### LIST OF COMMON NAMES AND THE EQUIVALENT SCIENTIFIC NAMES OF PLANTS MENTIONED IN THE REPORT OF THE NORTHERN PENINSULA PEAT BOGS.

(Names generally correspond with those used in Beal's Michigan Flora, 5th report Michigan Academy of Science, 1904, Reprinted by State Board of Agriculture, 1904.)

1. Common Alder, *Alnus incana* (L.) Willd.
2. Andromeda, *Andromeda polifolia* L.
3. Canada Anemone, *Anemone Canadensis* L.
4. Arbor Vitae or White Cedar, *Thuja occidentalis* L.
5. Trailing Arbutus, *Epigæa repens* L.
6. Arethusa, *Arethusa bulbosa* L.
7. Arrow-grass, *Sagittaria latifolia* Willd.
8. Marsh Arrow-grass, *Triglochin palustris* L.
9. Broad-leaved Arrow-head, *Sagittaria latifolia* Willd.
10. Aspen or American Aspen, *Populus tremuloides* Michx.
11. Large-toothed Aspen, *Populus grandidentata* Michx.
12. Black Ash, *Fraxinus nigra* Marsh.
13. Mountain Ash, *Sorbus Americana* Marsh.
14. Balsam or Fir Balsam, *Abies balsamea* (L.) Miller.
15. Basswood, *Tilia Americana* L.
16. Bearberry, *Arctostaphyllos Uva-Ursi* (L.) Spreng.
17. Beech, *Fagus Americana* Sweet.
18. Marsh Bell-flower, *Campanula aparinoides* Pursh.
19. Black Birch, *Betula lenta* L.
20. Dwarf Birch, *Betula pumila* L.
21. White Birch, *Betula papyrifera* Marsh.
22. Yellow Birch, *Betula lutea* Michx.
23. Small Bishop's-cap, *Mitella nuda* L.
24. Tall Blackberry, *Rubus nigrobaccus* Bailey.
25. Canada Blueberry, *Vaccinium Canadense* Richards.
26. Low Blueberry, *Vaccinium Pennsylvanicum* Lam.
27. Low Black Blueberry, *Vaccinium nigrum* (Wood) Britton.
28. Flat-leaved Bladderwort, *Utricularia intermedia* Hayne.
29. Greater Bladderwort, *Utricularia vulgaris* L.
30. Horned Bladderwort, *Utricularia cornuta* Michx.
31. Smaller Bladderwort, *Utricularia minor* L.
32. Larger Blue Flag, *Iris versicolor* L.
33. Brake or Common Brake, *Pteridium aquilinum* (L.) Kuhn.
34. Buckbean, *Menyanthes trifoliata* L.
35. Buckthorn, *Rhamnus alnifolia* L'Her.

36. Dark-green Bulrush, *Scripus atrovirens* Muhl.
37. Lake Bulrush, *Scirpus lacustris* L.
38. Bunch-berry, *Cornus Canadensis* L.
39. Smaller Bur-Marigold, *Bidens cernua* L.
40. Bur-reed, *Sparganium Sp.*
41. Small Bur-reed, *Sparganium minimum* Fries.
41a. Submerged Bur-reed, *Sparganium simplex angustifolium* (Michx.) Engelm.
42. Pursh's Buttercup, *Ranunculus Purshii* Richards.
43. Calopogon, *Limnodorum tuberosum* L.
44. Cassandra, *Chamædaphne calyculata* (L.)
45. Cat-tail, *Typha latifolia* L.
46. Cedar or White Cedar, *Thuja occidentalis* L.
47. Dwarf Sand Cherry, *Prunus pumila* L.
48. Wild Red or Pin Cherry, *Prunus Pennsylvanica* L.
49. Choke-berry, *Aronia arbutifolia* (L.) Medic., and *Aronia nigra* (Willd.) Britton.
50. Three-toothed Cinquefoil, *Sibbaldiopsis tridentata* Rydb.
51. Shrubby Cinquefoil, *Dasiphora fruticosa* (L.) Rydb.
52. Clintonia, *Clintonia borealis* (Ait.) Raf.
53. Bog Club-moss, *Lycopodium inundatum* L.
54. Water Club-rush, *Scirpus subterminalis* Torr.
55. Alpine Cotton-grass, *Eriophorum alpinum* L.
56. Slender Cotton-grass, *Eriophorum gracile* Koch.
57. Tall Cotton-grass, *Eriophorum polystachyon* L.
58. Virginia Cotton-grass, *Eriophorum Virginicum* L.
59. Silky Cornel, *Cornus Amonum* Mill.
60. Spotted Cowbane, *Cicuta maculata* L.
61. Cow-wheat, *Melampyrum lineare* Lam.
62. Large Cranberry, *Oxycoccus macrocarpus* (Ait.) Pers.
63. Small Cranberry, *Oxycoccus Oxycoccus* (L.) MacM.
64. Bristly Crowfoot, *Ranunculus Pennsylvanicus* L.
65. Great Water Dock, *Rumex Brittanica* L.
66. Dulichium, *Dulichium arundinaceum* (L.) Britton.
67. Rock Elm, *Ulmus racemosa* Thomas.
68. White Elm, *Ulmus Americana* L.
69. Cinnamon Fern, *Osmunda Cinnamomea* L.
70. King Fern, *Osmunda regalis* L.
71. Marsh Shield-fern, *Dryopteris Thelypteris* (L.) A. Gray.
72. Sensitive Fern, *Onoclea sensibilis* L.
73. Sweet-fern, *Comptonia perigrina* (L.) Coulter.
74. Philadelphia Fleabane, *Erigeron Philadelphicus* L.
75. Spurred Gentian, *Tetragonanthus deflexus* (J. E. Smith) Kuntze.
76. Goldthread, *Coptis trifolia* (L.) Salisb.
77. Late Golden-rod, *Solidago serotina* Ait.
78. Small Goose-grass, *Galium trifidum* L.
79. Blue-Joint Grass, *Calamagrostis Canadensis* (Michx.) Beauv.
80. Floating Manna-grass. *Panicularia fluitans* (L.) Kuntze.
81. Nerved Manna-grass, *Panicularia nervata* (Willd.) Kuntze.
81a. Tall Manna-grass, *Panicularia Americana* (Torr.) MacM.
82. Tall Reed-grass, *Phragmites Phragmites* (L.) Karst.
83. Beaked Hazel-nut, *Corylus rostrata* Ait.

84. Hemlock, *Tsuga Canadensis* (L.) Carriere.
85. Cut-leaved Water Hoar-hound, *Lycopus Americanus* Muhl.
86. Mountain Holly, *Ilicioides mucronata* (L.) Britton.
87. Bush Honeysuckle, *Diervilla Diervilla* (L.) MacM.
88. Swamp Honeysuckle, *Lonicera oblongifolia* (Goldie) Hook.
89. Common Horsetail, *Equisetum arvense* L.
90. Huckleberry, *Gaylussacia resinosa* (Ait.) Torr. & Gr.
91. Ironwood, *Ostrya Virginica* (Mill.) Willd.
92. Labrador Tea, *Ledum Grœnlandicum* L.
93. Showy Ladies' Slipper, *Cypripedium reginae* Walt.
94. Stemless Ladies' Slipper, *Cypripedium acaule* Ait.
95. Pale Laurel, *Kalmia glauca* Ait.
96. Ladies' Tresses, *Gyrostachys cernua* (L.) Kuntze.
97. Reindeer Lichen, *Cladonia* spp.
98. Wild Lily-of-the-Valley, *Unifolium Canadense* (Desf.) Greene.
99. Fringed Loosestrife, *Steironema ciliatum* (L.) Raf.
100. Swamp Loosestrife, *Decodon verticillatus* (L.) Ell.
101. Tufted Loosestrife, *Naumbergia thyrsiflora* (L.) Duby.
102. Hard Maple, *Acer saccharum* Marsh.
103. Mountain Maple, *Acer spicatum* Lam.
104. Red Maple, *Acer rubrum* L.
105. Purplish Meadow-Rue, *Thalictrum purpurascens* L.
106. Meadow-Sweet, *Spiraea salicifolia* L.
107. Swamp Milkweed, *Asclepias incarnata* L.
108. Wild Mint, *Mentha Canadensis* L.
109. Small Mistletoe, *Razoumofskya pusilla* (Peck) Kuntze.
110. Monkey Flower, *Mimulus ringens* L.
111. Hair-cap Moss, *Polytrichum* spp.
112. Slender Naias, *Naias flexilis* (Willd.) Rost & Schm.
113. Hedge Nettle, *Stachys aspera* Michx.
114. Red Oak, *Quercus rubra* L.
115. Scarlet Oak, *Quercus coccinea* Wang.
116. Tall Green Orchis, *Limnorchis hyperborea* (L.) Rydb.
117. Tall Leafy Green Orchis, *Limnorchis hyperborea* (L.) Rydb.
118. Tall White Bog Orchis, *Limnorchis dilatata* (Pursh) Rydb.
119. Red Osier, *Cornus stolonifera* Michx.
120. Marsh Pea, *Lathyrus palustris* L.
121. Harthwright's Persicaria, *Polygonum Hartwrightii* A. Gray.
122. Swamp Persicaria, *Polygonum emersum* (Michx.) Britton.
123. Pickerel Weed, *Pontederia cordata* L.
124. Jack Pine, *Pinus divaricata* (Ait.) Gord.
125. Norway Pine, *Pinus resinosa* Ait.
126. White Pine, *Pinus Strobus* L.
127. Indian Pipe, *Monotropa uniflora* L.
128. Pipe-wort, *Eriocaulon septangulare* Willd.
129. Pitcher Plant, *Sarracenia purpurea* L.
130. Fringed Polygala, *Polygala pauciflora* Willd.
131. White Pond Lily, *Castalia* spp.
132. Yellow Pond Lily, *Nmyphœa advena* Soland.
133. Common Floating Pondweed, *Potamogeton natans* L.
134. Pondweeds, *Potamogeton* spp.

135. Balsam Poplar, *Populus balsamifera* L.
136. Joe Pye-Weed, *Eupatorium purpureum* L.
137. Low Raspberry, Dwarf Raspberry, *Rubus Americanus* (Pers.) O. A. F.
138. Red Raspberry, *Rubus strigosus* Michx.
139. Rush, *Juncus* spp.
140. Slender Rush, *Juncus tenuis* Willd.
141. Soft Rush, *Juncus effusus* L.
142. Swamp Saxifrage, *Saxifraga Pennsylvanica* L.
143. Bristly Sarsaparilla, *Aralia hispida* Vent.
143a. Scheuchzeria, *Scheuchzeria palustris* L.
144. Bottle Sedge, *Carex utriculata* Boott.
145. Bristly Sedge, *Carex comosa* Boott.
146. Bristle-stalked Sedge, *Carex leptalea* Wahl.
147. Creeping Sedge, *Carex chordorhiza* L. f.
148. Fox Sedge, *Carex vulpinoidea* Michx.
149. Few-seeded Sedge, *Carex oligosperma* Michx.
150. Lesser Panicled Sedge, *Carex teretiuscula* Good.
151. Little Prickly Sedge, *Carex sterilis* Willd.
152. Magellan's Sedge, *Carex Magellanica* Lam.
153. Pennsylvania Sedge, *Carex Pennsylvanica* Lam.
154. Porcupine Sedge, *Carex hystricina* Muhl.
155. River-bank Sedge, *Carex riparia* W. Curtis.
156. Sartwell's Sedge, *Carex Sartwellii* Dewey.
157. Slender Sedge, *Carex filiformis* L.
158. Soft-leaved Sedge, *Carex tenella* Schk.
159. Three-leaved Sedge, *Carex trisperma* Dewey.
160. Tussock Sedge, *Carex stricta* Lam.
161. Water Sedge, *Carex aquatilis* Wahl.
162. Yellow Sedge, *Carex flava* L.
163. Marsh Skull-cap, *Scutellaria galericulata* L.
164. Common Smart-weed, *Polygonum hydropiper* L.
165. Sneeze-weed, *Helenium autumnale* L.
166. Creeping Snowberry, *Chiogenes hispidula* (L.) Torr & Gr.
167. Sheep Sorrel, *Rumex acetosella* L.
168. Three-leaved Solomon's Seal, *Vagnera trifolia* (L.) Morong.
169. Sphagnum, *Sphagnum* spp.
170. Creeping Spike-rush, *Eleocharis palustris* (L.) R. & S.
171. Black Spruce, *Picea brevifolia* Peck.
172. Black Spruce, *Picea Mariana* (Mill.) B. S. P.
173. White Spruce, *Picea Canadensis* (Mill.) B. S. P.
174. Starflower, *Trientalis Americana* (Pers.) Pursh.
175. Northern Water-Starwort, *Callitriche bifida* (L.) Morong.
176. Water-Starwort, *Callitriche palustris* L.
177. Canadian St. John's-wort, *Hypericum Canadense* L.
178. Marsh St. John's-wort, *Triadenum Virginicum* (L.) Raf.
179. Barren Strawberry, *Waldsteinia fragarioides* (Michx.) Tratt.
180. Round-leaved Sundew, *Drosera rotundifolia* L.
181. Sweet Flag, *Acorus Calamus* L.
182. Sweet Gale, *Myrica Gale* L.
183. Tamarack, *Larix Laricina* (DuRoi) Koch.
184. Swamp Thistle, *Carduus muticus* (Mx.) Pers.

185. Touch-me-not, *Impatiens biflora* Walt.
186. Twin-flower, *Linnæa Americana* Forbes.
187. Swamp Valerian, *Valeriana uliginosa* (T. & G.) Rydb.
188. Blue Vervain, *Verbena hastata* L.
189. Kidney-leaved Violet, *Viola renifolia* A. Gray.
190. Lance-leaved Violet, *Viola lanceolata* L.
191. Marsh Violet, *Viola Le Conteana* Don.
192. Sweet Wild Violet, *Viola blanda* Willd.
193. Yellow Water-cress, *Roripa palustris* (L.) Bess.
194. Bulb-bearing Water Hemlock, *Cicuta bulbifera* L.
195. Sweet-scented Water Lily, *Castalia odorata* (Dryand.) Woodv. & Wood.
196. Water Shield, *Brasenia purpurea* (Michx.) Casp.
197. Bebb's Willow, *Salix Bebbiana* Sarg.
198. Hoary Willow, *Salix candida* Fluegge.
199. Myrtle-leaved Willow, *Salix myrtilloides* L.
200. Shining Willow, *Salix lucida* Muhl.
201. Silky Willow, *Salix sericea* Marshall.
202. Great Willow Herb, *Chamænerion angustifolium* (L.) Scop.
203. Marsh Willow Herb, *Epilobium palustre* L.
204. Winterberry, *Ilex verticillata* (L.) A. Gray.
205. Wintergreen, *Gaultheria procumbens* L.
206. Bog Wintergreen, *Pyrola uliginosa* Torr.
207. Withe-rod, *Viburnum cassinoides* L.
208. Wood-rush, *Juncoides pilosum* (L.) Kuntze.
209. Upright Yellow Wood-sorrel, *Oxalis stricta* L.
210. Wool-grass, *Scirpus cyperinus* (L.) Kunth.

### *List of Plants from Huron Mountains.*

211. Small Bedstraw, *Galium trifidum* L.
212. June Berry, *Amelanchier Canadensis* (L.) Medic.
213. Black Bindweed, *Polygonum Convolvulus* L.
214. Bugleweed, *Lycopus* sp.
215. Choke Cherry, *Prunus Virginiana* L.
216. Wild Red Cherry, *Prunus Pennsylvanica* L. f.
217. Mouse-ear Chickweed, *Cerastium vulgatum* L.
218. Rough Cinquefoil, *Potentilla Monspeliensis* L.
219. Red Clover, *Trifolium pratense* L.
220. White Clover, *Trifolium repens* L.
221. Pale Corydalis, *Capnoides sempervirens* (L.) Borck.
222. Fetid Currant, *Ribes prostratum* L'Her.
223. Red-berried Elder, *Sambucus pubens* Michx.
224. Fire-weed, *Chamænerion angustifolium* (L.) Scop.
225. Blue Grass, *Poa pratense* L.
226. Hair Grass, *Agrostis hyemalis* (Walt.) B. S. P.
227. Wild Oat-grass, *Danthonia spicata* (L.) Beauv.
228. Rock Panic-grass, *Panicum* sp.
229. Wire-grass, *Poa compressa* L.
230. Swamp Horsetail, *Equisetum fluviatile* L.
231. Low Juniper, *Juniperus nana* Willd.
232. Water Lobelia, *Lobelia Dortmanna* L.

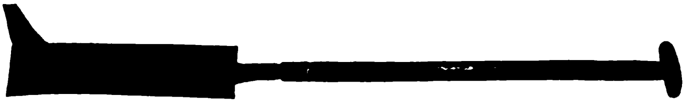
233. American Mountain Ash, *Sorbus Americana* Marsh.
234. Pigweed, *Chenopodium album* L.
235. Common Polypody, *Polypodium vulgare* L.
236. Quillwort, *Isoetes* sp.
237. Red Top, *Agrostis alba* L.
238. Bladder Sedge, *Carex folliculata* L.
239. Sheep Sorrel, *Rumex Acetosella* L.
240. Spike-rush, *Eleocharis acicularis* (L.) R. & S.
241. Marsh St. John's-wort, *Triadenum Virginicum* (L.) Raf.
242. American Wood Strawberry, *Fragaria Americana* (Porter) Britton.
243. Timothy, *Phleum pratense* L.
244. Dog Violet, *Viola Labradorica* Schrank.
245. Sweet White Violet, *Viola blanda* Willd.
246. Yellow Water-cress, *Roripa palustris* (L.) Bess.
247. Purple-leaved Willow-herb, *Epilobium coloratum* Muhl.

# PART III.

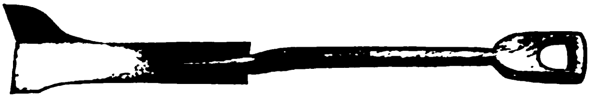
# ECONOMICS OF PEAT.

BY CHARLES A. DAVIS.

A PEAT BOG.



A SLANE OF THE OLDEN TIME, ABOUT 1760.



A MODERN SLANE.

(MADE BY O. AMES & SONS, NO. EASTON, MASS.)

# PART III.

## ECONOMICS OF PEAT.

## MISCELLANEOUS USES OF PEAT.

*Introductory:* Peat is a substance of such common and abundant occurrence in the regions where it is found at all, and varies so much in texture and purity that it is not remarkable that it should be put to a variety of uses for which its composition, structure and other properties make it more or less perfectly fitted, especially in countries where other forms of raw materials are scarce and expensive, and where there is an abundance of various types of peat.

*Uses in Agriculture:* Long before it was considered as a source of manufactured material, however, it was used as a soil upon which to grow crops, and in a number of other ways by the farmers, and methods of improving "swamp," "marsh," "moor," "fen" and "muck" lands have been important problems in agriculture from early times. Some geologists, and others, make a technical distinction between muck and peat, applying the name peat only to nearly pure deposits of vegetable matter, while the name muck is given to those which have a considerable admixture of mineral matter in the form of mud or other finely divided rock débris, but among the farmers of Michigan and adjoining regions no such distinction is made and all classes of soil, from pure peat, to that with much mineral matter mixed with it, are called muck.

*Importance of Muck Soils in Michigan Agriculture:* Swamp lands, largely covered by peat and muck, are estimated according to Towar[1] to form one seventh of the entire area of Michigan, and since they are quite uniformly spread over the agricultural regions of the state, so that most farms of 100 acres or more have some part of their surface of this type of soil, it is apparent that they furnish a problem of some magnitude.

In the early days of farming in the state, these areas were considered worthless and were left in a wild and much neglected condition, as many still are, but as the higher and dryer lands have become less productive, and through improved conditions, drainage of swamps has become possible, the muck soils have attracted more and more of the attention of progressive farmers, and from being considered nearly worthless, and entirely unproductive, they are now recognized as valuable and highly productive types of soil for many crops, and it is as farm land, perhaps, that peat will yield the largest returns. In spite of this fact, however, there are still great areas of such land in Michigan in a wild condition, which if they could be reclaimed, would add largely to the total wealth of the state, and to the individual resources of the owners.

---

[1] Towar, J. D., Loc. cit.

*Difficulties in Growing Crops in Muck Soils:* It is apparent that there must be some reasons why swamp lands are neglected to such an extent, and these appear, when it is learned that in many cases there are serious difficulties encountered in securing paying crops from soils of this type, after they have been made ready for cultivation.

The causes of these difficulties naturally group themselves under the following heads:

(1) Those due to situation.
(2) Those due to the nature of the soil itself.
(3) Those due to impurities in the soil.
(4) Those due to unwise choice of crops.

Under (1) the following must be considered:

(a). The swamp is such because it lies in a situation where the ground water level rises nearly to, quite to, or above the surface of the ground, which causes the soil to be excessively wet.

(b). Swamps are usually located in depressions, and as cold air flows down hill just as water does, it accumulates over the swamps and causes unseasonable frosts during cool nights in the summer time.

(2) Peculiarities of the muck which give trouble are:

(a). The retention of vegetable structure, which gives it great power to take up and hold water, as is shown by the following table quoted by Carpenter[1] from Schubler, which gives the amount of water absorbed and retained without dripping by 100 pounds of the following soils:

| | Pounds of water retained. | Per cent of evaporation in 4 hours. |
|---|---|---|
| Quartz sand | 25 | 88.4 |
| Lime sand | 29 | 75.9 |
| Clay soil | 40 | 52.0 |
| Heavy clay | 61 | 34.9 |
| Muck | 181 | 25.5 |
| Coarse peat | 377 to 519 | |

The muck holds more then seven times as much as the sand and three times as much as the heavy clay.

(b). This water-holding property of muck makes it cold under ordinary moist conditions, since before the soil can be warmed the water which it holds must be warmed also.

(c). On the other hand, when dry, muck heats up very quickly, and radiates its acquired heat more rapidly than any other soil, making it very warm during the day and cold at night.

(d). When it has become thoroughly dried out, peat is often powdery, and very porous, and the dried particles become to a considerable degree, impervious to water, so that in dry times it does not readily become wet after it has once dried out. This property taken in connection with (c) makes it especially hard to deal with in times of drought.

---

[1] Carpenter, R. C., Report Mich. Bd. of Agriculture, Lansing, 1886, p. 158.

(e). As has been pointed out in another place (page 214) peat may seem quite moist, and yet, because the water it contains is held in the remains of plant cells and tissues of which it is made, this is not available for absorption by the roots of growing plants.

(f). Because of its loose structure and lack of firmness and compactness when dry, it does not give good root hold to crops which grow tall.

(g). Because it is so wet during the fall and spring, when freezing and thawing are going on, crop plants wintered upon this type of soil are very liable to injury from frost "heaving."

(h). While very rich in plant foods, muck soils have some of the most important of these so combined with other substances that they are not readily available to the growing plants.

In this connection attention should be called to the work of the European bog and swamp culture societies and the excellent work which they have done and are doing in bringing large areas of unproductive moors and swamps into such condition that crops of some kinds can be raised on them. Since, however, European conditions of climate, of land holding, of labor, of crop production, and of markets are unlike ours, the methods used there can only be used in a general way here, but the thoroughness of the investigation of these societies, their wide scope and the excellent results make it seem that the work done by them should be followed in this country by that of similar organizations among land owners and farmers.

(3) The impurities injurious to crops which accumulate in peaty soils are of two classes, as follows:

(a). Organic acids.

(b). Mineral salts.

(a). It is a matter of common observation that muck soils are frequently so sour that they cannot be used for certain crops. This is due, in part, at least, to the presence of organic acids which are formed during the decomposition of the plant remains of which the muck is composed. The sourness seems to be due chiefly to humous acids, but ulmic acid is present in the browner types of peat and it is probable that tannic and other organic acids occur in small quantities. As all of these compounds are poisonous to a greater or less extent, it is evident that their presence is undesirable and may be harmful to particular plants.

(b). Of the mineral salts which occur in peat, and which are common in Michigan, ferrous sulphate or sulphate of iron, seems to be the most injurious to crop plants and sometimes makes the soil entirely useless. This is most often found in peat formed around springs and upon springy slopes, and the iron is doubtless derived from the water of the springs in which it exists as the carbonate.

Another soluble salt which is poisonous to crops is magnesium carbonate, probably derived from the soil below the peat and brought to the surface by capillary action, during the process of cultivation. This substance gives an alkaline reaction to the soil in which it is present, and is more likely to appear in injurious quantities after the soil has been cultivated for some time.

(4) From the consideration given above, it is evident that swamp

muck as a type of soil is not adapted to all kinds of crops, and moreover, all deposits cannot be treated alike, if satisfactory results are to be obtained from them after they are prepared for use. It must be remembered therefore, that it is often necessary for the owner of a piece of such land to make a special study of its possibilities and peculiarities before he can realize its full value and productivity.

In a large number of cases, for some years after reclamation, the surface of swamp land will be coarse textured and loose, because of the imperfect decomposition of the upper layers of the deposit, which adds to the difficulty of utilizing it to the best advantage, and it is probable that grass for hay or pasturage will generally give the most satisfactory results during the period while the surface is settling and becoming compacted and the coarse material broken down into that sufficiently fine for best agricultural use.

*Methods Used in Reclaiming Swamp Lands:* It is not the place here to go into the details of the methods of preparing swamp lands for profitable agriculture, but a statement of one essential may not be out of place. This is effectual and complete drainage, no simple matter, it is true, but without this, all authorities agree and experience shows that nothing satisfactory can be done.

Such soils should never be set on fire to improve their texture or composition. This point is enforced very strongly by the reply of the late Dr. R. C. Kedzie to a question as to the advisability of this practice, put to him at a Farmers' Institute in which he said in his emphatic way, "You might as well burn down your barn in order to sell the ashes."

Of the many papers contained in the reports of the Michigan Board of Agriculture, discussing methods of handling this kind of soils and of fitting them for farming and also giving results of actual experiments upon them in various parts of the state, the following are especially to be cited:

Carpenter, R. C.: The Improvement of Muck Swamps.
    Report Mich. Board of Agriculture 1886, p. 154.
Rowe, W. A.: Treatment of Peaty Soils after Drainage. 1886, p. 175.
Kedzie, R. C.: Management of Swamps.
    Bulletin 115, Mich. Agricultural Exp. Station.
    Also in Report Mich. Bd. of Agric. 1895, p. 371.
Crozier, A. A.: Wheat on Muck Land.
    Bulletin 141, Mich. Agricultural Exp. Station.
    Also, in Report of Mich. Bd. of Agric. 1897, p. 284.
Towar, J. D.: Muck Experiments.
    Bulletin 181, Mich. Agricultural Exp. Station.
    Also, in Report Mich. Bd. of Agric. 1900, p. 275.
Towar, J. D.: Beet Experiments on Muck Land.
    Bulletin 179, Mich. Agricultural Exp. Station.
    Also, in Report Mich. Bd. of Agric. 1900, p. 235.

Many other references may be found by consulting the index to the Reports from 1849-1888.

In Holland, large areas of bog, after the peat has been used for fuel, are diked and drained, and make excellent farming lands, which support a considerable population.

*Peat as a Fertilizer:* Next in importance, so far as agriculture is concerned, to its use as a soil upon which to grow crops, peat has a well-recognized value as a fertilizer for other kinds of soil, particularly for those which are deficient in organic matter. When used for this purpose, it is either applied directly to the soil to be enriched, or after composting it with stable or barn-yard manure, a very desirable practice for which its great absorbent power especially fits it. If used without composting, it should be well rotted and in condition such that it crumbles readily when it is air dry, not in the form of hard lumps or stringy clods, and in order to reduce the coarser kinds to this condition, it should be piled in heaps and left exposed to the weather for a year or longer, until it loses its fibrous character and breaks down into the finer grained, more friable condition. The same exposure to the air and weather should be given the black, wet and sticky peat which is found in bogs below the water level, for if it is taken to the bog and put upon the fields in lumps, it dries into hard masses and clods, which are very difficult to break up when once they have dried and hardened, and are of no benefit whatever to the land. If, however, this material is thrown out upon the surface of the bog in heaps and allowed to drain and dry and to be exposed to freezing and thawing through the winter, it becomes thoroughly disintegrated and powdery, and then may be used with good effect. The drying out upon the bog also makes the handling the material so much the cheaper, since the peat loses a large part of the water which it has in the bog, often amounting to more than 90% of the weight of the whole load, the handling and hauling of which is, in large part, waste work. If a block of this black sticky peat is taken from the bog and measured and weighed before it has become dry, and then after, the importance of this way of treating it will become apparent.

If used as material for composting, peat is mixed in alternate layers with about equal bulk of stable or barn-yard manure, to which may be added weeds, straw, or any kind of undecomposed vegetable or animal matter, piled in heaps. The fermentation of the manure induces chemical changes in the peat also, and these changes make available to crops the nitrogen which is present in the peat in an unusable form, as well as other valuable constituents.

The peat also absorbs and holds a considerable part of the ammonia which is set free in the processes of decomposition, and which would otherwise escape into the air and be lost. Because of its power to take up and hold liquids, it prevents leaching of the more easily soluble solids, some of which are very valuable plant foods, and holds them in such a manner that they are saved to be used by the crops. If used in this way a load of dry peat may well be rated, as it often is, as valuable as a load of stable manure.

The following analyses of the Michigan celery soils show how rich the peaty types of soil are in nitrogen and in other essential elements for the growth of crop plants. In these soils, which are low-grade peat, the amount of mineral matter, as shown by the sand and silicates, is much larger than in pure peats, but as they are from typical localities where extensive use is made of the muck soils, they serve for illustration here.[1]

---

[1] Bulletin 99. Mich. Agricultural Exp. Station, Lansing, 1893, p. 12.

### Kalamazoo Celery Soil, from Kalamazoo, Mich.

| | Parts per 100. |
|---|---|
| Sand and silicates | 19.16 |
| Alumina | 1.40 |
| Oxide of iron | 3.94 |
| Lime | 6.09 |
| Magnesia | .81 |
| Potash | .34 |
| Soda | .38 |
| Sulphuric acid | 1.31 |
| Phosphoric acid | .88 |
| Carbonic acid | 1.95 |
| Organic matter containing 2.53 nitrogen | 63.76 |
| Water | 6.51 |

### Grand Haven Celery Soil, from Grand Haven, Mich.

| | Parts per 100. |
|---|---|
| Sand and silicates | 24.09 |
| Alumina | 1.71 |
| Oxide of iron | 3.52 |
| Lime | 5.02 |
| Magnesia | .62 |
| Potash | .20 |
| Soda | .33 |
| Sulphuric acid | 1.04 |
| Phosphoric acid | .69 |
| Carbonic acid | 1.05 |
| Organic matter containing 2.32 nitrogen | 61.73 |
| Water | 10.85 |

### Newberry Celery Soil, from Newberry, Luce Co., Michigan.

| | Parts per 100. |
|---|---|
| Sand and silicates | 24.56 |
| Alumina | 2.21 |
| Oxide of iron | 1.30 |
| Lime | 4.18 |
| Magnesia | .75 |
| Potash | .42 |
| Soda | .40 |
| Sulphuric acid | .67 |
| Phosphoric acid | .46 |
| Carbonic acid | 1.10 |
| Organic matter containing 1.75 nitrogen | 63.75 |
| Water | 7.31 |

In a discussion before the Michigan Horticultural Society, Dr. R. C. Kedzie,[1] than whom we have no higher authority in agricultural chemistry in this country, said in regard to use of muck for composting:

---

[1] Kedzie, R. C., Report Mich. State Hort. Soc., 1883, p. 168.

"Barn-yard manure composted with equal volume of powdery muck, by placing these materials in alternate layers, then shoveling it all over once, in the spring, a month before it goes to the garden or field, will give double the volume of the manure scarcely inferior to well-rotted barn-yard manure. Such composting is not a process of dilution but a substantial addition of manurial matter. Muck contains nearly the same quantity of combined nitrogen (2%) as well-rotted manure, but this nitrogen is in the inert or inactive form. By composition with barn-yard manure, the active fermentation of the animalized matter induces fermentation of the muck and some of the nitrogen is made active."

*Stable and Barn-yard Litter:* Peat may not only be used as composting material to excellent advantage, but also it has extensive use in Europe, and a more limited one in this country, (1) as stable litter and bedding for horses and stock, and (2) it is drawn into barn-yards and used there as an absorbent and deodorizer. (1) For bedding and stable litter, the best kind of material seems to be the coarse, top layers of the peat bogs, including the coarse mosses and grass-like plants which often make up the surface covering. In some cases dry, powdery peat is used, especially where a deodorizer is wanted, but the ideal material for bedding is the Sphagnum moss litter. This is very light in weight and from nearly white to light brown in color, when dry, absorbs large quantities of moisture in proportion to its bulk, and forms a springy layer, which is not surpassed by any other material used for the purpose. Aside from these qualities, it is a powerful deodorizer, and a disinfectant of some value, and accumulates and holds, to a marked degree, the nitrogenous materials of the manure, most of which are entirely wasted in ordinary practice. This material should be especially valuable for use in cities, and for bedding in dairy barns where odors, all kinds of germs, and dirt of all sorts, should be reduced to the smallest possible quantity, if the cleanliness and healthfulness, and consequently the value of the product and the health of the stock, and that of the patrons, are to be regarded. It could also be used by lumber companies for bedding horses at the camps in winter.

This form of litter is already in use in some of the large cities along the coast, being so highly valued that it is imported from Europe, and there seems no reason why large quantities of it should not be used in Michigan, where it is an abundant natural product, now almost entirely unused, or even wantonly wasted by periodical burning. At the present writing, a single establishment has put this material upon the market in a few places in limited amounts. This is the plant of the Bancroft Peat Fuel and Cement Company, Lt'd., located at Bancroft.

As it appears upon the market, the material is compressed in a dried state into bales, which makes it easy to handle and ship. The peat, usually the top layers, because too fibrous and coarse for other uses, and the mosses and finer vegetation growing upon them, may be prepared for litter in any disintegrator or fiber picker, or even in a corn shredder. With a hand machine, such as are made in several places in Germany, by Martin of Offenberg, or Paul Reuss, Artem, Germany, two men can prepare several tons of peat litter in a day. With a shredding machine or mill for grinding up turfy peat, and combined with a sifting machine to get rid of the fine dust and dirt, the air-dried peat of the coarse types could rapidly be reduced to a useful product, which, after thorough drying, may be baled like straw. In developing such machinery or adapting the ordinary farm machinery to these uses, it must be borne in mind that the bog is soft and that proper foundation of piles or stone work must be provided if the machinery is heavy and is to be placed upon the peat bog; in some of the German peat presses, however, the construction is such that no special base or support is required and such devices as are necessary can perhaps be developed here, to suit special cases.

In developing large plants for this purpose, it is probable that some form of dryer might be needed to give opportunity to run them during prolonged wet weather or during the winter. In Europe, many types of dryers have been patented for the drying of peat for various purposes, some of which are manufactured to order, and some are on the market continuously. Of these the rotary types seem to be most in favor as doing the work quickly and with economy. In drying the peat for this, as well as for other uses, it is well to remember that it is not necessary to get rid of all the moisture, but simply to reduce the fiber to the air-dry condition, containing from 15 to 20 per cent of moisture. If reduced lower than this, the cost is greater in proportion and the expense is wasted, since the material immediately takes up from the air sufficient moisture to give it the amount given above. In this country, because of the high cost of labor, most of the work of handling the peat for this as well as other purposes, must be done by machinery, and before attempting to develop the industry and to establish it upon a paying basis, no more profitable step can be taken than to thoroughly study the practice and machinery which have been developed in Germany and other countries of Europe, where the matter has been under investigation and has long passed the experimental stages of development; after which the markets in this country need to be studied, to see whether they will take the manufactured product in quantities which will warrant the erection of a plant. It may be said in passing, that some years ago an attempt was made in New Brunswick, where large deposits of nearly pure Sphagnum are found, to use these for the purposes under discussion, which resulted unsatisfactorily, because of the cost of production of the finished product, and the limited demand in the available markets, which, in this case, could be more cheaply supplied from Europe. The fine residue left after cleaning the peat for coarse litter may be used for fuel or sanitary purposes.

(2) The same kinds of peat which are used for stable litter, may often be used in the barn-yard with excellent results, acting both as a deodorizer and as an absorbent and saving much valuable fertilizing material. For this use the peat should be taken from the upper layers of the beds and should be well dried out before drawing. After the surface vegetation is removed from the bed to be used in this way, it may be plowed with shallow furrows in order to loosen up the fibrous peat, and then, after harrowing, the material may be turned over by a hay tedder, until thoroughly dry. The dry material may then be raked up and stacked, and it will keep dry for a long time, since only the outer layers of the stack will be wet even during prolonged rains, or it may be compressed and baled in a hay press, and stored under cover.

Dry powdery peat is also recommended for use in barn-yards and acts in much the same way as the coarser forms.

*Peat as a Disinfectant for Farm Use:* In many cases in isolated dwellings, the matter of sewage, cesspools and other receptacles of a similar nature, is a difficult one to handle, because of the cost of proper construction, and often, also, of materials for disinfecting them. The results of neglect are often the pollution of the water supply and many forms of bacterial or germ disease, the breeding of flies and mosquitoes and various other annoyances and positive dangers.

Dry, powdered peat, such as the screenings from cleaned peat fiber, or ordinary fine peat, either slightly charred, or in the ordinary air-dry state, mixed with 1% of powdered copperas (ferrous sulphate), is a very cheap and quite efficient disinfectant and deodorizer for all such places and makes the best material known for earth closets, urinals and vaults, being light in weight, cheap, odorless itself, very absorbent of both liquids and gases, and antiseptic, and is much more lasting in its effects and more easily handled than sand or dry earth, lime or ashes. After such use is made of it, it has high fertilizing value, either used directly or composted. Many efficient forms of peat closets, urinals, etc., are advertised by the European manufacturers of such articles.

*Peat as Stock Food:* At first thought, this would seem to be an impossible use for peat, but in various parts of Europe, especially in the regions where beet sugar is made, the molasses is fed to stock and sheep, and among other materials which have been used to take up the molasses, are peat powder and cleaned fibrous peat, which give the molasses body and make it possible for it to be eaten readily by the animals to which it is fed. This is not its only function, however, for it has been demonstrated, by actual analyses, that the peat has a certain food value and that part of it is assimilated by the animal eating it, moreover this mixture keeps well and does not ferment so readily as does the molasses alone. While such a mixture is not now known to be in use in this country, there is no reason why in Michigan some of the lighter colored peats should not be tried with success for this purpose, in the vicinity of the beet sugar factories, where the molasses may be had at a nominal cost.

For this purpose, also, it would be possible to use the finer refuse, or peat mull, from cleaning the coarser kinds of peat to make peat fiber and litter, if there was not too much actual dirt of indigestible kinds mixed with it, as would rarely be the case.

### *Peat as a Deodorizer and Disinfectant in Towns and Cities.*

As has been pointed out in the previous section, peat is a good, cheap, and effective deodorizer and disinfectant. In 1880, according to Macfarlane[1] Dr. Ludwig Mappe in Braunschweig, first called the attention of the public to the value of peat litter, or "moss litter," as a deodorizer and absorbent for use in towns and cities, and a gradually increasing use for this material has since grown up. Its use as a public health measure has been adopted in several towns in Germany and in Congleton, Cheshire, England. It has also been used for years in Canada, at Caledonia Springs, to deodorize human refuse. The material is excellent for use in all places such as public urinals, stables, outhouses and slaughterhouses, where easily decomposed, noxious smelling compounds, whether liquid, or partly solid, accumulate to become the source of annoyance, or actual danger to public health. One part by weight of the peat litter will deodorize and dry at least six parts of mixed excreta, giving a perfectly odorless and inoffensive product, which has a relatively high value, as compared with stable manure, when used as a fertilizer for all agricultural crops except those which, like celery, lettuce, and other vegetables eaten raw, for which it should never be used.

---

[1] Macfarlane, Th. Bulletin 97, Lab. Inland Rev. Dept., Ottawa, Can., 1904, p. 33.

In Montreal, carefully conducted experiments on a large scale by Dr. Laberge, using moss litter produced in Welland county, Ont., show that 100 pounds of the litter dried and deodorized eight times as much excreta from the ordinary privy pits of that city, rendering it entirely free from odor, so much so that a sample of the product was kept in his office for a considerable time without attracting attention by any odor.[1]

There are many towns in Michigan where sewer systems of the ordinary type are lacking, or are practically impossible, and where the pubic health is continually menaced by existing conditions. In most of these, the general use of peat litter by the people and by the public officials would do away with many of the danger spots, which are now the breeding places of disease germs, flies, and vermin, and from which epidemics either have already originated or may develop at any time. For the use of these towns, local supplies of peat could easily be utilized, the product gathered and compressed under contract by the local health authorities, if no one else could be found to attend to the matter. A short period of compulsory use, would result, in most cases in the voluntary adoption of the method, just as the establishment of a system of sewers often results in the general connection with them, of residences along the lines, although compulsory connection at times has to be enforced.

*Use in Hospitals:* A form of antiseptic and exceedingly absorbent dressing for wounds made from peat has been prepared and used in Europe, where its absorptive power was found to be greater than that of cotton, and even when saturated with blood, showed no signs of decomposition even when not attended to for several days. Peat dressing was reported to be used by the Japanese surgeons during the Japan-Russian war, but no description of the preparation or use has been found. Certainly however, dried, properly prepared Sphagnum peat, or the dry moss, is a clean, very absorbent material and is said to be nearly or quite sterile, i. e., free from bacteria of any sort. In actual practice, however, since no chances should be taken where wounds are concerned, the material should be thoroughly steamed before use, thus insuring the sterilization. In a cotton producing country, it is probably true that a long time will pass before sterilized absorbent cotton will be superceded by peat dressing. A much more practical, and more valuable use for the coarse kinds of peat litter, properly sorted, for hospitals, is its utilization in the manufacture of mattresses and bedding. Here it has the advantages given above, viz.: it is very absorbent, a deodorizer and disinfectant, is practically sterile and more than all else, for this use, it has the advantage of being cheap, so that it may be renewed often. In addition it may be said, it is light in weight, is springy, if properly cured, and makes a better bed than most of the materials now in use for mattress making. The best type of peat for this purpose would be the superficial layers of either sedge or moss peat, the latter probably being the kind to be preferred. Where the material has been tried in Europe it is reported to be exceedingly satisfactory, and it is to be hoped that wherever beds are needed that have to be changed frequently, this material will be given a fair and impartial trial.

---

[1] Macfarlane op. cit. p. 35.

### *Destructive Distillation of Peat.*

Like all other forms of fuel, which are of vegetable origin, peat is capable of being decomposed into a series of simpler chemical compounds when heated in closed receptacles away from the air. Wood and bituminous coal are treated in this way on a very extensive scale, the main products sought being charcoal, from the wood, and coke, or, in certain cases, gas for illuminating and heating, or power, from the coal. The general process, known as destructive distillation, consists of heating the substances of organic origin in heaps or mounds, covered with earth, or some form of vessel or structure, which is so arranged that air is entirely excluded, or is allowed to enter only to a very limited extent, while means of exit are provided for the gaseous products of the decomposition brought about by the heat, either directly to the outside air or through tubes, so that the escaping vapors may be cooled, condensed and saved, since some of them have commercial value. The familiar charcoal kiln, a dome-shaped brick structure in which wood is stacked and a fire started in the stacks, to be controlled by carefully regulated draught openings at the bottom, while the gases escape into the air at the top, is a crude form of apparatus in which wood is converted into charcoal, the gases and other volatile matters being allowed to go to waste, except the heavy wood tar, which usually condenses on the inside of the kiln. More elaborately and scientifically built charcoal kilns are constructed of iron, and are heated from the outside, the gases liberated being conducted through properly built flues, so that they may be saved by condensation and used. If the gases from wood distillation are saved, the lightest ones cannot readily be condensed into liquids, but as gases they take fire readily and burn with great heat, and may be used for illumination, heating or for generating power in gas engines. In good practice, in wood and coal distillation, these gases are used either to heat the kilns, or retorts, or are burned under boilers to generate steam for engines used about the plant, as they are in the best processes in coking peat abroad. With these gases comes a series of substances which are liquids at ordinary temperatures, chief of which, are water, various organic acids, wood alcohol, creosote and tar. In the same way that wood yields charcoal and these other substances, for which thousands of cords of wood involving the stripping of hundreds of acres of woodlands annually in Michigan alone, peat may be used as a source of practically the same series, and, in many cases, to quite as good advantage. This is by far the most rational and scientific way of preparing peat for use as fuel when it is to be transported for some distance from the bog, especially if the by-products are saved.

*Peat Coke and By-Products:* The coke made from peat is jet black, firm and hard, has the fibrous or columnar structure of coke made from coal, and like it, rings slightly when struck. It is as free from sulphur and phosphorus as charcoal, all of the sulphur being contained in the ash as sulphates and has a thermal value of about 7,000 units (from 6,776 to 7,800 calories). With less prolonged heating, substances less hard and firm, similar to charcoal in efficiency, are obtained by the destructive distillation of peat.

In Germany, where peat coke is said to have been used in the smelting works at Freyburg as early as 1360, and where many unsuccessful attempts have been made since that time to develop a commercially successful product, the inventions of Ziegler and others have carried the process of coking peat beyond the experimental stages, and it is now reported by careful students of the subject, to be manufactured on a paying basis; such of the coke as is on the market sells readily at from $9.50 to $12.00 per ton, and is used for copper refining, smelting foundry iron and for other metal working processes, but the industry is still in too undeveloped a condition to furnish the coke for use in blast furnaces, although it is in every way as desirable for this purpose as the best wood charcoal.

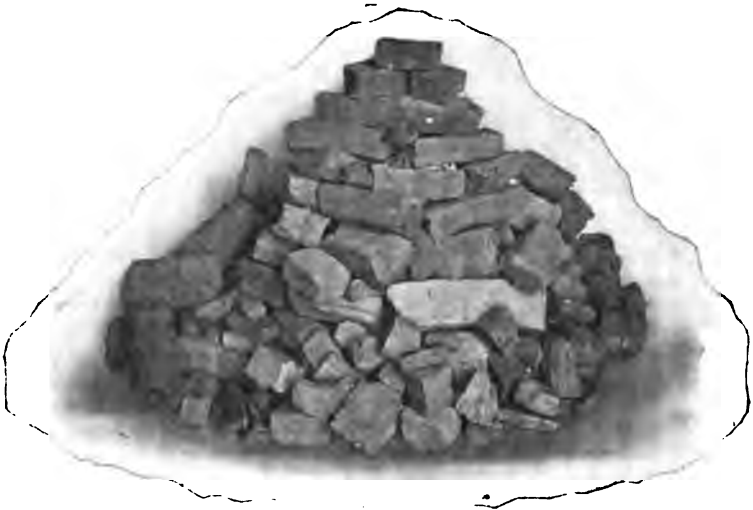
A sample of peat coke from Germany, made by the Ziegler process, was recently examined by the writer. It was jet black in color, as hard and as firm as a good grade of hardwood charcoal, or possibly even firmer than this, and showed the character of the peat from which it was made so well that it was possible to determine this to be of coarse texture, chiefly remains of shrubby plants. Apparently the peat had not been ground or in any way treated, except to cut it from the deposit and dry it, before it was coked. The material appeared to have been originally like that of the uppermost layers of peat in thousands of acres of Michigan swamps of a grade most of which would have to be rejected in the manufacture of briquetted peat fuel, and it would appear that a more compact and finer grained peat, coked to the same degree as this sample, would yield even a better grade of coke.

The makers of this peat coke report that it stands the pressure exerted in blast furnaces better than charcoal, not crushing in an 80-foot blast furnace, and equally as well as coke produced from coal. Whether this statement applies to the charcoal produced in Europe from the softer woods or to that made in this country, as in Michigan, where the sound and largest logs of the finest birch and maple timber are still cut up and converted into charcoal, does not appear. The cost of production is less than that of charcoal and the actual cost is given in another place (page 300).

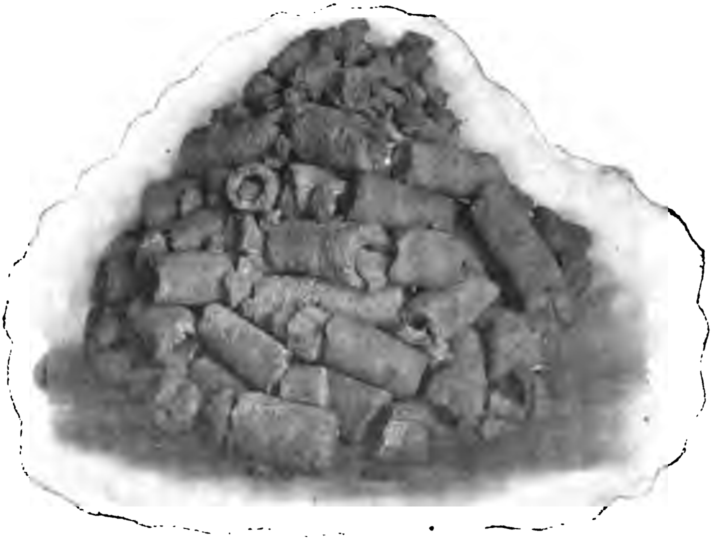
If such fuel can be made from an inferior grade of peat, at as low a cost as quoted, there would seem to be no good reason why the remaining forest lands of the state, and especially of the Northern Peninsula, should be stripped to make charcoal for use in smelting iron, while quite as near at hand to the iron mines as the forests are large deposits of good peat entirely unutilized. Such utilization of peat would leave the vast quantities of timber now converted into charcoal, to serve as the basis for other industries.

It may also be used anywhere and for any purpose where an efficient, smokeless fuel is required, or in industries where such fuel is necessary In domestic use it may be used in base-burner heating stoves, kitchen stoves and in other places where charcoal is now used, but will probably never successfully compete with anthracite for general use.

Besides the coke, there are obtained as secondary products, in this



PEAT FUEL, BROKEN.



PEAT COKE, BROKEN.

method of preparing peat, gas, which is used to carry on the process of coking after this is once started, tar, and lighter liquors which yield various products on proper treatment, and which nearly if not quite, pay for the cost of the whole operation.

The amount of coke yielded from a given weight of peat ranges from 30% to 45%, in round numbers about ⅓, but varying with the compactness of the original material and the length and intensity of heating, the highest yield being obtained, and the best coke, from artificially compacted peat. If heated a shorter time, peat charcoal, much less compact and more friable, is obtained.

According to German figures and prices, a metric ton, nearly equaling the long ton of 2,240 pounds, of dried peat, costing for all charges of digging, handling, drying and delivery to the kiln, $1.19, yields the following returns:

| Substances. | Amount. | Value (U. S. currency). |
|---|---|---|
| Peat coke | 777.6 lbs. | $3.75 |
| Tar | 88.2 | .52 |
| Wood alcohol | 13.2 | 1.00 |
| Lime acetate | 13.2 | .17 |
| Ammonium sulphate | 8.8 | .21 |
| | Total | $5.65 |

besides gas in excess of the amount required to dry and coke the peat, which may be estimated to be worth for the purposes for which it is used, at least 25% of the value of the coke. No other fuel than this gas is used in drying and coking the peat after the process is started.

Another writer gives as the results of factory tests the products from one ton of peat, as follows:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Peat coke | 700 lbs. | |
| Tar water | 800 | |
| Tar | 80 | |
| Gas | 420 | (6,650 cu. ft.) |
| The tar water yielded: | | |
| Acetic acid | 12 lbs. | |
| Wood alcohol | 12 | |
| Ammonium sulphate | 8 | |

The Ziegler process, which seems to be the most successful of those in use in the peat-producing parts of Germany and Russia, is continuous, and, as pointed out below, self-sustaining.

The facts regarding this process are largely compiled from data most kindly furnished by Dr. Otto Zwingenberger, the representative in America of the company controlling the Ziegler patents and manufacturing the machinery for making coke from peat by this method.

The first plant using the process was erected in Oldenburg in 1897, and after careful examination by an expert employed for the purpose by the Prussian State Department of Trade, on his recommendation, this process was adopted for the utilization of extensive peat bogs owned by the Prussian government.

A second plant was built in 1901 in Redkino, for the Russian government. This plant runs 8 furnaces, each manufacturing 5,000 tons of peat coke per year.

The latest plant to be built is that at Benerberg, South Bavaria. where the South Bavarian Coke Works and Manufactory of Chemical Products Joint Stock Company of Munich, which now controls the Ziegler patents, has its headquarters. This new plant has four furnaces and is equipped for recovering the by-products from the tar and tar water saved from the distillation of the peat, and went into operation in 1906. The process used by these establishments consists in carbonizing the dried "machine" or compressed peat in closed retorts heated by burning under them the gases liberated from the peat by the heat. The peat is cut from the bogs, compacted, and molded into square blocks by ordinary peat machines coming out as "machine-peat." It has, at this stage, from 80% to 90% of moisture and is allowed to dry in the open air until it contains only about 50% or 60%. After this preliminary drying, it is removed to drying chambers, heated by the waste heat from the retorts and burning gases from the furnaces, and is passed slowly through these and comes out with from 20% to 25% of water. From these dryers it is carried to the top of the iron retorts of special form by endless belts, and at regular times is placed in these air-tight, vertical receptacles. In this thorough drying to the point of crispness, at no expense for fuel, so that it is rapidly carbonized when placed in the retorts, seems to lie the chief secret of success in the recent process as compared with older ones, for when the peat was placed wet in the kilns, the water was only driven off with great waste of time, heat, and of fuel, so great that there was no margin of profit in the operation. The economy of the Ziegler method of drying the peat, first in the air, and later by waste heat, generated by the combustion of what would be otherwise waste gases, is apparent when compared with processes which used separate drying chambers, heated independently by the use of costly fuel and allowed the combustible gases and other valuable, volatile, but condensible vapors, from the retorts to escape into the air, and be wasted.

The condensible gases are not wasted by this system, but are conducted through proper cooling apparatus and then redistilled by the use of excess of heat, generated by the process of coking, into a number of commercially valuable products.

These vary in quantity, according to the thoroughness of the coking, and the quality of the peat, that with high ash content, giving a smaller per cent of volatile matter than that with low; the coking is carried farther with peats with a small per cent of ash than with those with a large per cent, the resulting products being sold as No. 1 peat coke—that most completely coked, and No. 2 peat coke or "half coke."

No. 1 peat coke is somewhat harder than the half coke, and the latter burns somewhat more freely and with a more noticeable flame, and it is not so well adapted to metallurgical processes as No. 1 peat coke. The peats with high per cent of ash, since this is mineral matter and does not volatilize when heated, give a larger per cent of coke, which, however, does not give good heating results, as the ash will not burn.

The proportionate amounts of the various products obtained by coking

100 parts of air-dry, 20% to 25% moisture, machine-peat, are shown in the following table:

| | No. 1 Peat coke. | No. 2 Peat coke. |
|---|---|---|
| Peat coke | 33.0 per cent. | 45.0–50.0 per cent. |
| Tar | 4.5 | 2.0 |
| Tar water | 40.5 | 38.0 |
| Gases | 22.0 | 15.0 |

Carrying the processes farther to make by-products by redistillation;

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| No. 1 Peat coke | 33.0 | per cent is untreated. | | |
| Tar | 4.5 | " " properly treated yields | 2.0 per cent of | light oil.[1] |
| | | | 0.7 " " | heavy oil.[2] |
| | | | 0.3 " " | Paraffin. |
| | | | 1.3 " " | Phenolates. |
| Tar water | 40.5 | per cent will give | 0.2 " " | Asphaltum. |
| | | | 0.34 " " | Wood alcohol. |
| | | | 0.31 " " | Ammonium. Sulphate |
| | | | 0.50 " " | Acetate of Lime. |

Gases..22.0 per cent not condensible, but burned under boilers and dryers.

The per cents of ash and of tar obtained vary according to the quality of the peat used. The coke may be increased in quality by using briquetted peat. This also gives the coke somewhat greater density.

Products from the tar, and the tar itself, are of considerable value as preservatives of wood used for railroad ties, posts, poles, and timbers for all structural purposes, both when applied as paints externally, or when forced into the wood as impregnating substances. The hydrocarbons of the oils are of the aromatic series, and from them a series of useful chemical compounds can be obtained.

In regard to the cost of producing peat coke, Dr. Zwingenberger says: "Its price is cheaper than that of charcoal; by saving the by-products, the cost of one ton of peat coke is about $2.00 to $2.15 in running the smallest type of Ziegler plant, containing four ovens, taking in consideration the high wages paid in America, and including depreciation, etc. In a larger plant of about 20 ovens, the value of the by-products will nearly pay all the expenses and give the coke free."

Peat coke being cooled in closed receptacles to prevent its taking fire, does not contain water, since after cooling it is not absorbent, while charcoal sometimes takes up considerable water.

In Germany peat coke is used successfully in several places, among which may be mentioned the Krupp-Gruson Works, where it is used in the form of a powder for hardening armor plates, and the Bleymueller Works at Bleyberg, near Schmalkalden, in a blast furnace. Siemens and Halske, Berlin, have found it an excellent raw material for the production of a high grade of calcium carbide.

In Russia, as noted elsewhere, peat coke is being used on the government railways as fuel for locomotives.

---

[1] Sp. Gr. 0.835. May be used for lighting.
[2] Sp. Gr. 0.838. May be used for lubricating oil.

The capacity of each furnace, or retort, as at first constructed, was about 11,668 pounds of coke, 13,333 pounds of tar water, 1,333 pounds of tar, and 7,000 pounds of gas (110,850 cu. ft.) from 33,333 pounds of air-dry peat (20% to 25% of moisture) in 24 hours. At the Imperial Russian Krons Peat Factory, at Redkino, each of the eight retorts cokes from 24 to 30 tons of machine-peat having 25% of water in 24 hours, a larger output than the above quoted figures show.

The cost of a four-oven plant, for making peat coke by this process, with all necessary machinery for cutting, drying and handling the peat, and the apparatus for making the by-products from the waste liquors, was given in 1903 to be $95,200. Such a plant was estimated to handle 15,000 tons of dry peat per year, from which products could be made, which would sell at the wholesale market prices of that time, in Germany, for about $117,500, nearly one-half of which, after deducting all expenses for the cost of peat, handling, labor and wear of plant, repairs, etc., should be profit.

Another set of figures obtained from Hon. J. M. Longyear, who had them from J. J. Hill, gives the following as the cost of a peat coking plant, German process:

| | |
|---|---|
| Two peat coke ovens, capacity 30 tons air-dry peat, each yielding 10 tons of No. 1 coke or 13.5 tons of No. 2 coke per (24 hours) day | $20,000 |
| Drying and other machinery | 8,000 |
| Apparatus for distilling tar water | 7,000 |
| Total | $35,000 |

A plant of 10 ovens, with a capacity of about 100 tons of No. 1 coke per day can be had for $175,000, and the estimated cost of a second plant after the first is constructed is 25% less than this.

So far as known there are no peat coke plants in this country which are producing the material in such quantities that it is sold in the open market.

Peat coke was also made in Norway for several years by the use of electrically heated retorts, the electricity being generated by water power, the plant using the Jebsen process, which produces a dense, very compact coke, showing the structure of the peat, having a specific gravity of 0.3 in broken condition. Its heating value is about that reported for that made by the Ziegler process. It is reported that it burns well, and gives but little soot and ash, and clinker is small in quantity and does not clog the fire as does that of ordinary coal and of lignite.

This process involves the partial drying and pressing the peat into blocks 30 inches long, by 3 inches square on the ends. The blocks are turned out at the rate of 2,500 per hour and loaded on specially designed carriages with shelves, which are then run into the cool end of a drying tunnel, which is heated by the waste gases from the retorts. At the entrance end, the temperature is about 50° C., while at the exit end, it is from 90° to 100° C., the air being driven through the tunnels by electric fans. From the drying tunnel, the peat is taken to the retorts, which are vertical and are about 6 feet high by 3 feet in diameter, each with a cover above, and a discharging hole below, and each is also provided with pipes for the escape of the gas and with a pressure gauge. After charging with the dry blocks, the top cover is clamped down and the current turned on and the peat is carbonized. When the heating is completed, the retort is allowed to cool to 130° C., after which the coke is discharged directly into cars on tracks below the retorts. The average yield of air-dried peat by this process was given as:

| | |
|---|---|
| Peat coke | 33% |
| Tar | 4 |
| Tar water | 40 |
| Gas | 23 |

The coke was said to find ready sale in near-by towns, and the plant had been running three years when described in 1902, but was closed later for lack of financial support.

Analyses of peat coke made by the Jebsen process, reported by the Royal Norwegian High School in Christiania gave the following as the average composition:

| | |
|---|---|
| Carbon | 76.91% |
| Hydrogen | 4.64 |
| Oxygen | 8.15 |
| Nitrogen | 1.78 |
| Sulphur | 0.70 |
| Ash | 3.00 |
| Moisture | 4.82 |
| | 100.00% |

Another electric process has been devised in England, but so far as known, it had not passed beyond the experimental stages.

*Peat Gas:* Because of the undecomposed condition of the vegetable matter of peat and the large amount of volatile matter which it contains, it is not remarkable that it should have been used often, in an experimental way, as a source of gas for various purposes, but in northern Europe, especially in Sweden, the use of the gas for heating and lighting has gone beyond the experimental stages and has reached the stage of commercial success.

In considering the methods of making peat coke just described, the value of the gases developed in the destructive distillation of the peat has been dwelt upon at length. This gas is reported by those who have used it to be a better illuminant than coal gas, to be more easily produced, with simpler apparatus, to be more easily purified than coal gas, and that the yield per ton of the dried material is greater. This last statement is probably true, because of the less complete decomposition of the peat as compared with coal, which makes it relatively high in gases. On the other hand it must be remembered that the peat, with 90% of water, has to be dried by some process before gas can be made from it, and that it is only by using the least expensive process to accomplish this that peat gas can be made economically upon a commercial basis.

The quantity of gas obtained in Sweden from a metric ton (2,204 lbs.) of peat having 8.6%, or more, of ash and high hydroscopic moisture content is given by Dal as 2,520 cu. meters or 89,000 cu. ft. This gas, however, is more than half its volume Nitrogen, as shown by the accompanying analysis:

| | Per cent of volume. |
|---|---|
| $CO_2$ | 6.9 |
| CO | 26. |
| $C_2H_4$ | 0.5 |
| $CH_4$ | 4.4 |
| H | 8.5 |
| N | 53.7 |

Better grades of peat yield a larger volume of fuel gases. The amount of gas yielded by English cannel coals per ton, is indicated in the following table:

| | |
|---|---|
| Newcastle cannel | 9,883 cu. ft. |
| Wigan cannel | 10,850 |
| Boghead cannel | 13,334 |

while a ton of peat by the Ziegler process only gives 6,650 cu. ft., which, considering that the peat has 20 to 25% of moisture at the start and costs, at the bog, a little less than a third as much as the coal, really gives the peat the advantage, especially since the peat coke will command a much higher price than gas coke, on account of its freedom from sulphur and other objectionable matter.

The great efficiency of gas engines of the explosive types, the rapid increase in size and the very material increase in the use of these, in many places where steam engines have, until recently, held the entire field, opens up an important field for the use of easily ignited gases; this has resulted in a demand for cheap and efficient gas generating machines, which will furnish gas at a lower price than it is furnished by the large private or public companies which manufacture coal gas, or which can be used where no public plants are in use. This demand has been met by a large number of gas generators of small size, designed to be used in connection with gas engines, to utilize poor grades of coal, some of which are very successful, and it would seem that special forms of these could be developed, in which the gas could be generated from air-dried peat, and thus work up an important field of use for this fuel. By those who have experimented with it in this direction, peat gas is said to be particularly adapted for use in gas engines, and the only phases of development lacking are the proper forms of generator for making the gas and an assured and constant supply of prepared peat which consumers can get as needed.

In still another way may peat gas be utilized on a large scale, as suggested in another place. That is by building large gas generating plants, with proper equipment for utilizing all gaseous by-products, at the margin of large peat bogs and piping the gas to centers of consumption. This would reduce the cost of manufacture, by doing away with the transportation charges on the crude fuel, and would be no more difficult to bring about than piping oil or natural gas long distances. That peat gas is being considered as a possible cheap fuel and is likely to be utilized before long, is indicated by the recent (June, 1906) newspaper notice of a project for the establishment of a plant for producing the gas near Ogdensburg, N. Y., and utilizing it in the manufacture of steel. In developing this, as well as other phases of utilization of peat, a thorough investigation of European experiments and established plants is recommended. It is worth noting here that there are large quantities of peat near the Lake Superior iron mines, which might be utilized in the production of charcoal iron and for furnishing power either steam, compressed air, gas or electric for developing and operating the mines.

### *Paper Pulp, Paper and Cardboard.*

One of the more recent uses to which certain grades of peat have been put, is the manufacture of paper pulp and various grades of paper. This is of interest in this region because of the establishment of a plant in Michigan, near Capac, for the purpose of making peat into paper, which, in this case, is reported to be used for building purposes.

The chief advantage in the use of peat for paper stock is its cheapness of material, particularly as the prices of other sorts of material and especially wood pulp are constantly increasing, as the wood supply becomes more and more depleted. In one of the processes for making paper from peat, the Zschoerner process, the peat is placed in a disintegrator, where it is treated with alkalies in dilute solution and at low temperature, but high pressure, until some of the vegetable and earthy matters are extracted from the fibrous material. This fiber is then oxidized, bleached and washed to further clean it, and again subjected to cold, dilute alkali solution under high pressure to get rid of the remainder of the soluble mineral matter, after which it is thoroughly washed, when it is ready for use. This bleached material may be used by itself, or mixed with other paper stock to make nearly any grade of paper in ordinary use, as the fiber thus obtained is strong and durable. In making the coarser grades of paper and pulp board, less care is taken to cleanse the fiber of all coloring and foreign matter.

The type of peat best adapted to this use is undoubtedly that made by grasses and sedges, since these plants furnish the most fibrous material in stems, leaves and root-stocks. In prospecting peat deposits for this use, care should be taken to find the depth and amount of fibrous layers and to avoid the filled lake basins, unless of large extent, as usually these have only a shallow, surface layer of material suitable for the purpose, while thinner, built-up deposits, may have practically the entire depth of more or less coarse, poorly decomposed, fibrous peat. These will be found in shallow basins and on terraces, and may, at present, be covered by tree or shrubby growth, or by moss. Moss peat, despite many statements to the contrary, contains no strong fibers whatever, except those produced by other plants, such as the sedges, which may grow with the moss as associates.

There were already in operation, in 1899, in Europe, several factories which produced large quantities of all kinds of paper, with peat as the source of most of the fiber, and these were reported as paying institutions. On the other hand, there are serious drawbacks to the economical use of peat in paper making, which may be summed up as follows: It is difficult to get rid of the dirt and waste; the peat is uneven in structure and in texture and often lacks sufficient of the stronger fibers, so that much other material has to be mixed with the peat stock to make paper sufficiently strong even for wrapping paper, so that it is reported that there is little peat paper on the European markets which is more than 75% peat; the peat pulp cannot be bleached to whiteness, so that only brown papers can be made, except in rare instances, hence the principal product of the European industry has been wrapping paper.

Pasteboard made of 40% of peat fiber and 60% of wood shavings is a standard product, both in Germany and in Sweden, and is said to be cheaper, lighter, stronger, and better than pasteboard made in the ordinary way.

Aside from the factories reported in Germany peat paper has been made in England, Ireland and Austria, as well as in the northern European countries, but with what financial success is not reported.

The plant of the American Peat and Fuel Company at Capac in this state, was leased in 1905 for two years, and has since been sold, to the Pilgrim Paper Company of New York, organized for the purpose of manufacturing and selling card-board, bill-board, feather-board, paper, and other products from peat under Austrian patents. The materials in the extensive bog owned by the company, had been carefully tested in the home factory of the company's process at Admont, Austria, and later at Capac, and produced highly satisfactory results, and the company is convinced that the processes have passed the experimental stage, and are confident of the success of their enterprise, for which the Capac peat bog is peculiarly adapted, having been built up, by successive elevation of water level, from the bottom, and hence has much coarse material at various depths.

Similar to a heavy paper, is the material known as "Heloxyle," made by compressing and hardening peat fiber, by a special process, into sheets, tiles and blocks for various building purposes. The sheets are used for lining walls, floors and other parts of buildings, or as flooring. The material is about as light and firm as good cork and is as impervious to moisture, as well as a good non-conductor of sound, heat, and vibration; when impregnated with some mineral substances, it is nearly fire-proof, all of which properties make it very desirable for use in dwellings and buildings, where protection is desired against noise and jar. It is one of the cheapest of all building materials in Germany and is easily nailed or glued, takes paint well, is light, clean and easy to handle, and hence is very desirable as a structural material. Other types of sheathing and builders' paper are discussed below.

### *Woven Fabrics from Peat.*

By a course of treatment which separates and cleanses the fibrous parts of peat, and renders them pliable, they have been made into fabrics of various kinds, so that coats, hats, carpets, rugs, mattings and blankets have been manufactured from them and have proven quite durable. The most successful use of these fabrics has been in the form of blankets and other coverings for horses and cattle and for this use they are said to excel in warmth, durability, absorbent power and cleanliness.

### *Packing Material.*

Peat litter has long been used, when properly cleaned, as packing material in shipping various breakable articles and those which perish easily, such as bulbs, fruit and living plants, by freight. For these purposes, the upper layers of moss peat are most desirable, and considerable quantities of this material are used yearly by florists and nurserymen, where they can readily get it. No industry has been developed, but a small business to supply the demand of the florists and nursery-men of the state and surrounding region, might be built up by someone to whom a moss covered bog of sufficient extent was accessible. The moss would best be compressed and baled for this purpose. Peat might also be used to pack fruits and vegetables to keep them fresh for winter use, as this material has many advantages over sand, the material generally used for the purpose. It is also suggested that it would be a desirable substance in which to pack eggs to preserve them.

### *Roofing and Sheathing Papers.*

As has been mentioned, the extensive peat bog near Capac has been sold to a company which proposes to manufacture, among other products, a kind of builders' paper from the peat. The coarse-fibered peat is well adapted to this use, as well as the making of such material as "Heloxyle" mentioned above as a valuable building material. Coarse, felted material should also be easily made from the cleansed fiber, which would be an excellent non-conductor of heat for sheathing buildings. The paper thus prepared could also be rendered waterproof by soaking it in tar obtained by distillation of peat. The coarser, more fibrous parts of moss peat could be used, as is the marine plant known as "Eel Grass," which is spread in a thin layer between sheets of heavy paper and held in place by stitching through the paper. This material is used in the better classes of buildings, for sheathing paper.

### *Non-Conducting Packing Material.*

Still another use has been made of both the fibrous peats and the finer grained, powdery types, as non-conducting filling or packing. This material is an excellent non-conductor of heat and sound, and has been used as such in Europe. The moss types make light, inodorous, sanitary and effective packing for use between the walls in refrigerators, ice houses, for packing ice, and to put between the walls of dwelling houses, and between floors and partitions to deaden sound. The same material would also be exceptionally valuable in the construction of the so-called caloric cookers. If used in connection with some mineral substances, which would reduce its inflammability, it would make very desirable felted covering for steam pipes, and could in any case be used to protect those buried in the ground from loss of heat, and also water pipes to keep them from freezing, for which use the cheapness and the durability as well as the porosity of the material would make it especially desirable.

### *Paving and Building Blocks.*

Blocks of material for special uses made from peat, by special processes, besides the one mentioned as "Heloxyle," have been made in larger or smaller quantities from time to time, among which may be mentioned imitation terra cotta building material and paving blocks. The latter were as firm and hard as wood and were impregnated and covered with tar made also from peat. If a proper binding material could be found, there seems no reason why a very serviceable and durable, noiseless paving block for residence streets could not be made from some of the more compact peats, and one that would be cheap as well.

### *Peat as a Source of Electrical Energy.*

As shown in another chapter it has been proposed by a European engineer to establish near, or at, large peat bogs, electric power plants, at which the peat can be used for fuel in the air dry condition, without briquetting, thus saving not only the cost of transporting the fuel, but other costs as well. The power thus generated can be transported considerable distances without great loss, as is well known, and if the plan were adopted generally would result in many bogs being utilized, which cannot now be considered, since they are remote from means of transportation. No such plan as the one proposed has yet been put in operation, but, as indicated elsewhere, it seems worth trying in certain parts of Michigan, where large areas of peat are within reaching distance for the transmission of electricity, of good sized towns and cities.

### *Peat Dye.*

It is well known that water flowing from peat bogs is much browner than that which flows only through or over mineral soil, and that such water gives a well marked and quite durable stain to white substances coming into contact with it. Advantage has been taken of this fact to extract the coloring matter from peat, and by proper treatment, a rich brown dye has been obtained which is reported to be very pleasing and exceptionally durable and unchanging.

### *The Use of Peat in the Intensive Production of Nitrates.*

In the Experiment Station Record, XVIII, 5. (Jan., 1907) is an abstract of a recent paper by Muntz and Laine, published in Compt. Rend. Acad. Sci., in which experiments are reported which promise to give new and added importance to the peat deposits of the world, since the authors show that these deposits may be made factors in the production of nitrates. The nitrates are among the most expensive and most important of the constituents of fertilizers, being of limited natural occurrence, and having very important commercial uses aside from the demand for agricultural purposes.

The experiments reported show that "when a 0.75 per cent solution of Ammonium sulphate is passed over a peat bed impregnated with nitrifying organisms, it becomes charged with nitrates to the extent of 0.82 per cent. This can be increased to 4.17 per cent by adding a further quantity of Ammonium sulphate to the solution and again subjecting it to the nitrifying action, the operation being repeated 5 times. The most suitable temperature for the reaction is 30° C. (86° F.), and the fuel necessary for maintaining this temperature is afforded by the air-dried peat. Further the nitrogen contained in the peat, which amounts to 2 to 3 per cent, can be obtained in the form of Ammonia to the extent of 1.79 to 1.612 per cent by distilling the peat in superheated steam, the other products of the distillation (hydro-carbons, water-gas, tar, etc.), forming the fuel required for the operation.

"Peat, therefore, is singularly well adapted for the intensive production of nitrates, since it forms an excellent medium for the growth of the organisms, supplies the fuels necessary for the various operations, and finally supplies the ammonia required for the production of nitrates."

The immense consumption of chemical fertilizers in this state, the very considerable manufacture of these in Michigan from imported nitrates and the great extent of the peat deposits throughout the state, suggest the importance of investigating this method of intensive production of nitrates from peat to determine whether it is not applicable, upon a commercial basis, to American conditions. The great development of chemical manufacture based on the salt deposits of Michigan, in the not distant future, may be equaled by a similar development based upon the peat deposits, to the great advantage of all agricultural interests, of the chemical manufacturing industry, and of the promoters as well.

### THE USE OF PEAT AS FUEL.

*Historical:* The use of peat as fuel in Germany goes back beyond the historical period into the time of the semi-savage stage of the early tribes, and Pliny, the Roman naturalist, tells us that the Teutons on the borders of the North Sea dried and burned "mud," or, as we would call it now, peat. In Ireland, Great Britain, Russia, Scandinavia, parts of France and the Netherlands, there has not been a time within the historical period, when the use of peat for fuel has not been a general practice among the common people, who still cut it from the bog in the form of long rough bricks or "sods," drain and dry it on the surface of the bog in the sun and wind and stack it, much as the American farmer piles his cut wood.

In Ireland and parts of Germany and Holland the use of peat is well nigh universal among the poorer people, and in other countries of Europe it is extensively used for cooking and other domestic purposes. This is due to several causes, among which the scarcity and high prices of wood and coal, and the great abundance of peat bogs and the large aggregate area covered by them in the countries of Northern Europe, Germany alone having an area of about 11,000 square miles of peat moors, while Great Britain has more than 3,000,000 acres and Ireland an equal extent, or about one-seventh of its entire area covered by bogs. The most widespread use for domestic purposes was probably in the 18th century, after the forests were so depleted, that wood was no longer easily obtainable by the common people, and before coal had come into use.

While this general use of peat by the people for domestic purposes has gone on century after century, there was little attempt to increase its efficiency as fuel, or to improve the methods of gathering it, except some simple attempts at compacting the coarser types by kneading with the feet, grinding in small mills, etc., until within a hundred years or so when various forms of machinery were introduced to assist in cutting the peat and getting it out from the bogs more quickly and less laboriously than by cutting it out by hand with a narrow spade or slane, as it is called, and which is still the most common and perhaps the most efficient tool for the purpose.

Much later, after the need for cheap and abundant fuel for use in generating steam for manufacturing purposes began to be felt, as the prices of wood and coal advanced, machines began to be built in Germany and other parts of Europe where peat was abundant, for the purposes of increasing the output, of reducing the bulk of the finished product, and at the same time of making it more clean to handle, more easy to transport and more efficient as fuel.

A pioneer in the invention of machinery and processes for making compressed peat in Northern Europe, seems to have been Mr. C. Schlickeysen of Rixdorf near Berlin. His first two machines were of vertical construction and were built in 1859, for a steam peat-compressing plant near Riga, Russia, where they worked satisfactorily for many years, turning out daily about 80,000 pieces of wet, compressed peat, which, after drying, were used as smokeless fuel in a large cloth factory at that place. Since that time, many improvements have been made by this and other manufacturers, both in the types of machinery and methods of work, to try to improve and cheapen the product, and to substitute automatic machines for hand labor, until a very satisfactory product in the form of compressed peat blocks and efficient machines for making them, are the results.

A much more recent development and one which seems to be considered by all experts in the question of fuel, perhaps the most important advance yet made in the utilization of peat, as it is the most scientific and theoretically correct, is the working out of good processes for coking peat and converting it into a compact, hard and very efficient and desirable fuel. This kind of process for the purpose has been sought for many years and seems now to have been found, as is pointed out in another place (p. 301) and the matter needs no further elaboration here.

Another recently used method of increasing the efficiency of peat for fuel, has been brought about by the development of machinery for converting other fuels, such as coal slack and other waste of coal mines, lignite, etc., into briquettes. The process consists of compressing the fuel, either with or without a binding material, in specially built presses, capable of exerting great pressure, which shape it into cylindrical, rounded or prismatic briquettes of great firmness and hardness. In some of these processes the peat is mixed with other combustibles, in others, it is briquetted without mixture.

Parallel with the development of these processes in Germany, have gone similar ones in England, Russia, Norway, Sweden, Austria and the Netherlands, but Germany has led the way, and it is there that the most modern and scientific methods and machinery for the manufacture of peat into efficient fuel have been worked out. In fact, there has been much labor and a great amount of capital used up in various unsuccessful processes of handling peat in Germany, and no better step could be taken by the would-be inventor of new and especially desirable processes of converting peat into first rate, cheap fuel, than to make a thorough study of the history of German inventions and experiments in this direction, for it would doubtless save him much time and trouble as well as much money and disappointment.

*Use in America:* In America, with its great stores of fuel, in the form of wood, and the various types of coal, widely distributed, cheap and abundant, the history of the use of peat is very brief. It was used in parts of New England by early settlers from peat-using stocks, and in the region of Cape Cod and the adjacent islands in Massachusetts, where the original forests were poor and soon destroyed, the use of peat, taken from the numerous bogs of the region, has, according to Shaler[1] been general and continues until the present time. In other parts of New England, its use was discontinued years ago. In the latter part of the 19th century some peat fuel was manufactured at Lexington, Mass., by T. H. Leavitt, but no general use of it has been made in any part of the country, except this, so far as is known, and it was not until the great coal miners' strike of the winter of 1902-03 created a widespread interest in the possibility of utilizing the extensive deposits of various kinds of peat known to exist in the northern parts of the United States, that the public took much notice of it.

*Use in Canada:* In Canada, the history is slightly different, though similar. There, the deposits are more extensive, than in most parts of the United States, are easily accessible and the land was settled from the more northern parts of Europe, and especially from Scotland, Ireland and Germany, by people who were used to gathering and using peat for fuel. These facts, taken in connection with remoteness from coal supplies, undoubtedly led to a more extensive and earlier use of peat for fuel than in this country, so that in the early sixties, there was a small output of machine-made peat, and a little later, carbonized pressed peat, was placed on the market and tested by manufacturers and railroads. This was followed by a slow development of briquetting machinery, until several plants were established to make peat briquettes, none of which were successful in getting a good product from the process used, that of air drying, grinding and pressing the peat, and after a season or two of attempts, were abandoned. The next series of attempts were made in the direction of pressing the peat after it had been dried by artificial heat, and in 1902 several establishments in Ontario were operating, and with more or less success, were supplying local markets with briquettes made by modifications of this process. The whole development, including descriptions of bogs, processes and machinery is fully described in Bulletin No. 5, of the Ontario Bureau of Mines, and in a later report by the same bureau.[2]

*Use in Michigan:* In Michigan, since it was, to a large extent settled as was Canada, by people from the countries of Northern Europe, it is probable that there was some use of peat by individuals, especially in the German and Hollander settlements, but the great amount of wood, and its cheapness for fuel, together with the immense quantities of waste mill wood, and drift, or flood wood from the streams on which lumbering, or river driving operations, were being conducted, in the earlier days, and later, the development of the Michigan coal fields, and the close proximity to those of Ohio, all tended to make the use of peat unnecessary, and it was only a short time ago, that the possibilities of utilizing the great areas of peat in the state, attracted general attention. The past five years, however, have seen a marked change in the attitude of capitalists, owners of bogs and the citizens of the state in this matter and a widespread interest, due partly to the rising price of wood and coal, and partly to the constant discussion of the value of peat fuel in the public prints, as well as the effects of the coal famine already referred to, has been aroused and there are few of the citizens of the state who would not now be glad of the opportunity to test the new fuel, if it could be had. Within the period named, there has been an attempt on the part of capitalists to meet this demand for peat fuel and a considerable number of plants have been built in the various parts of the Southern Peninsula and have put out small quantities of finished product, which have found a ready market, and at present writing it appears possible that before long a flourishing industry based upon the utilization of this great natural resource of stored fuel may be built up. Michigan has abundant and good peat deposits, and all that is needed to make them useful is honest, intelligent, carefully planned exploitation.

---

[1] Shaler, N. S. Peat Deposits. 16th Ann. Rep., U. S. G. S., Part IV, 1894-5, p. 306.
[2] Report of the Bureau of Mines, 1903, Toronto, Ont., 1903.

### *Descriptive.*

Because of its diversified origin and the very different conditions to which individual deposits have been subjected, peat is entirely lacking in uniformity of structure, is of very unequal fuel value, and varies greatly in texture and color, not only in different bogs, but in parts of the same bog. These peculiarities are discussed at length elsewhere and are due to differences in the age of the deposits, in the form of basin in which they lie, the kinds of impurities present, the amount of oxidation and decomposition, the kind of plants from which the peat is formed, and other more or less important factors.

The chief kinds, as discussed by most writers, are given as those which are light brown in color, coarse in texture, and low in specific gravity; those which are dark brown in color, dense and fine grained in texture and comparatively heavy; and those which are intermediate in characters. To these should be added the light colored and very fine grained types, which have been described as formed by the algæ in the bogs of Northern Michigan (p. 247) and there are all sorts of intergradations between these various forms. In Michigan, in the deposits of the lake basin type, it is not infrequent to have the light colored, coarse type, end abruptly, and pass without gradations into the dark colored, compact variety, while in other cases the deposit may pass gradually from one kind to the other. It is therefore very difficult to secure a product from peat which shall have uniformity of structure, of cohesiveness or of fuel value, and impossible to do so unless artificial means are employed to insure this.

These physical characters have to be considered when the problem of preparation for market is being worked out, whether for individual bogs, or for general application, especially since all of the methods now in use, depend, more or less, upon compression and molding into some form of rather small blocks, which must take and hold their shape readily, and not disintegrate too easily when handled or burned.

It is manifest that the coarser types, or those of coarse and fine material mixed, will retain more moisture and air and be slower about drying, than the others and will thus be less satisfactory for making briquettes without some treatment before they are compressed. Such treatment of the coarser kinds is usually given in the form of grinding or kneading, or often a combination of the two, by the use of mills and toothed and smooth rollers. This treatment breaks up the coarse fragments, works out a large part of the included gases and air, and some of the water held by the various constituents, thus making the whole mass uniform in texture and reducing the bulk; for some processes of preparation, the finely divided kinds do not need such preliminary treatment so much as coarser ones, but in practice, it is usual to give all the same preparation in order that any coarse material mixed in with the fine may be broken up. In making machine-compressed blocks, the finer grained types of plastic peats need very little grinding or kneading, for they are homogeneous and compact already, but the coarser varieties need a good deal of preliminary treatment before they make a satisfactory product by such process.

In Southern Michigan, and less frequently north, there are quite extensive areas of the dark colored, often nearly black peat, which is sufficiently plastic so that it can be molded when wet, and which holds its form when dry. In the dry state it becomes almost as black and hard as coal; such material would not be greatly improved by being pressed through a mill, but would have to be crushed, if it were first dried and then pressed into briquettes.

The lighter colored and coarser types would need thorough grinding and much working over, before being put to any use, and it is often difficult to make them sufficiently plastic and cohesive to form good blocks even when they are molded wet. Certain components of this kind of peat, notably the grass and sedge leaves, may be sufficiently abundant and so poorly decomposed that they clog the rolls of the grinding mills and cause much trouble in handling. When ground, dried, and formed into briquettes by pressure, peats of this kind are full of irregular flat particles of sedge leaves, which arrange themselves with their long axes at right angles to the length of the block and thus develop cleavage planes in the briquettes, which cause them to exfoliate when burned, thus reducing the efficiency of the fuel, and to split away readily when handled, hence they do not bear transportation well.

### *Prospecting Methods.*

In the first examination of marshes, swamps, or bogs, for peat, attention should be given to the following matters and notes should be made regarding them: (1) The exact location by Township, Range and Sections; (2) The distance from the nearest transportation lines; (3) The approximate area of the surface of the peaty tract and character of the surrounding lands; (4) The kind of plant growth on the surface of the area, whether grasses, (or sedges), shrubs and mosses, or trees. If the latter, the kinds and size. If the trees have been cleared off or burned off, this should be noted, with the kinds taken off, if this can be determined. (5) The possibilities of drainage, streams through the bog or near by. It should be remembered that as peat is drained, the surface slopes in the direction of the main ditches, so that a certain amount of fall can be made by draining. (6) The depth of the surface layers to good peat, and of the whole deposit, should be tested in a few places, for even if of large extent, a very shallow bog is not worth much for fuel purposes. (7) The amount of decomposition of the lower layers below the surface litter, and its color and plasticity should be noted. It is usually true that the deeper parts of the bed are formed from different plants than are the top layers. These facts should be noted regarding every bog or marsh visited, whether any other work is done upon them or not. It is highly important also, in the more thorough preliminary investigation of a peat deposit, to find out, not only about the depth and extent of the beds and their purity, and the heating qualities of the peat, but to consider also the plasticity, the mechanical texture, the degree of decomposition, and the uniformity of the various beds at different depths below the surface. To do this thoroughly is no simple matter, and is often expensive, but the expense is slight compared with that caused by too hastily making the assumption that a peat deposit is available for use and establishing a plant upon it, and then finding that a marketable product cannot profitably be made from the peat.

*Tools for Prospecting:* In making the first prospecting examination of a deposit, the usual tool which is used is a long iron rod made of gas pipe, cut into convenient lengths, and provided with ordinary couplings, or unions, for screwing these together. The size of the pipes is a matter of some importance, since if too large it is very heavy to carry, and if too small it bends and breaks easily where the threads for the couplings are cut. Probably for practical work nothing smaller than ½ inch pipe should be used, except for light reconnaisance work, in which but few tests have to be made. For convenience in carrying, the lengths of pipe ought not to be greater than four feet, and in order that the couplings shall not work loose too easily, it is well to have each one pinned to one end of a length of pipe, so that the pipe and not the coupling will unscrew. The threads in the pipe should always be cut carefully and fit the couplings as perfectly as possible, and yet be neither too tight nor too loose. If cut slightly tapering they seem to work best, as they then hold firmly when screwed into place, but are easily released when it is necessary to take them apart. A pair of pipe wrenches, preferably the "alligator" pattern, should be taken into the field at all times, in case the sections of pipe get screwed together too tightly to be taken apart by the hands alone. In most cases, unless the beds are to be worked to an unusual depth, a pipe sounder of five four-foot sections will be sufficiently long for all practical purposes, since in actual practice abroad, the peat is rarely taken from a wet bog, such as most of the Michigan bogs are, from a depth of more than 10 feet.

*Final Sampling:* For taking samples from various depths, many devices have been used, one of the most common being a two-inch auger, which, if of the open spiral type, like an earth auger, is quite satisfactory if bored down into solid peat, and a clean hole made. If simply pushed down, turned around a few times to clean the pod, and then draw up, it is likely not to bring up a satisfactory sample; in fact, little dependence can be placed upon getting a clean sample by such a method, from even a few feet below the surface, and the auger is not recommended unless used carefully, in compact, solid deposits; of course in the nearly liquid types of deposit no samples can be taken by an auger.

Another form of sampling apparatus which has been used with good results is made by splitting a length of one or one and one-half inch pipe, and spreading it so that a narrow, longitudinal opening is made nearly the entire length. One edge of this is sharpened by filing it and raised above the other so that the cross section is something like the accompanying figure (Fig. 18). This is pushed down to the desired depth and then turned several times until the sharp edge has cut off enough of the surrounding peat to show its character. A removable pointed plug should be put in the lower end of this sampler to keep it from filling with peat as it is pushed down into the beds, unless a hole has been previously bored down about to the depth from which the sample is to be taken. If steel tubing is used for this form of sampler, it will be lighter and more easily sharpened and kept sharp than is the common wrought iron tubing which is ordinarily used.

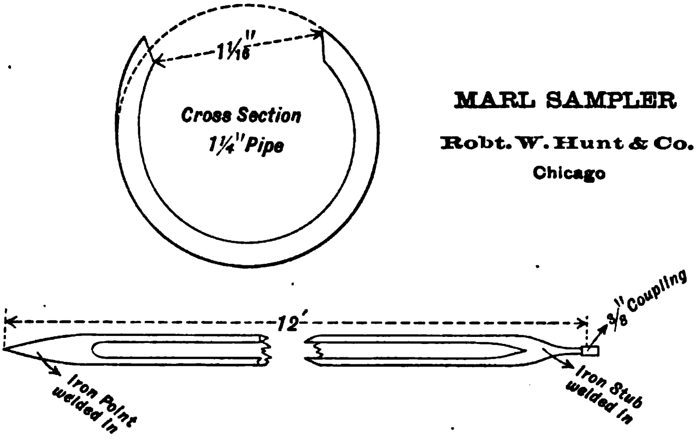


FIG. 18. Hunt Marl or Peat sampler.

A sampler for taking small, pure samples from any depth, was used by the writer, and consisted of a short cylinder into which fitted a metal plunger, which, when pulled out a definite distance, locked automatically; in use, the cylinder was screwed on to the end of a gas pipe sounding rod and pushed into the peat the required distance, less the length of the cylinder. The rod was then drawn up until the catch-lock was heard to click and then pushed down the length of the cylinder, or a little more, in order to insure completely filling it. The sample thus obtained was free from all outside impurities.

*Importance of Thoroughly Proving a Deposit:* In making the tests for the final proving up of a bog, before preparing to exploit it, holes should be dug at regular intervals, to such a depth as will insure cutting through to the deeper layers of the deposit, from which large samples of material should be taken and worked up by the process it is proposed to use in developing the bog. The holes should be dug in parallel lines equally distant from each other and if marked differences are found in certain consecutive holes, which are considered of sufficient importance to warrant it, intermediate test holes should be made. For making such tests, some prospectors use a common, long-handled spade, others a post-hole digger or auger, and still others use a peat spade or slane, but the important thing is to have the testing at this stage done thoroughly and to such depth that there is no doubt as to the good quality and large quantity of the deeper layers of peat, which are frequently the only ones which are of value in the preparation of fuel for commercial use.

### *Factors Affecting the Commercial Value of Peat Deposits.*

In considering the possibility of developing a deposit of peat, by constructing a plant, certain other matters than those mentioned above, have to be taken into account, as it is often upon such preliminaries that the financial success of the contemplated investment will depend.

*Market and Transportation:* Of primary importance is a good and steady market for the product, after it is ready to sell. With a standard article, well known and with large use, the location of the place of manufacture is not of great importance, since buyers will seek it to supply their needs. With a little known and practically unused commodity, however, competing with others of equal value which have been in use a long time and in which there is not only a closely organized trade and an iron-clad agreement between producers, who may also be favored in the matter of transportation, but also a close organization of retailers to control the prices and markets, the matter of an immediate and near-by market is not to be overlooked. The nearness or remoteness of market, is the more important, also, because of the bulkiness of all forms of peat fuel, and the ease with which it disintegrates when subjected to moisture, or to rough handling, so that it can be sold at less cost and in better condition near the place of production than it can if shipped long distances; moreover the loss from handling is much less after short shipments than after long ones. It would, therefore, seem probable that it would be unwise to attempt, in the beginning, before the peat fuel is well established, to exploit bogs which are far from some large town, and which are not on or near some well developed railroad line, which will give assurance of good freight rates and a sufficient number of box cars for the shipment of the finished product.

*Area and Depth:* The area and depth of the deposit is also a matter of importance, the area probably of more importance than the depth, since, according to European practice, the deposits are rarely worked below 10 or 12 feet in depth, although there seems to be no reason why, with dredges or even pumps, the peat from the deep deposits should not be used, if it has the proper texture and composition. The statement has been made that about 200 tons of finished peat fuel can be made from an acre of peat of average density, for every foot in depth, or, as is frequently stated, 200 tons to the acre foot. With this in mind, it is easy to calculate the amount of fuel which can be made from a bog of any size and depth, and whether it will pay to develop it. In this connection it is well to remember that the upper foot or more of the peat is often of no value for manufacturing into salable fuel, but most of it may be used in running the plant, with no other preparation than cutting it from the bog and drying it by exposure to wind and sun.

*Physical Condition of the Peat:* The importance of the physical condition of the peat in given bogs has been mentioned. This will depend largely upon the way in which it has been developed. If in a basin which had filled largely from top and sides, the peat will consist of a well defined top stratum from one to several feet thick of more or less fibrous and coarse, light-colored material, which has below it a deeper mass of darker, homogeneous, plastic peat, often very soft and full of water, but of generally good fuel value and easily handled by properly adapted machinery.

On the other hand, if the basin has been filled by stages of growth, from the bottom, the peat is likely to be coarse and fine alternately, or made up of mostly coarse, partly disintegrated material, and may have beds containing stumps and logs at intervals from bottom to top, which will make it difficult to work by the usual types of machines for cutting peat. In making estimates of the amount of peat contained in deep bogs, care must be taken not to overestimate this, for it has been shown by the experience of prospectors, and of railroads[1] crossing such deposits, that they are not infrequently not solid, but have only a relatively thin covering of dense peat, from 4 to 6 feet thick, formed of closely interwoven stems and roots of various plants, including trees, on the surface, below which is a body of water, of considerable size which contains no peat or only suspended fragments of vegetable matter. Below this water may be more peat, but so far below the surface as to be useless. Such a condition is not revealed by testing with an auger, as the pod of the auger is filled with peat from the surface coverings as it is drawn up, unless very careful borings are made.

*Deep Bogs with Thin Stratum of Peat with Water or Marl Below:* Another matter of similar nature is the frequent presence of marl, several feet below the surface of seemingly deep peat beds. In one case, in which prospecting was done by the writer, in a bog which had been looked over for marl, and none found, and which was supposed, from auger tests, to be made up of solid peat, the peat was only 8 or 9 feet deep with good marl below. In another place the peat was said to be 10 or 12 feet deep by the owner who had often sounded it, and was found to be about 4 feet deep and the rest marl. The cause of the discrepancies was the replacement, in the auger, of the marl by peat as the tool was drawn through the latter, which apparently is a frequent occurrence in the use of the auger.

*Sampling for Other Purposes Than Fuel:* If the bog is being examined for peat for other purposes than for fuel making, such as paper or pulp stock, or for litter manufacture, similar precautions should be taken to see that there is an abundance of the proper kind of peat for the uses which are to be made of it. The best type of bog for these uses would be the one built up from the bottom with numerous layers of sedge and grass remains.

*Chemical Composition and Ash:* These should be determined by the chemist, together with the fuel value, before final arrangements are made for putting in a plant. The best way to test the fuel value, however, is to make actual working tests, under a boiler, in which samples of the fuel are used, made up in the machines to be used in the proposed plant, from the peat taken from the test holes made in the final prospecting. Such tests are expensive, but can be made very satisfactory, as they show the real efficiency of the fuel better than the ordinary chemical analyses and calorimeter tests. If the fuel does good work in these practical tests there will be little question about the amount of ash present.

---

[1] See Part I, p. 154.

*Possibilities of Drainage:* These are usually considered of importance, and sometimes excellent bogs have been left unutilized, because they were not capable of being effectively drained. In Sweden, however, peat fuel has been satisfactorily and very cheaply made upon floating establishments of small capacity, and there seems no reason why the peat should not be excavated from the wet bogs, without draining them, by the use of scows and dredges just as ditches are cut through marshes. In recent practice in Germany, indeed, the peat is sent to the mill from the bog by floating it in a liquid form through shallow trenches, which have an artificial fall, into a storage basin, hence the more nearly the peat approaches the fluid condition when taken from the bog, and can still be handled, the better it is for the purpose, so that drainage is not an essential, or even a desirable thing, especially if some such system of transportation is used.

*Character of the Surface Growth:* A bog which has been cleared, is more desirable than one covered with a dense growth of small trees and bushes, and one free from stumps has that much advantage over that from which a heavy growth of timber has been cleared, but the matter of clearing up the surface is a relatively small one, since it can be done a little at a time, and need not be hurried, after a sufficient area has been cleared for actual work. From what has been said in the discussion of the development of peat deposits, it is evident that the surface vegetation, except in very shallow deposits of no commercial value, indicates nothing as to the origin of the peat, or its physical condition, or its fuel value, for the plants present may only recently have established themselves, and the only thing which they indicate is the position of the water level with regard to the surface of the peat.

*Acidity:* Some types of peat, notably the brown ones, are said to become nearly impervious to water after they are once thoroughly dried out, because the organic acids which they contain are colloidal, or gluelike, in form, and when they dry, they become insoluble, so that the acid, brown peats may make a slightly stronger and more resistant pressed block fuel than the black ones, but it is doubtful if in practice the difference would be of importance and it can be of no importance where briquetting after drying is resorted to, since the cementing effect of the acid is slight.

### *Sources of Contamination Producing High Ash Content.*

*Importance of Ash:* The ash content has to be considered, because, if it is high, the fuel value of the final product from the bog must be reduced, and by so much the cost of handling increased, since the ash constituents are mineral impurities which do not burn, and in considering the availability of a peat deposit, for fuel manufacture, the possible sources from which mineral matter may get into the bog to increase the normal ash content, should be taken into account, of which the following are worthy of notice:

*Flooding by Streams:* A chief source of such matter is flooding by streams, which bring silts, muds and even sands into the basins through which they flow and deposit them, or leave them upon the part of their flood plains which they overflow. Streams flowing through a cleared and cultivated country are much more likely to have floods and carry abundant sediment, than those which flow through forest covered regions. Peat deposits along such streams, especially in the river swamps, oxbow lakes and bayous, and in their deltas in lakes, are usually so filled with the various forms of sediment that they have little if any fuel value.

*Flooding by Rain Wash:* Flooding by rain wash from higher ground, is a form of contamination to which many otherwise good deposits of peat have been subjected to in Michigan since the hillsides have been cleared and cultivated, and it is no uncommon thing to see sand and gravel piled several feet deep upon the surface of the margin of a peat bog, while the water of the adjoining marsh is colored a deep brown by the finer matter which has been carried in suspension and has not yet settled. Where such wash has been going on for any length of time, the ash content of the superficial layers of the bog is very high, hence if it is found that a bog is subject to flooding from high ground during heavy rains, the peat should be studied to ascertain how deep the silt has affected it, and if there is any means of checking the wash, since this may reduce the value of the bog after exploitation begins.

*Spring and Terrace Bogs:* Certain classes of peat deposits, notably those on terraces of streams, and on slopes, are formed by the outflow of springs. These are particularly likely to be high in mineral matter, for the water which is constantly flowing through and over them, has considerable dissolved mineral matter in it, which may be precipitated in contact with the air, especially after the excess of the gas, carbon dioxide, which most spring waters contain, has passed off into the air. Such mineral matters are calcium carbonate, calcium sulphate, or gypsum (in some regions), iron compounds and sometimes other mineral matters. The calcium carbonate is the most common of these substances and is generally precipitated by a plant, Chara, which grows in the shallow water of the spring outlets and often forms a considerable part of the deposit in which its remains can be felt as granular, gritty, particles scattered through it. Sometimes one of the mosses also forms deposits which are more stony in their character and of large size, one in Seville Tp., Gratiot county, covering an area of several acres. The iron precipitates first appear as a thin, oily-looking scum on the surface of the water standing in small holes and along the spring outlets, and later as a reddish, rusty-appearing sediment of hydrous iron oxide, "bog iron," farther along the stream, as thin, rusty streaks in the peat, or sometimes below it, in masses.

Not infrequently, when bogs of this sort are burned, the iron which was in the peat appears as a dark brown or even deep red deposit of ochre. The mineral matter of such bogs is also added to by the shells of mollusks, chiefly land snails, which are usually very abundant in them, and may be seen lying on the surface or buried in the peat. When to these internal sources of mineral matter is added the liability of flooding from the higher lands around, to which this type of bog is especially liable, it is evident that it is not usually worth while to consider spring-formed deposits of peat, of the terrace and mound types, as sources of fuel supply, in the region under discussion, even where they have good-sized areas, which is not, however, frequently the case.

*Shore Wash in Lakes:* In some larger lakes, and occasionally in small ones, there may be extensive bogs along parts of the shore, while other parts have sand, gravel or even marl exposures. During times of storm and high water, the waves and shore currents may carry a good deal of finer, silty matter to the bogs and in this way make the peat impure. Where it is found that after storms or strong winds, the marshes, under which the peat lies, are covered with muddy water, the top layers will be found to have an abnormally large amount of ash. Such bogs are frequently not so situated that they can be used profitably, even when they are extensive enough to be considered as worthy of exploitation; if, in any case, they are examined for this purpose, the question of the amount of ash in the lower layers of the peat should be given more than ordinary attention.

*Mineral Matter From the Water of Lakes and Streams:* This is of two kinds, that held in solution and that carried by the water, in the form of fine sand, silt or clay in suspension during floods or in less amount at other times, or washed directly from the high lands to the bogs. There is a considerable quantity of the suspended matter, which is so very fine that it remains suspended for a long time and eventually may become entangled by water plants, and upon their decay, become a part of the peat, or it may settle slowly to the bottom with fine vegetable matter and be incorporated into it. In order to become convinced of the importance of this factor, one has only to examine the washings from some of the floating aquatics with finely divided leaves, from even a small pond, under the low power of a compound miscroscope, for they will be found to consist quite largely of small angular particles of mineral matter, often silica.

*Dissolved Mineral Matter:* The mineral matter held in solution in the water, is a more constant, and, on the whole, a more important source of impurity to the vegetable matter which makes peat; in fact, it is the source of all mineral, or ash constituents, except those mentioned above, for the plants get all of their mineral matter from the soil waters, and build it into their tissues. Aside from that which is used in this way by all plants, there is a considerable amount which is precipitated in one way or another by the water plants, which goes to increase the amount of ash in accumulations of their remains.

*Precipitation by Plants:* Two distinct types of plants, the seed-bearing and the Algæ, precipitate calcium carbonate in considerable amount upon the outside of their leaves and stems, or, in the case of the lower Algæ, over the entire plant. Where the higher plants are most numerous, the amount of the mineral matter accumulated is small in comparison with the amount of vegetable matter formed, but where the Algæ, Chara and lower types, are the dominant vegetable forms, the amount of mineral matter is often so large that marl, and not peat, is formed. Where there is any considerable quantity of Calcium-secreting Algæ growing in the deeper parts of the lake or body of water (even shallow spring outlets an inch or less deep are not free from these plants, as pointed out above), the ash content of the resulting peat is certain to be high. It may be worthy of note here, that Chara, the important lime-secreting plant, not infrequently grows in shallow water among the bulrushes and sedges and contributes considerable mineral matter to the resulting vegetable débris and its presence in such places may often account for the presence of more mineral matter than could otherwise be easily explained.

Another type of Algæ, the Diatoms, secrete silica in the form of delicate transparent shells, and while these plants are very minute, their number is sometimes so enormous that their shells have made deposits of considerable economic importance in various parts of the earth. These plants are always present in the water of peat bogs, and their silicious shells undoubtedly add an appreciable amount to the ash of most types of peat.

An additional source of precipitation of dissolved mineral matter from the water of bogs, lakes, springs, and streams are certain filamentous Algæ which form local deposits of lime and iron in bogs and swamps, and at times this becomes sufficiently general to seriously affect the quality of the peat.

The chief contributors to the ash of the coarser types of peat, are sedges and grasses, which, in the course of their growth, secrete considerable quantities of silica in the cell walls of stems and leaves. This silica is then a normal constituent of peat, and is to be expected where the plants mentioned have had any considerable part, as is generally the case, in building up the deposit.

Another group of plants, representatives of which are sometimes found either growing on the surface of bogs, or in the water along their margins, in large quantities, has silicious cell walls. This is the Horsetail family, the Equisetaceæ, the surviving remnant of the Giant Calamites of the Carboniferous Age, which grew in similar situations, and by their growth and decay helped to form coal.

### *Relation of Deposits of Peat to the Bottom.*

In relatively shallow peat beds, it is sometimes a matter of some importance to determine the quality of the underlying stratum of mineral matter, as this may, in some cases, affect the lower strata of the bog, rendering them impure, or make it difficult to harvest them.

In the Southern Peninsula of Michigan, ordinary till or boulder clay is a common type of material found below bogs. This never is found above the bottom of the peat, hence never interferes with working the bog to the bottom.

Where clay forms the substratum, however, as it often does, the lower layers of peat are usually impregnated with it, and it is apparent that at the time the peat was laid down, conditions were such that considerable mud was being held in suspension from time to time in the water of the depression in which the bog grew up and was deposited with the peat. The clay content of the peat may continue to be excessive for a foot or more above the bottom, so this amount of material has to be left in the bog in utilizing it for fuel manufacture.

In the Northern Peninsula, many of the shallower bogs have been built up over sand, and in such cases there seemed to be no intergrading between the sand and peat. Indeed, it is not easy to see how sand could be mixed with the peat by ordinary water action, since the force of current which would carry the sand would wash the vegetable matter all away. In some cases there were thin layers of clay between sand and peat, but the amount of this material was small and its effect upon the peat did not seem to extend above the bottom to a greater distance than an inch or two.

When, as has been mentioned above, marl lies below the peat deposit, from the origin of the two substances, there is likely to be a zone of some thickness in which they will be mixed so intimately that the peat will be of no use for fuel. Such a zone will show the presence of the marl by its grayish color when dry, and the large per cent of ash which even the darker peat leaves when burned. This zone of mixed material may vary in depth from a few inches to two feet or more, but usually it is quite narrow, although where present it must always be taken into account.

Bog iron is sometimes found at the bottom, a short distance below peat beds, but rarely in them, except as indicated above. It usually forms a hard pan, or, frequently, irregular masses, when it is at the bottom of a bog, and may, in some cases, render it difficult to use machines for cutting out the lower layers of the bog.

### *Summary.*

*Color:* The type of peat which would be called a good commercial peat for fuel use, that is, one which could be readily handled by some one of the processes now in use, and make a desirable type of product, at a price which would not prohibit its manufacture, should have a color, when wet, which varies from medium to dark, rich brown, or to nearly, or quite black; the deeper layers of peat are frequently darker than those at or near the surface; in a few, probably rare, types however, the color may be much lighter. When dry, good peat may vary in color from medium light to dark brown of the richer shades or to black. That which shows much straw color when dry, should be looked upon with more or less suspicion, as should those kinds which are of light brown shades when wet, although the degree of decomposition and structure should be considered in connection with color.

Those samples which show much chalky matter when dry, or have a rusty color running through them in streaks, or are generally rusty when dry, are probably impregnated with lime and iron and will run high in ash. If the dry peat shows grayish, either in streaks or generally, it is likely to be rich in sediments and unusable for fuel.

*Weight:* Good average peat, when air dry, contains from 15 to 25 per cent of water, and weighs, without compression, about 12 pounds or more per cubic foot as cut from the bog. Those types which are darker and more compact than the average are heavier, while the ones which are of light color usually weigh less. A very heavy sample which has not been compressed, should be rejected as certain to contain too much ash, while a very light one is liable to yield a finished product that will be so bulky as to be at a disadvantage in the markets, because of high freight rates, and the amount of storage room which it requires, as compared with other fuels, for it must be borne in mind that peat fuel, unless in the form of coke, must be stored under cover, and since its bulk is eight times that of coal of the same heating capacity, it can readily be seen that the very light weight kinds, will be at a disadvantage, as they may require 15 to 18 times as much space as coal which will give the same amount of heat.

*Texture:* The importance of considering the texture and coarseness of peat must already be apparent from what has been written, regarding the matter. In general, the coarser peats are lighter in color and in weight than those of finer texture, which is in part due to the greater age, and more complete decomposition of the latter, and in part, to the different species of plants from which they were derived and different conditions under which they have been formed. With fineness of texture goes greater plasticity, which is desirable to a degree, in peat to be used for fuel manufacture.

While peat of the coarser types will usually give a fuel that burns readily, with a good degree of heat and with a minimum of ash, it yields a more bulky fuel, it is likely to break up quickly on burning, it needs much more preparation before manufacture, is more difficult to dry and keep dry, is harder to compress, and is almost certain to produce easily broken briquettes. On the other hand, the plastic, black peats are higher in ash, are more difficult to burn, and are harder when dry, reaching nearly the consistency of soft coal, which makes the compressed blocks durable but not unreasonably hard to crush, if briquetting, after drying, is resorted to.

### *Relation of Ash to Commercial Value.*

In considering this matter, it is assumed that no peat having over 20 or at most 25 per cent of ash would yield heat enough, so that it would find a continued market, but when the ash of the dark colored peats, which are highest in ash, is below 15 per cent, it would usually find buyers, if it burned well, as the ordinary consumer will not be over particular regarding the per cent of ash in the fuel he buys, as is shown by readiness with which all kinds of coal and wood are purchased. The apparent amount of ash from peat fuel is very small, because of the large bulk of the fuel and the small bulk and freedom from cinders and clinkers of the ash, which makes it seem that the absolute per cent is small also. If, as is frequently done in Northern Europe, a body of peat is utilized for generating steam to run a single factory, using it in lieu of other fuel brought from a distance, the various precautions regarding ash and quality, texture and other characteristics may be waived, since, in such a case, proximity to the factory and quantity of material, are of more importance than quality. There is no difficulty in generating steam quickly and in any quantity, by using air-dried cut peat, even of rather poor quality, and with a small cutting and compressing plant, the efficiency of the fuel may be readily increased, so that at a small cost per ton, an excellent product, and a good substitute for coal or wood can be obtained from the immediate vicinity of the factory. That such individual plants, making a few tons of peat fuel per day, from the numerous small bogs scattered through Michigan, are not in existence, is evidence either that the owners of small factories are sufficiently prosperous, so that they do not need to practice small economies, or that they are not yet fully aware of all of the resources which may be exploited to their advantage.

Parmelee[1] divides the peat tested by him into three classes, (1) high grade peat, ash ranging between 0 and 10 per cent, (2) medium grade peat, ash 10 to 15 per cent and (3) low grade peat, ash 15 to 25 per cent. The lowest ash reported in this series is 5.04 per cent of the weight of the peat after it had been dried in an oven at 105° C. until the weight was constant and the number of heat units obtained from this sample was 5,876 calories. The heating value diminished as the ash content increased, in these tests, as would be expected, but not regularly, a sample with 8.34 per cent ash developed 5,521 calories, while another with 6.24 per cent ash developed only 5,098 calories, a less amount than another with 14.26 per cent ash which was reported as having a heating value of 5,193 calories. Still another sample with 16.44 per cent ash had a heating value of 5,117 calories. In general the low grade peats ran below 4,500 calories, the medium grade peats below 5,000 calories, and the high grade peats between 5,000 and 5,900 calories, only a small number, however, going above 5,500 calories. These tests were all made with peat dried in an oven at 105° C. until the weight was constant, hence give higher heating values, than would be obtained with air-dry samples, as the author notes, and also for the same reason, higher ash percentages. The same lack of definite relationship between heating value and ash content is shown in the discussion of Allen's analyses of Michigan peat below.

## *Location and Extent of Peat Beds in Michigan.*

As has been stated in the part of this work dealing with the Northern Peninsula, the greatest continuous area of peat in the state lies along an extensive tract of flat country in the eastern end of that peninsula. In the Southern Peninsula,[2] there are no areas comparable with this in extent, and relatively few covering more than a few hundred acres. Of these, the most extensive lie in river valleys and are hence likely to be shallow, and more or less affected by silt which has been brought into the valleys from the hills or by overflow from springs and streams. Of the smaller areas of bog and swamp, there are many in the morainal, or hilly, region north of Detroit, in Oakland county, and extending across the state east and west as well as northward. If one takes a map of the state and examines it for regions where lakes are most numerous, then visits these, he will, in such regions, find bogs and swamps filled with more or less extensive beds of peat, since the lakes indicate an abundance of undrained or partly drained depressions, and, in these, bogs have grown up, as shown by the parts of this report describing the development of peaty formations. The original distribution of swamps, containing more or less peat, in Michigan, is shown by the maps, (Plates XVI and XVII).

---

[1] Parmelee, C. W. & McCourt, W. E. A report on the peat deposits of Northern New Jersey. Ann. Report of the State Geologist of N. J. for 1905, p. 261, Trenton, N. J., 1906.

[2] See also Winchell, A., Peat in Michigan, Leavitt's Peat Journal I, 1, Boston, 1867.

These deposits range in depth from a few feet, to as much as 60 to 70, though more often only to 25 or 30 feet, and from a few acres to a series of connected basins, which may cover many hundreds of acres, and in which the depth of the peat may more than compensate for the relatively small area. In some of these basins, however, the peat is shallow, being underlaid by marl a short distance below the surface. On some of the broad, flat divides and especially in the valleys lying in the morainal region of the state, there are excellent deposits of peat of good depth and quality, some of which have been brought under cultivation, however, and are not available for exploitation for fuel, or other purposes.

There is no question in the minds of those who have investigated the matter, or of that of the writer, that there is an abundance of excellent peat for all the uses to which the material has been put, to be found in Michigan and that good deposits for the manufacture of fuel, on any reasonable scale, are to be had near enough to the large towns, so that a good market can be built up as soon as the product is made upon such a basis, that it can be profitably sold in competition with moderate priced, or cheap, wood and coal.

For those types of peat which can not be made into transportable fuel, special forms of utilization could be devised, such as those suggested by Adolf Dal in an article in the London Engineering Magazine, November, 1902. He recommends that the peat of large deposits be turned into electric energy at the beds, and conveyed to the manufacturing centers in that form, rather than try to transport it in fuel form. There is also the possibility of distilling it, and piping the resulting gases long distances, for use in gas engines and for heating and lighting purposes. It seems probable that such methods of exploitation would be quite as satisfactory, and more simple than any method for converting the peat into a portable fuel, except possibly into peat coke, which would be done in any case, if the gas were the object of the utilization.

### *The Composition of Michigan Peat as Shown by Analyses.*

The following analyses, a few of the many which have been made by various chemists, and others, who have investigated the suitability of our peat deposits for fuel,[1] show that these compare favorably with similar deposits in other parts of the country and of Europe.

### *Analyses by J. R. Allen.*

The following report of analyses of peat from three counties in Southern, and one in Northern Michigan, was kindly furnished the Geological Survey for this report by Prof. John R. Allen, of the Engineering Department of the University of Michigan.

Prof. Allen makes the following explanatory statements of the methods used by him in testing the peat samples.

"The analyses, the results of which follow, were made solely for commercial purposes, without any thought of publication. They are, therefore, not as complete as they would have been had the original intention been to publish them.

---

[1] See also Geol. Surv. of Mich., Vol. VIII, Pt. 2, Coal of Mich., p. 119.

Before being tested, the peats were thoroughly dried at a temperature of about 160° F. The reason for drying at such a low temperature was that it had been found that peat loses a part of its volatile matter when dried at a temperature exceeding 200° F. Tests were made with a Parr calorimeter. The instrument used was a special one of large size, to accommodate the large bulk of peat that it was necessary to use in order to have sufficient weight to give accurate results, but otherwise it was the standard Parr[1] calorimeter.

The chemical analysis of the peat was made in the ordinary manner with a platinum crucible. The crucible was filled with the peat, covered with a platinum cover, weighed and heated until the volatile matter was driven off. Then the crucible and residue were weighed and this weight subtracted from the original weight of the crucible and peat, which gave the weight of the volatile matter. The cover was then removed and the remaining material heated for about 24 hours over a gas flame until all the fixed carbon was driven off. The crucible and contents were then weighed and the result subtracted from the previous weight, the difference being the fixed carbon. The crucible was then cleaned of the residue and weighed, and this weight subtracted from the previous results; this gave the weight of ash. As the tests were made only for commercial purposes, no peats containing over 20% of ash were fully tested. Peats with over 20% of ash were considered unsuitable for commercial purposes.

The results of the tests are given in the following table:"

| Number. | County. | Per cent ash. | Per cent fixed carbon. | Per cent volatile matter. | B. T. U.'s per lb. | Remarks. |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | Luce | 4.4 | ........... | ........... | 10,600 | Peat very fibrous in appearance. |
| 2 | Luce | ........... | ........... | ........... | 10,000 | |
| 3 | Luce | 4.0 | ........... | ........... | 8,250 | Very fine structure. |
| 4 | St. Clair | 3.5 | ........... | ........... | 9,550 | |
| 5 | Jackson | 9.0 | 27.3 | 63.7 | 8,000 | |
| 6 | Jackson | 3.2 | 28.6 | 68.2 | 8,600 | |
| 7 | Jackson | 8.8 | 24.0 | 67.0 | 8,200 | Dense black color. |
| 8 | Jackson | 5.15 | 30.0 | 64.7 | 9,700 | Very light peat. |
| 9 | Jackson | 5.8 | 25.0 | 69.8 | 10,280 | Very light peat. |
| 10 | Jackson | 7.6 | 31.0 | 61.3 | 8,400 | |
| 11 | Jackson | 10.3 | 29.4 | 60.5 | 8,750 | |
| 12 | Jackson | 10.1 | 30.8 | 58.8 | 9,100 | |
| 13 | Washtenaw | 7.7 | 30.9 | 61.5 | 8,900 | Dark reddish color. |
| 14 | Washtenaw | 10.1 | 23.6 | 66.2 | 8,200 | |
| 15 | Washtenaw | 10.2 | 26.7 | 63.2 | 8,600 | |
| 16 | Washtenaw | 1.8 | 30.3 | 68.0 | 9,500 | Fibrous structure. |
| 17 | Washtenaw | 1.3 | 29.8 | 68.5 | 10,300 | Fibrous structure. |
| 18 | Washtenaw | 2.0 | 28.0 | 70.0 | 10,100 | Fibrous structure. |
| 19 | Washtenaw | 18.8 | 26.3 | 55.2 | 7,550 | Celery farm land. |

The per cent of ash plus the per cent of fixed carbon will give the per cent of coke obtainable from any sample.

---

[1] For description and figures of the Parr calorimeter, see Geol. Surv. of Mich., Vol. VIII, Pt. 2, Coal of Mich., pp. 73-76.

On making a comparative study of these analyses, it becomes evident that the ash content of the 18 samples in which it was determined, is low, since in only one of these does it rise above eleven per cent of the total weight of the dried peat. It is difficult to compare these results with those which Parmelee obtained from work on the New Jersey peats, and which have been cited in another place, since those were based upon tests of peat which had been heated to 105° C. or 221° F., before weighing, this temperature involving some loss of volatile matter, as pointed out above, and therefore higher ash in the final statement of analysis, but it is fair to assume that all except one would fall well within the two classes of high and medium grade which are made by that author.

Considered by themselves, Prof. Allen's figures show, as do others also, that heating value does not vary regularly according to any except very considerable variations in the ash content, and that there is no close and definite relation between the heating value and any of the elements reported here. Thus, if these analyses be arranged in order of their heating value, the highest first, and compared with another arrangement in which the lowest in ash is placed first, No. 1 in heating value is No. 7 in ash content. The relations are still farther shown in the following table, made up by arranging the analyses in order of each of the elements of analysis reported, all except the ash from high to low per cent, and the ash from low to high per cent:

*Table of Comparative Values of Peat Samples Given Above to Show the Lack of Relationship Between Heating Value as Expressed in B. T. U. and Other Factors Reported.*

| Original number. | Order for heating value, B. T. U. | Order when arranged according to per cent of ash present. | Order when arranged according to per cent of fixed carbon present. | Order when arranged according to per cent of volatile matter present. | Remarks. |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 1 | 7 | ................ | ................ | Only ash and B. T. U. reported. |
| 17 | 2 | 1 | 6 | 3 | |
| 9 | 3 | 9 | 13 | 2 | |
| 18 | 4 | 3 | 9 | 1 | |
| 2 | 5 | ................ | ................ | ................ | Only B. T. U. reported. |
| 8 | 6 | 8 | 5 | 8 | |
| 4 | 7 | 5 | ................ | ................ | Only ash and B. T. U. reported. |
| 16 | 8 | 2 | 4 | 5 | |
| 12 | 9 | 14 | 3 | 14 | |
| 13 | 10 | 11 | 2 | 11 | |
| 11 | 11 | 17 | 7 | 13 | |
| 15 | 12 | 16 | 11 | 10 | |
| 6 | 13 | 4 | 8 | 4 | |
| 10 | 14 | 10 | 1 | 12 | |
| 3 | 15 | 6 | ................ | ................ | Only ash and B. T. U. reported. |
| 7 | 16 | 12 | 14 | 6 | |
| 14 | 17 | 15 | 15 | 7 | |
| 5 | 18 | 13 | 10 | 9 | |
| 19 | 19 | 19 | 12 | 15 | |

In a general way the table shows that the higher calorific values are obtained from the peats lowest in ash, and where the ash is present in large quantity, the heating value is reduced, but as stated above, within the range of ash for high grade, commercially valuable peats, this relation is not demonstrable, and a sample with only three per cent of ash may yield less heat units than one having 9 or 10 per cent. In like manner it can readily be seen that the other components usually determined in peat analyses have little demonstrable connection, within limits, with the heating value.

For explanation of these irregularities it seems probable that it will be necessary to consider the type of plants which predominated in the plant associations from whose remains the peat has been built up, the degree of decomposition, the general conditions under which the plant remains were converted into peat, and other minor factors, which, taken together, make the problem one difficult of solution, especially as many minor accidental causes may affect changes in the ash content, and complicate the problem in other ways. It is evident also, from what has been shown regarding the varying origin the different strata of the same bed of peat, the type of plant remains will vary, generally, from layer to layer, from the top down to a considerable distance and that it would be often impossible to determine quantitatively the different species of plants present in the peats, even when it would be easy to tell what ones were present. The peat which contained much of the remains of the resinous coniferous trees would have a high heating value, and should be low in ash if mineral matter from other sources than the plant débris were not present.

It is not likely then, that peat, lacking as it does homogeneity of structure, composition and origin, can ever be depended upon to give uniform heating tests, even when the samples are collected from the same bed, and with considerable care, but in spite of this fact it will usually be advantageous to thoroughly sample and test all beds which are to be commercially exploited before any development is attempted, since in this way only will it be possible to determine the quality of the peat.

The analyses given above indicate that Michigan peat may run very low in ash and that it has a calorific value quite equal to the best grades of peat found in other parts of this country and of Europe, as examination and comparison of the records of analyses will show.

### *Analyses by A. N. Clark.*

Samples collected near Ludington by A. N. Clark, Alma.

| Sample No. | Per cent $H_2O$. | Per cent sand. | Per cent dry peat. | Heating value. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1, 3, 5 and 7 | 86.5 | 1.6 | 11.9 | B. T. U. |
| 4 | 87.0 | 3.0 | 10.0 | |
| 2 | 90.0 | 2.0 | 8.0 | |
| 6 | 88.0 | ............ | ............ | 8.633 |

No. 6 was the only one tested to determine the heating value and was dried in an oven at 105° C. until the weight was constant, before testing. The heating value of this sample is about that of good hard wood with no treatment except thorough drying.

In the series of four samples from a large bog in Sanilac county, given below, there is a greater divergence in the ash and water content of the various samples. It is an interesting fact that Nos. 1 and 2 are from the same hole, No. 1 from about 5 feet below the surface, and No. 2 about 10 feet. No. 3 is also from about 2 feet below the surface, and No. 4 about 5 feet from another hole about 300 yards from the one from which Nos. 1 and 2 were taken.

*Analyses by J. N. Courtney.*

| Sample No. | Per cent $H_2O$ at 106°C. | Per cent ash. | Per cent combustible matter. |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 83.82 | 0.88 | 15.30 |
| 2 | 75.26 | 3.56 | 21.18 |
| 3 | 86.94 | 0.58 | 12.48 |
| 4 | 81.34 | 2.86 | 15.80 |

The same series of samples was also dried at 106° C. and the carbon, ash, and calorific value determined as follows:

| Sample No. | Per cent carbon in peat dried at 106°C. | Per cent ash. | Heating value in calories. | Heating value in B. T. U. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 47.35 | 5.70 | 3,826 | 6,866 |
| 2 | 32.10 | 21.10 | 2,594 | 4,655 |
| 3 | 35.60 | 4.45 | 2,876 | 5,162 |
| 4 | 30.00 | 13.00 | 2,424 | 4,350 |

These analyses are instructive, in that they add to the evidence showing that the heating value of peat high in ash may be greater than that with a much lower ash content, and they also indicate that in some bogs the peat from lower strata may have less water than that from nearer the surface; they also give ample testimony as to the high quality of Michigan peat as fuel.

A further idea of the average quality of Michigan peat is given by the analyses for the Chelsea company by W. H. Allen, cited on page 119 of the report on coal (Mich. Geol. Surv., Volume VIII, Part 2), the average of which is as follows:

| | |
|---|---|
| Moisture and volatile combustible | 59.192 |
| Fixed carbon | 31.006 |
| Ash | 9.802 |
| | 100.000 |

The annual report of the State Board of Geological Survey for 1902 (p. 15) also contains the average result of 10 analyses by Prof. Delos Fall, of the MacMillan Laboratory at Albion, as follows:

| | |
|---|---|
| Moisture and volatile combustible | 64.935 |
| Fixed carbon | 28.843 |
| Ash | 9.222 |
| | 103.000 |

Mr. Waterbury, in connection with the Haslett Park sink hole, already referred to, had the following three analyses made at the Agricultural College:[1]

### Sample No. 1.

Taken south of hole and one foot from surface.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Moisture | 8.92 | per cent |
| Organic matter | 79.06 | " " |
| Mineral matter | 12.007 | " " |
| Total | 99.987 | " " |

### Sample No. 2.

Taken 100 feet south of hole in crust, from ground exposed by a tree which had been blown over.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Moisture | 10. | per cent |
| Organic matter | 80. | " " |
| Mineral matter | 10. | " " |
| Total | 100. | " " |

### Sample No. 3.

Taken from water at north side of hole.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Moisture | 10.57 | per cent |
| Organic matter | 83.74 | " " |
| Mineral matter | 5.691 | " " |
| Total | 100.001 | " " |

The percentage of ash in the Allen, Fall and Waterbury analyses is fairly constant.

### *Fuel Value of Peat.*

Raw peat as it exists in the bog is made up of from 85 to 90% or even 95% of water, 8 to 13% of combustible matter, and about 2% of mineral matter or ash. It is evident that such material will not burn, until some of the water is dried or drained from it. If weighed when cut from the bog the heavier and denser qualities may weigh as much as 100 or 125 pounds to the cubic foot, but if allowed to lie on the surface of the ground a few days the water will be reduced to about one-half its former quantity and a still farther exposure to sun and wind reduces it to from 15 to 25%, where it remains stationary, or gains and loses slightly, according to the amount of moisture present in the air which surrounds it. In this air-dried condition, it will have about one-half its former volume, and will weigh from 12 to 40, or even 60 pounds per cubic foot.

---

[1] The Michigan Engineer, 1903, p. 39.

If set on fire, in the air-dried condition, the lighter and more spongy kinds of peat take fire at about 200° C. and burn briskly, with a red, smoky flame, and give off a characteristic, strong, pungent odor, due to the destructive vaporization of the imperfectly carbonized organic matter. The denser, more compact kinds do not take fire so readily, burn more slowly and in some cases require a higher temperature to start the combustion. The ash of peat is light and powdery and small in bulk, compared with that of the original blocks, and when the surface of the fire is covered with ash, or the draft is reduced to the minimum, the fire is able to maintain itself indefinitely in a smouldering condition, as long as the supply of fuel lasts, it is said because the peat contains a quantity of oxygen in composition, in excess of that possessed by other fuels, and some of which becomes available to support combustion, when the material is decomposed by heat. For the same reason, peat fuels do not require as much draft as other fuels.

*Compared With Other Fuels:* In crude peat the heating power is small as compared with coal, only about one-half as much, or more exactly the ratio is given as varying from 1:1.6 to 1:1.8, or from 5-8 to 5-9; and it requires for the same evaporating effect from 8 to 18 times as much bulk of crude air-dried peat as of coal, hence large storage room and good-sized fire-boxes are required for the fuel in this form and it is for this reason and also to increase its efficiency, and give it staying power, that various processes of compression, etc., have been devised, In spite of its disadvantages in the more bulky forms, either of the air-dried, hand-cut blocks, or of the compressed blocks, it is reported by those who have used it to be a very satisfactory fuel for all domestic uses, that it is easily kindled, burns freely, gives a rapidly developed and strong heat, is light and easy to handle, and very clean, and with it the fire is easily regulated, for any purpose. For heating-stoves it is also well liked, giving out a gentle but sufficient heat. In burning it, its value and the amount of satisfaction it gives, is said to lie as much in the way it is handled and the form of stove used, as in the fuel. In Europe, where it is extensively used, very few special forms of stoves have been devised for the use of peat fuel, but it probably should be burned in smaller quantities, in less draft and with narrower grate openings than are used with coal and the fire should be tended more often. For open fires in grates, it is said to be a good fuel, and, by some, to be superior to wood. The smoke from open peat fires is said to be beneficial in cases of throat and lung diseases.

When used for the generation of steam under the boilers the manufacturing establishments, power and lighting plants, however, the efficiency of this fuel, in comparison with others which are to be found in the market, is at once questioned, and if it is found that the same money invested in any other fuel will produce as much or more steam, or more heat units, than peat, or can insure a more easily obtained and certain supply, or even one liked better by the men who handle it, the probabilities are much in favor, in most cases, of the other fuels being given the preference and the use. The makers of peat fuel, then, have to produce a fuel that is cheaper, better and more convenient than those already in the market, and must insure a sufficient supply the year round, if they expect it to be generally used for the generation of power, as it must be to make large investments in peat fuel factories profitable. Considering now the heating power of peat fuel of various types, it is well to inspect carefully the following table[1] in which its theoretical value is compared with that of other, commonly used, and easily obtained fuels. The quantity of fuel taken in each case is one pound:

| | B. T. U. |
|---|---|
| Wood | 5,760 |
| Ordinary air-dried peat | 6,840 |
| Pressed peat | 7,290 |
| Bituminous coal | 11,000 |
| Ordinary gas coke | 12,060 |
| Peat coke | 12,676 |
| Semi-bituminous coal | 13,000 |
| Peat briquettes | 13,330 |
| Charcoal | 13,804 |
| Anthracite | 14,600 |

The B. T. U. (British Thermal Unit), is the amount of heat required to raise a pound of water from 50° to 51° F. (Tait). The French unit, or calory, is the amount of heat required to raise a kilogram of water from 0° C. to 1° C., and is occasionally used in quotations in this paper. The relation between the two units is such that Calories may be changed into British Thermal Units by multiplying the quantity to be converted by 9 and dividing by 5. From this table it seems that peat either air-dried or pressed into blocks, is theoretically a more efficient fuel than wood and not so good as good bituminous coal or coke.

It must be remembered, however, that both ash and moisture affect the heating value of peat, as shown by the table given below, cited by Parmelee,[2] from Hausding's Handbuch der Torfgewinnung.[3]

| | Calories. |
|---|---|
| Dry peat without ash | 6,500 |
| Dry peat with 4% ash | 6,300 |
| Dry peat with 12% ash | 5,800 |
| Dry peat with 30% ash | 4,500 |
| The same peat with 25% water | 4,700 |
| The same peat with 30% water | 4,100 |
| The same peat with 50% water | 2,700 |
| The same peat with 0% water and 15% ash | 5,500 |
| The same peat with 25% water and 0% ash | 4,700 |
| The same peat with 30% water and 10% ash | 3,700 |

As the reports regarding the calorific value of fuels, including peat, are made from tests upon samples as free from moisture as it is possible to get them, the value of the fuel in actual working tests is usually considerably less than that indicated by the laboratory determinations. This must always be true of all forms of peat fuel, except peat coke and in certain types of seared briquettes.

---

[1] See also the table in Mich. Geol. Surv. VIII, Pt. 2, p. 118.

[2] Parmelee, C. W. A report on the peat deposits of Northern New Jersey. Ann. Report of the State Geologist of N. J., 1905, p. 237.

[3] Hausding. Handbuch der Torfgewinnung und Torfverwertung, 2nd Ed. Paul Parey, Berlin, 1904.

Pressing the peat increases its heating power somewhat, and coking it about doubles its value as a heating agent, but does not bring it up to the standard of the best anthracite, although it makes it approach it, since tests reported by various authors give the calorific value of the best grades of Scranton (Pa.) anthracite, as 13,805 B. T. U., and briquetting is even more efficient. since the heating value of peat briquettes ranges from 9,000 to 12,000 or even to 14,000 B. T. U., thus equalling anthracite as a heat producer.

Aside from the evidences of actual heating power, admirers and others who have used peat fuels for generating steam in boilers, state that it gives a quick and lasting heat, raising steam in about one-half the time taken for coal, that it is nearly smokeless, forms no ash of any consequence, makes no clinkers whatever, or cinders, is entirely consumed in the fire-box, none dropping into the ash-pit, makes no soot, does not corrode the grate bars, fire-boxes or boilers, because of its freedom from sulphur, does not clog up the flues with any form of deposit, and that it is the most easily handled of all fuel. Farther, in burning under a boiler, the volatile hydro-carbons of peat are not driven off in a black smoke, as with bituminous coals, but burn above the bed of fuel, thus making a quick, hot, fire, which raises steam rapidly, and the temperature is afterwards maintained by the slower combustion of the fixed carbons. The facts that it ignites so readily, burns up so completely and gives a high temperature without producing cinders, sparks, soot, clinkers, and but a very little smoke, tend to increase its actual efficiency; and while ordinary coal is capable of giving more heat, pound for pound, when usual forms are taken into consideration, it clogs the flues with ash and soot, covers the boiler with a constantly increasing film of rust, destroys grate bars, is not all burned, and in other ways decreases its capacity for generating steam, so that much of its theoretical superiority is lost, and even if these things were not so, when the comfort and convenience of the public are taken into account, and the defacement and damage to property by soft coal smoke, the smokeless feature of peat combustion is alone worth some sacrifice of heating power. As to cost of production. the peat, occurring as it does, at, or just below, the surface of the ground. is mined with less danger and much more cheaply than it is possible to mine coal, and if it needed no further preparation than digging, could be produced for a very small sum per ton. In the form of air-dried; slightly compressed blocks, an acceptable and quite efficient form of peat fuel, it can be produced at from 75 cents to $1.25, or $1.50, per ton, and with automatic machinery, on a large scale, probably for less even than the lower figures, where some of the more highly decomposed, plastic types of peat are used.

But it has been pointed out above that the heating value of this product is only about 1:1.6 to 1:1.8 that of coal, and that the bulk is rarely less than eight times as great as coal of the same heating power, and may be, for the lighter kinds of peat. much more. These are disadvantages, and in the several ways already discussed, but two tons of peat, prepared in this way, will produce more heat than a ton of coal, so that the chief problems involved in introducing it for general use, are the cost of transportation, and of storage under cover, since in this form it can not be long exposed to the weather. The first of these problems is solved where cheap transportation can be depended upon, or by using the peat near the bogs from which it is taken, and the second is readily dealt with in most cases, after consumers have learned the value of peat fuel.

*As Affected by Methods of Preparation:* Peat is, however, most easily handled, and gives results most nearly in accord with those obtained from the use of an equal weight of the best coal, when pressed dry into the form of small, compact briquettes, either alone, or with some other fuel, such as coal-slack, sawdust or some binding material, and it is to put it into this form, or one even more compact, cheaply, quickly and satisfactorily, that the energies of experts in dealing with this difficult matter, have been bent for many years. The chief problem involved, seems to be to find some way in which peat taken from the bog may be quickly and efficiently deprived of the water which is in it, and compressed rapidly, cheaply and continuously into briquettes, so that a constant production of the finished product can be insured, on a scale sufficiently large to warrant the maintenance of a plant involving, perhaps, the expenditure of a hundred thousand dollars or more, for establishment and equipment, for while smaller units may be built, the cost of running these is apparently disproportionately great, and the returns reduced by that amount. The great obstacle to success in these efforts is found in the fact that the real problem, as stated in simplest terms, is how to recover from a mixture of 85 to 90 per cent of water and 10 to 15 per cent of peat, this small portion of the latter substance, which, when received in a dry state, and burned, will only give heat enough to dry the water from one-third as much more. It is evident that such a problem is not easily solved if the fuel has to be all dried out by artificial means. It is undoubtedly a vital objection which can be urged against all systems of artificially drying peat, that they use three times as many heat units as the resulting fuel will produce, and therein lies the chief reason why such processes have not, in the long run, proved profitable, even where a large amount of waste fuel, in the form of peat refuse, has been available. The cost of drying, figured in tons of peat, is three tons of dry peat, or its heating equivalent, for every ton of dry peat produced, and after it is dried, to this must be added, to determine the selling price, the cost of digging, taking to the drying machinery, the removal from this to the presses, the operating and maintenance of these, the interest on capital and the charges for storing and selling.

Questions naturally arise at this point, as to why the water is not pressed out, thrown out by the use of centrifugal machines, or even filtered out. As to these questions, it may be said that very many attempts have been made to press the water from peat, the most exhaustive and complete of which, were conducted with great care and at large expense under the auspices of the German government. These were on a factory scale and resulted in practically total failure. Peat containing about 80% of water was given a pressure of more than two tons per square inch and when taken from the press still contained over 63% of water. In a report to the government of Norway upon some of the German experiments, which he had followed with care, J. G. Thaulow pronounced them to be complete failures, as it was shown by them that it was difficult to reduce the water to even 66% by pressure alone, and to get even this result required such a great outlay of capital, and such high remaining costs that the expense was all out of proportion to the output. Similar results reported from Canada on the use of hydraulic presses, and from other experiments, are not to be doubted and it is evident that pressure will not expel the water from peat.

Almost the same results have been obtained from attempts to drive the water from peat by the use of centrifuges, and it becomes evident that some internal cause for this behavior must be sought. This was pointed out in the first part of this report (p. 161), namely, that the water in the peat is largely held in the walls and cavities of the cells and vessels of the partly broken-down plant tissues, from which it can neither be squeezed by pressure, nor thrown by whirling, and no amount of contriving machinery is likely to make it possible to do this.

A recent process devised in England, it is claimed, breaks down, to a certain extent, the plant tissues in peat by electrical action, the mass under treatment being at the same time heated by the passage of the current, so that the water liberated is evaporated, but, when it is known that one unit of electricity, cannot develop more than 3,410 heat units, and that about 3 pounds of coal are required to generate this, it is difficult to see how such a method can successfully compete with evaporation by direct heating. If the coal, or other fuel used for the generation of electricity in the above process, were burned directly to heat the peat mass, it would produce more than 10 times as many heat units than are obtained by converting its energy into steam, then to electricity and back again to heat by the resistance offered to the current by the wet peat.

Still another, and apparently a perfectly feasible device for getting rid of the excess of water in peat has recently been described by a writer in Engineering.[1] By the method there discussed the excess of water from peat containing about 95 per cent of water, in which condition it reaches the factory through ditches from the dredging machines, is allowed to drain down to about 80 per cent and then is fed directly into the boiler where the water is evaporated and the steam pressure raised until sufficiently high to run engines and pumps and furnish heat to dryers, etc. The peat obtained in the dry state as the result of the evaporation is briquetted and used under the boilers. If peat with a less amount of water than the 80 per cent is used in the boilers, an excess of the amount of dry fuel required to run them is obtained, and may be briquetted and sold, but with this less fluid peat, the amount of energy used to work the feed-pump and briquetting machine for the boiler is greater, and with very dry peat may be about 30 per cent of the whole energy produced by the boiler. It is evident, therefore that only a relatively small amount of peat briquettes in excess of the needs of the boiler could be obtained by the use of the peat boiler, but large plants for the manufacture of peat fuel, or any form of peat product, could use this type of boiler for the production of fuel as well as steam, for driving the engines and other equipment requiring steam, instead of using the old type of boiler, and drying the fuel by some more expensive or time-consuming process.

After all this experimentation, it has been concluded by the most careful engineers working on the subject, that the most feasible way to dry the water from peat is by evaporation, using artificial heat, but as has been pointed out, this is too expensive to be practicable for the results obtained, and the processes or treatments which are proving most successful, are those which provide large covered spaces upon which great quantities of peat, after it has been ground and kneaded and slightly compressed into blocks, can be exposed to drying winds out of the reach of rain, until the amount of moisture is reduced to a satisfactory minimum, after which it is farther dried out artificially and sold in this form, or ground and compressed into briquettes.

---

[1] Utilization of peat on a large scale. Engineering, May 12, 1905.

Many forms of drying apparatus have been devised and patented, and some are regularly manufactured for use in artificially drying peat, and the last stages of the drying can be done in these cheaply, quickly, and very satisfactorily.

One property which peat possesses, in common with other matter of vegetable origin, is its power to rapidly take up moisture from the air, after it has been thoroughly dried (to 2 or 3 per cent of moisture, until it will have almost as much water as it had in the normal air-dry condition, 15 to 20 per cent, about as soon as it is cold.

This is shown in the following table, which is the result of a series of tests made in 1904 upon peat of several different types, by L. Kirschbraun, at that time analyst for the Michigan Geological Survey:

| No. | Peat. | Sample wet, gr. | Dried. | Wt. dried. | Moisture, per cent. |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | Jackson bog | 5.0036 | 100=110° | .7339 | 85.33 |
| 2 | Jackson bog | 5.1971 | over H. $SO_4$ | .7709 | 85.17 |
| 3 | Jackson bog | 5.1447 | 150°0 C | .7213 | 85.98 |
| 4 | Capac Peat Co | 4.7013 | 100=110° | .5173 | 88.99 |
| 5 | Capac Peat Co | 4.7350 | over $H_2 SO_4$ | .5081 | 89.25 |
| 6 | Capac Peat Co | 5.9224 | 150° C. | .5418 | 90.86 |

| No. | Exposure. | Wt. after 12 hours. | P. C. gain. | 24 hours. | P. C. gain. | 36 hours. | P. C. gain. | 48 hours. | P. C. gain. | 72 *hours. |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | Sat. Atm. 34°C | ........ | ........ | .7811 | 6.29 | ........ | ........ | .7832 | 6.73 | ........ |
| *2 | Sat. Atm. 19=26°C | ........ | ........ | .8817 | 14.39 | ........ | ........ | .9127 | 18.92 | .8848 |
| 3 | Open air | .8099 | 12.28 | .8296 | 15.01 | .8163 | 13.17 | ........ | ........ | ........ |
| 4 | Sat. Atm. 34°C | ........ | ........ | .5399 | 4.34 | ........ | ........ | .5409 | 4.56 | ........ |
| *5 | Sat. Atm. 19=26° C | ........ | ........ | .5606 | 10.33 | ........ | ........ | .5740 | 12.96 | .5605 |
| 6 | Open air | .5821 | 7.44 | .5977 | 10.32 | .5814 | 7.31 | ........ | ........ | ........ |

* Per cent gain 72 hrs., No. 2, 14.77.
No. 5, 10.33.

Nos. 3 and 6 were exposed during a rain storm between 12 and 24 hours.

The Jackson specimens were very dark colored, fine grained and compact; those from Capac bog, dark brown and of rather coarse texture. The gain in moisture at the end of 24 hours in all of these specimens was sufficient to make a considerable change in the heating value of the samples, and shows the inadvisability of carrying the process of driving off the moisture below 15 or even 20%, except possibly from very black, finely divided types, which show experimentally that they only absorb a limited amount of water after they are once dried thoroughly. The same analyst tested the moisture content of a sample briquette made at the Capac factory, which was reported, when made, to contain but 3 per cent of moisture. It has been kept in a dry room constantly from the time of making until analyzed, but was reported as follows:

Capac briquette, moisture, 14.75 per cent.

Because of this property, it will be seen that it is not necessary to go to the expense of completely drying the peat to be made into briquettes, unless the process is one in which the dry peat runs directly from dryer to briquetting machine, and in which the briquettes are coated with a layer of tar at the time they are formed, for if the dried peat in uncompressed form is exposed to moist air while in storage bins, it will almost immediately absorb water from the air to the extent of 10 or 15 per cent. If, on the other hand, peat after complete drying, is compressed immediately, without water-proofing, and the briquettes thus formed are allowed to stand in the air for a time, it will be found, upon analysis, that moisture has been taken up by them from the air, just as it was by the uncompressed peat. That is, even briquetted peat is hygroscopic, actively taking moisture from the air, so that it is useless to dry it much below the air-dried condition of the peat, since in the end it produces no appreciable good results, and entails expense for drying which is relatively high when compared with that of reducing to the air-dry state. It may also give the retailer a marked advantage in handling freshly briquetted peat, in that it enables him to buy the product with a low moisture content and sell it after it has taken up 8 or 10, or more, per cent of water, although this may not more than compensate for shrinkage due to breaking and crumbling of the briquettes in handling.

It is apparent, from what has been said of the peculiarities of peat, that the manufacture into briquettes in large quantities and in such a way as to produce a steady output throughout the year, is not as simple a matter as it would seem at first thought, and while there are in Russia and other European countries numbers of large factories which do produce them, and which seem able to do so with a satisfactory margin of profit, the questions relating to entirely satisfactory processes are not yet settled, and new and improved methods of production are constantly being proposed. Russia is reported as producing annually 4,000,000 tons of peat briquettes, and as receiving $938,000 for leases of peat deposits. Germany produces more than 2,000,000. tons, and Holland and Sweden each more than a million tons of this type of fuel each year.

Assuming, then, that peat can profitably be made into briquettes, there are two types which can be made from pure peat, besides those in which other combustible material is mixed with the peat before compression. The two types in somewhat common use are cold-pressed briquette and the seared briquette. In the first, the peat is dried, ground, and then compressed by hydraulic or other heavy pressure, since no cementing material is used, in a specially constructed molding press, into blocks of a given size and shape, which will be easy to handle and burn. These blocks, which may be cylindrical, egg-shaped or prismatic, with, or without, rounded corners, are not covered with any moisture-proof substance, but have a slightly polished surface due to the pressure of the mold, and, when wet, absorb moisture readily and swell up to the original bulk of peat and disintegrate if allowed to remain moist, as well as break down rapidly when burned, thus, in part, defeating the purpose of molding it. They are also liable to show cleavage planes when examined closely, where the larger fragments of the coarse peat have arranged themselves at right angles with the direction in which the compressing force is applied, and it is quite easy to break them apart along these planes so that they must be handled somewhat carefully, and be transported and stored so that they will not get wet or very moist.

On the other hand, they form a good heating and steam-producing fuel, which burns rapidly without smoke, and has a high calorific value, having lost considerable of its volatile matter by heating, in the processes of preparation and briquetting. It is for the production of this type of briquettes from peat, that several companies have built plants in Michigan.

In the second type, the "seared" briquette, the peat is first pressed into hard, dense, blocks by the presses, after having been put through about the same treatment as in the cold pressed method, and then the blocks are heated sufficiently to free some of the tar and tar oils, which appear at the surface and form an impervious coating, preventing the absorption of moisture. This covering, also, gives a dark, smooth, oily or varnished appearance to the block and make it dense in texture on the outside. Not only this, but the varnish of tar has a certain cementing power to make the block resistant, and also brings the most easily ignited part of the block in contact with the fire. It is said that the briquettes of this type are slightly less rich in volatile matter than the cold pressed forms, but that they have nearly the heating value of hard coal and do not crumble in the fire as do the other types of blocks. These may be used for any purpose where hard coal or any smokeless, very efficient fuel is required, as they burn readily in grates, heating-stoves, and furnaces, kitchen ranges, and steam boilers, giving a flame somewhat like that of wood, and a strong heat from the time the fire is kindled, while, because of the density of the blocks they hold their shape until consumed. In all forms of briquettes the combustion is so complete that none of the free carbon or unconsumed gases escape into the open air, so this form of fuel has a considerable economic advantage over either soft or hard coal. A large plant at Whitewater, Wisconsin, and a smaller one at Bancroft, Michigan (closed), have been established for the manufacture of this type of briquettes.

So much has been said in other parts of this paper regarding peat coke and peat gas that little need be said here.

The following analyses published by the Prussian Board of Trade and Agriculture, show the ultimate composition of Peat Coke I of the Ziegler process as compared with charcoal.

| | Peat Coke I. | Charcoal. |
|---|---|---|
| Carbon | 87.8% — 86.0% | 87.6% |
| Hydrogen | 2.0% — 1.9% | 3.1% |
| Nitrogen | 1.3% — 1.3% | 0.4% |
| Sulphur | 0.3% — 0.3% | 0.3% |
| Oxygen | 5.5% — 5.2% | 4.7% |
| Ash | 3.2% — 3.0% | 0.9% |
| Water | 0.0% — 0.43% | 3.0% |
| | Fuel value=7,800 calories<br>14,800 B. T. U. | Fuel value=7,800 calories<br>14,500 B. T. U. |

### *Analysis of Peat Coke II.*

(According to the Royal Chemical and Technical Experimental Station in Berlin.)

| | |
|---|---|
| Carbon | 73.89% |
| Hydrogen | 3.59 |
| Nitrogen | 1.49 |
| Oxygen | 14.52 |
| Sulphur | 0.20 |
| Ash | 2.50 |
| Moisture at 105° C. | 3.80 |

Fuel value, 6,700 calories
12,450 B. T. U.

The fuel value of the coke is high, as is shown in the comparative table given above, and it differs from the other forms of peat fuel in having little volatile matter, this having been driven off by the process of distillation. This gives to coke the characteristics of charcoal in its combustion and it burns with little flame and no smoke, and when once thoroughly started, with intense heat, the temperature reached through its combustion being higher than that obtained by using any grade of coal. For this reason it might, as Hess has suggested, be useful in cement-burning rotaries. It is a clean, free-burning, smokeless fuel, easily handled, has small ash content, contains no substances which will injure boilers or furnaces, and, under forced draft, will give a very high temperature. It is especially adapted to all metallurgical processes where ordinary coke and charcoal are now used. But for its cost and scarcity, there is no fuel more satisfactory.

The quality of peat which yields the best coke is that rather low in ash, which will easily compact itself into a firm, dense block, after it has been ground and worked into a plastic condition.

It is reported that, in Russia and Northern Germany, peat coke is used to some extent for firing locomotives, and that it is so satisfactory in that use, that the Russian government is now making and storing it for emergency uses upon important railway lines. At present this form of peat fuel cannot be expected to compete, on a large scale, with coal in this country, but it could be used wherever charcoal is used, and, as has been suggested, it might find extensive use in metallurgical operations, especially in blast furnaces, for the manufacture of charcoal iron as a substitute for charcoal prepared from wood.

It thus becomes apparent that the preparation of peat for fuel in such form that it is easily transported, and approximately equals in heat-giving power the efficiency of the other fuels with which it must be compared, and with which it must compete, is no simple matter; that with each increase in compactness, portability and calorific power, an additional treatment must be given it, requiring more complicated and expensive machinery than the processes giving the less compact forms. In these more extended and elaborate forms of treatment, if they are to return a profit, the processes must be largely automatic and continuous, doing away with human labor as much as possible and depending largely upon well-planned and carefully placed machinery, which must be capable of handling, grading, and preparing large amounts of heterogeneous crude material, rapidly and cheaply and of turning it into the maximum amount of marketable and efficient fuel. If this can not be done, then it is better to hold to the simpler forms of machinery which are easier to operate, and very much less expensive to buy, and with these, to make a smaller amount of the compressed, air-dry fuel, and supply small and perhaps purely local markets, with a fair margin of profit and success.

*As Affected by Cost of Preparation:* The cost of preparing peat fuel for market is, of course, governed somewhat by the extent to which the preparation is carried, but in the more elaborate methods the cost is increased by the necessary charges for maintenance of the expensive plant, as well as for the more numerous operations, so that while cut peat, air dried, may be produced for less than 50 cents per ton, the cost of producing a ton of peat coke, having about double the number of heat units, is 5 or 6 times as much, $2.50 or $3.00 per ton, at the German mill, to which must be added the cost of selling, transportation and handling. The cost of preparing the briquetted peat is given by various writers as ranging from 1 to 2, or even 3, dollars per ton, and probably would exceed the latter figure in many cases where errors were made in planning the plant. It should also be considered, that the situation, and especially the mechanical condition of the peat, affect the cost of production, and it is only the best adapted and most uniform beds which can be made to produce a uniform and satisfactory product. It is probably true that it will be found, when all things essential are taken into account, that the cost of making briquettes of peat which will stand transportation and other tests satisfactorily, will not be below $2.00 per ton at the factory, and that this cost will be much exceeded in very many if not the majority of cases.

*Conclusions:* It may also be well to call attention in this place to statements frequently made by advocates of the simpler methods of treatment of peat, that compressed peat is the only form in which the material has continuously and successfully been placed upon the markets abroad, and that while the briquetted form is made and sold, that it is not a commercially successful article even in the best European markets, as yet. These statements are in part, at least, substantiated upon a report on peat utilization in other European countries to the Norwegian government made in 1903, and quoted by the U. S. Consul-General[1] to Norway in a report to the home government, in which it is stated that "Common hand or machine made peat is acknowledged to be the most promising article."

So much of the literature relating to this question is of the nature of advertising, or booming matter, that it is not easy to be certain as to all of the statements which are to be found in print, even in places where reliable statements would usually be found, hence the apparent contradictions appearing in this summary.

---

[1] Bordewich, Henry, Special Consular Reports, Volume XXVI, p. 119, Washington, 1903.

## MACHINERY FOR THE PREPARATION OF PEAT FUEL AND PEAT LITTER.

In previous sections of this paper, various stages of the development of the manufacture of peat fuel have been discussed, and the underlying causes which have brought about the extended experiments have been briefly considered, and in this section a short account of some types of machinery for the gathering and preparation of peat for fuel and other uses will be given, and in addition, the names of a few manufacturers of similar types from whom illustrations, catalogs and other information relating to their machines may be obtained. It is not intended to make this a descriptive catalog, but simply to show how the machinery for the preparation of peat for fuel has grown in complexity and efficiency as the experimental work of inventors and investigators has gone on.

### *The Slayne or Slane as Used in Different Countries.*

The earliest tool used in preparing peat for fuel, and one still in use, even where machinery has been introduced to perform the same work, is the slayne (Plate XXIX), or slane, a modified spade, with a blade nearly or quite two feet long and from 4 to 6 inches wide with a projection or flange 4 inches long and 5 inches broad, at right angles to the blade, having a sharp edge, which cuts the side of the block. This tool may be made wholly of iron or steel, or of wood, with steel cutting edges. The surface of the peat is first stripped of plants and the coarse and partly decomposed plant débris making up the top layers, which are unsuitable for manufacture, by the use of ordinary tools used in clearing land, and straight ditches, with perpendicular sides, are dug for drainage. When the usable peat is exposed, the workman cuts into it with his slane, tears a block of it off from below and lays it out on the surface. The blocks may be 5 or 6 inches square on the ends and from 15 to 18 inches, or even more, long. Such blocks will weigh, as cut out, from 12 to 25 pounds apiece, according to the amount of water present, and the degree of decomposition of the peat; and a skilled man, used to the work, is said to be able to cut sufficient material to keep two teams busy drawing it away, since he only cuts the peat and places it on the surface of the bog beside the trench from which it is taken, the loading being done by helpers. In South Germany the workman stands upon the surface of the peat bed, which is from two to four yards broad, and makes vertical cuts, while in Middle and Northern Germany, the horizontal cut is more commonly used. In these regions, one workman cuts or marks out the blocks, with perpendicular strokes, beginning at the outside edge of the cleared space, and a second one cuts them off the bottom with horizontal strokes, using a specially constructed spade, and lifts the blocks up and lays them to one side, on the ground, to dry.

In Ireland, it is said, that the vertical cut is generally used, the blocks being lifted by the cutter to the side of the trench made in digging them, whence they are removed after they have somewhat dried, or they are taken green to a more favorable spot, a good workman keeping two helpers busy moving the blocks, or sods.

The only preparation given hand-cut peat is to dry it by exposure to sun and air, generally upon the surface of the bog, but since rain causes the freshly cut blocks to break down quite readily, they are sometimes protected by rough shelters for a time, the blocks being frequently turned over to insure thorough drying on all sides. After the blocks have been dried for a time the surface is much less readily penetrated by water, than when they are first cut, and they may then be exposed to the weather with little or no damage.

In parts of Europe, in extensive hand cutting of peat, the workmen are employed in gangs of five, one who clears the surface of disintegrated and worthless peat, two cutters, who cut and lift the blocks from the trenches, and a loader, who picks up the blocks left by the cutters and piles them upon wheelbarrows, and the man who wheels the loaded barrows to the drying ground, usually the cleared surface of the bog on one side of the trench, which is smoothed up for the purpose. The peat is turned from the wheelbarrows onto this space and left to drain and dry for a time, after which it is taken away and piled up in rows, each row being allowed to dry, in part, before another one is placed on top of it. Usually the blocks are left here to dry for about a month, during which time the water content is reduced about one-half, and then are piled up in store houses, or in large stacks, to be more fully dried. The stacks are usually built up on the higher parts of the bogs themselves and after the blocks are thoroughly air dry, they are carted away to storage.

In the bogs where the peat is too wet, and soft, or too uneven, and irregular in structure, to permit of its being cut into blocks, it is either lifted in nets or dredges, as in Holland, and parts of Germany, or dug up in small blocks, which, after being drained, somewhat, are trampled under foot until ground up and rendered even in structure, and then cut into pieces and pressed into molds with the hands like brick clay. Peat treated in this way, is more compact, and therefore better fuel, than ordinary cut peat.

### *Machinery for Making Cut Peat.*

Machinery for cutting peat from the bogs was one of the earliest forms of improvement which was made in the process of making peat fuel, and it is stated that a machine for this purpose was invented in France, as early as the middle of the 18th century, and not much later, machines were in use for cutting peat in Germany, to a limited extent.

A typical peat cutting machine, used at the present time in various parts of Germany, and extensively advertised, is the Brosowsky machine (Fig. 19) made at Jasenitz, which was first introduced in 1843, since which time it has been much improved, and of which the manufacturers claim they have sold over 8,000. By its use, peat can be cut and raised from a depth of 20 feet, or more, below the surface whether covered by water or not, hence wet bogs need not be drained, but may be cleared of peat without trouble, or those which have been worked as far as possible with hand labor, may be still further worked by this machine. The essential part of the machine is the cutting apparatus, which consists of a set of three knives, forming a box open at top, bottom, and one end. This three-sided knife is fastened to the back of a wrought iron bar, by means of which the knife is forced into the peat. The bar is operated by a rocking pinion, and a shaft and crank. By turning the crank, the cutting apparatus is moved up and down, and with the weight of the knife as it is lowered, the cutter may be forced into soft peat as much as 36 feet, but it should be noted that the machine can only be used at the side of the hole where the peat has been taken out.

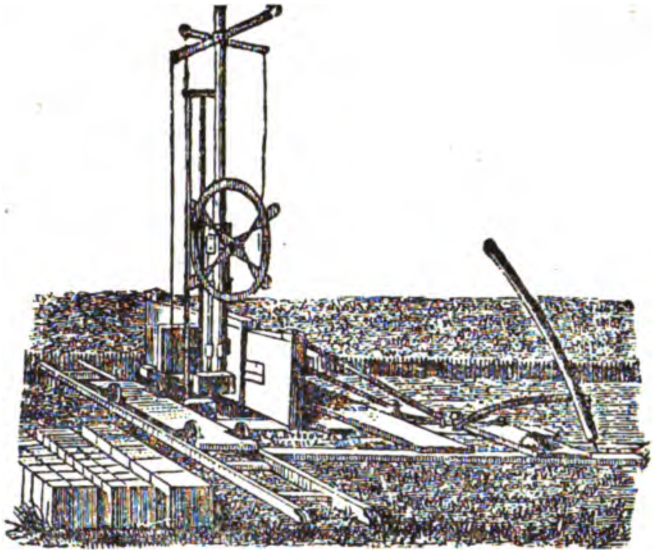


Fig 19. Machine for cutting Peat.

As the cutter has three sides of the block of peat to cut, on the side where the bar is fastened, there is fixed a sharp, flat knife, the purpose of which is to cut off the form or prism of peat made by the downward passage of the large three-sided knife. This cross-cutting knife is provided with two chains which pass over two cylindrical rollers, and by means of two levers, may be turned backwards or forwards. When the cutting apparatus is drawn up by means of the rocking pinion, this knife at the base holds the column of peat in place, since it forms the bottom of the box, and there are guides to prevent the column from falling over, which it might easily do, as it has a height of 3 to 6 yards, and base of 24 by 28 inches. After one block of peat has been taken out, the cutting apparatus is moved its own breadth sidewise on a frame. This frame is of such width, that 4 cuts may be made side by side before the machine has to be moved back the width of the knife. To aid in the backward movement, one side of the three-cornered frame supporting the apparatus is fitted with two small wheels which fit into a groove in the supporting timber and lie underneath it. By means of a projecting level, the machine is started upon the two wheels and is then moved back by another level which fits into holes in the underlying beam. The price of these patent machines varies according to the depth to which the cutter can be forced, from about $110.00 for 2 yards, to $145.00 f. o. b., for 6 yards.

Two men can cut about 3,000 cubic feet of peat with one of these machines in 10 hours, and with two helpers can produce from 10,000 to

12,000 blocks 8 inches long and about 5 inches square at the end, including the arrangement of these in rows upon the drying floor.

Another cutting machine which is in somewhat general use in Europe is that made by C. Muller of Dominion, in Pomerania, which is recommended for use under water and is also said to be capable of digging deeper than other similar machines. This cuts and lifts the peat in a cylindrical form from 2 to 6 yards high, according to the thickness of the layer. It is so arranged that four columns of peat can be cut without moving the machine. When the cutting cylinder is pushed down to the desired depth into the peat, the column is cut off by a knife, operated by levers, and this knife also holds the peat in the cylinder by forming a bottom for the cutting tube. As the cylinder with the column of peat is raised by one man, a second workman, with a spade, cuts the column into pieces of uniform length, and lays them on a car, by which they are carried to the drying floor, after which they are cut into smaller blocks and arranged for drying.

A third peat cutting machine is that made by Karl Weitzmann at Greifnagn, which cuts the peat to a depth of four feet into rectangular columns, which are then drawn to the surface and divided into cubical blocks as before.

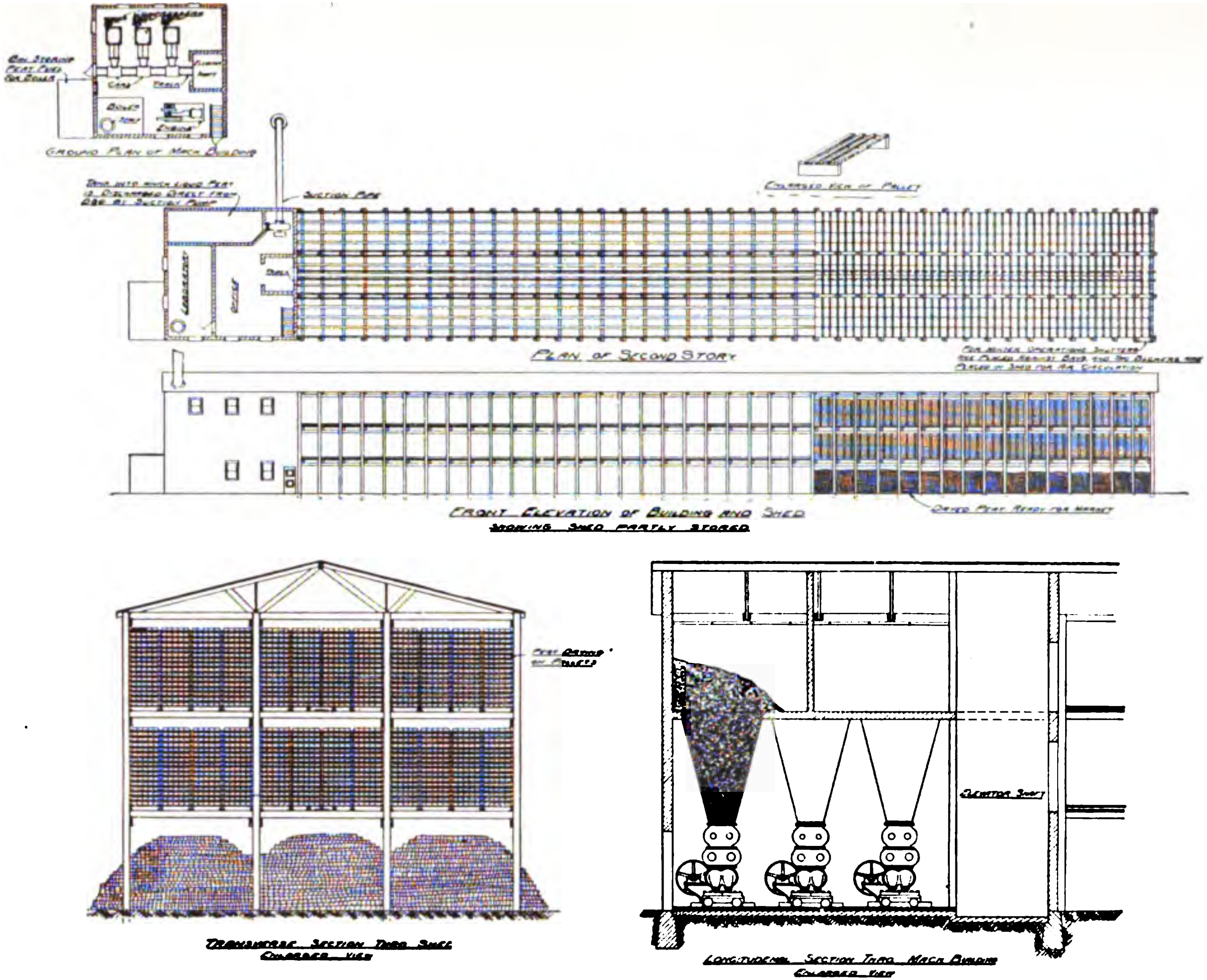
Another German machine of similar type is that of R. Dolberg of Rostock, Germany, German patent 43106, but, while it is an efficient machine, it is not necessary to describe it here.

Of digging machines, which simply dig the peat from the bogs from a greater or less depth from the surface, and convey it by mechanical means to carts, cars or presses, and which are usually considered as essential parts of the outfit necessary to make compressed peat on any but the smallest scale, may be had in a variety of forms, to be run by man, horse or steam power, at prices ranging from less than $50.00 to several hundreds. They do not cut the peat into large blocks of regular size, but are constructed for the purpose of removing the material rapidly from the bog and giving a constant and sufficient supply to the presses or other machines used with them, at small expense. These diggers according to claims of the makers, may be used down to depths of 25 feet, or more, below the surface, and are operated by a series of Archimedian screws, or may consist of an endless chain of small shovel-shaped buckets, each of which takes a small load of peat as it rises and carries it to the top of the elevator and drops it, much as the buckets of a grain elevator work.

### *Machines for Making Pressed or Condensed Peat.*

It has so frequently been pointed out that cut peat is bulky and fragile, as well as indifferent fuel, and that its efficiency and other desirable qualities are improved by compression, that it need not be discussed again here. The simplest process to improve the quality is compression or condensation, the latter being the better term, since very little actual compression is used by the machines producing this sort of fuel. As the result of the treatment by the more improved types of machines, about one-third of the bulk of the peat is lost, and when dry, it becomes hard, firm, nearly waterproof and is increased in efficiency as fuel.

Mention has already been made of the treatment of soft, or very coarse


Bin Storing Peat Fuel for Boiler
Cars
Track
Boiler Room
Engine
Ground Plan of Mach Building
Tank into which Liquid Peat is Discharged Direct from Bog by Suction Pump
Suction Pipe
Laboratory
Office
Enlarged View of Pallet
Plan of Second Story
For Winter Operations Shutters are Placed against Shed, and Dryers are Placed in Shed for Air Circulation
Front Elevation of Building and Shed
Showing Shed Partly Stored
Dried Peat Ready for Market
Peat Drying on Pallets
Transverse Section thro Shed
Enlarged View
Elevator Shaft
Longitudinal Section thro Mach Building
Enlarged View

PLAN AND SECTION OF PEAT FACTORY.

peat, by which it was shaped in small molds by hand pressure, and the earliest methods of machine compression were not much more elaborate than this, since the early forms of press were simple rectangular boxes, with a close fitted piston, which could be pushed down into the box by screws or levers, holes being provided for the water liberated by the pressure, to run off. Compressed peat was made in Saxony, as early as 1820.

Later machines show development along many lines, but in addition to mere compression, most of them grind, or roll, the peat and subject it to a kneading process to break up the vegetable structure of the plant remains in it, in order to make it easy to get rid of the air and water which may be entangled in the cavities of these structures. Some of these machines have combined rolling, cutting, and filtering through coarse cloth, as the Mannhardt and Koch press, described by Percy[1] as follows:

"The principal feature of this press consists in the use of a pair of large horizontal rolls covered with cloth to serve as a filter. On the circumference of the roll, ribs of hoop iron are fixed obliquely about one inch apart, which support drilled iron plates surrounded by an endless band of cloth. The wet peat is torn to pieces and put in two hoppers, one over each roll, whence it is drawn by rake rollers; but in its course to the large rolls it passes through a series of three small rolls, fixed above each large roll, whereby it is deprived of most of its water. There are thus two streams of peat descending from the two hoppers and passing, first through a pair of small rolls, then through a pair of spiked rolls and lastly through the two large rolls by which the remaining water is pressed through the remaining filter-cloth into the interior of these rolls. The peat now forms a compact sheet which is conveyed to a knife-like apparatus, which divides it transversely, and then to circular cutters, which divide it longitudinally into blocks of the required dimensions. The peat is thus freed from water to such an extent that its further dessication may be effected in favorable weather, in the course of a few days, under covered, airy sheds, or in unfavorable weather, by artificial heat in suitable apparatus."

The same writer describes a number of other forms of presses, some of which are still in use, having been improved from time to time up to the present. A good peat-pressing machine must be simply and strongly built, must run easily and without requiring excessive repairs and should be built so that it can be moved from place to place readily. It must do its work quickly, grind and mix the peat thoroughly and deliver the blocks well formed and of uniform hardness, which, however, need not be very great. The peat should be easily fed to it and the completed blocks readily removed to the driers.

There are machines meeting all these requirements now manufactured in Germany, in this country, and in Canada.

One of the most generally used machines of this kind in Europe, is that made by C. Schlickeysen of Rixdorf, near Berlin, which has been mentioned already. This machine first appeared about 1860 and has been constantly improved until the present time. A late pattern has an excavating machine which cuts the peat from the bogs, when not too full of logs, stones, etc., and delivers it by means of a long, sloping belt-and-bucket elevator, into a cylinder, in the axis of which a shaft revolves, carry strong, projecting blades, which have cutting edges and which are arranged spirally, so that they force the peat along. The blades are nearly, but not quite, in a true spiral, so that they act unequally on the peat, thus grinding, cutting and mixing it, the more perfectly. There are no projections or blades on the inner surface of the cylinder and the finely divided and condensed peat pulp is finally forced out by a horizontal screw, in the form of a continuous flexible, prismatic, block, 3 by 4 inches in section, at the tail of the machine, where it is received on boards 3 feet in length, which, as soon as filled, are loaded onto small cars and run out to the drying grounds, where the blocks are laid out in rows and cut with a knife into bricks, 10 inches long, and left to dry. They lose in ordinary weather one-half their water content in a period of two weeks, after which, they may be quite profitably dried artificially, or be left for a longer time exposed to the air. By the use of this type of machine, the peat is reduced one-third in bulk, so that a machine handling 21 cubic yards of raw peat per hour, delivers only 14 cubic yards of condensed peat in the form of bricks, or blocks, 10 inches long, by 3 by 4 inches in section, and weighing when dry, from 2½ to about 4 tons, in which condition it is good fuel, hard and tough and easily kept dry. A plant of this kind includes besides the excavator, elevator and grinding press, a 10-horsepower portable engine, which uses peat refuse for fuel, and cars and tracks for removing the blocks from machine to dryer, etc. Since the whole plant is portable, it may be placed on the further side of the bog to be worked and moved backward as the peat is taken out. The cost of such a plant complete, is about $5,000, ready to operate and its operation when used without machine or digger, takes 19 men including the engineer and fireman.

---

[1] Percy, John, Metallurgy: Refractory materials and fuels, p. 231, London, 1875.

Horsepower peat machines for compressing peat are manufactured by a number of European makers, among which is that made by R. Dolberg, which requires to run it, a good stout horse, 6 men, and a boy to lead the horse. The machine is placed about 8 yards from the edge of the peat bed, with the opening to the press turned toward the bog, so that it may easily be reached. In operating this machine the horse is hitched to a traction beam about 18 feet long and 4 inches square at the smallest end, and if the ground is soft a board or plank track must be laid, or broad shoes, such as are used in gathering marsh hay, fitted to the horse's feet. The peat is dug by hand and thrown into irregular piles, from 25 to 50 feet broad, according as the peat is deep or shallow. The digging requires one man, and a second wheels the peat to the machine, which is fed by a third, who is general foreman and especially has to see that the horse keeps up a uniform gait. A roller is fastened under the mouth piece, in the same direction with it, to receive the finished peat as it comes from the orifice of the machine, hence the roller must be more or less inclined according to the consistency of the peat, so that the manufactured blocks may neither choke the machine nor be torn apart; the rollers must be adjusted high enough so that the peat table rolling on them stands about 4 inches from the mouth-piece.

The boards on which the condensed peat is received, are placed on the rollers and the peat block is cut into bricks with a knife as it comes out. As fast as the boards are full, they are lifted into a cart, and when the cart is loaded, it is driven off to the drying ground by two other workmen, who unload and arrange the blocks upon the ground. In this work, two-wheeled carts, taking about 16 boards of 10 blocks each, and running on board tracks, are used. The wheels of the cart are so placed that the weight of the peat balances the load and makes the work of pushing them easy.

The machine itself, consists of a revolving, spiral cutter and is enclosed in a stout, iron casing, with a hopper-like opening at one side near one end, and the opening for the condensed peat at the other. If, at any time, the spiral, or the mouth piece is stopped by pieces of undecomposed wood, sods, stringy material, or too dry peat, it can be cleaned through openings in the side of the casing, provided for this purpose, or the mold and mouth-piece may be opened and the cause of the trouble quickly found and removed.

If the horse is to work the machine easily and satisfactorily, the peat should be put into the machine so wet, that when the blocks are cut off at the tail of the machine, they will be only sufficiently solid to hold their shape on the board. This is contrary to the belief of inexpert workers, who think that the peat should come from the machine dense and solid, but a much larger and more satisfactory output can be obtained by working the peat wet, and the drying goes on about as rapidly, since the grinding and kneading increases the capacity for drying and contraction so that in 2 weeks of good drying weather, the bricks can be piled.

With the horsepower machine, the chief points to look out for are that the horse keeps going steadily and that each man keeps up with his special part of the work and the duty of the man who feeds the machine, and who is also foreman, should be to see that the horse keeps an even gait. If this is done the quality of peat blocks produced is uniform and each set of men has to be prompt in bringing up the raw material and in taking away the finished blocks. Where this is done, and especially where the work is paid for by the thousand it is not hard to get a production of from 14,000 to 16,000 bricks per day with a single horsepower machine. When in use, and peat has to be brought more than 75 steps, the machine should be moved to a new spot nearer the supply.

In the Heinen horsepower machines made by A. Heinen, Varel, Oldenburg, Germany, the essential parts are a vertical cylinder firmly attached to a timber base, in which is the grinder and condensing apparatus turned by a long beam at the top. At one side of the cylinder near the bottom is the delivery spout, so that boards for the reception of the finished product can run in it. The peat bricks made by this machine are about the size of those made by the others and are handled in much the same way. The manufacturer estimates from 8,000 to 10,000 peat bricks per day with one horse, as the capacity of this machine.

Another manufacturer of machines for making condensed peat, is Weitzmann, who makes a machine which may be either used by horse or steam power, and which is said to work all kinds of peat without difficulty. This consists of a horizontal cylinder, somewhat larger at one end, where the hopper is placed, than at the other, or outlet, end. On top of this smaller part, is a short transverse cylinder of about the same diameter. In the long cylinder is a long axis turned by a fly wheel geared at right angles with it, upon which is bolted a series of powerful steel blades arranged spirally, so as to give a forward motion to peat while cutting it and in the upper cylinder is a deeply corrugated roller, the depressions of which fit over the blades of the cutting apparatus, and materially aid in reducing the peat to a finely divided state. The pulp is pressed forward to the tail of the machine and out through a pipe, where, as in other machines, the block is received on a moving table and cut up, and taken away to be dried.

Peat presses are also made by G. Traskatis, Lyck, East Prussia, and Stutzke Brothers, Lauenberg, Prussia. Of American made machines which make condensed peat, the best known, and longest used is the Leavitt Peat Machine (Plate XXXI), invented by T. H. Leavitt, recently deceased, who became interested in peat fuel manufacture about 1865. This is a machine operated by steam power, in which it is designed to break down the vegetable tissues and cells in the peat, liberate the air and water contained in these, and thus render the material plastic, so that it will become compact and hard when dried after slight compression. The machine may be considered in two parts, the condenser, and the molding mill, which are separate but connected by a belt conveyor, and which together occupy a space 6 x 10 feet on the floor and 10 feet high, exclusive of the engine and boiler.

The condenser has a revolving cutter or "ripper" consisting of a series of spirally arranged knives on a small shaft just below the hopper, where it receives the crude peat and cuts and tears it to pieces. From the ripper, the peat enters a series of three pairs of cast iron rolls, each three feet long, with the lower roll of the first pair heavily corrugated to help move the material along. These rollers perform a rubbing or grinding process which is brought about by a different rate of rotation for each roller of each pair. The upper roller of the first pair makes 40 revolutions, to 20 of the lower; the upper one of the second pair 90, while the lower one makes only 40, while in the third pair, the upper one revolves 180 times while the lower one turns 60 times. After passing through these rolls, the peat, finely divided, and deprived of most of the air which it originally contained, has shrunk in bulk from 30 to 50 per cent, and has about the same amount of water it had to start with. It is then in a pasty condition, and is received by the belt conveyor, which is enclosed in a wooden casing, and carried to the hopper of the molding machine. This is an upright cylinder supported upon a heavy cast iron base nearly five feet high; below the upright part is the molder, or press proper, consisting of two horizontal revolving cylinders, which are similar to the molds of brick making machines. Below this is a table made up of boards supported by a belt carrier, which receives the peat bricks as they come from the machine. The upright cylinder contains a series of semi-circular shelves, arranged alternately on opposite sides of the chamber, and each with a series of radial slots one-half inch wide. A central shaft, carries, just above the shelves, a corresponding set of two-armed sweeps and a less number of single-armed ones. The former rubs the peat against the shelves and the latter help to press it down into the pockets of the molding cylinders, from which it is forced by plungers onto the boards of the table below in the form of blocks or bricks, 4 by 8 by 2½ inches. The capacity of the machine is 108 blocks per minute, or about 65,000 per 10 hour day, which, after drying, amounts to about 40 tons of good hard fuel. The blocks taken from the machine may be conveyed to the drying grounds or sheds by any convenient way, and may be spread out in rows or piled in racks, and left to be dried by the wind and air. The wet blocks commonly weigh about 3½ pounds, contain 80 cubic inches, and have a surface of about a square foot. The blocks shrink as they dry, and get to be nearly as hard as stone and impervious to water, the drying taking from four days to 2 weeks, according to the weather, when they are ready for the market. A plant using this machine is in operation at Orlando, Florida, where it makes all the fuel used by the Orlando Water and Light Company which develops 500 horsepower. The capacity of the peat molding machine can be increased by increasing the speed, trial runs showing that it can produce as much as 400 tons per day without difficulty. The cost of putting up a plant equipped with this machine is figured at $5,000, divided as follows:

| | |
|---|---|
| Machine | $1,500 |
| One engine and boiler, 12 horsepower | 1,500 |
| Shafting, belting and fixtures | 500 |
| Roughly constructed building | 1,000 |
| Incidentals | 500 |
| Total | $5,000 |

The cost of labor is also a very important item, which must be taken into account in considering the possibilities of manufacture of peat fuel. With this machine using 100 tons of crude peat per day, four men will be required to cut the peat from the bog and load it on cars; a boy with a single horse, and two cars running on a tramway, can handle the transportation to the mill. One man is needed to feed the mill, one to put molds into the mill, two to take the molds from the mill, a boy, one horse and three trucks to transfer the molds to the drying ground, two men on the drying ground to empty the molds, a boy to take the molds as they come back from the drying ground and put them in the proper place, and engineer and superintendent. There will also be needed two or three men and a boy, with a horse, to care for the dry fuel and house it at the proper time. The men and horses should be hired for less than $40 per day, and except in very wet weather, should produce an average of 25 tons or more of fuel per day. The air drying makes the production somewhat uncertain, as in very wet or cold weather, evaporation of the water from the bricks is slow and uncertain, unless there are covered drying sheds provided, which will increase the cost of the plant somewhat. It is supposed that all steam for operating the plant will be generated by the use of waste material from the bog. The product from such a plant should sell at from $3.00 to $4.00 per ton, where hard coal is sold at about $6.00 per ton, and for more where it is higher. By increasing the number of machines the cost of production could be lowered materially by substituting mechanical devices for some of the hand labor.

There are numbers of other condensing and compressing machines upon the market abroad, a single maker sometimes advertising a half dozen types, ranging, in power required, from 1 to 50 or more horsepower, in productive capacity, from 5 to 50 or 60 tons of condensed peat per day, in price from $300 to $1,500, and in the number of men required to run them, from 7 to 25. All of the German makers mentioned above advertise some form of press for making condensed peat.

An estimate, given by Julius Bordollo, 38 Kingsbridge Ave., New York, agent for several of the large European makers of peat fuel machinery, for a plant having a daily capacity of 40 tons of condensed peat, is as follows:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| To be imported from Germany. | 1 peat press, latest design, with double breakers and mixers, mounted on wooden frame | $1,200 |
| | 1 chain elevator, 30 feet long, complete with rollers and shovels | 950 |
| | 2 appliances with axles and wheels for moving press and engine | 700 |
| | 1 cutting table | 100 |
| | 100 feet of rails | 250 |
| | 6 iron cars for transporting the peat to drying grounds | 300 |
| | 18 horse-power engine | 1,500 |
| | Belting, boards, and sundries | 100 |
| | F. O. B. New York | $5,100 |

This estimate does not include the cost of buildings and installation of plant, but these need not be large, since the press and engine are portable and can be sheltered by a very small structure.

The cost of production per day, with this plant, is estimated as follows:

| | |
|---|---|
| 1 foreman | $5 00 |
| 1 engineer | 5 00 |
| 8 laborers | 12 00 |
| 5 boys | 5 00 |
| Office and selling expenses | 10 00 |
| Boiler fed by refuse peat and waste from bog | ...... |
| Total expense for 40 tons peat fuel | $37 00 |
| Or cost per ton | 92½ |

A rather low estimate, at the present prices of labor, and should be adjusted for each locality where a plant is to be established.

*Machinery for Drying and Briquetting Peat:*

The advantages and disadvantages of drying peat by artificial means have already been dwelt upon at some length, in a previous section, and no further space need be devoted to the matter here, except to again enforce the statement, *that no form of drier can take raw peat from the bog, and dry it by artificial heat, even to the air dry condition, except at a loss, unless the heat thus used is waste from some other industry or process.* It must also be remembered that where the peat is dried at high temperatures, it loses some of its volatile matter, which, by so much, may reduce its value as fuel for certain purposes.

Early attempts at drying peat made use of chambers, in which the peat was placed and subjected to drafts of heated air or other gases, sometimes forced into the bottom and sometimes at the top of the drying chamber, or kiln, by the use of exhaust fans.

Of different type is the Schonomen dryer, in which the raw peat is sifted, in order to extract from it the fibers, the non-fibrous part passing into a vat of heated water, where it is thoroughly mixed into a fluid mass or "slurry." From this vat it is pumped by slurry pumps, into a so-called chamber filter-press. As soon as the chambers are full, the slurry pumps are changed about so that they pump air instead of slurry into the filter chamber, and a high air pressure is produced, which can be raised to 20 atmospheres, 300 pounds per square inch. The compressed air drives out all the overlying water and about one-half of the original water contained in the peat, through the bottom of the chamber. The cakes of peat formed in the press, fall out when the chamber is opened, and are broken up and transported to drying ovens heated by steam, where the partly dry peat is quickly and thoroughly dried. The steam drying ovens can be heated by waste steam from the briquetting machine, which is used in connection with this process.

The Stabler process feeds the peat through rollers until it is crushed and ground very fine, after which it falls on a heating plate and is pushed forward by workmen to the farther end of the same plate, where it falls between rollers which grind it still more, and it is then conducted on intermediate heating plates back to the starting point. This process is repeated until the peat is sufficiently dry.

By the Stauber method, the peat is dried in the open air for a time, then dumped into conveyor pits to be conveyed to the condensing apparatus. The latter is a band of wire gauze of large mesh, which passes under two rollers. These press the peat against the gauze and the free water is pressed out. At the end of the gauze band, which is 5 feet wide and 15 feet long, an endless chain, provided with scrapers, causes the compressed peat to fall upon a kind of sieve shaker, which separates the larger pieces, the proportion of which should be as small as possible, and these are sent to be treated again by the rollers. The fibers and undecomposed vegetable matter which stick to the wire gauze are cleaned off by a revolving brush which runs below it. From the shaker, the finer peat is taken by a vertical conveyor, and is broken into small pieces in a special mechanism, as it passes along to the drying oven. This is a metal drum, 5 feet in diameter and 25 feet long, placed horizontally on rollers. The cylinder is rotated, and a spiral stirrer inside of it is used to push the peat forward, as it is dried by coming in contact with hot gases from a furnace. The cylinder is driven by a 50 horsepower engine, and the dried peat, after removal from the dryer, is crushed and briquetted. By this process, a ton of raw peat is reduced to about ¼ ton, containing about 100 pounds of water after it leaves the dryer, and is ready for the briquette press. Mention should be made of the tunnel type of drying chambers such as are used in drying brick in some of the modern brick plants. Selwid and Lange have patented such a chamber in Germany, patent number 22,223, and a similar device was used at the Jebsen peat coke plant in Norway. At the latter place the air-dry blocks of peat, loaded on cars, provided with racks of shelves, were run into the cool end of the tunnel and subjected to a gradually rising temperature, until they reached the warm end, where they are heated slightly above 100° C. The heat, in this case, was supplied by waste gases from the coking ovens, the dry, warm air being drawn through the tunnels by fans driven by electricity.

The Cooley dryer, recently patented in the United States, consists of a series of broad, shallow, galvanized iron pans, arranged one above the other in steps, in such a way that they can be given a rapid vibratory, shaking motion. The series is divided into two parts connected by a chain elevator and each is enclosed in a chamber, the first of which is heated by steam pipes and the second by hot air from a furnace provided for the purpose, and which burns the refuse material from the crude peat. The peat, air dried, or even wet from the bog, is ground by passing through toothed rollers, then elevated by a belt conveyor to the top of the first dryer where the coarse matter is screened out, the fine falling on to the top pan of the dryer, from which it is shaken to the one below, and so on, to the bottom one of the series, from which it is elevated to the top of the second set of pans and again passed down, this time subjected to a higher temperature, after which it emerges, with less than 3 per cent of moisture, in the form of a fine powder, and is conveyed either to the briquetting machine, or to storage bins. The whole process by this system of drying takes less than an hour, if the peat is air dry, and but little longer when wetter than this.

*Machines for Briquetting:* The great development of the manufacture of various kinds of fuel into briquettes has led to the invention of many forms of presses in Northern Europe, where coal slack and washings, lignite, or brown coal, coke, sawdust and peat, either pure or mixed with each other, or with petroleum refuse, pitch, tars and other binding material, are all made into briquettes by the use of pressure and heat. When the question of using peat for fuel in this country was raised a few years ago, the highly finished, regularly formed, compact and exceedingly neat, as well as efficient peat briquette, attracted the eye, as well as appealed to the imagination of those who decided to make an investment in the new fuel, and, as a result, most of the plants for the manufacture of peat fuel in America are briquetting plants, using, in some cases, foreign made presses and in others, specially invented machines.

It has already been stated that two kinds of briquettes are made from peat, the cold-pressed and the "seared." It may also be said that several types of presses are used for making the first kind of briquettes, of which the open and closed mold systems are the most important. The first of these gives large production, is easy to work and keep in order, and is simple in construction, while the second permits the use of higher pressure, hence gives a more compact product.

The open mold system has, as its basis, a tube, open at both ends, into one end of which, a piston fits, the other end being left open, and whose cross section is that of the finished briquette. The resistance produced by the friction of the peat in passing through the mold gives sufficient pressure to make compact briquettes. In practice, when a proper amount of material has been put into the mold, the piston descends and compresses it, then more material is put in between the piston and this briquette, the piston moves forward and forms a new briquette, and at the same time forces the finished one from the open end of the pipe. By this system, in practice no very great pressure can be used, as the amount developed is dependent upon the length of the tube and the friction of the finished briquettes against its walls. For when a long tube is used and the resulting high pressure, due to increased friction is obtained, excessive wear, due to heating and strain, causes rapid deterioration of the machinery. To give increased resistance, with short tubes so that higher pressure can be used, the tube is sometimes made to taper from the piston to the lower end. The machines in which the open mold type of press is used generally have the molds arranged in pairs, so that continuous motion may be obtained. This is reported to be the favorite form of briquette press in France and Germany and many modifications of it have been patented and manufactured.

The Dickson press used in the manufacture of peat briquettes at the Welland, Ontario, bog, is of this type, and, according to Carter,[1] in this press, for a mold or tube 2½ inches in diameter, a length of one foot will give a frictional resistance equal to a pressure of 8 tons per square inch on the piston. By the use of this type of mold, with the highest practicable friction, heat may be developed sufficient to liberate tar from the peat and give the briquettes a waterproof covering.

The closed-mold system is capable of many variations, but in one of the simpler forms, consists of a revolving table containing holes the shape of the briquette, but deeper than its smaller diameter. In operation, the holes properly filled, are passed in turn under a powerful hydraulic press by the revolution of the table, and the briquettes thus formed are then immediately thrown from the mold automatically.

In another form, the material is compressed simultaneously by two pistons forming the top and bottom of the molds, and in still another the molds are formed by depressions in rolls or wheels, which revolve either vertically, horizontally, or in a more or less inclined position. Where rollers are used, the product is frequently in the form of balls or egg-shaped masses, which are known as "boulets," or bullets, in France, where various types of coal waste are commonly sold in this form.

The Dobson press, used at the Beaverton works at Beaverton, Ontario, is of the closed mold type, the bottom of the mold being formed by a block of metal, and the molds are arranged in groups of 8 under each of the two compressing pistons which work reciprocally, and each time the piston is raised, the mold cylinders turn one-eighth around. With each down stroke the piston forms a briquette on top of one which has been made by a former stroke of the same mold, thus compressing it a second time to make it as compact as possible. The power used with this press is furnished by a steam engine and the mold cylinders make about 50 revolutions per minute, making about double that number of finished briquettes.

The cost of briquetting machinery is higher than that for making condensed or cold compressed peat, and ranges in average price from $10,000 or less, for plants of small capacity, 25 tons or less per day, to

---

[1] Carter, W. E. H., Peat Fuel, Its Manufacture and Use, pp. 23-25, Ontario Bureau of Mines Bulletin No. 5, Toronto, 1903.

$30,000 or more, for those having a possible output of 200 tons per day; these estimates are based on European figures and do not usually include the cost of buildings and many minor sundries.

In an estimate made in 1902 and furnished Mr. F. H. Mason,[1] U. S. Consul General at Berlin, by the company controlling the Stauber process of drying and briquetting peat, the following quotations are made for a plant with a capacity for putting out 50 tons of briquettes per day:

| | |
|---|---|
| Buildings | $14,280 |
| Machinery | 17,850 |
| Steam engine and fixtures | 3,570 |
| Tram-ways and cars, etc | 3,570 |
| Total | $39,270 |

When it is remembered that a plant for producing cold compressed or condensed peat, air dried, with a capacity of 40 tons of finished fuel per day, may be had for about 1-7 of this sum, it is not remarkable that the statement is frequently made, that in Europe the cold compressed peat is much more largely made and used than the briquetted type, but it is also to be borne in mind that large peat briquette factories have been in operation in Germany and other parts of Europe for some years, and have been apparently successful, especially in Russia, and it is probable, that where the conditions are favorable in this country, peat briquettes can be made on a large scale and sold with profit, especially when the plant and equipment are properly planned, and economically and scientifically managed. It must be considered, however, that it is likely to be the case that for a long time to come the demand for peat fuel will not be from the large consumers, except in regions remote from the coal fields, but from those who use only small supplies, mainly for domestic purposes, and that this demand is relatively small, hence there is no reason for the development of large plants at the present time.

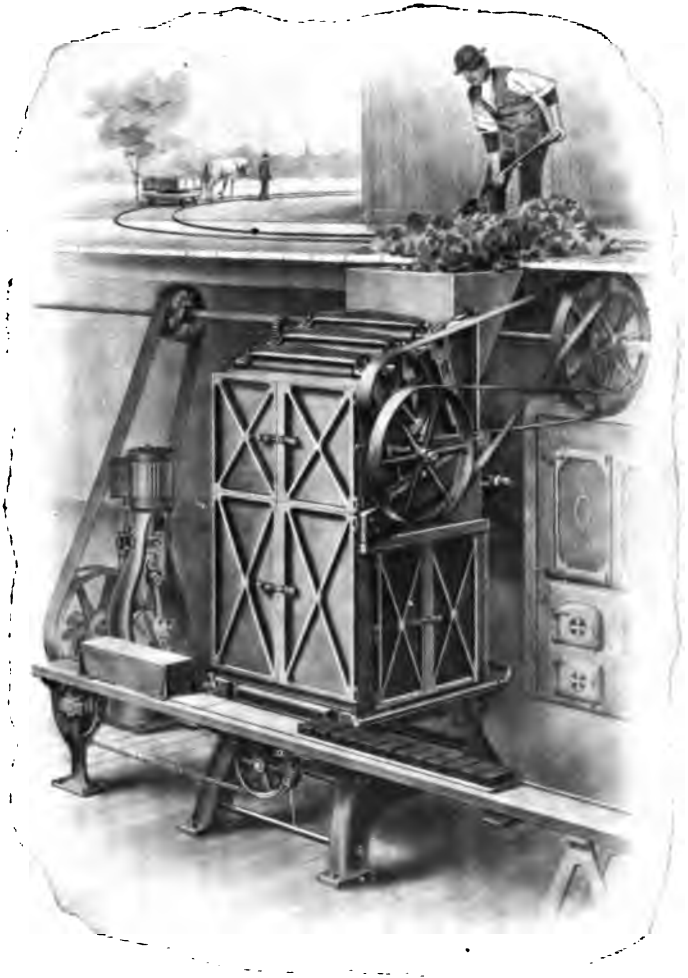
It may be said regarding this matter, however, that existing plants, wherever they have been built in this country, have had orders for more fuel than they have been able to make, and if they could have filled them would have been able to build up a still larger demand, since customers have expressed themselves as pleased with the qualities of the briquettes as fuel. Whether the same results would not have been obtained with a well-prepared article of condensed peat, made at much less cost, is still an unanswered question.

Machines for the preparation of seared briquettes are of the nature of molding machines of the roller pattern, in which the rolls are heated sufficiently, either to simply liberate a part of the tar of the peat, or, in some processes which have been patented, to liberate most of the volatile matter, and form a coke, or carbonized briquette. The former has passed beyond the experimental stage, as noted in another place, but so far as has been found out at present writing, the latter process is not yet fully perfected.

There are so many manufacturers of machinery for briquetting various

---

[1] Mason, F. H., Special Consular Reports, Vol. XXVI, p. 81, Washington, 1903.



LEAVITT'S PEAT CONDENSING AND MOULDING MILL.
PERFECTED.

fuels and other substances, that no attempt is made her to give a list of them, but it may be said that in a publication[1] of the State Department, at Washington, already mentioned, the names of some of the principal European makers of such machinery are given, together with much other valuable information relating to the manufacture and use of briquettes. J. C. Bordollo & Co., whose address is given below, are the American representatives of some of the prominent European manufacturers and can be consulted where immediate information is required, and are prepared to furnish various articles on peat.

### *Methods of Coking Peat.*

Processes for coking peat have already been quite fully discussed, and the cost of plants for this purpose mentioned. But little special machinery for the actual operation of coking has been required, since this is performed in some kind of kiln, or closed retort, similar to that used for making coke or charcoal, although several types of closed kilns of the retort type have been patented, but for rendering the preliminary operations of digging, grinding and molding, drying and conveying to the kilns, automatic, and as cheap as possible, several patented machines have been developed, as well as those for recovering by-products from waste. Of somewhat different nature from others, is the patented coking process covered by U. S. patent No. 732,097 and controlled by F. C. Rockwell, Hartford, Conn. In this process, the standard kilns are 32 feet long, 3 feet 9 inches wide, and 5 feet high, each costing about $1,000, and having an estimated capacity of 6 or 8 tons of coke in 24 hours, the product costing, according to published figures, not to exceed $3.00 per ton at the mill. Not less than four of these kilns should be used for a single plant, and a larger number can be cared for by one man. In using these kilns, the peat has to be molded and dried before coking, as it does in other processes, and no special devices are mentioned for these purposes, in the description of the process.

### *Machinery for the Manufacture of Peat Litter.*

A considerable development of special machines for the manufacture of peat litter and peat mull, or peat dust, has been made by the European manufacturers of peat working machinery. Those manufactured by A. Heinen, Varel, Germany, are of excellent patterns and construction, ranging from a small hand machine, which has a daily output of about 4 tons of litter, to one having a capacity of about 20 tons and requiring an engine of 6 or 8 horsepower to run it. These machines consist of toothed rollers, of large diameter, the teeth being long and more or less curved, to shred up the coarse material in the peat. The shredded mass in the hand power machine passes directly from the shredder to a horizontal, revolving, cylindrical sieve, where the finer parts are screened out, after which the coarse stuff may be baled, either by hand, or power balers, made by the same makers.

Peat mull is the name given to finely ground peat, prepared and used in Europe for various purposes, especially as an absorbent and disinfectant. This substance is prepared in upright grinders run by power, or even by hand. The material falls upon a sieve which sorts it, the finer parts falling into a receptacle and the coarser retained upon the sieve. The capacity of these machines is from 5 to 15 tons per day of coarse and about one-half as much of fine mull per day.

---

[1] Briquettes as Fuel in Foreign Countries, Consular Reports, Volume XXVI, Washington, D. C. 1903.

In a properly arranged plant for the manufacture of these products, the dried peat would be dumped from the barrows or cars which bring it from the drying ground, into the shredding machine, from which both fine and coarse material could be elevated to a properly placed screen hopper, so that the finer parts of it could be sent by chute to a mulling mill, while the coarse material passes on to a revolving cylindrical sieve which still further cleanses and sorts it, the finer parts going to the muller and the coarse to a baler placed below. The fine material could pass from the mulling machine directly to the packing machine. Such a plant should not be expensive and could be run in connection with an establishment for making peat fuel, to utilize the fibrous top layers of the bog, these being plowed up and dried just as hay is, by exposure to sun and wind. See Plate 31.

Hand machines for making peat litter are also advertised by Martin, of Ofenberg, by Paul Reuss, of Artern, Saxony, and by the Iron Works of Luneberg, and it is probable that Dolberg and other makers also produce some forms of these machines. It is probable that a corn shredder, with somewhat stronger knives than usual would answer very well to shred the less woody forms of peat for small consumers.

### *Devices for Carrying Peat from Bog to Factory.*

Devices for conveying the peat to the factory have been numerous, but mostly simple. In more extensive plants portable tramways of light rails are laid on the surface of the bog on which cars of small size are run, by man, or horse power, or infrequently by electric trolley. The latter could well be used where a lighting plant was used, or where electric power for any other purpose is developed, and would prove, in the end, economical and more efficient than other forms of motive power in use. In small plants, the peat is wheeled by hand in barrows, or in small carts, drawn by a single horse, where the surface of the bog is not too soft. Both of these are expensive methods, even for a small plant, for the loads which can be drawn are light and progress is slow. In a few cases, it has been reported that the peat has been dredged from in and around bodies of water and placed on flat boats, which are poled or rowed to the factory, but much time would be consumed in this way in most cases, and a more satisfactory way, if scows were used, would be to tow them, when loaded, by a small steam or gasoline motor tug boat.

In one case it was reported that the peat, in slurry form, was piped a considerable distance to the factory. A recently recommended method[1] is that the peat, in liquid form, be removed from the bog to a large settling or receiving basin, through trenches cut in the bog and given sufficient artificial fall to insure the flowage of the peat. This plan is feasible, provided that the water is present in sufficient quantities to mix with the peat, but in many Michigan bogs it would have to be pumped into the ditches, and mixed with the peat, to make the latter substance fluid enough to flow.

---

[1] Bordollo, J., Peat Fuel Production. The Engineer, May 15, 1906, p. 335.

It is apparent from statements made in this and preceding sections of this report, that the study of this interesting natural resource has gone much farther in the countries of Northern Europe than it has in America, and especially has the investigation of the commercial possibilities of peat, and the development of compact, handy, and durable machines for the manufacture of the various products to be derived from it, gone far beyond the experimental stages. It is, therefore, not necessary for manufacturers or inventors to begin at the beginning to develop machines or processes of utilizing peat, since, in the great majority of cases, they would probably only repeat the errors of those who have gone over the same ground abroad. At the present time it would be a great saving of time and money to study the latest and most improved products of the most progressive foreign manufacturers, especially those of Germany, and the recently prepared reports of investigations into the possibilities of peat utilization, issued in the technical journals or in form of manuals and popular guides, and in the proceedings of the European peat culture societies, before deciding upon inventing new machinery, or new processes of preparing peat for fuel, or for other purposes, for in many cases, most in fact, it would be found that the projected plan had already been tried, and if a practicable one, had long ago been embodied in a machine, and perhaps abandoned for a better one. As was recently stated, there is no such thing as a really secret process for making peat fuel, since all the secrets of the substance were long ago discovered and made known, and the sooner investors and inventors realize this, the sooner there will be in the United States a well developed industry based upon the peat deposits which are so widespread and extensive within the nation's boundaries.

### *Peat Factories and Peat Prospects in Michigan, Established or Projected.*

There are several plants for the manufacture of peat fuel established in the Southern Peninsula, some of which have, within the year (1906), produced some peat, but none, so far as known, are yet running on full time, or are producing peat fuel in quantities. The plants of the American Peat and Fuel Company, near Capac, was, as noted elsewhere, leased after a trial of 30 days, and later sold, to a company which took over the property to manufacture paper and other products from the peat, which seemed especially adapted for this purpose, being rich in fibrous sedge and grass remains below the top layer.—The Pilgrim Paper Co. of N. Y. and Capac.

The Peat and Fuel Company was to make briquetted peat, using the Cooley dryer, and a specially constructed press. The briquettes made were of sufficient density, and of a light brown color, but were easily split and quite brittle, so that they did not stand handling well. This seemed, in part at least, due to the coarseness and lack of cohesiveness of the peat, but as it was compressed into briquettes without any preliminary treatment except drying, it is possible that this might have been remedied. The Capac bog is described in Part I of this report.

The National Peat Fuel Co., of Chelsea, has a good deposit of peat on the border of the town, and near the Michigan Central R. R. The building is a substantial but small brick structure, and small openings have been made in the surface of the bog and some peat has been taken out by hand, but no great amount of fuel has been made. The plant is equipped with a press for making briquettes developed by the owners. The plant was, at last accounts, closed down indefinitely.

The Bancroft Peat Fuel and Cement Co., Ltd., Bancroft. This plant was equipped for making briquettes after the system in use at Whitewater, Wisconsin, to manufacture seared briquettes. The peat was dug from the bog with a steam digger and it was reported that the surface material was used for litter. The plant was operated a part of the summer of 1905, but no report was obtained of the actual output of fuel. The bog on which it is located is reported as having an area of 700 acres and has been partly cleared, ditched and drained, the draining, as usual, causing some settling of the surface.

The Michigan Peat Co., Eaton Rapids, are reported as having a plant equipped for making briquettes, using a patented English system in which the peat is electrically treated before briquetting, to hasten the process of drying.

The following companies have established factories for making condensed, or cold compressed air-dry peat fuel:

The Michigan Peat and Marl Co., Grand Rapids, equipped with a Heinen press.

The Wolverine Peat Co., Vicksburg, equipped with a Dolberg press.

Carl G. Kleinstück, Kalamazoo, is reported by local newspapers to have manufactured some pressed peat fuel for local consumption, but no details of his equipment have been obtained.

A company called the Van Buren Peat Co., Gobleville, has been organized, and is planning development of bogs in that vicinity.

A plant is reported as in operation in Mecosta county near Big Rapids, but no information relative to its equipment has been obtained.

Beds of peat of considerable extent, which have at some time been the basis of prospective plants, or for the organization of companies for their utilization, are reported at or near the following places:

Kalamazoo, large extent.

Three Rivers, large bogs, 2 miles distant.

Minden Tp., Sanilac county, near Croswell, 6,000 acres.

Quanicassee.

Summerfield township, Clare county, 100 acres in one body. 6 to 12 feet deep. (Harrison the nearest town.)

Hanover, 40 acres.

Decatur, 100 acres, 6 to 8 feet deep.

Bass River, 100 acres, 6 feet deep.

Morenci, 200 acres or more.

The latter bogs are all too small for large establishments but would supply fuel for local consumption, for many years, provided the peat is of average density and fuel value, since each acre would furnish from 150 to 200 tons of dry fuel for each foot in depth, after the surface material has been passed through.

## *Conclusion.*

It is probable, as has been intimated elsewhere, that the best way in which quick and sure returns may be realized from peat bogs, is by developing them with the idea of supplying small local markets, rather than attempting to compete with the better known and more widely used fuels on a large scale. Where the former course is taken, a relatively small bog, a small investment, and a local market, with a limited requirement in quantity, should make a combination which should be satisfactory to the owner and investor, who could then afford to give his customers a fair price, which should run considerably below that paid for ordinary fuels and still give good profit. When the numerous bogs of Michigan are thus utilized, as many of them will be, before many years, the peat fuel industry will be placed upon a proper footing.

## *Acknowledgments.*

In the preparation of this paper, the writer has made free use of the relevant matter contained in numerous short articles and papers by other writers, to which no special reference has been made, since many of them were anonymous. The daily and weekly papers, magazines, both popular and scientific, technical periodicals, and scientific reports and manuals have all furnished much valuable material and in this place the writer's obligations to these sources are acknowledged. The catalogs of European manufacturers of machinery and their agents have given a great deal of important matter. The late T. H. Leavitt, of Boston, a pioneer in the development of peat fuel machinery in this country, and J. Bordollo of Kingsbridge, N. Y., have kindly loaned cuts which have been used in illustrating this paper.

Especial thanks are due to Professor J. R. Allen, of the University of Michigan, for analyses furnished as well as for much information based on a wide experience with the practical side of peat utilization, and to Mr. Alfred C. Lane, State Geologist, for many suggestions as to the treatment of the subject, for innumerable references to literature and citations of authors, as well as for information relating to the progress of the development of factories for the utilization of peat in the state and for much other matter of interest.

Thanks are also due to the owners of peat bogs over which the writer has made his way and for the interest and co-operation of these, whenever they have been asked for information.

# INDEX.

# INDEX.

(See also list of Latin and common specific names on pages 281 to 286.)

A.

Abies balsamea, see Balsam. Page
Acer rubrum 147, 150, 156, 283
  saccharum, see Hard Maple.
  spicatum, see Mountain Maple.
Acetate of Lime 301, 308
Acidity, peat 320
Acids, organic, muck land 291
Acknowledgments 361
Acorus Calamus, see Sweet Flag.
Acre of peat, tons of fuel 277, 318
Adams, C. C. cited 173, 270
Adder's Tongue Fern 141
Admont, Austria, peat tested for paper 308
Aerating system, Tamarack 130
Aerenchyma 204
Agricultural crops, peat litter 298
  possibilities, peat bogs 279, 289
Agrostis alba, see Red Top.
  hyemalis, see Hair Grass.
Air, peat formation 171
Akron, township marsh land 109
Alder swamps, peat deposits of 121, 123
Alders 168, 195, 210, 211, 215–217, 220, 236, 242, 243
Algæ 129, 209, 210, 231, 322, 323
  microscopic 263
Algal deposit 203–210, 247, 263, 270
Algal Lake 203, 204
Alisma plantago-aquatica, water plant 129
Allen, J. R., analyses 327, 329
  acknowledgments 361
  W. H., peat analyses 331
Alma, Ilicoides mucronata at 163
  moraine dam 117
  Pine river, dam 118
  Vaccinium corymbosum at 163
  Pennsylvanicum at 162
Alnus incana, see Alder and Common Alder.
Alpine Cotton-grass 201, 203, 264, 282
Amasa, bogs near 231
Amelanchier 263
  Canadensis, see June Berry.
America, peat, early used in 313
American Aspen 281
American Mountain Ash 266, 286
American Wood Strawberry 266, 286
Ames slane, Plate XXIX and 101
Ammonia in peat 293

Page

Ammonium sulphate, nitrates formed with peat........ 310
    peat coke by-product........ 301, 303
Analyses, Michigan Celery soil........ 294
    Michigan peat........ 327 to 332, 338
    peat coke........ 305
Andromeda........ 148, 149, 194, 199 to 269, 281
    growth of, Fig. 13........ 101, 235
    Polifolia........ 146, 148, 164, 281
Anemone Canadensis, see Canada Anemone.
Ann Arbor, Andromeda Polifolia at........ 164
    Betula pumila at........ 164
    Cassandra at........ 163
    Dasiphora fruticosa at........ 162
    Gaylussacia resinosa at........ 162
    glacial drainage valley at........ 119
    Ilex verticillata at........ 163
    Ilicoides mucronata at........ 163
    morainal dam at........ 117
    Spiræa tomentosa at........ 164
    Tamarack at........ 164
    till plain near........ 119
    Vaccinium Canadense at........ 162
        Pennsylvanicum at........ 162
Ann Arbor R. R., bogs........ 109, 154
Anthracite and coked peat........ 335
Antoine, Lake, pine "island," Plate XXIII........ 101
Aquatic plant societies........ 265
    plants........ 220, 224, 226, 274
Aralia hispida........ 162, 284
    See Bristly Sarsaparilla.
    nudicaulis........ 150
Arbor Vitæ........ 109, 118, 122, 135, 189–193, 196, 202, 203, 206, 266, 281
Arcada township, beaver dam........ 168
Arctostaphyllos Uva-Ursi, see Bearberry.
Area, peat deposits........ 318
Arethusa........ 203
Arizona, sunshine........ 113
Aronia arbutifolia........ 163, 282
    See Choke-berry.
    nigra........ 147–149, 157, 165–282
Arrow head........ 129, 241, 248
Arrow-arum........ 139, 141
Arrow-grass........ 210, 281
Arundo Phragmites, peat formation........ 126
Asclepias incarnata........ 144, 283
    See Swamp Milkweed.
    Syriaca........ 144
Ash, peat........ 319, 320, 326, 329, 330-335, 341
Ash to commercial value, relation of........ 325
Aspen........ 156, 189, 197, 211, 214, 266, 281
Asphaltum, peat coke........ 303
Aster........ 219
Aster junceus........ 140
    puniceus........ 144
Athabasca, beaver dams........ 168
Atkinson, G. F., peat formation........ 128, 173
    sphagnum atolls........ 151
Austria, peat paper made in........ 308

B.

Bacteria, agents of decomposition........ 106
Badwater Lake, lake near, Plate XXIV, XXV........ 224
Balsam........ 189–193, 195, 196, 221, 241, 249, 261, 262, 264, 266
Balsam Fir........ 284
Balsam Poplar........ 193, 224, 284

Page
Balsam, spruce bog at.......101, 232
Bancroft Peat Fuel and Cement Company.......360
Bancroft, seared briquettes made at.......340
Barren Strawberry.......227, 284
Bass Lake, tarn.......116, 132, 151, 159, 163
Bass River, peat bogs.......360
Basswood.......188, 190, 191, 196, 204, 261, 281
Batrachium, water plant.......128
Bay county, prairie.......124
Beach, A., reference.......173
Beaked Hazelnut.......236, 282
Beal, W. J., reference.......173
Bear Lake, buried peat near.......243
Bearberry.......236, 245, 251, 281
Beaver dam, Negaunee, Plate XIV and XV.......101
Beaver dams.......119, 167–169, 263
Bebb's Willow.......144, 211, 285
Bedding, peat litter.......295, 298
Bedstraw.......140
Beech.......188, 190, 191, 196, 203, 281
Benerberg, peat coke made at.......302
Bentley's camp, Black Spruce-Heath, Plate XXVIII A and B.......101, 185
Bessemer, mature peat bog north of, Fig. 14.......101, 185, 238
Betula lenta, see Black Birch.
  lutea.......150, 156, 281
    See Yellow Birch.
  papyrifera, see White Birch.
  pumila.......142, 157, 162, 281
    See Dwarf Birch.
Bibliography, peat.......173, 179
Bidens Beckii.......128
  cernua, see Smaller Bur-Marigold.
Big Rapids, peat plant.......360
Bill-board paper.......308
Birch.......166, 204, 241, 266
Black Alder.......142
Black Ash.......156, 189, 192, 193, 196, 281
Black Bindweed.......267, 285
Black Birch.......190, 191, 261, 281
Black sand, Marquette.......254
Black Spruce.......142, 146, 148, 165, 189, 266, 284
Black spruce at Balsam, Plate XXVI.......101
Black Spruce-Heath Association, Bentley's camp, Plate XXVIII B.......101
Black Spruce-Tamarack association.......242
Black Willow.......156
Bladder Sedge.......265, 286
Bladderworts.......128, 129, 137
Blankets made from peat.......308
Blocks, peat paper.......308
Blue Flag.......144, 229, 233, 238, 241, 242, 247, 252, 255, 256, 264
Blue Grass.......285
Blue Joint Grass......144, 168, 197, 206, 211, 216–218, 220, 229, 231, 233, 238, 242, 246, 263, 264
Blue Vervain.......144, 219, 285
Blueberry.......148, 165, 194, 232, 248, 266, 274
Blueberries.......123
Bœhmeria.......143
    cylindrica.......140, 142, 144
Bog Club-moss.......255, 282
Bog, defined.......109, 110
Bog iron.......254, 324
Bog, Lake Antoine.......220, 221
Bog, mature.......212, 228, 231, 238, 258
  mature border near Nathan, Plate XXII.......101
  near Iron river.......237
  near Runkle Lake.......231

Page

- Bog plants, Faunus Station ... 215
  - Manistique ... 259
- Bog near Clara Lake ... 233
- Bog, spring, near Camp Lake ... 230
- Bog, spruce at Balsam ... 232
- Bog, T. 50 N., R. 30 W., flora ... 263
- Bog, Valley, near Granite Bluff ... 223
- Bog, Wintergreen ... 202, 210, 212, 213, 285
- "Bog xerophytes" ... 164
- Boggy lake, T. 40 N., R. 30 W ... 226
- Boghead cannel coal ... 306
- Bogs between Newberry and Grand Marais ... 246
- Bogs, cleared ... 214
- Bogs, conifer type ... 257
- Bogs, Crystal Falls ... 228
- Bogs, ecological study ... 183
- Bogs, Hermansville ... 212
- Bogs, Keweenaw Peninsula ... 240
- Bogs, mature, near Mary Lake ... 236
- Bogs near Amasa ... 231
- Bogs near Badwater lake ... 224
- Bogs near Faunus ... 214
- Bogs near Marquette ... 245
- Bogs near Twin Falls ... 226
- Bogs near Vulcan ... 217
- Bogs, peat, Huron Mountains ... 260
- Bogs south of Crystal Falls ... 233
- Bogs, Trout Lake ... 249, 250
- Bogs, types of ... 262
- Boilers, peat fuel for ... 333
- Bordollo, J., acknowledgments ... 173, 352, 357, 361
- Bottle Sedge ... 211, 229, 233, 236, 271, 272, 284
- Bottom, peat relation to ... 323
- Boyce Lake, heath swamp, peat deposits ... 124
  - Ledum Grœnlandicum ... 164
  - Sphagnum ... 163
  - succession of plants near ... 159
- Bracken Fern ... 189
- Bradford, G. M., peat bog studies ... 183
- Brake, see Common Brake.
- Brasenia purpurea, see Water Shield.
- Briquetting peat ... 312, 352, 354
- Bristle-stalked Sedge ... 195, 206, 207, 210, 212, 284
- Bristly Crowfoot ... 282
- Bristly Sarsaparilla ... 214, 266, 284
- Bristly Sedge ... 196, 230, 238, 284
- British Thermal Units of heat, etc. (See Analyses) ... 334
- Broad-Leaved Arrow-Head ... 141, 216, 238, 243, 281
- Broad-leaved type of forest ... 189, 191, 266, 274
- Brosowsky machine, cut peat ... 101, 344
- Brown, F. B. H., cited ... 173
- Brown, R., peat formation ... 125, 173
- Buck-bean ... 141, 143, 199, 201, 203, 206, 207, 212, 216-218, 222, 225, 226, 228, 230, 234, 235, 238, 242, 251, 281
- Buckthorn ... 195, 202, 212, 216, 231, 281
- Bugle-weed ... 140, 264, 265, 285
- Building ("Heloxyle") peat paper ... 308, 309
- Bulb-bearing water Hemlock ... 216, 218, 219, 225, 243, 251, 285
- Bulldog Lake, algal peat ... 263
- Bulrush ... 201
  - zone ... 269
- Bunch Grasses ... 255
- Bunch-berry ... 195, 206, 213, 223, 227, 230, 237, 250, 251, 282
- Bur Oak ... 156
- Bur reed ... 129, 229, 247, 248, 282

Page
Buried peat, Lake Superior shore 243
  near Marquette 252–254
Burning of bogs 219
Burns, G. P., peat in Dead Lake 122
  reference 173
Bush Honeysuckle 197, 283
By-products, peat 299–305

C.

Cadillac, tamarack peat 122
Calamagrostis Canadensis 144, 145, 168, 282
  See Blue-Joint Grass.
Calcareous bottom, Europe, peat formation on 125
Calcareous soil, water 161
Calcium carbide 303
Caledonia Springs, peat deodorizer 297
California, peat bogs 110
Callitriche bifida, see Northern Water-Starwort.
  palustris 284
Calopogon 203, 206, 210, 282
Caloric cookers, peat as packing for 309
Calories in peat 326, 334
Camp Lake 229
  spring bog near 230
Campanula aparinoides, see Marsh Bell-flower.
Canada Anemone 219, 281
Canada, beaver dams 168
  Blueberry 148, 200, 206, 214, 223, 227, 232–234, 237, 239, 241, 245, 248, 250, 262, 264, 266, 281
  Golden-rod 144
  peat bogs 111
  peat deodorizer 297
  peat fuel 313
  St. John's-wort 219, 264, 265, 284
Cannel coal, origin of 209, 210
Capac Peat Company, peat tests 338
Capac, peat deposit, beaver dam 119, 169
  peat paper 307, 309
  tree remains 170
Capnoides sempervirens, see Pale Corydalis.
Cardboard 307, 308
Carduus muticus, see Water Thistle.
Carex aquatilis 139, 284
  See Water Sedge.
  canescens 150
  chordorhiza, see Creeping Sedge.
  comosa, see Bristly Sedge.
  filiformis 136, 137, 139–141, 145, 146, 148, 284
  See Slender Sedge.
  flava, see Yellow Sedge.
  folliculata, see Bladder Sedge.
  hystricina, see Porcupine Sedge.
  leptalea 142, 284
  See Bristle-stalked Sedge.
  limosa 141, 145, 146
  Magellanica, see Magellan's Sedge.
  oligosperma 149, 284
  pauciflora 147, 149
  Pennsylvanica, see Pennsylvania Sedge.
  riparia 150, 284
  See River-bank Sedge.
  Sartwellii 139, 141, 284
  sp., water plant 130, 133, 134, 136, 137, 139, 143, 147, 150, 166, 194
  sterilis, see Little Prickly Sedge.
  sterilis cephalantha 142, 143

Page

Carex stricta ... 135, 143, 144, 284
    See Tussock Sedge.
  tenella ... 142, 284
    See Soft-leaved Sedge.
  teretiuscula ... 141, 284
  trisperma ... 142, 150, 284
    See Three-leaved Sedge.
  utriculata ... 139, 284
    See Bottle Sedge.
  vulpinoidea, see Fox Sedge.
Carpenter, R. C., reference ... 292
Carpets, made from peat ... 308
Carrying peat, bog to factory ... 358
Carter, W. E. H., Canada peat bogs ... 111
      reference ... 173
Cass river, moraine dam ... 117
Cassandra ... 145, 146, 148, 149, 163–166, 194–197, 199–202, 205–208, 214, 216–218, 220, 221, 223–239, 241–243, 245–252, 256–258, 262–266, 269, 282
Cassandra, lake growth, Fig. 13 ... 101
Cassandra zone ... 146, 147, 150, 212
Cassandra-Sphagnum zone ... 148, 149
Castalia odorata, see Sweet-scented Water Lily.
Castalia reniformis ... 139
  sp., see White Pond Lily.
  tuberosa, seed plant succession ... 133
Cat-tail ... 129, 139, 141, 145, 194, 196, 205–207, 210–212, 216–218, 220, 227, 228, 234, 241, 243, 246, 247, 250, 271
Cedar ... 166, 169, 189, 192–194, 214, 215, 228, 230, 234, 246, 273, 282
    See Arbor Vitae.
Cedar Lake, marl beds, peat ... 131, 132
    tarn ... 116
Cedar swamps ... 121, 126, 132, 163
Cedar-Spruce zone ... 196
Cedar-Spruce-Tamarack association ... 191, 192, 206–209, 215
Cement burning rotaries, peat coke ... 341
Cerastium vulgatum, see Mouse-ear Chickweed.
Ceratophyllum ... 129
Chamædaphne calyculata ... 145, 147, 282
    See Cassandra.
Chamænerion angustifolium, see Great Willow Herb and Fire-weed.
Chamberlin, T. C., reference ... 174
Chara ... 126, 129, 131, 197, 321–323
Chara zone ... 269
Charcoal iron, peat coke ... 240, 278, 341
Charcoal, Sphagnum peat ... 157
Charlevoix, Pine Lake ... 117
Cheadley, beaver dams ... 168
Chelsea, bog swamp, Polytrichum ... 125
Chelsea, National Peat Fuel Company ... 331, 359
  peat deposit ... 162
Chelsea, slope bogs near ... 120
Chemical composition, peat ... 319, 320
      vegetable matter ... 105
Chenopodium album, see Pigweed.
Chiogenes hispidula, see Creeping Snowberry.
Choke Cherry ... 266, 285
Chokeberry ... 147, 149, 157, 195, 234, 236, 247, 248, 250, 255, 257, 258, 266, 274, 282
Cicuta bulbifera, see Bulb-bearing Water Hemlock.
  maculata, see Spotted Cowbane.
Cinnamon Fern ... 143, 206, 207, 241, 242, 248, 282
Cladonia ... 124, 283
    See Reindeer Lichen.
Clara Lake, flora and sedge bog near ... 233
Clare county, peat bogs ... 360
Clark, A. N., peat analyses ... 330
  H. L., reference ... 174

Page
Classification Michigan peat deposits....114, 120, 121
Clay below peat.... 323
Clay till ridges.... 188
Clearing bogs.... 219
Climatic conditions of, effects of on plants....130, 261
Climax stage, bog....257, 258
Climbing bog....120, 264
Clintonia ....206, 207, 227, 230, 237, 250, 267, 282
  borealis, see Clintonia.
Closed Gentian.... 264
Coats made from peat.... 308
Coke, peat....299–305, 341
Coking peat....335, 357
Coldness of muck.... 290
Cole, Leon J., St. Clair delta.... 120
  reference.... 174
Comarum palustre....141, 143, 146
Commercial value of peat....95, 317, 325
Common Alder....194, 212, 213, 218, 219, 222, 224, 227, 228, 231, 234, 238, 245, 248, 251, 252, 255, 256, 263, 266, 281
  Bladderwort.... 197
  Blueberries.... 227
  Brake....150, 197, 214, 227, 234, 237, 245, 250, 257, 258, 267, 281
  Floating Pondweed....220, 226, 283
  Horsetail....210, 230, 283
  Milkweed.... 144
  Polypody....266, 286
  Smartweed....219, 284
  Sundew.... 212
Comparative value peat.... 329
Composition, Michigan peat.... 327
Composting, peat....293–295
Comptonia perigrina, see Sweet-fern.
Condensation of moisture, peat formation.... 268
Condensed peat, machines for making.... 346
Congleton, peat deodorizer.... 297
Conifer bog near Mansfield, Plate XIX.... 101
Conifer type of bogs.... 257
  zone....210, 212, 222, 227, 230, 231, 242
Conifer-Heath plant societies....194, 265, 266
Conifer-Shrub association....243, 245
Coniferous Swamp Forest....191, 192
Consolidation of peat deposit.... 138
Contamination producing high ash content.... 320
Cooley dryer.... 354
Coptis trifolia....142, 143, 150, 282
  See Goldthread.
Cornus Amonum, see Silky Cornel.
  Canadensis, see Bunch-berry.
  candidissima.... 142
  stolonifera....142, 144, 283
    See Red Osier.
Corpse plant, see Indian Pipe.
Corrosion of grates.... 335
Corylus Americana.... 157
  rostrata, see Beaked Hazel-nut.
Cost of preparation, peat fuel....342, 352
  peat coke.... 303
Cotton-grass....230, 250
Coulter, J. M., reference.... 174
  S. M., flora succession.... 159
  S. M., reference.... 174
Courtney, J. N., analyses.... 331
Cow Wheat....237, 282
Cowles, H. C., cited....109, 128, 160, 174

Plummer
(of Agric. Com.)

Cranberries.......................................146, 149, 196,
See also Large Cranberry and Small Cranberry.
Creeping Sedge.......................................199, 216, 225,
Snowberry..200, 202, 206, 210, 212, 222, 223, 230, 232, 234, 239, 241, 245,
Spikerush.......................................133, 218, 224, 234, 238,
Crevice plant societies.......................................
Croswell, peat bogs.......................................
Crowfoot family, water plant.......................................
Crozier, A. A., reference.......................................
Cruciferæ.......................................
Crystal Falls, bogs and lakes near.......................................
lakes and bogs south of.......................................
Crystalline rock outcrops, peat examination in region of.......................................
Cut peat, machinery for making.......................................
Cut-leaved Water Hoarhound.......................................
Cycle of plant growth.......................................
Cypripedium acaule.......................................
See Stemless Ladies' Slipper.
Cypripedium reginæ, see Showy Ladies' Slipper.

D.

Dal, Adolf, peat and electricity.......................................306, 327
Dams, deposits formed behind.......................................167
Dana, J. D., peat bogs.......................................110, 174
S. L., reference.......................................174
Daniels, F. P., reference.......................................174
Danthonia spicata, see Wild Oat-grass.
Dark-green Bulrush.......................................211, 282
Darwin, Chas., peat.......................................110, 174
Dasiphora fruticosa.......................................144, 162, 282
Davis, C. A., peat in Michigan.......................................93, et seq
reference.......................................174
Dead Lake.......................................122, 145, 159
Decatur, peat bogs near.......................................360
Decodon verticillatus.......................................130, 132, 139, 146, 151, 152, 283
See Swamp Loose strife.
Decomposition, agents of in vegetable matter.......................................106, 183
Deep bogs, peat with water or marl below.......................................319
Deer Park Life Saving Station, Lakes near.......................................248
Delta St. Clair river.......................................120
Denmark, peat fuel in.......................................105
Deodorizer and disinfectant, peat as.......................................297
Deposits formed behind dams.......................................167
Depressions filled from sides and top by peat.......................................135
formation of peat in.......................................130
Depth, peat deposits.......................................183, 318
Desor, E., beaver dams.......................................167
driftwood dams in Manistique river.......................................118
on peat formation.......................................126
reference.......................................174
Destructive distillation of peat.......................................299
Detroit and St. Clair rivers, marsh near.......................................109
beaver dams near.......................................167
river, sedge marsh.......................................124
Dexter, sedge marsh, peat deposit near.......................................124
Diatoms in peat deposits.......................................323
Dickinson county, plant societies of.......................................184
Dickson press, peat briquettes.......................................355
Diervilla Diervilla, see Bush Honeysuckle.
Digging machines, peat.......................................346
Disinfectant, peat, farm use.......................................296, 297
Dispersal of seeds.......................................165
Dissolved mineral matter.......................................322
Distillation, destructive of peat.......................................299
Distribution, peat bogs and plants.......................................181, 188

Page
Dobson press, for making peat briquettes .... 355
Dog Violet .... 266, 286
Dogwood .... 142
Dolberg, R., peat machines .... 346, 348
Drainage, possibilities of in peat bogs .... 320
Drosera rotundifolia, see Round-leaved Sundew.
Drumlins, peat examination in region of .... 188, 193, 214
Drying peat, machinery .... 352, 353
Dryopteris Thelypteris .... 140–142, 143, 144, 147, 157, 158, 282
 See Marsh Shield Fern.
Dulichium .... 146, 218, 225, 234, 238, 242, 243, 245, 249, 252, 255, 256, 257, 265, 271, 282
Dune regions .... 116
Dwarf Alder .... 195
 Birch .... 142, 157, 159, 194–216, 220, 236, 257, 281
 Blueberry .... 148, 223
 Raspberry .... 142, 195, 206, 210, 212, 284
 St. John's-wort .... 265
 Sand Cherry .... 248, 282
Dye, peat .... 310

E.

East Friesland, moors of .... 115
Eaton Rapids, Michigan Peat Company .... 360
Eckerman, Great Swamp west of .... 246
Ecological factors .... 160
 study, bogs and marshes .... 183
Ecology of peat formation .... 105
Economic considerations, peat .... 277
Edaphic factors .... 170
Eight Mile Creek, peat bog on .... 238
Eiseln, J. C., references .... 115, 175
Electrical action, drying peat .... 337
Electricity, peat, source of .... 280, 310, 327
Eleocharis .... 130
 acicularis, see Spike-rush.
 palustris .... 133, 284
 See Creeping Spike-rush.
Elevation, Huron Mountains .... 260
Ells, R. W., reference .... 175
Elm .... 142, 147, 190, 191, 204
Elm and Black Ash swamps .... 121
"Embarras" .... 118
Endogens, water plants .... 129
England, peat bogs of .... 111
 peat paper made in .... 308
English cannel coal, gas yield of .... 306
 Fen country, peat formation in .... 125
Epigæa repens, see Trailing Arbutus.
Epilobium coloratum, see Purple-leaved Willow-herb.
Equisetum .... 143, 323
 arvense, see Common Horsetail.
 fluviatile .... 142, 285
 See Swamp Horsetail.
Erigeron Philadelphicum, see Philadelphia Fleabane.
Eriocaulon septangulare, see Pipe-wort.
Eriophorum .... 143, 194
 alpinum, see Alpine Cotton-grass.
 gracile .... 146, 282
 polystachyon .... 142, 146
 See Tall Cotton-grass.
 vaginatum .... 149
 Virginicum .... 149, 282
 See Virginia Cotton-grass.
Eskers, peat examination in region of .... 188
Estimated cost of peat plant .... 352

Page
Eupatorium perfoliatum........ 140
purpureum........ 140, 144, 284
See Joe Pye-Weed.
Europe, peat bogs........ 111
Exposed rock plant societies........ 265
Extent, peat beds in Michigan........ 183, 326

F.

Fabrics woven from peat........ 308
Factories, peat, Michigan........ 359
Fagus Americana, see Beech.
Fall, Delos, peat analyses by........ 331
False Lily-of-the-Valley........ 143
Nettle, Plate XVI........ 140, 206
Farmer, map of swamp distribution, Plate XVI........ 101
Faunus Station, bog plants near........ 215, 221
Feather-board paper........ 308
Fen Orchis........ 143
Fenton Township, Long Lake........ 137
Fern association, sedge mat........ 158
Fern "islands"........ 159
Ferrous sulphate in peat........ 291
Fertilizer, peat........ 293
Fetid Currant........ 266, 285
Few-flowered Sedge........ 222, 228, 232, 235, 239, 241, 242
Few-seeded Sedge........ 214, 228, 236, 237, 239, 241, 249, 257, 264, 271, 272, 284
Filled Lake near Nathan........ 201
Filling, southern and northern lakes compared........ 269
types of........ 270
Fir Balsam........ 281
Fire, not to be used to excess on muck land........ 292
Fire-proof peat paper........ 308
Fire-weed........ 267, 285
First Sister Lake, tamarack swamp at........ 122
Fisher, moors........ 115
Flat areas, peat formation on........ 134
Flat-leaved Bladderwort........ 201, 236, 281
Floating Bur-reed........ 265
Manna-grass........ 129, 256, 265, 282
Pondweed........ 197, 199
Flooding by streams, peat beds........ 321
Flora, zonal affinities of........ 184
Florists, peat litter as packing material........ 309
Flowering fern........ 140, 143
Fog, effect on peat growth........ 264, 268
Fontinalis........ 199, 215
Ford river, bog plants near........ 215
Forest, types of in Northern Peninsula........ 191
Forests, north and south hillsides, in Huron Mountains........ 261, 262
Formations of peat near Manistique........ 254
Formation of peat bogs........ 181, 251
Foster City, bogs near........ 214, 215
Four Mile Lake, Chara, marl the chief deposit........ 131
Sedge marsh at........ 124
Fox sedge........ 284
Fragaria Americana, see American Wood Strawberry.
Frain's Lakes........ 151, 152
France, peat fuel used in........ 311
peat land in........ 110, 111
Frankfort, plant distribution........ 183, 186
Fraxinus Americana........ 147
nigra........ 156, 281
See Black Ash.
Freyburg, peat coke made at........ 300

Page
Fringed Loosestrife, see Steironema ciliatum.
  Polygala....230, 283
Fruh, J., moors....115
  reference....175
Fruits, peat suggested as packing for....309
Fuel in one acre of peat....277, 318
Fuel, peat as....311
Fuel value of peat....332
Fungi, agents of decomposition....106

G.

Gale, see Sweet Gale.
Galium sp....140, 143
Galium trifidum....142, 282, 285
  See Small Goose-grass and Small Bedstraw.
Gas, peat....280, 305–307
Gaultheria procumbens, see Wintergreen.
Gaylussacia resinosa....142, 147, 148, 162, 283
  See Huckleberry.
Geikie, A., formation of peat....125, 175
Genetic development, peat....187
Germany, peat pasteboard manufactured in....308
  peat briquettes manufactured in....339
  peat coke manufactured in....300, 341
  peat deodorizer used in....297
  peat deposits of....110
  peat drainage practice in....320
  peat fuel used in....105, 311
Geum strictum....144
Glacial drainage valleys....119
Glyceria nervata....143
Gobleville, Van Buren Peat Company....360
Goldthread....142, 206, 207, 210, 213, 223, 230, 250, 282
Goose-grass....230
Grand Haven celery soil, analysis of....294
Grand Marais....246, 248
Grand Rapids, Michigan, Peat and Marl Company....360
Grand Traverse Bay, barrier lakes....117
Grand Trunk R. R., bogs along....101, 124, 154–156, 158, 332
Granite Bluff, valley bog near....223
Grass marshes and bogs, peat deposits....121, 124
Grasses....255, 282
Grates for peat fuel....333
Gratiot county, plants in....122, 162, 163, 164
Great Britain, peat fuel in....311
Great Dismal Swamp, peat formation in....126, 127
Great Water-dock....143, 216, 234, 282
  Willow-herb....214, 285
Greater Bladderwort....211, 220, 241, 251, 281
Ground Juniper....142
Gyrostachys cernua, see Ladies' Tresses.

H.

Hair-cap Moss....214, 223, 230, 232, 237, 238, 248, 250, 255, 256, 258, 275, 283
Hair grass....267, 285
Hairy Wood-rush....206
Half Moon Lake, Alder swamp, peat deposit at....123
  peat formation in....136, 159
  plant associations around....122
  sedge mats at....152
Half-way House, Stuart's Lake near....247
Hand machines, for manufacturing peat litter....358
Hanover, peat bogs in....360
Hard Maple....188, 190, 191, 196, 261, 283
Hardwood forest type....189, 191, 192, 261

Page

Harrington, M. W., reference.................... 175
Hartwright's Persicaria.................... 210, 211, 216, 283
Haslett Park, bog near.................... 156
    Grand Trunk R. R., Fig 5.................... 101
    sink hole, analyses of peat from.................... 332
Hats made from peat.................... 308
Hausding's Handbuch der Torfgedwinnung.................... 334
"Hay marshes".................... 124
Hayward Lake, manner of filling.................... 195, 197, 198
Hazelnut.................... 157
Heat, in relation to growing crops on muck soils.................... 290
    as a factor in peat formation.................... 171
Heath bog, Mary Lake.................... 236
    plants.................... 162, 194, 226, 252, 257, 266, 274
    swamps, peat deposits in.................... 121, 123, 162–165
    zones.................... 162, 247
Heath-Sphagnum zone.................... 222
Heating power of peat fuel.................... 334
"Heaving" of crop plants in muck soils.................... 291
Hedge Nettle.................... 219, 283
Heinen, A., machinery for making peat.................... 349, 357
Heinrich, water content of peat.................... 161
Helenium antumnale, see Sneeze-weed.
"Heloxyle," paper for building.................... 308–310
Hemlock.................... 188–192, 204, 241, 249, 261, 262, 283
Hemlock-White Spruce-Balsam type of forest.................... 192
Herb-Sphagnum association.................... 264
Herbaceous vegetation.................... 194, 212, 214, 216, 228, 230, 239, 241, 249, 257, 264, 267
Herbs, in relation to peat development.................... 142, 144, 147, 158, 232
Hermansville, bogs near.................... 101, 212, 214
Heteranthera dubia, water plant.................... 129
Hill, E. J., reference.................... 175
    J. J., cost estimate of peat coking plant.................... 304
Hills, north and south side, forests on.................... 261, 262
Hippurus, water plant.................... 128
History of peat as fuel.................... 311
Hoary Willow.................... 195, 202, 210, 212, 285
    See Salix candida.
Hobart Station, bog near.................... 159, 164
Hobart, White Cedar growing on peat deposit.................... 122
Holland, moors in.................... 115
    peat fuel in.................... 105, 311, 339
    peat land largely utilized in.................... 110
Holmes, J. A., reference.................... 175
Holstein, moors in.................... 115
Hop Hornbeam.................... 261
Horned Bladderwort.................... 242, 243, 281
Hornwort family, water species.................... 128
Horsepower peat machines.................... 348
Horsetail.................... 224, 323
Horton, R. E., reference.................... 175
Hospitals, use of peat in.................... 298
Houghton, peat bogs near.................... 240
    Sphagnum growth near.................... 275
    county, swamp areas.................... 277
Hubbard, B., beaver dams.................... 167, 175
Huckleberry.................... 142, 245, 251, 255, 257, 283
Hudson's Bay, peat muskeg.................... 111
Humus acid, muck land.................... 291
Hunt, R. W., marl or peat sampler.................... 317
Huron county, plants in.................... 162
    glacial drainage valleys in.................... 119
    "prairie".................... 124
Huron Mountains, list of plants from.................... 285, 286
    peat bogs in.................... 260

Page
Huron river, cut off channels in valley of.... 118
  morainal dam across.... 117
Huron river, slope bogs in valley of.... 120
Hydrophytic vegetation.... 151
Hypericum Canadense, see Canadian St. John's-wort.
Hypnum, fluitans, relation to peat formation.... 124, 125, 126, 134, 158, 159, 203, 210, 215, 216, 218, 229, 231, 251, 267

I.

Ilex verticillata.... 142, 147, 149, 163, 165, 285
  See Winterberry.
Ilicoides mucronata.... 147–149, 163, 165, 283
  See Mountain Holly.
Illinois, sunshine in.... 113
Imlay City, glacial drainage valley.... 119
Impatiens biflora.... 140, 143, 285
Impurities, peaty soils.... 291
Independence Lake, peat deposits at.... 136
Indian Pipe.... 147, 239, 267, 283
Indian Rice, water plant.... 129
Indiana, sunshine in.... 113
Ingalls Station, Hayward Lake near.... 195
Ingham county, lakes, sedge mats on.... 152
Intermediate Lake, barrier formed lake.... 117
Intermittent lakes.... 116
Ireland, mountain bogs, formation of.... 125
  peat deposits of.... 110, 111
  peat fuel used extensively in.... 311
  peat paper made in.... 308
Iris versicolor.... 144
  See Larger Blue Flag.
Iron, bog.... 254, 321, 324
Iron county, plant studies in.... 184
Iron industry, possible use of peat coke in.... 278
Iron Mountain, Badwater Lake near.... 224
  Lake Antoine near.... 219
  River, bog near.... 237
  sand, above peat bed at Marquette.... 254
Ironwood.... 188, 283
Isabella county, lakes in.... 117, 122, 123, 152
  Littlefield lake in.... 117
Island lake.... 248
  lake near.... 249
"Islands" of trees in bogs.... 201, 249
Isle Royale, Sedge zones around lakes on.... 270
Isoetes sp., see Quillwort.

J.

Jack pine.... 189, 190, 192, 193, 221, 222, 233, 236, 245, 248, 250, 251, 257, 261, 283
Jackson bog, tests of peat from.... 338
  county, peat analyses.... 328
James Bay, peat muskeg.... 111
  township, marsh land.... 109
Jebsen process, peat coke.... 304
Jefferson, M. S. W., reference.... 175
Joe-Pye Weed.... 140, 144, 211, 219, 228, 284
Johnson, S. W., reference.... 175
Jukes-Brown, A. J., formation of peat.... 125, 175
Juncoides, see Wood-rush.
Juncus effusus, see Soft Rush.
  sp., see Rush.
  tenuis, see Slender Rush.
June Grass.... 267
June-berry.... 263, 266, 285

Page
Juniperus communis ... 142
  nana, see Low Juniper.
  Virginiana ... 151

K.

Kalamazoo Celery Soil, analyses of ... 294
  glacial drainage valley near ... 119
  peat fuel made at ... 360
Kalmia glauca ... 148, 163, 283
  See Pale Laurel.
Kearney, T. H., reference ... 175
Kedzie, R. C., on use of muck for composting ... 294
  reference ... 175, 292
Kettle-hole bogs near Vulcan ... 217
Kettle-hole lake south of Norway ... 219
Keweenaw Peninsula, lakes and bogs of ... 240
Kidney-leaved Violet ... 202, 285
King Fern ... 248, 282
Kirschbraun, L., peat tests ... 338
Kleinstuck, C. G., peat fuel made by ... 360
Koller, T., moors ... 115
  peat formation ... 126
  reference ... 175
Koss, White Pine Forest near ... 189
  White Pine Forest near, Plate XVIII ... 101
Kummel, H. B., reference ... 175

L.

Laberge, Dr., moss litter used for deodorizer by ... 298
Labrador Tea ... 164, 194, 195, 199, 202, 203, 210, 212, 214, 222, 223, 227, 228, 230–237, 239, 241, 245, 247, 248, 250–252, 256–258, 262–264, 266, 274, 283
Ladies' Tresses ... 230, 283
Lake Antoine, early stages of filling shown by ... 219–221
  Sphagnum bog near ... 221
  Bulrush ... 130, 139, 196, 197, 201, 202, 210, 211, 218, 220, 234, 238, 243, 245, 282
  margin at Nathan, Plate XXI ... 101
  Mary, Spruce-Shrub-Sedge bog near, Plate XXVII ... 101
  Michigan, islands, floral succession in bogs of ... 159
    peat formation near, Manistique ... 254
    plant distribution near, in Menominee county ... 188
  near Badwater Lake, Plate XXIV ... 101
  near Menominee river ... 219
  near Winona Mine ... 241
  Orion, White Cedar, peat deposit ... 122
  partly filled ... 229
  St. Clair, water plants of ... 129
  Superior, bogs and marshes near ... 186
    buried peat on shore of ... 243
    peat formation near shore of at Marquette ... 251
Lakeland, Dasiphora fruticosa at ... 162
  marsh land around ... 109
  sedge marshes, peat deposit near ... 124
  tamarack swamps near ... 122
Lakes between Newberry and Grand Marais ... 246, 248
Lakes around Crystal Falls ... 228
  deep, near Stager ... 234
  at Deer Park Life Saving Station ... 248
  on Keweenaw Peninsula ... 240
  manner of filling ... 195
  near Marquette ... 245
  near Sagola ... 227
  northern and southern, comparison of filling ... 269
  near Crystal Falls ... 233
  in T. 49 N., R. 29, 30 W ... 262

Page
Lance-leaved White Violet 255, 285
Land Surface, peat deposits classified according to 115
  plant distribution 188
Lane, A. C., cited 105, 112, 176, 184
Lansing, heath swamps, peat deposits near 124
Large Cranberry 142, 199, 202, 218, 256, 257, 282
  Toothed Aspen 197, 281
Larger Blue Flag 211, 218, 219, 281
Larix laricina, see Tamarack 109, 140, 149, 284
Late Golden-rod 219, 282
Lathyrus palustris, see Marsh Pea.
Leavitt, T. H., acknowledgments 176, 361
Leavitt peat machinery, Plate XXXI 101, 313, 350
LeConte, J., peat bogs 110, 176
Ledum Grœnlandicum, see Labrador Tea.
Lemna trisulca 140
Leptorchis Lœsellii 143
Lesquereux, L., peat formation 126, 176
Lesser Bladderwort 216
Lesser Duckweed 206
  Panicled Sedge 141, 196, 203, 206, 207, 230, 284
Leverett, Frank, acknowledgments 185
  reference 176, 186, 246
Lexington, Mass., peat fuel made at 313
Lichens 266, 268
Light, a factor in the growth of plants 165, 170
Lime acetate, peat coke, by-product 301
Limnodorum tuberosum, see Calopogon.
Limnorchis dilata, see Tall White Bog Orchis.
  hyperborea, see Tall Green Orchis and Tall Leafy Green Orchis.
Lincolnshire, peat formation 126
Linnæa Americana, see Twin-flower.
List of plants 281–286
Little Hemlock river, lake near 231
  Prickly Sedge 195, 236, 267, 284
  Traverse Bay, precipitation around 112
Littlefield Lake, peat deposits on marl, at 117, 123
Liverwort, peat formation 134
Livingston, B. E., reference 160, 176
Livingston county, Aronia arbutifolia in 163
  lakes, sedge mats in 152
  Spruce, peat deposits in 123
Lobelia Dortmanna 128, 285
  See Water Lobelia.
Locality, types of, examined in Northern Peninsula 188
Location of Peat beds in Michigan 326
Locomotives, peat coke as fuel for in Russia 341
Loire river, peat bogs along, in France 111
Long Lake 137
Long Sedge 264
Long's Lake, Genesee county 151
Longyear, J. M., cost peat coking plant 304
Lonicera oblongifolia 159, 283
Low Black Blueberry 223, 227, 250, 266, 281
Low Blueberry 234, 236, 237, 245, 250, 251, 255, 258, 262, 264, 266, 281
  Juniper 265, 285
  Raspberry 212, 284
Luce county, analyses of peat from 328
Ludington, analyses of peat from 330
Lung diseases, peat smoke beneficial in 333
Lycopodium inundatum, see Bog Club-moss.
Lycopus Americanus 144, 283
  See Cut-leaved Water Hoar-hound.
Lycopus communis 140
  sp., see Bugleweed.
Lyndon township, morainal lake in 116

Page

M.

MacCourt, W. E., reference.... 177
MacFarlane, T., reference.... 176
McLeod's Lake, flora of.... 247
Machinery, peat.... 312, 344, 346, 352, 354
    Leavitt peat, Plate XXXI.... 101
    for making peat litter.... 343, 357
Mackinac Island, Tamarack on.... 164
McKone, W. J., Geological Survey Board.... 95
Macleod, River, beaver dams of.... 168
MacMillan, C., formation of Sphagnum atolls.... 151, 176
Magellan Sedge.... 206, 212, 230, 241, 248, 284
Magnesium carbonate, peaty soils.... 291
Manistique, dams formed by drift-wood on the, described.... 118, 126
    peat formation among sand dunes near.... 254–260
    peat studies at.... 186
Manna-grass.... 213
Mannhardt and Koch press, peat machine.... 347
Mansfield, conifer bog near, Plate XIX.... 101
Mansfield Mine, peat deposit lowered.... 194
Maple (see Acer spp.).... 142, 203, 241
    river swamp.... 118, 119
Mappe, Ludwig, peat used as deodorizer by.... 297
Marchantia, in early stages of peat formation.... 134
Marginal basins.... 117
    zone, lake.... 208. 221, 270–274
Market, location of peat deposits in relation to.... 318
Marl below peat.... 324
    deposits, Chara.... 131, 132
Marquette, bogs and marshes near.... 186
    buried peat near.... 252
        Fig. 16.... 101
    forests on north and south hillsides near.... 262
    lakes near.... 245
    peat formation near.... 251, 252, 260
Marsh Arrow-grass.... 203, 281
    Bellflower.... 211, 228, 234, 281
    Cinquefoil.... 141, 143, 196, 197, 206–208, 210–212, 215–218, 220, 224, 225, 228–231, 234, 238, 242, 243, 251, 252, 257, 263
Marsh, defined.... 109
    Marigold.... 206, 230
    Pea.... 219, 283
    St. John's-wort.... 140, 218, 229, 231, 234, 264, 265, 284, 286
    Shield fern.... 140, 141, 142, 157, 158, 195, 196, 197, 203, 205–208, 210–213, 220, 228, 230, 231, 282
    Skullcap.... 211, 216, 284
    societies.... 265, 266
    White Violet.... 141, 143, 195, 206, 207, 213, 230, 285
    Willow Herb, see Epilobium palustre.
Marshes, ecological study.... 183
Martin of Ofenburg, hand machines, peat litter.... 358
Mary Lake, mature bogs near.... 236, 237
Mason, F. H., estimates, peat briquettes.... 356
Massachusetts, peat deposits in.... 110
Mattings made from peat.... 308
Mattison Lake, marl, Chara.... 131
Mattresses, peat litter.... 298
Mature bog.... 212, 228, 231, 238, 257
Mature bogs near Mary Lake.... 236
Maumee Lobe, moraine dam.... 117
Meadow Sweet.... 217–219, 224, 233, 236, 238, 245, 252, 255, 283
Mecosta county, peat plant in.... 360
Melampyrum lineare, see Cow-wheat.
Melton, beaver dams in Canada described by.... 168
Menominee, plant distribution near.... 188, 193

Page
Menominee county, plant studies in........ 184
river, Lake near........ 219
peat deposit........ 195
river, pine forests along........ 189
Sphagnum growth of in........ 275
Mentha Canadensis, see Wild Mint.
Menyanthes trifoliata........141, 143, 147, 281
See Buckbean.
Merryman's Lake........203, 204, 210–212
lake near, Fig. 11........101, 211
Metallurgical processes, peat coke for........ 341
Method of development, classification of peat according to........ 120
Michigan, acres of muck land in........ 105
Michigan, distribution of peat in, Plate XVI, XVII and........ 111
Michigan Peat and Marl Company........ 360
Michigan Peat Company........ 360
Michigan, peat fuel in........ 313
Michigan, Physical features........ 114
Michigan State Board of Agriculture Reports, reference........ 177
Mills, W. M., peat formation at Eagle Lake, Ind........128, 177
Mimulus ringens, see Monkey Flower.
Minden township, Sanilac county, peat bogs in........ 360
Mineral matter, peat........ 291, 322
Minnesota, peat bog........ 110
Mitella nuda, see Small Bishop's-cap.
Moisture, condensation of........214, 268
Molasses, stock food........ 297
Monkey Flower........219, 283
Monotropa uniflora........147, 149, 283
See Indian Pipe.
Montcalm county, Cassandra........ 163
Chara, marl........ 131
Spiraea tomentosa........ 164
Montreal, peat litter experiments at........ 298
Moor........ 109
Moors, Schimper........ 115
Morainal lakes........116, 117
Moraines........ 190
Morenci, peat bogs near........ 360
Morgan, L. H., reference........ 177
Moss bogs, peat deposit........121, 124
Moss........158, 199, 207, 208, 215, 256, 266, 268, 276
Mountain Ash........232, 250, 264, 281
See American Mountain Ash.
Holly........147, 223, 234, 236, 245, 248, 250, 258, 266, 283
Maple........230, 274, 283
Mouse-ear Chickweed........267, 285
Muck and peat, distinction between........108, 289
Muck land, acres of in Michigan........ 105
soils, growing crops on........ 290
in agriculture........ 289
Water holding power of........ 290
Mud Lake........122, 145, 151, 158, 159, 166
heath swamps, peat deposit at........ 124
sedge mat at........139, 152
Spruce, peat deposit around........ 123
Vaccinium Pennsylvanicum at........ 162
Willow swamp, on peat deposit at........ 123
Mud Sedge....141, 199, 207, 217, 218, 222, 229, 230, 236, 237, 241, 242, 251, 252, 255, 257, 271, 272
Muller, C., peat cutting machine described........ 346
Munising, peat swamps southeast of........ 276
Muntz and Laine........ 310
Myrica Gale........159, 164, 284
Myriophyllum, water plants........128, 129, 132
Myrtle-leaved Willow........196, 197, 217, 228, 236, 251, 252, 257, 285

Page

N.

Naias flexilis, see Slender Naias.
Naidaceae, water plant.................... 129
Nathan, filled lake near, Plate XXI, XXII and.................... 201, 221
peat bog, pond near.................... 198
National Peat Fuel Company, Chelsea.................... 359
Naumbergia thyrsiflora, see Tufted Loosestrife.
Negaunee, Beaver dam, Plate XIV and XV.................... 101
Nerved Manna-grass.................... 143, 206, 211, 217, 218, 219, 252, 255, 256, 282
Netherlands, peat fuel in.................... 311
New Brunswick, sphagnum for stable bedding from.................... 296
England peat fuel in.................... 313
habitats in.................... 143, 163
Hampshire, Spiraea tomentosa, habitats in.................... 164
Jersey, peat beds in.................... 329
York, peat bogs of.................... 110
sunshine in.................... 113
Newberry celery soil, analysis of.................... 294
Great Swamp near.................... 246, 248
peat studies in vicinity of.................... 186
Newcastle cannel coal, gas.................... 306
Nich-e-waugh Lake, Chara, marl.................... 131, 132
Nightshade.................... 142
Nilson, N. H., ecological factors according to.................... 160
Nitrates, peat in production of.................... 310
Non-conducting packing material.................... 309
North Carolina, peat bogs in.................... 111
North side of hills, woodland.................... 261, 262
Northern and Southern lakes, comparison of filling.................... 269
Michigan, plants, general distribution of.................... 188
Peninsula, climbing bogs in.................... 120, 264
peat bogs, formation, character, distribution.................... 181
Sphagnum and peat formation.................... 274
Water Star-wort.................... 256, 284
Northfield township, pond in.................... 151
Norway and Jack Pine forest.................... 192
Norway, lake south of.................... 219
manufacture and use of peat coke in.................... 304
peat land.................... 110
Pine.................... 189, 190, 217, 218, 221, 222, 224, 226, 227, 233, 234, 236, 245, 247–251, 253, 257, 262, 266, 283
Nuphar, water lily.................... 132, 137
Nurserymen, peat packing material for.................... 309
Nymphaea advena.................... 130, 132, 133, 139, 283

O.

Oakland county, lakes of.................... 133
sedge mats around.................... 152
peat beds in.................... 326
White Cedar, on peat deposits of.................... 122
Occurrence of peat.................... 108
Ogdensburg, N. Y., peat gas plant projected at.................... 307
Oil from tar, peat coke.................... 303
Onoclea sensibilis.................... 141, 219, 282
Ontario, manufacture and use of peat briquettes in.................... 313
Ontonagon county, swamp areas in.................... 277
Open mold system, briquetting peat.................... 354
Ophioglossum vulgatum.................... 141
Organic acids, present in muck land.................... 291
Original vegetation, map, Plate XVII.................... 101
Orlando, Fla., peat plant operating at.................... 351
Ortonville, slope bogs near.................... 120
Osmunda cinnamomea.................... 143, 282
See Cinnamon Fern.
regalis.................... 140, 143, 282
See King Fern.

Page

- Ostrya, Virginica, see Ironwood.
- Oxalis stricta.... 285
- "Ox-bow" basins.... 117
- Oxford, peat section near.... 166
- Oxycoccus macrocarpus.... 146, 147, 149, 282
  - See Large Cranberry.
  - Oxycoccus.... 146–148, 282
  - See Small Cranberry.

P.

- Packing material, use of peat litter for.... 309
- Pale Corydalis.... 266, 285
  - Laurel.... 148, 194, 199, 200, 217, 222, 223, 225, 226–228, 232, 235, 236, 238, 239, 241, 242, 247–250, 256–258, 283
- Panicled Cornel.... 142
- Panicularia Americana, see Tall Manna-grass.
  - fluitans.... 129, 282
  - See Floating Manna-grass.
  - nervata.... 143, 282
  - See Nerved Manna-grass.
- Panicum.... 255, 285
- Paper pulp, peat.... 280, 307
- Paraffin, from peat coke.... 103
- Park Lake, peat formation at.... 336
- Parmelee, C. W., peat investigations of.... 177, 326, 329, 334
- Parsons, A. L., reference.... 377
- Pasteboard, peat fiber used in.... 108
- Paving blocks from peat.... 310
- Pearly Everlasting.... 267
- Peat, acre of, tons of fuel in.... 277, 318
  - Agricultural uses of.... 289
  - lands, area in Michigan.... 289
  - as a fertilizer.... 293–295
  - as fuel.... 311
  - as stock food.... 297
  - beds, location and extent in Michigan.... 326
  - bog at Nathan.... 198
  - bog, Plate XXIX.... 101
  - bogs, agricultural possibilities of.... 279
    - development and character of.... 183
    - formation, character, distribution of.... 181, 183
    - Huron Mountains.... 260
  - buried, Lake Superior shore.... 242
    - near Marquette.... 252
  - carrying from bog to factory.... 358
  - coke.... 278, 299–305, 340–342
  - compared with other fuels.... 333
  - composition of.... 327
  - cut, machinery for making.... 344
  - cutter, Fig. 19.... 101
  - definition of.... 107
  - deodorizer and disinfectant.... 297, 298
  - deposit, Bentley's camp, Plate XXVIII.... 101, 264
    - surface plants in relation to.... 166, 187
  - deposits, area and depth, necessity of determining.... 318
    - classified.... 115
    - commercial value of.... 318
    - depth, degree of decomposition, extent.... 183, 187
    - relation of to plants on the surface.... 128
  - description of.... 108
  - destructive distillation of.... 299
  - disinfectant, farm use of.... 296, 297
  - distribution and abundance of.... 276
  - dye.... 310
  - electrical energy from.... 280, 310

Page
Peat, factories, Michigan .......... 359
    factory, plans and section, Fig. 20 .......... 101
    formation .......... 111, 130, 134, 252, 269, 274
            ecology of, etc .......... 105, 251
            near Manistique .......... 254
            species of plants important in .......... 274
    fuel, heating power of .......... 332, 334
        machinery for preparation of .......... 343
        Plate XXX .......... 101
    gas .......... 280, 305-307
    geographical distribution of .......... 110
    litter, fertilizer for agricultural crops .......... 298
Peat litter, machinery for preparation of .......... 343, 357
    methods of work on .......... 187
    miscellaneous uses of .......... 289
"Peat mosses" .......... 159
Peat mull .......... 357
    muskeg, James Bay .......... 111
    occurrence of .......... 108
    paper pulp from .......... 280, 307
    physical condition of, factors determining .......... 319
    plant, estimate of cost of .......... 352
    prospects, Michigan .......... 359
    relation of to bottom .......... 323
            to water plants and sedge .......... 152
    samplers, Fig. 18 .......... 101
    succession of plants upon mat .......... 158
    tests .......... 338
    use in hospitals .......... 298
    water content of .......... 161, 336, 338
    woven fabrics from .......... 308
Peltandra Virginica .......... 139, 141
Pembina, beaver dams .......... 168
Pennington, L. H., reference .......... 177
Pennsylvania Sedge .......... 255, 284
Percy, John, Mannhardt and Koch press .......... 347
Pere Marquette R. R., bogs along .......... 154
Perry, heath swamps, peat deposits near .......... 124
Peshekeme river, climbing bogs near .......... 264
            swamps near .......... 262
Pettee, E. E., reference .......... 177
Pettit, R. H., beaver meadow .......... 101
Pennsylvania, peat bogs in .......... 110
Phenolates, from peat coke .......... 303
Philadelphia Flea-bane .......... 219, 282
Phleum pratense, see Timothy.
Phragmites phragmites .......... 129, 132, 282
        See Tall Reed-grass.
Physical condition of peat, factors controlling .......... 319
        features, Michigan .......... 114
Picea brevifolia .......... 142, 146, 149, 284
        See Black Spruce.
    Canadensis, see White Spruce.
    Mariana, see Spruce and Black Spruce.
Pickerel-Weed .......... 130, 139, 195, 283
Pigweed .......... 286
Pieters, A. J., reference .......... 129, 177
Pilgrim Paper Co., peat paper .......... 308
Pin Cherry .......... 189, 197, 282
        See Wild Red Cherry.
Pine .......... 190, 247, 252, 255, 261, 265
    "island" Lake Antoine, Plate XXIII .......... 101, 220
    Lake, barrier-formed lake .......... 117
    lands .......... 188
    river, dam .......... 118
        swamp area near .......... 119

Page

Pinus divaricata, see Jack Pine.
    resinosa, see Norway Pine.
    strobus, see White Pine.
Pipe-wort.......242, 283
Pitcher plant.......143, 199–203, 207, 217, 218, 222, 225, 226, 228–230, 232, 234–239, 241, 242, 247–249, 263, 264, 283
Plant growth, cycle of....... 166
    societies.......184, 186, 265
        in relation to soil and topography....... 190
    tissues, breaking up of....... 337
Plants, distribution of....... 184
    general distribution, northern Michigan....... 188
    list of.......281–286
    occurrence, range and distribution of....... 184
    peat formation.......172, 187
    precipitation of mineral matter by, in peat....... 322
    relation of to peat deposits....... 128
    succession of upon peat after grounding of sedge mat....... 158
    surface, no indication of character of peat deposit....... 166
Poa compressa, see Wire grass.
    pratense, see Blue grass.
Podostemon, water plant....... 128
Poison Sumach.......142, 144, 157
Poles, preservative for....... 303
Polygala paucifiora, see Fringed Polygala.
Polygonum Conolvulus, see Black Bindweed.
        emersum, see Swamp Persicaria.
        Hartwrightii, see Hartwright's Persicara.
        hydropiper, see Common Smart-weed.
Polypodium vulgare, see Common Polypody.
Polytrichum.......124, 149, 283
        See Hair-cap moss.
Pond Lily zone....... 269
Pond, R. H., reference....... 177
        water plant growth....... 132
Pondweed.......129, 215, 216, 220, 224, 225, 234, 238, 241, 247, 248, 251, 256, 269, 283
Pontederia cordata.......130, 139, 283
        See Pickerel Weed.
Poplars.......147, 150, 156, 166, 189, 190, 192, 197, 215, 233, 234, 238, 252
Populus balsamifera, see Balsam Poplar.
        tremuloides.......149, 150, 156, 281
        See Aspen, American Aspen.
Porcupine Sedge.......195, 216, 238, 284
Portage Canal, section of buried peat near, Fig. 15....... 101
Posts, tar from peat preservative for....... 303
Potamogeton.......129, 131–134, 137, 139, 208, 283
        See Pondweeds.
Potamogeton natans, see Common Floating Pondweed.
Potato, amount of water required growing in peat....... 161
Potentilla Monspeliensis.......144, 285
Prairie Willow.......236, 245
Precipitation of mineral matter by plants....... 322
        in Michigan....... 112
Preparation, cost of, peat fuel....... 342
        methods of peat....... 336
Preservatives of wood....... 303
Presque Isle Park, peat formation near....... 251
Pressed peat, machines for making....... 346
Pressing peat, effect on heating power of....... 335
Pressure, as means of extracting water from peat....... 337
Prickly Sedge.......142, 207, 225, 230, 242
Production, cost of....... 352
Proserpinaca, water plant....... 128
Prospecting methods, peat....... 315
        necessity of careful....... 277
Prospects, peat, Michigan....... 359

Page
Prunus Pennsylvanica, see Wild Red and Pin Cherry.
pumila, see Dwarf Sand Cherry.
Virginica, see Choke Cherry.
Pteridiums quilinum .......... 150, 281
See Common Brake.
Purple-leaved Willow-herb .......... 231, 267, 286
Purple-stem Aster .......... 144
Purplish Meadow-Rue .......... 144, 219, 283
Pursh's Buttercup .......... 216, 282
Pyrola uliginosa, see Bog Wintergreen.

Q.

Quercus coccinea, see Scarlet Oak.
macrocarpa .......... 156
platanoides .......... 156
rubra .......... 156, 283
See Red Oak.
Quillwort .......... 265, 286

R.

Railroad ties, preservatives .......... 303
Railroads, peat deposits .......... 154
Rain wash, flooding of bogs by .......... 321
Raising of peat deposit .......... 138
Ranunculus .......... 128
Pennsylvanicus, see Bristly Crowfoot.
Purshii, see Pursh's Buttercup.
Razoumofskya pusilla, see Small Mistletoe.
Reclamation of beaver pond .......... 264
swamp land .......... 292
Red Cedar .......... 151
Cherry (see Prunes) .......... 189
clover .......... 267, 285
Maple .......... 142, 147, 156, 166, 192, 193, 241, 261, 262, 266, 283
Oak .......... 156, 261, 283
Osier Dogwood .......... 142, 144, 195, 211, 212, 224, 283
Raspberry .......... 206, 230, 284
Top Grass .......... 267, 286
Red-berried Elder .......... 266, 285
Redkino, peat coke made at .......... 302, 304
Reed grass, water plant .......... 129, 196, 245
Reed, H. S., reference .......... 177
water plants .......... 129
Reindeer Lichen .......... 200, 212, 213, 230, 232, 258, 264, 267, 275
Rennie, J., peat formation .......... 125
Reuss, Paul, hand machines, peat litter .......... 358
Rhamnus alnifolia, see Buckthorn .......... 281
Rhizomes .......... 157
Rhus Vernix .......... 142, 144, 147, 157
Ribes prostratum, see field Currant.
Ries, chemical composition of peat .......... 108
H., peat deposits of New York .......... 110, 127, 137
reference .......... 177
River-bank Sedge .......... 195, 211, 212, 218–220, 222, 238, 284
River-flooded lake .......... 231
Riverdale, White Cedar, peat deposit .......... 122
Rock Elm .......... 188, 282
Rock island, peat covered .......... 264
lake .......... 151
tarn, peat formation in .......... 116, 133, 136
Panic-grass .......... 285
ridge type, forest .......... 189
surface, peat beds on .......... 215
Rockwell, F. C., coking peat .......... 357
Roofing paper made from peat .......... 309

Page

- Roripa Americana, water plant 128
  - palustris, see Yellow Water-cress.
- Rosa Carolina 142, 144, 157
- Roscommon county, plants in 162, 163, 164
  - lakes, sedge mats 152
  - Sphagnum 167
- Rough Cinquefoil 144, 267, 285
  - Hair-grass 264
- Round-leaved Sundew 206, 218, 222, 225, 229, 230, 234, 264, 284
- Rowe, W. A., reference 292
- Rubus Americanus, see Low Raspberry, Dwarf Raspberry.
  - nigrobaccus, see Tall Blackberry.
  - strigosus 144, 147, 284
    - See Red Raspberry.
- Rugs made from peat 308
- Rumex acetosella, see Sheep Sorrel.
  - Brittanica 143, 282
- Runkel Lake, bog near 231
- Rush 255, 256, 284
  - Aster 140
  - marshes, peat deposit 121, 124
- Russell, I. C., acknowledgments 184
  - peat bog studies with 183
  - reference 177
  - surface geology 188
- Russia, peat briquettes 339
  - coke 341
  - fuel 105, 311
  - land 110

S.

- Saginaw Bay, east side, ponds near 117
  - Lake Bulrush 130
  - marshes 109, 134
  - peat bog studies 183
  - County, marsh land in 109
    - "prairies" 124
  - river, dam across 118
- Sagittaria, water plant 129
  - latifolia, see Broad-leaved Arrow-head.
- Sagola, Lakes near 227
- St. Clair county, peat analyses 328
  - river, delta 120
    - sedge marsh 124
- St. Louis, moraine dam 117
- Salix 145, 162
  - Bebbiana 144, 285
    - See Bebb's Willow.
  - candida 164
  - lucida, see Shining Willow.
  - myrtilloides 164, 285
    - See Myrtle-leaved Willow.
  - nigra 156
  - sericea, see Silky Willow.
- Salts, mineral, muck land 291
- Sambucus pubens, see Red-berried Elder.
- Sampler for peat prospecting, Robt. Hunt & Co 317
- Sampling final, peat deposits 316
  - other purposes than fuel 319
- San Joaquin, "tule" lands along the 110
- Sand below peat 324
  - dunes, peat examination among 188
    - ponds, Fig. 17 101
- Sand-plain bogs 237
- Sand plains, peat examination on 188

Page

- Sandy loam ... 161
  - moraines, peat examination among ... 188
  - soil water ... 161
- Sanilac county, peat analyses ... 330, 331
  - peat bogs ... 360
- Sarracenia ... 143, 146, 149
  - purpurea ... 143, 149, 283
  - See Pitcher plant.
- Sartwell's Sedge ... 141, 203, 211, 284
- Sault Ste. Marie, peat swamps west of ... 276
- Saxifraga Pennsylvanica, see Swamp Saxifrage.
- Saxony, compressed peat made in ... 347
- Scandinavia, peat fuel in ... 311
- Scarlet Oak ... 189, 192, 207, 233, 283
- Scheuchzeria ... 218, 235–237, 242, 257, 284
  - palustris ... 145, 149, 284
- Schimper, A. F. W., plant geography ... 115
  - reference ... 178
  - xerophytes ... 160
- Schlikeysen, C., peat machinery of ... 312, 347
- Schonomen dryer ... 353
- Schroeter, C., reference ... 175
- Scirpus Americana, Water plant ... 133
  - atrovirens, see Dark-green Bulrush.
  - cyperinus, see Wool-grass.
  - lacustris, see Lake Bulrush ... 130–133, 282
  - subterminalis, see Water Club-rush.
- Scotland, mountain bogs, formation of ... 125
  - peat bogs ... 111
- Scott, B. W., peat formation ... 127
  - reference ... 178
- Scutellaria galericulata, see Marsh Skull-cap.
- Seared briquettes manufactured from peat ... 340
- Section of peat ... 201, 225, 239, 244, 252
  - Sphagnum island, Vestaburg ... 166
    - peat ... 157
- Sedge ... 208, 216, 227, 228, 230, 234, 238, 243, 250, 252, 255–258, 271, 274, 275
- Sedge and Cat-tail zone ... 269
  - bog near Clara Lake ... 233
  - islands, near Manistique ... 256
  - marsh, Plate XX ... 101
  - marshes and bogs, peat deposits ... 121, 124, 145, 203, 207, 229, 236, 245, 247, 251
  - mat ... 137–140, 147, 152, 153, 158, 159, 206, 208, 211, 219, 220, 221, 247, 271
    - succession of plants upon peat after grounding of ... 158
- Sedge-Sweet Gale Zone ... 230
- Sedge, relation to peat formation ... 152
- Sedge zone ... 229, 270, 271, 275
- Seed plants in water ... 128
  - succession of ... 133
- Seeds, birds transporting ... 266
  - dispersal of ... 165
- Selwid and Lange, drying chambers invented by ... 353
- Sensitive Fern ... 141, 219, 282
- Seville township, Gratiot county, stony deposits by moss ... 321
- Shade, growth of plants in ... 165
- Shading of plants ... 130
- Shaler, N. S., area of peat formation ... 110
  - bog, section of, Fig. 2 ... 101, 127
  - climbing bog ... 120
  - filling of lakes ... 137
  - peat formation ... 114, 126, 178, 313
  - peat fuel ... 178
- Shallow depressions, formation of peat in ... 131
  - water, plants of ... 141
- Shannon river, peat bog on ... 111
- Sheathed Cotton-grass ... 149, 199–201, 214, 222, 223, 228, 232, 241, 248

Page
Sheathing paper from peat.................................................. 309
Sheep Sorrel..........................................214, 267, 284, 286
Sheet paper............................................................ 308
Sherzer, W. H., reference.............................................. 178
Shining Willows.................................................211, 285
Shore wash in lakes, effect on peat................................... 322
Showy Ladies' Slipper............................203, 210, 212, 213, 283
Shrub zone.......................................145, 146, 160, 196
Shrub-Sphagnum zone............................218, 221, 222, 242, 263, 272
Shrubby Cinquefoil..........................................144, 212, 282
Shrubs..........................................................157, 165, 275
Sibbaldiopsis tridentata, see Three-toothed Cinquefoil.
Silica as impurity in peat............................................. 323
Silicious bottoms, peat formation on................................... 125
Silky Cornel........................................................... 212
  Willow........................................................218, 285
Silver Lake, Yellow Pond Lily absent from.............................. 134
Silver Sedge........................................................... 150
Sister Lakes, tarns..................................................... 116
Skunk Cabbage...................................................143, 144
Slane (Slayne) Plate XXIX.......................................101, 343
Slender Cotton-grass......................207, 212, 236, 237, 242, 248, 282
  Naias.........................................................248, 283
  Rush.....................................................219, 267, 284
  Sedge......141, 196, 197, 207, 210, 212, 217–220, 225, 226, 228, 229, 233, 234, 236, 238, 242, 243, 245, 248, 249, 251, 252, 257, 263, 265, 269, 271–273, 284
Small Bedstraw...........................................142, 216, 265, 285
  Bishop's Cap......................................206, 207, 213, 230, 281
  Bur-reed......................................................255, 282
  Cranberry................199, 202, 203, 206, 207, 212, 217, 218, 222, 223, 225, 228, 230, 232, 234–239, 241, 242, 257, 258, 264, 282
  Goose-grass...................................................206, 282
  Mistletoe.................................................199, 232, 283
  St. John's-wort....................................................... 266
  Spikerush............................................................. 243
Smaller Bladderwort.............................................206, 281
Smaller Bur-Marigold............................................231, 282
Smokeless character of peat fuel....................................... 335
Smooth Goldenrod....................................................... 264
Smyth, B. B., reference................................................ 178
Sneeze-weed.....................................................219, 284
Soft-leaved Sedge..................................142, 202, 206, 212, 284
Soft Maple............................................................. 193
  Rush..........................................................218, 284
Soil in relation to plant societies..................................... 190
  peat formation....................................................... 170
Solanum Dulcamara...................................................... 142
Solidago Canadensis.................................................... 144
  serotina, see Late Golden-rod.
Sorbus Americana, see Mountain Ash and American Mountain Ash.
Sourness, of muck land................................................. 291
South America, peat in................................................. 110
South side of hills, forests on, in Huron Mountains.............261, 262
Southern and Northern lakes, comparison of filling..................... 269
Southern bogs.......................................................... 274
  Peninsula, aquatic plants of......................................... 269
    plants in.......................................................... 219
Sparganium......................................................129, 282
  eurycarpum, water plant.............................................. 129
  minimum, see Smaller Bur-reed.
  simplex angustifolium, see Submerged Bur-reed.
Spathyema foetida...............................................143, 144
Species, important in peat formation................................... 274
  list of scientific and common names.................................. 281

Page
Sphagnum.......... 143–284
atolls, formation of in Minn.......... 151
bog near Lake Antoine.......... 221
island, section of.......... 166, 236
moss bogs.......... 124, 126, 166
in relation to peat formation.......... 127, 134, 135, 157
swamps.......... 163
Vestaburg, Plate XIII.......... 101
zone.......... 164
Sphagnum-Cassandra zone.......... 147, 149
Sphagnum-Cassandra-Andromeda zones.......... 220
Sphagnum-Heath Association.......... 232
Sphagnum-Shrub zone.......... 226
Spike-rush.......... 243, 265, 271, 286
Spinulose Fern.......... 267
Spiraea salicifolia, see Meadow Sweet.
tomentosa.......... 164
Spotted Cowbane.......... 282
Touch-me-not.......... 140, 143
Spring bog near Camp Lake.......... 230
bogs, peat.......... 321
Springs.......... 231
Spruce.......... 142, 145, 149, 166, 169, 193–195, 202, 206, 211, 220, 226, 228, 230, 232, 234, 237, 241, 246, 247, 250, 251, 261, 262, 266, 273
See also different species.
Spruce bog at Balsam.......... 232, 233
Spruce Pine.......... 261
swamps, peat deposit.......... 121, 123
Spruce-Shrub-Sedge bog near Lake Mary, Plate XXVII.......... 101
Spruce-Tamarack Association.......... 250
Spruce-Tamarack-Sphagnum Association.......... 203
Spurred Gentian.......... 212, 282
Stable and Barn-yard litter.......... 295
Stabler process, drying peat.......... 353
Stachys aspera, see Hedge Nettle.
Stager, deep lakes near.......... 234
Star-flower.......... 206, 212, 284
Stauber process, drying peat.......... 353
Steironema ciliatum, see Fringed Loosestrife.
Stemless Ladies' Slipper.......... 147, 239, 283
Stock food, peat.......... 297
Strand-flora.......... 243
Streams, flooding by, peat deposits injured by.......... 321
peat examination of along.......... 188
Structure, peat deposits.......... 95
Stuart's Lake.......... 247
Stutzke Brothers, peat presses.......... 350
Submerged Bur-reed.......... 241, 282
Succession of plants after grounding of mat.......... 158
seed plants.......... 133
Sugar Maple.......... 240
Sulphate of iron, peat.......... 291
Sulphur, peat.......... 335
Summerfield township, peat bogs.......... 360
Sundew.......... 199
Sunshine, Michigan.......... 113
Surface growth, peat, character of.......... 320
plants, peat deposit.......... 166
vegetation and peat.......... 96
classification of peat deposits.......... 121
Swamp area.......... 119
Blueberry.......... 147, 148
defined.......... 109
distribution, map of, Plates XVI and XVII.......... 101
Honeysuckle.......... 159, 194, 195, 202, 212, 283
Horsetail.......... 142, 216, 265, 285

Page
Swamp inland dune region... 116
  land, areas of... 105
    reclamation of... 292
    area in Michigan... 289
  Loosestrife...130, 139, 204–208, 270, 273, 283
  Milkweed...144, 211, 219, 283
  Persicaria...196, 220, 224, 283
  Rose...142, 144
  Saxifrage...203, 206, 213, 230, 284
  Thistle...211, 284
  Valerian...202, 213, 285
  White Oak... 156
    Violet, see Marsh Violet.
  Wild Rose...157, 263
Swamp-conifer border... 222
Swamps, types of... 262
Swampy areas, examination of... 188
Sweden, pasteboard from peat made in... 308
  peat briquettes... 339
    drainage... 320
    fuel... 105
    gas...280, 305
    land... 110
Sweet Fern...163, 189, 197, 223, 227, 233, 237, 282
  Flag...224, 243, 284
  Gale...159, 195, 196, 201, 202, 224, 227, 230, 231, 234, 243, 245, 248, 251, 255, 257, 263–266, 269, 274, 284
  White Violet...202, 265, 286
  Wild Violet... 285
Sweet-scented Water Lily...226, 285

T.

Tall Blackberry...233, 236, 264, 281
  Cotton-grass...142, 203, 207, 217, 218, 226, 235, 256, 282
  Green Orchis...207, 212, 283
  Leafy Green Orchis...141, 230, 283
  Manna-grass...233, 282
  Reed Grass...196, 282
  White Bog Orchis...228, 230, 283
Tamarack......109, 130, 140–150, 156, 159, 164–166, 169, 189, 191–197, 199, 201, 264, 266, 284
Tamarack-Alder association... 245
Tamarack-Black Spruce zone... 235
Tamarack-Sedge association... 203
Tamarack-Spruce-Cedar Swamp...204, 212, 215, 219, 223, 227, 228, 231
Tamarack swamps...121, 122, 163
Tannic acid, in muck land... 291
Tar covering, peat briquettes... 339
  peat coke by-products...301, 303, 305
Tarns... 116
Tarr, R. S., peat formation... 127
Temperature, Michigan...112, 113
Terrace bogs, peat... 321
Tests, peat... 338
Tetragonanthus deflexus, see Spurred Gentian.
Texture, peat deposits... 325
Thalictrum purpurascens...144, 283
  See Purplish Meadow-Rue.
Thanlaw, J. G., water in peat... 336
Three Rivers, peat bogs near... 360
Three-leaved Sedge... 284
    Solomon's Seal..143, 200, 202, 210, 213, 214, 223, 228, 230, 232, 235, 239, 241, 248, 284
Three-seeded Sedge...142, 150, 200, 206, 214, 232, 236, 241, 248, 258, 267
Three-toothed Cinquefoil...245, 282
Throat diseases, peat fuel beneficial for... 333

Page
Thuja occidentalis, see Arbor Vitae, Cedar, White Cedar.
Tiles, peat paper 308
Tilia Americana, see Basswood.
Till below peat 323
    plain 119
Timber land, forestry 184
Timothy 286
Tissues, plant, breaking up of 337
Tobico Lake, barrier formed lake 117
Tools for prospecting peat deposits 316
Topography in relation to plant societies 190
    plant distribution 188
Torch Lake, barrier formed 117
Touch-me-not 231, 285
Towar, J. D., swamp lands in Michigan 178, 289, 292
Trailing Arbutus 223, 227, 237, 245, 250, 251, 255, 258, 266, 281
Transeau, E. N., reference 178
Transition type, mature bog societies 257
Transportation, peat deposits 318
Traskatis, G., peat presses 350
Triadeum Virginianum 140, 284, 286
    See Marsh St. John's-wort.
Trientalis Americana, see Starflower.
Trifolium pratense, see Red Clover.
    repens, see White Clover.
Triglochin palustris, see Marsh Arrow-grass.
Trout Lake Junction, beaver dams 169
    bogs 249
    Junction, peat studies 186
Tsuga Canadensis, see Hemlock.
Tufted Loosestrife 206, 283
Tule lands, California 110
Tunnel type drying chambers, peat 353
Turf-building type, Sedges 271
Tuscola county, Dasiphora fruticosa 162
    Gaylussacia resinosa 162
    marsh land 109
    "prairie" 124
Tussock Sedge 195, 199, 205, 210, 218, 231, 234, 238, 271, 272, 284
Twig-rush 201
Twin Falls, bogs near 226
Twin-flower 195, 202, 206, 210, 212, 213, 227, 230, 236, 251, 285
Two-storied White Pine and hardwood forest 192
Type of filling 270
Types of locality examined, peat 188
    swamps and bogs 262
Typha, latifolia 129 to 145, 147, 148, 150, 151, 152, 158, 168
    See Cattail.

U.

Ulmic acid, muck land 291
Ulmus Americana 142, 147, 156, 282
    See White Elm.
    racemosa, see Rock Elm.
Umbelliferæ 128
Unifolium Canadense 143, 150, 283
    See Wild-Lily-of-the-Valley.
U. S. Consular reports 179
    Department of Agriculture, Bureau of Soils 178
    swamp land 111
Upper Peninsula, map of original vegetation, Plate XVII 101
Upright Yellow Wood Sorrel 219, 285
Utilization of peat on a large scale, reference 179

Page
Utricularia, water plants....128, 129, 132, 133, 137
 cornuta, see Horned Bladderwort.
 intermedia....129, 140, 281
 See Flat-leaved Bladderwort.
 minor, see Smaller Bladderwort.
 purpurea, water plant.... 129
 vulgaris....129, 132, 281
 See Greater Bladderwort.

V.

Vaccinium Canadense....148, 162, 281
 See Canada Blueberry.
 corymbosum....123, 147–149. 163
 nigrum, see Low Black Blueberry.
 Pennsylvanicum....148, 162, 281
 See Low Blueberry.
Vagnera trifolia....143, 147, 284
 See Three-leaved Solomon's Seal.
Valeriana uliginosa, see Swamp Valerian.
Valley bog near Granite Bluff.... 223
Valley bogs.... 193
 bottom.... 189
Value, commercial, peat deposits.... 318
Van Buren Peat Company.... 360
Vassar, moraine dam.... 117
Vegetable matter, agents of decomposition.... 106
 chemical composition.... 105
Vegetables, peat packing for.... 309
Vegetation, character of.... 96
 original, map of, Plate XVII.... 101
Verbena hastata....144, 285
 See Blue Vervain.
Vestaburg, heath swamp, peat deposit.... 124
 Plate XIII, Peat.... 101
 Sphagnum island, section.... 166
Viburnum cassinoides, see White-rod.
Vicksburg, Wolverine Peat Company.... 360
Viola alsophila....140, 141, 143
 blanda, see Sweet Wild Violet.
 Labradorcia, see Dog Violet.
 lanceolata, see Lance-leaved Violet.
 Le Conteana, see Marsh Violet.
 renifolia, see Kidney-leaved Violet.
Virginia Cotton-grass....149, 218, 222, 226, 232, 237, 241, 248, 249, 264, 282
 Chain-fern.... 147
 peat bogs.... 110
Vulcan, bogs near.... 217

W.

Waldsteinia fragarioides, see Barren Strawberry.
Warrington, R., reference....161, 179
Wash, shore, in lakes.... 322
Washtenaw county, peat analyses.... 328
 Aronia arbutifolia.... 163
 lakes, sedge mats.... 152
 Spruce, peat deposit.... 123
Water Arum.... 206
 Club-rush....199, 282
 content....290, 336–338
 Lily family.... 129
 Lobelia....265, 285
 persicaria.... 196
 plantain,.... 129
 plants, relation to peat....129, 152

Page
Water Sedge.....196, 284
    Shield.....197, 237, 246, 285
    Starwort.....206, 284
Water-milfoil family.....128, 211
Waterbury, L. E., sink hole on Grand Trunk R. R..... 154
        peat analyses..... 332
Wayne county, beaver dams..... 167
Webster township, sedge mat..... 139
Weight of peat deposits..... 324
Weitzmann, K., machinery for making condensed peat.....346, 349
Weld, L. G., reference..... 179
Welland county, Ontario, moss litter..... 298
West Branch, swamp..... 109
Wexford county, Andromeda Polifolia..... 164
        Iliciodes mucronata..... 163
        lakes, sedge mats..... 152
        White Cedar, peat deposit..... 122
Wheeler, W. H., Lincolnshire peat formation..... 126
        reference..... 179
White Ash.....147, 224
    Beaked-Rush.....199, 222, 225, 237, 242, 264
    Birch.....189, 190, 192, 193, 196, 218, 252, 258, 261, 262, 264, 266, 281
    Cedar.....122, 189, 193, 195, 206, 210, 212, 243, 247, 262–264, 281, 282
        See Cedar.
    Clover.....267, 285
    Elm.....142, 156, 188, 189, 192, 196, 261, 282
    Pine.....190–192, 195, 202, 218, 221, 222, 224, 226, 227, 234, 241, 242, 247, 249, 250, 257, 261, 262, 264, 266, 283
        forest near Koss, Plate XVIII..... 101
        Type..... 192
    Pond Lily.....130, 133, 195, 197, 220, 225, 234, 237, 248, 283
    Spruce.....188–192, 261, 284
Withe-rod.....247–250, 256–258, 285
Whitewater, Wisconsin, seared briquettes made..... 340
Whitford, H. N., flora succession of..... 159
        on swamp societies..... 128
        on xerophytes..... 160
        reference..... 179
Whitmore Lake.....116, 122, 133, 136, 145, 151
Wigan cannel coal, gas..... 306
Wild Calla Lily.....206, 213, 216, 229, 230, 241, 251, 263
    Lily-of-the-Valley.....206, 207, 213, 250, 267, 283
    Mint.....219, 234, 283
    Oat-grass.....266, 267, 285
    Potato..... 142
    Red Cherry.....197, 214, 266, 282, 285
        Raspberry..... 144
    Sarsaparilla.....150, 206, 207
    Strawberry..... 267
Willow.....147, 150, 159, 164, 166, 168, 195, 197, 210, 211, 212, 215, 216, 218–220, 224, 233, 243
    swamp, peat deposit.....121, 123
Winchell, A., climate of Michigan..... 112
        peat formation.....127, 179
Wind, peat formation, effect on..... 172
Winged Cudweed..... 267
Winona mine, bogs and lake near.....240, 241
Winterberry.....147, 224, 248, 256, 266, 285
Wintergreen.....212, 213, 223, 227, 239, 245, 250, 251, 258, 266, 285
Wire-grass.....266, 285
Wisconsin, peat bog..... 110
Wisconsin, sunshine..... 113
Wisner township, marsh land..... 109
"Witches' brooms".....199, 232
Wolverine Peat Company..... 360
Wood alcohol, peat coke by-product.....301, 303

Page
Wood as fuel........ 278
preservatives of........ 303
Wood-rush........ 285
Woodwardia Virginica........147, 150
Woody plants, Tamarack zone........ 142
Wool-grass........218, 219, 228, 236, 248, 252, 255, 256, 265, 285
Woven fabrics from peat........ 308

X.

Xerophytes........160, 164
Xerophytic adaptations........161, 214, 237

Y.

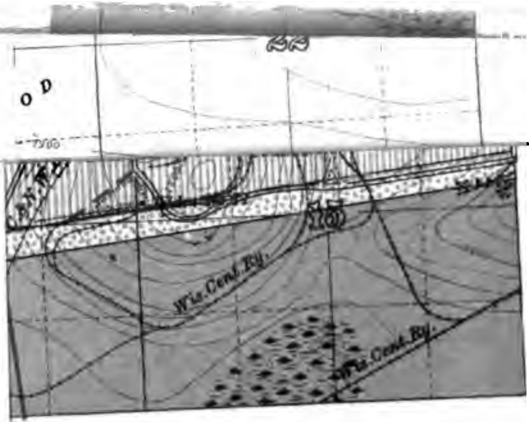
Yellow Birch........156, 188–193, 196, 240–242, 261, 274, 281
Pond Lily........130, 132–134, 140, 167, 195, 197, 199, 211, 212, 218, 220, 221, 224–230, 233–235, 237, 238, 241, 243, 245–248, 251, 265, 283
Sedge........212, 284
Watercress........219, 265, 285, 286
Ypsilanti, Huron river "cut off" at........ 118

Z.

Ziegler, peat coke........ 300
Zizania aquatica, water plant........ 129
Zschœrner process, peat paper........ 307
Zwingenberger, O., Ziegler peat coke........301, 303

[illegible]

[illegible]



▨ Goodrich(Palms) formation.

■ Laurentian Granite.

Dikes.

70°

Faults.

s of equal elevation above T. Lake Superior being as-02.4 A. T. Interval between et.

# A GEOLOGICAL SECTION

FROM

# BESSEMER DOWN BLACK RIVER

BY

W. C. GORDON

ASSISTED BY

ALFRED C. LANE

State Geologist

Published by the Board of Geological Survey as a part of the report for 1906

LANSING, MICHIGAN
WYNKOOP HALLENBECK CRAWFORD CO., STATE PRINTERS
1907

# LETTER OF TRANSMITTAL.

OFFICE OF THE STATE GEOLOGIST,
LANSING, MICHIGAN, Nov. 13, 1906.

To the Honorable, the Board of Geological Survey of the State of Michigan:

Hon. Fred M. Warner, President.
Hon. W. J. McKone.
Hon. Patrick H. Kelley, Secretary.

Gentlemen:—I herewith transmit for publication the report of W. C. Gordon on the geology, mainly of the Keweenaw rocks, from Bessemer north to Lake Superior. This is designed to call attention to an area of copper bearing rocks which have as yet received scant attention, as well as to assist us in attacking the more difficult problems of the Porcupines. Mr. Gordon resigned to take a position with the U. S. Steel Co. I have therefore added chapters on the intrusive rocks and the pre-Keweenawan rocks and given the matter general revision in passing through the press, adding foot notes freely.

Very respectfully,
ALFRED C. LANE,
State Geologist.

# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

Page

Letter of transmittal.................... 399

Introduction.................... 405

Chapter I. General description.................... 407

Chapter II. Data of surveys.................... 413

Chapter III. Stratigraphy and geological column.................... 421

Division I. Sandstone.................... 422

Division II. The Nonesuch Formation.................... 422

Division III. The Outer Conglomerate.................... 425

Division IV. The Lake Shore Trap.................... 430

Division V. Conglomerate.................... 432

Division VI. Amygdaloidal Melaphyre.................... 433

Division VII. Chippewa Felsite.................... 439

Division VIII. The Ophites.................... 441

Division IX. The Porphyrites.................... 451

Division X. The Gabbro.................... 456

Division XI. The Lowest Keweenawan Effusives.................... 457

Division XII. The Basal Sandstone.................... 460

General remarks.................... 461

Chapter IV. Faults.................... 464

In the Keweenawan.................... 464

In the Pre-Keweenawan.................... 469

Chapter V. Surface character.................... 471

Chapter VI. The Black River Run Off.................... 478

Chapter VII. Correlations.................... 483

Chapter VIII. Intrusives.................... 488

The Bad River Gabbro.................... 488

The Diabase Dikes.................... 491

Chapter IX. The Pre-Keweenawan.................... 498

Introduction.................... 498

Animikie or Neo Huronian.................... 498

Michigamme (Tyler) Bijiki (Ironwood) and Goodrich (Palms).................... 499

Missing formations.................... 500

Laurentian.................... 501

# ILLUSTRATIONS.

## PLATES.

| | Page |
|---|---|
| Plate XXXII. Geological Map of Bessemer and the Black River Road | 397 |
| Plate XXXIII. Geological Section of Bessemer and the Black River Road | 405 |
| Plate XXXIV. View of the Bessemer Gap | 469 |
| Plate XXXV. View of Falls Over Conglomerate | 481 |

## FIGURES.

| | |
|---|---|
| Figure 21 The Porcupine Mountains from the Mouth of Black River | 420 |
| Figure 22 Relative proportion of Acid and Basic Rocks in the Black River Cross Section | 420 |
| Figure 23 Section of Chippewa Hill | 442 |
| Figure 24 Sketch of Possible Faulting System | 465 |
| Figure 25 General Sketch of Dikes of Mines | 467 |
| Figure 26 Diabase Dikes and their Relations to Ore | 491 |

# INTRODUCTION.

In June, 1904, I received instructions from A. C. Lane, State Geologist, to take a party of men, go to Bessemer, and make a complete and detailed cross-section of the Keweenawan rocks as they are exposed between that place and Lake Superior. The object in making such a section was "to correlate it, as far as possible, with the lodes of Portage Lake, and Ontonagon, and to have the assistance of the same in studying the Porcupine Mountains."

As a base for the work the party was directed "to make an accurate level and transit survey of the road from Bessemer to the mouth of Black River, locating the nearest convenient corner or quarter-post where it crossed section lines, and leaving enough well marked stations to facilitate later interpolation by pacing and barometer." "Having finished the transit and level line" we were "to contour both banks of Black River, then extend the work eastward and westward from the road, not going farther west than the middle line of R. 47 W., nor farther east than the line between Secs. 2 and 3, R. 46 W." If necessary we were to survey the road running down the middle of R. 47 W.

Having finished the transit and level lines we were advised to make "a close preliminary pacing survey, and geological examination, not by running section lines, but by following stream valleys, and lines of protuberant ridges, to determine the location of every available outcrop in the district examined." In following ridges we were advised to "look out for offsets that might indicate faults." "After having been over a goodly portion of the area in a preliminary way, and entered the material on the map," the party was directed to carry out from the main line such lines of survey and water-level as might be needful in giving accurately the more important areas.

For the cleared area near Bessemer triangulation was advised.

The party consisted of Chas. E. Smith, G. Sage Brooks, J. G. Coté, and W. C. Gordon. During September A. E. Redner was with the party, and during October A. C. Lane was in the field correcting the work done, and adding such details as seemed necessary.

Mr. Smith acted as compass-man, and in addition did some geological work. His pacing was accurate far beyond that usually done in the bush, and I cannot speak too highly of his work. The party was fortunate in having him since he had himself done much geological work, and knew well how necessary it was to be accurate. Before joining our party he had acted as geologist on the Louisiana state survey, but had been obliged to return north on account of ill health. When he had somewhat recovered he accepted a position with us as it gave him a chance for a much needed out-of-doors life in a northern climate. Mr. Brooks after helping on the transit and level lines did the mapping and all of what might be called office work, if we may speak of such in the woods. Mr. Coté accompanied the party as cook, and Mr. Redner as compass-man. W. C. Gordon acted as geologist.

All the persons of the party have my acknowledgments for the interest taken, and for the efforts put forth to help the work along. In addition to these I have to acknowledge the kindness and assistance of several others; Mr. Markstrum, Mr. Fournier, and Mr. Masse for the use of their hunting camps while we were in the field; Mr. George Rupp, County surveyor, for information and assistance; Mr. Bayless, engineer for the Oliver Iron Mining Co., for use of instruments; Hon. L. L. Wright for information and assistance; Mr. L. H. Truettner and the Wis. Cent. Ry. for the use of maps. I feel also that I must make a general acknowledgment to all the people of Bessemer with whom I had dealings for never have I been located in a place where I was more cordially used.

# CHAPTER I.

## GENERAL DESCRIPTION.

Before attempting a systematic report of the work done it will be well to give some general idea of the district in which the party worked.

Bessemer is a city of about four thousand population situated on the Gogebic Iron Range. Its business portion lies largely in Sec. 10, T. 49 N., R. 46 W. See Plate XXXII. The city itself covers the whole southwest quarter of the section, and also extends into Secs. 9 and 16. It lies on the north slope of an elevation known as Colby Hill, and reaches well around the west end of it. The city cannot be said to be hilly. It is entered by the C. & N. W., and Wis. Cent. Rys., and also by a spur line of the D. S. S. & A., the main line of which passes two miles to the north. D. S. S. & A. passenger trains stop at North Bessemer, a flag station on the main line, only freight trains being run over the spur line that enters the city. The spur line joins the main line one mile east of North Bessemer, at Bessemer Junction. There are no buildings at either Bessemer Junction or North Bessemer, and no residences near either, the only structures a water tank at the former and a box car, which serves as a waiting room, at the latter. A stage plies between Bessemer and North Bessemer for the accommodation of those who wish to come or go by the D. S. S. & A. Ry. Bessemer is the county seat of Gogebic County, and so the jail and court house are situated there. Ironwood is six miles west of Bessemer and is somewhat larger. The west side of Ironwood lies against the state line between Michigan and Wisconsin. All along the Gogebic Iron Range are iron mines, and around each is a small clearing. Around Bessemer there is a considerable area under cultivation, but a distance of three miles in any direction will reach beyond the cleared land, save in the direction of Ironwood, there being a belt of cleared land along the lines of the C. & N. W. and Wis. Cent. Rys., which are parallel and only a few yards apart. Around Ironwood there is more cleared land than around Bessemer, there being a well cleared and prosperous looking farming district reaching as far north as the D. S. S. & A. Ry. Most of the farms are being cleared by Finnish settlers.

The area of which the geological section was made lies between Bessemer and Lake Superior and is four miles wide and about twelve long. Outside of this area there was no work done save to trace some of the basal strata through to the state line. The section worked is traversed through practically its whole length by Black River, along the west side of which is a wagon road, sometimes just at the river bank, and sometimes as much as a half mile distant. The road was constructed by the state government, but was handed over to the township of Ironwood in which it lies. It was originally well cut out and graded, but at the time our party was in the field it was in a very poor state of repair. However it was the intention of the township to repair it, and if the intention is carried out it will, even before this report is published, be in as good a state of repair as when it was originally constructed. The road was very convenient to the party, since it enabled us to traverse easily the area that we were working.

Black River is from one hundred to one hundred and fifty feet wide but is very shallow. The whole bed is filled with pebbles and boulders, and this, along with the shallowness of the stream, makes it quite impossible for even the smallest boat to have uninterrupted passage during low water. However, during flood season the water is several feet deep. Along the whole course of the river are rapids, some of which are small, being caused by the glacial boulders that are collected in the bed, while others, being caused by rock in place, are much larger. For about the last four miles the river flows over bed rock, and there is a succession of rapids and falls which presents very picturesque scenery. The water of the river is very dark, almost black, but I am not prepared to say whether or not this is the source of the name "Black River."

Passing along the northern limits of the city of Bessemer, and extending for some miles east and west, is a ridge rising from two hundred to two hundred and fifty feet above the surrounding country. Parallel with this ridge, and lying a little more than a half mile to the north, is a similar ridge. Each is made up of a series of hills, those in the south range having a much greater tendency to develop cliffy sides, and bald tops but the tendency is not wholly wanting in the north range. Since these ridges must be often referred to in this report they will be spoken of as "The Bessemer Ridges." These ridges are often broken through by north and south gaps, varying in width from a hundred yards to over a mile. One of these gaps (Plate XXXIV) lying directly north of Bessemer, must often be spoken of and will be called "The Bessemer Gap."

North of the Bessemer Ridges is a belt of lower land running east and west, and for the most part over five miles wide. The D. S. S. & A. Ry. runs along the north side of this lower land. This belt is drift covered, and without exposure save where Black River has cut down to the country rock in Sec. 21, T. 49 N., R. 46 W. North of this drift covered country and lying on the western edge of the area worked, is a felsite hill, or, at least, a hill with a felsite top and a melaphyre base. The hill is known as "Chippewa Bluff," or, sometimes, as "Old Peak." Each of the two names is derived from mining companies that explored there, the Chippewa Mining Company about 1850, and The Old Peak Company about 1900. The name Chippewa Hill will be used in this report because it has the claim of priority. The hill slopes quite rapidly both to the north and to the south, but more gently to the west, while at the east end there is a steep bluff. The top of the hill is about three hundred feet above the surrounding country. The road spoken of winds around the eastern foot of the hill, and so closely to it that the overhanging bluff is plainly visible, especially when the leaves are off the trees. The hill just described lies almost wholly within Sec. 32, T. 49 N., R. 46 W.

Eastward from Chippewa Hill, and distant about a mile or a mile and a half, is an elevated area of more than two square miles. This area is more than two hundred feet above the surrounding land. It has not a broad flat top, but there are several elevations and depressions, but all of minor importance. There are several places on it with a level surface of several acres. The soil is thin over the whole elevation, and in several places there are rock outcrops. In this report this elevation will be called "the Black River Highlands." It includes practically all of Secs. 3 and 4, T. 48 N., and the greater part of Secs. 33 and 34, T. 49 N., R. 46 W.

Between Chippewa Hill and the Black River Highlands is a low country which is level, save for the valley of Black River, which flows across it, and for ravines caused by small streams tributary to the river.

North of the Black River Highlands the land slopes gradually to the lake. At the lake shore there is a clay bank about one hundred feet high. On the west side of the river the land is level for a distance of about two miles north of Chippewa Hill, then there is an east and west ridge rising about two or three hundred feet. Since this ridge is caused by a conglomerate formation it will be called "Conglomerate Ridge." From this ridge the land slopes to the lake which is from a mile to a mile and a half. The ridge has a rather steep slope on the north side beyond which is a series of old lake terraces. At the lake shore is a clay bank about one hundred feet high. All these things taken together make quite a change in elevation from the crest of the ridge to the surface of the lake.

Black River takes its rise about twelve miles south of Bessemer, and a few miles east. For about six miles it makes a general northwest direction, then for eight miles a northeast direction, and passes nearly three miles to the east of Bessemer. Directly east of Bessemer it is joined by another stream known as the "East Branch" of Black River. When the river is about two miles past this branch it turns directly west and flows in that direction for about five miles. It is after making two miles of this westerly direction that it enters the area worked by us during the summer of 1904. Thus, when Black River comes into our field of work it is flowing west along the north foot of the north Bessemer Ridge. When within a mile of the range line between 46 and 47 west it turns north, and then making somewhat to the east it flows across the low land between Chippewa Hill and the Black River Highlands. As it continues northward it is forced still farther east by the Conglomerate Ridge, beyond which it takes a direct route to the lake. It rises in R. 45 W., but soon enters R. 46, and after entering that range never leaves it. Before getting nearly down to Bessemer it is half way across the range, but flows back again almost to the east line. After passing Bessemer it flows almost to the west line, then takes a general easterly direction and empties into Lake Superior near the middle of the range. The area that it drains is limited on the west by the Montreal River, and on the east by the Presque Isle, so that it does not drain much more than R. 46 W., possibly between one hundred and fifty and one hundred and seventy-five square miles.

In Bessemer Gap are some prosperous looking farms, but the D. S. S. & A. Ry. is near the northern limit of cleared land, and from it to Lake Superior is nothing but forest. The area worked is covered with bush save in the neighborhood of Bessemer. Traversing it from north to south is the Black River Road.

Our only rock outcrops were found on the hills, or in the bed of Black River. Bessemer Ridges gave almost continuous outcrops. On Chippewa Hill we found outcrops of felsite with basic rocks beneath. On the Black River Highlands were found numerous exposures of melaphyre. Black River has succeeded in cutting through the drift that covers the country and has exposed much rock, and, since its course is nearly at right angles to the strike of the formation, the river bed is very useful in working out a cross-section. In the upper part of the stream the exposures are few, but they increase in number toward the mouth, and for the last five or six miles there is almost a continuous outcrop. There are no rock exposures in the district save those spoken of above. The general surface of the country is about six hundred feet above Lake Superior, and about twelve hundred above the ocean. Being drift covered it has no outcrops save where portions are elevated, or where water has removed the covering. Much of the land is dry, and some is swampy. Especially along the line between Rs. 46 and 47 W. there is a tendency to swamps and bogs. On the whole the country is easily traversed, but in many places walking is extremely difficult, because of cedar swamps or the thick underbrush that has grown up in areas where there are wind falls.

The first work done was to run the transit and level lines along the road from Bessemer to Lake Superior. The two were carried along together. To begin the transit work Polaris was observed from the quarter post between Secs. 4 and 9, T. 47 N., R. 46 W., and the correct bearing established between that station and the quarter post one mile to the north. This was easily done as there is an iron pin at each station, and a good road running down the centre of the section from one quarter post to the other. From the point of observation the line was carried forward toward the lake, but the work was necessarily slow, because the crooked road, made narrow by the overhanging bushes with thick foliage, made long sights with the instruments impossible, and greatly increased the number of set-ups required. At each station a peg was numbered, and driven into the ground, and on a tree on the road side a blaze was made and the station number placed on it. The road was carefully chained from station to station throughout its whole length, and the passing of all important places or things, such as streams, camps and so on carefully noted.

In doing the leveling an engineer's level was used. The rod was divided carefully into feet and tenths of feet. These were patterned alternately in red and black on white back-ground. Readings could be taken accurately to tenths of a foot, and the hundredths were estimated. The road was run in three parts, and each part was run and closed as a separate course, so that in case error was made it would be known which part of the road it was in. By leveling the road in sections we were able to close the work at each camp before we established another. Bench-marks were carefully established, a notch at the foot of a tree being used in most cases, a spike being put in the notch. On the side of the tree a place was peeled and the elevation of the bench-mark written with a timber scribe, and will, no doubt, be there for some time to come as healthy trees were selected. The elevations as marked on trees are above Lake Superior. To find the elevation above sea level about 602 feet should be added. In three cases the tops of iron pins were used as bench-marks, these are the pins along the road across Sec. 4, T. 47 N., R. 46 W., and in a few cases the elevations of points that it was known would soon be lost were established, but they were established merely for the convenience of the party while at work, and it was never expected nor intended that they should serve a further purpose. One such is the floor of a shack in which we stayed in Sec. 3, T. 47 N., R. 46 W., and another is a stump a half mile north of Bessemer, and still another is a point at Thomas' hunting camp.

After the transit and level lines were finished courses were paced at regular intervals from the base line to the river so as to secure an accurate map of the latter. In addition the whole course of the river was followed and paced, every bend carefully mapped, and every rapid, water-fall, and rock outcrop noted and located as accurately as was possible. While doing the river work we were obliged to wade, but that did not prove a very difficult task during the summer, as the water was seldom more than knee deep, and was warm, conditions that we did not continue to enjoy when the rains and the cold weather began in the fall.

After mapping the river the party began to work the area by sections. In as far as possible all pacing was tied to the base line, but where such was not possible the corners and quarters of the sections were used. Fully three-quarters of the corners were found. Of those not located, no doubt some were missed because of errors in pacing but others are probably destroyed. In only a few cases were all four bearing trees found, but many are still standing and in good condition. In many places the old survey lines could be found and followed by the blazes now well healed over. But in following such lines it was necessary to exercise great care because numerous other lines were blazed through the bush. In some places corners and quarters had been recently established, but these were wholly disregarded except they bore the name of a surveyor. Only those corners and quarters were accepted as true that bore the name of a surveyor or the original government marks. Bushmen have a curious and unfortunate habit of establishing lines, quarters, and corners where it seems to them that they should be because of their own pacing, and many pace very inaccurately. In one case a corner was neatly established, and four bearing trees made, while the correct corner was distant about one hundred and fifty paces, and in good preservation. Knowing the possibility of error of a corner or quarter established by any one save a surveyor, it seemed best to disregard all others beyond merely making a note of the fact.

The method of work was as follows: Each morning before leaving camp the aneroid barometer was set at the elevation of the place, which elevation had been previously determined by the line of levels. Also the inches registered was compared with the inches registered by the barograph kept in camp. We checked the instruments on returning to camp after the day's work was done. The barograph enabled us to correct our readings for change in air pressure, while the checking of the aneroid with the barograph enabled us to correct for the error caused by the slipping of the instrument, which is sometimes the cause of considerable error.

In the field we started at a section corner, and the compass-man, guiding himself by means of his compass, paced toward the corner one mile away. At each hundred paces he stopped and gave the reading of the aneroid. He also gave the reading at the tops of hills, the bottoms of ravines, or any other points of importance. When the mile was finished the error was checked and recorded as "20 paces too far north, 16 too for east." After finishing the mile another was run parallel to it and 500 paces distant, or if the section was important for any reason, lines were run at intervals of 250 paces. All the streams, and all the ridges that had outcrops were carefully followed. All the readings taken were corrected from the barograph sheets, and a map compiled by the man who remained in camp.

All notes were kept on a basis of 2,000 paces to the mile, but no person was required to pace a mile in exactly 2,000 paces, but was directed to pace the mile with the step that was natural to him, and to give the aneroid reading at every twentieth of a mile. Smith paced the mile in 1,800 paces; he therefore gave his tally at the end of 90 paces, and 100 was entered in the notes. Trying to pace with an unnatural step proved very unsatisfactory, while correction to a basis of 2,000 was easily done in the field. In this case all that was required was to add the tens figure before entering the data in the notes. Thus if a stream were crossed at 70 paces, 77 was recorded.

I shall not attempt to give the average error in pacing for the season. It would be considerable work to make the average, and would be of little use because the sections themselves have more or less error in the original surveys. It was hoped to keep the error less than two per cent, and I do not think that it exceeded that figure.

# CHAPTER II.

## DATA OF SURVEYS.

The transit line:—The quarter pin between Secs. 4 and 9, T. 47 N., R. 46 W., is an iron rod driven into the road. It is about two inches square, and is in the south wheel track, directly out from the fence that runs north and south across the centre of Sec. 9. It is not covered more than an inch beneath the gravel. The north quarter pin of Sec. 4 is a round iron rod about an inch in diameter, and is near the west side of the road. The centre line of the section approaches the west side of the road as it goes north. Polaris was observed from the quarter pin between Secs. 4 and 9, T. 47 N., R. 46 W., and the true bearing between this point and the quarter pin one mile north was established. The centre pin of the section which is a round iron rod driven on the west side of the wheel road but on the east of the ditch was found to lie in line with the other two. The bearing of the line is N. 00°-07′-00″ E., that is there is an error of 7′ in the line as originally established. The transit was set up at the north quarter pin of Sec. 4 and the line carried forward from that point.

It does not seem wise to reproduce here the complete survey notes as taken in the field. In many places only short sights were possible because of the dense foliage on the overhanging bushes. But sufficient is published here to enable one to draw a complete map of the road. The station numbers are not changed, but are the same here as in the original notes taken in the field. A width of one chain is allowed for the road, and where a number of successive stations fall within that width of one chain only the first and last are given. The latitude and departure of each are given and from these is worked out the bearing from one to the other. The bearing and distance from each station marked on the map is given to the next that is marked; also, the latitude and departure of each station marked on the map. The numbers along the road on the map refer to the station numbers.

## DESCRIPTION OF BENCH MARKS ALONG BLACK RIVER ROAD.

| Elevation. | | Position. | | Description. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Above lake. | Above sea. | Lat. | Dep. | |
| 765.30 | 1,367.70 | ............ | ............ | Near the N. E. corner S. 3 T. 47 N. R. 46 W. The floor of a shack. Not permanent. |
| 763.00 | 1,365.40 | −80+00 | +40+00 | Top of an old stump at corner 3-4-9-10 T. 47 N. R. 46 W. Not permanent. |
| 802.30 | 1,404.70 | −80+00 | 00+00 | Top of an iron quarter pin 4–9 T. 47 N. R. 46 W. Pin is about 2 inches in diameter and is in the road in front of the school house. It is in the south wheel track and directly on the line down the center of Sec. 9. Buried not more than two inches. |
| 739.80 | 1,342.20 | −40+00 | 00+00 | Top of center pin S. 4 T. 47 N. R. 46 W. A round iron pin about one inch in diameter on the west side of the road and on the east side of the ditch. Not covered. |
| 684.80 | 1,286.20 | 00+00 | 00+00 | A square iron pin about 1.5 inch in diameter on the west side of the road and not 10 feet from the fence. Covered with about two inches of soil. This B. M. is station No. 1 of the transit line. |
| 585.32 | 1,187.72 | +17+50 | −11+00 | Notch near the bottom of a birch tree, two ft. in diameter on the east side of road just south of D., S. S. & A. track. |
| 668.27 | 1,270.67 | +33+50 | −69+50 | Elm tree 30 inches in diameter about one-fourth mile from top of hill. South side of road. |
| 698.58 | 1,300.98 | +171+50 | −118+50 | Maple 20 inches in diameter at junction of main road and six mile creek road, about 3 chains north of creek. |
| 594.79 | 1,197.19 | +214+00 | −84+00 | Maple tree on east side of road, near old log road to river. |
| 556.61 | 1;163.01 | +311+50 | −74+00 | Maple tree on east side of road at the Narrows. |
| 540.60 | 1,143.00 | +344+50 | −93+50 | Maple tree, east side of road on north bank of south branch of Eight Mile creek. |
| 568.30 | 1,170.70 | +354+00 | −101+50 | Maple tree, west side of road on north bank of north branch of Eight Mile creek. |
| 576.73 | 1,179.13 | +441+50 | −115+00 | Maple tree 20 feet west of road. |
| 609.86 | 1,212.26 | +504+50 | −95+50 | West side of road just south of Old Peak Mining Camp. |
| 574.11 | 1,176.51 | +640+50 | −78+00 | Cherry tree on east edge of road, near fill in ravine. Road bends east at this point. |
| 560.64 | 1,163.04 | +847+50 | −13+00 | Top of stump at Thomas' hunting camp. |
| 387.20 | 989.60 | +915+50 | +24+00 | Hemlock on west side of road on south bank of creek. |
| 282.42 | 884.82 | +966+00 | +48+50 | Small cherry tree 10 feet on east side of road. |
| 171.81 | 774.21 | +1,021+00 | +60+50 | Maple tree 20 inches in diameter, east of main road. |
| 146.13 | 748.53 | 1,030+50 | +63+50 | Hemlock tree east of road near bridge over small ravine. |

Latitude and departure are reckoned from the south quarterpost Sec. 4, T. 48 N., R. 46 W.

## RECORD OF SURVEY OF BLACK RIVER ROAD.

| Station. | | Bearing. | Distance. | | Latitude. | | | | Departure. | | | | Remarks. |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | Total. | | | Total. | | | | Total. | | |
| | | | | | + (N) | − (S) | + (N) | − (S) | + (E) | − (W) | + (E) | − (W) | |
| 1 | 4 | N 30° 02′ W | 15+195 | 15+195 | 13+153 | | 13+153 | | | 7+605 | | 7+605 | Sta. No. 1 is Q. P. between 4-47-46 and 33-48-46. From Sta. No. 1 a backsight was taken on Q. P. 4-9-47-46 the bearing between the two Q. P's. having been ascertained as N. 0-07 W. by observation of Polaris. Sta. No. 4 is one chain past bridge over Coxey creek. |
| 4 | 5 | N 58 27 W | 4+236 | 19+431 | 2+217 | | 15+370 | | | 4+177 | | 11+215 | |
| 5 | 6 | N 40 34 W | 5+000 | 24+431 | 3+798 | | 19+168 | | | 3+251 | | 14+467 | |
| 6 | 8 | N 87 10 W | 13+640 | 38+071 | 0+671 | | 19+839 | | | 13+583 | | 28+050 | |
| 8 | 9 | N 67 09 W | 4+520 | 42+591 | 1+755 | | 21+595 | | | 4+165 | | 32+216 | |
| 9 | 10 | N 85 43 W | 8+000 | 50+591 | 0+595 | | 22+190 | | | 7+978 | | 40+193 | 1+12 from No. 9 is a stream 8 feet wide flowing N. 7+00 from No. 9 is Powder Mill creek flowing N. No. 10 at edge of farm on section line between 32 and 33-48-46. |
| 10 | 11 | S 83 55 W | 7+000 | 57+591 | | 0+742 | 21+448 | | | 6+960 | | 47+154 | |
| 11 | 12 | N 76 45 W | 3+565 | 61+156 | 0+838 | | 22+285 | | | 3+557 | | 50+711 | No. 12 at top of hill. |
| 12 | 15 | N 62 25 W | 21+031 | 82+187 | 9+730 | | 32+015 | | | 18+619 | | 69+330 | B. M. 668.27 is 1+60 south of No. 15. |
| 15 | 17 | N 60 23 W | 20+078 | 102+265 | 9+903 | | 41+918 | | | 17+423 | | 86+753 | |
| 17 | 23 | N 53 29 W | 54+346 | 156+611 | 32+336 | | 74+254 | | | 43+664 | | 130+417 | |
| 23 | 24 | N 00 29 E | 10+923 | 167+534 | 10+923 | | 85+177 | | 0+092 | | | 130+325 | |
| 24 | 30 | N 02 38 E | 66+165 | 233+699 | 66+083 | | 151+260 | | 3+045 | | | 127+280 | |
| 30 | 31 | N 28 46 E | 11+820 | 245+519 | 10+361 | | 161+621 | | 5+688 | | | 121+592 | No. on section line 1+12 west of corner 19-20-29-30-48-46. |
| 31 | 32 | N 33 05 E | 2+448 | 247+967 | 2+051 | | 163+672 | | 1+336 | | | 120+255 | |
| 32 | 34 | N 15 27 E | 8+209 | 256+176 | 7+783 | | 171+455 | | 2+150 | | | 118+106 | No. 34 at junction of main road and road to Black river. |
| 34 | 41 | N 01 03 W | 3+514 | 259+690 | 3+513 | | 174+968 | | | 0+064 | | 118+170 | |

## RECORD OF SURVEY OF BLACK RIVER ROAD.—*Continued.*

| Station. | | Bearing. | Distance. | | Latitude. | | | | Departure. | | | | Remarks. |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | Total. | | | Total. | | | | Total. | | |
| | | | | | + (N) | − (S) | + (N) | − (S) | + (E) | − (W) | + (E) | − (W) | |
| 41 | 43 | N 10° 19′ E | 8+520 | 268+210 | 8+374 | .......... | 183+342 | ........ | 1+525 | .......... | .......... | 116+645 | |
| 43 | 44 | N 31 57 E | 2+882 | 271+092 | 2+451 | .......... | 185+793 | ........ | 1+524 | .......... | .......... | 115+121 | |
| 44 | 45 | N 47 12 E | 3+421 | 274+513 | 2+324 | .......... | 188+118 | ........ | 2+510 | .......... | .......... | 112+611 | |
| 45 | 46 | N 70 31 E | 3+849 | 278+362 | 1+284 | .......... | 189+402 | ........ | 3+628 | .......... | .......... | 108+982 | |
| 46 | 48 | N 42 15 E | 7+938 | 286+350 | 5+896 | .......... | 195+298 | ........ | 5+358 | .......... | .......... | 103+625 | |
| 48 | 55 | N 46 44 E | 27+942 | 314+292 | 18+710 | .......... | 214+008 | ........ | 20+698 | .......... | .......... | 82+926 | B. M. 594.79—20 links N. of No. 55. |
| 55 | 56 | N 24 27 E | 3+398 | 317+090 | 3+093 | .......... | 217+101 | ........ | 1+406 | .......... | .......... | 81+520 | |
| 56 | 57 | N 16 34 E | 8+339 | 326+029 | 7+993 | .......... | 225+094 | ........ | 2+378 | .......... | .......... | 79+142 | |
| 57 | 58 | N 08 33 E | 4+744 | 330+773 | 4+691 | .......... | 229+785 | ........ | 0+705 | .......... | .......... | 78+437 | |
| 58 | 60 | N 03 00 E | 10+325 | 341+098 | 10+311 | .......... | 240+096 | ........ | 0+540 | .......... | .......... | 77+896 | No. 60 top of little hill. |
| 60 | 61 | N 12 00 E | 16+750 | 357+848 | 16+384 | .......... | 256+480 | ........ | 3+482 | .......... | .......... | 74+414 | |
| 61 | 62 | N 05 04 E | 6+135 | 363+983 | 6+111 | .......... | 262+591 | ........ | 0+542 | .......... | .......... | 73+872 | B. M. 579.17 is 1+10 N. of No. 62. |
| 62 | 63 | N 07 08 W | 8+726 | 372+709 | 8+659 | .......... | 271+250 | ........ | ........ | 1+084 | .......... | 74+956 | |
| 63 | 67 | N 02 35 E | 33+746 | 406+455 | 33+708 | .......... | 304+958 | ........ | 1+523 | .......... | .......... | 73+443 | |
| 67 | 68 | N 01 18 W | 4+997 | 411+452 | 4+996 | .......... | 309+954 | ........ | ........ | 0+113 | .......... | 73+646 | |
| 68 | 69 | N 18 57 W | 1+514 | 412+966 | 1+433 | .......... | 311+386 | ........ | ........ | 0+492 | .......... | 74+038 | B. M. 556.61 is 0+50 N. of No. 69. River bank 1+00 E. The Narrows. |
| 69 | 73 | N 44 31 W | 23+637 | 436+603 | 16+847 | .......... | 328+233 | ........ | ........ | 16+564 | .......... | 90+601 | |
| 73 | 74 | N 27 35 W | 1+996 | 438+599 | 1+770 | .......... | 330+003 | ........ | ........ | 0+923 | .......... | 91+524 | |
| 74 | 75 | N 08 16 W | 2+980 | 441+579 | 2+950 | .......... | 332+953 | ........ | ........ | 0+428 | .......... | 91+953 | |
| 75 | 76 | N 02 25 W | 8+554 | 450+133 | 8+515 | .......... | 341+468 | ........ | ........ | 0+361 | .......... | 92+313 | |

| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 76 | 77 | N 27° 06′ W | 3+057 | 453+190 | 2+721 | .......... | 344+189 | ...... | .......... | 1+393 | .......... | 93+706 | No. 77 top of N. Bank of S. branch of Eight Mile creek. Bridge 1+60 from No. 76. B. M. 540.06 is 0+80 E. of No. 77. |
| 77 | 79 | N 45 12 W | 10+607 | 463+797 | 7+469 | .......... | 351+658 | ...... | .......... | 7+522 | .......... | 101+228 | No. 79 top of S. bank of N. branch of Eight Mile creek. |
| 79 | 80 | N 33 13 W | 6+215 | 470+012 | 5+199 | .......... | 356+857 | ...... | .......... | 3+405 | .......... | 104+633 | 2+65 from No. 79 bridge. |
| 80 | 83 | N 50 15 W | 8+953 | 478+965 | 5+718 | .......... | 362+575 | ...... | .......... | 6+876 | .......... | 111+509 | B. M. 568.30 is 2+65 N. of No. 79 and 0+60 W. |
| 83 | 84 | N 42 16 W | 6+463 | 485+428 | 4+783 | .......... | 367+358 | ...... | .......... | 4+347 | .......... | 115+856 | |
| 84 | 85 | N 18 59 W | 1+433 | 486+861 | 1+355 | .......... | 368+713 | ...... | .......... | 0+466 | .......... | 116+322 | |
| 85 | 86 | N 03 33 W | 5+987 | 492+848 | 5+975 | .......... | 374+688 | ...... | .......... | 0+371 | .......... | 116+693 | |
| 86 | 87 | N 01 32 E | 2+125 | 494+973 | 2+124 | .......... | 376+812 | ...... | 0+057 | .......... | .......... | 116+636 | |
| 87 | 88 | N 07 04 W | 1+715 | 496+688 | 1+706 | .......... | 378+518 | ...... | .......... | 0+211 | .......... | 116+847 | |
| 88 | 89 | N 20 47 W | 2+839 | 499+527 | 2+654 | .......... | 381+173 | ...... | .......... | 1+007 | .......... | 117+855 | |
| 89 | 90 | N 02 47 E | 6+150 | 505+677 | 6+143 | .......... | 387+315 | ...... | 0+299 | .......... | .......... | 117+556 | |
| 90 | 91 | N 17 53 E | 4+800 | 510+477 | 4+568 | .......... | 391+883 | ...... | 1+474 | .......... | .......... | 116+082 | |
| 91 | 92 | N 05 55 E | 1+001 | 511+478 | 0+996 | .......... | 392+879 | ...... | 0+103 | .......... | .......... | 115+979 | |
| 92 | 93 | N 00 49 W | 3+632 | 515+110 | 3+632 | .......... | 396+511 | ...... | .......... | 0+576 | .......... | 116+036 | |
| 93 | 95 | N 01 50 E | 10+258 | 525+368 | 10+249 | .......... | 406+760 | ...... | 0+328 | .......... | .......... | 115+709 | |
| 95 | 99 | N 01 20 E | 16+558 | 541+926 | 16+485 | .......... | 423+255 | ...... | 0+384 | .......... | .......... | 115+325 | |
| 99 | 100 | N 01 16 E | 18+374 | 560+300 | 18+370 | .......... | 441+625 | ...... | 0+406 | .......... | .......... | 114+919 | |
| 100 | 103 | N 13 56 E | 10+953 | 571+253 | 10+621 | .......... | 452+246 | ...... | 2+633 | .......... | .......... | 112+286 | |
| 103 | 104 | N 07 21 E | 3+834 | 575+087 | 3+802 | .......... | 456+048 | ...... | 0+490 | .......... | .......... | 111+796 | |
| 104 | 106 | N 14 14 E | 12+227 | 587+314 | 11+839 | .......... | 467+887 | ...... | 3+029 | .......... | .......... | 108+766 | |
| 106 | 107 | N 06 25 E | 1+699 | 589+013 | 1+688 | .......... | 469+575 | ...... | 0+190 | .......... | .......... | 108+576 | |
| 107 | 109 | N 13 58 E | 12+578 | 601+591 | 12+204 | .......... | 481+779 | ...... | 3+041 | .......... | .......... | 105+536 | |
| 109 | 115 | N 23 16 E | 25+258 | 626+839 | 23+189 | .......... | 504+968 | ...... | 9+974 | .......... | .......... | 95+562 | Old Peak Mining Camp 2+00 N. of No. 115. |
| 115 | 119 | N 22 35 E | 25+122 | 651+961 | 23+008 | .......... | 527+976 | ...... | 9+992 | .......... | .......... | 85+569 | |
| 119 | 122 | N 05 18 W | 10+048 | 662+009 | 9+997 | .......... | 537+973 | ...... | .......... | 0+927 | .......... | 86+496 | |
| 122 | 123 | N 00 46 E | 2+164 | 664+173 | 2+164 | .......... | 540+137 | ...... | 0+029 | .......... | .......... | 86+525 | |
| 123 | 125 | N 12 23 E | 5+424 | 669+597 | 5+288 | .......... | 545+425 | ...... | 1+139 | .......... | .......... | 85+385 | |
| 125 | 129 | N 37 33 E | 9+885 | 679+482 | 7+692 | .......... | 553+117 | ...... | 5+915 | .......... | .......... | 79+471 | |

RECORD OF SURVEY OF BLACK RIVER ROAD.—*Concluded.*

| Station. | | Bearing. | Distance. | | Latitude. | | | | Departure. | | | | Remarks. |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | Total. | | | Total. | | | | Total. | | |
| | | | | | + (N) | − (S) | + (N) | −(S) | + (E) | + (W) | + (E) | −(W) | |
| 129 | 130 | N 13° 27′ E | 2+237 | 681+719 | 2+176 | .......... | 555+293 | ...... | 0+520 | .......... | .......... | 78+949 | No. 130 top of hill. |
| 130 | 134 | N 10 07 E | 43+977 | 725+696 | 43+296 | .......... | 598+579 | ...... | 7+735 | .......... | .......... | 71+214 | Spring creek 6+00 N. of No. 130. |
| 134 | 135 | N 02 15 E | 3+880 | 729+576 | 3+877 | .......... | 602+456 | ...... | 0+152 | .......... | .......... | 71+062 | |
| 135 | 136 | N 03 30 W | 10+785 | 740+361 | 10+765 | .......... | 613+221 | ...... | .......... | 0+658 | .......... | 71+720 | |
| 136 | 140 | N 20 50 W | 16+108 | 756+469 | 14+902 | .......... | 628+123 | ...... | .......... | 5+674 | .......... | 77+394 | |
| 140 | 142 | N 06 31 W | 10+280 | 766+749 | 10+184 | .......... | 638+307 | ...... | .......... | 1+165 | .......... | 78+559 | |
| 142 | 143 | N 08 44 E | 1+890 | 768+639 | 1+870 | .......... | 640+177 | ...... | 0+287 | .......... | .......... | 78+272 | |
| 143 | 165 | N 52 11 E | 93+221 | 861+860 | 57+081 | .......... | 697+258 | ...... | 73+526 | .......... | .......... | 4+745 | 78+73 from No. 143 Thomas' hunting camp. |
| 165 | 176 | N 31 36 E | 36+508 | 898+368 | 31+439 | .......... | 728+697 | ...... | 19+974 | .......... | 15+229 | | |
| 176 | 181 | N 28 29 E | 29+655 | 928+023 | 25+448 | .......... | 754+145 | ...... | 14+005 | .......... | 29+234 | | |
| 181 | 186 | N 37 07 E | 30+001 | 958+024 | 23+870 | .......... | 778+015 | ...... | 18+065 | .......... | 47+993 | | |
| 186 | 189 | N 21 06 E | 16+497 | 974+521 | 15+254 | .......... | 793+269 | ...... | 5+885 | .......... | 53+184 | | |
| 190 | 195 | N 18 43 E | 25+183 | 999+704 | 23+264 | .......... | 816+535 | ...... | 7+868 | .......... | 61+052 | | |
| 195 | 198 | N 09 20 W | 7+837 | 100+541 | 7+658 | .......... | 824+191 | ...... | .......... | 1+258 | 59+794 | | |
| 198 | 201 | N 11 24 E | 7+383 | 1,014+924 | 6+111 | .......... | 831+302 | ...... | 1+233 | .......... | 61+027 | | |
| 201 | 204 | N 09 49 E | 15+719 | 1,030+643 | 15+086 | .......... | 846+389 | ...... | 2+610 | .......... | 63+637 | | |
| 204 | 206 | N 07 47 W | 10+677 | 1,041+320 | 10+499 | .......... | 856+881 | ...... | .......... | 1+438 | 62+205 | | |
| 206 | 210 | N 08 59 E | 18+659 | 1,059+979 | 18+436 | .......... | 875+317 | ...... | 2+529 | .......... | 64+733 | | |
| 210 | 211 | N 37 19 E | 4+317 | 1,064+296 | 3+433 | .......... | 878+751 | ...... | 2+617 | .......... | 67+350 | | |
| 211 | 212 | N 03 00 E | 3+450 | 1,067+746 | 3+445 | .......... | 882+196 | ...... | 0+181 | .......... | 67+531 | | |

## *The Leveling.*

The road was leveled in three parts, and each part closed as a separate survey. The first extends from the quarter pin at the south end of the transit line, and extends to just north of Six Mile Creek, where there is a road going east from the main road to the river. The bench mark on which we closed this course is at the junction of the two roads. The second part of the leveling extends from the same bench mark to the north side of the north branch of Eight Mile Creek. The third part extends to the lake. As several bench marks were read on, both in going and coming, any error made was known to be within very small limits. Another line was run with the water level from the north quarter pin Sec. 4, T. 47 N., R. 46 W. south one mile along the road across the centre of Sec. 4, then east one-half mile between Secs. 4 and 9, then S. W. across Sec. 3 to the S. W. corner of the section where one of our camps was located. This line was not closed.

An initial bench mark was taken near Six Mile Creek, at our first camp, and an elevation above Lake Superior assumed for it. The elevation of the lake on the day that we reached it with the line of levels was ascertained from the government office at Houghton, so that all the elevations taken during the summer were easily reduced to sea level.

The bench marks have their elevations recorded above Lake Superior, but the contour lines on the map are above sea level.

All the bench marks were originally numbered, but in this report the bench marks are known simply by their elevation above Lake Superior.

The elevation of the lake on the day that we reached it was 602.40 feet above sea level.[1]

The total closing error of the leveling of the whole road was 0.47 feet.

Above (p. 414) is given a record of the bench marks established.

Below are printed some facts that may prove of interest to those living in Bessemer and vicinity, or they may prove, not only of interest, but of value to those who have work to do in the district.

From the Court House to North Bessemer is 2.40 miles, to the top of the hill beyond the D. S. S. & A. Ry. is 2.80 miles, to where the road changes from a westerly direction to north 4.00 miles, to Six Mile Creek 5.25 miles, to the Narrows 7.40 miles, to the south branch of Eight Mile Creek 7.75 miles, to the north branch 8.00 miles, to Old Peak mining camp 10.00 miles, to Thomas' hunting camp 12.70 miles, and to the mouth of Black River 15.50 miles. When the road passes North Bessemer it turns well west. At the end of this westerly part of the road one is 2.13 miles west of Bessemer and 2.55 miles north. There is no other point in the road so far west as this point. Old Peak mining camp is 1.75 miles farther west than the Court House. Thomas' hunting camp is about a mile farther east than Old Peak mining camp, and about 0.75 farther west than the Court House. The mouth of Black River is almost due north of the Chicago and Northwestern depot in Bessemer, and 12.75 miles from it in a straight line.

The "lake hill," (Fig. 21) the top of the terrace near the lake, is just 100 feet above Lake Superior. The hill south of the D. S. S. & A. Ry. at

---

[1] Portage Lake gauge.

North Bessemer is 99.5 feet and that on the other side 97 feet. The iron pin in front of the little schoolhouse one mile from Bessemer is 802 feet above the lake, and the same little schoolhouse is farther above the top of North Bessemer hill than the top of the hill is above the railroad track by about fifteen feet. The highest point on the bare hills west of Bessemer is 1,720 feet above the lake, and the highest point on the hills to the east 1,800 feet.[1] Chippewa Hill is 1,520, and the Conglomerate Ridge to the north 1,460, while the one to the east across the river is 1,480 feet.

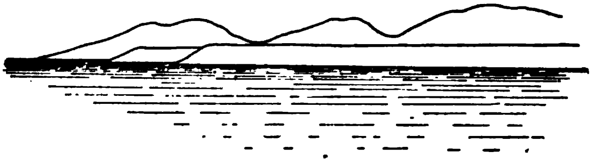
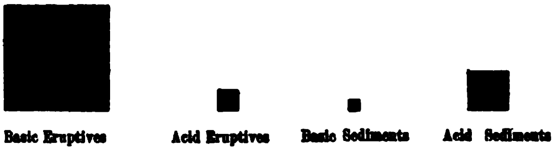


Fig. 21.—The Porcupine Mountains from the mouth of Black River. The "lake hill," or terrace 702 A. T. is well shown. There is also a suggestion of the pene-plain, though the highest parts of the Porcupine Mountains rise as "monadnocks" slightly above it.

Fig. 22.



Relative proportion of the kinds of rock exposed in the Black River cross section of the Keweenawan Series.

---

[1] In Upper Michigan there are a large number of accordant hill tops at an elevation of just a little less than 1,800 feet, which may therefore be a pene-plain. L.

# CHAPTER III.

## STRATIGRAPHY AND GEOLOGIC COLUMN.

The Keweenawan rocks, as displayed in Black River, are made up of Irving's two divisions, the Upper and the Lower. The contact is seen in the N. E. 1/4 of the N. E. 1/4, Sec. 21, T. 49 N., R. 46 W.

The Upper Keweenawan is made up wholly of sedimentary rocks, as, indeed, would be necessary from Irving's basis of division because he makes the base of the horizon that point, "which is above any known occurence of eruptive matter." In the Black River section it is made up of two formations, the Nonesuch formation (II) and the Outer Conglomerate (III), the "main body of sandstone" (I) not appearing on Black River. The Nonesuch is basic and the Conglomerate acid. The former is about 500 feet thick, and the latter about 5,000, making a total thickness of about 5,500 feet for the Upper Keweenawan on Black River.

The Lower Keweenawan is made up of mixed sedimentaries and eruptives, the latter predominating and always increasing in proportion to the whole as the base is approached. For the sake of convenience the Lower Keweenawan is in this report divided as follows:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| IV | Lake Shore Trap | 500 | feet |
| V | Conglomerate | 350 | |
| VI | Mixed eruptives and sedimentaries | 5,500 | |
| VII | Felsite | 450 | |
| VIII | Eruptives with very few sedimentaries | 26,000 | |
| IX | Mixed eruptives among which are conspicuous labradorite porphyrites | 4,800 | |
| X | Gabbro | 200 | |
| XI | Melaphyres and labradorite porphyrites that are not conspicuous | 4,500 | |
| XII | Basal sandstone | 300 | |
| | Total Lower Keweenawan | 42,500 | feet |
| | Upper Keweenawan | 5,500 | feet |
| | Lower Keweenawan | 42,500 | |
| | Total Keweenawan | 48,000 | feet |

The stratigraphy will be considered in this report under the headings briefly outlined above.

## *Division I. Sandstone.*

(1.) Sandstone:—The geologically highest rock noted in the work of the season was a sandstone. This sandstone does not outcrop in the Black River section proper, but is exposed on the shore of Lake Superior about five miles west. It is what Irving spoke of as "the main body of sandstone." There was practically no work done on it; so no extensive report concerning it can be made here. The chief reason for trying to locate it was so that the upper contact of the underlying Nonesuch would be known. The outcrop of this sandstone on the lake shore is just about where the line between Secs. 14 and 15, T. 49 N., R. 47 W., comes down to the shore. The outcrop was located by pacing from the line between Rs. 46 and 47 W., and so required the pacing of a distance of two miles along a gravel beach where the walking was not easy, hence there may be some error in placing the outcrop on the map. But if we allow for a very large east or west error, which would be the error of pacing, there can be no very great error either north or south in the placing of the contact between the sandstone and the underlying Nonesuch, because the direction of the shore is nearly the same as the strike of the formation, which is about N. 80° E. However, near the sandstone the strike becomes N. 70° E., and by following westward after the sandstone is reached it is seen that the formation turns inland toward the west. At the same time the dip increases, which is to be expected, since Irving has reported that at the Montreal River, which is about thirteen miles west, the sandstone stands nearly vertical.

Just where the sandstone appears on the east side of Black River, or whether it appears at all, cannot be said, as there are clay banks for some distance along the shore, and no outcrops of any kind.

Sp. 20130: From the shore of Lake Superior where the line between Secs. 14 and 15, T. 47 N., R. 47 W. reaches the shore.

Sandstone:

Macroscopic: The specimen has a brownish gray color, and a uniform texture. It is made up of water worn particles, mostly well rounded, but some are quite angular. The particles are of all diameters up to 1mm. The most abundant constituent is quartz, although others, such as felsite, and fragments of feldspar, are also present in considerable quantity. There are also black particles whose nature cannot be told with the aid of the hand lens only. The matrix is composed of calcite, which is present in such quantity as to give a tinge of gray to the rock. When the rock is broken across calcite faces as much as an inch in diameter are seen, and in this secondary "poikilitic" calcite the sedimentary particles are imbedded. The specimen effervesces freely with acid. The coloring caused by the iron oxide makes it difficult to tell the nature of the particles.

The hand specimen shows no sedimentary planes, and no tendency to cleave, but the rock as a mass shows the sedimentary planes distinctly. There are layers of red shale in the rock varying from a trace up to an inch. It cannot be said that this shale does not become even more important, because no extensive work was done to discover whether it does or not.

Microscopic: The particles are well rounded, and none will exceed 1 mm. in diameter. The most abundant is quartz, many grains of which are quite angular. There are also some felsite particles. Striated feldspar is abundant, far beyond what would be expected from an examination of the hand specimen. There is an occasional fragment of microcline. Ophite fragments are quite common, but in no case is the augite so well preserved that it could be identified in the thin section, but the lath shaped feldspars imbedded in the decomposed ground mass leave no doubt as to the origin. The whole is heavily charged with iron oxide, so that the thin section appears a marked red even to the unaided eye. Calcite is not nearly so abundant in the thin section as would be expected from an examination of the hand specimen, while the basic material is much more abundant.

## *Division II. The Nonesuch Formation.*

(2.) Nonesuch:—Lying beneath the sandstone just described is the Nonesuch formation. It is the one formation that we are able to positively identify in an isolated cross-section, although there are others that may be named with only a small probability of error. With the identification of the Nonesuch we are able to correlate the cross-section with a greater degree of certainty than we otherwise could. There can be no doubt about this formation being the Nonesuch.

The formation is exposed at the mouth of Black River, and also several places westward along the shore. Near the mouth of the river it is exposed on the south side, at the point where the traverse line reaches the water. In fact, the traverse line ends at the point of contact between the Nonesuch and the underlying sandstone. There is a little spring creek which empties into Black River about two hundred yards from the lake shore, and at the mouth of this creek is where the survey line was ended. On the right side of the creek is a sandstone while on the left is a wall of shale about ten feet high.[1] The shale does not appear east of this point on the south side of the river, but is continuous westward nearly to the lake shore, which is distant about two hundred yards. The shale appears on the north side of the river also for a short distance in a low outcrop almost covered by the water. The outcrops on either side of the river disappear before the lake shore is reached because of the beach material gathered at the mouth of the river. Westward from the mouth of the river there is a red clay bank for a short distance along the shore, beyond which is a wooded bank. All along the foot of this bank is a beach. Near the west side of Sec. 9, T. 49 N., R. 46 W., are some low reefs of Nonesuch shale about one hundred yards from the shore. Just west of the line, between Secs. 8 and 9, there is an outcrop of shale on the shore, but it does not continue far because the formation is cut completely through, and the underlying sandstone is exposed across the front of nearly the whole of Secs. 8 and 7, the Nonesuch appearing again just before Maple Creek is reached, which is at the line between Rs. 46 and 47 W. About 100 paces up Maple Creek the lower contact of the formation is exposed. Beyond Maple Creek the Nonesuch forms the shore line for a distance of about two miles, beyond which is "the main body of sandstone." It would scarcely be expected that the formation would appear on the lake shore west of this point as it seems to turn well inland leaving the lake to the north.

All the outcrops along the shore, whether sandstone or shale, are low, scarcely reaching above the gravel of the beach, or the surface of the water. The sandstone is more prominent than the shale, but all are so low as to be washed completely over by the waves. Reefs of Nonesuch are quite common all along the shore, and generally lie out in the water from 50 to 100 paces, and just come to the surface of the water. It is surprising how a rock so easily cleaved can resist the ice action of the lake, but it is, no doubt, due largely to the fact that the rocks dip lakeward at a low angle, thus giving the inward pressing ice an easy plane to slide over. The outward pressure can never be great so near the shore.

East of the mouth of Black River there are no outcrops because of the clay banks along the shore, and, at any rate, the strike and width of the formation are such that the rock would scarcely be at the lake shore, but would fall south of it, except, possibly, for a short distance at the mouth of the river.

---

[1] Specimens at this point show a little copper carbonate.

The lower contact of the Nonesuch is well exposed near the mouth of Black River, on the lake shore just west of the west line of Sec. 9, T. 49 N., R. 46 W., and also about 100 paces up from the mouth of Maple creek. The upper contact is not exposed at the mouth of Black River, nor is any rock above the Nonesuch exposed there. The only exposure of the upper contact is, as stated before, about two miles west of the line between Rs. 46 and 47 W. There may be some error in locating this contact, but, at any rate, it is certain that the Nonesuch is not thick in the Black River section.

There is an exposed surface width of 1,300 feet. The strike is N. 73° E., and the dip 25° N. There is no evidence that any allowance in width is to be made because of faulting, although indications are that the whole district is a much faulted one. Whatever faults there may be are not shown by this stratum. A surface width of 1,300 feet. and a dip of 25° gives a thickness of 550 feet for the Nonesuch in the Black River cross-section.

There are in this formation two kinds of rock, to be known as the Nonesuch shale and the Nonesuch sandstone. They are both rather dark colored, owing to the fact that they are made up largely of basic material. There does not seem to be any regularity of occurrence of either the shale or the sandstone in the formation, the whole being made up of an indiscriminate mixture of both, although the shale is present in greater quantity than the sandstone. Sometimes the sandstone phase becomes a conglomerate, having pebbles as much as two inches in diameter.

Stains of copper carbonate may sometimes be noticed.

The following descriptions of specimens will serve to give an idea of the nature of the rocks exposed.

Sp. 20119. From the bed of Maple Creek, about 100 paces from the mouth, near the lower contact of the Nonesuch.

### *Nonesuch Shale.*

Macroscopic: Dark gray color; fine grained, and massive in the hand specimen, although the rock mass cleaves readily along the sedimentary planes. Except for this cleavage the rock breaks with a conchoidal fracture. The specimen is soft, being easily scratched with a knife. There is no signs of a development of a slaty cleavage. On the broken surface are small shining particles that look like mica, and this is common to all of the specimens of Nonesuch shale that were examined. The specimen is too fine grained to allow of any of the particles of which it is composed being identified under the hand lens. The rock does not effervesce with acid.

Microscopic: The rock is fragmental but is fine grained; the largest fragments will not exceed 0.1 mm. and these make up only a small portion of the whole, the mass being much finer. Striated feldspar can be easily distinguished. Calcite is developed in small quantity. The fragments are angular and closely packed together.

Sp. 20120. From the bed of Maple Creek.

Sandstone:

Macroscopic: The specimen has a dark gray color. It is somewhat coarser grained than 20119, and represents a phase between the Nonesuch shale and the Nonesuch sandstone. It cleaves readily along the sedimentary planes. It is made up of rounded grains. The cleavage faces of feldspar, and some quartz can be seen. Secondary calcite is developed, and the rock effervesces freely with acid.

Sp. 20026. From the north end of the traverse line, near the mouth of Black River.

Nonesuch shale:

Macroscopic: Dark gray color; very fine grained; easily scratched with a knife; cleaves readily.

Sp. 20110. From near the mouth of Black River.

Nonesuch shale:

Macroscopic: Red color; very fine grained; cleaves readily along the sedimentary planes; mineral constitents cannot be told under the hand lens. This specimen differs from the other specimens of Nonesuch shale in that it has a red color.

Sp. 20113. From near the mouth of Black River.

Nonesuch sandstone:

Macroscopic: This specimen represents typically the Nonesuch sandstone. It has a dark gray color with a tinge of green. It is made up of rounded fragments about one-half mm. in diameter. Feldspar and quartz are readily distinguished; while quartz is uniformly scattered through the whole it is not one of the important minerals. There are also many dark colored grains whose nature cannot be told under the hand lens, but they seem to be basic. Calcite is developed more strongly than in any of the other specimens from this formation save Sp. 20120. No doubt, the marked development of calcite in this specimen is due to its porous nature.

One of the important things to be noticed in the Nonesuch formation is the amount of basic material, although acid material is by no means wanting. In no other sedimentary rocks of the Black River cross section does the basic become so prominent, and in most cases it is unimportant as compared with the great amount of acid material.

### *Division III. The Outer Conglomerate.*

(3.) Sandstone and conglomerate:—Underlying the Nonesuch is a conglomerate, or, at least, a sedimentary formation whose top is a sandstone, and whose base is a conglomerate. It is that which Irving spoke of as the "Outer Conglomerate."

This formation is exposed along the shore of Lake Superior nearly all the way across Secs. 7 and 8, T. 49 N., R. 46 W., where the Nonesuch is cut through as described above. The exposures at this point are red sandstone. There are also exposures in the bed of Maple Creek, and the change from sandstone to conglomerate may be traced. About 100 paces up from the mouth of the creek is the upper contact. In the S. W. ¼, Sec. 18, T. 49 N., R. 46 W., Maple Creek has a low overhanging cliff of conglomerate and in the same quarter section there are falls over conglomerate. The chief exposures, however, are in Black River, where there is practically a continuous outcrop all across the formation from the lower to the upper contact. Near the mouth of the river the upper contact is exposed. At that point the river flows nearly west. Following up stream for about an eighth of a mile there is a bend in the river, and above this bend the water flows across the formation nearly at right angles. The exposures are almost continuous to where the base of the formation is seen in the N. E. ¼ of the N. E. ¼, Sec. 21, T. 49 N., R. 46 W. Besides the exposures spoken of above there are various others in Secs. 16, 17 and 18 of the same town and range, on Conglomerate Ridge, and some in the bed of a small creek that flows parallel with Black River, and about a quarter of a mile west in Secs. 10 and 15, but none of these last exposures add any information beyond what is already known from the other exposures.

The upper contact is exposed in the bed of Maple Creek, along the lake shore, and also at the mouth of Black River. The lower contact is exposed in the N. E. ¼ of the N. E. ¼, Sec. 21, T. 49 N., R. 46 W., but in no other place in the area worked. The dip at the upper contact is about 25° N., and that at the base 30° N. If we allow an average dip of 27° the 11,000 feet of surface that we have gives a thickness of 5,000 feet for the Outer Conglomerate.

This formation is not a conglomerate throughout, for in its upper measures it is mainly sandstone, while at the base it is a conglomerate, yet there is a great deal more conglomerate than there is sandstone so the name is a suitable one.

Descending through the formation we get in succession sandstone, sandstone with conglomerate phases, mixed sandstone and conglomerate, conglomerate with sandstone phases, and pure conglomerate. The change from sandstone above to coarse conglomerate below is a gradual one, and there is no sharp dividing line, but in a general way, it may be said that the upper one quarter is sandstone, and the remaining three-quarters is conglomerate.

The sandstone is exposed along the shore of the lake, in Maple Creek, and in Black River from the first falls (center of Sec. 10, T. 49 N., R. 46 W.) to the mouth. It is generally brick red in color, but there are places where it is reddish brown, and even brown. Throughout are bands of white varying in thickness from a quarter of an inch to a quarter of a foot. Besides these bands there are numerous spots of white varying in size from those not larger than a pin head up to those several feet in diameter. The coloring matter of the rock is iron oxide, but whether the white strata were always white is hard to say. It is possible, and even probable, that they were originally red and lost their coloring matter because of water action. There can be no doubt about the white spots spoken of being due to water action. On a plane surface the spots are round, but when the rock is broken in various directions they are seen to be spherical. The shape suggests weathering from a central point. Where the white is seen to be certainly the result of water action is at the lake shore where the waves have washed over the rocks and the water has found its way back through the cracks and crevices. In such cases the coloring matter is leached out back from the cracks for several inches. In some cases it seems that the leaching goes on fairly rapidly.

Below the falls the river has succeeded in cutting down into the sandstone so that, except for some rapids near the foot of the falls, the last three-quarters of a mile of river is at lake level. From the falls near the center of section 10, to where the river turns west, which is a distance of nearly a half mile, the rock stands in more or less perpendicular walls along the edge of the river. The sandstone in these walls cleaves readily, and in many places splits into layers not more than a quarter of an inch thick. In fact, it cleaves so readily that it looks like red shale when viewed from a short distance. The sandstone along the lake shore also shows a tendency to cleave but not equal to that shown by the sandstone in the river. However, all the sandstone of this formation exposed in the area worked shows so great a tendency to cleave that it is wholly unfit for building purposes.

The following descriptions of specimens will give some idea of the nature of the sandstone that makes up the upper part of the formation:

Sp. 20111. Forty paces S. W. from the north end of the traverse line, Sec. 3, T. 49 N., R. 46 W.
Sandstone:
Macroscopic: Much more compact than the typical sandstone of this formation. The particles are mostly quartz of a glassy appearance and well rounded; an occasional cleavage face of feldspar can be distinguished; there is some basic material, but the amount is small. The specimen is hard, and not easily scratched with a knife. It is not at all porous. Some secondary calcite is developed causing rather free action with acid, indeed, far more than would be expected from an examination of the hand specimen. It has a fairly high specific gravity for a specimen from this formation. It must be said that the weight, and the compact texture of this specimen are not typical.

Sp. 20116. On the line between Secs. 3 and 10, T. 49 N., R. 46 W.
Sandstone:
Macroscopic: Brick red in color; porosity about that of an average sandstone; particles from one-fourth to one-half mm. in diameter and are almost wholly of quartz. There is no action with acid. The rock absorbs water quite freely, much more so than the specimen described above.

Sp. 20117. Taken from near the last specimen described. Sandstone.
Macroscopic: Grayish white color; porous texture, absorbing water freely. It has a little coarser grain than either of the two specimens described above. The particles are nearly all quartz, and are all well rounded. Although the rock specimen is very light colored, a close examination under the hand lens shows many grains of red color, some green, and some black, but in no case is the coloring intense. This specimen is from one of the white layers so common in the red rock and was taken as a typical specimen of such.

Sp. 20118. From the lake shore, Sec. 8, T. 49 N., R. 46 W.

Sandstone:

Macroscopic: This specimen was taken because it shows well the white spots that are developed in the sandstone. It is of a reddish brown color and has a compact texture. The particles, which are well rounded, are almost wholly quartz. The coloring matter makes it hard to tell the nature of the grains, but where the coloring is wanting, as in the white spots, their nature is easily distinguished.

Gradually the sandstone phase of the formation gives way to the conglomerate phase, not by becoming coarser and coarser, but by an increasing prevalence and width of conglomerate bands. However, within that portion of the formation that is a true conglomerate the material becomes coarser and coarser, increasing from pebbles which will in no case exceed three inches, such as those at the first falls, up to boulders more than a foot in diameter at the base of the formation.

The geologically highest band of conglomerate lies beneath the Nonesuch formation not more than fifty feet and is not more than ten feet thick. It is persistent in the Black River section, being exposed at the mouth of the river and at the mouth of Maple Creek. The pebbles in it are not large, for only exceptionally do they exceed two inches. They are of all kinds, like the pebbles of the other conglomerate phases of the formation; but there is in addition a larger number of iron ore and jaspilite pebbles of the Huronian than elsewhere.

Lying between this narrow band of conglomerate and the main portion of the conglomerate which will now be described, is the sandstone which has just been described. All are of one formation and it is merely for convenience of description that it is considered here under the heads of "sandstone" and "conglomerate."

In the conglomerate portion is every phase of material, from pebbles only a fraction of an inch up to boulders more than a foot in diameter. Thin bands of sandstone occur indiscriminately throughout the conglomerate. It was impossible to trace the bands any great distance for there was no extent of exposure along the strike of the formation. Scarcely any of these layers of sandstone would exceed twenty feet in thickness, all sizes from this down to only a few inches being present. The smaller ones generally end quickly, thinning out in both directions somewhat like a lens, and it is highly probable that the larger ones did the same, and, in fact, it is pretty well proven that they did, for in some cases that portion exposed was the end, and the same manner of thinning out and ending was seen. It seems certain that even the thickest bands of sandstone in the conglomerate phase do not continue far. Such sandstone bands are less frequent in the lower measures of the conglomerate than in the higher.

All the pebbles are water-worn and rounded. Angular fragments are difficult to find. One cannot look at the formation and doubt that the material has been subjected to water action. In some places in the river, during low water, the bed, viewed from a short distance, looks as though strewn with boulders brought down by the present river, but on approaching closer it is readily seen that the boulders are all closely cemented together, forming one solid mass. (Plate XXXV.)

There is a very great variety of pebbles such as melaphyre, ophite, jasper, labradorite porphyrite, granite, syenite, amygdaloid, trap, chert, graywacke, and quartzite, but all these are few in number compared with the great mass of felsite pebbles. The total of all the others forms only a small per cent compared with the quantity of felsite.

The conglomerate may be well described as a felsite conglomerate in which other pebbles are present, and to merely say that they are present is putting the statement strongly enough.

Below is given a description of some of the pebbles found in the conglomerate.

1. Felsite: Reddish chocolate brown color. Very fine grained ground mass with phenocrysts of glassy quartz and orthoclase, the former being the more numerous. Some of the phenocrysts are nearly two and a half millimeters, but the majority will not exceed one millimeter. The pebble is fresh in appearance showing little or no weathering. It is water worn.

This felsite pebble resembles to a small extent the felsite of Chippewa Hill.

2. Felsite: A well rounded pebble with a dull chocolate brown color. It has a fine grained ground mass in which are numerous crystals of quartz about 1 mm. in diameter, and of nearly a uniform size. The rock shows flow structure quite distinctly. There is considerable weathering, resulting in calcite being developed in the rock, as is shown by the effervescence with acid, chiefly along the flow lines.

3. Felsite: Chocolate brown color. The rock has a fine grained ground mass thickly filled with phenocrysts of orthoclase and quartz, the former being more plentiful than the latter. The crystals of feldspar vary in size from 2 to 4 mm., and those of quartz from 1 to 2 mm. There is some calcite developed but nevertheless, the specimen has a rather fresh and unweathered appearance. In some places calcite is as distinctly bounded as the phenocrysts.

This felsite does not resemble any felsite found in place, the chief difference being the numerous phenocrysts in the pebble.

4. Felsite: Reddish brown color. The pebble has a fine grained ground mass in which there are numerous crystals of orthoclase feldspar from 1 to 2 mm., and few crystals of quartz. The ground mass has an acid appearance, but not so distinctly so as some of the other pebbles.

5. Felsite: A fine grained rock with a chocolate colored ground mass containing a number of phenocrysts of feldspar and a smaller number of quartz. The feldspar is without striæ. The rock breaks with an angular fracture.

This pebble strongly resembles the felsite of Chippewa Hill Sec. 32, T. 49 N., R. 46 W.

The felsites described above are all different in character, although the difference is only slight. Still others might be described but it seems useless to add them. Some have feldspar crystals and none of quartz, others have quartz and no feldspar, while some have both. Some have numerous crystals and some have almost none. In some of the pebbles the ground mass is distinctly acid in appearance, while in some it is more basic. But these differences are nothing more than is to be expected by one who has studied the acid flows lower down in the Keweenawan series, both because the flows differ one from another, and even within the same flow specimens can easily be obtained which differ much among themselves.

6. Felsite Porphyrite: A chocolate colored rock with a fine grained ground mass containing phenocrysts of striated feldspar. The phenocrysts are from 2 to 3 mm. The rock has a slightly more basic look than the felsites described above, but there can be no doubt about it being strongly acid.

7. Felsite Porphyrite: A reddish brown rock with a porphyritic texture. It has crystals of striated feldspar from 2 to 3 mm. long, in a fine grained ground mass. The pebble shows some weathering and effervesces in some places with acid.

Other felsite porphyrites varying somewhat from those described are readily found but it seems to serve no purpose to add a long list of descriptions here. None of these could be identified as belonging positively to any of the lower eruptive strata of the Keweenawan but at the same time it must be remembered that there are strata of felsite porphyrite from which it is possible that they could have been derived.

8. Amygdaloid: This pebble has numerous amygdules of calcite and chlorite. It is typical of Keweenawan amygdaloids, and there cannot be the least doubt of its origin. It is certainly from near the top of a basic melaphyre flow.

9. Amygdaloid: This pebble is not so amygdaloidal as number eight but its origin is no more doubtful. It is evidently from not so near the top of the flow. There are amygdules of quartz, epidote and calcite. The ground mass is rather brown in color and contains hairlike crystals of feldspar.

10. Melaphyre: This pebble is like the two described immediately above except that it represents the massive centre of a flow rather than the amygdaloidal top. It is somewhat weathered, chlorite being developed. The whole is fine grained and none of the individual minerals and crystals can be told with the naked eye.

11. Melaphyre: Like the one described above it is a specimen of trap rock, and comes from the centre of a flow.

The above four specimens which could be readily duplicated show that the basic pebbles are at least present in the conglomerate, both the amygdaloidal tops and the massive centres being represented. To be sure they are a very small factor in building up the great mass of conglomerate, but they are present and may always be found by a little searching.

12. Labradorite porphyrite: A porphyritic rock of brownish color. There are phenocrysts of plagicolase feldspar 5 to 10 mm. long. The ground mass contains also smaller phenocrysts 1 to 2 mm.

13. Labradorite porphyrite: Dark grayish brown rock with a porphyritic texture. There is a fine grained ground mass in which are crystals of plagioclase feldspar 5 to 8 mm. long. and also some smaller hair like crystals.

14. Labradorite porphyrite: A brown colored rock with a fine grained ground mass in which there are some small hairlike crystals and some larger crystals of plagioclase. The larger crystals are from 5 to 8 mm. long and about 1 mm. across. The other surface of the crystals just described is disk shaped, or nearly so, the real shape of the phenocryst being nearly a disk 8 mm. across and about 1 mm. thick. These crystals are nearly all oriented in the same way and are collected together in starlike aggregations. The specimen shows one pipe amygdule the filling of which is calcite and agate.

The source of this specimen cannot be positively stated yet when one has seen it and also seen some of the labradorite porphyrite flows near the base of the Keweenawan there can be little if indeed, any, doubt of its origin.

15. Labradorite porphyrite: A reddish brown colored specimen with disk shaped crystals like the pebble described immediately above. The disks are as much as 20 mm. across and 2 thick. The crystals are not in star shaped aggregations. Besides these larger ones there are also smaller ones, evidently of another generation. The specimen is somewhat weathered and chlorite is developed.

Several labradorite porphyrite pebbles have been described, not because of the quantitative importance of this variety of rock in the conglomerate, but to show that there is a variety in this kind of pebbles just as there is a variety in kinds of labradorite porphyrite flows that appear near the base of the series. The quantity of these pebbles is not at all important in the conglomerate, for they are found only with difficulty.

16. Graywacke.
17. A light colored chert.
18. Jasper: Red colored, hard, and faintly banded.
19. Quartzite: Brownish colored and vitreous.
20. Augite syenite: Reddish colored, holocrystalline. Crystals 2½ to 3 mm. in diameter. The chief mineral is orthoclase, and the only remaining one easily identified is augite.
21. Augite Syenite: Much like the one described immediately above, but has much finer grain.
22. Granite: Composed of orthoclase feldspar, augite and quartz. Crystals are from 2 to 3 mm.

The kinds of pebbles present in the conglomerate make it certain that material was received from the basement complex, from the Iron Formation, and also from the older parts of the Keweenawan itself. The great mass of material is felsite, and the only known source from which this could come is from the Keweenawan, which has in it several acid flows.

The formation just described can scarcely be any other than the "Outer Conglomerate" of Irving. Above it is the Nonesuch, and below it a series of amygdaloidal flows which correspond well with the "Lake Shore Trap." Above the base of this conglomerate there is only sedimentary material, while immediately below begin the interstratified eruptives and sedimentaries. Here, then, is the base of the Upper Keweenawan, which is made up (remembering, of course, that the "main body of sandstone" does not appear in the Black River cross-section) of Nonesuch 550, and Outer Conglomerate 5,000 feet, making a total of 5,500 feet. This thickness of rock, because of its low dip, represents 12,000 feet of surface width.

## *Division IV. The Lake Shore Trap.*

The Lake Shore Trap:—Lying beneath the Outer Conglomerate, and in conformable contact with it is a formation made up of a series of flows of eruptive rocks. These mark the highest eruptive matter in the Keweenawan series, and there seems to be no doubt but that the formation is Irving's "Lake Shore Trap" and as such it is considered here. There are no exposures of this series of flows save in the bed of Black River near the east side of Sec. 21, T. 49 N., R. 46 W. The northern exposures of the series are in the river bottom and are covered with water save in the dry season. The river bed is nearly 150 feet wide and is almost a level floor of rock, but some places are lower than others, and such low places are covered with water and sand moved down by the river. Toward the south end of the exposures of this series of flows the river goes through a gorge on either side of which are rock walls from thirty to forty feet high. The water coming over the falls caused by the conglomerate beneath the trap enters this gorge immediately. The gorge is from 100 feet to 200 feet long.

The Lake Shore Trap as exposed in Black River has a surface width of about 800 feet. The dip is about 30° N., so that the thickness of rock is about 400 feet. Both the upper and the lower contacts are well exposed in the river bed. Above the trap is the Outer Conglomerate while below it is another very similar in appearance.

The Lake Shore Trap is made up of five flows here named in order from the top downward.

a. (4). 35 feet.
b. (5). 35 feet.
c. (6). 115 feet.
d. (7). 85 feet.
e. (8). 130 feet.
Total 400 feet.

i. (4). This is the youngest flow of the Lake Shore Trap, and is the highest exposure of eruptive rock in the Black River section, and, in fact, in the whole Keweenawan series. It is exposed in the N. E. ¼ of Sec. 21, T. 49 N., R. 46 W., in the bed of the river, and in no other place so far as seen in the work of the season. These outcrops are covered with water save in the dry season, and even then much is seen under a thin sheet of running water.

The upper contact of the flow may be seen, a conglomerate lying above. The lower is also exposed. The surface width is not great, only 70 feet, and since there is a dip of about 30° N., the thickness is about 35 feet.

It is a melaphyre flow with a marked amygdaloidal top of about 12 feet, below which is a more massive portion, but in one or two places there are thin bands of amygdaloid below the surface amygdaloid. The amygdules are of calcite, chlorite, and laumontite.

Sp's. 20015, 20014, 20017 and 20016 are taken in geologically descending order from the flow in the order in which they are named. All the specimens need not be described in detail, but some points in connection with the four considered together should be noted. Descending there is an increase in the size of the grain and a decrease in the amygdules. both in the size and in the number, but more particularly in the number. Calcite is present in quantity, being the main filling in all the amygdules.

while laumontite is more plentiful in the more vesicular specimens than in the less vesicular, and chlorite is more abundant in the latter than in the former.

S. 20014. N. E. ¼, Sec. 21, T. 49 N., R. 46 W. Bed of Black River. Top flow Lake Shore Trap.

Melaphyre:

Macroscopic: Dark brownish gray; strongly amygdaloidal; so fine grained that the component minerals cannot be told by means of the hand lens; its weight and general appearance leave no doubt about it being strongly basic. The amygdules are of average size except for a few larger ones. They are of fairly regular shape but some have changed because of weathering. The fillings are nearly all pure white calcite, the only other mineral noted being chlorite of which there is a little on the cavity walls. One side of the specimen was exposed to the action of the weather and the river water with the result that the fillings are removed completely from the cavities.

S. 20017. N. E. ¼ Sec. 21, T. 49 N., R. 46 W. Bed of Black River. Top flow of the Lake Shore Trap, but a little lower down than the specimen described immediately above.

Melaphyre:

Macroscopic: Grayish brown; very fine grained but hairlike crystals of plagioclase feldspar can be distinguished in the ground mass. It is apparently more amygdaloidal than the specimen described above, but a close examination shows that the appearance is the result of an increase in the size of the cavities as a result of weathering. Some of them have weathered so much that they quite lack any regular shape. The main cavity filling is white calcite, but there is also some chlorite which almost invariably surrounds the calcite.

Microscopic: Amygdaloidal, with amygdule fillings of calcite and chlorite surrounding it. The finer grained amygdule wall is in most cases weathered through, but there is a portion left here and there. Calcite is developed in the ground mass of the rock, and as in the cavities is surrounded by chlorite. The slide is highly feldspathic, small crystals of plagioclase being packed together. As they are much weathered it is difficult to tell the variety but the extinction though only vaguely determined is such as to leave no doubt that the feldspar is basic. Olivine was originally present in quantity, but is now weathered to serpentine which in this section is a deep reddish brown and almost opaque owing to the large amount of iron oxide present. These show the same color in reflected light. There is also some magnetite present. Whatever may have been originally there is nothing now that could be called augite.

S. 20016. N. E. ¼ Sec. 21, T. 49 N., R. 46 W. Bed of Black River. Top flow Lake Shore Trap from near the bottom of the amygdaloidal portion.

Melaphyre:

Macroscopic: Brownish gray color; coarser grained than the specimens described above from the same flow; amygdaloidal and pseudoamygdaloidal cavities, but all are small; calcite is strongly developed both in the cavities and in the ground mass; chlorite is relatively more important than in the other specimens of the same flow. The only mineral that can be distinguished are small crystals of feldspar. The specimen has a tinge of color that shows that iron oxide is developed.

ii. (5). This is the second flow from the top of the Lake Shore Trap. It is 35 feet thick and has an amygdaloidal top of 12 feet. It is possible that this flow and the one described above are parts of one larger flow 70 feet thick. As there was a covering of flowing water it was difficult to decide. If there is only one flow then what is taken as an amygdaloidal top would be an amygdaloidal centre of a larger flow. No pipe amygdules and no well marked contact were observed. However pipe amygdules are often wanting at the bottom of a flow, therefore much cannot be argued from their absence. The reason for supposing that there are two flows instead of one is that there is a marked amygdaloidal zone.

No specimens were taken from this flow, but it is quite like the flow described above with amygdules of calcite, chlorite, and laumontite.

iii. (6). This flow has a surface width of 230 feet and since its dip is 30° N., a thickness of 115 feet.

This is also a melaphyre flow with an amygdaloidal top and a massive centre. It is not continuously exposed like the other flows of this formation, but is low and water covered except at the very bottom, where the river begins to form a gorge. Where this flow is thus exposed there is seen to be a strong jointing in two directions, the first series of planes being N. 80° E., and dipping 55° S., while the second is N. 10° W., and dips 85° E., so that the two systems are not far from at right angles.

iv. (7). This is the fourth flow from the top, and is exposed in the bed of Black River, not in low water covered outcrops, as is the previous bed, but forms the walls of a gorge through which the river flows. The flow has a surface width of 170 feet, and a thickness of 85 feet. The same system of jointing shows as at the base of the flow above.

S. 20019. N. E. ¼ Sec. 21, T. 49 N., R. 46 W. Bed Black River. Lake Shore Trap, Fourth flow from the top.

Macroscopic: Reddish brown color; massive; cleavage faces of feldspar can be easily seen; uniform texture; grain ⅓ mm.; no phenocrysts; this specimen much resembles 20021 described below, except that the latter has phenocrysts of feldspar.

v. (8). This fifth is the thickest flow of the Lake Shore Trap. It is the lowest, and hence the oldest.[1] Below it is a conglomerate, and above it a flow very similar to itself. This lowest flow has an amygdaloidal top, and also an amygdaloid of ten feet at its base. The thickness of the flow is 130 feet. The cavity fillings are calcite, laumontite, and chlorite.

S. 20021. N. E. ¼ Sec. 21, T. 49 N., R. 46 W. Bed Black River. Lowest flow Lake Shore Trap.

Macroscopic: Reddish brown color; grain ⅓ mm.; crystals of feldspar can be readily distinguished in the ground mass; phenocrysts of striated feldspar 2 to 3 mm. are present.

Microscopic: Idiomorphic augite, in very small crystals, is quite abundant and is scattered through the whole rock quite evenly. The feldspar crystals are of two generations. Those in the ground mass are ⅓ to ¼ mm., and make up a large portion of the rock. The extinction of these crystals is 30°-30° to 33°-34°. The large phenocrysts are also labradorite. They are brotocrystals.[2] One is so rounded as to have lost every vestige of its original shape. It is surrounded by a ring of secondary feldspar that has an extinction angle slightly greater than the original feldspar in the crystal. In the centre of this same brotocrystal is a piece of augite that extinguishes with the augite outside the crystal. The phenocrysts of feldspar are from 2 to 3 mm. There seems to have been little original olivine, and none remains now as such. Chlorite and magnetite are not developed, but there is some iron oxide. The rock is an augite porphyrite of the Minong type.

### *Division V. Conglomerate.*

(9). Exposed in the bed of Black River, in the S. E. ¼ of the N. E. ¼, Sec. 21, T. 49 N., R. 46 W.

This conglomerate lies beneath the Lake Shore Trap and is in conformable contact with it. In it there are no important sandstone phases, indeed, nothing save sandstone spots, without important length or thickness. Like the conglomerate above the Lake Shore Trap, it is made up of a variety of pebbles, but the great mass is felsite, and the formation is distinctly acid. By searching one can find melaphyre, labradorite porphyrite, jasper, granite and so on as in the Outer Conglomerate, but they are uncommon and not important in building up the rock mass. The finer material between the pebbles is also acid. The largest boulders are less than a foot in diameter, and all sizes from this down may be found. They are all water worn and well rounded.

Calcite is developed between the pebbles and shows strongly in spots and patches rather than scattered uniformly throughout the whole.

The surface width is about 660 feet, and the dip 30° N., or possibly a degree or so more. The thickness of the formation cannot exceed 340 feet. The surface width cannot possibly be much greater than that given above for the unexposed thickness beneath cannot exceed 50 feet, and there is no unexposed width above. The outcrop below is a massive melaphyre, and at least enough of the fifty feet must be given to that flow to add an amygdaloidal top.

Over the north edge of the conglomerate is a waterfall. But the water does not bound over a ledge. It flows down the north side of the conglomerate with the dip. The water has succeeded in cutting a gorge through the melaphyre lying on the river below the conglomerate, but the conglomerate has proved itself able to resist water action that the melaphyre could not resist. (Plate XXXV.)

---

[1] The number of flows in the Lake Shore Trap group is not very different from the number around Calumet.

[2] A term suggested by me which Gordon has found it convenient to use to apply to crystals, corroded and evidently not formed during the last process of consolidation.

No pebbles from this formation are described here, because all the descriptions of the Outer Conglomerate and boulders apply equally well here. In fact, one might think of the deposition of conglomerate as going on when nature was disturbed by the eruptive flows which make up the Lake Shore Trap, and after that period of eruption was over nature resumed its original manner of laying down conglomerate, receiving its material from the same sources.

### *Division VI. Amygdaloidal Melaphyres with interbanded acid sedimentaries.*

Beneath the conglomerate just described is a series of basic flows, more or less interbanded with sedimentaries in the form of sandstones and conglomerates. This series will be taken as Group VI in the Black River section of the Keweenawan, and will be represented geologically under one color. Probably there is no very important reason why this division should be made, and yet it seems to be the most satisfactory for the present report.[1] It extends geologically from Conglomerate V down to the Chippewa felsite. It is exposed only in the bed of Black River, and the exposures are not continuous, in fact far from it. The highest exposure is in the S. E. ¼, of the N. E. ¼, Sec. 21, T. 49 N., R. 46 W., and the bottom of the group in Black River is near the centre of the N. E. ¼ Sec. 32 of the same town and range, but there is no outcrop at this point. Topographically the group lies between two lines drawn N. 80° E. through these two points. It is made up of a thickness of 5,500 feet of rock, which corresponds to 8,500 feet of surface width. Of this thickness nearly 3,000 feet must be passed over as unknown because of want of exposures.

The top flows of this group are seen only under running water, and are worn down level with the conglomerate in front of them. In fact, the conglomerate seems to establish a base level below which the action of the river cannot wear these rocks. Back a short distance from the conglomerate the rocks rise above the surface of the stream because they are not yet worn down to this base level. On the whole the action resembles that at the mouth of a river where the receiving body of water is at an established base level.

i. (10). Melaphyre:—Only the massive portion of this flow is exposed, but there is an unexposed width of about 60 feet below the conglomerate, a portion of which must represent the amygdaloidal top of this flow. The thickness of the flow must be at least 60 feet. The rock is so covered with water that nothing definite could be learned of it.

(11). Melaphyre:—This flow much resembles (10), and like it is much covered with water. Its thickness is 90 feet, and the amygdaloidal portion 25 feet.

(12). Melaphyre:—Surface width 320 feet, thickness 180 feet, amygdaloidal top 35 feet. Amygdules of calcite, chlorite, and laumontite. Like the two flows above it is covered with water.

(13). Melaphyre:—Thickness 90 feet. amygdaloidal top 20 feet.

---

[1] A similar group, characterized by the frequent alternation from sediment to lava is found all along Keweenaw Point.

Amygdules of calcite, chlorite and laumontite. The bottom of the flow begins to rise above the surface of the river water, and to form rapids. S's. 20006, 20007, 20008, 20009. The descriptions of two of these will cover all the characteristics.

S. 20006. Bed of Black River, S. E. ¼ Sec. 21, T. 49 N., R. 46 W.

Macroscopic: Dark gray color; massive; fine grained; the hand specimen does not seem to be much decomposed, but chlorite and iron oxide are developed in spots. The grain of the rock is too fine to admit of mineralogical identification macroscopically, but the rock is plainly basic.

Microscopic: Porphyrite; Oligoclase feldspar with crystals of two generations, those of the one being very small, and making up the great mass of the rock, while those of the other are larger but will not exceed 1½ mm. and are few in number. Secondary quartz, calcite, and chlorite are developed between the crystals. Augite and olivine are not present and there is but little to suggest that they ever were. The whole is much decomposed.

S. 20007. Black River. S. E ¼ Sec. 21, T. 49 N., R. 46 W.

Macroscopic: Dark red with a tinge of gray. The rock is mottled red and green because of a development of chlorite and hematite. Decomposition is well advanced. The specimen is fine grained and massive. It has a basic appearance.

Microscopic: Decomposed porphyrite. Like 20006, being from the same flow, but it gives the additional positive information of some original olivine. There is much secondary quartz, some of which is in the form of spherulites. There is more decomposition in this slide than in the one described above.

iii. (14). Melaphyre:—Exposed in the bed of Black River only. It has a thickness of 140 feet. It has suffered much decomposition and has a great amount of pseudo-amygdaloid. There are cavity fillings of laumontite, calcite and chlorite. In one much decomposed band of the flow laumontite is very prominent.

Sp. 20005.

Macroscopic: This specimen has amygdules of chlorite with a small amount of calcite in the centre. It is fine grained, and much weathered. Its appearance suggests that much secondary quartz is developed in the ground mass. The specimen has a basic appearance.

Sp. 20002.

Macroscopic: Reddish brown color; medium fine grained but yet small lath feldspars can be readily seen; some amygdules of calcite, chlorite and laumontite. The specimen is evidently from near the base of the amygdaloidal zone.

Microscopic: Melaphyre; oligoclase feldspar; only a very small amount of augite; olivine which was originally important is now completely decomposed. The substance left by the decomposition of the olivine is by far the most interesting in the slide, in fact, is one of the most interesting things in the whole series of specimens. It is colored nearly like biotite, and greatly resembles it, but yet it is not biotite. It has a very marked cleavage in one direction and extinguishes when the cross-hairs are parallel with this cleavage. There is some pleochroism but it is not nearly so strong as in biotite. The outer edge of every segregation of it is opaque, probably because of a difference of chemical composition, that difference being a greater amount of iron oxide. In some cases this mineral gives an image in convergent light that seems to be uniaxial, but a good picture could not be obtained.[1] The best description of it seems to be that it is a substance on the road of change from olivine to biotite, and this supposition is given strength in that there are in the slides taken as a whole almost every step in the change. The coloring matter is, no doubt, largely hematite as is shown in reflected light. In connection with this mineral see Vol. VI, Mich. Geol. Survey, page 154, under the head of "Olivine."

Sp. 20001. This specimen is quite like 20002 both macroscopically, and microscopically.

vi. (15). Melaphyre:—Only the amygdaloidal top of this flow is exposed. It is quite like the flows described.

vii. (16). Unexposed:—Beneath the flows described above is a thickness of 1,200 feet without exposure in the Black River section. Since the flows beneath this unexposed area are so like the flows above it is grouped here as if it were made up of such flows but there is no certainty about how it is made up.

viii. (17). Conglomerate:—Only the base of this conglomerate is exposed, and hence, its thickness is not known. This stratum was discovered by Dr. Lane. He was in the river bed by some very fine grained rock on the left bank, at a point where the river runs nearly east and west. Knowing from the grain of the rock that he must be near a contact, he climbed up on the little ledge and found that there was a conglomerate above the melaphyre.

---

[1] It is iddingsite.

ix. (18). This flow is a melaphyre. The massive part is exposed in the river about 1,750 paces N. and 300 W., Sec. 29, T. 49 N., R. 46 W. The thickness is 40 feet.

x. (19). Melaphyre:—Exposed in the river in the N. E. ¼ of the N. E. ¼, Sec. 29, T. 49 N., R. 46 W. The thickness is 40 feet of which 10 feet at the top is amygdaloidal.

Sp. 20032. From near the base of the flow.
Macroscopic: Brown color from iron oxide; massive; the minerals cannot be identified macroscopically, but the specimen has a basic appearance; uniform texture with no phenocrysts; chlorite is developed in the ground mass.

xi. (20). Ophite:—Exposed in the bed of Black River in the N. E. ¼ of the N. E. ¼, Sec. 29, T. 49 N., R. 46 W., the outcrop extending along the river into N. W. ¼ of the N. E. ¼, Sec. 28. It has a thickness of 75 feet, 15 of which is amygdaloidal. The amygdules are very conspicuous, having been increased in size by weathering. Laumontite is very abundant, as is also chlorite and calcite. S's 20033, 20034, and 20035.

Sp. 20033.
Macroscopic: This specimen is from the amygdaloidal part of the flow. The ground mass, which is very fine grained, is colored with iron oxide. The cavity fillings give the predominant color to the specimen because of the size of the cavities, and the vivid color of laumontite which is the main filling. Calcite and chlorite are also present. The calcite is invariably pure white, and is surrounded by the laumontite.
Microscopic: The slide shows flow structure. The rock is very fine grained and is amygdaloidal. The amygdule fillings are laumontite and calcite, the former being next to the cavity wall. Oligoclase feldspar is abundant. Originally olivine was abundant but it is all decomposed. There is no augite in the slide, but this is probably because the specimen is from the top of the flow. The specimens taken from lower down have augite.
Sp. 20034.
Macroscopic: Brownish color; massive; lath shaped feldspars can be distinguished. The rock has a basic appearance.
Microscopic: Oligoclase feldspar is abundant; olivine is also abundant, but none is fresh, being weathered to serpentine stained with iron; there is a small amount of augite, and it shows an ophitic texture; in some places olivine is completely surrounded by augite; calcite, chlorite, serpentine, and quartz are developed.
Sp. 20035. Ophite;—This specimen is from the same flow as 20034, and is quite like it macroscopically, and microscopically, and adds no information.

The flow just described is the highest in which ophitic texture was apparent. It is not at all marked as compared with some of the flows that we shall meet further down.

xi. (21). Ophite:—This is an ophite with an amygdaloidal top. The surface width is 100 feet, and the thickness of the flow 70 feet. It is exposed in the river in the N. E, ¼ of the N. E. ¼, Sec. 29, T. 49 N., R. 46 W., and also in the N. W. ¼ of the N. W. ¼, Sec. 28. The river at this point flows nearly along the strike of the formation.

Sp. 20037. This specimen is so nearly like 20034 and 20035 that it is difficult to distinguish them. The thin section is cut in a coating mostly spherulitic quartz, caused by rock slipping.

Sp. 20030.
Macroscopic: Brownish color; amygdaloidal; amygdules of chlorite and laumontite, the former being the more plentiful; the specimen has a basic appearance.
Microscopic: Oligoclase feldspar is very plentiful; there is much olivine but all is altered; there is some augite enclosed in which are feldspars. This specimen resembles in every respect the specimens from the flow above 20034 and 20035.

This flow shows evidences of faulting, the planes being N. 5° W., and dipping 65° E. The evidences here are not of extensive faulting, but since other evidences are found near, the fact can scarcely be passed over without notice. There are numerous faces that show rock slipping, e. g, Sp. 20037.

xii. (22). This is a basic flow quite like those immediately above. The surface width is 125 feet and the thickness 80 feet. It has an amygdaloidal top. At the base it is in some places so decomposed that it is little more than a mass of laumontite and calcite which crumbles down very easily, while in other places it is not at all decomposed.

Sp. 20040.
Macroscopic: Amygdaloidal with amygdules of chlorite calcite, and a small amount of laumontite.
Microscopic: The slide is much altered; the rock is fine grained; acid feldspar is abundant, as is also altered olivine; there is no augite visible, but this is probably because it is from the amygdaloidal zone as was the case in a flow above.

xiii. (23). Sandstone:—This is a typical sandstone with a yellowish brown color, and in it there is no tendency to conglomeritic phases. The thickness is 30 feet, the strike N. 78° E., and the dip 42° N. It lies in the bed of the river which here flows along the strike of the formation, and follows this stratum for nearly 200 paces, and at most seasons of the year completely covers it.

This bed, and also the one above it is cut off on the west by a fault which runs through here. Of course it is certain that other beds are cut off also but the break in these two is exposed in the river bed. There is a fault breccia whose strike is N. 10° W., and dip 65° E. This breccia stands out like a dike, and is about four feet across. It can be traced for nearly 200 paces across a bend of the river, and into the bush, but there is not much information to be gained concerning the amount and direction of the throw. In addition to this large fault there is a small one showing about 100 feet east. The strike of the fault plane is N. 12 E., and the throw is 28 feet. Certainly this throw is only small but its importance comes in connection with other evidences of faulting. Since there is so much disturbance it seems possible that an important fault might be near here.

xiv. (24). Ophite:—This flow has not so prominent an amygdaloidal top as the other flows that we have met. S. 20048 is from that zone and has not a great number of cavities.

Sp. 20041. Ophite.
Macroscopic: Dark gray color; massive; there are a few phenocrysts of plagioclase 2 to 3 mm. in an aphanitic ground mass; chlorite is the only secondary development that can be identified.
Microscopic: Ophitic texture, but there is only a small amount of augite; abundant oligoclase in very small crystals but there are a few phenocrysts 2 to 3 mm. long; considerable spherulitic quartz is developed in the ground mass, as is also chlorite; olivine was a very important original mineral but it is now decomposed.

xv. (25). Conglomerate:—This is an acid conglomerate 20 feet thick. The pebbles will scarcely exceed three inches in diameter. It is exposed in Black River in the S. E. 1/4 of the N. E. 1/4, Sec. 29. T. 49 N., R. 46 W.

xvi. (26). This is a basic flow. Its thickness is 25 feet, and it has an amygdaloidal top of 10 feet. The flow shows strong jointing in planes N. 80° E., dipping 35° S.

xvii. (27). Basic flow with a surface width of 40 feet and a thickness of 25 feet. The amygdaloid is not pronounced here the band being only 4 feet.

xviii. (28). Basic flow with a thickness of 25 feet, and a very pronounced amygdaloidal top of 15 feet.

xix. (29). A basic flow with a surface of 60 feet, a thickness of 40 feet, of which 10 feet is amygdaloidal.

xx. (30). Basic flow 20 feet thick, of which the top five feet is amygdaloidal.

xxi. (31). This is a basic flow whose thickness is 40 feet, the top half being amygdaloidal.

S. 20054. This specimen has a grayish brown color. It is so fine grained that the minerals cannot be identified except a few fine feldspars. It is amygdaloidal, the cavity fillings being calcite and chlorite.

xxii. (32). Basic flow; thickness 20 feet; amygdaloid 8 feet.

xxiii. (33). Sandstone:—This is a typical sandstone with no tendency to conglomerate. It is reddish colored. It has a uniform grain. The sedimentary planes are well marked, the rock cleaving quite readily along them. Strike N. 72° E., dip 44° N., thickness 25 feet.

This sandstone ends abruptly at the east end, and has every appearance of being faulted. There is no indication as to the amount or direction of throw. Even the direction and dip of the fault plane cannot be taken because of the rapid running water in the river where the rock is faulted. However there can be no doubt about the sandstone being faulted because an eruptive rock appears on the opposite side of the river along the strike of the sandstone. The faulting is not far from the line of the fault breccia a short distance down the river, which breccia was mentioned in connection with sandstone 23. Though there is a considerable distance of river between the two places where faulting is shown, yet they are not more than 125 paces apart in a straight line because the river is very crooked here. If the first mentioned fault be continued in the direction that it has it will pass only a few yards from the second. It is probable that both belong to the same fault, or at least are the result of the same strain which resulted in step faulting.

xxiv. (34). Lying beneath the sandstone, and in contact with it is a melaphyre having a thickness of 30 feet, 10 feet of which is amygdaloid.

xxv. (35). This flow resembles 34. Its thickness is 70 feet.

xxvi. (36). Melaphyre:—This flow is thicker than the others that we have met. Its thickness is 140 feet, 40 feet of which forms an amygdaloidal zone.

Sp. 20058. This specimen is rather coarser grained than any eruptive specimen yet examined. It has plagioclase feldspar, the cleavage faces of which can be readily seen in the hand specimen. Augite also is present. There are numerous very small spots of red, evidently iron oxide; these suggest altered olivine, since, in numerous other specimens where they occur, the thin section showed abundant olivine, and always weathered to a red substance which is serpentine stained with hematite.

xxvii. (37). Only the amygdaloidal top of this flow is exposed. The flow is basic.

xxviii. (38). Unexposed:—This represents a rock thickness of 900 feet.

xxix. (39). This flow has a surface width of 140 feet and a thickness of 90 feet. The upper contact is not exposed but the fine grain of S. 20059 makes it certain that it is not far from the top. If so there can be no important amygdaloidal zone.

Sp. 20059. This specimen is fine grained and massive. There are a few very small phenocrysts of feldspar. While the specimen is basic its appearance leaves no doubt about it running higher in silica than the average basic Keweenawan flow. It breaks with a fracture that approaches conchoidal. The fine grain of the specimen helps to make it certain that it is from near the top of the flow and hence that the amygdaloid cannot be important.

xxx. (40). This flow has a surface of 140 feet, and a thickness of 90 feet. It is exposed in the bed of Black River in the S. W. corner of the N. E. 1/4 of the S. E. 1/4, Sec. 29, T. 49 N., R. 46 W. There is no important amygdaloidal top. The flow is somewhat different from the various flows that have been described above in that it is somewhat more acid. There seems to be little doubt but that the correct place to classify it is among Irving's quartzless porphyries, and as such it will be considered here.

Sp. 20060. Quartzless Porphyry: The specimen has a reddish brown color, and a general appearance that somewhat suggests felsite, yet it has a more basic appearance than felsite. It is very fine grained. There are a few phenocrysts of feldspar that do not seem to be striated. The specimen is faintly banded suggesting flow structure. It breaks with a conchoidal fracture. This specimen approaches felsite in appearance more nearly than any previously examined. There are no phenocrysts of quartz. Some calcite, and some chlorite are developed, but only a small amount of each.

xxxi. (41). This flow is exactly like the one above, and a description given for the one will do for the other. The thickness is 90 feet.

xxxii. (42). Lying beneath these quartzless porphyries is a thin stratum of sandstone whose thickness cannot exceed 30 feet.

This sandstone shows faulting by terminating abruptly at the west. There is no evidence of the direction or amount of throw. If the fault plane spoken of above in connection with sandstones 23 and 33 were continued it would pass near this place, and this fault would come in the same series of step faulting as do those.

xxxiii. (43). Melaphyre:—There is exposed a thickness of 45 feet of rock belonging to the top of the flow, the lower part being covered.

xxxiv. (44). Unexposed:—170 feet.

xxxv. (45). Sandstone:—20 feet.

xxxvi. (46). Melaphyre:—70 feet.

xxxvii. (47). Conglomerate:—The pebbles in this conglomerate are small none exceeding three or four inches in diameter. They are predominatingly acid, and the descriptions of pebbles from the higher conglomerates might be repeated here. The lower contact is not exposed. The exposed thickness is 100 feet.

xxxviii. (48). Unexposed:—Beneath the conglomerate is a thickness of rock of 1,300 feet that is not exposed. The rock above the gap is conglomerate, and that below is Chippewa Felsite. There is no evidence to decide how much of this space is underlain by either kind of rock, at least there is no evidence in the Black River section. The unexposed area is taken here as if it belonged to Group VI.

There are some reasons that make the division of the rocks classified under Group VI a convenient one for this report. It is best to draw a line above it at the base of Conglomerate V, for it is possible that it corresponds with Irving's Great Conglomerate. Below it the Chippewa felsite is an important stratum that should be classified by itself. Within these two lines of division this group that we have just been considering is left. Also it is from top to bottom pretty regularly interbanded with sedimentaries in the form of sandstone and conglomerates. Such bands occur below the Chippewa felsite, but not so frequently. Another point is that all through this group so far as is known ophites do not become important. There are ophites in the group but their nature is revealed only under the microscope, the augite being present only in small amount. The rocks below the Chippewa Felsite are predominatingly ophite, and have such pronounced characteristics as to reveal themselves immediately to the unaided eye. It may possibly be said too, that olivine is somewhat more conspicuous in this group than elsewhere in the Black River section.

### *Division VII. Chippewa Felsite.*

i. 49. This felsite is the most acid rock in the Black River section. It is exposed in the river in the S. W. ¼ of the N. E. ¼, Sec. 32, T. 49 N., R. 46 W., but it is only when the water is very low that the rock can be seen here. The most important exposures are on Chippewa Hill in the same section. The east end of the hill is a bluff of felsite at the foot of which is a large talus slope. The outcrop extends a considerable distance around toward the north side of the hill, and also so far around the south side that Bessemer and Ironwood can be seen from the edge of the cliff. The cliff apparently extended farther in both directions than it does at present as there is considerable old talus slope now completely covered with soil and vegetation. There are also exposures of felsite on the top of the hill near the east and west centre line of the section. The same line runs almost directly over the centre of the cliff. There are outcrops of rock on the south side of the hill a little way down from the top that are not felsite, since the hill is composed of basic rocks capped by a felsite top, and it is probable that it is the enduring power of the felsite cap that has successfully resisted the degrading influences of nature. The hill is almost wholly in Sec. 32, only a small part reaching into Sec. 31, and in this latter section there is an outcrop about 150 paces west of the east quarter-post. There are in the Black River section no outcrops of the Chippewa felsite save those mentioned above. West of the hill the land is level and inclined to be swampy and is wholly without outcrop of any kind. Between Chippewa Hill and Black River there are no outcrops. East of the river, where the felsite should outcrop, the land is flat and deeply covered with till.

The lower contact is exposed in the river, and it can be located within thirty feet on the hill. The upper contact cannot be so definitely located. The most northerly exposure on Chippewa Hill is felsite, and lying north of this exposure is a space of nearly three miles without outcrop, beyond which is the conglomerate of Conglomerate Ridge. Above the felsite, in the river, is a space of 1,300 feet without exposure, beyond which is conglomerate 47. The exposed surface of the felsite is 660 feet giving a thickness of 460 feet. The greatest possible surface that it could have is about 2,000 feet, and the greatest thickness 1,400 feet, and to have this surface and thickness all the unknown space above would have to be underlain by it.

In Monograph V, U. S. G. S., Irving says "The 'trap rock' of the old Chippewa location S. W. ¼ Sec. 22, evidently belongs to the main mass underlying the porphyry." The exploration work on this location was done almost at the contact of the porphyry and the basic rock, so the felsite is exposed on the location. But it is not on Sec. 22, it is on Sec. 32. As Irving was not in the particular locality, but got his information from others he was probably misinformed. His map is drawn with the porphyry passing through Sec. 22 instead of 32, which places it two miles farther north than it should be.

The felsite of the Chippewa location shows the flow structure well in places, as at the east end of the cliff on the east end of the hill. The flow structure is brought out more prominently where the rock is weathered.[1] The rock breaks into angular fragments so that it is difficult to obtain typical specimens. In many places on Chippewa Hill it crumbles beneath the hammer, breaking into pieces from one-half to one inch in diameter. This is evidently due to being exposed to the action of the atmosphere. In the Black River where the disintegrated surface is worn away by the action of the water, and the material that it carries, the surface of the rock is as smooth as glass, much smoother than that of any other rock that we met. In such places the rock does not crumble down when struck with the hammer. The crumbling does not seem to be due to chemical decomposition of the rock, because the rock is not decomposed; it seems to be due to little joints that seem to be present everywhere and to form lines of weakness when the rock is exposed. Where the rock is fresh it breaks with a conchoidal fracture giving pieces with knife like edges.

The ground mass is very fine grained. The most conspicuous phenocrysts are of orthoclase feldspar. In some places they are very plentiful while in others they are almost wanting. They range in size from those very small up to those about one-eighth of an inch in diameter. They are generally nearly red in color, but where they have been exposed to the action of the atmosphere they are more nearly white. Quartz phenocrysts are not so plentiful as those of feldspar, and in some places they do not seem to be present at all.

It is quite easy to select specimens from the Chippewa felsite that vary much in appearance. In fact, to place some of the specimens by others one would scarcely think that all were from the same flow, and perhaps from only a few feet apart. This fact may do much to explain the variety of pebbles in the conglomerates described above. It is not intended to give the impression that all the pebbles might have been derived from one flow, but it is intended to point out that it is not necessary to have as many acid flows as there are kinds of acid pebbles in the conglomerate. The variety of pebbles seems to me to be due not only to the variety of parent acid flows, but also to the variety within the same flow.

Sp. 20061. Bed of Black River, Sec. 32, T. 49 N., R. 46 W.
Felsite:
Macroscopic: Deep chocolate brown color; fine grained and very compact; conchoidal fracture; no phenocrysts of quartz, but there is so much secondary quartz that it is visible to the naked eye; this secondary quartz tends to make the rock a lighter color; there are only a few phenocrysts of orthoclase feldspar, the largest of which are about 2 mm.

Sp. 20062. Black River, Sec. 32, T. 49 N., R. 46 W.
Felsite:
Macroscopic: This specimen though from near 20062 is much lighter in color, being almost a red. Much secondary quartz is developed and is so arranged as to give the specimen an appearance of parallel

---

[1] At the steep bluff close to the road the flow lines ran dip. 59° to N. 15° W. and the joints were: dip 80° to E. 50° S., dip 30° to E. 30° S. and 90° to W. 25° S. On the hill they were 90° to E. 30° S., and banding nearly parallel to the bottom contact dip 60° to N. 5° W.

banding. The rock breaks with a conchoidal fracture and knife like edges. There are quite a few phenocrysts of quartz a fraction of an inch in diameter. There are also crystals of feldspar but they are not plentiful. Both this specimen and the one described immediately above have very smooth surfaces as a result of the wearing by the river. No rock in all the series seems capable of being worn so smooth as does this Chippewa felsite.

Sp. 20077. Sec. 32, T. 49 N., R. 46 W., 850 N. 1800 W. From Chippewa Hill.

Felsite:

Macroscopic: The specimen is a deep chocolate brown; the most conspicuous characteristics are the flow structure and the numerous phenocrysts of orthoclase feldspar. Along the flow lines are partings that cause the rock to break readily, but not like along sedimentary planes, for the fracture crosses from one flow plane to another very readily. While the flow banding taken as a whole is parallel it is not so at every point. The phenocrysts of orthoclase show in rhomb shaped faces from 2 to 3 mm. Where weathered they are nearly white in color but where they are not weathered they are nearly red.

The orthoclase crystals are numerous but there are none of quartz. There is no secondary quartz. This specimen is quite unlike either 20061 cr 20062 yet it is from the same flow.

Sp. 20078. Sec. 32, T. 49 N., R. 46 W., 1600 N. 1500 W. From Chippewa Hill.

Felsite:

Macroscopic: This specimen resembles 20077 very much but there are not so many phenocrysts of feldspar, and there is an absolute lack of flow structure.

Microscopic: In ordinary light the slide has a red color. There are no phenocrysts of quartz, but there are some of orthoclase about 1 mm. Quartz is abundant in the ground mass. The slide shows no flow structure.

Sp. 20097. Sec. 32, T. 49 N., R. 46 W. Black River. This specimen comes from a point only a few feet from the base of the Chippewa Felsite.

Macroscopic: Reddish brown color; there is a mottled appearance which a close examination shows to be from the development of secondary quartz in spots. In a few places there are cavities in which are quartz crystals. There are no phenocrysts of quartz, but those of orthoclase are quite numerous though not conspicuous.

Sp. 20059. From Chippewa Hill.

This specimen has a chocolate brown color but there is a tinge of violet. There is but a trace of flow structure. No phenocrysts of quartz and only a few of orthoclase. Aphanitic ground mass.

Other specimens from this felsite could be described differing from these but there are sufficient here to prove that there is a very great variety of appearance in the same flow.

## *Division VIII. The Ophites.*

Beneath the Chippewa Felsite is a series of ophites with a few interbedded sedimentaries. The ophitic texture is much more pronounced in this division than in VI, or than in any other division of the series. The exposures are in the bed of Black River, on the Black River Highlands, and on the south side of Chippewa Hill. The division extends from the base of the Chippewa Felsite to the lowest exposures in Sec. 21, T. 48 N., R. 46 W., beneath which is a wide gap whose underlying rocks are not exposed, and hence, not determined. The flows of this division are not so well determined as those of other divisions as they are not so well exposed. So far as the outcrops are in the bed of Black River, where they are cut across at nearly right angles to the formation, they are well determined, but the exposures on the Black River Highlands, to the east, are not continuous, and it becomes impossible to give the number and thickness of the flows. The information about these is rather general. It is certain, however, that the flows are thicker than elsewhere, because of the coarser mottling of the ophites. It does not seem advisable to even attempt to give here the various flows of this part which is exposed only on the highland. The chances of error are so great that any column prepared would be little better than a guess, and would be so misleading that it would be worse than useless. That portion of the area will be passed over as one known to be made up of a series of flows predominatingly basic, but whose number cannot be determined.

The few sedimentary strata that occur in this division are acid but have more basic material than the strata that occur above them except the Nonesuch, which is strongly basic. The sedimentary strata are insignificant in quantity as compared with the amount of eruptive material. There are some flows which are pretty well toward the acid end of the line, but, like the sedimentaries, their quantity is not at all important.

i. (50). Sandstone:—This sandstone lies beneath the Chippewa felsite and in contact with it. The very bottom of the felsite itself seems to have considerable sedimentary matter in it, probably material that it has picked up as it flowed. There is in the sandstone a considerable amount of material that looks like volcanic ash fragments.

The surface width of the sandstone is 40 feet, and the thickness 25 feet.

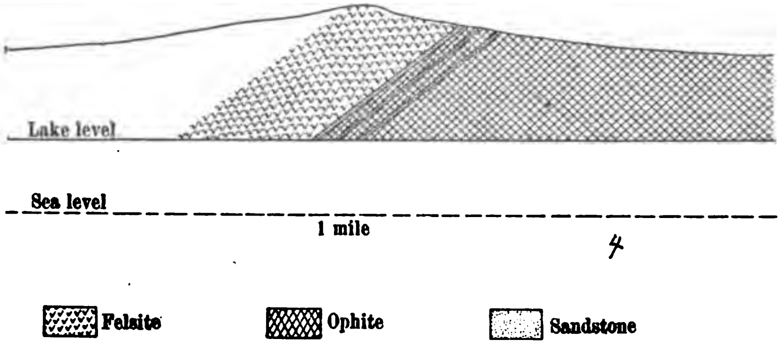
Sp. 20092 is a typical sandstone of acid variety.

Sp. 20093. Sec. 32, T. 49 N., R. 46 W., 1250 N., 600 W.

Sandstone:—

Macroscopic:—Greenish gray color; there is a large amount of fragmental matter in which quartz is prominent; no sedimentary planes; many angular fragments that seem to be of volcanic origin. The whole specimen is so altered and charged with secondary matter that it cannot be well described from the hand specimen.

Microscopic:—Sedimentary; fragments of quartz, plagioclase and ophite; some are rounded but for the most part they are angular; secondary quartz and epiodote are prominent.



4

Fig. 23.—Section of Chippewa Bluff.

ii. (51). Ophite:—This ophite is exposed on the south side of Chippewa Hill in a test pit made by the Old Peak Mining Co. Besides this there are three other exploratory openings about the hill. This particular pit is well up the side of the hill, and is only a few feet from an exposure of felsite. No great amount of work was done as the hole is not more than about thirty feet deep. The old windlass, the old bucket and other things still remain where they were when the location was abandoned. The amygdaloid thrown out on the surface shows fillings of calcite, chlorite, epidote and quartz. There is only the smallest trace of copper, certainly nothing to cause any person to hold out hope.

Farther east, in the river, the same flow is exposed and the ophite grain is seen to be about 1 mm.

The surface width of the flow is 60 feet, and the thickness 40 feet; about 15 feet at the top is amygdaloidal.

iii. (52). Ophite:—This flow is about the same thickness as the flow above it, 40 feet. The Chippewa Mining Co. also tested this flow at the foot of the bluff at the east end of the hill, but with no success. The dip of the felsite is such as to bring that rock directly above the tunnel that runs into the base of the cliff.

iv. (53). Sandstone:—A thin stratum of acid sandstone exposed in Black River. Thickness is 10 feet.

v. (54). Ophite:—There are exposures in the bed of Black River and also on the south side of Chippewa Hill. In addition to these places the rock may be seen in a tunnel at the foot of the cliff, about 150 feet from the tunnel spoken of above. This seems to be the largest opening made by the company, for judging from the dump pile, it must reach into the side of the hill as much as 100 feet. There are trees as much as six or eight inches in diameter now grown on the old dump pile. The rock thrown out is only slightly amygdaloidal and it looks as if the work were done near the base of the amygdaloidal portion of the flow. The rock is a coarser ophite with augite mottles 2 to 2½ mm.[1] There is some amygdaloid and pseudoamygdaloid at the base as is shown by a test-pit made by the Old Peak Mining Co. in the sandstone below, which test-pit exposes a portion of the base of this ophite.

The surface width of the ophite is 160 feet and the thickness 100 feet.

Sp. 20076. Sec. 32, T. 49 N., R. 46 W., 750 N., 1700 W.
Ophite:
Macroscopic: Dark gray color; pronounced ophitic texture; augite crystals 2 to 2½ mm.

vi. (55). Sandstone:—The Chippewa Mining Co. also tested this stratum, but apparently with no success. The test-pit is probably about 50 feet deep. It is on the south side of the hill and is the only place where this sandstone may be seen. The material thrown out shows that the stratum is partly sandstone of acid type and partly conglomerate, which is also acid, but basic material is quite common. There are some pebbles nearly an inch in diameter at the base. Much of the material is angular. Although this is below the Chippewa felsite there are many felsite pebbles in the stratum. The whole is heavily charged with calcite. No traces of copper were seen in any of the material dumped from the test-pit.

The strike is N. 80° E., and the dip 45° N., and the thickness 15 feet.

S's. 20099, 20100, 20101, 10102 and 20103 are all from the stratum but they are merely acid sandstones much like others that we have met and their lengthy description here would add nothing of value.

vii. (56). Ophite:—Exposed in Black River. Surface 80 feet, thickness 50 feet.

viii. (57). Ophite:—Exposed in the river. Surface 50 feet, thickness 40 feet.

ix. (58). Ophite:—Only the top 25 feet of this flow is exposed.

x. (59). Unexposed:—The unexposed width here represents a rock thickness of 140 feet.

xi. (60). Ophite:—This flow is exposed on the south of Chippewa Hill. Neither the upper nor the lower contact is exposed, but specimens were taken from the flow below, so the lower contact can be fairly accurately located. The grain of the specimen in hand shows that it comes from at least 25 or 30 feet from the contact and the thickness of the flow may be a great deal more.

---

[1] About 190 feet below the felsite at right angles to the dip I found mottles as much as 5 mm. across, about 830 paces N., 1650 W., Sec. 32.

Sp. 20065. Sec. 32, T. 49 N., R. 46 W. 500 N., 1933 W.

Ophite:—

Macroscopic: Typical ophite with mottling from 1 to 2 mm. There are phenocrysts as large as 5 mm., but they are not numerous.

xii. (61). Ophite:—This is a typical ophite, and is exposed on the south side of Chippewa Hill. The flow is 50 feet thick.

Sp. 20066. Sec. 32, T. 49 N., R. 46 W., 500 N., 1865 W.

Ophite:—

Macroscopic: Typical ophite with pseudoamygdules whose fillings are quartz.

Microscopic: Feldspathic ophite; pseudoamygdules, mostly of spherulitic quartz, but some chlorite; abundant chlorite and some serpentine are developed in the ground mass; augite, labradorite feldspar, olivine and magnetite are primary minerals; feldspar is the most abundant of all and is of labradorite variety; augite is not so abundant as in most ophites; there never was much olivine and none of it is unaltered; magnetite skeleton crystals are very abundant and there seems to be no doubt about their primary origin; the magnetite appears to be older than either the augite or the plagioclase.

Sp. 20069. South side of Chippewa Hill.

Ophite:—

Macroscopic: This specimen is a typical dark colored ophite.

Microscopic: Augite 1 to 1½ mm.; olivine altered to serpentine; labradorite feldspar; much chlorite is developed, and in places seems to be mixed with serpentine; olivine must never have been important as can be seen from the small amount of mineral that has resulted from its decomposition. There are rarely phenocrysts of feldspar.

At the base of ophite 62 there is a small amount of sedimentary matter some of which is more or less mixed with the base of the flow.

xiii. (62). Unexposed:—Surface width 150 feet representing a rock thickness of about 100 feet.

xiv. (63). Melaphyre:—Exposures of this rock occur only in the bed of Black River, Sec. 32, T. 49 N., R. 46 W. This and the two flows immediately beneath it are quite alike and are quite different from the other flows of the section. They are more acid in appearance than the other melaphyres, and are probably more like Ash bed rocks than any other that we have met. The cavity fillings are largely agate, a filling that is not met elsewhere save in the flows near the base of the Keweenawan series. The rock is of porphyritic type having phenocrysts up to ⅛ inches long. Epidote is developed more plentifully than in any of the rocks previously noted.

This flow and the two immediately below it have so successfully resisted the wearing action of the river as to cause rapids which are larger than those over any other basic rocks on the river, but not so large as some of those caused by conglomerate.

Sp. 20074. Sec. 32, T. 49 N., R. 46 W. Black River.

Melaphyre:—

Macroscopic: The specimen has a brownish color; it breaks with a rough somewhat pitted surface; it is somewhat more harsh to the touch than other melaphyres; plagioclase is important; some phenocrysts of lath-shaped feldspar; epidote is present; iron oxide is developed.

Microscopic: Feldspathic ophite. There is a large amount of oligoclase feldspar, but it is somewhat altered. The amount of augite is small; what is present surrounds the feldspar crystals giving an ophitic texture. Apparently there was abundant olivine present, mostly in grains, but all of it is now altered, leaving conspicuous iron oxide. Epidote and calcite are developed between the crystals.

xv. (64). Melaphyre:—Exposed in Black River immediately below

63. Thickness 100 feet. The descriptions given for 63 apply almost equally well to this stratum.

xvi. (65). Melaphyre:—This flow may be seen in the river in contact beneath 64, which it is much like. The bottom is covered but there is an exposed thickness of 80 feet.

From Lake Superior to the stratum just described we were able to follow the succession of strata fairly accurately because of the work that had been done by the river in removing the drift covering from the rock. There were some places that the rock was still covered, but on the whole the column is fairly complete. The work of the river gave another great advantage in that the water flowed nearly north and south, thus giving a chance of our working across the formation nearly at right angles to the strike. From stratum 66 it cannot be followed so well. Beyond this there are practically no outcrops in the river, the only ones being in Sec.'s. 8 and 21, and even here the rock is not so well exposed as to enable one to determine the successive flows.

The exposures next to be considered are on the Black River Highlands. With the exposures scattered here and there over a rather large area it is impossible to compile any accurate geological column. In view of this fact I shall not attempt to denote the separate flows. The best that can be done is to describe in geologically descending order the various specimens taken, and to give a general description of the whole.

There is to be considered under this head a thickness of about 8,000 feet of rock. So far as seen all the exposures are basic eruptives, but it must be remembered that there is every chance for both acid eruptives and sedimentaries to be present and not be exposed. Yet it is evident that this part of the column is made up mainly of basic flows with amygdaloidal tops and massive centres. The flows are not thick, as is evident from the grain of the rocks, but from the same evidence it is certain that they are thicker than the flows that we have met above or, indeed, any below except some ophites that are exposed in Sec. 21, T. 48 N., which are the thickest eruptive beds in the series.

The minerals which make up the rocks and the properties of the rocks will be brought out in the descriptions of the specimens.

This part of the column though pretty uniform in quality is itself divided because of places that are without exposure. While it is highly probable that these unknown places are underlain by the same rock as the other parts yet they are here made divisions by themselves and denoted as unknown.

xvii. (66). This part is exposed on the Black River Highlands, in Sec's. 33 and 34, T. 49 N. It is made up of several flows which cannot be separated in this report. It is certain that it is nearly all melaphyre.

Continuing the strike that the rocks have there would be no gap at all between this part of the column and the lowest part of the column exposed in the lowest flow seen in Sec. 32, that is strata 63, 64 and 65. But it is probable that there is a fault passing between the exposures in the river and those on the hill to the east. There is very great evidence to show that there is a fault here if we remember what was seen in the lower part of the river. It is certain that no fault, at least none of importance, can pass between Chippewa Hill and the river, as the strike and dip of the felsite on the hill are such that the formation would go through just where it is found on the river. If the faulting planes seen in Sec. 29, T. 49 N., R. 46 W. were continued they would lie east of the river in Sec 32, that is, would pass between Black River Highlands and Black River. In such a case, and it is just the probable case, the column compiled here would be inaccurate, but there is no certain evidence as to the amount or direction of the throw, and the best that can be done is to compile the data as if there were no fault, but with the knowledge that ultimately some change must be made.

It is difficult to say how many flows are in this part which is being considered under 66, in fact more than difficult, it is impossible. From the exposures seen it is known that there are at least six amygdaloids shown and one outcrop that is so near a contact that the grain is very fine. It is practically certain then that the least number of flows that there can be is eight.

The surface width of this group is 2,300 feet, the strike N. 80° E., and the dip 45° to 50° N. There is a rock thickness of about 1,700 feet. With this thickness which is made up of at least eight flows the average thickness of the flows cannot exceed 200 feet. Some of the flows may not be as thick as the average, and some may be much thicker. It seems certain from the grain of some of the specimens that the flows from which they are taken must be as thick as 200 feet:

20081. Sec. 34, T. 49 N., R. 46 W., 1,000 N., 1,640 W[1].

Macroscopic: A fine grained basic rock.

Microscopic: A fine grained augite porphyrite of the Minong type.

Sp. 20073. Sec. 33, T. 49 N., R. 46 W., 800 N., 600 W.

This specimen is a typical amygdaloidal melaphyre.

Sp. 20084. Sec. 34, T. 49 N., R. 46 W., 75 N., 300 W.

Macroscopic: A melaphyre in which augite and plagioclase can be readily distinguished. The most interesting mineral in the specimen is a bronze colored mineral probably iddingsite. It looks much like biotite mica but a close examination shows it to have a more bronzy appearance, and, in addition, instead of cleaving like mica it crumbles beneath the point of the knife. When scratched it shows a red color which suggests a very high per cent of hematite. When one has considered the alteration of olivine, and followed it through the numerous stages of changes that is shown in this suite of specimens, and seen it in every stage of change from olivine to biotite one must conclude that this micaceous looking mineral in this specimen is but an example of that which was originally olivine but now far on the road of alteration, and well toward the biotite end of the line.

Microscopic: Augite not abundant; abundant labradorite feldspar; olivine altered as usual to that mineral which so resembles mica; some epidote developing; chloritic last interstices.

Sp. 20082. Sec. 34, T. 49 N., R. 46 W., 950 N., 550 W.

This specimen is a typical fine grained melaphyre.

Sp. 20083. Sec. 34, T. 49 N., R. 46 W., 950 N., 30 W.

Macroscopic: A typical melaphyre.

Sp. 20088. Sec. 34, T. 49 N., R, 46 W., 775 N., 490 W. This specimen comes from the same test pit as 20087 described below.

Macroscopic: It is not quite so acid in appearance as 20087. The ground mass has not the same reddish brown color and is not so dense. There are phenocrysts of unstriated feldspar not much weathered and other phenocrysts of feldspar, probably plagioclase, now altered almost to epidote.

Sp. 20087. Sec. 34, T. 49 N., R. 46 W., 775 N., 490 W. From a small test pit.

This is the most acid rock of this group of melaphyres. It is fine grained and has a reddish brown colored ground mass. There are phenocrysts of orthoclase feldspar as much as 4 mm. long. It is amygdaloidal with amygdules of chlorite and epidote. On the whole the specimen is probably among the basic rocks but at the acid end and may be called a porphyrite.

Sp. 20085. Sec. 34, T. 49 N., R. 46 W., 750 N., 500 W. From a test pit.

This specimen is amygdaloidal with cavity fillings of epidote, chlorite and quartz. There are phenocrysts of feldspar 3 to 4 mm. All the minerals are much altered.

Sp. 20086. Sec. 34 T. 49 N., R. 46 W., 750 N., 500 W. from a test pit.

The specimen is highly altered and shows both macroscopically and microscopically, only quartz and epidote. There is not a trace of any of the original minerals left. Its appearance suggests that it is from the amygdaloidal top of a flow.

Sp. 20071. Sec. 33, T. 49 N., R. 46 W., 925 N., 95 W.

Macroscopic: A medium fine grained rock with a dark purplish color. It breaks with a pitted surface. Its appearance is such as to show that it is basic, but its minerals cannot be distinguished macroscopically.

Microscopically: A much altered ophite with andesine feldspar. Olivine is present in grains. Chlorite, calcite and quartz are present.

---

[1] The locations of specimens as given in text are those on the labels originally assigned to them, and do not agree exactly with the location of outcrops on the map, Plate XXXII, which have been corrected.

Sp. 20064. Sec. 34 T. 49 N., R. 46 W. 500 N., 900 W. This rock is much like 20063, but is finer grained; it is a melaphyre in which chlorite is prominently developed. There is also some epidote and some calcite.

Sp. 20063. Sec. 33, T. 49 N., R. 46 W. 00 N., 1600 W.

Macroscopic: A uniform grained rock without phenocrysts; augite and plagioclase feldspar are both present; some of the feldspar crystals are more than 1 mm.; there are numerous spots of red whose color is evidently due to hematite, and there seems to be no doubt about these spots being the result of the weathering of the olivine, and are probably iddingsite; chlorite is strongly developed. The rock is melaphyre.

Sp. 20070. Sec. 33, T. 49 N., R. 46 W., 425 N., 1000 W.

Macroscopic: This specimen is much altered, iron oxide, chlorite and epidote being present as secondaries. There are some phenocrysts of feldspar.

Microscopic: The minerals are much altered, none being unchanged. The oligoclase feldspar is pretty well decomposed; olivine was originally abundant, but is weathered as usual. Apparently augite was never so abundant as in the average ophite and there is but little left of what originally was present. Much chlorite and secondary quartz are present, and there is also some epidote developing.

Sp. 20072. Sec. 34, T. 49 N., R. 46 W., 250 N., 1900 W. This specimen was taken from a test pit about four feet deep.

Macroscopic: This is the coarsest grained eruptive specimen yet met. Both augite and striated feldspar can be distinguished under the hand lens; some of the feldspar crystals are as much as 1 mm. The grain of the rock is very uniform. Hematite is developed in spots as if from the weathering of some individual mineral. There in also considerable magnetite. Occasionally a mineral can be found that appears much like biotite, but it does not cleave into flexible laminae, but rather crumbles beneath the point of the knife. The abundant feldspar gives the rock a rather light color.

Microscopic; A very feldspathic ophite; labradorite feldspar 1 to 2 mm.; augite not so abundant as in some ophites; crystals 3 to 4 mm.; some of the augite is yellow under crossed nicols which is the usual color in this suite of specimens, but some of it has rather brilliant colors as blue, violet and violet-red; olivine was originally abundant but it is now completely altered yielding serpentine, hematite and magnetite; a mineral resembling mica is developed; it is not biotite but is tending that way; it has not the bird's eye maple appearance, nor the pleochroism; this mineral is generally surrounded by a heavy opaque band of iron oxide; except the olivine the minerals are well preserved there being very few secondaries, only a small amount of quartz and chlorite being developed.

xviii. (67.) There is an unexposed surface width of about 1,900 feet or a rock thickness of 1,400 feet. It is probable that this width is underlain by melaphyres.

xix. (68.) The only exposures of 68 occur on the Black River highlands in Secs. 3 and 4, T. 48 N. The rocks that are considered under 68 are much like those under 66. They are melaphyres, and are present in flows that are probably a little thicker than the average flow exposed in this section of the Keweenawan rocks.

This group will bear the same relation to the column that 66 does so far as being misplaced by a fault is concerned. It is in all probability correctly placed with regard to 66, because there are no fault indications that would suggest a movement of either of these two relative to the other, so if 66 is thrown back or thrown ahead then so is 68.

There is a surface width of 2,600 feet, and a rock thickness of 2,000 feet. There are seen at least eleven amygdaloids in this thickness and it is probable that there are more. It is probable that there are some rather thin flows here, and it is certain from the grain of the rock that there are some rather thick ones.

This belt of rocks is interesting in that it shows copper in a few places, yet there was seen nothing of obvious economic value. The most conspicuous showing was 500 paces south of the quarter post between Secs. 3 and 4, T. 48 N. The amygdaloid in which this copper shows is very much altered, and is almost a mass of epidote. The particles of copper are very small. Besides the small amount of copper there was some copper oxide, and some copper carbonate. The strongest statement that could be safely made is to say that if one were prospecting in the district it might prove interesting to look at this showing, and about this section.

In the flows that come under this head epidote is prominently developed. Not only is it in the cavities but it shows all through the rock mass. The amygdaloids above the Chippewa Felsite were found to be almost wholly without epidote. Besides the epidote quartz is prominent.

This part of the column considered under 68 must be considered as was 66, that is a description of specimens given in descending order. It is quite impossible to separate the flows with anything like accuracy of either number or thickness.

Sp. 20165. Sec. 3, T. 48 N., R. 46 W., 170 N., 540 W.

Macroscopic: Basic rock highly charged with chlorite; the primary members are augite and plagioclase feldspar. There is considerable epidote and iron oxide in the specimen.

Microscopic: Primary minerals are labradorite feldspar, abundant olivine and augite. Secondary are chlorite, epidote, serpentine and magnetite. The specimen has ophitic texture. The weathering of the olivine is quite different from common, being altered into green serpentine surrounded generally by a ring of dark iron oxide.

Sp. 20166. Sec. 4, T. 48 N., R. 46 W., 1000 N., 300 W.

Macroscopic: The specimen is a typical melaphyre highly altered; chlorite is prominently developed; traces of lath shaped feldspar can be seen.

Microscopic: Coarse doleritic melaphyre with marked olivine. The feldspar is much altered, as is also the augite of which there was originally only a small amount. The olivine is completely altered.

Sp. 20167. Sec. 4, T. 48 N., R. 46 W., 1000 N., 200 W.

This specimen very strongly resembles 20166.

Sp. 20168. Sec. 3, T. 48 N., R. 46 W., 1000 N., 1960 W.

Macroscopic: This is a more acid looking rock than the typical melaphyre. The specimen is strewn with small white spots, evidently altered phenocrysts of feldspar.

Microscopic: Augite porphyrite of the Minong type.

Sp. 20171. Sec. 3, T. 48 N., R. 46 W., 1210 N., 356 W.

Macroscopic: Massive melaphyre showing augite, feldspar, chlorite, magnetite and hematite.

Microscopic: Ophite; augite 4 mm.; labradorite feldspar; olivine all altered; magnetite and chlorite.

Sp. 20174. Sec. 3, T. 48 N., R. 46 W., 750 N., 1040 W.

Macroscopic: Melaphyre; augite, feldspar, chlorite, iddingsite, and hematite.

Microscopic: Ophite, augite 3 mm.; labradorite feldspar; olivine completely altered; magnetite, hematite and serpentine.

Sp. 20172. Sec. 3, T. 48 N., R. 46 W., 570 N., 200 W.

This specimen is much like 20174 and is probably from the same flow.

Sp. 20170. Sec. 3, T. 48 N., R. 46 W., 1,000 N., 700 W.

This specimen is a typical melaphyre, much altered and charged with epidote and chlorite.

Sp. 20173. Sec. 3, T. 48 N., R. 46 W., 500 N., 2,000.

This specimen was taken because of the copper content. The specimen is a highly altered amygdaloid heavily charged with epidote. In the specimen may be seen some native copper, some malachite, and some copper oxide. There is nothing of economic importance. The exposure of this amygdaloid is on the very top of a high peak 500 paces south of the quarter post between Secs. 3 and 4.

xx (69). Unexposed:—The next 800 feet of rock is without exposure.

xxi. (70.) The next group is exposed in Black River, Sec. 8, T. 48 N., R. 46 W. Like the two groups above, this group is composed of melaphyre flows. It would be easier to gain a knowledge of the number and thickness of the flows in this group than in the other two, yet it is felt that any attempt must give inaccurate results and it seems best to consider them as a whole.

The fault which was spoken of above as possible, and, indeed, probable, setting 66 and 68 up or down the column from what they should be, cannot displace this part of the geological column because the fault would pass to the east of these exposures the same as to the east of the exposures in the south part of Sec. 32, T. 49 N., R. 46 W. It is practically certain that this part of the column is correctly placed relatively to the exposures in Sec. 32, or in other words if we added anything to the thickness of the rock, or took anything from it by crossing the fault we have done the opposite by recrossing it and the total thickness represented should be correct.

There are only a few specimens described below as it seems useless to give lengthy descriptions since the exposures are so much like 66 and 68.

Sp. 20161. Sec. 8, T. 48 N., R. 46 W.

Macroscopic: A typical fine grained melaphyre.

Sp. 20162. Sec. 8, T. 48 N., R. 46 W.

A much altered melaphyre.
Sp. 20163. Sec. 8, T. 48 N., R. 46 W.
Macroscopic: The specimen is basic, but it has an appearance that suggests that it is more acid than the average melaphyre. It is amygdaloidal. It has a reddish color.
Microscopic: An altered oligoclase melaphyre.
Sp. 20164. Sec. 8, T. 48 N., R. 46 W.
Macroscopic: A typical melaphyre with secondary developments of calcite and chlorite.
Microscopic: The thin section shows much alteration. The augite, if ever present, is not to be recognized now. The feldspars are changed, but are probably labradorite. The olivine is altered as usual into that micaceous looking mineral. The whole is well charged with calcite. The rock is a much altered melaphyre.

xxii. (71). Unexposed:—Beneath the rocks that show in the river in Sec. 8, there is a thickness of 4,000 feet without exposure. The rock above and that below this gap is ophite. The boulders in the river, some of which are very angular, and surely not far from place, are also ophite. While there is no means to enable one to say positively what the rock is, all the evidence that can be gained seems to indicate that it is ophite. There is no high land anywhere in the area underlain by this belt of rock, as it would just skirt along the north edge of the Black River Highlands and far to the south of Chippewa Hill on the west side of the river.

xxiii. (72). The exposure of this stratum and the next two or three below it occur in the west part of Sec. 15, T. 48 N., which is far east of the Black River. Also the exposures are on the east side of the Black River fault, and hence are thrown up or down the geological column according to the direction and amount of the throw of the fault. This flow is a melaphyre. The top is not exposed and neither is the bottom.

Sp. 20230. Sec. 15, T. 48 N., R. 46 W., 1000 N., 500 W.
Microscopic: The rock is an altered melaphyre in which is developed calcite, chlorite, epidote and magnetite. The feldspars are too much altered to determine further than that they are plagioclase. The augite is also altered.

xxiv. (73). Sandstone:—This sandstone outcrops in the bed of a creek in Sec. 15, T. 48 N., just below the melaphyre described immediately above. It is on the west side of the Black River fault and seems to give some argument that the throw is not great, since Dr. Lane found a sandstone in the river which seemed to be in place, and is not far off the line of strike of this stratum. Too much weight should not be put on this point, however, as the sandstone in the river may not be in place, and even if it is it may be another stratum. It was because of the outcropping of this sandstone in the creek bed that the stream is called Sandstone Creek in this report.

The sandstone is at least 100 feet and it cannot exceed this thickness very much as it is limited both above and below by melaphyres.

Sp. 20227. Sec. 15, T. 48 N., R. 46 W., 1000 N., 500 W. From the bed of Sandstone Creek.
Macroscopic: A very ordinary rather fine grained reddish brown sandstone.
Microscopic: A sandstone with a large amount of quartz grains. There is also considerable plagioclase, and some augite fragments. Calcite and epidote show between the particles. There is a larger amount of basic material than is common in the sandstones of this cross section save in the Nonesuch[1].

xxv. (74). Melaphyre:—Exposed in Sandstone Creek immediately below the sandstone. It has an amygdaloidal top. The thickness of the stratum is 100 feet.

Sp. 20232. This specimen is from Sandstone Creek. It is a very ordinary typical amygdaloidal melaphyre with amygdules of chlorite and laumontite.

---

[1] This is not unlike the Wolverine sandstone, Marvine's Cg. 9. L.

xxvi. (75). A melaphyre like 74. Only the top of this flow is exposed but there is enough to show that it is at least 40 feet thick.

xxvii. (76). Unexposed:—There is represented here a rock thickness of 1,400 feet. It is very probable that it is mostly underlain by basic rocks. At the bottom of this unexposed distance are boulders which are certainly very near to place, for they are very angular, so it becomes quite certain that the bottom at least is ophite.

xxviii. (77). Ophite:—Only bottom exposed.

xxix. (78). This is a more acid flow than is typical of the series. It is a feldspar porphyry.

Sp. 20234. Sec. 21, T. 48 N., R. 46 W. From the mouth of Sandstone creek.
Macroscopic: Reddish brown rock with a somewhat acid appearance. It has phenocrysts of coarsely striated feldspar 3 to 4 mm., as well as some which show no striae. A close search reveals an occasional small crystal of quartz, probably primary. This rock would if silica content alone were considered fall within Irving's quartzless porphyry.
Microscopic: The slide shows the rock to be a feldspar porphyry with poikilitic quartz. The phenocrysts of feldspar are mostly oligoclase. There are no quartz crystals showing in the slide.

xxx. (79). Unexposed:—The only indications as to what this 800 feet of rock is, are that both above (except 78) and below are ophites, and the whole river bed is filled with angular ophite boulders.

xxxi. (80). This ophite is exposed in the river in Sec. 21, T. 48 N., R. 46 W. These exposures show the largest augite crystals of any rock in the series. Some of the mottles are a full inch across, and we may infer a thickness of at least 500 feet.

xxxii. (81). This flow is quite like the one above, a very coarse lustre mottled melaphyre.

The contact of these two ophites is exposed in the river but the top of the top flow, and the bottom of the bottom flow are both covered. It is safe to say that each flow is more than 500 feet thick, a fact that is shown by the very coarse mottling, such as is seen on S. 20241.

There are several specimens from these flows but the description of one will be sufficient.

Sp. 20185. Sec. 21, T. 48 N., R. 46 W. From Black River.
Macroscopic: A coarse grained ophite with mottling a full inch across. The specimen is very fresh showing no weathering.
Microscopic: Augite crystals 20 mm., enclosing labradorite feldspar. Augite is more plentiful in this rock than in any previously met. There is no olivine, and the only suggestion that there might have been some originally, is the presence of a few magnetite particles; in any case olivine never could have been abundant.

These two flows where they show in the river in Sec. 21 show faulting. Almost no indication is given of the amount or direction of throw, but the rocks are so fractured and crumbled and broken as to strongly suggest rock movement. The indications are that the fault plane runs a little west of north which would connect it with the faulting in the river in Sec. 29, T. 49 N., and, indeed, it is probable that all these indications are of the same fault. The dip of the fault plane in all the cases is toward the east at a high angle.

xxxiii. (82). Unexposed;—This is the widest unexposed area in the whole cross section. It represents at a dip of 64° a rock thickness of about 8,500 feet. It is possible that there is a strike fault in this gap representing the continuation of the great fault that bounds the south side of the Keweenawan on Keweenaw Point, and, if so, this calculated thickness of 8,500 feet would be incorrect. The rocks above the space are basic, as are also the rocks below, and it is probable that the underlying rocks are also basic.

### *Division IX. The Porphyrites.*

This division is a rather mixed division, because in it are melaphyres, both ophitic and non-ophitic, felsites, porphyrites which closely approach Irving's quartzless porphyries, and labradorite porphyrites, but of all these the last are the most conspicuous. This division might be called one in which are conspicuous labradorite porphyrites. There are labradorite porphyrites outside this division but they are not such that their nature is revealed at a glance like these. Besides the fact that in this part these rocks are conspicuous the division is also marked by the gabbro at its base. This division shows the greatest variety in the kind of rocks that build it up of all the divisions of the column.

It covers practically the north of the two Bessemer Ridges. All of the outcrops are shown in the hills which are so characteristic of the base of the Keweenawan about here. The most northerly exposures of the division are seen in Powder Mill Creek.

i. (83). This is a blue colored trap rock of which only the base is exposed.

ii. (84). Melaphyre 80 feet.

iii. (85). Blue trap 170 feet. This trap does not show any coarse grain, but is uniform in texture through the thickness of the whole flow. The exposures of it on Powder Mill Creek were not continuous and it is possible that the thickness taken here is made up of more than one flow. The possibility of overlooking a contact is greater since these dense blue rocks do not have important amygdaloidal zones, and sometimes none at all.

iv. (86). Labradorite porphyrite. Only the top of this flow is exposed. There is no amygdaloidal zone. The ground mass of this is like that of the two blue trap flows above and it is highly probable that these two flows would be found to be labradorite porphyrites if they were well examined, since in places in such flows the crystals are often not conspicuous. The phenocrysts of this flow which are red colored plagioclase feldspars will not exceed 2mm.

v. (87). Unexposed 150 feet.

vi. (88). A drab colored amygdaloid with amygdules of chlorite. Thickness 50 feet.

vii. (89). A blue colored labradorite porphyrite with a uniform grained ground mass through which is scattered a few crystals of feldspar which will not exceed 1mm. in length. In this flow are large secondary cavities as much as three inches across. These cavities are filled with laumontite. Thickness of flow 80 feet.

vii. (90). A gray fine grained trap that has no amygdaloidal zone. Thickness 80 feet.

ix. (91). This is another labradorite porphyrite. It is exposed in Powder Mill Creek, and also in a rock cut on the D. S. S. & A. Ry., Sec. 32, T. 48 N., R. 46 W., 350 N., and 650 W. In the creek there are a large number of plagioclase phenocrysts in a dense blue ground mass. These phenocrysts are tabular shaped and sometimes are as much as 20mm. across, but the majority are smaller. There is a tendency of these crystals to collect together. In the railroad cut the crystals are not nearly so numerous and hence not so conspicuous. The showing of numerous phenocrysts in one part of a labradorite porphyrite flow and not in another was seen to be true of other strata also. It does much to cause a change in the appearance of the flow, and hence a failure to recognize two separate outcrops as belonging to the same strata. In the railroad cut there are secondary cavities as much as eight or ten inches across filled with laumontite, most of which is in long crystals radiating from the centre of the cavity. Thickness 140 feet.

x. (92). Porphyrite:—This porphyrite has such characteristic properties that it can be readily traced and recognized. It has a reddish brown ground mass in which are numerous red tabular striated crystals of feldspar, which are more or less collected together in star like aggregations. These crystals are generally 6 to 8 mm. long although some are much larger. The flow does not show any amygdaloidal zone at all.

This rock is most conspicuously exposed in the bed of Powder Mill Creek, just north of the line between Ts. 47 and 48 N., where the stream has made a deep cut through the rock below the falls which are a few paces south of the line. There are also other outcrops of the rock lying toward the west and not far from the line since it is thrown back because of faulting. On the east side of the creek it is exposed north of the south corner of Secs. 32 and 33, T. 48 N. The stratum is exposed west of the area worked and the exposures were located as far west as the state line. It is exposed on the west side of the road at the foot of a hill, Sec. 9, T. 47 N., R. 47 W., 2,000 paces N., 1,200 paces west, and also 1,740 N., 2,000 west in the same section. This outcrop is also near the roadside. It also outcrops on the bank of the Montreal River at the Michigan-Wisconsin state line, in Sec. 9, T. 47 N., R. 47 W. The rock is exposed on both sides of the river.

The surface width of this rock is well exposed in Powder Mill Creek and is at least 250 feet, so there is a thickness of about 220 feet.

The rock appears at first glance like a labradorite porphyrite, but microscopic determinations show its feldspar of acid plagioclase variety.

Sp. 20208. From Powder Mill Creek just north of the township line.

Macroscopic: Porphyrite: This rock has very pronounced characteristics. The ground mass is a reddish brown color, and in it are numerous red phenocrysts of red plagioclase which are tabular shaped, and average from 6 to 8 mm. in diameter, but some of the largest are as much as 15 mm. Besides these crystals small crystals of lath shaped feldspar can be distinctly seen in the ground mass. The plagioclase crystals are largely collected together in star-like aggregations. The rock has a rather acid appearance and probably is more acid than the labradorite porphyrites.

Microscopic: Porphyrite; phenocrysts of plagioclase feldspar of oligoclase variety; the ground mass is made up of oligoclase crystals and a small amount of idiomorphic augite; a little quartz and a little chlorite are developed in the ground mass.

xi. (93). This red colored porphyrite has very characteristic properties that can be quite easily recognized. It outcrops quite often. It is exposed in the N. W. corner of the N. E. ¼ Sec. 3, T. 47 N. at the north foot of a high hill. It is also well exposed on Powder Mill Creek where the town line crosses, which is just below the falls. There are also numerous other exposures west of the creek, along with stratum 92. The two can be followed across T. 47 N. to the Michigan-Wisconsin state line. This stratum is a little more than 100 feet thick. It has no amygdaloidal top. It is a reddish colored rock thickly filled with small lath shaped crystals of striated feldspar about 2 mm. long. The rock is evidently more acid[1] than the average basic flow and yet it is much less acid than the felsites. In acidity it would probably compare well with the stratum immediately below it.

xii. (94). This is a very common looking gray trap rock without amygdaloidal top. It is exposed in several places but the best exposure is in Powder Mill Creek. The flow is 60 feet thick.

xiii. (95). Felsite:—Excepting the Chippewa felsite this is the most acid rock in the Black River section of the Keweenawan series.

It is exposed in Sec. 3 T. 47. N., R. 46 W., at the north foot of the rock hill in the north part of the section. It is also exposed on both sides of the road that runs north from the north 1/4 post of Sec. 4 and can be easily traced for several paces on the east side of the road. Other exposures are 80 paces north of the south corner of Sec's. 32 and 33, T. 48 N., in Powder Mill Creek just north of the town line, and extensively in Sec. 6, T. 47 N., 2,000 paces north and from 1,500 paces west to near the west corner. This felsite shows flow structure in several places, the most conspicuous being along the north line of Sec. 6. The rock has a very acid appearance but in no place is that appearance so pronounced as in the Chippewa felsite. The specimens vary in color from a chocolate brown to a deep reddish brown. In no place does it break with the clear fracture and knife like edges that the Chippewa felsite in the river breaks with. It seems to crumble in the same manner as the Chippewa felsite where it is weathered, and also seems to be affected chemically.

There are a few very small phenocrysts of quartz, but they are so few and so small that they are found only by searching carefully. In some of the specimens quartz cannot be seen at all. Phenocrysts of orthoclase 2 to 3 mm. are very plentiful, and there are some as large as 5 mm. There are also some crystals of plagioclase.

A peculiar thing about this felsite is that it has an amygdaloidal top. The amygdaloidal zone is not thick, but in it there are numerous cavities all of which are small, none exceeding 4 mm. They are nearly all filled with crystalline quartz and agate but there is some epidote and some chlorite. These cavities differ from those in the basic rocks in that these are elongated and lens shaped, while those in the basic rocks are generally nearly spherical, except, of course, the pipe amygdules at the base of the flows.

The thickness of this rock is about 165 feet. The dip was taken as 65° N.

As this felsite flow and the two porphyrites below it are traced along their strike they show very conclusively several faults in which the east side is thrown south. These faults are considered under the chapter on faulting.

S. 20244. Sec. 10, T. 47 N., R. 46 W. From the north foot of the hill in the north part of the section.

Macroscopic: This specimen comes from the amygdaloidal zone of the felsite. The cavities are numerous, but are much smaller than those in the basic rocks. They are for the most part lens shaped. The fillings are mostly quartz and agate, but there are also some of chlorite and some epidote. There are a great many orthoclase phenocrysts from 2 to 4 mm. long. The ground mass is fine grained and dense, and has a chocolate brown color. The rock is distinctly acid in appearance.

Microscopic: The ground mass is a deep reddish brown so intensely colored as to be almost opaque. There are crystals of orthoclase feldspar from 2 to 3 mm. long. There is also some magnetite which is probably primary. There are numerous amygdules, all elongated in the same direction; these amygdules are filled with quartz, epidote and chlorite. The rock is a felsite.

---

[1] "Salic" or feldspathic; this felsitic horizon indicated by flows 85 to 95 may connect with the one indicated by Irving in Plate XXII of his Monograph V. U. S. Geol. Survey, as crossing the Gogogashugun on the north line of Sec. 8, T. 46 N., R. 2 E. of the Wisconsin meridian.

Sp. 20133. Sec. 5, T. 47 N., R. 46 W., 2000 paces N., 100 W.

Macroscopic: An acid looking rock with a chocolate brown color. There is a fine grained ground mass in which there are numerous phenocrysts of orthoclase and a few of striated feldspar. There is a slight appearance of banding but it is only slight.

Microscopic: A spongy ground mass of poikilitic quartz in which is scattered numerous crystals of orthoclase. Besides these small crystals of feldspar there are a few phenocrysts the majority of which are oligoclase. There are some of orthoclase. The relative proportion of oligoclase and orthoclase as shown in the thin section is misleading as the hand specimen shows that the orthoclase phenocrysts are the more important.

Other specimens from this felsite which are much different from those described above might be described. The same fact is brought out as was seen in studying the Chippewa felsite, namely, that pebbles in the Keweenawan Conglomerates that differ much in appearance may come from the same acid flow.

Where this felsite shows along the north line of Sec. 6, T. 47 N. there is an ophite not far above, in fact almost in contact. On Powder Mill Creek there are several exposures above and no showing of any ophite. This may be indication of a fault, and is considered in the chapter where the faults of the district are discussed.

Some of the basal members of the Keweenawan were traced as far west as the state line. The flows just above this felsite were readily traced to the line but the felsite itself and a few flows below could not be located, and it seemed almost certain that they were pinched out. The whole thing considered together seemed to indicate a strike fault.

xiv. (96). This labradorite porphyrite is seen in contact with the felsite which lies above it about 100 paces N. E. from the south 1/4 post of Sec. 32, T. 48 N. It is also exposed below the felsite along the north line of Sec. 6, T. 47 N., and may be traced for some distance. The flow is 60 feet thick. It is not so rich in phenocrysts as some of the labradorite porphyrites. The ground mass is of a drab color and is very fine grained and dense. The phenocrysts are 8 to 10 mm. long. There are only a few amygdaloidal cavities at the top, the flow being almost without an amygdaloidal zone.

xv. (97). A fine grained basic rock with a very thin amygdaloidal zone at the surface.

Sp. 20131. 2,000 p. N., 650 p. W., Sec. 4, T. 47 N., R. 46 W.

Macroscopic: The hand specimen is very fine grained gray colored rock with a very uniform texture and appearance. It has an occasional amygdule of quartz.

Microscopic: A fine grained augite porphyrite of the Minong type, with oligoclase feldspar of two generations.

xvi. (98). This is the most conspicuous labradorite porphyrite of the whole Black River section. It has numerous phenocrysts of plagioclase feldspar, many of which are as much as 30 mm. long. It can be traced for several miles without any danger of error because of its marked characteristics.

It is conspicuously exposed in a bare hill in the N. W. 1/4 of the N. E. 1/4 Sec. 3 T. 47 N., R. 46 W. It is again exposed in the S. W. 1/4 of the S. E. 1/4 Sec. 33, T. 48 N., and can be traced for more than a hundred paces. Other exposures occur along the town line about 200 paces west of the north 1/4 post Sec. 4, T. 47 N. Again there are exposures on Powder Mill Creek a few paces south of the town line, and still others about 200 to 300 paces east. It is again exposed 250 paces south and 250 paces east of the N. W. corner Sec. 5, T. 47 N., and also a few paces south of the N. W. corner of the township. Boulders were found west but the ground where it should occur is low and not favorable for outcrops. Near the state line it does not outcrop and it seems to be pinched out suggesting the probability of a fault.

All of these exposures show a strike of N. 80° E. or thereabout, hence there must be considerable faulting in order that the exposures may occur where they do. In every case the east side is thrown south.

The flow has an amygdaloidal top but it is not conspicuous.

The thickness of the stratum is 250 feet.

Sp. 20145. Sec. 5, T. 47 N., R. 46 W., 1500 N., 2000 W.

Macroscopic: The rock is a labradorite porphyrite. The ground mass is a reddish gray color. In it can be seen numerous lath-shaped crystals of feldspar. Besides these small crystals there are phenocrysts of striated feldspar 20 to 30 mm. long.

Microscopic: The ground mass is largely made up of crystals of labradorite feldspar only a fraction of a millimeter long. There is also some augite in the ground mass but there is nothing of ophitic texture. The amount of serpentine and magnetite that is present suggests that there was probably a very considerable amount of olivine. The olivine is not weathered to iddingsite which was the common weathering in the ophites above. Some of the magnetite is probably original. The most conspicuous thing in the section is a number of large labradorite phenocrysts.

xvii. (99). Below this coarse labradorite porphyrite is a gray amygdaloidal melaphyre 120 feet thick.

xviii. (100). A blue trap much like the other blue traps described. Exposures of this rock are seen in the cleared field about 200 paces S. 60° W. from the N. ¼ post Sec. 4, T. 47 N. Thickness 200 feet.

xix. (101). The next flow is a porphyrite and so far as silica content is concerned it must be very near to Irving's quartzless porphyry. It is not so acid as the Chippewa felsite, nor even stratum 95. No very great error would be made if this rock were called a felsite. It has a dense aphanitic appearance. There is an occasional small phenocryst of feldspar but so small as to scarce be seen by the unaided eye. The flow has no amygdaloidal top. There is no flow structure, the closest approach being a marked tendency to cleave parallel to the strike of the formation and also to weather in such a manner as to suggest banding.

The rock is exposed in Powder Mill Creek a few hundred paces above the town line but the most conspicuous exposures are in Sewer Creek in Sec. 10, T. 47 N., along the D. S. S. & A. Ry. spur line that runs into Bessemer.

Sp. 20248. Sec. 10, T. 47 N., R. 46 W. From the bed of Sewer Creek.

Macroscopic: The specimen is very fine grained and has a very uniform texture. There is an occasional exceedingly small crystal of feldspar. There are numerous dark green patches elongated in a similar direction faintly suggesting banding. These patches probably receive their color from chlorite that has developed and are elongated because the structure of the rock allows weathering more readily in one direction than in another. This may be a faint trace of flowage. The rock has an acid appearance.

Microscopic: A fine grained ground mass made up of quartz and very small crystals of feldspar. The thin section is very heavily stained with iron oxide. Chlorite is developed in spots, and it is probably this chlorite that causes the green color in the hand specimen.

The thickness of this flow is 140 feet.

xx. (102). This flow is exactly like the one above it and any descriptions of the one are almost equally applicable to the other.

The thickness of this flow is 230 feet.

Strata 101 and 102 are exposed both in Powder Mill Creek and in Sewer Creek. It is known from the other strata that there is a fault running nearly north and south in Bessemer Gap lying north of Bessemer. These last two strata show that the fault must lie east of Sewer Creek, and, hence, very close to the rock hill that lies in the east part of Sec. 10.

xxi. (103). An amygdaloidal melaphyre exposed in Sewer Creek along the D. S. S. & A. Ry. spur line. Thickness 80 feet.

xxii. (104). An amygdaloidal melaphyre exposed in Sewer Creek along the spur line of the D. S. S. & A. Ry. Thickness 70 feet.

xxiii. (105). An amygdaloidal melaphyre exposed in Sewer Creek. Thickness 50 feet.

xxiv. (106). Next to these melaphyres is a porphyrite exactly like 102 and 103. Its thickness is 90 feet.

xxv. (107). Amygdaloidal melaphyre.

xxvi. (108). Unexposed 500 feet.

xxvii. (109). This bed is a volcanic agglomerate. It is exposed in the bare rock hills on the County Farm. It is 80 feet thick.

xxviii. (110). Ophite:—Only 20 feet of the thickness of this flow is exposed, both the top and the bottom being covered.

xxix. (111). Amygdaloidal melaphyre. Thickness 100 feet.

xxx. (112). Amygdaloidal melaphyre 50 feet.

xxxi. (113). Amygdaloidal melaphyre 100 feet.

xxxii. (114). A basic flow with a clinkery volcanic agglomerate top. The thickness of the flow is 30 feet and the agglomerate portion 10 feet.

xxxiii. (115). The next 240 feet shows only one small outcrop and that is ophite.

xxxiv. (116). Amygdaloidal melaphyre having a thickness of 120 feet.

xxxv. (117). Amygdaloidal melaphyre 60 feet.

xxxvi. (118). Amygdaloidal melaphyre with a clinkery top 100 feet.

xxxvii. (119). Amygdaloidal melaphyre 30 feet.

xxxviii. (120). Amygdaloidal melaphyre 30 feet.

xxxix. (121). Amygdaloidal melaphyre 90 feet.

xl. (122). Amygdaloidal melaphyre 140 feet.

xli. (123). Unexposed 170 feet.

xlii. (124). Augite porphyrite:—Only the base of this flow is exposed where it is seen in contact with the gabbro (stratum 125) that lies immediately below it. Exposures are seen in Sec. 4, T. 47 N. 890 N., and 1,500 W. and Sec. 5, 700 N., 400 W., and Sec. 6, 400 N., 1,550 W.

### *Division X. The Gabbro.*

The only rock in this division is a gabbro. It is, I think, the only horizon of the Bad River Gabbro seen in Michigan, and to Dr. Lane belongs the credit of its discovery.

Outcrops are seen in Sec. 4, T. 47 N., 840 N., 1,550 W., Sec. 5, 700 N., 100 W., also 650 N., 400 W., Sec. 6, 300 N., 1,550 W., and in Sec. 2, T. 47 N., R. 47 W. The outcrop in Sec. 4, T. 47 N., which is about 125 paces long, is in a cleared field. It lies at the south foot of a hill and since it weathers so much more nearly white than the other rocks it can be seen for some distance, being plainly visible from the north and south road that runs along the centre line of Sec. 4, although it is a quarter of a mile distant. The more easterly outcrop in Sec. 5 is also in a cleared field. The other outcrop in the same section is on the east bank of Powder Mill Creek and can be readily found by any person who wishes to look for it. The outcrop in Sec. 6 forms a low hill but is not conspicuous. This outcrop is about 50 paces long east and west. The outcrop in Sec. 2, T. 47 N., R. 47 W. is just behind a farm house. Boulders were found nearly a mile west of this last outcrop so plentifully that there can be no doubt about their being close to place. The gabbro was searched for very carefully from this point west to the state line, but not the least indication of it could be found anywhere. Yet the places where it would have occurred, if it retained its strike, were all low, and not favorable for outcrops. It was traced in all about five miles along the strike of the formation. There is a space about three miles between the most westerly outcrop and the state line. It was not found at all east of Bessemer gap nor were there any boulders in any place to suggest that it might be near.

The lower contact is not exposed in any place, but there is a rock occurring below it a short distance on the east bank of Powder Mill Creek limiting the distance that it may extend downward. The upper contact is seen in every exposure, except one, in the area worked by us. There is above the gabbro an augite porphyrite.

The greatest exposed width of gabbro is about 125 feet, and the exposures on the east bank of Powder Mill Creek show that the thickness of the stratum cannot exceed 200 feet.

Sp. 20192. Sec. 4, T. 47 N., R. 46 W., 840 N., 1500 W.

Macroscopic: Gabbro. There is a very large amount of striated feldspar, some of the crystals of which are as much as 20 mm. long. Between the feldspar crystals there is augite. There is some magnetite.

Microscopic: A very large proportion of labradorite feldspar; some augite; a comparatively large amount of magnetite apparently partly primary and partly secondary. Chlorite is strongly developed.

Sp. 20200. Sec. 4, T. 47 N., R. 46. W.

Macroscopic: Gabbro.

Microscopic: A much altered gabbro with labradorite feldspar. There is micropegmatite in the interstices.

Sp. 20196.

Microscopic: Gabbro; marked olivine; enstatite; diallage; labradorite; and micropegmatite.

The gabbro appears with eruptive flows above and below. Considering its coarse grain and position it seems almost certain that it is a sill, for although intrusive it appears in this area to be at a constant horizon.[1]

### *Division XI. The Lowest Keweenawan Effusives.*

Below the gabbro just described is a series of melaphyres among which are some labradorite porphyrites. The melaphyres are amygdaloidal with fillings largely of crystallized quartz and agate, but there is a very considerable amount of chlorite also. The labradorite porphyrites, save one flow, are not conspicuous as they were in Division IX, and in many cases it requires a close macroscopic examination to see that there are phenocrysts of feldspar.

The thickness of this division is about 3,000 feet. The strike is the same as shown through the whole Black River area, N. 80° E., and the dip is greater than that of any of the rocks north being nearly 75° N.

The exposures of the lower part of the division are numerous, being largely in the bare hills that form the south Bessemer Ridge. The north part of the division lies somewhat between the two ridges and is not so well exposed. But even with these numerous exposures it is difficult and, in fact quite impossible to tell the number of flows because of the number of false tops and bottoms that are to be seen.

---

[1] See also Chapter VIII L.

i. (126). This melaphyre shows below the gabbro Sec. 5, T. 47 N., R. 46 W., 600 N., 400 W., on the east bank of Powder Mill Creek. Neither the top nor the bottom of the flow is exposed. The contact with the gabbro is not seen but this flow places a downward limit to the possible extent of the gabbro.
ii. (127). Unexposed 300 feet.
iii. (128). Melaphyre with neither top nor bottom exposed.
iv. (129). Unexposed 200 feet.
v. (130). Melaphyre with only bottom exposed.
vi. (131). Amygdaloidal melaphyre with only top exposed.
vii. (132). Unexposed 80 feet.
viii. (133). Melaphyre, bottom only.
ix. (134). Melaphyre, top only.
x. (135). Unexposed 500 feet.
xi. (136). Melaphyre, bottom only.
xii. (137). Amygdaloidal melaphyre 60 feet.
xiii. (138). Amygdaloidal melaphyre 40 feet.
xiv. (139). Amygdaloidal melaphyre 100 feet.
xv. (140). Amygdaloidal melaphyre 120 feet.
xvi. (141). Amygdaloidal melaphyre with only the top exposed.
xvii. (142). Unexposed 160 feet.
xviii. (143). Amygdaloidal melaphyre exposed for 80 feet at the bottom.
xix. (144). Amygdaloidal melaphyre 40 feet.
xx. (145). Amygdaloidal melaphyre top only exposed.
xxi. (146). Unexposed 150 feet.
xxii. (147). Amygdaloidal melaphyre 70 feet.
xxiii. (148). Amygdaloidal melaphyre 40 feet.
xxiv. (149). Amygdaloidal melaphyre 30 feet.
xxv. (150). Amygdaloidal melaphyre 20 feet.
xxvi. (151). Amygdaloidal melaphyre 20 feet.
xxvii. (152). Amygdaloidal melaphyre 40 feet of top.
xxviii. (153). Unexposed 500 feet.
xxix. (154). Melaphyre, bottom 80 feet exposed.
xxx. (155). Amygdaloidal melaphyre 60 feet.
xxxi. (156). Amygdaloidal melaphyre 40 feet.
xxxii. (157). Amygdaloidal melaphyre 40 feet.
xxxiii. (158). Amygdaloidal melaphyre 80 feet.
xxxiv. (159). Amygdaloidal melaphyre 40 feet.

The melaphyre flows from 126 to 159, inclusive, are practically all alike. They are composed of plagioclase feldspar, augite, olivine and nearly all seem to have some magnetite as a primary mineral. The feldspars are for the most part oligoclase although there are some that have feldspar more basic. The augite is not strikingly abundant, and while it encloses feldspar crystals to some extent the texture is not nearly so pronounced as in the flows in some of the higher divisions, nor, indeed, is it so pronounced as to attract attention. It can scarcely ever be noticed in the hand specimen, in the rocks of this division. As usual the augite is weathered with the resultant development of chlorite. The flows seem to be more acid than the average melaphyre flow resulting in a marked development of secondary quartz both in the ground mass of the rock and as cavity fillings. The flows all have amygdaloidal tops, with amygdule fillings of chlorite and quartz, much of which is in the form of agate. The pipe amygdules at the base represent quite a noticeable feature, although they are not always present, nor is their presence or absence divided according to flows for they are present in some parts of a flow and absent in other parts of the same flow.

xxxiv. (160). Labradorite porphyrite 40 feet. The phenocrysts in this flow are not conspicuous but they can be readily seen when the rock is closely examined.

xxxv. (161). Labradorite porphyrite 30 feet. This labradorite porphyrite is very conspicuous, and its phenocrysts, some of which are 20 mm., will attract attention at a glance. It is the most pronounced labradorite porphyrite of the whole Black River series except stratum 98. In some parts the phenocrysts are thickly crowded together, but in others they are not so plentiful. As one follows along the number of phenocrysts is seen to decrease and increase. The flow is well exposed along the line 1,700 paces north between Secs. 8 and 9, T. 47 N., R. 46 W., and can be traced a short distance both east and west. It is also exposed on the bare rock hills in Sec. 10, but on the top of the hill it may be passed over unnoticed because the feldspar phenocrysts are not plentiful there. Near the edge of the bluff the number of crystals is greatly increased and the flow will be quickly recognized as that which is exposed on the hill to the west of Bessemer Gap.

xxxvi. (162). Labradorite porphyrite 40 feet. The feldspar phenocrysts are plentiful but not large.

xxxvii. (163). Amygdaloidal melaphyre 100 feet.
xxxviii. (164). Amygdaloidal melaphyre 60 feet.
xxxix. (165). Amygdaloidal melaphyre 50 feet.
xl. (166). Amygdaloidal melaphyre 60 feet.

The cavity filling of the above four melaphyres is mostly quartz.

xli. (167). Labradorite porphyrite 100 feet.
xlii. (168). Labradorite porphyrite 40 feet.
xliii. (169). Labradorite porphyrite 30 feet.
xliv. (170). Labradorite porphyrite 30 feet.
xlv. (171). Labradorite porphyrite 50 feet.
xlvi. (172). Labradorite porphyrite 70 feet.
xlvii. (173). Labradorite porphyrite 50 feet.
xlviii. (174). Labradorite porphyrite 50 feet.
xlix. (175). Labradorite porphyrite 50 feet.
l. (176). Labradorite porphyrite 50 feet.

The above labradorite porphyrites total a thickness of about 500 feet. The porphyritic nature of the rock is not so conspicuous as to be noticed at a glance as were the labradorite flows in Division IX. However, many of the phenocrysts are as much as 8 mm. Most of the phenocrysts are smaller and often it requires rather close macroscopic examination to see that the rock is a labradorite porphyrite.

The flows described above are exposed in the south Bessemer Ridge on both sides of Bessemer Gap.

li. (177). Amygdaloidal melaphyre 100 feet.
lii. (178). Amygdaloidal melaphyre 30 feet.
liii. (179). Amygdaloidal melaphyre 80 feet.

liv. (180). Amygdaloidal melaphyre 30 feet.
lv. (181). Amygdaloidal melaphyre 50 feet.
lvi. (182). Amygdaloidal melaphyre 30 feet.
lvii. (183). Amygdaloidal melaphyre 80 feet.
lviii. (184). Amygdaloidal melaphyre 30 feet.
lix. (185). Amygdaloidal melaphyre 30 feet.
lx. (186). Amygdaloidal melaphyre 30 feet.
lxi. (187). Amygdaloidal melaphyre 70 feet.

These last eleven flows are quite alike. They have marked amygdaloidal tops, and generally an amygdaloidal zone at the base in which pipe amygdules are very plentiful. The chief cavity filling is silica but there is also much chlorite. The primary minerals are feldspar, olivine and augite, and apparently some magnetite. The olivine is weathered, but it does not tend to develop that biotite-like substance that was seen in the higher divisions. The feldspar is, generally speaking, oligoclase. The augite is not abundant as compared with the amount of feldspar. While it always encloses some of the feldspar crystals the ophitic texture is not at all important. These flows contain quite a quantity of clasolitic matter which is practically all quartz.

These are the lowest flows of the Keweenawan series and lie upon the basal sandstone. They are exposed across the area worked and, no doubt, could be traced east and west for the hills along the base of the series are quite bare.

### *Division XII. The Basal Sandstone.*

This Basal Sandstone is the lowest stratum of the Keweenawan series. It represents a time between the laying down of the iron rocks and the beginning of Keweenawan eruptive activity.

It is made up of well assorted and well rounded material. It is composed almost wholly of quartz grains which are only a small fraction of a millimeter in diameter. There is no tendency anywhere to become conglomeritic. The grains are more closely cemented together than those of the other sandstones of the Keweenawan series, and in this respect it is more nearly a quartzite; but it is not a quartzite; it will probably be expressing it well to say that it is on the road from a sandstone to a quartzite.

The exposed thickness of the sandstone will not exceed 200 feet. There is a distance of about 2,500 feet from the lowest exposure of sandstone to the highest exposure of graywacke beneath, but it is not known how this intervening space is underlain. The strike of the rock is N. 80° E., and the dip 75° to 80° N.

It is exposed along the south foot of Bessemer Ridge in Sections 8 and 9, T. 47 N., R. 46 W., and also near the west side of Sec. 7. There are no exposures that we could find on the east side of Bessemer Gap, although there is some loose sandstone at the foot of the bluff which appears to be near to place. It is also exposed north of Ironwood in R. 47 W.

Near Bessemer it has been quarried to a small extent, and at Ironwood, about a half mile north of the fair-ground. Some men were quarrying it in 1905, but no great amount had been taken out. There seems to be no reason why it might not be a fair building stone.

### *General Remarks.*

The Keweenawan rocks lie above, and are younger than the rocks of the Penokee-Gogebic iron series. Whether there is an unconformity between these two series or not cannot be said from any evidence that was obtained from the Black River work.[1] There is a space of nearly a half mile between the lowest exposures of the Keweenawan, and the highest exposures (graywackes) of the Penokee-Gogebic. The strike of the two formations is about the same N. 80° E. The dip of the base of the Keweenawan is a little greater than that of the graywackes which is about 55° N. But the closest exposures of the Keweenawan to the graywackes where the dip was taken seem to have a less dip than those rocks a little further north in the same series, which seems to suggest that the dip might have been affected by something that acted on both series alike. And, indeed, it is probable that the Bessemer fault which passes close to these outcrops has affected both series. A very complete discussion of possible conformity and unconformity is given by Irving and Van Hise in their Penokee-Gogebic monograph[1] and reference is made to that for a full discussion of the question.

Keweenawan Time seems to have been inaugurated by a period of quiet as is indicated by its basal sandstone with its well assorted material and ripple-marks. Succeeding that comparative short period of quiet came a period of eruptive activity. This period seems to have broken in suddenly and to have been violent as is indicated by the unmixed column of eruptive material. It seems to have died out gradually as is indicated by the ever increasing proportion of sediment as we go up in the series. When the Lake Shore Trap was thrown out the period of eruptive activity was at an end. After this there is a great column of sedimentary material beginning with a coarse conglomerate and changing gradually to finer material and finally becoming a sandstone.

The flows are for the most part thin, but few exceeding 100 feet in thickness, although there are at least two ophites and one felsite that will reach 500 feet. They represent every degree of acidity from the very basic melaphyres up to the very acid felsites. If one were to take a specimen from every flow in the series and arrange them in order of acidity there would be a very complete set and a very gradual gradation. With this steady grading from basic melaphyre complicated by every phase of texture, naming often becomes a very difficult task.

The basic flows have for the most part amygdaloidal tops and massive centres. However, some basic flows have no amygdaloidal tops and others almost none. Generally there is at the base a thin amygdaloidal zone, prominent in which are pipe amygdules. But these pipe amygdules are not always present. Often one can trace along the base of a flow and see conspicuous pipe amygdules, but in only a short distance the same flow shows no amygdaloid of any kind at the base, but is completely massive. The acid flows are, generally speaking, without amygdaloidal tops but yet stratum 95 which is one of the most acid of the whole column has a marked amygdaloidal top. Generally the labradorite porphyrites are not so amygdaloidal as the other basic flows.

These amygdaloidal zones are liable to appear at any portion of a flow which may have been a surface for any period of time, and the pipes may appear at any part of a flow that represents a base of a moving lava which includes a part of a flow moving upon another part of the same flow. Very often there are what may be described as false tops and false bottoms. There is no reason why a tongue of a flow could not reach out ahead of the main flow and then be overtaken possibly because of an extra gush from the opening from which the lava issues. In such a case the top of the tongue would be amygdaloidal and the base of the portion overflowing it would be very liable to have pipe amygdules. Such seems to be exactly what has occurred in many places, examples of which can be seen on the bare trap hills northwest of Bessemer. These hills have been burned over so that the rocks are pretty well uncovered. There are places that seem to show a flow 5, 10, 15, or 20 feet thick, but when these apparent flows are traced in either direction they are seen to narrow down at both ends which would be the case with a tongue cut at right angles to the line of motion, or to narrow down at one end and the contact cease abruptly at the other which would be the case with a tongue cut in the direction of the line of motion. Such tongues were found, from those very small, up to those that were readily mistaken for flows. Some very large ones were traced and there can be no reasonable doubt but that many larger ones would be seen if the soil covering could be completely removed. This one difficulty alone is enough to cause great error in compiling a cross-section in which the flows are denoted, and the difficulty is even more applicable to drill sections than to surface exposures. The cross-section taken from the hills on the east side of Bessemer fault does not agree with the section taken on the west side and this is one of the sources of error. It is highly probable that some of the flows 10 feet thick given in the geological column in this report are merely tongues of other flows and, indeed, some of the much thicker flows could easily be the same. This difficulty becomes of some importance when the flow under consideration appears in the geological column along with many others lithologically like it, which is exactly the case at the base of the Keweenawan. Among other strata such as the labradorite porphyrites the flows can be separated quite readily because each has such distinct characteristics that it is readily recognized.

---

[1] U. S. Geological Survey, Monograph XIX.

Another difficulty that might be mentioned, though only a small one, is the change in character of some of the labradorite porphyrites because of the change of the number of phenocrysts visible. Stratum No. 161 near the base shows numerous phenocrysts in some places and is the most conspicuous labradorite porphyrite of the whole series save No. 98. Such is the case where it is exposed on the hill to the northwest of Bessemer. But trace that same stratum 100 paces in either direction and there is such a decrease in the number of phenocrysts that it would not be recognized as the same flow. All along the flow there is a very marked decrease and increase in the number of feldspar crystals. Another similar example is the labradorite porphyrite flow exposed in the D. S. S. & A. Ry. cut in the S. W. 1/4 of the S. W. 1/4 of Sec. 33, T. 48 N., R. 46 W. At this point there are comparatively few phenocrysts, but the same rock is exposed in Powder Mill Creek and is rich in crystals. The adjacent flows leave no doubt about it being the same flow.

Apparently these flows were laid down under water. The evidence for this is the large amount of interbanded sedimentary material. Besides that noted in the column as compiled there are numerous thin seams from a quarter of an inch up to two or three inches, or even more. Where there is a pocket that was formed in the top of a lava flow it is filled with sedimentary material.

The vast amount of material in the Keweenawan series is basic but there is a very considerable amount of acid material also. On the other hand the great amount of the sedimentary material is acid but there is basic. (See Fig. 22). Since this sedimentary material was apparently derived from the Keweenawan itself things seem to have gone aside a little from what would naturally have been expected. The Nonesuch is the only basic sedimentary formation. The appearance of this basic sandstone and shale suggests that there is a more or less important break at the beginning of its formation that the basic eruptive members of the Keweenawan were being tilted and exposed to the degrading influences of nature, and the basic material thus derived was carried down and deposited. There is a thin conglomerate band in the sandstone about ten feet below the Nonesuch which is richer in jasper pebbles than any other part of the Outer Conglomerate is, and it may be that this also is an indication of the time break.

The highest strata exposed on Black River show a northward dip of about 20°, while the base of the Keweenawan is tilted to about 75° to 78°. The change of dip is gradual and there is no evidence of time break in the series except the one mentioned above as possible at the base of the Nonesuch. There is almost certainly no time break at all between the Upper and the Lower Keweenawan. It is difficult to say when the tilting took place. There is a small amount of basic material in the Outer Conglomerate which might suggest that the basal members were exposed during the latter part of Keweenawan time. But the amount of basic material is so small that it could be readily derived without the strata being tilted, and, indeed, it seems that, if the whole base had been tilted and exposed, there would have been a very large amount of basic material in the sedimentary portions, much larger than really does appear. True the basic material would not stand the wear and weather action that the acid material does, but the material between the pebbles is not basic, nor is the cementing material that which would be derived from decomposing basic rocks. It is possible that the dipping is caused by a great strike fault at the base, but this is only a suggestion, a possibility, because no proof of such fault was seen.

One of the most noticeable features is that the amount of acid sedimentaries is greater than the amount of acid material in place. Possibly there were large acid knobs caused by the viscosity of the material and these knobs wearing down gave the material for the acid sedimentaries. Certain it is that the acid strata in sight could not yield sufficient material to build up the sedimentary rocks that have been built up.

# CHAPTER IV.

## FAULTS.

### *In the Keweenawan.*

There can be no doubt but that the Keweenawan rocks in the vicinity of Bessemer are much faulted. Some of the faults are quite important while others are small. There are several dip faults and it is probable that there are several strike faults also.[1] The dip faulting seems to be a series of step faults.

The Bessemer Ridges are broken through by a series of north and south gaps which vary in width from those very narrow to those nearly a mile across. These gaps are prominent near Bessemer in our area and are distinctly seen both east and west of where we worked. It is known that these gaps near Bessemer are caused by faulting of the strata and it is probable that those both east and west are from the same cause.

Bessemer Gap, Pl. XXXIV, directly north of the city of Bessemer is about three-quarters of a mile wide. There are some very characteristic strata, such as labradorite porphyrites and a felsite, showing on either side of the gap. These strata show that there is a horizontal throw of about 1,500 feet, the east side being thrown toward the south. While the throw is 1,500 or 1,600 feet on the north side of Bessemer Ridge it is not more than 1,000 or 1,100 on the south side of the same ridge which means that the throw decreases as we go toward the iron series, which underlies the copper rocks. It is difficult to say how far north the fault extends. There is evidence that there is a fault almost in line with it running almost north and south generally following the direction of Black River, and showing in the stream bed in Sec. 29, T. 49 N., R. 46 W. While it is possible that these are the same fault it seems best here to consider them otherwise and to end this Bessemer fault at the north side of Bessemer Ridge. The reason for separating them will be given when the fault showing in the river bed is discussed.

The Bessemer fault has caused a dragging of the strata on the west edge of the bluff in Sec. 10, T. 47 N., so that it strikes more nearly east and west than elsewhere. This is evidence that the fault plane lies near the bluff, which may be taken as a fault scarp. In addition to this evidence strata continue east outcropping in Sewer Creek in the N. W. ¼. Sec. 3, T. 47 N., leaving only a small distance within which the fault plane must lie. It seems certain that the fault plane lies close to the north and south centre line of Sec. 3. It trends a little west of north.[2]

For convenience of reference I shall call the fault just described the "Bessemer Fault."

---

[1] Sudden variations in the amount of throw of the other class of faults suggest this.

[2] There are a prominent set of tension joints in this direction. L.

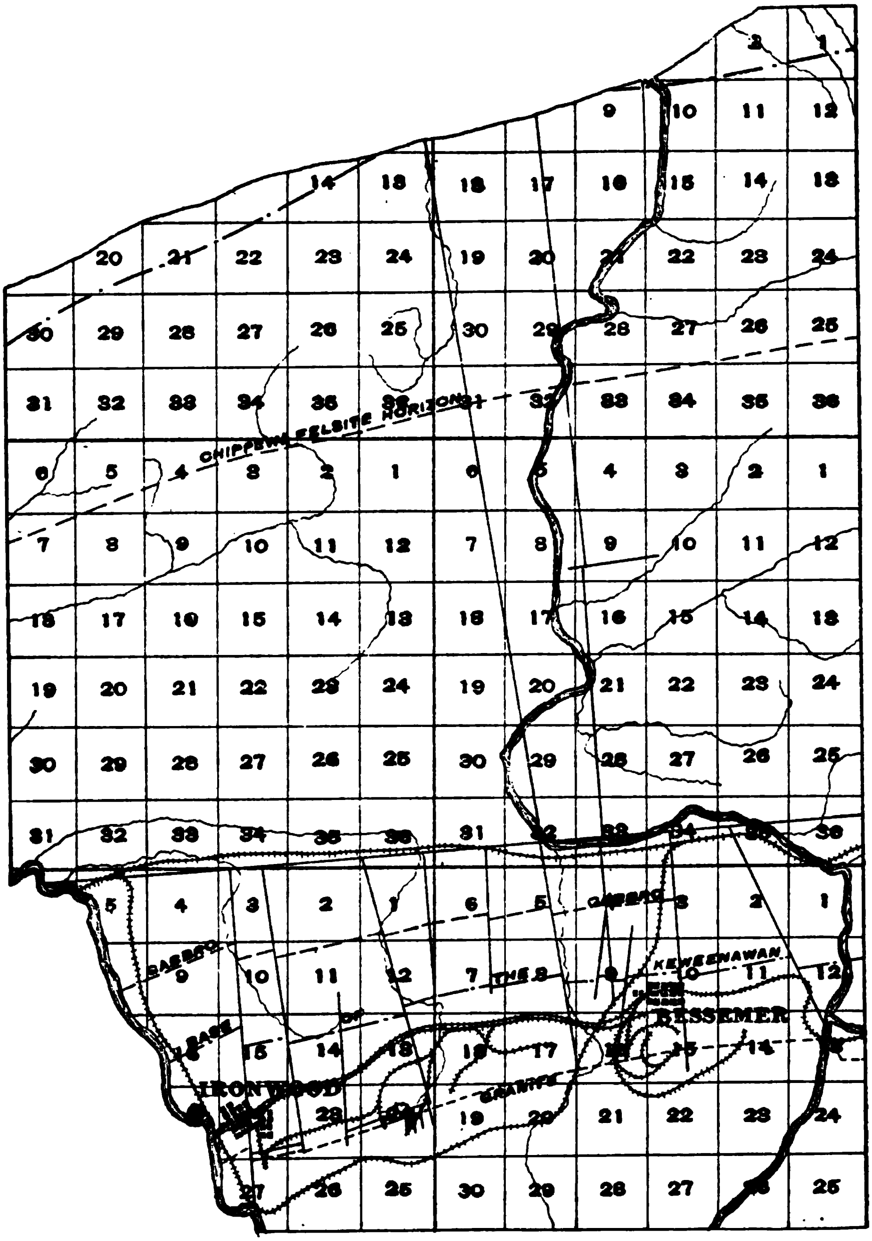


Fig. 24. Sketch of possible faulting system, Bessemer to Ironwood. L.

Along the centre line of Sec. 9, T. 47 N., R. 46 W., about 800 paces south of the quarter pin between Secs. 4 and 9, there is some faulting at the west end of the hill. At this point the basal sandstone is seen in contact with the overlying eruptives. The amount of throw, which is 80 feet, is easily seen because of the sandstone. The east side is thrown south. There is a thin seam of sandstone between two flows which also shows the same throw. Two hundred paces west there is another fault, this time in the opposite direction for the sandstone is thrown back to its original position and fifty feet more. The direction of the first of these two small faults is N. 30 W.,[1] and that of the second nearly north and south.

Another fault runs nearly north and south along the bed of Powder Mill Creek and might be called the Powder Mill Creek Fault. There can be no doubt of its existence because the strata along the creek give the evidence too plainly. The fault cannot be seen in the creek below the line between Townships 47 and 48 because at this point the stream makes a sudden jog to the east and leaves the line of weakness made by the fault. South of the town line there is every evidence of a fault and since it shows along the stream so far as there are rock outcrops it is apparent that the stream has followed the line of weakness made by the fault.

The first stratum to give unmistakable evidence is the coarse grained labradorite porphyrite No. 98. It is well exposed on one side of the creek while there is directly along the line of strike, and not more than 50 feet away, a melaphyre on the opposite side. The labradorite porphyrite shows on the west side of the stream down about 350 feet which is proof that there is a fault with that amount of throw. Farther up stream the gabbro comes to the east bank of the stream but where it should appear on the west side there is a melaphyre. Down stream there are numerous gabbro boulders, evidently very near place, but no outcrop. The basal sandstone also shows unmistakably a throw of about 350 feet the east side being thrown south. This fault has the same direction of throw as the Bessemer fault and has about one-quarter the amount of throw.

There is another fault running nearly north and south across the Bessemer Ridges, the evidence of which shows in Secs. 6 and 7. The fault is about a quarter of a mile west of the line which marks the east side of the two sections. The proof of faulting is given chiefly by the strata that are exposed near the town line in Powder Mill Creek and west toward the range line, strata Nos. 91 to 100. Besides this evidence there is the suggestive fact of a gap running north and south through the ridges.

The felsite band lies just north of the town line 240 paces west of the north corner of Secs. 5 and 6, T. 47 N. If it were to continue the strike that it has at this point it would be considerably south of the line when it had reached three-quarters of the way across the section, but instead it is still found nearly on the line. The labradorite porphyrite shows in the same way and it seems certain that there is a fault with a throw of about 350 feet. As was the case in the other faults the east side is thrown south. It begins now to be seen that the Bessemer Ridges are broken across by step faulting.

---

[1] About 1,300 N., 600 W., in the same section is a gap in the range parallel to this fault, where I think there is also a fault. The evidence is not coercive. See Fig. 24. L.

This fault just considered seems to be like the Bessemer fault in that it decreases toward the iron bearing rocks, a fact that is shown in that the basal sandstones shows no preceptible throw. However, the sandstone outcrops are much farther apart than the other outcrops that gave evidence and there is therefore a greater possibility of error.

There is no reason to suppose that there is another fault across these ridges within our area, but the topography suggests that both east and west there are similar faults to those just described.

All along Black River there are fault indications strongly suggesting faults running nearly north and south across the strata. In the conglomerates the pebbles are often seen to be broken across and faulted with a throw very small as if the rock were gently easing itself to some external strain.

About the centre of the S. W. ¼ Sec. 15, T. 49 N., R. 46 W., there are fault indications in the conglomerate. There are numerous small fault planes running east of north and dipping east. None of them have a throw beyond a few inches but they suggest that probably there is a larger fault near by. Near the same place is a cave caused by faulting. It is in the conglomerate at the edge of the river. It extends back about forty or fifty feet and is as much as thirty feet high. It can readily be seen to be caused by a fault running about N. 40° E., and dipping 70° E. The cave is quite interesting as it shows well the lines of weakness along a fault and how the water is able to circulate. It illustrates well how the underground waters would circulate in a fault and how they would assist ore deposition. There is nothing to show the amount or direction of throw of this fault.

In Sec. 29, T. 49 N., R. 46 W., there is also evidence of faulting. On the section line about 350 paces south of the northeast corner of the section it can be plainly seen that there is rock slipping, but the slickensided surfaces are small. About the centre of the N. E. ¼ of the section there is a fault breccia that has a strike N. 10° W., and dips 65° E. This breccia is about four feet thick and can be traced for about 100 paces across a bend of the river and up into the woods, where it stands up like a wall about fifteen feet above the soil. The breccia gives no indication of the direction of throw but in a small fault to the east of it the east side is thrown south.

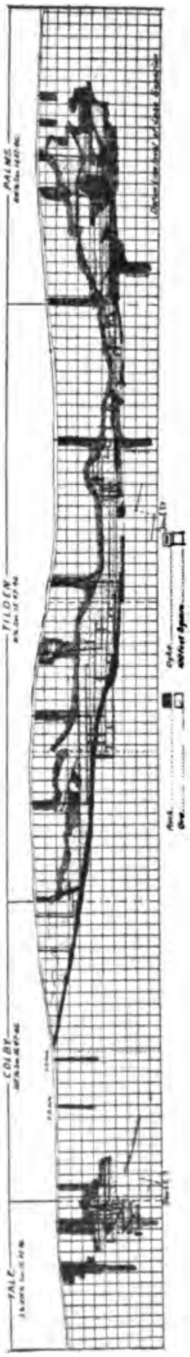


Fig. 25. General sketch of dikes of mines. A. H. Meuche, after notes of Mine managers.

In the S. E. ¼ of the N. E. ¼ of the same section there is a sandstone, stratum No. 33, showing on the west side of the river, and over to the centre but not on the east side. The fault just mentioned above must pass very close to this point, and while it may not be exactly the same fault plane in both cases yet the two are very close together, and parallel and certainly belong to the same system of faulting.

Near the centre of the S. E. ¼ of Sec. 29 there is another sandstone stratum, No. 42, which is suddenly terminated on the west end. Like the one mentioned above it was hard to get satisfactory evidence concerning it because it is pretty well covered with flowing water.

In Sec. 21, T. 48 N., R. 46 W., in the river bed, the much crumbled and broken ophites show signs of having been faulted. The strike of the fault plane seems to be a little west of north and the dip seems to be at a high angle toward the east.

The fault indications seen in Sec. 29, T. 49 N., compare well with those in Sec. 21, T. 48 N., both lying in one plane striking a little east of north and dipping east at a high angle. It is highly significant that the indications in these two sections are both of one fault. North of Sec. 29 it would lie west of the river; in the section it is practically along the river bed; it is then on the east side of the river for about four miles but parallel with it and never more than half a mile from it; in Sec. 21 it is again in the river after which it is again on the east side.

Whether this fault reaches south and connects with one of the faults that cross Bessemer Ridges or not is very hard to say. There is some indication of a fault going east and west along the gap that lies at the north side of the Bessemer Ridges, so it seems wise here to terminate all the north and south faults at an east and west fault running along the north side of the ridge. However in taking this position it is plainly recognized that there is a very large possibility of error, and all that can be said in defence of the position is that it seems the best interpretation of the scanty evidence at hand.

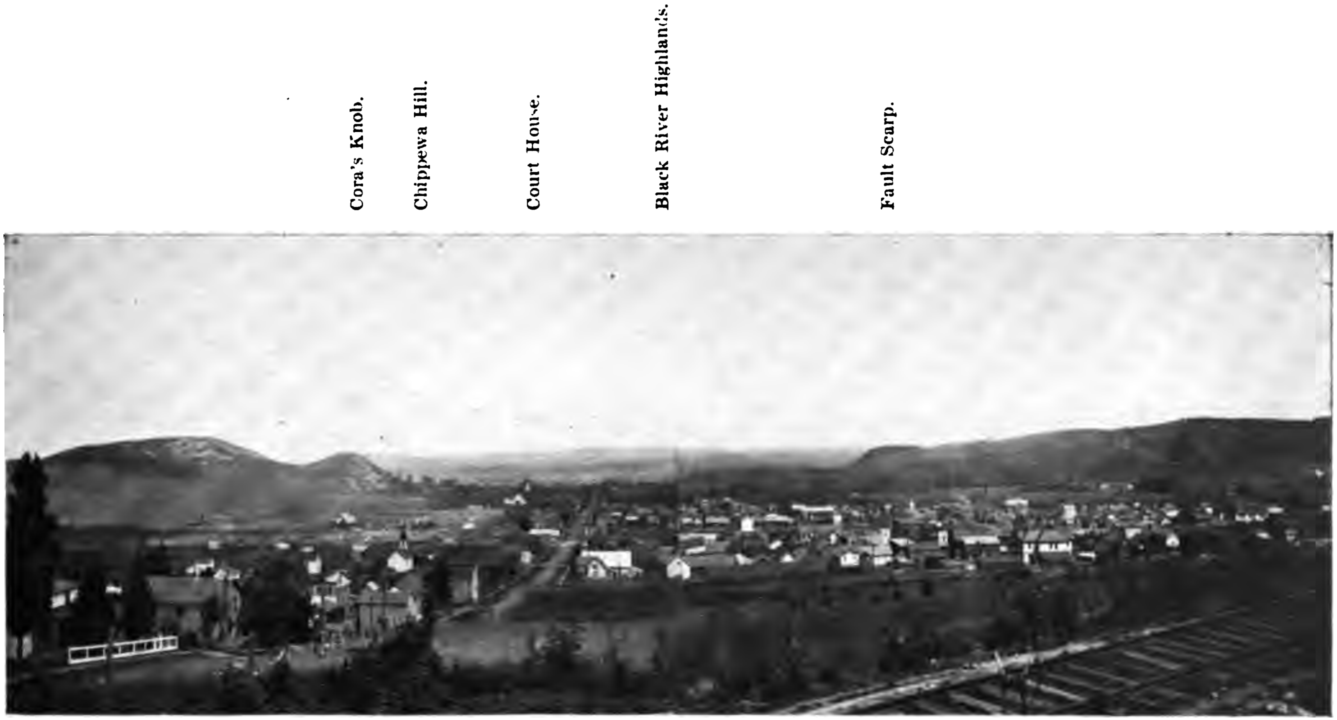
Whether the Black River fault reaches north to Lake Superior or not is not known. Certainly the Nonesuch formation does not show faulting, but at the same time the shales are much more capable of adjusting themselves to the strain than any other rock of the Keweenawan series.

There is no evidence of the amount of throw given to the strata by the Black River fault, and very little indication of the direction of throw, in fact almost too little to argue from.

It is possible that Maple Creek follows a line of weakness made by a fault, and, indeed, where it cuts through the Outer Conglomerate it looks like it. But there is nothing to prove that there is a fault, and if there is one the Nonesuch does not show it at all.

Besides the dip faults mentioned above there are possibly some strike faults.

In Powder Mill Creek there are several flows showing that do not show farther west. The coarse grained labradorite porphyrite and the felsite, strata Nos. 92 and 95, are exposed near the northwest corner of Sec. 6, T. 47 N., R. 46 W. Immediately north of the corner is a coarse ophite. No such ophite is similarly exposed in Powder Mill Creek, but instead there is quite a column of labradorite porphyrites, porphyrites,



VIEW OF THE BESSEMER GAP.

UofM

blue traps, and gray traps. It seems that a strike fault has cut these strata out near the corner of Sec. 6. Much more satisfactory evidence might have been obtained if the outcrops had continued farther north of the corner than they do.

On the line between Rs. 46 and 47 the basal sandstone and the coarse labradorite porphyrites, strata 92 and 188 are exposed 9,000 feet apart. They are exposed in Powder Mill Creek 7,500 feet apart. One way that this fact may be explained is that there is a strike fault. The gabbro appears in such outcrops as to prove that if there is such a fault it must lie south of the gabbro. The distance between strata 92 and 188 along the east line of the area worked agrees with the distance along Powder Mill Creek. However it does not follow that there must be a strike fault because these strata are not always the same distance apart because it might be the result of some other cause. In fact, it could be explained from the varying throw of the most westerly of the dip faults as crossing the Bessemer Ridges, for it was seen that the throw of the fault increased as we went north and since the west side is thrown north it would increase the distance between the strata on the west side of the fault.

### *The pre-Keweenawan Faulting.* L.

Mr. Gordon has given above a description of the well marked and clearly proven faults affecting the Keweenawan rocks.

In my judgment there is more or less faulting along others of these northerly joints, and they are the determining features of the numerous gaps in the range.

But anyone can sketch these in for himself and it seemed hardly worth while to alter the map as Gordon left it when the amount of throw of such faults would be purely hypothetical, though I am inclined to look with much faith on topographic indications of faults or veins. I have given, therefore, a sketch diagram (Fig. 24) which does not pretend to be accurate but rather to show the system as I conceive it. Gordon has remarked that the amount of throw seems to diminish toward the granite. It was interesting to find on Section 15, T. 47 N., R. 46 W., about 200 feet north and west of the E. quarter post nearly vertical joints striking N. 25° W. with the east side thrown south a few millimeters. These joints were often filled with a fine silicious matter not like the crushed quartz of ordinary veins but like jaspilite or chert, as though due to the working down into the granite of similar circulating waters to those that guided the iron ore enrichment. Another N. 10° W. joint has a slight displacement of the east side to the north. This is like the faulting on Section 9.

The line of granite contact goes across the line of the Bessemer gap on Section 15 with no throw that can be detected. It seems therefore that the granite has been subject to the same stress but has yielded less. Other joints at the exposures just mentioned were dip near 90° to W. 30° S.; dip 45° to N. 10° W.; dip 80° to E. 5° N. There were also veins dip 40° to S. 40° E.

When we come to the iron bearing rocks there is hardly enough exposure to warrant any statements, and it is noticeable that Irving and Van Hise traversing this district with their eyes set on iron ore at first made no mention of faults here. By studying Figure 25 and the development of the mines it appears that the big Colby dike breaks up when it reaches a point where the Besssemer fault might be expected to go through and instead of continuing down fragments are found rising, which is the kind of effect that the Bessemer fault throwing the east side of a south dipping dike might produce. Moreover, Thompson[1] has found a little west "cross faulting running north and south of about 25-35 feet throw, nearly vertical, and the east side of the fault is in each case thrown north." These correspond to the relatively rarer set of faults around Bessemer. There is another "strike W. 28° N.," "gains to the S. W. 10 feet for every 100 feet of depth," "the southwest side apparently elevated about 25 feet relative to the northeast," which is more nearly like the Bessemer fault.

"With one exception the faults are all of small movement, and with this exception I would characterize the range as one much broken by many faults of small throw."

This has the strike of the formation,—a steeper dip, perhaps 75°-80°, with the north side moved east 400 feet, and a parallel fault with a similar throw of 30 feet. Mr. Thompson believes this continues east to the Colby. It may be the determining feature of the valley which lies north of the iron range.

As between the north faults throwing the east side north and the northwest faults throwing the east side south the latter seem to be dominant for the strikes of the range are pretty persistently somewhat more north of east than its trend.

Unfortunately we do not know as much of the relative ages of the joints and faults as might be desired. It would seem as though one might account for the system of jointing and faulting by supposing the granite relatively rigid, the strata above cumulatively compressible and a collapse of bottom of Lake Superior to have taken place during Keweenawan time compensated to some extent to the west by an eastward and upward shove to the upper layers from an intrusion (the Bad River gabbro?) to the west. That is what I have assumed in Figure 25.

---

[1] Quoted by Van Hise 21st Annual Report U. S. G. S., 1901, Part 3, page 345.

# CHAPTER V.

## SURFACE CHARACTER.

The area worked during the season of 1904 consists of about fifty-one square miles, embracing the westerly four tiers of sections in that part of R. 46 W. which lies north of the city of Bessemer. The sections in T. 49 N. which lie next to the lake do not contain a square mile each, but have an acreage as follows, according to the old government surveys, Sec. 3-199.20, Sec. 4-11.00, Sec. 9-601.80, Sec. 8-374.20, Sec. 7-182.60.

Running practically north and south through the area is Black River, but the course of the river, and the various hills and ridges have been described on a different page, and will not be repeated here.

In order to give as definite an idea as possible of the area the sections will be described separately.

### *T. 47 N., R. 46 W.*

Secs. 15 and 16 appear on the map, but were not worked by the party. Maps furnished by the Wisconsin Central Railway Company give the contours of the large hill lying in these sections. It is 1,128 feet above Lake Superior, or about 1,730 above the sea. This hill is known as "Colby Hill." About it are situated iron mines. The hill rises nearly three hundred feet above the city of Bessemer, which lies at its northern foot.

Sec. 10—The S. E. quarter is level and fit for agricultural purposes. The S. W. quarter is covered by the city of Bessemer. The N. E. quarter has in it a vertical rocky cliff about 200 feet high, and at the foot of the cliff is a talus slope. At least 60 acres is rendered useless because of the cliff. Along the southern end of the hill is a strip of land that is cleared and under cultivation. The N. W. quarter of Sec. 10 slopes from the foot of the hill westward toward Sewer Creek, which flows along the western side. The greater part of this quarter section is fit for cultivation. The city cemetery lies in it.

Sec. 9—the S. E. quarter contains a part of the city of Bessemer. This quarter section is level, and fit for farming purposes. It is for the most part cleared. The S. W. quarter is much like the S. E., but is uncleared. The N. W. and N. E. quarters each contain high rocky hills with bald tops and steep rocky sides. Around the foot of these hills there is a small amount of good soil which is generally cleared, and under cultivation.

Sec. 8—Generally speaking the south half of this section is fairly level, and will, when cleared, be fit for farming purposes. In some parts, however, there is a tendency to swamp. The north half is hilly, and is useless for farming purposes save in small isolated patches. Powder Mill Creek, which flows through the eastern half of the section, has a small amount of level land along it, but the amount is really insignificant. The creek is fifteen to twenty feet wide in this section, and has sufficient fall to render it of some value as a water-power. The timber on the section is hemlock and maple chiefly.

Sec. 7.—This section contains numerous high, bald, and cliffy hills. Rock outcrops over a large portion of the section. In small isolated patches there is sufficient soil for cultivation. Along the south part of the section there is a marsh which is filled with water even in the dry season of the year. The timber is hemlock and maple, with cedar in the lower areas. The timber of this section is being rapidly removed, chiefly for fuel.

Sec. 3.—The eastern half of this section is very high, in some places 1,700 feet above the sea. There are many rock outcrops, cliffs, and steep slopes, all of which tend to make the section useless for farming purposes. On the top of the high hill there is a small area which could easily be put under cultivation. The western half of the section is more level. Through it flows Sewer Creek which carries the sewage of Bessemer city. The west half of the section is good farming land. The hilly part of the section is covered with maple and hemlock which is being rapidly removed for fuel. The remainder of the area is covered with small poplars.

A spur line of the D. S. S. & A. Ry. runs across this section along the bed of Sewer Creek.

Sec. 4.—This section is level save for hills which lie on the western edge. Practically the whole section is cleared and under cultivation. The farms here are, so far as soil is concerned, first rate. The farm buildings on these farms are in good condition, and, on the whole, this section is so improved as to show that farming in the vicinity of Bessemer is a possibility. Many of the farmers here have been on their farms for several years, and are getting on quite as well as many of the farmers in Southern Michigan. The county farm lies in this section.

Secs. 5 and 6—These sections are covered with hills, and in many places the rock outcrops. For the most part the land slopes rapidly, and in many places there are cliffs. Where there is soil it is of good quality, but it lies so much in isolated patches, and on such slopes that it is of little value for agricultural purposes.

That part of T. 47 N., R. 46 W. which was worked by the party is generally hilly and broken, but in some places it is level, such as in Bessemer Gap. In general it is not adapted for agricultural purposes, but what soil there is is first class. The timber, which is, for the most part, maple and hemlock, is being rapidly removed because of the close proximity to Bessemer and the iron mines, which causes a demand for fuel and mining timber. In the more swampy places there is some cedar.

### *T. 48 N., R. 46 W.*

Secs. 32, 33, and 34—These three sections resemble each other very much and may well be described together. Black River flows nearly west across these sections, but turns more to the north in Sec. 32. On the south side of the river the area is hilly, it being the north slope of Bessemer Ridge. But even here there are not many outcrops, indeed very few for the north slope of a hill. On the north side of Black River the land is quite level save for the river hill. It is generally elevated 1,200 to 1,250 feet above sea level. The part of these sections that lie north of Black River may be considered good farming land. When the river turns more nearly north in Sec. 32 it moves away from Bessemer Ridge and leaves an area of level land on the south side of the river. The soil in these three sections is of a high class, and there is no reason why the land should not be regarded as excellent for farming purposes.

Sec. 31—Except at the extreme south edge this section is level, and largely swampy. There is some hemlock and also some cedar. In the north part of the section the timber is all small, and will not average more than four inches in diameter, and is quite useless for any purpose. This section will make good farm land when drained.

The main line of the D. S. S. & A. Ry. goes through the north part of Secs. 31; 32, 33, and 34. The station of North Bessemer is situated in the S. W. quarter of Sec. 33.

Secs. 27 and 28—These two sections are level, drift-covered and without outcrop. They are elevated from 1,200 to 1,240 feet above sea level. The timber is mostly maple and is all small, and without value. The soil is thickly filled with pebbles and boulders.

Sec. 29—This is better than either Sec. 27 or 28 both as to soil and timber, but there is considerable cedar swamp, especially along Black River, which runs along the west line. In the N. E. quarter is a marsh from which is taken some marsh hay each year. The area of the marsh is about 20 acres, part of which is wet only in wet season, and part always. The remainder of the quarter section and the whole of the N. W. quarter is covered with small poplars which will not exceed an average of three inches in diameter, and which are wholly useless. The surface is somewhat stony, but very level.

Sec. 30—Lies on the west side of Black River. There is no timber of value in the whole section. The east half is covered with small poplars averaging not more than three inches in diameter, and the west half with small spruce and tamarack of about the same size. The whole section is level. The east half could be easily cleared and put under cultivation, and the west half has some good soil which will be of value when drained, but at present it is largely swampy. Along the east and west centre line, near the west side of the section is a peat bog, but its area will not exceed five acres. It is hardly possible that this peat will some day be of value when we consider that there are other peat bogs in the district.

Secs. 15, 16, 21 and 22 are all good farm lands, except in a few places they may prove to be somewhat stony. The land is level. There is a large quantity of hard wood and some hemlock. There are low lying places which are swampy, but these could be drained. A stream from fifteen to twenty feet wide flows across the south part of Secs. 15 and 16, but the fall is not so great as that of some of the streams of the district, and it is not so valuable as a water power. Black River flows along the west side of section 21, and is quite rapid having cut down to the country rock.

Sec. 20—This section has first rate farm soil with a rolling surface.

Sec. 19—It is also good farm soil. The timber is maple and hemlock but there is some nice pine in the S. E. quarter. There is also in the S. E. quarter a field of marsh hay through which flows Six Mile Creek.

Sec. 17—Black River flows through this section and is quite rapid. The N. E. quarter is decreased in value for farming purposes because of hills caused by the river, but the rest of the section, which has good soil, is level.

Sec. 18—This section is covered largely by a peat bog, the surface of which is covered with black spruce and tamarack, which have an average diameter not exceeding five inches. The only portions of the section not covered by the bog are a small part in the north of the N. E. quarter, and the southern part of the S. E. and S. W. quarters. The total area of the section according to the government survey is 599 acres. Of this about 350 acres is peat bog. That portion of the bog lying in Sec. 18 is all of value and also the portion extending northward into Sec. 7, but this latter is of much less importance. A stick was pushed down into the peat and the following depths found, 40 inches, 61 inches, 88 inches, 64 inches, 82 inches, 66 inches, which give an average depth of 66 inches, or 1.83 yards. The total bog area in Sec. 18 is 352 acres or 1,703,680 square yards. Thus there are over 300,000,000 cubic yards of peat as it lies in the bog, and it is certain that this area will be much increased by what lies in Sec. 7, and in Sec. 13, T. 48 N., R. 47 W.

Sec. 10—This section is level and good for agricultural purposes. There is a stream running through it along either side of which is cedar swamp, but all this would, no doubt, prove to be arable land if drained. The timber, except along the stream, is almost wholly maple.

Sec. 9—This is a level section, covered for the most part with hemlock and maple. The soil is first rate.

Sec. 8—This section has some good arable land, but it is cut across by Black River, which causes some hills, and by Eight Mile Creek, which causes some swamp land.

Sec. 7—This is largely swampy, but much of the land could be made arable by draining. The land seems to be in ridges covered by hemlock and maple with swamps between.

Sec. 3—The south half of this section is a steep east and west slope rising about 200 feet. It is the south end of the Black River Highlands. The soil is thin, and second rate. The north half of the section is on the top of the hill and is fairly level. A large part of this half of the section could be cultivated, but the soil is mostly thin.

Sec. 4—The S. E. quarter is hilly and useless for agricultural purposes. The rock outcrops freely through the thin covering of soil. The remaining part of the section has not such numerous outcrops but the value is decreased because of its rapid slope, the west side of the Black River Highlands being here.

Sec. 5—This section is cut by the river, and is made somewhat hilly, but the soil is first rate. Along the river there is considerable cedar swamp.

Sec. 6—This is good farm land except that some portions of it are low. The timber is chiefly hemlock.

### *T. 49 N., R. 46 W.*

Sec. 34—The north side of Black River Highlands lies in this section, thus it slopes rapidly southward and is hilly. The soil on this slope is thin. There is a level area at the foot of the hill, but it is largely swampy. The whole section is of little value for agricultural purposes.

Sec. 33—The north slope of Black River Highlands makes the S. E. and a part of the S. W. quarter of this section almost useless agriculturally. The remainder of the section has good soil. Along the foot of the hill are several small peat bogs.

Sec. 32—This section is cut in a north and south direction by Black River. There is a small amount of land lying on the east side of the river. On the west side of the river is Chippewa Hill, whose east end is a felsite cliff. Around this hill is some rather level land fit for agricultural purposes. The timber of the section is almost wholly hemlock save on Chippewa Hill where it is maple.

The Chippewa Mining Co. did some work about Chippewa Hill about a half century ago, and within a decade the Old Peak Mining Co. explored on the same hill.

Sec. 31—The west end of Chippewa Hill extends into the east end of this section and decreases the value of that portion. In the west part of the section there is some cedar swamp, but on the whole the section is such that it could be made of value as farm lands. There is very little timber save hemlock on the section.

Sec. 27—This is good farm land.

Sec. 28—The soil of this section is first rate but there are so many ravines that it cannot be of the greatest value for cultivation.

Sec. 29—Black River flows along the east side of this section. Away from the river the section is good for agricultural purposes.

Sec. 30—This section is largely cedar swamp and cedar thicket. On the map which accompanies this report it is marked almost wholly cedar swamp, but it is more correctly a series of ridges and swamp with cedar covering both. The growth is so dense that it is almost impossible to get through. There is no timber on the whole section save cedar. The soil might be drained and made of value.

Sec. 22—This is a level section covered with hemlock and maple. The soil is first rate.

Sec. 21—Black River flows through this section. On the east side of the river there is a small amount of arable land. Along the river there is a considerable amount of cedar swamp. Some of the land on the west side of the river could also be put under cultivation. The N. W. corner of the section is hilly.

Sec. 20—On the whole this section is level and of value for agricultural purposes.

Sec. 19—This section is largely swampy, and covered with cedar. The growth is extremely thick. There is a small amount of arable land along the east side of the section.

Sec. 15—This section slopes north quite rapidly, but yet it is nearly enough level to be arable land. The soil is good. The timber is largely hemlock. The amount of level land in the west part of the section is greatly decreased by Black River flowing through it. The river cuts through the country rock, and has worn a deep channel for itself so that there are steep vertical cliffs of conglomerate about fifty feet high on either side. There are numerous falls and rapids in this part of the river.

Sec. 16—This may be considered good agricultural land. The timber is chiefly hemlock.

Sec. 17—This section lies on the north side of Conglomerate Ridge. The crest of the hill lies just within the northern limit of the section, and is about 1,460 feet above sea level. The north side of the section is about 760 feet, so that there is a decline of 700 feet in less than a mile. The soil is thin, and, on the whole, the section is of little value for farming. The timber on the ridge is chiefly maple. Along the northern side of the ridge the trees have been thrown over by the wind, so that at the present time there is a very dense growth of almost impenetrable underbrush.

Sec. 18—Like Sec. 19 this section slopes rapidly northward. The soil is thin. It is also in the area of windfalls. In this section Maple Creek becomes rapid having in one place a fall of 25 feet. It has cut down into the country rock and worn a channel for itself. This creek would yield some power in this section.

Sec. 10—This section is covered largely with hemlock. The land would be level were it not cut by Black River, and by numerous small ravines. The river hill is high, and the conglomerate causes them to be steep. There are numerous falls and rapids. Some of the land of this section could be put under cultivation.

Sec. 9—This section is fairly level, and has good soil. It fronts the lake. Its chief drawback is the number of steep and deep ravines. Most of these ravines have streams in them in the wet season but not in the dry season. Some of them have spring streams in them which flow the year around. The lake bank is from 90 to 100 feet high, and is steep. There is a narrow gravel beach at the foot of the bank.

Sec. 8—The government survey notes give the area of this section as 374 acres. Like Sec. 9 it is cut by numerous ravines which render the section of less value for agriculture than it otherwise would be.

Sec. 7—What has been said of Sec. 8 applies equally well of Sec. 7. The area is 182 acres.

Sec. 3—The area is 199 acres. It lies almost wholly on the east side of the river. It is somewhat inclined to be wet, but it could be easily drained. The soil is good. The timber which was cedar, hemlock and some pine has been largely removed.

Sec. 4—There is only a small corner of this section.

In the few preceding pages has been given a description of the surface, section by section, chiefly to convey an idea of the land for agricultural purposes. Of the fifty square miles covered by the party it is quite safe to say that forty can be put under cultivation. Of this probably ten miles will have its value decreased by being cut by ravines, from the work of Black River, and from the presence of swamps. Also it is certain that some of the land will be in small isolated areas. There are many such areas containing two, three or four acres which would make excellent building and garden lots for a person who was located in the country and who did not live by farming. Perhaps the country will so develop that these small areas may be so used. There are many places which are at present quite damp, but the soil is good, and draining will be an easy task so such land can be easily recovered for farming purposes.

The areas that cannot be put under cultivation lie chiefly in the Bessemer Ridges, on the Black River Highlands, and on Conglomerate Ridge. There are in these places numerous rock outcrops and many places where the soil is only a few inches deep. Only a small amount of land is rendered valueless because of Chippewa Hill. Practically all of T. 48 N., R. 46 W. is good farm land, but some of it is so stony as to be reduced in value.

It is often argued that there is no land along the south shore of Lake Superior that is of value for agricultural purposes, but there can be no doubt but that such an idea is an erroneous one. It is urged that the climate is such that crops cannot be grown. With snow on the ground from November to April it is certain that the summer is short and the winter long, but even with this short summer there are crops that can be grown with profit. It must be remembered that Dakota and Montana lie further north and are considered good agricultural countries. Certainly the great wheat belt of the Canadian Northwest is much further north and also colder. Manitoba has a longer and a colder winter, yet the worth of Manitoba wheat is well established.

In many of the old government reports the soil is marked second or third rate when it is really first rate. For instance when T. 47 N., R. 46 W. was surveyed the land where Bessemer lies was marked second rate sandy soil. Now that it is cleared up it looks quite different, and might be called good soil. Where the land is cleared and under cultivation there are many prosperous looking properties. Near Ironwood there are more farms than near Bessemer, and some of them are fine looking properties. Farming has already been proven a possibility.

Close to the area worked by the party of 1904 is the Penokee-Gogebic Iron Range. This would give a market for a great deal of what could be raised. During the time of clearing the mines would require timber, and the people about the mines would require fuel. These things would give cash enough to keep a poor man while the land is being cleared. There are, however some areas such as Secs. 29 and 30, T. 48 N., that have no timber fit for market, not even for fuel.

# CHAPTER VI.

## THE BLACK RIVER RUNOFF.

The chief agent of drainage of the area is Black River. Running parallel with the river, and practically along the west line of the range, Maple Creek flows for a little over three miles. Where it empties into Lake Superior it is fifteen to twenty feet wide and eight to ten inches deep in low water season. The source of the stream is in Sec. 30, T. 49 N., R. 46 W. This section with a large part of 19 is inclined to be swampy. On the east side of Black River, and running parallel with it, and about a quarter of a mile distant is a stream about four feet wide.

All along the lake shore are steep narrow ravines. A few have spring creeks in them which flow the year around. These little streams are generally rapid. Besides these ravines are numerous others along the lake shore which have no water in them during the summer. These ravines are all young, narrow and steep, so that the area along the shore presents new topography.

On the west side of Black River, Sewer Creek, or City Creek, takes its rise at the iron mines south of Bessemer in Sec. 15, T. 47 N. It flows into Sec. 10, and cuts across the northeast corner of the city. Just where it leaves the city limits it receives the city sewage. After flowing across Sec. 3 it empties into Black River, in the S. W. ¼ Sec. 34, T. 48 N., R. 46 W.

The creek has its source at the iron mines, and receives the water pumped from them. It is thus extremely red from iron ore, but the color is somewhat reduced before it reaches the river. The burden of hematite and the sewage from Bessemer city makes this an undesirable creek.

Coxey Creek rises in the S. E. ¼, Sec. 4, T. 47 N. It is a beautiful spring creek and is a valuable addition to the farms through which it flows, since it has no ravine. The stream turns west as it flows into Sec. 33, T. 48 N. It crosses the road twice and empties into Powder Mill Creek near the mouth.

Powder Mill Creek is the largest branch of Black River in our area. It takes its rise S. W. of Bessemer and flowing about a mile to the west of it, goes across Secs. 16, 8 and 5, T. 47 N., flowing almost north, after which it enters Sec. 32, T. 48 N. and turns east almost immediately, after which it turns again north and empties into Black River almost on the line between Secs. 32 and 33, at about 650 paces north. The water of this stream is quite as dark as that of Black River. For the most part it is rapid, especially where it cuts through the Bessemer Ridges. Where it enters Black River it is about twenty-five feet wide, and from a foot to a foot and a half deep. This stream would be useful as a water power.

For some distance after leaving Powder Mill Creek there is no stream entering Black River from the west side. Six Mile Creek empties into Black River in the S. W. corner of Sec. 20, T. 48 N., after flowing across Sec. 19. The stream is not large, not rapid, and the water is dark and impure. It receives its name because it is about six miles from Bessemer, the correct distance from the court house being five and a quarter miles.

Eight Mile Creek receives its name from the fact that it is about eight miles from Bessemer on the Black River road, and this distance is nearly correct. There are two branches which come from the west and join just after crossing the road. From the point of junction the stream flows a little east of north and empties into Black River in the S. W. corner of the S. E. ¼ of Sec. 5, T. 48 N. The stream is about ten feet wide at its mouth. It drains the swamp area in Secs. 7 and 18. It is neither large nor rapid. The water is very dark. The south branch is sometimes known as "Pine Creek." Both Six Mile and Eight Mile creeks are in the level area lying between Bessemer Ridge and Chippewa Hill.

There is a stream rising in the S. W. corner of Sec. 27, T. 48 N., R. 46 W. After flowing across Sec. 28 it turns north, at about the west line of the section, and reaches the river about a half mile after the turn. It is joined by a stream from the east which flows across the north of Secs. 27 and 28. Both branches of this are slow in movement, and neither is of any value as a water power. The water is dark and impure.

Another stream flows southwest across Sec. 15, then more nearly west across Sec. 22, and empties into Black River in the N. E. corner of Sec. 20. This is the largest tributary on the east side of Black River in the part of the country where the party worked, and only Powder Mill Creek on the west side exceeds it in size. The stream had no name so far as the party could learn, so for convenience of reference it will be spoken of here as "Sandstone Creek," a name suggested by Dr. Lane from the fact that it exposes a stratum of sandstone in Sec. 15. When it enters our area it is about fifteen feet wide, and quite rapid since just there it is flowing over bed rock. It would yield some power, especially in the west part of Sec. 16, T. 48 N. Farther down it is not so rapid. The water of this stream also is dark.

Flowing around the south foot of Black River Highlands is another stream of some size. Like the others it is not rapid and can be of little value as a water power.

A stream flows around the north side of the Black River Highlands but it is smaller than that which flows around the south side.

Flowing across the north part of Sec. 27, T. 49 N. is another stream, which empties into Black River almost at the line between Secs. 21 and 28, and about 800 paces west. The stream is very clear since it carries spring water. It is joined near the mouth by a stream carrying the united waters of several small spring streams. Sec. 28 is very much cut up by the ravines of these streams.

There are no other streams of importance entering Black River in this area. But there is a great amount of water in circulation beneath the ground, as is shown by the numerous springs of the district. These springs were found everywhere from Bessemer to the lake. They seem to follow the rock in some places and finally come to the surface, while in others, chiefly along the river banks, there can be no doubt but that clay is the impervious layer. One spring of importance is Coxey spring, in the S. E. ¼ Sec. 4, T. 47 N., from which flows Coxey Creek. Springs are numerous along the Bessemer Ridges. At the Narrows about fifty yards from the road there is a nice spring flowing out of the river bank. The water of this spring is about twenty feet below the surface. The spring is very near the road and is much used by people traveling back and forth. From Chippewa Hill to the lake there are numerous springs along the river on either side. Fully as many springs are along the lake bank as are along the river. The clay banks are in many places so saturated with water that they are continually slipping, forming a mire at the foot of the bluffs facing the flood plain.

There is no doubt but that very considerable power could be developed from Black River south of Bessemer, and it is certain that a great deal of power could be developed from that part lying between Bessemer and Lake Superior. The elevation of Black River where it flows along the north foot of Bessemer Ridge is about 1,175 feet above sea level, or about 575 feet above the lake. The river is from 150 to 200 feet wide, generally speaking. In flood season the water would be at least six or eight feet deep, but during low water it is scarcely a foot. From where the river enters the area worked by the party of 1904 for a distance of about five miles it is not extremely rapid, although it always has a rapid current. In the east part of Sec. 21, T. 48 N., R. 46 W. the river becomes very rapid for nearly a mile, after which it is less rapid until the Narrows is passed in the N. W. ¼ of the N. E. ¼ Sec. 17. From this point across Sec. 8 the river is very rapid. Again in Sec. 5 it is less rapid. In Sec. 32, T. 49 N. are some large rapids. The river then makes a large loop and is not rapid in Sec. 28. Through Sec. 29 it is rapid. In Secs. 28 and 21 it is quite rapid but not so rapid as some of the other parts. In crossing the above distance which has been briefly reviewed the river has flowed along its bed about twelve or thirteen miles, and has reached a point about eight miles nearer the lake. In that distance it has descended about 200 feet, which leaves it still about 375 above the lake. To the centre line of Sec. 21, T. 49 N., R. 46 W. there have been no falls at all in the river in our area, although there are some south of it. Below that point there is an increase in the number and size of the rapids and an introduction of falls. The falls are as follows:

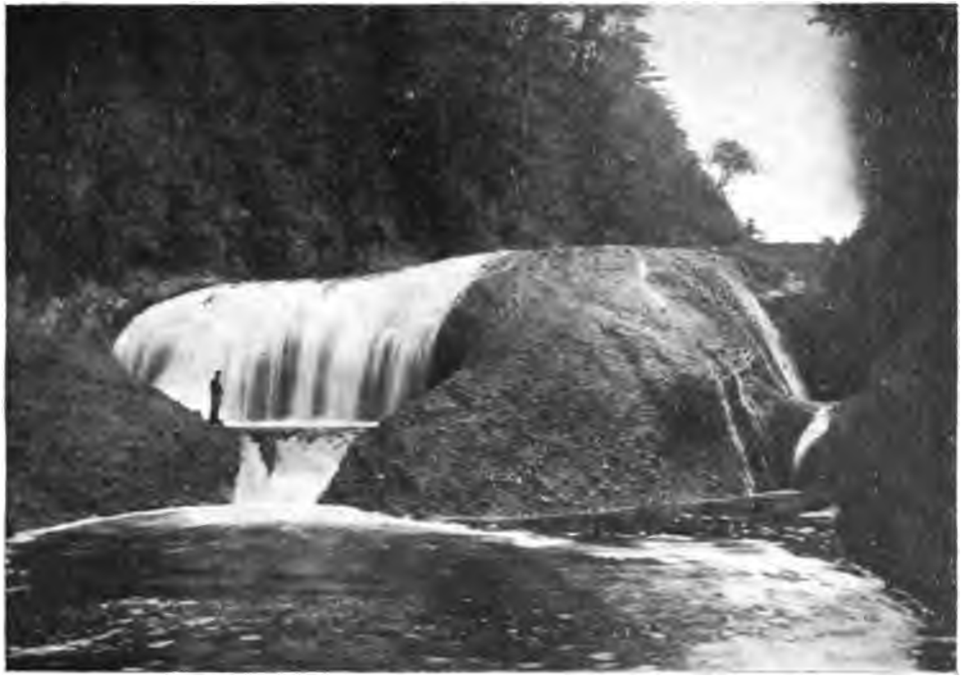
S. E. ¼ of the N. E. ¼ Sec. 21, T. 49 N., R. 46 W., 25 feet over conglomerate.

S. W. ¼ of the S. W. ¼ Sec. 15, T. 49 N., R. 46 W., 32 feet over conglomerate.

S. W. ¼ of the S. W. ¼ Sec. 15, T. 49 N., R. 46 W., 40 feet over conglomerate.

S. W. ¼ of the N. W. ¼ Sec. 15, T. 49 N., R. 46 W., 8 feet over conglomerate.

N. E. ¼ of the N. W. ¼ Sec. 15, T. 49 N., R. 46 W., 22 feet over conglomerate.



VIEW OF FALLS OVER CONGLOMERATE.

S. E. ¼ of the S. W. ¼ Sec. 10, T. 49 N., R. 46 W., 8 feet over conglomerate.

S. E. ¼ of the S. W. ¼ Sec. 10, T. 49 N., R. 46 W., 20 feet over conglomerate.

N. E. ¼ of the N. W. ¼ Sec. 10, T. 49 N., R. 46 W., 10 feet over conglomerate.

On the centre line of Sec. 10, T. 49 N., R. 46 W., and 1,200 paces west falls 40 feet over conglomerate.

The above named falls have a total height according to the aneroid of 205 feet. The remaining 170 feet of decline that the river has in this last part is chiefly in rapids about equally distributed from a point about a quarter of a mile south of the first falls named to a point about a quarter of a mile below the falls nearest the lake. The last quarter of a mile of the river is practically at lake level.

---

A gage[1] was set on Sec. 17, T. 48 N., R. 46 W., at the Narrows as shown. The gage was braced against an overhanging cedar in which a notch was cut and a nail driven at 4.5 of the gage, which is about the level of the flood plain.

The gage readings were taken twice a day usually about 7 in the morning and 5 in the evening, but not with strict regularity. Observer generally J. G. Coté. Observations in parenthesis A. C. Lane, in brackets J. W. Vogtlin. Low water is not much below .85 I think, judging from the vegetation.

The results are as follows:

| Date. | Gage readings. | | Iron River.[1] | Menominee River.[1] |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1904. | A. M. | P. M. | | |
| Sept. 26 | .86 | .9 | 86.45 | 3.95 |
| Sept. 27 | .85 | .85 | 86.40 | 4.15 |
| Sept. 28 | .85 | .85 | 86.40 | 4.00 |
| Sept. 29 | 1.2 | 1.3 | 86.35 | 3.50 |
| Sept. 30 | 1.5 | 1.5 | 86.35 | 3.37 |
| Oct. 1 | 1.4 | 1.4 (1.38) | 86.35 | 3.05 |
| Oct. 2 | 1.3 | 1.3 | 86.35 | 2.75 |
| Oct. 3 | 1.25 | 1.2 | 86.35 | 2.65 |
| Oct. 4 | 1.15 | 1.1 | 86.35 | 2.45 |
| Oct. 5 | 1.1 | 1.1 | 86.40 | 2.75 |
| Oct. 6 | 1.15 | 1.15 | 86.35 | 2.85 |
| Oct. 7 | 1.15 | 1.15 | 86.35 | 2.55 |
| Oct. 8 | 1.15 | 1.2 | 86.50 | 2.90 |
| Oct. 9 | 1.3 | .............. | 86.60 | 3.80 |
| Oct. 10 | 2.1 | 2.22 | 87.45 | 6.70 |
| Oct. 11 | 2.3 | .............. | 87.20 | 7.60 |
| Oct. 17 | ............ | (1.5) at 2.30 | 86.55 | 5.55 |
| Oct. 24 | [2.8] | .............. | 86.70 | 5.15 |
| Oct. 29 | [3.4] | .............. | 86.55 | 4.35 |
| Oct. 30 | [3.3] | .............. | 86.50 | 4.30 |

---

[1] From U. S. G. S. Water Supply paper No. 129, pp. 21 and 24, and annual report for 1904. The rest of the report is by A. C. Lane.

Sections across the stream were also taken at the gage and 25 feet above as follows, beginning at a point opposite gage. (The water level on gage being at .86.)

| At gage. | | | 25 feet above gage. |
|---|---|---|---|
| Feet. | Depth. | | Depth. |
| 32 | 0 | water's edge | 0 |
| 37 | .40 | | .30 |
| 42 | .65 | | .67 |
| 47 | .66 | | 1.01 |
| 52 | .70 | | .98 |
| 57 | 1.00 | | 1.11 |
| 62 | 1.20 | | .91 |
| 67 | 1.37 | | .92 |
| 72 | 1.44 | | .82 |
| 77 | 1.60 | | 1.00 |
| 82 | 1.96 | | 1.07 |
| 87 | 1.82 | | 1.05 |
| 92 | 1.86 | | 1.16 |
| 97 | 1.74 | | 1.55 |
| 102 | 1.58 | | 1.79 |
| 107 | 1.59 | | 2.32 |
| 112 | 1.70 | | 2.68 |
| 117 | 1.39 | | 2.33 |
| 122 | 1.33 | | 1.90 |
| 127 | 1.28 | | 1.32 |
| 132 | .89 | | .62 |
| 134 | .85 | | bank. |
| 135 | .00 | | bank. |

"Bank" is cut vertically about 5 feet high into heavily wooded flood plain.

The cross-sections at this point seem to be in the one case 130.46 square feet and upstream 124.07 or say 128 square feet as an average for a gage height of .86. Observations of maximum velocity with floats check remarkably well in discharge curves, considering how rough they are.

The rating curve is almost straight.

At 0.86 gage the max. vel. was 25 ft. in 23 seconds, 1.1 ft. per sec.

At 1.38 gage the max. vel. was 25 ft. in 13 seconds, 1.9 ft. per sec.

At 2.2 gage the max. vel. was 25 ft. in 7 or 8 seconds, 3.1 ft. per sec.

For every foot increase in gage height I estimate the increased area by a formula $[103+12.5\ (a-.86)](a-.86)$ where $a$ is the gage reading. The minimum discharge for gage height .8 is not far from 110 cubic feet per second. Using Chas. Cumming's estimate of the area above the gaging station in the Michigan Engineer for 1904, and subtracting 30 for the part of the basin below the station from 250 square miles gives 220 square miles area and a low water run-off of .50 cubic feet per second per square mile. Comparing this with the records in Water Supply Paper No. 83, pp. 246-262 of Upper Peninsula streams, we note that October is a month of low water, and that the run off per square mile is comparable with the Dead River near the Hoist and the Carp.

Comparing with records of Water Supply Paper No. 129 for the same dates, we see that 1.1 on this gage about corresponds to 86.4 on the Iron River gage and to 2.6 at Iron Mountain,—the Menominee River. On Black River 1.1 gage would mean a run off of about 180 cubic feet per second, or .84 cubic feet per second per square mile of area. For the Menominee River 2.6 gage means 1.942 second feet run off or for the area of 2,415 square miles .805 cubic feet per second. This is a very good agreement to be obtained from such rough observations of surface float velocities and indicates that probably observations on the Menominee River may be used in estimating this stream by assuming that the run off of the two streams is proportional to their drainage basins.

# CHAPTER VII.

## CORRELATIONS.

In looking over the column and section, which Gordon has constructed with such great care, the great thickness of the Keweenawan shown impresses one at once. It must be remembered also that there is an indefinite amount of sandstone above the Black River section to which Irving assigns a thickness of 12,000 feet not far away on the Montreal River[1]. Leaving this out of account we have 48,000 feet of beds. Adding it would make 60,000 feet. At the very base of the series the beds are not remarkably metamorphosed, the augite is not changed to hornblende, nor any of the metamorphic changes which are so often found in deeply buried strata or those which have been invaded by eruptive rocks. It is also interesting to note that no intrusives have yet been found north of North Bessemer. This agrees with Irving's observations that none have been observed more than one-third the way above the base of the series. Now if the lower strata were ever buried beneath the upper by anything like 60,000 feet, then even if the rate of increase of temperature going down in the earth were no greater in those early times than at present[2], still the rocks would have been buried so as to pass into the zone of folding, not fracture, and be heated, one would think, more than enough to produce some metamorphism, even supposing all their initial heat escaped as they were formed. It would be rather more natural to suppose that a good part of the initial heat was buried with them and that the rate of increase of temperature in the earth's crust was greater in early times.

This difficulty might be escaped in two ways. First we might suppose that the thickness is only apparent, and that there is really a great deal of reduplication by faulting. While Irving found thicknesses comparable to those we have found, that very able geologist Lawson, was inclined to think in studying the North Shore of Lake Superior that Irving's estimates were much exaggerated, owing to repetition of the beds by a series of faults. Therefore we have as carefully as possible looked for any indication of such faults, just as I did in the Isle Royale report.[3]

While we found numerous faults, (See figure 24) no strike faults paralleling the formation were noticed though they probably exist. But no repetitions of similar successions of corresponding beds such as would be produced if the series were repeated by faulting were found. We may, I think, go so far as to say that no such faults with very large throw can exist, except possibly in places where the beds are covered and in particular the gap just north of the D. S. S. & A. R. R. This will appear in a detailed way, only by study of the column, but we may point out a few glaring facts.

---

[1] Copper bearing rocks, U. S. Geological Survey, Monograph V, p. 153.
[2] See Chamberlin's suggestions, Geology, 1904, pp. 533-542.
[3] Geological Survey, Mich., Part I, Volume VI, p. 97-104.

The Nonesuch shales appear but once. The heavy conglomerates of the upper part of the column appear but once. The group of beds VI in which almost every trap flow is separated from the next by a bed of sandstone or conglomerate has no counterpart lower down.

The Chippewa felsite appears at but one horizon. The felsites lower down are distinguishable and are associated with labradorite porphyrites and other entirely different beds.

The extremely coarse ophites occur only at one horizon. Intrusive dikes seem to be confined to the region south of the D. S. S. & A. R. R. The lower beds leaning to porphyrites with conspicuous crystals of labradorite appear nowhere north of the D. S. S. & A. R. R. None of the divisions which Gordon made are then repeated.

The result is that the only place where there is any reasonable probability of a great repetition by faulting is north of North Bessemer, where some of the eight thousand feet of unexposed strata just north of North Bessemer may be but repetitions of the lower beds, and the Keweenawan fault may go through here. Yet we have no direct proof of this, and while it seems to me likely that there is such a fault it is hardly probable that it includes all the eight thousand feet in the repetition caused, and there may be very much less. To take off 10,000 feet from the geological column for fault repetitions would be in my judgment extreme.

If then, there is no great repetition by faulting, we can still escape the difficulty of supposing that this let us say sixty thousand feet of strata were superimposed by supposing that the lower strata were lifted and tilted before the upper were laid down. There are a variety of reasons for believing this to be true.

In the first place the upper sediments contain a very large amount of material which appears to be derived from the lower part of the formation. The Nonesuch shale is composed of basic debris, and the conglomerates contain fragments of melaphyres, porphyrites, and felsites, and even of agates which look like the agates which form the amygdules in many of the flows, especially Division XI.

In the second place the lower beds are much more tilted than the upper, and even than the iron bearing rocks underlying them, and though it is of course natural to expect the beds nearer the center of a synclinal to have flatter dips, still the difference of dip is disproportionate for a synclinal as broad as Lake Superior.

This, however, may be due to initial difference of slope. Chamberlin has treated this problem quite elaborately in Volume II of his Geology recently published.[1] He calls attention to the fact that if beds are built out from a continental shelf like the beds of a delta, there might be inferred from the dips an immense thickness having no connection with the thickness of the basin in which the beds were formed, and not present in any one place. The dip would be merely that of cross bedding on a gigantic scale.

The steeper dip of the basal Keweenawan beds as compared with the underlying iron bearing formation may be largely initial dip. This explanation he directly applies to our Keweenaw problem, yet explicitly states that it does not account for all the dip.

---

[1] Chamberlin and Salisbury, Vol. II, pp. 192 and 265.

Chamberlin's explanation is certainly a help. Yet the fact, in addition to the others, that we find identical horizons and lava flows on Keweenaw Point and on Isle Royale points to a certain amount of real synclinal folding or collapse of the central part of Lake Superior since these beds were formed.

I have speculated on the possibility that the Isle Royale beds, which though thick are thinner than on Keweenaw point might have flowed across the lake from a center on the south side. Their flatter dips would fit in nicely with this hypothesis, for then the original dip of deposition northward would be subtracted from the dip southward. But in view of the intrusions and dikes around Port Arthur and along the Minnesota coast, it seems hardly necessary to look for a source to the south side, though that may have been the source for particular beds like the "Greenstone."

According to Dana the slope of lava beds can be even up to 20 or more degrees, though such streams are likely to be hollow.

We can thus readily assign 10° or more of the dips to the initial dip of deposition. But even assuming an initial dip of 20° would only reduce our aggregate[1] thickness to about 33,000 feet—more than half of the present estimate and an average slope of 20° seems again extreme. We shall still have to revert to the assumption of intra-formational uplift.

Some light on the probable thickness of the Keweenaw formation may perhaps be found from the following consideration:

Lake Superior is a great trough which is underlain by the Keweenawan formation, which occurs all around it and not far from it. Now recent observations have indicated that the continents float as it were above the general level of the crust, like ice in water because they and the rocks under them are lighter, while the rocks beneath sea bottoms are unusually heavy. Suppose this to be applicable to Lake Superior, which is a great actual concavity in the earth's crust, and has been so apparently from the beginning. There is this to commend such a supposition, that the Keweenawan traps are heavier than the surrounding granites. We do not know the mean density of the Keweenawan rocks as we shall when Pres. McNair gets through with his detailed work. But suppose the Keweenawan traps average a density of about 2.85, that is, weigh about 2,850 ounces to the cubic foot. Then they will weigh about 200 ounces to the cubic foot more than granites, which run about 2.65 in specific gravity. Now the granitic areas around Lake Superior seem to be remnants of a dissected peneplain about 1,800 feet above sea level. Now as Lake Superior is 1,000 feet deep in its deepest part and over a large area is over 600 feet deep, and its elevation is about 600 A. T. we have some 2,200 feet of rock in the Huron Mountains (5,820,000 ounces per square foot) over against 1,000 feet of water (1,000,000 ounces per square foot) as an extreme, or in a general way 1,600 feet of rock as against 600 feet of water (4,230,000 ounces as against 600,000 ounces).

Now if this is due to extra weight of Keweenawan traps under Lake

---

[1] The 48,000 feet column of Gordon is about 12 miles in width. This corresponds to an average dip of 50°. Making its dip 30° for the same breadth would give us 33,000 feet.

Superior, which makes an equilibrium, there would have to be, under[1] the suppositions 24,100 to 18,250 feet of them.

It is easy to see that this argument indicates a thickness of Keweenawan traps under Lake Superior, of the same general order of magnitude as indicated otherwise, and that the balance, known as the isostatic balance, may easily be supposed complete.

For closer figures one would have to have fair contour maps both of the Lake bottom and the Huron Mountains, and also closer figures as to density.

It seems probable therefore that a geological column and thickness of Keweenawan, if not as thick as that obtained by summation, sixty thousand feet, yet at least large fraction thereof, does really exist in the center of the basin, but that around the margin of the basin, owing to erosion, denudation and uplift, the bottom beds were never buried by any such thickness. It seems as if Lake Superior marked a place where a block of the earth's crust had foundered.

A notable thing is the persistence of the groups of beds. The main sandstone we find all the way along the shore to the Portage Lake Canal. The Nonesuch shale belt is supposed to appear in Swede Town Creek west of Hancock.

The Lake Shore Trap belts are well defined on Sec. 3 and 16, T. 56 N., R. 33 W., near Calumet. The Great Conglomerate is also well marked, 2,100 feet thick there to 350 here. Quite possibly some of the group below is also coeval with the greater thickness at Calumet. It is not to be expected that the last flows marking a waning of the volcanic activity should be so widespread as those of the culmination.

The next group of eruptives with sedimentaries (VI) some 5,500 feet, characterized by the frequency of sedimentary belts, and the absence of lavas dominantly either of the ophite or the Tobin porphyrite types seems to be recognizable also. At Eagle River there are about 1,159 feet down to Marvines bed 35 and perhaps more[2] which seem to correspond. At Calumet there seems to be 1,900 feet or so, down to 195 feet in Tamarack No. 5 shaft. On Isle Royale the section is apparently much thinner (567 ft.)

The next and very well marked horizon, the Chippewa felsite (an orthophyre?) we do not find in Houghton County, but we do find a similar bed in Ontonagon County nearly to the county line, north of working mines. From Irving's notes we know it on the Presque Isle and Potato rivers. It also occurs close to the D. S. S. & A. R. R. in Wisconsin and I think it goes in a continuous band past the Porcupine Mountains. The main mass of the felsite there is a very different appearing rock,—the feldspar and quartz crystals are large and conspicuous.

From its associations at its northward extension we know that it has affiliations with the feldspathic ash bed group, and occurs at the same horizon. It therefore marks a persistent horizon.

Underneath it in the Black River come some beds which seem to represent to some extent the ash bed group.

The next group (VIII) is the one which is most difficult and most interesting to divide, for I suspect that most of the mines are working in this horizon. A great abundance of trap, comparatively little sediment, a marked predominence of ophites with mottles often observable by the naked eye,—these are characteristics that remind one at once of the series from the Greenstone down to the Mount Houghton felsite, the Praysville porphyry. But whereas that group on Keweenaw point is only 6,000 to 10,000 feet thick, this appears to be 26,000. However there is about 10,000 feet covered which may perhaps be deducted. Then the whole column being thicker we should expect the groups to be so—some of them at least.

---

[1] (5,820,000—1,000,000) + 200, respectively (4,230,000—600,000) + 200.
[2] Vol. I of our reports, Part II, p. 124.

It can hardly be accident that everywhere (Isle Royale, Keweenaw Point, Mamainse, Black River), beneath a series including some of the heaviest and coarsest flows, comes a felsite flow and tuff, and that beneath this horizon intrusions are not uncommon.

Gordon's group (IX) mixed eruptives among which are some conspicuous labradorite porphyrites has a well marked felsite and felsite tuff at its summit. Close beneath come some beds which have very large and conspicuous Labradorite crystals, brotocrysts.

These are however rather irregularly distributed in the same flow,—when absent the trap is a peculiarly hard blue trap.

Now these rocks occur all along the South Trap Range,—just north of Sunday Lake, and past the south end of Lake Gogebic.

Irving also seems to refer to them, on page 229, along the Gogogashugun. The foot trap of the Kearsarge Lode is of the same type, and might be a thinner representative, but I do not think we come to any such *group* until we get down to the rocks of the Little Montreal River sections described by Hubbard.[1] It seems to me probable therefore that the North Bessemer felsite is at or not far from the horizon of the Mount Houghton felsite. And as there so here, up to about this horizon intrusives have invaded the series. To be sure in the Bare Hills district there are intrusive felsites which we have not recognized here, and in the Bessemer district there are diabase dikes, which are not known, I believe, on Keweenaw Point. Then the intrusive gabbro of Bessemer is very different in appearance from the Mount Bohemia Gabbro. So we cannot lay too much stress on the resemblance. To the description of these intrusives we next address ourselves.

---

[1] Geological Survey, Mich., Vol. VI, Part II.

# CHAPTER VIII.

## INTRUSIVE.

### § 1. *The Bad River Gabbro:*

I think there can be no doubt that the intrusive sill, described by Gordon as Division X of his column is the extreme end of a tongue of the Bad River Gabbro described by Irving in the Wisconsin Reports and his Monograph of the Copper Bearing Rocks, though as Gordon says we could not trace it to the Wisconsin line. However a tongue is mapped crossing the Gogogashugum River in Sec. 9, T. 47, Range 2 E. (Wisconsin) which is heading directly for it.

It is of interest, not merely from its economic value, though I think it would make a good building and monumental stone of the order of the "Duluth Granite," but because it supplies an instance of a plutonic or deep seated rock, a kind represented otherwise only by the granite south of Bessemer and rarely found in the Keweenawan. Moreover its intrusive relations are especially clear, and geologically very interesting.

Gordon has already described it,. as composed mainly of labradorite, with subordinate amounts of augite (at times diallagic) magnetite, serpentine (after olivine?), and interstices filled with micropegmatite, (an intergrowth of quartz and orthoclase) to some extent from margin to center. This brings it in Irving's class of orthoclase gabbros.

The observations on grain are tabulated below. The increase of grain of the micropegmatite toward the center may be explained, either as the direct result of slower cooling near the center of the sill or as due to the fact that it occupies larger interstices near the center, which interstices are due to the slower cooling and coarser crystallization of earlier minerals. According to this view the micropegmatite interstices would be considered as microscopic little pegmatitic or aplitic igneous veins.[1]

The size of the interstices seems to follow the grain of the augite pretty closely, being about one-fourth the size. The diameter of the coarser of the little rods of quartz and feldspar which make up the micropegmatite texture is about one-tenth the diameter of the pores as a rough average.

As Gordon has said, the contact with the overlying rock,—one of the usual porphyrites of that part of the series,—is exposed at many points and is different from the contact of the diabase dikes, in that it is close welded, so that it is not hard to break off pieces showing both sides. Little tongues may occasionally be found penetrating the country rock, so that we have a typical intrusive contact. A marked feature is a band of much finer grain from four to eight inches wide just inside the line of intrusive contact. Sometimes the part with very coarse feldspar is quite distinct from it. In other cases the coarse feldspar seems to occur as phenocrysts in it. The coarse feldspar in or next to this fine band is fully as coarse, or a little coarser than at the center, while the augite and magnetite are not so plain as farther in.

---

[1] It is worth noting that granitic and syenitic rocks are associated with, and cut the main mass of the gabbro farther west. Monograph V, 232 to 233.

The grain of the augite in the uniform central part seems to be about the same as that of the magnetite and the micropegmatite patches. Calling it 4.5 mm. we see that it is about 4 times that of the Marquette diabase dike. Moreover the width of that dike is about 56 feet, and the width of the gabbro sheet is 200 feet according to Gordon. The rocks are composed of the same minerals and probably the conductivity is about the same, as well as the crystallizing power of the augite, and the temperature at which it formed. If all these things are true and the grain at the center proportional to the width of the dike, which appears to be in a rough way true, then we may infer that the temperature of the country rock was the same relative to that of the augite formation.[1]

Or since the temperature of augite formation was probably somewhere about 1100°C., and it is not likely that the general country rock would differ much in the two cases relative to it, we may assuming this ask the thickness of the whole zone affected, including the thickness of the gabbro belt and of the rocks appreciably heated by it. It comes out 252 feet. As the gabbro seems to be somewhat less than 200 feet thick there would be implied a contact zone of some 26 feet, somewhat more in proportion than that of the Marquette dike. But we have made so many assumptions that we could lay no stress on it did it not happen to fit in with other indications that the gabbro was hotter, more plutonic, and would be expected to have a broader contact zone.

Near the margin the augite varies in grain (see table), but while very close to the margin the grain appears to be .2 to .44, but sharply crystalline and earlier than the feldspar, in the coarser part of Sp. 20196 it attains a grain of .6 to .14 mm., and within 9 feet it appears to be as coarse as the feldspar. Accordingly the rate of increase of the normal augite at the margin can hardly be less than .003 and may be more. From this we may estimate that the temperature of consolidation of the augite was .57 of that of the gabbro intrusion, that of the country rock being taken as 0°.[2] Or if we assume that the augite crystallized about 1050° above the temperature of the country rock, the initial temperature was 1850°,(—not far from that which I found for the Medford intrusion).

The titaniferous magnetite will lead to similar results. It is about 4 mm. at the center, and in 10 feet is three or four times as coarse as in 8 inches, and even there is about 1 mm. across, whence also we may infer a high initial temperature for the gabbro. The feldspar, at the center, is some 8 mm. long or rather more than four times the length of that of the Lighthouse Point dike. The general appearance of the rock is five or six times coarser than that at the center of the Lighthouse Point dike, which is in general proportion to its greater thickness. It may therefore be inferred that the conditions of consolidation of the center of the gabbro need not have been radically different from that of the dike except as to the size of the sheet and central zone. It must be remembered that in a zone of uniform grain at the center, which there is in both cases, the initial temperature of the molten rock when it was intruded plays no part in fixing the coarseness.

---

[1] From the equations on p. 224, Annual for 1903. $E = kc / a \pi \sqrt{v}$. Let the subscript $_1$ refer to the Bessemer Gabbro, and $_2$ to the Lighthouse Point dike at Marquette. $E_1 = 4.5 = 4$ ($E_2 = 1.1$) $E_1 = k_1 c_1 / a_1 \parallel \sqrt{v_1}$. But the rocks are so similar in mineraological composition that we assume $k_1 = k_2 - a_1 = a_2$ and $v^1$ = the difference between the country rock temperature and that of the augite crystalization $= v_2$s then $E_1 : E_2$ should $= C_1 : C_2 = 4.5 : 1 = 77{,}000$ mm. : 19,000 mm. $C_1 =$ 252 feet, which would leave 26 feet plus for contact zone on either side, a somewhat greater contact zone than at the Marquette dike, but all things considered not unreasonable.

[2] $E/C^1 c = 4.5 / (.003) \times 77{,}000 = .02$ ∴ by Fig.6, p. 219, Annual for 1903. $v/u_0 = .57 = (1100° - 50°) / 1850°$. Magnetite would apparently give a lower value for $E / C^1 c$, hence a higher for $u_0$ since v for magnetite is apparently higher than for augite, — it is generally so given and it crystallizes earlier.

In comparison with the Medford dike which is somewhat thicker where studied (120,000 to 77,000 m m) the augite at the center is about twice as coarse, and so is the feldspar.[1] In both cases within a very short distance from the margin it is as coarse or coarser than at the center. This latter factor points to a high initial temperature in both cases.

When we come to apply any exact mathematical analysis to the grain of the feldspar, or the augite for that matter, near the margin, we obtain no results at present satisfactory. There is near the margin the usual tendency to a porphyritic texture in the feldspar.

Along the upper contact there is a band of relatively finer grain of from 4 to 8 inches. The transition to the coarse feldspathic type is sharp often within a fraction of an inch, though just at the contact line (Sp. 20196) we find the feldspar and augite of the fine grained zone penetrating the interstices of the coarse crystals, and at some points (Sp. 20192) the large feldspar crystals are disseminated porphyritically through it.

In this narrow zone the grain is relatively uniform, though apparently somewhat coarser at its center. Iron oxide is much more conspicuous than in the normal gabbro and disseminated through it in fine crystals, with very sharp forms, either octahedra, or plates.

I have considered the possibility that this might be an earlier path making intrusion, under which the main intrusion came, but this is ruled out by the way the finer intrudes the coarser zone. I have also considered the possibility that it might be a later aplitic intrusion, which is more possible. But it is much coarser than so narrow a dike would normally be. It must therefore have followed close after the main intrusion, before it had cooled off.

Another way of explaining this zone is to suppose that it was one of fusion and interaction between the gabbro and the overlying rock. This might be chemically settled, if the two were not so alike in chemical composition. There is a certain faint trace of a pre-existing texture, like a palimpsest, and a sharpness to the iron oxide grains, and a granulitic character to the augite (like that around fused enclosures) in this marginal zone, all of which suggest this origin for it.

As this zone encloses the large crystals of the main mass of the gabbro, we must suppose that the main mass must have had the feldspar of the margin crystallized at least before the loss of its heat and gas sufficed to fuse the immediate contact.

The most serious objection to this supposition, which would be like that made by Daly for the Moyie Sill, is that the grain of the margin zone seems to be a little finer, as appears from the table of observations on grain near the coarse gabbro than at its center. The only way that I can see to account for this would be to suppose that some mineralizer, promoting fluidity and coarse crystallization was derived from the country rock, and decreased away from the margin of the gabbro, just as the heat and gas pressure must have diminished the other way. It is not inconceivable that the iron oxide which seems much more abundant in the narrow zone may have had such an effect. It is even possible that it was an oxidizing action on the iron in the gabbro. The gabbro appears to have less than a normal amount of iron.[1] See table p. 492.

---

[1] 1–7: 4.5 for augite, 5 + : 8 to 15 for feldspar.

## § 2. *The Diabase Dikes.*

The dikes belonging to the Keweenawan cut not only the lower parts of the Keweenawan up to the Duluth and South Shore Railroad, but also the formations beneath. They usually form one side of the trough, Fig. 26, in which the iron ore was laid down, as has been fully described by Van Hise.[2] In this case they are generally largely altered to kaolin the so-called "soaprock,"[3] In such case of course very little can be said definitely as to the origin, composition and texture, although even when practically all kaolin like the dike under the Colby and Aurora one can still see a finer grained zone at the margin, and in the center form of the original feldspar grains is often visible. No analyses of these rocks have been made, but three analyses made for Van Hise from a dike of the region, Sec. 13, T. 47 N., R. 46 W., are given below, (Monograph XIX-page 357), and also the computations by Washington (Professional paper U. S. G. S., page 331).

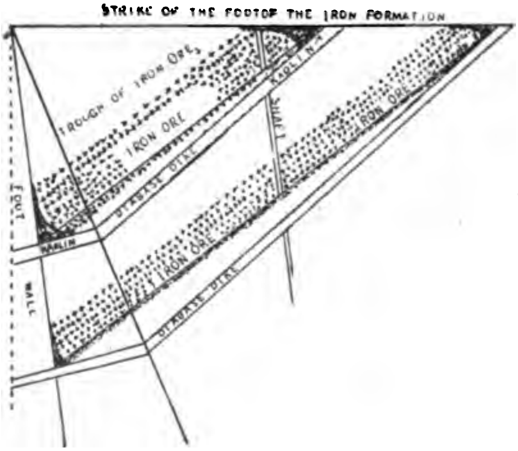


Fig. 26. Diabase dikes and their relation to ore.

---

[1] Less than the eutectic ratio, I have had no analysis made as yet to see just what the composition of this gabbro here is, but it is notable in looking over the analyses given in the literature of the gabbros of this region that they have less iron than the diabase dikes. In general gabbros have less iron and more of it ferrous than the superficial rocks, and the experiments of Vucnic (Central Blatt, 1904, p. 299.) show that up to at least 16%, magnetite lowers the melting point of anorthite, and we appear to have less and less iron the farther from the contact we get.

[2] Monograph XIX, U. S. G. S., pp. 355-359.

[3] Loc. Rep., also annual for 1892, p. 185.

*Table of Dimensions of Gabbro Grain in mm.*

| | Distances from margin. | Iron oxides. | Augite. | Feldspar. Av. An. | Micro-pegmatite. | Miscellaneous and remarks. |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 20193 | Just outside. | .04 to .16 (Secondary smaller). | .16 + Granulitic. | 1.06 x .2 to .46 x .2. | None. | |
| 20194 | Just inside. | .2 ? | | .5. | | Like finer part of 20196. |
| 20197 | Corner inside. | .3 to .4 | .2 to .44 idiom. | .6 ±. | Patch .1,<br>rod .007. | At one end a little like 20193. |
| 20195 | 5 inches<br>127 mm. | .5 (eye)<br>.3 – .6 | 1.00. | 1.2 to .8 x 2. | Patch .26,<br>rod .02. | Micropegmatite abundant, general effect coarser than 20193; largest grains not different, except more Fe. |
| 20196 | 8 inches<br>203 mm. | .18 octab.<br>.27 x .09 plates.<br>.8 to 1.1 irr. | .26 to .4 and .55 to 1.4. | 7 +, large.<br>.5, small. | Patch .43,<br>rod .04. | Resembles 20192 to the eye. Apatite .11 x .04 to .07. |
| | 9 feet<br>2740 mm. | 3 oct. | | | | |
| 20198 | 10 feet<br>3062 mm. | 3 to 5. | 6 ? | 15 x 3. | | |
| 20199 | 20 feet.<br>6 | 3 to 5. | 5 ? | 7.5. | | |
| | 30 feet. | 3 to 5. | | 20 to 8. | | |
| | 40 feet. | 3 to 5. | | 15. | | |
| 20200 | 75 feet. | 3.6.<br>4 ±. | 4 to 5.<br>3 to 6. | 15 long.<br>10 x 8.<br>8.5 x 8. | Patch 1.1 to 2 .3, rod 1.1 to 17. | Apatite, .7 x .13. |
| | 95 feet. | | | | | |
| 20201 | 125 feet. | | | | | |
| | 135 feet. | | | | | |
| 20192 | | 1 —. | | 16 or 8–13. | | |

| | *1.* | | *2.* | *3.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| $H_2O$ at 105° | .15 | | 3.12 | .29 |
| $H_2O$ at red heat | 2.34 | | 8.25 | 13.54 |
| $Co_2$ | .38 | | 1.89 | .38 |
| *$SO_3$ | .03 | | .06 | ..... |
| $P_2O_5$ | .13 | .001 | .16 | .14 |
| $SiO_2$ | 47.90 | .798 | 46.85 | 41.60 |
| $TiO_2$ | .82 | .010 | 1.12 | 3.79 |
| †$Al_2O_3$ | 15.60 | .153 | 22.62 | 37.20 |
| $Fe_2O_3$ | 3.65 | .023 | .12 | 3.21 |
| $Cr_2O_3$ | trace | ..... | ..... | ..... |
| FeO | 8.41 | .117 | 1.58 | .30 |
| NiO (CoO) | .10 | ..... | .08 | ..... |
| MnO | .17 | .002 | 2.54 | .08 |
| BaO | .05 | ..... | .10 | trace |
| CaO | 9.99 | .178 | 1.25 | .23 |
| MgO | 8.11 | .203 | 2.01 | .02 |
| $K_2O$ | .23 | .002 | 2.66 | ..... |
| $Na_2O$ | 2.05 | .033 | .80 | .07 |
| | 100.15 | | 100.21 | 100.85 |

---

* $SO_3$ calculated from BaO found, as this latter probably exists as Ba SO 4.
† $Al_2O_3$ is probably a little high owing to alkali retained by titanic acid.

Washington reckons its norm to be:

| | | *mode* from norm. |
|---|---|---|
| Quartz | 0.3 | micropegmatite. |
| Orthoclase | 1.1 | |
| Albite | 17.3 | labradorite $Ab_2$ $An_3$ |
| Anorthite | 32.8 | |
| | 50.1 | |
| Diopside | 13.5 | augite |
| Hypersthene | 24.8 | |
| | 38.3 | |
| Magnetite | 5.3 | titaniferous magnetite and ilmenite. |
| Ilmenite | 1.5 | |
| | 6.8 | |

This agrees quite closely with the appearance of these rocks.

To two things about the molecular proportions in this analysis, special attention may be called. In the first place the ratio of all the bases to silica is 722:798, not far from 1.1 as in the pyroxenes generally. In the second place after subtracting all the (CaO, MgO 2 $SiO_2$) possible (.381), this being the common dominant augite molecule, in the remainder the ratio of the alkalies to the silica is almost exactly 1:12 (.035×12=.42 instead of .417 which is the ratio that I have supposed might be that of an eutectic line from micropegmatite down. I am therefore not surprised that there seems to be little or no tendency for any constituent to crystallize out early and porphyritically because of being in excess.

### *The Keweenawan Dikes.*

From the gabbro we have just described these dikes are not very different in origin. Both are later than the beginning of the Keweenawan but there is good reason to believe from their composition, which is quite like that of the flows, and their attitude, that they were intruded during Keweenawan time. These dikes generally strike northeasterly, and dip southeasterly.[1] This prevalent dip to the south is an indication that the formation has been tilted to the north since they were intruded, since there is no apparent reason otherwise why they should dip against the formation. A slight dip to the south could indeed be explained if there were only a slight dip of the formation by supposing they followed slightly tilted joint planes. But in the case before us the Lower Keweenawan beds are tilted so much that now the most direct course for a dike from beneath would in many cases be the bedding planes. But these are used practically only by the gabbro.

If we restore these dikes to their original horizontality it is a simple problem of spherical right triangles to estimate how much of the present tilting of the beds occurred since the intrusion of the dikes by estimating how much of a tilt to the south would be needful to make the dikes fairly vertical. Van Hise already came to the correct conclusion that in the iron bearing rocks the tilting of the formation was 60° to 70° and the original strike southwest to northeast. A good many of them thus seem to come from the region of the Porcupine Mountains, which seem to have been a volcanic focus in Keweenawan time.

Exceptions, as on Cora's Peak, sometimes certainly are, and may always be stringers or offshoots of a main set of dikes.

The dikes differ from gabbro then:—

First, in that they were nearly vertical, instead of an intruded sill;

Secondly, almost without exception their contacts are fine grained beyond recognition of the grain;

Thirdly, their contacts are not closely welded. While with the gabbro it is not hard to get a piece showing both wall rock and gabbro it is next to impossible with the diabase dikes.

This may be ascribed either, (1) to intrusion of dikes into wet rocks, of the gabbro into hotter and dry rocks, making a good joint, or (2) to the gabbro having included gas which could not escape, and by mutual reaction along the edges promoted a close joint.

With one exception, not noticed in the field, so far as observed these dikes resemble very strongly the quartz diabases, the type of which is the Lighthouse Point Dike, Marquette, which I have fully described elsewhere. I had in 1906 a good chance to make observations of another dike of this family near Marquette, just opposite the little station of West Yards, of the L. S. & I. R. R., Sec. 3, T. 48 N., R. 25 W., for comparison.

In general it may be said that the center of these dikes shows labradorite laths, visible to the naked eye, and in the thicker dikes up to 1 to 2 mm. long. These feldspar laths make up about half of the rock and are the first formed of the principal components, next follows opaque matter, mainly magnetite (with ilmenite and graphite?).

---

[1] See Irving and Van Hise, Monograph XIX, p. 272.

Augite takes most of the room next to the feldspar, and follows next in order. The last interstices are filled with an intergrowth of quartz and feldspar (orthoclase), called micropegmatite. These interstices are often the centers of decomposition, but there may also appear reaction rims of the original components near them, hornblende being built from the augite, liotite from the iron oxides.

Remnants of olivine are generally entirely changed to serpentine, iddingsite or talc, etc. Apatite occurs in minute needles especially near the acid interstices. The only sign of these that can be seen without a microscopic thin section is occasionally a minute red speck.

The grain in the larger dikes is uniformly coarse for a belt at the center but at the margins it grows finer, but the feldspar at the margin is of a great variety of size,[1] whereas the augite is more uniform.

Details regarding some of the dikes follow.

The dike farthest north so far as known is 52 steps south of the cut on the D. S. S. & A. track, just west of North Bessemer, and thence S. 50° W. It might be traced 250 feet or more (1,700 paces W., 230 N., Section 33, T. 48 N., R. 46 W.). It may easily be 60 feet or so wide.

The joints run: dip 75° to S. 20° E., dip 80° to S. 45° E., dip 35° to S. Although no section was cut, specimen 20271 looks like a normal diabase and is in grain apparently like that of the West Yards diabase at 131 inches from its margin. As the width of the two dikes is similar the presumption is that other conditions, except possibly the initial temperature, were similar, and as regards that my general impression of the relative proportion of the width of the dike to the selvages of the finer grain is that they are similar.

On Cora's Peak on the south side near the sandstone quarry is a dike 7 to 8 feet wide. Probably as an offshoot of this there is a trap dike on the east side of the hill dipping 56° to S. 50° E., jumping from one layer to another by following joints. It sends off a 1 or 2 inch stringer which runs clear up to the knob to the northwest. It has well marked fine grained selvages and it is nearly a foot thick as one goes up the hill. (See map.) Where this was about 8 inches thick a piece was taken from margin to center, and a section showing nearly the whole made by Axel Anderson. There are also five sections, numbers 20190.1 to 20190.5 giving 92 mm. The large section made by Anderson shows beautifully the finer, and at the same time the more irregular grain toward the margin and the greater abundance of iron oxide, especially along the little cracks which may be primary. At the very margin, the feldspar has an appreciable size of 0.21 mm. x 0.02 mm., sometimes larger, and the iron oxide grains are 0.2 to 0.3 mm., but the augite cannot be noticed. At the center the large feldspars are hardly longer, though the average feldspar is distinctly coarser, but they are 2 or 3 times stouter, the common size being 0.21 mm. x 0.03 mm. The iron oxides are twice as coarse—0.08 mm., and the augite is very close to .06 mm. Intermediate observations show that the augite increases clear to the center, there being no belt of uniform grain, for instance at 46 mm. from the margin the average grain of the augite is .037; at 50 mm. it is .048.

---

[1] "Seriate" Journal of Geology, Dec., 1906.

The rate of increase of augite clear to the center is .0006 to .0008, substantially the same as that at the margin of the West Yards and Lighthouse Point dikes. The inference may be drawn that this dike probably consolidated clear through under similar conditions to the margins of those dikes of similar distance from a contact, and at an early stage of cooling, so that the grain follows the law of the increase of grain in the margins of those dikes. Consequently in all probability the initial temperature of this little dike was not much above that of consolidation. In harmony with this is the increase of the grain of augite clear to the center. If we compute the ratio of initial temperature to that of consolidation of augite, $v \div u_0$, it will come out .96 to .99.

On the other side of the Bessemer gap there are also a number of dikes. Specimens 20184 and 20185, 182 paces S., 650 paces W. of the N. E. corner of Section 10, T. 47 N., R. 46 W., come from the small 8-inch dikes dipping 75° to S. 55° W. A couple of hundred paces north,—Section 3, T. 48, R. 46—is another dike about 16 inches wide dipping again 65° to S. 17° E. Another dike shows in the side of the hill which runs nearly north from the south quarter post of 3 a very similar strike (N. 32° E.). It is 8 to 12 feet wide. We also have a number of similar dikes probably in the iron bearing formation. One directly under the Colby mine Van Hise says is about 90 (?) feet thick, with a similar strike and dip to those already mentioned, then below this at the 4th and 5th levels of the Yale mine there is a four to five foot dike in a general way parallel to the Colby. Then to the northwest of Cora's Knob, a little north of the corner between Sections 4 and 5 is another dike, dipping as usual to the S. E. and a few feet wide. I have no doubt careful examination would find others.

One dike which occurs directly in Bessemer just west of the sidewalk in the Creek Valley 830 paces north and 1,500 west, Section 10, T. 47 N., R. 46 W., appears to be somewhat different, judging from sections 20176 and 20177. It is not over 45 feet thick. The strike is somewhat similar to the others, N. 68° E., but it dips apparently 60° N. It may be that the different appearance is due to absorption and modification of the surrounding graywacke. Specimen 20177 is from the margin and very fine grained with feathery minute feldspars (trichitic arborescent) and a *mottled* appearance with white dots freer from iron oxide surrounded by a rim of black oxide, or possibly graphitic matter. The remainder of the ground is brown.

Beside the minute feldspar fibers (.07 mm. to .14 mm. long), there are large porphyritic crystals generally forked at the ends (from .2 to .5 mm. long, in one case 1 mm.) evidently crystals formed in transit —rhyocrystals. There are also minute equidimensional granules .03 mm. across. Specimen 20176 20 inches (508 mm.) shows iron oxide in much coarser development. The individual granules are only .03 mm., say, across, but they are gathered into arborescent or dendritic growths and lines often parallel from 2 or 3 mm., and at times as much as 1.4 mm. long but only .03 mm. wide. Feldspar is very abundant up to .7 mm. long in forked rhyocrysts. Opaque matter occurs in feathery sheaves and appears to be graphitic. The augite is also in long prisms arranged in sheaves (1.0 mm. x .2). In comparison with the Lighthouse Point dike the feldspar are longer and slenderer. It is obviously a more andesitic rock,—an augite porphyrite, and not a melaphyre in composition and may correspond to some of the labradorite porphyritic flows, but it is worthy of further study.

# CHAPTER IX.

## THE PRE-KEWEENAWAN ROCKS.

### *Introductory.*

The main study by Gordon was naturally given to the Copper-bearing or Keweenawan Rocks, in accordance with his instructions.

But the map also includes in one corner older rocks and for completeness it may be well to describe them. The rocks of this region were the subject of the Monograph of Irving and Van Hise (XIX of the U. S. Geol. Survey) on the Penokee-Gogebic Range. A later description is given by him in his general article on the iron ores of Lake Superior. Even since then studies, largely elsewhere, have made some change in the general view regarding these rocks.[1]

According to our present views there occur beneath the Keweenawan the following groups or series of rocks, each having its own peculiar character and generally separated from others by some disturbance, often involving its elevation and erosion.

It is true, as Gordon has said, that in the area covered by this map there is no evidence of unconformity between the Keweenawan and the next older rocks, the neo-Huronian or Animikie. Yet by going only four miles east to Sunday Lake on the south side of Sec. 9, T. 47 N., R. 45 W., a marked labradorite porphyrite like those at Bessemer are found directly lying on the Bijiki iron bearing part of the Animikie, and it is clear that there is at least that kind of unconformity which Grabau has called a disconformity (described also in Monograph XIX, p. 470), by which varying beds of one series are brought in contact with different beds of the other without any marked unconformity of strike and dip, as if all that had happened to the older formation (the Animikie), before the later (the Keweenawan) was uplift and erosion.

There does not appear to be any jointing, igneous metamorphism or other disturbing action affecting the Animikie that does not also affect the Keweenawan just here. This statement is not true of the Marquette Range for instance. But the break between Animikie or neo-Huronian and Keweenawan seems unusually little on the Gogebic range, which may indicate that the lower beds of the Keweenawan and highest of the Animikie meet here.

### *Animikie, neo-Huronian.*

This formation may be divided into the following parts:[2]

(a) Michigamme slate (Tyler).

This is dominantly made up of black graphitic slates, varying to graywackes (sandy slates). It lies close to the surface under the town of Bessemer, has been exposed in numerous cellars, and occurs at the surface about 300 steps up hill from the south corner between Sections 9 and 10, also in the valley of Sewer Creek in the north part of the town, 800 paces N., 1,400 paces W., Sec. 10, T. 47 N., R. 46 W., and elsewhere. With the black slate, pyrite, calcite and chert seams occur. It appears to dip about 75° to N. 20° W. The thickness allowing about 800′ for the underlying iron bearing (Bijiki or Ironwood) formation, below and 300′ or so for the overlying Keweenawan sandstone, but making no allowance for faulting or thickening accompanying the slaty cleavage is ........................................ 4,000 feet.

---

[1] See Annual Report Michigan Survey for 1904, pp. 132 to 153. Also Vol. 5, Monograph XIX, U. S. G. S.: also 21st Annual Report Pl. XLIX. p. 338 and following.

[2] We use the geographic names of the Marquette Monograph rather than those applied by Van Hise in the 21st Annual Report, as we believe the correlations are safe and it hardly seems worth while to multiply names. However we give the others in parentheses.

(b) Bijiki (Ironwood) iron bearing formation.

Beneath the slates are about 800 feet of iron bearing rocks proper,—ferruginous cherts, cherty carbonates and siliceous beds, with a distinct quartzite at the base, between which and the cherty iron series there is apparently a little unconformity.

They are exposed at all the mines to some extent though there is no complete section. The basal member and contact is well seen along the tracks which run a litle north of east from 50 steps north of the east quarter post of Section 15. About 600 paces north of this quarter post and 50 paces west is some basic tufaceous slate, not certainly in place, however, which certainly belongs somewhere in the Huronian, and may, like the Clarksburg formation, represent volcanic activity extending into the neo-Huronian. These rocks are often massive, thick-bedded, yellow and brown and granular like limestone, and the iron enrichment can be seen working in on joints and cracks as well as along bedding planes. Again the rock is better bedded and more slaty, and often the whole rock is so replaced that only a powdery mass of soft ore remains.

In this series especially, Irving and Van Hise developed the theory of the formation of iron ore bodies by concentration of water working down along troughs made by some underlying impervious bed and some dike or fault cutting across the formation. In Huronian and earlier time there were in this region great outcroppings of basic lavas, containing much iron. The iron has found its way, either immediately as iron chlorides and sulphates to the ocean (as in the Rio Tinto) or slowly as these lavas and ashes decayed, were eroded and leached. In many cases they were precipitated in the ocean as cherty iron carbonate, or as greenalite or glauconite, but when these rocks were elevated above the surface of the sea again and tilted, downward working waters once more began their assorting work. This is of two kinds, collecting the iron from elsewhere and concentrating it in the ore body, or secondly removing other materials so as to leave the iron ore as a residuum.

Careful examination makes it clear that in the ore bodies both actions have taken place. Iron has been introduced along the cracks and on the other hand silica has been leached out. Pebbles of the iron ore in the conglomerates near the mouth of the Black River make it clear that the action had gone far before the close of Keweenawan time.

The deeper mines from Hurley to Sunday Lake are encountering waters rich in calcium chloride. The study of the distribution of such waters may show something regarding the underground currents. The

Colby pit seems to lie between the foot wall dipping 67° to N. 16° W. and a dike dipping 50° to S. 40° E.

The thickness of the Bijiki (Ironwood) we assume as ........................................................................ 800 feet. The line between it and the overlying slates is not apparent here. On the Marquette range the formation is not over 200-300 feet thick.

(c) The Goodrich (Palms) formation.

This is a series of green and red banded slates (like the slates of Rome, Georgia says Hayes), with a marked conglomerate base. There appears to be fine grained green tufaceous material, which reminds one of the Clarksburg and other marked volcanic centers that were in activity at about this time. The marked conglomerate base is well marked just south of the road and extending to about 100 north and over 328 west of the east quarter post of Section 15, 47 N., R. 46 W. This exposure is described and figured by Irving and Van Hise, p. 147. Here it laps directly upon the granite, and contains boulders of granite with pebbles of schistose dikes, jaspilite and dolomite, which bear witness to the earlier Huronian formations here absent.

Van Hise describes many thin sections. There is a notable amount of chlorite. The thickness of this formation can be more accurately measured than the others. The present tendency is to sink the main working shafts down in it so that the ore may be completely mined out without disturbing the shaft. This is exposing it much better. The breadth of the exposure seems to increase slightly to the east and there appears to be a little discordance between the strikes of these slates at their contact with the granite, and of that of the iron ore bodies, N. 82° E., the latter bearing a little more north of east.[1]

Thickness ........................................ 350 to 400 feet.

Missing formations.

The *mio-Huronian* is the main iron formation of Ishpeming and Negaunee. It has been divided into three members:

(a) Siamo slate.
(b) Negaunee iron formation.
(c) Ajibik quartzite.

It is entirely absent here except perhaps in pebbles in this conglomerate.

The Mesnard or eo-Huronian series, has been divided into three formations in the Marquette range as follows:

(a) Wewe or Goose Lake slates.
(b) Kona dolomite (Bad limestone).
(c) Mesnard quartzite.

Of all this series the sole representatives if any are a few directly above the granite of alternate laminae of cherty layers with an arkose (a sandstone of granitic debris) which may represent the knife edge remnant. The Kona dolomite and Mesnard quartzite do, however, appear finely developed a little east on the S. E. quarter of Sec. 18, T. 47 N., R. 44 W.

---

[1] Strikes from N. 80° E. to N. 85° W. were noted, the latter on the Goodrich slates near the east quarter post of section 15, which may locally be affected by the Bessemer gap fault.

### *The Laurentian.*

The Animikie is then underlain by an older formation from which it is separated by a great unconformity.

This formation is mainly granite, cut by a lot of old schistose dark dikes which do not cut the Animikie. The rocks into which the granite intrudes are not found just at Bessemer, but are well exposed to the east at Sunday lake and to the west at Ironwood (the Keewatin or Greenstone schist series).

The granite is sometimes faintly gneissoid parallel to the course of the iron range.

About 50 paces S. 250 or 300 east of the west quarter post of Section 15, just south of Tilden No. 7 shaft an outcrop of medium grained granite, which shows a parallel structure dipping 47° to N. 40° W., partly indicated in the feldspar tablets which are 2 to 4 mm. across, partly by aplitic seams and joints. There are also joints parallel to the Bessemer gap faulting N. 10° 30° W. and nearly vertical, but dipping a little to the east. In another exposure back of the Tilden Mine there are also strings of basic enclosures parallel to N. 60° E. and nearly vertical veins of quartz either coarse or fine grained silica running 5° to 25° W., also another set dipping 56° to N. 50° E. From the Colby hill near the W. quarter post of Sec. 15, outcrops of granitic appearance may be seen off the south in many directions as far as the eye can see, though east and west of the hill are low gaps where there are no outcrops of granite or anything else so that there is room for some faulting in continuation of that affecting the copper-bearing rocks. The general strike of the northern limit of the granite from the Tilden to the Palms mine is N. 80° E. Crossing the gap to the hill near the Palms mine, we found a little north of the quarter post and some 400 paces west of the east line of Section 15, exposures of granite beginning again. The joints are as follows, just northwest of the quarter post:

Parallel to the Bessemer fault N. 25° W. with displacements of the east side, to the south a few mm.:

N. 30° W., dip almost vertical to W..

N. 10° W. curved with the east side thrown north.

Dip 60° to S. 40° E., parallel to many of the Keweenawan dikes.

Dip 45° to N. 10° W., parallel to the contact with the Goodrich conglomerate nearly. On this in one place, however, I found the dip to be 50° to N. 10° E., parallel to the dike in the granite.

There are a number of old dikes in the granite, schistose, and dipping 50° to 60° to N. 10° E. or west, which evidently record an epoch of intrusive activity older than the Animikie. The granite here is a little coarser than back of the Tilden, say 4-5 mm.

# INDEX.

A

Page
Agate.......... 444
Ajibik quartzite.......... 500
Apatite.......... 495
Area, Bessemer survey.......... 407
Arkose.......... 500
Ash bed rocks.......... 444, 486
Amygdaloid.......... 433, 443, 446, 447, 451, 454, 455, 456, 458, 459, 460, 462
Amygdaloid pebble, Outer Conglomerate.......... 428
Amygdaloidal tops.......... 429, 430, 431, 432, 434, 435, 436, 437, 438, 452, 453, 455, 459, 460, 461
Anderson, Axel, section trap dikes.......... 495
Andesitic rock.......... 497
Animikie, unconformity below.......... 498, 501
Augite crystals.......... 450, 460, 488, 489, 490, 495, 497
  grains of.......... 489, 496
  mottles.......... 443
  porphyrite.......... 454, 456, 457, 497
  syenite.......... 429

B

Bad River Gabbro (See gabbro).......... 456, 488
Basal sandstone.......... 460
Basement complex.......... 429, 501
Bayless, Mr., use of instruments.......... 406
Bench marks, Black River road.......... 414, 419
Bessemer, description of.......... 407
  dike.......... 496
  fault.......... 461, 464, 470, 501
  gabbro (See gabbro).......... 487
Bessemer Gap.......... 409, 455, 457, 459, 460, 464, 469, 472, 496
Bessemer, hills near.......... 420
Bessemer Junction.......... 407
Bessemer ridges.......... 408, 409, 410, 420, 457, 459, 460, 464, 466, 467, 468, 469, 472, 473, 477
Bessemer, survey of road from.......... 405
Bijiki formation.......... 499
Black River, description.......... 408, 409, 410, 419, 421
  formations along.......... 421, 423, 424, 425
  fault.......... 449, 468
  gage.......... 481
Black River Highlands.......... 409, 410, 445, 446, 447, 449, 474, 475, 477
Black River, mouth of, distance to Bessemer.......... 419
  road.......... 405, 409, 414
  runoff.......... 478

C

Calcite.......... 430–432, 434–437, 442
Calumet, Lake Shore trap at.......... 486
Chippewa felsite.......... 408–410, 433, 438–443, 447, 453–455, 484, 486
Chippewa Hill.......... 420, 439, 440–444, 446, 449, 475, 477, 480
Chippewa Mining Co.......... 443, 475
Chlorite.......... 430–432, 434, 435, 437, 442, 451, 457, 459, 460, 500
City Creek.......... 478
Clarksburg formation.......... 499, 500

Page.
Colby Hill ........ 471
Colby Mine, dike at ........ 470, 496
Conglomerate ........ 430, 432–434, 436, 438, 443, 444, 467, 476
  Lower Keweenawan ........ 421
"Conglomerate Ridge," Bessemer region ........ 409, 420, 425, 439, 476, 477
Contact, Upper and Lower Keweenawan ........ 421
Copper ........ 442, 443, 447
Cora's Peak (Knob) ........ 494–496
Correlations, Bessemer and Black River region ........ 483
Côté, J. G., Bessemer party ........ 405, 481
County farm ........ 472
Court house to North Bessemer ........ 419
Coxey Creek, runoff ........ 478
Coxey spring ........ 480

D
Daly, R. A., Moyie sill ........ 490
Density of Keweenawan rocks ........ 485
Diabase dikes ........ 488, 489, 491, 494, 495, 496
Dip faults ........ 435, 436, 464, 470
Dip fault formations ........ 422–425, 430, 432, 437, 443, 446, 457, 460, 461, 499
  joints ........ 431, 436, 440, 469, 501
Dip, Keweenawan dikes ........ 494
Discharge, Black River ........ 482

E
Eagle River ........ 486
"East Branch" Black River ........ 409
Effusives, Lowest Keweenawan ........ 457
Eight Mile Creek, distance to Bessemer ........ 419
  farm land near ........ 474
  runoff ........ 479
Eo-Huronian series ........ 500
Epidote ........ 442, 444, 447, 448, 453
Eruptives, Lower Keweenawan ........ 421

F
Faults ........ 424, 435–437, 446, 449, 450, 453, 455, 461, 464–470, 501
Fault breccia ........ 467
Faulting, pre-Keweenawan ........ 469
Feldspar ........ 489, 490, 495–497
  fibers ........ 496
  porphyry ........ 450
Felsite ........ 432, 438–440, 442, 443, 451, 453–455, 461, 464, 466, 468, 475, 487
Felsite hill (See Chippewa Hill) ........ 408, 410
Felsite, Lower Keweenawan ........ 421, 429
Felsite pebbles, Outer Conglomerate ........ 428
Fournier, Mr., hunting camp ........ 406

G
Gabbro, Bad River ........ 488–492, 494
  Lower Keweenawan ........ 421, 451, 456–458, 466, 469, 487
Gage, Black River ........ 481
Geologic column, Keweenawan ........ 421
Gogogagashugun river ........ 487, 488
Goodrich formation ........ 500
Goose Lake (Wewe) slates ........ 500
Gordon, W. C., Bessemer party ........ 405
Grain ........ 488–490, 492, 495
Granite ........ 429, 432, 488, 501
Graphite ........ 495
Graywacke ........ 429, 461, 496
Great Conglomerate ........ 438, 486
Greenstone schist series ........ 501

H Page.
Hancock, Nonesuch shale belt, west of 486
Hornblende 495
Houghton county 486
Hubbard, L. L., Little Montreal River 487
Huron Mountains, equilibrium with Lake Superior 485

I
Iddingsite 495
Ilmenite 495
Intrusive sill 488
Iron formation 429
    dikes 496
Ironwood 407, 460, 477, 501
    formation 499
Irving, R. D., (see also Van Hise) 422, 429, 430, 438–440, 450, 451, 461, 469, 483, 488, 498, 499, 500
Ishpeming, mio-Huronian 500
Isle Royale 486

J
Jasper 429, 432

K
Kearsarge Lode 487
Keewatin series 501
Keweenawan, Black River 421
    cross section of 405
    dikes 494
    faults 464
    pebbles from 429
    thickness of 421, 483, 485
    time 461
    unconformity below 498
Kona dolomite 500

L
Labradorite 488, 494
    porphyrite 429, 432, 451, 452, 454, 455, 457, 459, 461, 462, 464, 466, 468, 469, 484, 487, 497, 498
Lake Gogebic 487
"Lake Hill" elevation above Lake Superior 419
Lake Shore trap 421, 429–433, 461, 486
Lake Superior, bench marks 419
    Outer Conglomerate near 425
    reason for basin of 486
    value of land near 477
Lake terraces, near Bessemer 409
Lane, A. C., Bessemer party 405, 481
Laumonite 430–432, 434–436, 451, 452
Laurentian 429, 501
Leveling, Black River area 419
Lighthouse Point (Marquette) dike 490, 494, 497
Little Montreal River 487
Lower Keweenawan, contracts and thickness 421
    time break above 463

M
Maple Creek, farm land on 476
    fault 468
    Nonesuch formation 423, 424
    Outer Conglomerate 425, 426
    runoff 478
Markstrum, Mr., hunting camps 406
Marquette diabase dike (See Lighthouse Point.)
Masse, Mr., hunting camp 406
Medford intrusion 489, 490
Melaphyre 410, 421, 430–435, 437, 438, 444–451, 457, 458, 461, 466, 497
    pebbles in Outer Conglomerate 428

Page.

Mesnard quartzite........ 500
Michigamme slate........ 498
Micropegmatite........ 488, 495
Mio-Huronian........ 500
Montreal River........ 409, 452
    Keweenawan sandstone on........ 422
    thickness of beds........ 483
Mount Houghton felsite........ 487
Moyie sill........ 490

N

Narrows, distance to Bessemer........ 419
Negaunee iron formation........ 500
Nonesuch formation on Black River........ 421–424, 429, 463, 468, 486
North Bessemer felsite........ 487
North Bessemer, hill, elevation........ 419, 420
North Bessemer, R. R. station........ 407
North Bessemer to Court House........ 419

O

"Old Peak," felsite hill (See Chippewa)........ 408, 475
Old Peak Mining Co........ 414, 419
Olivine........ 460, 495
Ontonagon, lodes, correlation........ 405, 486
Ophite........ 435, 436, 439, 441–444, 449–451, 454, 456, 461, 468, 486, 487
Orthoclase gabbros........ 488
Orthophyre?........ 486
Outer Conglomerate........ 421, 425, 429, 430, 432, 433, 463, 468

P

Palms formation........ 500
Peat bog........ 474, 475
Pebbles in Outer Conglomerate........ 427
Penokee-Gogebic series........ 461, 477, 498
Pine Creek........ 479
Pipe amygdules........ 461, 462
Porcupine Mountains, correlations........ 404
    volcanic focus........ 495
Porphyrites........ 451–453, 456, 468, 484, 488
Porphyritic crystals........ 496
Portage Lake lodes........ 405
Potato river, Chippewa felsite on........ 486
Powder Mill Creek........ 451–458, 462, 471, 478
    fault........ 466, 468, 469
Praysville porphyry........ 487
Pre-Keweenawan faulting........ 469
    rocks........ 498
Presque Isle river........ 409
    Chippewa felsite on........ 486
Pyroxenes........ 493

Q

Quartz........ 442, 459, 495
Quartz diabases........ 494
Quartzite........ 429
Quartzless porphyries........ 438, 451, 455

R

Redner, A. E........ 405
Rhyocrystals........ 496
Ripple-marks........ 461
Rupp, Geo., county surveyor........ 406

S

Sandstone Creek........ 449, 450, 479
Sandstone, Keweenawan........ 422, 436–439, 442, 443, 449, 460, 466, 468, 469, 486
Serpentine........ 488, 495
Sewer Creek........ 455, 456, 464, 471, 472, 478, 499
Siamo slate........ 500
Sill, intrusive........ 488, 494

Page.
Six Mile Creek .... 419, 479
  farm land at .... 474
Smith, Chas. E. .... 405
South Trap Range .... 487
Springs .... 480
Step faults (see faults) .... 464
Strike faults (see faults) .... 464
Sunday Lake .... 487, 498, 501
Surface character, Bessemer region .... 471
Surveys, data of .... 413
Swede Town Creek, Nonsuch shale belt .... 486

T

Talc .... 495
Temperature of augite formation .... 489
  gabbro .... 489
Terraces, lake .... 409
Thickness of Keweenawan .... 483, 485
Thomas' hunting camp, distance to Bessemer .... 419
Thompson, I. R., on faults .... 470
Tilden No. 7 shaft near granite .... 501
Titaniferous magnetite .... 489
Tobin porphyritic types .... 486
Tongues in lava flows .... 462
T. 47 N., R. 46 W., surface character .... 471
T. 48 N., R. 46 W., surface character .... 472
T. 49 N., R. 46 W., farm land .... 475
Transit line survey .... 413
Trap (See Melaphyre, amygdaloid, diabase) .... 451, 455, 462, 469, 487
Trap dike (See diabase) .... 495
Treuttner, L. H .... 406
Tyler formation .... 498, 499

U

Upper Keweenawan contact .... 421, 429, 463

V

Van Hise (See also Irving) .... 469, 491, 494, 496, 498, 499, 500
Vogtlin, J. W., gage readings .... 481
Volcanic agglomerate .... 456

W

Water power .... 480
West Yards diabase .... 495
Wewe slates .... 500
Wisconsin Central R. R Co. .... 470
Wright, L. L. .... 406

Y

Yale Mine, dike at .... 496

# CRATAEGUS

IN

# SOUTHERN MICHIGAN.

BY

C. S. SARGENT,
Director of the Arnold Arboretum.

---

Published by the State Board of Geological Survey as a part of the report for 1906 and
as a contribution to the Biological Survey of the State
authorized by Act 250, Session, 1905.

---

LANSING, MICHIGAN
WYNKOOP HALLENBECK CRAWFORD CO., STATE PRINTERS
1907

# LETTER OF TRANSMITTAL.

OFFICE OF THE STATE GEOLOGIST,
LANSING, MICHIGAN, March 21, 1907.

To the Honorable the Board of Geological Survey of the State of Michigan:

Hon. Fred M. Warner, President.
Hon. D. M. Ferry, Jr., Vice-President.
Hon. L. L. Wright, Secretary.

Gentlemen:—I herewith transmit for insertion in the report for 1906, as especially authorized by your Board by vote of March 1, 1907, the paper on Crataegus, an interesting apple genus, present in our State in unusual variety, and in a wealth of forms. This paper is prepared by the eminent authority, Prof. C. S. Sargent of Harvard University, and is recommended to us by Prof. C. A. Davis, Vice-President of the Botanical Section of the Academy of Science and by your Scientific Advisors, Prof. W. J. Beal of the Agricultural College and Prof. F. C. Newcombe of the University. The subject of plant variation is now attracting a great and wide scientific interest and in the hands of the men like that son of Michigan, Prof. L. H. Bailey, and Luther Burbank, is proving of great practical value as well.

To one point I would call attention. The farther knowledge of this group depends, as the author says, on study at different times of the year, that is, essentially upon local observers. No occasional visit of a specialist can do the work which belongs to our own citizens, who have had their eyes opened to observe the nature around them.

Very respectfully,
ALFRED C. LANE,
State Geologist.

# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

---

| | Page |
|---|---|
| Introduction | 515 |
| Synopsis | 517 |
| C. attenuata | 518 |
| farwelli | 519 |
| punctata | 520 |
| nitidula | 521 |
| compacta | 522 |
| tenax | 522 |
| incerta | 523 |
| perampla | 525 |
| horridula | 526 |
| sitiens | 526 |
| parvula | 527 |
| ater | 528 |
| immanis | 529 |
| latisepala | 529 |
| glareosa | 530 |
| bellula | 531 |
| prona | 532 |
| opulens | 533 |
| filipes | 534 |
| allecta | 534 |
| gravis | 535 |
| glaucophylla | 536 |
| otiosa | 537 |
| streeterae | 538 |
| retrusa | 539 |
| uber | 539 |
| merita | 540 |
| perlaeta | 541 |
| taetrica | 541 |
| asperata | 542 |
| mollis | 543 |
| nutans | 544 |
| mollipes | 545 |
| sera | 546 |
| ellwangeriana | 546 |
| miranda | 547 |
| lenta | 548 |
| pura | 549 |
| caesa | 550 |
| pringlei | 551 |
| wheeleri | 552 |
| pusilla | 553 |
| bealii | 553 |
| flavida | 554 |
| dodgei | 555 |
| urbana | 556 |
| coleae | 557 |
| honesta | 558 |
| pinguis | 559 |
| tomentosa | 560 |
| pubifolia | 561 |
| structilis | 562 |
| flammea | 563 |
| gemmosa | 563 |
| michiganensis | 564 |

# CRATAEGUS IN SOUTHERN MICHIGAN.

BY C. S. SARGENT.

In the following paper I have attempted to give an account of the species of Crataegus that are now known to occur in the southern part of the State in the hope that its publication, by calling attention to the richness of the Michigan flora in the plants of this genus, may encourage its more general study.

Southern Michigan forms the western extension of what is perhaps the richest Crataegus region in the world; certainly in no other part of the world where the genus has been at all carefully studied are there so many species as in the territory extending from the valley of the Genesee River in New York, up both banks of the Niagara River and through southern Ontario into southern Michigan, and nowhere are there more distinct or beautiful species.

Of the genus as it occurs in Michigan little is yet known. It has been carefully and systematically collected only on Belle Isle in the Detroit River by Mr. O. A. Farwell, in St. Clair county by Mr. C. K. Dodge, and in the neighborhood of Grand Rapids by Miss E. J. Cole. It is now possible, however, to distinguish fifty-five species and of these twenty-five are now first described. Eighteen others, briefly described by Ashe from St. Clair county, are also described in this paper from material and notes furnished me by Mr. Dodge. All the St. Clair county species described by Ashe have now been identified with the exception of *C. passens*, collected at Port Huron, and probably one of the *Flabellatae*, *C. fallax*, from "rocky hills near Port Huron," and *C. borealis* without other locality than "Michigan." The latter species is given in Beal's Michigan Flora, 1904, "St. Clair Co., W. W. Ashe, Keweenaw Co., O. A. Farwell."

In Beal's Michigan Flora of 1904, the following species of Crataegus, besides those mentioned, reported as occurring in Southern Michigan by various collectors, have not been seen from the State by the writer.

*C. acutiloba*, Sargent, Detroit, O. A. Farwell.
*C. altrix*, Ashe, Detroit, O. A. Farwell.
*C. coccinea*, L. common throughout.
*C. Crus-galli*, L. common throughout.
*C. decans*, Ashe, Detroit, O. A. Farwell.
*C. filipes*, Ashe, St. Clair Co., W. W. Ashe.
*C. macrantha*, Lodd, common throughout.
*C. nuperia*, Ashe, Detroit, O. A. Farwell.
*C. obtecta*, Ashe, Detroit, St. Clair Co., W. W. Ashe.
*C. onusta*, Ashe, St. Clair Co., W. W. Ashe.
*C. pastorum*, Sargent, Detroit, O. A. Farwell.

*C. prunifolia* (Marsh.), Pers., Detroit, O. A. Farwell.

*C. pubipes,* Ashe, St. Clair Co., W. W. Ashe.

*C. redolans*, Ashe, Detroit, O. A. Farwell.

*C. rotundifolia* (Ehrh.) Borck. Grand Rapids; Island Lake, C. F. Wheeler.

*C. virella,* Ashe, St. Clair Co., W. W. Ashe.

Judging from the material which I have seen from other parts of the lower peninsula and which is too incomplete for critical study, it seems probable that there are still in the southern part of the State a large number of unnamed species, and when these are all known it will not be surprising if the flora of Michigan is found to contain a much larger number of species than are now described.

The collection of Crataegus presents no practical difficulty but it requires care and patience if the material is to be really useful for study. As plants of the same species often appear so different in the spring and autumn, it is necessary to mark with a number written on a permanent label or cut into the bark each plant from which specimens are taken, so that there can be no mistake in securing flowering and fruiting specimens from the same individual. When the flowers are gathered the stamens and styles should be counted and the average number in several flowers recorded in the field notebook. The average diameter of the expanded flowers should also be recorded, and special care should be taken to note carefully the color of the anthers, that is, whether dark or light rose color, pink, or pale yellow. The color of the anthers is important as furnishing a good character for the determination of species; this soon fades and it is entirely lost in drying. The color in some specimens changes even before the flowers fade, and the safest way is to take notes on the color of the anthers before the petals expand. The autumn specimens should be gathered when the fruit is ripe or nearly ripe. Specimens gathered in summer with only partly grown fruit are absolutely worthless for the determination of species, and time spent in preparing such specimens is wasted except that they may record the existence of plants needing further investigation. When the fruiting specimen is collected the shape, size (length and diameter), and the color of the fruit should be noted, and whether it is pruinose or not. Notes should be made also on the color of the flesh and on its character, whether succulent, dry or juicy, sweet or bitter. The field notes should give the date when the flowers and fruits are gathered, the size and habit of the plant, the character of the bark and the absence or presence of spines on the stems and large branches, the nature of the soil and situation where the plant grows, its abundance and such other information as cannot be obtained by the examination of the herbarium specimen. If these simple rules are followed no difficulty will be found in preparing specimens that can be used for the determination of species and the description of new ones, and the Michigan Academy of Sciences, through its members living in different parts of the State, can by organizing a systematic study of this interesting genus, make an important contribution to the knowledge of the North American flora.

SYNOPSIS OF THE NATURAL GROUPS OF THE SPECIES OF SOUTHERN MICHIGAN.

1. Nutlets without ventral cavities.

Petioles short, glandless or with occasional minute glands, leaves obovate to oblong, oval or rarely ovate, cuneate at the base; corymbs many-flowered (few-flowered in some species of *Punctatæ*); flesh of the fruit hard and dry.

Leaves coriaceous, dark green and shining above, usually serrate only above the middle, their veins thin except on vigorous shoots; fruit oblong to subglobose, not more than 1.5 cm. long; nutlets 1-3, generally 2, rounded or rarely acute at the ends, prominently ridged on the back.
1. Crus-galli.

Leaves thin to subcoriaceous, acute or occasionally rounded at the apex, their veins prominent; fruit short-oblong to obovate, often conspicuously punctate, 1-1.2 cm. in diameter or in No. 1 up to 2.5 cm. in diameter; nutlets 2-5, prominently ridged on the back. 2. Punctatæ.

Petioles elongated, usually slender, generally glandular only toward the apex.

Leaves mostly broad at the base.

Corymbs many-flowered (few-flowered in some species of *Pruinosæ*).

Fruit subglobose to short-oblong or obovate, red or green, often slightly 5-angled, generally pruinose, especially during the summer; fruit less than 2 cm. in diameter; flesh dry and hard; leaves thin to subcoriaceous, sometimes cuneate.
3. Pruinosæ.

Fruit short-oblong to obovate, red or scarlet, mostly lustrous, usually 1-1.5 cm. long; flesh succulent; anthers rose color or pink; leaves thin, sometimes cuneate at the base. 4. Tenuifoliæ.

Fruit subglobose to obovate or short-oblong, scarlet, often pubescent, 1.5-2 cm. long; flesh thick, soft and edible; nutlets pointed at the ends, usually slightly ridged; leaves thin, broad, cuneate or rounded or cordate at the base, more or less pubescent below.
5. Molles.

Fruit short-oblong to obovate, 1.5-2 cm. long, scarlet, lustrous; flesh succulent; nutlets 3-5, occasionally ridged on the back; anthers rose color; leaves large, thin, oblong, more or less acutely lobed.
6. Flabellatæ.

Leaves cuneate at the base (rarely rounded in *Intricatæ* and *Anomalæ*), thin to subcoriaceous.

Corymbs usually few-flowered; fruit short-oblong to obovate, 1-1.5 cm. long, greenish yellow or red; flesh dry and hard; nutlets 3-5, rounded at the ends, generally conspicuously ridged on the back.
7. Intricatæ.

Corymbs many or few-flowered; fruit subglobose, usually 9-12 mm. in diameter; flesh dry and mealy; leaves dark green and lustrous on the upper surface.
8. Coccineæ.

Corymbs usually many-flowered; fruit subglobose to short-oblong or obovate, generally 1-1.4 cm. long; nutlets sometimes furnished with obscure ventral depressions; leaves thick to subcoriaceous, usually scabrate above while young; anthers rose color or pink.
9. Anomalæ.

2. Nutlets with longitudinal cavities on their ventral faces; fruit pyriform to subglobose to short-oblong, 1-1.5 cm. in diameter, lustrous, orange or scarlet; flesh becoming succulent at maturity; nutlets 2 or 3, usually obtuse at the ends, prominently ridged on the back. 10. Tomentosæ.

### I. CRUS-GALLI.

Pedicels glabrous; anthers usually 10-12, rarely to 18; fruit short-oblong. 1. C. attenuata.

Pedicels villose; stamens 8-10; fruit oval to slightly obovate.
2. C. Farwellii.

1. **Crataegus attenuata**, Ashe, *Jour. Elisha Mitchell Sci. Soc.* xix, 30 (1903).

Glabrous, with the exception of a few hairs on the upper side of the midribs of the young leaves. Leaves obovate-cuneiform, rounded, acute or acuminate at the apex, gradually narrowed to the entire base, and finely serrate above the middle, with incurved glandular teeth; more than half grown when the flowers open early in June and then dark yellow-green and lustrous above and pale below, and at maturity thin and firm to subcoriaceous, dark green and very lustrous on the upper surface, light yellow-green on the lower surface, 3-5 cm. long and 2-2.5 cm. wide, with slender midribs, and thin primary veins without the parenchyma; petioles slender, narrowly wing-margined nearly to the middle, 6-10 mm. long; leaves on vigorous shoots oblong-obovate to oval, acuminate, concave-cuneate at the base, coarsely serrate, 6-7 cm. long and 4-4.5 cm. wide, with stout midribs, conspicuous primary veins, and stout broadly winged petioles. Flowers 1.3-1.5 cm. in diameter, on long slender pedicels, in wide lax mostly 15-20-flowered corymbs, the long lower peduncles from the axils of upper leaves; calyx-tube narrowly obconic, the lobes slender, acuminate, entire or occasionally minutely dentate, reflexed after anthesis; stamens 10-18, usually 10-12; anthers pink; styles 2 or 3. Fruit ripening early in October and persistent until after the leaves have fallen, on slender drooping pedicels, in many-fruited clusters, short-oblong, full and rounded at the ends, dull red mottled with green, 1.2-1.4 cm. in length; calyx little enlarged, with a deep narrow cavity, and erect and incurved usually persistent lobes; flesh thin, green and hard; nutlets 2 or 3, narrowed and rounded at the ends or acute at the apex, ridged on the back, with a broad high grooved ridge, 8-9 mm. long and 4-4.5 mm. wide.

A tree sometimes 5-6 m. high, with a trunk occasionally 3 dm. in diameter, covered with dark scaly bark, large spreading branches forming a round-topped head, and stout slightly zigzag branchlets light orange-red and marked by pale lenticels when they first appear, becoming light chestnut-brown and lustrous or dull orange-brown on vigorous sterile shoots in their first season and dark gray-brown the following year, and armed with numerous stout, nearly straight chestnut-brown shining spines 4.5-6 cm. long.

Near St. Clair, St. Clair County, *C. K. Dodge* (No. 74 type tree), May 29, 1903, May 29 and October 2, 1904, October 11, 1905; low sandy soil near the shores of the St. Clair River at Port Huron, *C. K. Dodge* (No. 42), May 30 and October 2, 1903, also Nos. 23, 30 and 38; Belle Isle, Detroit, *O. A. Farwell,* May 27 and October 10, 1903; Agricultural College, *W. J. Beal* (Nos. 8 and 13), May 28, 1900; Grand Rapids, *E. J. Cole* (Nos. 19 and 16), 1901.

*Crataegus attenuata,* which differs from the typical *Crataegus Crus-galli* L. in the primary veins being distinctly without the parenchyma and in the nutlets narrowed at the ends, appears to be the common and most generally distributed species of this group in southern Michigan. Nos. 154 and 157, shrubby plants collected by Miss Cole at Grand Rapids, with small thicker leaves, with prominent veins, and with obtuse nutlets, seem to be different from the typical *Crataegus attenuata* as it grows at St. Clair and may represent a different species.

2. **Crataegus Farwelli**, n. sp.

Leaves oblong-obovate, rounded or acute at the apex, gradually narrowed to the slender acute entire base, and finely serrate above with straight or incurved glandular teeth; more than half-grown when the flowers open at the end of May and then thin, yellow-green, lustrous and sparingly villose above and paler and glabrous below, and at maturity thin, glabrous, dark yellow-green and very lustrous on the upper surface, pale bluish green on the lower surface, 4-6.5 cm. long and 2-2.5 cm. wide, with thin midribs and slender primary veins without the parenchyma; petioles slender, narrowly wing-margined at the apex, slightly hairy along the upper side, becoming glabrous, 1-1.4 cm. in length; leaves on vigorous shoots subcoriaceous, acuminate, coarsely serrate, occasionally slightly lobed above the middle, often 7-8 cm. long and 5-6 cm. wide, with stout midribs, thick primary veins, and stout broadly winged petioles. Flowers 1.1-1.2 cm. in diameter, on slender villose pedicels, in wide lax mostly 15-20-flowered slightly hairy corymbs, the lower peduncles from the axils of upper leaves; calyx-tube narrowly obconic, glabrous, the lobes slender, elongated, acuminate, entire or occasionally minutely dentate, glabrous on the outer, slightly hairy on the inner surface, reflexed after anthesis; stamens 8-10; anthers pink; styles 1-3. Fruit ripening the middle of October, on slender hairy reddish pedicels, in few-fruited spreading clusters, oval to slightly obovate, gradually narrowed to the rounded ends, crimson, lustrous, 1.2-1.3 cm. long, 9-10 mm. in diameter; calyx very small, with a shallow narrow cavity and reflexed closely appressed lobes; flesh thick, yellow, dry and mealy; nutlets usually 1 or 2, full and rounded at the ends, only slightly ridged on the back, 8-9 mm. long and 4-4.5 mm. wide, or when only one 6-7 mm. in diameter.

A tree with a stout trunk occasionally 3 dm. in diameter, covered like the stout erect secondary stems with gray-brown bark broken into short oblong plate-like scales, ascending branches forming a hemispherical head, and slender, nearly straight glabrous branchlets, dark orange color and marked by pale lenticels when they first appear, becoming dark orange-brown and lustrous in their first season and dark gray-brown the following year, and armed with stout slightly curved dark red-brown ultimately ashy gray spines 3-6 cm. long, persistent, becoming branched and often 1.5 dm. in length on old branches sometimes 6 or 7 m. high.

Belle Isle, Detroit; common; *O. A. Farwell* (No. 28 type), May 29 and October 10, 1903, (No. 7) May and September, 1901, May, 1902, May 29 and October 10, 1903.

This handsome tree is named for Mr. O. A. Farwell of Detroit, whose persistent and careful collecting in various parts of the State, and critical study of the flora about Detroit, has added much to the knowledge of the plants of the regions in which he has worked.

### II. PUNCTATAE.

Anthers rose color or pink (sometimes yellow in No. 1).
  Stamens 20.
    Flowers in broad many-flowered corymbs; pedicels and lower surface of mature leaves villose. 1. C. punctata.
    Flowers in few-flowered corymbs; pedicels and mature leaves glabrous or nearly glabrous; fruit short-oblong.
      Anthers dark rose color; leaves obovate-cuneate. 2. C. nitidula.
      Anthers pink; leaves rhombic to ovate. 3. C. compacta.
  Stamens 10-20; leaves oblong-obovate. 4. C. tenax.
  Stamens 10; leaves oval to obovate. 5. C. incerta.

1. **Crataegus punctata,** Jacquin, *Hort. Vind.* i. 10, t. 38 (1770).—Sargent, *Silva N. Am.* iv. 103, t. 184; *Proc. Rochester Acad. Sci.* iv. 110; *Man.* 89, f. 308; *Proc. Phil. Acad. Sci.* 1905, 583.

Leaves obovate, pointed or rounded at the apex, gradually narrowed to the cuneate entire base, sharply often doubly serrate above the middle with minute teeth, and sometimes, especially on vigorous shoots, more or less incisely lobed; when they unfold thickly covered below with pale hairs and pilose above, about half-grown when the flowers open from the middle of May until early in June and then pilose on the midribs and veins below and nearly glabrous above, and at maturity thick and firm, pale gray-green and glabrous on the upper surface, more or less villose on the lower surface, 5-7.5 cm. long and 2-4 cm. wide, and on vigorous shoots sometimes 8.10 cm. long and 4-5 cm. wide, with broad prominent midribs and primary veins deeply impressed on the upper surface of the leaf, turning bright orange or orange and scarlet in the autumn; petioles stout, wing-margined at the apex, at first villose or tomentose, becoming pubescent or glabrous, 6-12 mm. in length. Flowers 1.2-1.6 cm. in diameter, in broad tomentose or villose compound many-flowered corymbs; calyx-tube narrowly obconic, villose or tomentose, the lobes narrow, acuminate, nearly entire or minutely glandular-serrate, glabrous on the outer, villose on the inner surface; stamens 20; anthers rose color or yellow; styles 4 or 5, surrounded at the base by conspicuous tufts of white hairs. Fruit ripening and falling in October, on stout stems, in many-fruited drooping clusters, short-oblong to subglobose, usually truncate at the ends, dull red or sometimes bright yellow, the fruit usually agreeing in color with the anthers, marked by numerous small white dots, 1.3-2.5 cm. long; calyx little enlarged with a deep narrow cavity, and small closely appressed lobes; flesh thin and dry; nutlets 4 or 5, gradually narrowed and rounded at the ends; rounded and slightly ridged on the back; 7-8 mm. long and 4-4.5 mm. wide.

A tree 7-10 m. high, with a trunk occasionally 3 dm. in diameter, stout branches spreading nearly at right angles and forming a broad open irregular head, and stout branchlets coated when they first appear with pale deciduous pubescence, becoming light orange-brown or ashy gray, and armed with slender straight light orange-brown or gray spines 5-7.5 cm. long, long-persistent and compound on old stems and branches.

Southern Michigan, common; near Port Huron, *C. K. Dodge* (No. 3), May 29 and Oct. 24, 1903; (No. 92), June 1, 1905; Jackson County, *S. H.* and *D. R. Camp* (No. 6), May 22 and Sept. 16, 1902; also from the valley of the Chateaugay River, Quebec, through western New England and along the Appalachian Mountains to northern Georgia and Tennessee, and through New York, Ohio and southern Michigan to Illinois.

2. **Crataegus nitidula**, n. sp.

Leaves obovate-cuneate, acute or acuminate at the apex, gradually narrowed to the entire base, sharply doubly serrate above, with straight glandular teeth, and slightly divided usually only above the middle into 4 or 5 broad acuminate lobes; more than half-grown when the flowers open about the 20th of May and then thin, yellow-green, covered above by short soft white hairs, and slightly villose along the midribs and veins below, and at maturity thin but firm in texture, dark green, lustrous and glabrous on the upper surface, pale and nearly glabrous on the lower surface, 5-5.5 cm. long and 3-4 cm. wide, with thin yellow midribs and primary veins; petioles slender, wing-margined at the apex, villose on the upper side, 2-3 cm. in length. Flowers 1.2-1.3 cm. in diameter, on slender glabrous pedicels, in small mostly 5-7-flowered corymbs, the lower peduncles from the axils of upper leaves; calyx-tube narrowly obconic, glabrous, the lobes slender, acuminate, finely glandular-serrate, glabrous, reflexed after anthesis; stamens 20; anthers dark rose color; styles 3-5, surrounded at the base by a narrow ring of pale tomentum. Fruit ripening about the 1st of October and persistent until the end of the month, on slender erect or spreading stalks, in few-fruited clusters, short-oblong, full and rounded at the apex, abruptly narrowed at the base, dark yellow blotched with red, marked by dark dots, 1-1.2 cm. long and nearly as broad; calyx only slightly enlarged, with a wide shallow cavity, and spreading appressed usually persistent lobes; flesh thin, yellow-green; nutlets 3-5, thin and rounded at the ends, rounded and obscurely grooved on the back, 7-7.5 mm. long and about 5 mm. wide.

An arborescent shrub 6-7 cm. high, with numerous small stems spreading into broad thickets, small ascending branches, and slender nearly straight glabrous branchlets dark orange-green and marked by numerous pale lenticels when they first appear, becoming light orange-brown and lustrous in their first season and dull reddish brown the following year, and armed with many stout or slender straight or slightly curved purplish shining spines 2.5-4 cm. long, and very numerous and persistent on old stems.

Fields near St. Clair, St. Clair County, *C. K. Dodge* (No. 69 type), May 27 and Sept. 24, 1902, May 21 and Sept. 24, 1903, *C. K. Dodge* and *C. S. Sargent,* Sept., 1906.

3. **Crataegus compacta**, n. sp.

Glabrous with the exception of a few caducous hairs on the upper side of the unfolding leaves. Leaves rhombic to ovate or rarely to obovate, acuminate, gradually narrowed and entire at the base, finely doubly serrate above, with incurved glandular teeth, and slightly divided above the middle into 2 or 3 pairs of broad acuminate lobes; bright bronze-red when they unfold, about half-grown when the flowers open during the last week of May and then membranaceous and yellow-green, and at maturity thick, very smooth, bluish-green on the upper surface and pale blue-green on the lower surface, 4-5.5 cm. long and 3-3.5 cm. wide, with thin midribs and primary veins; petioles slender, wing-margined at the apex, glabrous while young, with many minute deciduous red glands, 2-3 cm. in length; stipules linear, elongated, glandular, fading brown, caducous; leaves on vigorous shoot sometimes broadly ovate and rounded at the base, coarsely serrate and more deeply lobed. Flowers 1.5 cm. in diameter, on slender glabrous pedicels, in very compact usually 6-8-flowered corymbs, with linear glandular caducous bracts and bractlets; calyx-tube narrowly obconic, the lobes gradually narrowed from wide bases, entire or occasionally sparingly glandular, acuminate and red at the glandular apex, reflexed after anthesis; stamens 18-20; filaments usually persistent on the ripe fruit; anthers small, pink; styles 3-5. Fruit ripening at the end of September, on slender reddish pedicels, in few-fruited clusters, short-oblong, orange-red, lustrous, marked by large pale dots, 1-1.2 cm. long and 9-10 mm. wide; calyx little enlarged, with a deep narrow cavity and spreading and reflexed lobes, their tips usually deciduous from the ripe fruit; flesh thin, yellow-green, dry and mealy; nutlets 3-5, full and rounded at the base, narrowed and often acute at the apex, ridged on the back, with a broad grooved ridge, 6-7 mm. long and about 5 mm. wide.

An arborescent shrub sometimes 3 m. high, with slender stems covered with pale gray bark, small ascending branches, forming a narrow pyramidal head, and slender nearly straight branchlets, light orange-green and marked by numerous oblong pale lenticels when they first appear, becoming bright red-brown or orange-brown and lustrous in their first season and dull gray-brown the following year, and armed with few slender straight purplish ultimately ashy gray spines 2.5-3 cm. long.

Very common in dry sandy soil near Atkins Station, northwest of Port Huron, *C. K. Dodge* (No. 26), June 3 and Sept. 17, 1902, May 24 and Oct. 20, 1903; ten miles northwest of Port Huron (No. 130), Sept. 21, 1905, May 29, 1906; St. Clair (No. 129), Sept. 19, 1905; also near London, Ontario, where the type plants occur.

4. **Crataegus tenax**, Ashe, *Jour. Elisha Mitchell Sci. Soc.* xviii. 21 (1902).

Leaves oblong-obovate, short-pointed and acute at the apex, gradually narrowed to the slender entire base, and finely serrate above, with straight or incurved gladular teeth; more than half grown when the flowers open about the first of June and then thin, yellow-green and sparingly hairy along the midribs above and nearly glabrous below, and at maturity thin but firm in texture, glabrous, dark yellow-green and lustrous on the upper surface, pale and lustrous on the lower surface, 4-6 cm. long and 2-3 cm. wide, with prominent slender midribs and 4 or 5 pairs of thin primary veins; petioles slender, wing-margined to below the middle, slightly hairy on the upper side while young, soon glabrous, often rose color in the autumn, 8-10 mm. in length; leaves on vigorous shoots rhombic to oval, long-pointed at the apex, more coarsely serrate, usually divided above the middle into 3 or 4 pairs of short acuminate spreading lobes, often 7-9 cm. long and 4-5 cm. wide, with thick prominent midribs and veins, and stout broadly winged rose-colored petioles. Flowers 1.8-2 cm. in diameter, on long slender glabrous pedicels, in wide lax usually 10-15-flowered corymbs; calyx-tube narrowly obconic, glabrous, the lobes slender, acuminate, mostly entire, glabrous on the outer, villose-pubescent on the inner surface, reflexed after anthesis; stamens 18-20, or occasionally only 10-15; anthers rose color; styles 2 or 3, surrounded at the base by a narrow ring of pale tomentum. Fruit ripening late in September and long persistent, on slender drooping pedicels, in many-fruited clusters, short-oblong, full and rounded at the ends, or slightly obovate, crimson, lustrous, marked by numerous large pale dots, 1.5-1.6 cm. long and 1.4-1.5 cm. in diameter; calyx little enlarged, with a wide deep cavity and slender spreading or appressed usually persistent lobes; flesh thick, yellow-green, dry and mealy; nutlets 2 or 3, usually 3, full and rounded at the ends, or, when 3, narrowed at the ends, ridged on the back, with a wide deeply grooved ridge, 8-9 mm. long and about 5 mm. wide.

An arborescent shrub 5-7 m. high, with numerous stout stems covered with dark brown scaly bark, spreading branches forming a round-topped symmetrical head, and stout slightly zigzag branchlets dark orange-green and slightly hairy when they first appear, becoming orange color, lustrous and nearly glabrous in their first season and light gray-brown the following year, and armed with many nearly straight orange-brown ultimately dark gray spines 5-6 cm. long.

Port Huron, *C. K. Dodge* (No. 44), June 3 and Sept. 18, 1902, June 3 and Oct. 18, 1903, Sept. 24, 1905. (No. 114), Sept. 25, 1904, June 11 and Sept. 22, 1905, (No. 144), Sept. 29, 1906, (No. 111), Oct. 2, 1904; also near London, Ontario.

5. **Crataegus incerta**, n. sp.

Leaves oval to obovate, acuminate, gradually narrowed to the concave-cuneate acuminate entire base, coarsely doubly serrate above, with straight glandular teeth, and slightly divided usually only above the middle into three or four pairs of small acuminate lobes; more than half grown when the flowers open about the 20th of May and then thin, glabrous with the exception of a few soft hairs on the upper side of the midribs, yellow-green above and pale bluish-green below, and at maturity thin but firm in texture, dark yellow-green, smooth and glabrous on the upper surface, pale bluish-green on the lower surface, 5-5.7 cm. long and 4-5 cm. wide, with slender yellow midribs, and thin primary veins extending obliquely to the points of the lobes; petioles slender, wing-margined at the apex, glabrous, 2-3 cm. in length; leaves on vigorous shoots abruptly cuneate at the base, more coarsely serrate, more deeply lobed and often 8-9 cm. long and 6-7 cm. wide, with stout petioles often winged to below the middle. Flowers 1.8-2 cm. in diameter, on slender glabrous pedicels, in narrow, mostly 7-10-flowered corymbs, with lanceolate to linear acuminate glandular caducous bracts and bractlets fading brown; calyx-tube narrowly obconic, glabrous, the lobes gradually narrowed from wide bases, acuminate, glandular-serrate, glabrous on the outer, sparingly villose on the inner surface, reflexed after anthesis; stamens 10; anthers dark rose color; styles 3 or 4, surrounded at the base by a narrow ring of pale tomentum. Fruit ripening in October, on short stout pedicels in few-fruited clusters, subglobose to short-oblong, rounded at the apex, rounded or truncate at the base, crimson, slightly pruinose, 1-1.1 cm. long and 8-10 mm. in diameter; calyx little enlarged, with a broad shallow cavity and spreading or erect lobes usually persistent on the ripe fruit; flesh green, dry and mealy; nutlets 3 or 4, narrowed and rounded at the ends, very prominently ridged on the back, with a broad rounded ridge, 7-8 mm. long and 5-5.5 mm. wide.

A tree 8-10 m. high with a tall stem often 1.5 dm. in diameter, and covered with dark scaly bark, stout ascending branches, forming an open irregular head, and slender glabrous branchlets light orange-yellow and marked by pale lenticels when they first appear, becoming light chestnut-brown and lustrous and marked with pale lenticles in their first season and dull red-brown and lustrous the following year, and armed with slender nearly straight purplish spines 2.5-3 cm. long, and very numerous and branched on old stems.

On bluffs of Black River ten miles northwest of Port Huron, *C. K. Dodge* (No. 84 type), May 23 and October 22, 1903, September 28, 1904.

### III. PRUINOSAE.

Stamens 20.
  Anthers rose color or pink.
    Leaves mostly rounded at the broad base.
      Leaves thick, usually longer than broad, blue-green; anthers pink; fruit short-oblong. 1. C. perampla.

      Leaves thin, usually not longer than broad; anthers dark rose color; fruit obovate.
        Leaves blue-green; flowers in 5-7-flowered corymbs; fruit green, pruinose, becoming dull red. 2. C. horridula.

        Leaves yellow-green; flowers in 3-5-flowered corymbs; fruit dull green blotched with black. 3. C. sitiens.

    Leaves cuneate at the base (sometimes rounded in No. 5).
      Fruit short-oblong to ovate or slightly obovate.
        Leaves thin, deeply lobed, yellow-green; anthers only slightly tinged with pink; fruit ovate to obovate. 4. C. parvula.

        Leaves thicker, only slightly lobed, dark blue-green; anthers rose color; fruit short-oblong. 5. C. ater.

Fruit depressed-globose, often broader than high; leaves thin, slightly lobed; anthers pink. 6. C. immanis.

Anthers pale yellow.

Fruit obovate, green, finally becoming crimson and lustrous; leaves subcoriaceous, dark blue-green. 7. C. latisepala.

Fruit subglobose to short-oblong, dull red; leaves thin, yellow-green. 8. C. glareosa.

Stamens 10 or less; anthers rose color or purple.

Young leaves smooth above.

Fruit subglobose, often broader than high, crimson, pruinose; leaves subcoriaceous, dull blue-green. 9. C. bellula.

Fruit obovate, dull orange-red, not pruinose; leaves thin, light yellow. 10. C. prona.

Young leaves scabrate above.

Leaves blue-green.

Fruit subglobose, often broader than high. 11. C. opulens.

Fruit obovate.

Leaves deeply divided into narrow acuminate spreading lobes. 12. C. filipes.

Leaves slightly lobed, with short broad lobes. 13. C. allecta.

Leaves yellow-green; fruit short-oblong. 14. C. gravis.

1. **Crataegus perampla**, n. sp.

Glabrous with the exception of a few soft caducous hairs on the upper surface of the young leaves. Leaves ovate, acuminate, rounded or truncate at the broad entire base, coarsely doubly serrate above, with straight glandular teeth, and slightly divided into 4 or 5 pairs of broad acuminate lateral lobes; not more than one-third grown when the flowers open from the middle to the 20th of May and then thin, yellow-green and almost glabrous, and at maturity thick to subcoriaceous, dull bluish green and lustrous on the upper surface, pale blue-green on the lower surface, 6-7 cm. long and 4.5-6.5 cm. wide, with stout midribs and 4 or 5 pairs of thin prominent primary veins; petioles stout, slightly wing-margined at the apex, glandular, 2.5-3 cm. in length. Flowers 2 to 2.2 cm. in diameter, on short stout pedicels, in compact mostly 5-7-flowered corymbs, with lanceolate often falcate rose-colored glandular bracts and bractlets often persistent until the flowers open, the lowest peduncle from the axil of an upper leaf; calyx-tube broadly obconic, the lobes gradually narrowed from wide bases, short, acuminate, entire or occasionally irregularly dentate, reflexed after anthesis; stamens 20; anthers pink; styles 4 or 5. Fruit ripening late in October after the leaves fall, on stout erect pedicels, in few-fruited clusters, short-oblong, full and rounded at the ends, dull red, pruinose, 1-1.2 cm. in diameter; calyx prominent with a short tube, a wide deep cavity, and spreading often persistent lobes dark red on the upper side below the middle; flesh thin, yellow-green, dry and hard; nutlets 4 or 5, narrowed at the ends, rounded at the base, acute at the apex, ridged on the back, with a low narrow ridge, 6.5-7 mm. long and about 5 mm. wide.

An arborescent shrub sometimes 6-7 m. high, with numerous stems covered with black scaly bark, and stout nearly straight branchlets, dark yellow-green marked by pale lenticels when they first appear, becoming bright chestnut-brown and lustrous in their first season and dull gray-brown the following year, and armed with stout nearly straight bright red-brown shining spines 3-4.5 cm. long.

Low moist clay soil near Grand Rapids, *E. J. Cole* (No. 76 type), May 18, 1901, September 20, 1902, May 17, 1903, September 19, 1904, *E. J. Cole* and *C. S. Sargent,* September 25, 1901.

2. **Crataegus horridula**, n. sp.

Glabrous. Leaves ovate, acuminate, rounded or occasionally cuneate at the base, finely doubly serrate, with straight or incurved glandular teeth, and divided into 4-6 pairs of short acuminate spreading lobes; more than half grown when the flowers open about the 20th of May and then thin, yellow-green, paler below than above, and at maturity thin but firm in texture, dark blue-green and lustrous on the upper surface, pale bluish green on the lower surface, 4-5 cm. long and 3.5-5 cm. wide, with thin yellow midribs and primary veins; petioles slender, slightly wing-margined at the apex, often glandular toward the apex, 2-2.5 cm. in length; leaves on vigorous shoots subcoriaceous, broadly ovate to suborbicular, rounded at the base, coarsely serrate, deeply lobed, often 5-6 cm. long and wide. Flowers 2-2.1 cm. in diameter, on stout pedicels, in compact mostly 5-7-flowered corymbs, the lowest peduncle from an axil of an upper leaf; calyx-tube broadly obconic, the lobes gradually narrowed from wide bases, slender, elongated, acuminate, entire or irregularly dentate, reflexed after anthesis; stamens 20; anthers dark rose color; styles 3-5, usually 4, surrounded at the base by few pale hairs. Fruit ripening late in October after the leaves have fallen, on stout erect or spreading red pedicels, in few-fruited clusters, obovate, full and rounded at the apex, abruptly narrowed at the base, green and pruinose when fully grown, finally becoming dull red, marked by large dark dots, 1-1.2 cm. long and about 1 cm. in diameter; calyx prominent, with a long tube, a very deep narrow cavity, and small spreading lobes dark red on the upper side below the middle and often deciduous from the ripe fruit; flesh thin, yellow-green, dry and hard; nutlets 3 or 4, gradually narrowed and rounded at the ends, ridged on the back, with a high narrow ridge, 7-7.5 mm. long and 5-5.5 mm. wide.

A shrub 2-3 m. high, with numerous intricately branched stems spreading into thickets, and stout zigzag branchlets light orange-green when they first appear, becoming light chestnut-brown, lustrous and marked by pale lenticels in their first season and dull gray-brown the following year, and armed with very numerous stout slightly curved purplish shining spines 3.5-6 cm. in length.

Near Grand Rapids, *E. J. Cole* (No. 138 type), May 21 and September 17, 1902, May 20, 1903, September 19, 1904, (No. 79), September 20, 1902, May 30, 1903, May 24, 1905.

3. **Crataegus sitiens**, Ashe, *Jour. Elisha Mitchell Sci. Soc.* xx, 8 (1904).

Glabrous with the exception of a few soft hairs on the upper surface of the young leaves and in the axils of their veins below. Leaves ovate, acute, rounded, cordate or abruptly cuneate at the broad entire base, sharply doubly serrate above, with straight glandular teeth, and deeply divided usually only above the middle into 4 or 5 pairs of narrow acuminate lobes; more than half grown when the flowers open about the 20th of May and then thin, nearly glabrous, dark yellow-green above and pale bluish green below, and at maturity very thin, dark yellow-green and glabrous on the upper surface, pale bluish green and still slightly villose below, 4-6 cm. long and broad, with thin yellow midribs and primary veins; petioles slender, slightly wing-margined at the apex, glandular, with minute occasional persistent glands, 2.5-3.5 cm. in length; leaves on vigorous shoots usually truncate or cordate at the base, more coarsely serrate, deeply lobed and often 6-7 cm. long and broad. Flowers 1.8-2 cm. in diameter, on long slender pedicels, in mostly 3-5-flowered corymbs, the lowest peduncle from the axil of an upper leaf; calyx-tube narrowly obconic, the lobes gradually narrowed from broad bases, slender, acuminate, minutely dentate or entire, reflexed after anthesis; stamens 20; filaments persistent on the fruit; anthers dark rose color. Fruit ripening the end of October, on slender erect pedicels, in 2 or 3-fruited clusters, broadly obovate, slightly narrowed to the rounded apex, abruptly narrowed at the base, dull green blotched with black, 1-1.2 cm. long, 8.5-9 cm. in diameter; calyx prominent, with a long tube, a wide deep cavity, and large spreading lobes often deciduous from the ripe fruit; flesh green, thin and very hard; nutlets 4 or 5, usually 5, gradually narrowed and rounded at the base, acute at the apex, slightly ridged or rounded and obscurely grooved on the back, 7-7.5 mm. long and 5-5.5 mm. wide.

A shrub 3-4 m. high, with small stems covered with dark scaly bark, slender erect branches forming a thin open head, and very slender nearly straight branchlets dark orange color when they first appear, becoming light orange-brown, lustrous and marked by pale lenticels in their first season and dull gray-brown the following year, and armed with slender nearly straight purplish shining spines 3-4 cm. long, persistent and very numerous on old stems.

Borders of low rich woods ten miles northwest of Port Huron, *C. K. Dodge* (No. 83), May 23 and October 22, 1903, September 21, 1905.

4. **Crataegus parvula**, n. sp.

Glabrous with the exception of a few caducous hairs on the upper surface of the young leaves. Leaves ovate, acuminate, gradually narrowed and cuneate or rarely rounded at the base, sharply doubly serrate above, with straight glandular teeth, and slightly divided only above the middle into 4 or 5 small acuminate spreading lobes; nearly fully grown when the flowers open about the 20th of May and then thin and yellow-green, and at maturity thin, dark yellow-green and lustrous on the upper surface, pale bluish green on the lower surface, 4-5 cm. long and 3.5-4 cm. wide, with slender yellow midribs and primary veins; petioles slender, slightly wing-margined at the apex, 1.5-2 cm. in length; leaves on vigorous shoots thicker, abruptly cuneate at the base, more coarsely serrate, 6-7 cm. long and 4.5-5 cm. wide, with linear acuminate glandular caducous stipules fading brown. Flowers 1.8-2 cm. in diameter, on long slender pedicels, in compact mostly 5-6-flowered corymbs, the lowest peduncles from the axils of upper leaves; calyx-tube broadly obconic, the lobes gradually narrowed from wide bases, slender, acuminate, entire or obscurely dentate, reflexed after anthesis; stamens 20;

anthers faintly tinged with pink; styles 2-5. Fruit ripening late in October, on long drooping pedicels, in few-fruited clusters, ovate and full and rounded at the ends to slightly obovate and somewhat narrowed at the base, crimson, pruinose, marked by large pale dots, 1-1.2 cm. in diameter; calyx prominent, with a short tube, a wide deep cavity, and small spreading often slightly incurved lobes, their tips frequently deciduous from the ripe fruit; flesh thin, yellow-green, dry and hard; nutlets 3 or 4, gradually narrowed and acute at the ends, ridged on the back, with a high narrow ridge, 6-6.5 mm. long and 4.5-5 mm. wide.

A shrub 2-3 m. high, with small stems spreading into thickets, small branches and stout nearly straight branchlets light orange-green when they first appear, becoming light red-brown, lustrous and marked by large dark lenticels in their first season and dull gray-brown the following year, and armed with very numerous stout nearly straight purplish shining spines 4.5-5 cm. long and often pointing toward the base of the branch.

Near Grand Rapids, in moist soil, *E. J. Cole* (No. 120 type), September 20, 1902, May 21, 1903; near Port Huron, *C. K. Dodge* (No. 126), September 21, 1905, May 29, 1906 (No. 132), September 21, 1905.

5. **Crataegus ater**, Ashe, *Jour. Elisha Mitchell Sci. Soc.* xix, 21 (1903).

Glabrous with the exception of a few caducous hairs on the upper surface of the young leaves, in the axils of their veins below and on the petioles. Leaves ovate to rhombic, acuminate, gradually or abruptly narrowed and cuneate or rounded at the base, sharply often doubly serrate with straight or incurved glandular teeth, and slightly divided into 4 or 5 pairs of small acuminate lateral lobes; more than half grown when the flowers open about the 20th of May and then thin, yellow-green above and paler below, and at maturity thick and firm to subcoriaceous, dark blue-green on the upper surface, pale bluish green on the lower surface, 5-6 cm. long and 3.5-4.5 cm. wide, with thin prominent midribs and primary veins; petioles slender, slightly wing-margined at the apex, occasionally glandular, 2-3 cm. in length. Flowers 2 cm. in diameter, on slender pedicels, in mostly 5-7-flowered corymbs, the lowest peduncle from the axil of an upper leaf; calyx-tube broadly obconic, the lobes gradually narrowed from wide bases, slender, acuminate, entire or minutely dentate, reflexed after anthesis; stamens 20; filaments often persistent on the fruit; anthers light rose color; styles 2-5, usually 3 or 4, surrounded at the base by a narrow ring of pale tomentum. Fruit ripening at the end of October, on stout pedicels, in few-fruited drooping or spreading clusters, short-oblong, full and rounded at the ends or slightly obovate, dark green flushed with red, pruinose, 1-1.2 cm. long and broad; calyx prominent, with a short tube, a wide shallow cavity, and small spreading or slightly incurved persistent or deciduous lobes; flesh thin, green, rather juicy; nutlets usually 3 or 4, gradually narrowed and rounded at the ends, or when 5 acute at the ends, ridged on the back, with a high narrow ridge, 7-8 mm. long and 4.5-5 mm. wide.

An arborescent shrub 4-5 m. high, with stout stems covered with close gray bark, small ascending branches forming an open irregular head, and stout slightly zigzag branchlets light orange-green when they first appear, becoming dark orange-green tinged with red or chestnut-brown, lustrous, and marked by dark lenticels in their first season and dull light gray-brown the following year, and armed with slender nearly straight light chestnut-brown shining spines 3-4 cm. long.

Fields near St. Clair, St. Clair county, *C. K. Dodge* (No. 14), May 21 and October 24, 1903.

6. **Crataegus immanis**, Ashe, *Jour. Elisha Mitchell Sci. Soc.* xix. 22 (1903).

Glabrous with the exception of a few caducous hairs on the upper surface of the young leaves. Leaves ovate, acuminate, cuneate or rounded at the entire base, finely glandular-serrate above, and slightly divided above the middle into 3 or 4 pairs of small acuminate lobes; nearly half-grown when the flowers open about the 20th of May and then membranaceous, dark yellow-green and covered above by short soft white hairs and pale bluish green below, and at maturity thin but firm in texture, yellow-green, dull on the upper surface, pale on the lower surface, 3.5-4 cm. long and 2.5-3 cm. wide, with slender midribs and thin obscure primary viens extending obliquely to the points of the lobes; petioles slender, slightly wing-margined at the apex, sparingly hairy along the upper side while young, soon glabrous, glandular, 1-1.5 cm. in length. Flowers 1.8 cm. in diameter, on long slender spreading pedicels, in wide mostly 6-8 flowered corymbs, with linear glandular rose-colored caducous bracts and bractlets, the lower peduncles from the axils of upper leaves; calyx-tube narrowly obconic, the lobes wide, acuminate, obscurely glandular-serrate near the middle, reflexed after anthesis; stamens 20; filaments persistent on the fruit; anthers pink; styles 4 or 5, surrounded at the base by a broad ring of pale tomentum. Fruit ripening at the end of October, on long erect or spreading pedicels, in few-fruited clusters, depressed globose, often broader than high, green with a rose-colored cheek, becoming dull red late in the season, 1-1.2 cm. in diameter; calyx prominent, with a short tube, a deep wide cavity, and small erect or reflexed persistent lobes dark red on the upper side below the middle; the whole calyx often deciduous; flesh thick, green, dry and hard; nutlets 4 or 5, gradually narrowed and acute at the ends, rounded or grooved on the back, about 7 mm. long and 4 mm. wide.

A shrub 3-4 m. high, with numerous small stems covered with dark scaly bark and spreading into large thickets, small ascending branches, and slender nearly straight branchlets purple covered with a glaucous bloom and marked by numerous pale lenticels when they first appear, becoming bright chestnut brown and lustrous in their first season and dull reddish brown the following year, and armed with slender nearly straight purplish spines 2.5-3 cm. long, persistent and becoming branched on old stems.

Low rich woods ten miles northwest of Port Huron, *C. K. Dodge* (No. 82 type plant), May 22 and October 22, 1903, (No. 79), May 23 and September 22, 1903.

7. **Crataegus latisepala**, Ashe, Bull. *N. Car, College of Agriculture and Mechanic Arts,* clxxv, 109 (1900).

Glabrous with the exception of a few soft hairs on the upper side of the young leaves. Leaves ovate, acuminate, gradually or abruptly narrowed to the concave-cuneate entire base, doubly serrate above, with broad glandular teeth, and usually slightly divided above the middle into 3 or 4 pairs of broad spreading lobes; about half-grown when the flowers open the middle of May and then thin, yellow-green and lustrous above, paler below, and at maturity subcoriaceous, dark green and lustrous on the upper surface, pale bluish green on the lower surface, 5-6 cm. long and 4-4.5 cm. wide, with stout yellow midribs, and slender veins extending obliquely to the points of the lobes; late persistent in the autumn and finally falling without change of color; petioles stout, wing-margined often nearly to the middle, sparingly glandular while young, 2.5-3 cm. in length; leaves on vigorous shoots usually rounded at the base, often 5-6 cm. long and wide, with stouter purplish glandular petioles. Flowers 1.6-1.8 cm. in diameter, on slender pedicels, in compact usually 5-7-flowered corymbs, with oblong-obovate to linear rose-colored bracts and bractlets; calyx-tube broadly obconic, the lobes abruptly narrowed from the base, short, acuminate, entire, reflexed after anthesis; stamens 20; anthers pale yellow; styles 4 or 5. Fruit ripening at the end of October or early in November, on stout pedicels, in few-fruited erect or spreading clusters, obovate, gradually narrowed from above the middle to the base, slightly narrowed to the rounded apex, dull green when fully grown, later becoming crimson and lustrous, marked by large dark dots, 1.2-1.3 cm. long, 1.1-1.2 cm. in diameter; calyx little enlarged, with a short tube, a deep narrow cavity, and small spreading or closely appressed, mostly persistent lobes; flesh thick, deeply tinged with pink, hard, dry and mealy; nutlets 4 or 5, acute at the ends, ridged on the back, with a narrow often slightly grooved ridge, 7-8 mm. long and 4-5 mm. wide.

A shrub 4-5 m. high, with numerous small stems covered with dark scaly bark, spreading branches forming an open irregular head, and slender nearly straight branchlets light orange-green when they first appear, becoming dark chestnut-brown or purplish, lustrous, and marked by pale lenticels in their first season and dull red-brown the following year, and armed with slender nearly straight purplish shining spines 2.5-4 cm. long, persistent, very numerous and compound on old stems.

Near Port Huron; common. *C. K. Dodge* (No. 1 type), 1902-1905; also Nos. 5, 15, 32, 97 and 104; near Grand Rapids, *E. J. Cole*, (No. 170), May 27 and September 30, 1905, (No. 170-1), May 31 and September 30, 1905.

8. **Crataegus glareosa,** Ashe, *Jour. Elisha Mitchell Sci. Soc.* xviii, 21 (1902).

Leaves ovate to oval, acuminate, rounded or concave-cuneate at the broad base, very coarsely doubly serrate above, with spreading glandular teeth, and slightly divided above the middle into 3 or 4 pairs of small acuminate lobes; nearly half-grown when the flowers open about the 25th of May and then thin, dark yellow-green, lustrous and slightly hairy above and pale and furnished below with small axillary persistent clusters of soft hairs, and at maturity thin but firm in texture, dark yellow-green, lustrous and glabrous on the upper surface, pale bluish green on the lower surface, 5-6 cm. long and 4-4.5 cm. wide, with stout yellow midribs, prominent primary veins extending obliquely to the points of the lobes, and conspicuous reticulate veinlets; petioles stout, slightly wing-margined at the apex, sparingly hairy along the upper side while young, soon glabrous, minutely glandular, often rose-colored in the autumn, 2.5-3 cm. in length; leaves on vigorous shoots subcoriaceous, broadly ovate to suborbicular, rounded or slightly cordate at the base, more coarsely serrate, and often 6-7 cm. long and broad, with stout broadly winged glandular petioles. Flowers 2 cm. in diameter, on long slender glabrous pedicels, in mostly 8-12-flowered compact corymbs, with linear to linear-obovate glandular caducous bracts and bractlets fading brown, the lower peduncles from the axils of upper leaves; calyx-tube broadly obconic, glabrous, the lobes wide, foliaceous, acuminate, laciniately glandular-serrate, glabrous on the outer, slightly villose on the inner surface, reflexed after anthesis; stamens 20; anthers pale yellow; styles 3 or 4, surrounded by a narrow ring of pale tomentum. Fruit ripening late in October and persistent after the leaves fall, on short stout erect pedicels, in broad few-fruited clusters, subglobose to short-oblong, full and rounded at the ends, dark red, lustrous, marked by pale dots, 1-1.2 cm. long, 9-10 mm. in diameter; calyx prominent, with a long tube, a wide deep cavity, and elongated slightly reflexed persistent lobes dark red on the upper side below the middle; flesh yellow, sweet and rather juicy; nutlets usually 3 or 4, full and rounded at the ends or, when 4 narrowed at the ends, ridged on the back, with a broad grooved ridge, 6-7 mm. long and 4-5 mm. wide.

A broad shrub 4-5 m. high, with numerous stout stems, ascending and slightly spreading branches forming an open irregular head, and slender nearly straight glabrous branchlets, orange-yellow and marked by pale lenticels when they first appear, becoming light chestnut-brown and lustrous in their first season and dull brown in their second year, and armed with slender nearly straight chestnut-brown shining spines 3.5-4 cm. long, persistent and becoming branched on old stems.

Sandy shores of the St. Clair River at Port Huron, *C. K. Dodge* (No. 39 type plant), May 25 and September 15, 1902, May 14 and October 15, 1903, (No. 88), May 24 and October 18, 1903, (No. 117), May 31st and September 23, 1905.

Ashe describes his C. glareosa as having pubescent corymbs and ten stamens; there is some mistake perhaps in Mr. Dodge's reference of these numbers to C. glareosa.

9. **Crataegus bellula**, Sargent, *Trees and Shrubs*, i 111, t. 56 (1903); *Rhodora*, vii, 195.

Glabrous with the exception of a few caducous hairs on the upper surface of the unfolding leaves. Leaves ovate, acuminate, broadly cuneate, truncate or on leading shoots often cordate at the glandular base, sharply doubly serrate above, with straight glandular teeth, and deeply divided into 4 or 5 pairs of narrow acuminate spreading lateral lobes; more than half-grown when the flowers open at the end of May and then thin and pale yellow-green, and at maturity subcoriaceous, dark bluish green and very lustrous on the upper surface, pale blue-green on the lower surface, 5-7 cm. long and 4-6 cm. wide, with thin prominent pale yellow midribs deeply impressed on the upper side of the leaf, and slender primary veins arching obliquely to the points of the lobes; petioles stout, narrowly wing-margined at the apex, glandular, with numerous small dark red stipitate persistent glands, 2-3 cm. in length; stipules lunate to linear-falcate, lobed at the base, coarsely glandular-serrate, tinged with red, often large and conspicuous, mostly persistent until the flowers open. Flowers 1.6 cm. in diameter, on long slender pedicels, in lax usually 5-7-flowered corymbs, with oblong-obovate to linear glandular reddish bracts and bractlets often persistent until after the flowers open, the long lower peduncles form the axils of upper leaves; calyx-tube broadly obconic, the lobes small, separated by wide rounded sinuses, acuminate, entire or rarely sparingly glandular-serrate, reflexed after anthesis; stamens 8-10, usually 10; anthers light rose color; styles 2-5. Fruit ripening late in September, on slender stems, in compact drooping clusters, subglobose, often somewhat broader than high to broadly obovate, dull crimson, pruinose. marked by many small pale dots, 1.5-1.8 cm. in diameter; calyx prominent, without a tube, and with a narrow shallow cavity, and small erect lobes, their tips mostly deciduous from the ripe fruit: flesh thick, yellow, dry and mealy; nutlets 2-5, usually 4, full and rounded at the apex, gradually narrowed and acute at the base, ridged on the back, with a high broad and grooved, or narrow rounded ridge, about 7 mm. long and 6 mm. wide.

A shrub 3-4 m. high and nearly as broad, with numerous stout intricately branched ascending stems, and slender only slightly zigzag branchlets, bright orange-green when they first appear, becoming bright red, lustrous, and marked by occasional small dark lenticels in their first season and dark brown tinged with purple in their second year, and armed with numerous slender nearly straight bright red-brown shining spines often pointed toward the base of the branch, becoming branched and long-persistent on old stems, and ultimately ashy gray.

Grand Rapids, Michigan, common, *E. J. Cole* (No. 136 type), May and September, 1901, 1902, *E. J. Cole* and *C. S. Sargent*, September, 1901; also in southern Massachusetts.

10. **Crataegus prona**, Ashe, *Jour. Elisha Mitchell Sci. Soc.* xix. 17 (1903).

Leaves oblong-ovate, acuminate, rounded, truncate or concave-cuneate at the entire base, sharply doubly serrate above, with straight glandular teeth, and deeply divided into 5 or 6 pairs of narrow acuminate spreading or incurved lobes, deeply tinged with red when they unfold, about one-third grown when the flowers open the last week of May, and then membranaceous, yellow-green, smooth and sparingly hairy above and pale and glabrous below, and at maturity very thin, light yellow green and glabrous on the upper surface, pale on the lower surface, 5-6.5 cm. long and 3-4 cm. wide, with slender yellow midribs and thin primary viens arching obliquely to the points of the lobes; petioles slender, slightly wing-margined at the apex, glabrous, 2-2.5 cm. in length. Flowers 1.4-1.5 cm. in diameter, on long slender glabrous pedicels, in wide lax mostly 4-7-flowered corymbs, with oblong-ovate to linear-obovate glandular caducous bracts and bractlets fading rose color, the lowest peduncle from the axil of an upper leaf; calyx-tube narrowly obconic, glabrous, the lobes slender, acuminate, rose-colored at the apex, glabrous, reflexed after anthesis; stamens 5-10, rarely 10; anthers purple; styles 2-4. Fruit ripening late in September, on slender drooping pedicels, in few-fruited clusters, obovate, full and rounded at the apex, gradually narrowed and acute at the base, dull orange-red, lustrous, marked by small pale dots, 1-1.2 cm. long and 8-9 mm. in diameter; calyx little enlarged, with a narrow deep cavity, and slender recurved lobes, their tips often deciduous from the ripe fruit; flesh thin, yellow-green; nutlets 2-4, narrowed and rounded at the ends, or, when 4, acute at the apex, ridged on the back, with a broad low grooved ridge, 7-8 mm. long and 5-6 mm. wide.

A slender shrub, with small stems covered with dark bark broken into large loose scales, and slender nearly straight glabrous branchlets dark orange-yellow and marked by pale lenticels when they first appear, becoming dull chestnut-brown in their first season and reddish-brown the following year, and armed with many slender straight or slightly curved light chestnut-brown shining ultimately gray spines; 2.5-3 cm. long, becoming branched, and very numerous on old stems.

Near Port Huron, *C. K. Dodge* (No. 81), May 23 and October 22, 1903, May 26 and September 21, 1905, (No. 7), May 24 and October 11, 1902, May 28 and September 19, 1905.

11. **Crataegus opulens**, Sargent, *Proc. Rochester Acad. Sci.* iv. 104 (1903).

Glabrous with the exception of the hairs on the upper surface of the young leaves and petioles. Leaves oblong-ovate to oval, acuminate, full and rounded or broadly cuneate at the entire base, sharply doubly serrate above, with straight gland-tipped teeth, and slightly divided into 3 or 4 pairs of broad acuminate spreading lobes; about half-grown when the flowers open at the end of May and then very thin, light yellow-green and roughened above by short pale hairs and paler below, and at maturity coriaceous, glabrous, dark bluish green and lustrous on the upper surface, very pale blue-green on the lower surface, 4-7 cm. long and 3-5 cm. wide, with thin yellow midribs sometimes tinged with rose color in the autumn, and 4 or 5 pairs of slender primary veins arching obliquely to the points of the lobes; petioles slender, more or less wing-margined at the apex, sparingly hairy when they first appear, soon becoming glabrous, occasionally glandular early in the season, 2-4 cm. in length; stipules linear to linear-falcate, acuminate, sometimes lobed at the base, glandular, mostly deciduous before the flowers open; leaves on vigorous shoots coarsely serrate, often 3-lobed, the lateral lobes frequently divided into 2 or 3 pairs of secondary lobes, 6-8 cm. long and often as wide or wider than long, with stout conspicuously glandular petioles. Flowers 1.2-1.4 cm. in diameter, on long slender pedicels, in compact mostly 5-8-flowered compound corymbs, with oblong-obovate to linear acuminate glandular bracts and bractlets mostly deciduous before the flowers open; calyx-tube broadly obconic, the lobes gradually narrowed from the base, acuminate, tipped with minute dark glands, sparingly glandular-serrate usually only above the middle or nearly entire, reflexed after anthesis; stamens 10; anthers pale rose color; styles 3 or 4, surrounded at the base by a narrow ring of pale hairs. Fruit on long slender reddish pedicels, in few-fruited drooping clusters, subglobose and rather broader than high to short-obovate, obscurely angled, crimson, slightly pruinose, lustrous, marked by few large dark dots, 1.3-1.5 cm. in diameter; calyx without a tube, with a deep narrow cavity, and erect or spreading entire or slightly serrate lobes dark red on the upper side below the middle, their tips often deciduous from the ripe fruit; flesh thin, nearly white, dry, firm and sweet, nutlets 3 or 4, usually 4, full and rounded at the apex, gradually narrowed to the rounded base, prominently ridged on the back, with a high rounded ridge, 8-9 mm. long and often 6 mm. wide.

A shrub 3-5 m. high, with dull olive green stems ashy gray at the base, and slender only slightly zigzag branchlets, light red or green tinged with red and marked by small pale lenticels when they first appear, becoming dark olive brown and lustrous in their first season and light gray-brown the following year, and armed with many straight or slightly curved lustrous purple-brown spines 3.5-5 cm. long.

Near Port Huron, *C. K. Dodge* (No. 40), May 25 and September 15, 1902, May 28 and October 15, 1903; also through Ontario to western New York.

12. **Crataegus filipes**, Ashe, *Jour. Elisha Mitchell Sci. Soc.* xix. 18 (1903).

Glabrous with the exception of the hairs on the upper surface of the young leaves. Leaves ovate, long-pointed and acuminate at the apex, rounded, truncate or abruptly concave-cuneate at the broad entire base, finely doubly serrate above, with straight glandular teeth, and deeply divided into 4 or 5 pairs of narrow acuminate spreading lobes; more than half-grown when the flowers open about the 20th of May and then membranaceous, light yellow-green and slightly roughened above by short white hairs and pale below, and at maturity very thin, dark bluish green and smooth on the upper surface, pale blue-green on the lower surface, 4-5 cm. long and 3.5-4 cm. wide, with prominent yellow midribs, and thin primary veins arching obliquely to the points of the lobes; petioles slender, slightly wing-margined at the apex, glandular, with minute scattered glands, 2-2.5 cm. in length. Flowers 2 cm. in diameter, on long slender pedicels, in mostly 6-10-flowered corymbs, the lowest peduncle from the axil of an upper leaf; calyx-tube narrowly obconic, the lobes gradually narrowed from wide bases, slender, acuminate, entire or obscurely dentate near the middle, reflexed after anthesis; stamens 5-7; anthers dark rose color; styles 4 or 5. Fruit ripening early in October and persistent on the branches until after the leaves fall, on slender drooping pedicels, in few-fruited clusters, obovate, slightly narrowed at the apex, gradually narrowed to the slender base, orange-red pruinose, becoming lustrous, marked by small pale dots, 1-1.2 cm. long and 7-8 mm. in diameter; calyx little enlarged, with a deep narrow cavity, and erect or incurved lobes; flesh thin, yellow-green, dry and mealy; nutlets 4 or 5, acute at the ends, ridged on the back; with a broad grooved ridge, 7-8 mm. long and about 4 mm. wide.

A shrub, with erect stems covered with dark scaly bark, small erect and spreading branches forming a broad compact round-topped head, and slender nearly straight branchlets, dark orange-yellow and marked by pale lenticels when they first appear, becoming purple and lustrous in their first summer and pale red-brown the following year, and armed with slender straight or slightly curved light chestnut-brown shining spines 3.5-4.5 cm. long, very numerous and branched on old stems.

Near Port Huron, *C. K. Dodge* (No. 78), May 23 and September 29, 1903, September 21, 1905.

13. **Crataegus allecta**, n. sp.

Leaves ovate, acuminate and long-pointed at the apex, rounded cordate, or occasionally cuneate at the broad base, sharply doubly serrate, with straight glandular teeth, and divided into 4 or 5 pairs of short broad acuminate lateral lobes, about half-grown when the flowers open the middle of May and then thin, yellow-green, and roughened above by short white hairs and pale and glabrous below, and at maturity thick, dark blue-green, smooth and lustrous above, pale bluish green below, 6-7 cm. long and 4.5-5.5 cm. wide, with stout orange-colored midribs, and 4 or 5 pairs of thin primary veins; petioles slender, wing-margined at the apex, glabrous, glandular, with minute red glands, often dark rose color in the autumn, 3-3.5 cm. in length. Flowers 1.5-1.6 cm. in diameter, on long slender glabrous pedicels, in compact mostly 6-8-flowered corymbs, the lowest peduncle from the axil of an upper leaf; calyx-tube narrowly obconic, glabrous, the lobes broad, short, acuminate, entire or glandular-serrate near the middle, glabrous on the outer surface, covered on the inner surface with short white hairs, reflexed after anthesis; stamens 5-7; anthers dark rose color; styles 3 or 4, rarely 5, surrounded at the base by a narrow ring of long white hairs. Fruit ripening the first of October, on long drooping pedicels, in lax clusters, obovate, bright orange-red, marked by numerous dark dots, 1-1.2 cm. long, 8-10 mm. in diameter; calyx little enlarged, with a deep narrow cavity, and spreading or incurved usually persistent lobes pubescent on the upper surface; flesh thin, orange color, dry and mealy; nutlets 3-5, gradually narrowed and rounded at the ends or acute at the apex, ridged on the back, with a broad high deeply grooved ridge, 6.5-7 mm. long and 4.5-5 mm. wide.

A shrub 3-4 m. high, with stems covered with smooth olive green bark, stout zigzag glabrous branchlets dark orange-green tinged with red when they first appear, becoming light chestnut-brown, lustrous and marked by pale lenticels in their first season and pale gray-brown the following year, and armed with numerous stout straight or slightly curved light chestnut-brown shining spines 3-4 cm. long.

Low moist soil near Grand Rapids, *E. J. Cole* (No. 18 type), May 16, 1901, May 18 and September 10, 1902, September 27, 1904, (No. 70), May 18 and 23, 1901, September 7, 1902, October 1, 1904, (No. 139), May 20 and September 16, 1902, (No. 146, with 10 stamens), May 21 and September 30, 1902; fields near St. Clair, St. Clair County, *C. K. Dodge*, (No. 70), May 19 and September 6, 1903, May 28 and September 19, 1905.

14. **Crataegus gravis**, Ashe, *Jour. Elisha Mitchell Sci. Soc.* xx. 3 (1904).

Leaves broadly ovate, acuminate, abruptly concave-cuneate or rarely rounded at the wide entire base, finely doubly serrate above, with straight glandular teeth, and slightly divided above the middle into 3 or 4 pairs of small acuminate lobes; deeply tinged with red when they unfold, more than half-grown when the flowers open at the end of May and then thin, yellow-green and roughened above by short white hairs, and glabrous below, and at maturity thin but firm in texture, smooth, glabrous and yellow-green on the upper surface, pale on the lower surface, 5-6 cm. long and 4-5 cm. wide, with stout midribs, and slender primary veins arching obliquely to the points of the lobes; petioles slender, slightly wing-margined at the apex, glabrous, minutely glandular, 2-3 cm. in length. Flowers 1.5 cm. in diameter, on slender glabrous pedicels, in compact mostly 5-10-flowered corymbs; calyx-tube narrowly obconic, glabrous, the lobes gradually narrowed from the base, slender, acuminate, entire or minutely dentate near the middle, glabrous on the outer, villose on the inner surface, reflexed after anthesis; stamens 5-10; anthers dark rose color; styles 2 or 3, rarely 4 or 5, surrounded at the base by a broad ring of pale tomentum. Fruit ripening from the middle to the end of October, on slender drooping pedicels, in few-fruited clusters, short-oblong, full and rounded at the ends, crimson, pruinose, becoming lustrous 1-1.2 cm. long and 8-9 mm. in diameter; calyx little enlarged, without a tube, with a narrow shallow cavity, and spreading or slightly incurved lobes dark red on the upper side below the middle, often deciduous from the ripe fruit; flesh thin, yellow-green, hard and dry; nutlets usually 2 or 3, narrowed and rounded at the ends, prominently ridged on the back, with a broad deep groove, or, when 5, only slightly ridged, 6-7 mm. long and 4-5 mm. wide.

A slender shrub 2-3 m. high, with small stems covered with dark scaly bark, small ascending branches, slender nearly straight glabrous branchlets dark orange-yellow marked by pale lenticels when they first appear, becoming dull light chestnut-brown in their first season and light reddish brown the following year, and armed with stout nearly straight light chestnut-brown shining spines 2.5-3 cm. long, persistent and becoming branched on old stems.

Port Huron, *C. K. Dodge* (No. 28), May 26 and October 17, 1902, May 24 and October 20, 1903, May 31, and September 25, 1905 (No. 28 A), May 26 and October 17, 1903 (No. 28 B), May 20 and October 20, 1903 (No. 25), May 26 and October 17, 1902, May 26 and October 17, 1903 (No. 89), May 24 and October 18, 1903.

## IV. TENUIFOLIAE.

Stamens 10 or less.
Young leaves scabrate above.
Leaves yellow-green.
Flowers in more than 10-flowered corymbs.
Leaves usually rounded at the base.
Leaves deeply lobed. 1. C. glaucophylla.
Leaves slightly lobed. 2. C. otiosa.
Leaves usually cuneate at the base, deeply lobed. 3. C. Streeteræ.
Flowers in fewer than 10-flowered corymbs. 4. C. retrusa.
Leaves blue-green, slightly lobed. 5. C. uber.
Young leaves smooth above.
Leaves deeply lobed; flowers in 7-12-flowered corymbs; calyx-lobes villose on the inner surface. 6. C. merita.
Leaves slightly lobed; flowers in 5-7-flowered corymbs; calyx-lobes glabrous. 7. C. perlæta.
Stamens 20.
Pedicels glabrous; leaves usually oval; fruit oval, gradually narrowed at the ends. 8. C. tætrica.
Pedicels villose; leaves oblong-ovate; fruit obovate, becoming short-oblong. 9. C. asperata.

1. **Crataegus glaucophylla**, Sargent, *Rhodora*, v. 140 (1903); *Proc. Rochester Acad. Sci.* iv, 12.

Leaves broadly ovate, acute or short-pointed at the apex, rounded or broadly cuneate at the entire base, sharply and often doubly serrate above, with straight or incurved glandular teeth, and divided into 4 or 5 pairs of narrow acute or long-pointed lateral lobes; tinged with red, and roughened above by short pale caducous hairs when they unfold, more than half-grown when the flowers open during the last week of May and then smooth, light yellow-green and covered above by a glaucous bloom, pale and glaucous below, and at maturity thin but firm in texture, light yellow-green on the upper surface, pale bluish green on the lower surface, about 6 cm. long and 4.5 cm. wide, or on vigorous shoots 7-8 cm. long and 6 cm. wide, with thin yellow midribs deeply impressed above and slender veins extending to the points of the lobes; petioles slender, slightly wing-margined at the apex, glandular, 2-2.5 cm. in length. Flowers 1.2-1.4 cm. in diameter, on short slender glabrous pedicels, in broad mostly 8-10-flowered compound corymbs, with linear glandular caducous bracts and bractlets; calyx narrowly obconic, glabrous, green tinged with red, the lobes slender, elongated, entire or occasionally glandular-serrate near the middle, glabrous, reflexed after anthesis; stamens 5-10, usually 10; anthers small, dark rose color; styles 3 or 4. Fruit ripening early in September and sometimes persistent until the middle of October, on short stalks, in drooping few-fruited clusters, short-oblong or rarely ovate, full and rounded at the ends, bright scarlet, very lustrous, marked by few large dots, 1.2-1.4 cm. long and about 1 cm. in diameter; calyx little enlarged, with a deep narrow cavity, and minutely glandular-serrate closely appressed persistent lobes; flesh thick, yellow, juicy, of a pleasant flavor; nutlets 3 or 4, thin, acute at the ends or rounded at the apex, ridged on the back, with a high narrow sometimes slightly grooved ridge, about 7 mm. long and 4 mm. wide.

A round-topped shrub 2-3 m. high, with numerous thick stems covered with ashy gray bark, stout zigzag glabrous branchlets yellow-green and marked by pale lenticels when they first appear, becoming bright red-brown and lustrous during their first season, and dull light reddish brown the following year, and armed with many slender straight or slightly curved red-brown spines 2-7 cm. in length.

Near Port Huron, *C. K. Dodge* (No. 115), September 25, 1904, May 27, 1905; also through Ontario and New York to western New England.

2. **Crataegus otiosa**, Ashe, *Jour. Elisha Mitchell, Sci. Soc.*, xx. 2 (1904). Leaves ovate, acuminate, rounded, slightly cordate or abruptly cuneate at the broad base, finely doubly serrate above, with straight glandular teeth, and divided into 7 or 8 pairs of small acuminate spreading or recurved lateral lobes; about half-grown when the flowers open at the end of May and then very thin, yellow-green and roughened above by short white hairs and pale and glabrous below, and at maturity thin, yellow-green, smooth, and glabrous on the upper surface, pale on the lower surface, 4.5-5.5 cm. long and 3-4 cm. wide, with slender yellow midribs, and generally 5 pairs of primary veins extending obliquely to the points of the principal lobes; petioles very slender, slightly wing-margined at the apex, glabrous, 2-3 cm. in length. Flowers 1.4-1.5 cm. in diameter, on long slender glabrous pedicels, in lax mostly 10-12-flowered corymbs, with linear acuminate rose-colored caducous bracts and bractlets; calyx-tube narrowly obconic, glabrous, the lobes long, slender, acuminate, entire or minutely dentate, glabrous on the outer, furnished with a few hairs on the inner surface, reflexed after anthesis;

stamens 5-10, usually 5-7; anthers rose color; styles 4 or 5 surrounded at the base by a narrow ring of pale tomentum. Fruit ripening at the end of September, on long slender drooping pedicels, in wide lax many-fruited clusters, short-oblong, full and rounded at the ends, or occasionally narrowed at the apex, 8-9 mm. long and 5-6 mm. in diameter; calyx small, with a deep narrow cavity, and small closely appressed often deciduous lobes; flesh yellow, sweet and juicy; nutlets 4 or 5, thin, narrowed and rounded at the base, acute at the apex, slightly ridged or rounded and grooved on the back, 5.5-6 mm. long and 3-4 mm. wide.

A shrub 6-7 m. high, with several wide-branched stems forming a compact round-topped head, slender glabrous branchlets, light orange yellow when they first appear, becoming light chestnut-brown, lustrous and marked by small dark lenticels in their first season and pale gray-brown the following year, and armed with stout nearly straight light chestnut-brown lustrous ultimately ashy gray spines 1.5-2.5 cm. long.

Fields near St. Clair, St. Clair County, *C. K. Dodge* (Nos. 72 and 72A), May 29 and September 18, 1904.

3. **Crataegus Streeteae,** Sargent, *Proc. Rochester Acad. Sci.* iv, 119 (1903).

Leaves ovate, acuminate and often long-pointed at the apex, rounded, truncate or abruptly cuneate at the wide entire base, sharply and often doubly serrate above, with long slender spreading glandular teeth, and slightly divided into 3 or 4 pairs of small acuminate lobes; more than half-grown when the flowers open about the 20th of May and then very thin, light yellow-green and roughened above by short white hairs, and at maturity thin, conspicuously wrinkled, dark green and scabrate on the upper surface, pale and glaucous on the lower surface, 3.5-5 cm. long and 3-4.5 cm. wide, with very thin midribs and primary veins; petioles slender, pubescent when they first appear, soon becoming glabrous, 2.5-3 cm. in length; leaves on vigorous shoots long-pointed, cordate at the base, often 6 cm. long and broad, with short stout conspicuously glandular petioles. Flowers 1.2-1.4 cm. in diameter, on long very slender puberulous pedicels, in compact many-flowered thin-branched compound corymbs; calyx-tube narrowly obconic, the lobes slender, acuminate, entire, glabrous on the outer, slightly villose on the inner surface, reflexed after anthesis; stamens 7-10; anthers small, rose-colored; styles 3 or 4, surrounded at the base by a narrow ring of pale tomentum. Fruit ripening late in September or early in October, on slender pedicels, in drooping many-fruited clusters, short-oblong, full and rounded at the ends, scarlet, lustrous, marked by numerous small pale dots, about 1 cm. long and 8 mm. in diameter; calyx only slightly enlarged, with a broad shallow cavity, and reflexed closely appressed lobes, their tips often deciduous from the ripe fruit; flesh thick, yellow, dry and mealy; nutlets 3 or 4, full and rounded at the ends, ridged on the back, with a broad high ridge, 6.5-7 mm. long.

A dense shrub with numerous stems covered with smooth dull gray bark, the lower horizontal, the upper ascending, and slender nearly straight glabrous branchlets tinged with red when they first appear, becoming dull gray or reddish brown and marked by numerous small pale lenticels in their first season and ashy gray the following year, and armed with few slender slightly curved dark red shining spines 3-4 cm. in length.

Sandy shore of the St. Clair River at Port Huron, *C. K. Dodge* (No. 43), May 25 and September 9, 1902, May 18 and September 4, 1903; also through Ontario and New York to western New England.

4. **Crataegus retrusa**, Ashe, *Jour. Elisha Mitchell Sci. Soc.* xx, 3 (1904).

Leaves ovate, rounded or abruptly cuneate at the broad entire base, sharply doubly serrate above, with straight glandular teeth, and deeply divided into 6 or 7 pairs of narrow acuminate spreading lateral lobes, about half-grown when the flowers open the middle of May and then membranaceous, yellow-green and slightly roughened above by short white hairs and pale and glabrous below; and at maturity thin, light yellow-green and scabrate on the upper surface, paler on the lower surface, 4.5-5 cm. long and 3-3.5 cm. broad, with thin midribs, and primary veins extending obliquely to the points of the lobes; petioles slender, glabrous, glandular, with minute usually deciduous glands, 1.5-2 cm. in length; leaves on vigorous shoots long-pointed, rounded or slightly cordate at the base, more deeply lobed, often 6-7 cm. long and 5-6 cm. wide. Flowers 1.2-1.5 cm. in diameter, on slender glabrous pedicels, in few-flowered compact corymbs; calyx-tube narrowly obconic, glabrous, the lobes gradually narrowed, acuminate and rose-colored at the apex, minutely glandular-dentate near the middle, glabrous on the outer, sparingly villose on the inner surface, reflexed after anthesis; stamens 5-7; anthers dark rose color; styles 3 or 4. Fruit ripening at the end of September, on slender drooping pedicels, in few-fruited clusters, short-oblong, full and rounded at the ends, or obovate and abruptly narrowed at the base, orange-scarlet, lustrous, 1-1.2 cm. long and 8-10 mm. in diameter; calyx little enlarged, with a deep narrow cavity, and slender closely appressed persistent lobes dark red on the upper side below the middle, their tips often deciduous from the ripe fruit; flesh thick, pale yellow, sweet and juicy; nutlets 3 or 4, gradually narrowed and rounded at the ends, ridged on the back, with a broad grooved ridge, 5-5.5 mm. long and about 4 mm. wide.

A slender shrub, with small stems and branches forming an irregular open head, and slender nearly straight glabrous branchlets, dark red and marked by numerous small pale lenticels when they first appear, becoming light chestnut-brown and lustrous in their first season and dull light gray the following year, and armed with slender nearly straight chestnut-brown shining spines 2-2.5 cm. long, persistent and becoming branched on old stems.

Fields near St. Clair, St. Clair County, *C. K. Dodge* (No. 10), May 19 and October 24, 1903.

5. **Crataegus uber**, Ashe, *Jour. Elisha Mitchell Sci. Soc.* xx, (1904).

Leaves ovate, acuminate, rounded or abruptly concave-cuneate at the broad entire base, finely doubly serrate above, with straight glandular teeth, and divided into 6 or 7 pairs of broad acuminate lateral lobes; nearly fully grown when the flowers open at the end of May and then membranaceous, yellow-green, roughened above by short white hairs, and paler and glabrous below, and at maturity thin, but firm, dark bluish-green, smooth and glabrous on the upper surface, pale blue green on the lower surface, 5-6 cm. long and 4-5 cm. wide, with thin midribs and primary veins; petioles slender, slightly wing-margined at the apex, glabrous, 2.5-3.5 cm. in length; leaves on vigorous shoots thicker, cordate at the broad base, often 7.5-8 cm. long and 6-6.5 cm. wide. Flowers 1.2-1.4 cm. in diameter, on long slender slightly villose pedicels, in broad lax mostly 5-10-flowered corymbs, the lower peduncle from the axil of an upper leaf; calyx-tube narrowly obconic, glabrous, the lobes gradually narrowed, acuminate, coarsely glandular-dentate near the middle, glabrous on the outer, slightly villose on the inner surface, reflexed after anthesis; stamens 5-8; anthers dark rose color; styles 4 or 5. Fruit ripening the middle of September, on short drooping pedicels, in 5 or 6 fruited clusters, short-oblong, full and rounded on the ends, crimson, very lustrous, marked by large pale dots, 1.4-1.6 cm. long and 1.2-1.4 cm. in diameter; calyx small, with a deep narrow cavity, and small spreading or erect persistent lobes villose on the upper side; flesh thick, pale, sweet and juicy; nutlets 4 or 5, narrowed and rounded at the base, acute at the apex, slightly ridged or rounded and grooved on the back, 6-7 mm. long and 4-5 mm. wide.

An arborescent shrub 5-6 m. high, with stout stems covered with dark scaly bark, large ascending and spreading branches forming a wide open head, and slender glabrous branchlets light orange color when they first appear, becoming light chestnut-brown, lustrous and marked by small pale lenticels in their first season and dull gray the following year, and armed with slender nearly straight light chestnut-brown shining spines 3.5-4 cm. long.

Roadsides near St. Clair, St. Clair County, *C. K. Dodge* (No. 10 A, type tree), May 29 and September 18, 1904, (No. 71), May 21 and September 6, 1903, May 19, 1905.

6. **Crataegus merita**, n. sp.

Leaves oblong-ovate, acuminate, rounded, subcordate or abruptly cuneate at the broad entire or glandular base, sharply doubly serrate above, with straight glandular teeth, and deeply divided into 5 or 6 pairs of narrow acuminate lateral lobes; more than half-grown when the flowers open from the 10th to the middle of May, and then thin, light yellow-green, very smooth and furnished above with a few soft caducous hairs and paler and glabrous below, and at maturity thick, dark green and very lustrous on the upper surface, pale on the lower surface, 5-7 cm. long and 5-6 cm. wide, with stout yellow midribs, and 5 or 6 pairs of prominent primary veins; petioles slender, slightly wing-margined at the apex, occasionally glandular, with persistent glands, 2-2.5 cm. in length. Flowers 1.5-1.6 cm. in diameter, on short slender glabrous pedicels, in compact mostly 7-12-flowered corymbs, with narrow-obovate to lanceolate acuminate glandular bracts and bractlets fading brown, the lowest peduncle from the axil of an upper leaf; calyx-tube narrowly obconic, glabrous, the lobes slender, acuminate, minutely glandular-dentate, glabrous on the outer, slightly villose on the inner surface, reflexed after anthesis; stamens 5 or 6; anthers dark rose color; styles 3 or 4, surrounded at the base by a narrow ring of thick white tomentum. Fruit ripening late in October, on short stout red pedicels, in few-fruited spreading clusters, short-oblong to slightly obovate, full and rounded at the ends, crimson, lustrous, conspicuously blotched with green at the apex, marked by small pale dots, 1-1.2 cm. long, 9-10 mm. in diameter; calyx little enlarged, with a deep narrow cavity, and long erect and slightly incurved lobes, their tips often deciduous from the ripe fruit; flesh thick and yellow; nutlets 3 or 4, gradually narrowed and acute at the ends, only slightly ridged on the back, 5.5-6 mm. long and 3-4 mm. wide.

A shrub 3-5 m. high, with stout stems covered with dark scaly bark, ascending branches forming a narrow head, and slender glabrous branchlets dark green tinged with red when they first appear, becoming light orange-brown or chestnut-brown, lustrous and marked by small pale lenticels in their first season and dull gray-brown the following year, and armed with numerous slender nearly straight light chestnut-brown shining spines 3-5 cm. long.

Low moist soil near Grand Rapids, *E. J. Cole* (No. 29 type), September 20, 1901, May 15, 1903, September 4, 1905, (No. 30), May 15, 1901, (No. 31), May 15, 1901, September 19, 1902.

7. **Crataegus perlaeta,** n. sp.

Glabrous with the exception of a few soft caducous hairs on the upper surface of the young leaves. Leaves ovate, acuminate, rounded, cordate or occasionally abruptly cuneate at the broad entire base, finely doubly serrate above, with straight glandular teeth, and very slightly divided into 3 or 4 pairs of small acuminate spreading lobes; more than half-grown when the flowers open about the 20th of May and then dark yellow-green, very smooth and nearly glabrous above and pale below, and at maturity thin but firm in texture, yellow-green and lustrous on the upper surface, paler on the lower surface, 4.5-6 cm. long and 3.5-4 cm. wide, with slender yellow midribs and primary veins; petioles slender, slightly wing-margined at the apex, glandular, with minute persistent glands, 2.5-3 cm. in length. Flowers 1.5-1.6 cm. in diameter, on long slender pedicels, in very compact mostly 5-7-flowered corymbs, the lowest peduncle from the axil of an upper leaf; calyx-tube narrowly obconic, tinged with red, the lobes slender, acuminate, entire or finely glandular-serrate above the middle, reflexed after anthesis; stamens 5-7, usually 5; anthers dark rose color; styles 3 or 4. Fruit ripening at the end of September, on stout spreading stems, in few-fruited clusters, short-oblong to slightly obovate, scarlet, lustrous, marked by small pale dots, 1-1.1 cm. long, 8-9 mm. in diameter; calyx prominent, with a wide shallow cavity and spreading closely appressed lobes, their tips sometimes deciduous from the ripe fruit; flesh thin, yellow, rather juicy; nutlets 3 or 4, gradually narrowed and acute at the ends, rounded and sometimes grooved or slightly ridged on the back, 6.5-7 mm. long and 4.5-5 mm. wide.

A broad shrub 3-4 m. high, with slender nearly straight branchlets dark orange-green and marked by pale lenticels when they first appear, becoming light chestnut-brown and lustrous in their first season and dull gray-brown the following year, and armed with numerous stout nearly straight dark chestnut-brown shining spines 2.5-5 cm. long.

Pastures in moist soil near Grand Rapids, *E. J. Cole* and *C. S. Sargent* (No. 132), September 25, 1901, *E. J. Cole,* May 17, 1903, May 23 and September 28, 1904.

8. **Crataegus taetrica,** n. sp.

Leaves oval and gradually narrowed and cuneate at the base, or rarely ovate and broad and rounded at the base, acuminate, finely doubly serrate, with straight glandular teeth, and slightly divided usually only above the middle into 4 or 5 pairs of small spreading acuminate lobes; almost half-grown when the flowers open about the 20th of May and then membranaceous, light yellow-green, roughened above by rigid white hairs and pale and glabrous below, at maturity thin, light yellow-green and scabrate on the upper surface and paler on the lower surface, 4-4.5 cm. long and 3-3.5 cm. wide, with slender midribs and thin primary veins extending obliquely to the points of the lobes; petioles slender, slightly wing-margined at the apex, glabrous, glandular, with minute often persistent glands, 1.5-2.5 cm. in length. Flowers 1.3-1.4 cm. in diameter, on long slender glabrous pedicels, in wide lax mostly 10-14-flowered corymbs, with linear to lanceolate glandular caducous bracts and bractlets fading rose color, the lower peduncles from the axils of upper leaves; calyx-tube narrowly obconic, glabrous, the lobes slender, acuminate and rose-colored at the apex, entire, or minutely dentate near the middle, glabrous on the outer, slightly villose on the inner surface, reflexed after anthesis; stamens 20; anthers purple; styles 4 or 5. Fruit ripening the middle of October, on short spreading stems, in few-fruited clusters, oval and gradually narrowed at the ends, scarlet, lustrous, blotched with yellow, marked by large pale dots, 1-1.2 cm. long and 9-10 mm. wide; calyx little enlarged, with a shallow narrow cavity and spreading lobes, their tips usually deciduous from the ripe fruit; flesh pale yellow, rather juicy; nutlets 4 or 5, acute at the ends, rounded and slightly grooved on the back, about 7 mm. long and 4-5 mm. wide.

A shrub 4-5 m. high, with small stems covered with dark scaly bark and spreading into large thickets, small ascending branches forming an open narrow head, and slender, slightly zigzag glabrous branchlets dark orange color and marked by small pale lenticels when they first appear, becoming light chestnut-brown and lustrous in their first season and dull gray-brown the following year, and armed with stout nearly straight chestnut-brown shining ultimately dull gray spines 2-3 cm. long, and persistent and branched on old stems.

Low moist woods north of Port Huron, *C. K. Dodge* (No. 87 type), May 17 and October 22, 1903, May 26, 1905.

9. **Crataegus asperata,** n. sp.

Leaves oblong-ovate, acuminate, rounded or cuneate at the entire base, sharply doubly serrate above, with straight glandular teeth, and divided into 6 or 7 pairs of short broad acuminate lateral lobes, deeply tinged with red when they unfold, nearly half-grown when the flowers open from the 15th to the 20th of May and then membranaceous, yellow-green and roughened above by short, rigid white hairs and pale and glabrous below, and at maturity thin, dull bluish green and scabrous on the upper surface and pale blue-green on the lower surface, 4.5-5 cm. long and 2.5-4 cm. wide, with thin midribs and primary veins; petioles slender, narrowly wing-margined at the apex, slightly hairy on the upper side while young, becoming glabrous, glandular, with minute often persistent glands, 2-2.5 cm. in length; leaves on vigorous shoots broadly ovate, cordate or truncate at the base, more coarsely serrate and more deeply lobed, often 6-7 cm. long and nearly as broad, with stout conspicuously glandular petioles. Flowers 1.5 cm. in diameter, on long slender slightly villose pedicels, in wide lax hairy mostly 12-15-flowered corymbs, the lowest peduncle from the axil of an upper leaf; calyx-tube broadly obconic, glabrous, the lobes gradually narrowed from wide bases, acuminate, glandular-serrate, glabrous on the outer, slightly villose on the inner surface, reflexed after anthesis; stamens 20; anthers dark rose color; styles 4 or 5. Fruit ripening at the end of September on slender nearly glabrous pedicels, in few-fruited drooping clusters, at first; when fully grown obovate, slightly narrowed at the apex, gradually narrowed to the long slender base, becoming at maturity short-oblong and full and rounded at the ends, scarlet, lustrous, marked by large pale dots, 1-6-1.8 cm. long and 1.4-1.6 cm. in diameter; calyx little enlarged, with a narrow deep cavity, and closely appressed persistent lobes dark red on the upper side below the middle and villose above; flesh thick and yellow; nutlets 4 or 5, thin, narrowed and rounded at the base, acute at the apex, rounded and slightly grooved or obscurely ridged on the back, 6-7 mm. long and 4-5 mm. wide.

An arborescent shrub, 4-5 m. high, with slender nearly straight glabrous branchlets, purple when they first appear, becoming bright chestnut-brown, lustrous and marked by many pale lenticels in their first season and dull reddish brown the following year, and armed with stout nearly straight purplish spines 2-2.5 cm. long.

Port Huron, *C. K. Dodge* (No. 19 type), May 25 and October 10, 1902, May 18 and October 3, 1903.

### V. MOLLES.

Stamens 20; anthers pale yellow.
  Leaves broadly ovate.
    Fruit short-oblong to subglobose; flowers at least 2 cm. in diameter.
      Fruit scarlet, ripening in August or early September; pedicels stout, short, densely tomentose; leaves thick to subcoriaceous. 1. C. mollis.
      Fruit orange-red, ripening late in October or in November; pedicels slender, elongated, villose; leaves very thin. 2. C. nutans.
    Fruit obovate; flowers not more than 1 cm. in diameter. 3. C. mollipes.
  Leaves oblong-ovate, thin; fruit obovate-oblong, dull dark red, ripening in October. 4. C. sera.
Stamens 10; anthers rose color; leaves oval. 5. C. Ellwangeriana.

1. **Crataegus mollis**, Scheele, *Linnaea,* xxi. 569 (1848).—Sargent, *Silva N. Am.* xiii. 83, t. 659; *Bot. Gazette,* xxxv. 379; *Man.* 423, f. 341.

Leaves broadly ovate, acute, usually cordate or rounded at the broad base, coarsely and generally doubly serrate, with straight glandular teeth, and more or less deeply divided into 4 or 5 pairs of acute lateral lobes; when they unfold covered above with short pale hairs and hoary-tomentose below, about half-grown when the flowers open early in May and then thin, light yellow-green and hairy above, pubescent or tomentose below, and at maturity thick and firm in texture, dark yellow-green and slightly rugose on the upper surface and paler and pubescent or puberulous on the lower surface along the stout midribs, and 4 or 5 pairs of primary veins extending to the points of the lobes, 8-10 cm. long and broad; petioles stout, at first tomentose, becoming pubescent or nearly glabrous, often slightly glandular, with small dark caducous glands, 2.5-3 cm. in length; leaves on vigorous shoots thicker, more deeply lobed, with a deeper basal sinus, and frequently 12-14 cm. long and broad, with foliaceous lunate coarsely serrate stipules sometimes 2.5 cm. in length. Flowers 2.2 to 2.5 in diameter, on stout tomentose pedicels, in broad compound many-flowered tomentose corymbs, with conspicuous bracts and bractlets; calyx-tube narrowly obconic, hoary-tomentose, the lobes narrow, acuminate, coarsely glandular-serrate, villose on the outer, tomentose on the inner surface, reflexed after anthesis; stamens 20; anthers large, light yellow; styles 4 or 5, surrounded at the base by a broad ring of hoary tomentum. Fruit ripening late in August and early in September, on stout villose pedicels, in drooping few-fruited clusters, short-oblong to subglobose, full and rounded at the ends, more or less pubescent, scarlet, marked by occasional large dark dots, 2-2.5 cm. in diameter; calyx prominent, hairy, with a broad shallow cavity, and large erect incurved lobes usually deciduous before the fruit ripens; flesh thick, yellow, subacid, dry and mealy; nutlets 4 or 5, thin, acute at the ends, rounded and slightly grooved or irregularly ridged on the back with a high narrow ridge 6-6.5 mm. long and 4-4.5 mm.wide.

A tree sometimes 12-14 m. high, with a tall trunk often 4.5 dm. in diameter, heavy wide-spreading smooth ashy gray branches forming a broad round-topped often symmetrical head, and stout branchlets covered when they first appear with a thick coat of long white hairs, villose during their first season, becoming glabrous in their second year, and armed with occasional thick straight bright chestnut-brown shining spines 2.5-5 cm. long.

Low rich soil usually on the bottom-lands of streams, near St. Clair, St. Clair County, *C. K. Dodge* (Nos. 16 and 16 B); Ypsilanti, *O. A. Farwell* (No. 1078), May 27, 1891, Hubbardston, *E. F. Smith* (No. 2); also Ohio to Nebraska, Missouri and Kansas.

2. **Crataegus nutans**, n. sp.

Leaves broadly ovate, acute, rounded or truncate at the entire base, coarsely serrate above with straight glandular teeth, and divided into 4 or 5 pairs of broad acute lateral lobes; about half-grown when the flowers open from the 20th to the 25th of May and then membranaceous, yellow-green and roughened above by short white hairs and villose-pubescent below especially along the midbibs, and at maturity very thin, yellow-green and scabrate on the upper surface, pale and still villose on the lower surface along the slender midribs and primary veins, 6-7.5 cm. long and 6-7 cm. wide. Flowers 2 cm. in diameter, on short slender hoary-tomentose pedicels on very long slender villose peduncles, in wide lax mostly 10-12-flowered corymbs, with oblong-obovate acute glandular bracts and bractlets fading brown and often persistent until the petals fall, the lower peduncles from the axils of upper leaves; calyx-tube narrowly obconic, coated with long matted pale hairs, the lobes slender, acuminate, finely glandular-serrate, glabrous on the outer, hoary-tomentose on the inner surface, reflexed after anthesis; stamens 20; anthers pale yellow; styles 4 or 5, surrounded at the base by a narrow ring of pale tomentum. Fruit ripening late in October or early in November, on short stout hairy pedicels on very long stout drooping villose stems, in many-fruited clusters, short-oblong to subglobose or slightly obovate, full and rounded at the ends, orange-red, lustrous, marked by occasional large dark lenticels, 1-1.2 cm. in diameter; calyx prominent, with a short tube, a wide deep cavity and erect or incurved lobes, usually deciduous before the fruit ripens; flesh thin, yellow, hard and dry; nutlets 4 or 5, thin, acute at the ends, rounded and slightly grooved on the back, about 7 mm. long and 5 mm. wide.

An arborescent shrub 5-7 m. high, with several stems covered with dark gray scaly bark, large spreading branches forming an open irregular head, slender branchlets, dull orange color, villose and marked by pale lenticels when they first appear, becoming light chestnut-brown covered with matted pale hairs and lustrous in their first season, lighter-colored and glabrous the following year and ultimately pale gray-brown.

Near Algonac, St. Clair County, *C. K. Dodge* (No. 47 type), Oct. 29, 1902, May 27, 1904; a single plant in an old and neglected hedge and no doubt brought from the neighborhood.

3. **Crataegus mollipes**, n. sp.

Leaves ovate, acute, rounded or occasionally slightly cordate or cuneate at the entire base, sharply serrate above, with long glandular teeth, and often slightly divided into 4-6 pairs of broad acute lateral lobes; more than half-grown when the flowers open usually about the 20th of May and then thin, dark yellow-green and slightly roughened above by short white hairs and pale and villose below along the midribs and veins, and at maturity thin, dark yellow-green, lustrous and scabrate on the upper surface, light yellow-green and soft-pubescent on the lower surface, 5-7 cm. long and 4-6.5 cm. wide, with stout villose midribs and thin villose primary veins extending obliquely to the points of the lobes; petioles slender, villose, 2.5-3.5 cm. in length; leaves on vigorous shoots thin, broad or abruptly narrowed, and rounded at the base, coarsely serrate, more deeply lobed and often 9-10 cm. long and 8-9 mm. wide, with slender petioles 4-4.5 cm. in length. Flowers not more than 1-1.1 cm. in diameter, on short stout pedicels coated with long matted white hairs, in compact mostly 7-10-flowered hairy corymbs, with obovate to linear glandular bracts and bractlets persistent until after the flowers open, the long slender lower peduncles from the axils of upper leaves; calyx-tube narrowly obconic, densely coated with hoary tomentum, the lobes short, acute, laciniately glandular-serrate, tomentose on the outer, villose on the inner surface, reflexed after anthesis; stamens 20; anthers pale yellow; styles 4 or 5. Fruit ripening late in September, on short stout hairy pedicels, in few-fruited drooping clusters, obovate, slightly narrowed at the apex, gradually narrowed to the often unsymmetrical base, scarlet, lustrous, marked by occasional large pale dots, densely pubescent at the ends, 1.4-1.5 cm. long and 8-9 mm. in diameter; calyx prominent, with a deep narrow cavity, and erect and incurved persistent lobes; flesh thin, yellow, rather hard; nutlets 4 or 5, acute at the ends or rounded at the apex, rounded and slightly grooved or obscurely ridged on the back, 6-6.5 mm. long and 4-4.5 mm. wide.

A bushy tree 6-7 m. high, with slender slightly zigzag branchlets, dark yellow-green, pubescent and marked by pale lenticels when they first appear, becoming chestnut-brown and lustrous in their first season and light orange-brown the following year, and armed with numerous slender nearly straight purplish shining spines 3-3.5 cm. long.

Moist soil near Grand Rapids, *E. J. Cole* (No. 121 type), May 25 and September 30, 1903, September 19, 1904.

This plant seems to be well distinguished from the other species of this group by its small, later flowers produced in small few-flowered corymbs, and from the other Michigan species of the group by its small leaves and distinctly obovate fruit.

4. **Crataegus sera,** Sargent, *Bot. Gazette*, xxxiii, 115 (1902); xxxv, 379; *Silva N. Am.*, xiii, 87, t. 661; *Man.*, 424, f. 342.

Leaves oblong-ovate, acute or acuminate, rounded, truncate or slightly cordate at the broad base, sharply and sometimes doubly serrate, with straight glandular teeth, and irregularly divided into 4 or 5 pairs of short acute lateral lobes; unfolding about the 1st of May with the opening of the flowers and then covered above with short soft white hairs and tomentose below, and at maturity thin, dark yellow-green and glabrous on the upper surface, pubescent on the lower surface, 5-10 cm. long and 6.5-7.5 cm. wide, with slender midribs, and thin remote primary veins extending to the points of the lobes; petioles slender, tomentose, ultimately pubescent, 2.5-3.5 cm. in length; leaves on vigorous shoots more deeply lobed and often 10-12.5 cm. long and 7-10 cm. wide. Flowers 1.8-2 cm. in diameter, on stout tomentose pedicels, in compact compound many-flowered tomentose corymbs; calyx-tube broadly obconic, coated with matted pale hairs, the lobes broad, acute or acuminate, glandular-serrate, with large dark glands, tomentose on the outer surface, villose on the inner surface, reflexed after anthesis; stamens 20; anthers pale yellow; styles 4 or usually 5. Fruit ripening about the 1st of October, on stout puberulous petioles, in drooping few-fruited clusters, obovate to short-oblong, dull dark red, marked by small pale dots, usually slightly villose or pubescent at the ends, 2-2.5 cm. long and 1.7-1.4 cm. in diameter; calyx prominent, with a wide deep cavity, and erect and incurved coarsely glandular-serrate lobes often deciduous before the ripening of the fruit; flesh thick, dry and mealy; nutlets usually 5, or 4, thin, acute at the ends, rounded and slightly grooved on the back, 7-7.5 mm. long and 4.5-5 mm. wide.

A tree 10-12 m. high, with a tall straight trunk 3-4.5 dm. in diameter, thick branches forming a broad round-topped symmetrical head, and stout branches hoary-tomentose when they first appear, becoming light red-brown and puberulous in their first season and ultimately pale orange-brown, and armed with occasional straight or slightly curved chestnut-brown lustrous spines 3-4 cm. long.

Low moist soil in the neighborhood of streams; Belle Isle, *C. S. Sargent,* (No. 2), May 23, 1899, September 25, 1901, *O. A. Farwell*, September, 1901, May 17, 1902; near Port Huron, *C. K. Dodge*, (Nos. 2, 2A, 33, 45, 46, 48, 50, 73, 86, 117, 123), 1901-1905; Grand Rapids, *E. J. Cole* and *C. S. Sargent,* September 25, 1901, *E. J. Cole*, (No. 130), May 9 and September 2, 1902, *E. J. Cole* and *C. S. Sargent*, September 25, 1901, *E. J. Cole,* May 14 and September 20, 1902; also in northern Illinois and western Ontario.

5. **Crataegus Ellwangeriana,** Sargent, *Bot. Gazette* xxxiii. 118 (1902); *Silva N. Am.* xiii. 109, t. 671; *Proc. Rochester Acad. Sci.* iv. 112; *Man.* 441, f. 359.

Leaves oval, acute, full and rounded or broadly cuneate at the entire base, coarsely and often doubly serrate above, with straight or incurved glandular teeth, and irregularly divided usually only above the middle into numerous short acute lobes; about half-grown when the flowers open the middle of May and then roughened above by short pale hairs and villose below along the slender midribs and primary veins, and at maturity thin, light green and scabrous on the upper surface, pale and nearly glabrous on the lower surface, 6-7 cm. long and 5-6 cm. wide; petioles slender, at first villose, becoming glabrous, 3.5-5 cm. in length; stipules oblong-obovate, acute, villose, coarsely glandular-serrate, often 3 cm. long, those of the upper leaves mostly persistent until after the ripening of the fruit. Flowers 2-7.4 cm. in diameter, on short stout hairy pedicels, in many-flowered densely villose corymbs; calyx-tube broadly obconic, the lobes elongated; lanceolate, glandular, with small pale stalked glands, villose; stamens 10, sometimes 8; anthers small, rose color; styles 3-5. Fruit ripening and falling at the end of September, on slender glabrous stems, in drooping slightly hairy many-fruited, crowded clusters, short-oblong, full and rounded at the ends, bright crimson, covered at the ends with scattered pale hairs, about 2.5 cm. long and 1.5-2 cm. in diameter; calyx little enlarged, the lobes elongated, glandular-serrate above the middle, villose on the inner surface, spreading or erect and incurved; flesh thin, yellow, juicy and acid; nutlets 3-5, gradually narrowed and acute at the ends and irregularly ridged or rounded and slightly grooved on the back, 6-6.5 mm. long and 4.4-5 mm. wide.

A tree sometimes 7 or 8 m. high, with a trunk often 3 dm. in diameter, covered with pale gray scaly bark, stout ascending branches forming a broad symmetrical head, and slender zigzag branchlets dark green and covered when they first appear with long matted pale hairs, becoming light chestnut-brown and slightly villose in their first season and dark chestnut-brown and very lustrous the following year, and armed with stout straight or somewhat curved dark chestnut-brown shining spines 4-5 cm. long.

Near Port Huron, *C. K. Dodge* (No. 22), May 25 and October 9, 1902, September 12, 1905, (No. 75), May 13 and 21 and September 6, 1903; also through Ontario to western New York.

## VI. FLABELLATAE.

Stamens 20; leaves ovate; pedicels glabrous; fruit obovate. 1. C. miranda.

Stamens 10 or less.
  Fruit on long drooping peduncles.
    Fruit obovate, narrowed to the long slender base, crimson; leaves deeply lobed. 2. C. lenta.
    Fruit oval or slightly obovate, orange-red; leaves slightly lobed. 3. C. pura.
  Fruit on erect or spreading peduncles.
    Fruit oval or slightly obovate; leaves oblong-ovate. 4. C. cæsa.
    Fruit short-oblong; leaves oval, concave. 5. C. Pringlei.

1. **Crataegus miranda,** n. sp.

Leaves ovate, long-pointed and acuminate at the apex, abruptly concave-cuneate or rounded at the base, sharply doubly serrate, and slightly divided into 4 or 5 pairs of small acuminate spreading lobes; about one-third grown when the flowers open at the end of May and then roughened above by short white hairs and glabrous below, and at maturity thin, light yellow-green and scabrate on the upper surface, pale yellow-green on the lower surface, 6-7 cm. long and 4.5-6 cm. wide, with slender orange-colored midribs, and thin primary veins extending obliquely to the points of the lobes; petioles slender, slightly wing-margined at the apex, glabrous, glandular, with minute persistent glands, 3-4 cm. in length; leaves on vigorous shoots long-pointed, gradually narrowed and cuneate at the base, often 8 cm. long and 6 cm. wide, with stout broadly-winged conspicuously glandular petioles. Flowers 1.8-2 cm. in diameter, on long stout slightly hairy pedicels, in narrow mostly 10-12-flowered corymbs; calyx-tube narrowly obconic, glabrous, the lobes slender, acuminate, often glandular-serrate, glabrous on the outer, slightly villose on the inner surface, reflexed after anthesis; stamens 15-20, rarely 20; anthers pink; styles 5, surrounded at the base by a narrow ring of pale tomentum. Fruit ripening late in September, on slender glabrous pedicels, in few fruited clusters, obovate, scarlet, lustrous, marked by small pale dots, 1.2-1.4 cm. long, about 1 cm. in diameter; calyx little enlarged, with a deep narrow cavity, and reflexed closely appressed lobes; flesh thick, sweet and succulent; nutlets 5, thin, acute at the ends, slightly grooved on the back, 6 mm. long and 4.5-5 mm. wide.

An arborescent shrub 7-8 m. high, with numerous small stems, large ascending branches forming an open head, and stout slightly zigzag glabrous branchlets dark orange-green when they first appear, becoming dull reddish-brown and marked by small pale lenticels in their first season and pale gray-brown in their second year, and armed with slender nearly straight chestnut-brown shining ultimately gray spines, 4-5 cm. long, very numerous, persistent and compound on old stems.

Port Huron, *C. K. Dodge* (No. 26 A), May 20 and October 20, 1903, May 22, 1905, (No. 61), May 20 and September 13, 1903, May 22, 1905; also on the shores of the St. Clair River below Sarnia, Ontaria, *C. K. Dodge* (No. 99 type).

2. **Crataegus lenta**, Ashe, *Jour. Elisha Mitchell Sci. Soc.*, xviii, 18 (1902).

Leaves oval to ovate, long-pointed and acuminate at the apex, gradually or abruptly narrowed and concave-cuneate at the entire base, sharply doubly serrate above, with slender straight or incurved glandular teeth, and deeply divided into 6-8 pairs of narrow acuminate spreading or recurved lobes; nearly half-grown when the flowers open about the 20th of May and then membranaceous, yellow-green and roughened above by short white hairs and paler and slightly hairy below along the midribs and primary veins, and at maturity thin but firm in texture, bluish green and glabrous on the upper surface and nearly glabrous on the lower surface, 7-9 cm. long and 5-6 mm. wide, with slender yellow midribs, and primary veins extending obliquely to the points of the lobes; petioles very slender, slightly wing-margined at the apex, villose while young on the upper side, soon glabrous, 2.5-3.5 cm. in length; leaves on vigorous shoots ovate, acuminate, abruptly cuneate or rounded at the broad base, coarsely serrate, deeply lobed, often 9-10 cm. long and 8-9 cm. wide, with stout conspicuously glandular petioles. Flowers 1.6-1.8 cm. in diameter, on slender slightly hairy pedicels, in wide lax mostly 10-15 flowered corymbs, with conspicuous oblong-obovate glandular bracts and bractlets fading brown and generally persistent until after the flowers open; stamens 5-10, usually 5-7; anthers dark rose color; styles 3 or 4, surrounded at the base by a narrow ring of pale hairs. Fruit ripening the middle of September, on stout glabrous pedicels, on long drooping peduncles, obovate, slightly narrowed at the rounded apex, gradually narrowed from above the middle to the long slender base, crimson, lustrous, marked by large pale dots, 1.4-1.6 cm. long and 9-10 mm. in diameter; calyx little enlarged, with a narrow deep cavity and erect and incurved lobes generally persistent on the ripe fruit; flesh thick, pale yellow, sweet and juicy; nutlets 3 or 4, narrowed and rounded at the ends or acute at the apex, ridged on the back, with a broad low ridge, 7-8 mm. long and about 5 mm. wide.

An arborescent shrub, 7-8 m. high, with stout stems covered with pale scaly bark, stout, erect and spreading branches forming a broad open irregular head, and slender zigzag glabrous branchlets, light orange color and marked by pale lenticels when they first appear, becoming light chestnut-brown and lustrous in their first season and dull gray brown the following year, and armed with slender straight or slightly curved purplish spines 2-3 cm. long, persistent and branched on old stems.

Near Port Huron, *C. K. Dodge,* (No. 24 type-tree), May 25 and October 9, 1902, May 18 and October 13, 1903, September 12, 1905, (No. 24 A), May 26 and October 9, 1902, May 26 and October 13, 1903, (No. 24 B), May 27 and September 27, 1905, (No. 118), September 22, 1904, May 22, 1905.

3. **Crataegus pura,** n. sp.

Leaves oblong-ovate, acute or acuminate at the apex, abruptly cuneate or rounded at the broad entire base, coarsely often doubly serrate above. with straight glandular teeth, and slightly divided into 4 or 5 pairs of small acuminate spreading lateral lobes; about half-grown when the flowers open the midle of May and then thin, yellow-green, roughened above by short white hairs and glabrous below with the exception of a few short persistent hairs at the base of the primary veins, and at maturity thin but firm in texture, dark yellow-green, lustrous and scabrate on the upper surface, pale on the lower surface, 6-8 cm. long and 4.5-6.5 cm. wide, with stout orange-colored midribs, and thin primary veins extending obliquely to the points of the lobes; petioles slender, slightly villose, often glandular toward the apex, 2.5-3 cm. in length. Flowers 1.6-1.8 cm. in diameter, on slender villose pedicels, in very compact hairy mostly 6- or 7-flowered corymbs, the lower peduncles from the axils of upper leaves; calyx-tube narrowly obconic, glabrous, the lobes wide, acuminate, glandular-serrate, glabrous on the outer, villose on the inner surface, reflexed after anthesis; stamens 7 or 8; anthers dark rose color; styles 3 or 4, surrounded at the base by a narrow ring of pale tomentum. Fruit ripening about the 10th of September and usually persistent until the end of the month, on slender villose drooping pedicels, in few-fruited clusters, oval to slightly obovate, bright orange-red, marked by small dark dots, 1.3-1.5 cm. long, 8-10 mm. in diameter; calyx prominent, with a wide shallow cavity, and erect and incurved persistent lobes; flesh thin, yellow, rather soft; nutlets 3 or 4, acute at the ends, slightly ridged on the back, with a low narrow ridge, 8.5-9 mm. long and 4-4.5 mm. wide.

A broad shrub 4 or 5 m. high, with stems covered with dark gray scaly bark, and stout slightly zigzag branchlets dark green, pubescent and marked by pale lenticels when they first appear, becoming light chestnut-brown and lustrous in their first season and dark gray-brown the following year, and armed with occasional stout nearly straight chestnut-brown ultimately dark gray spines 3.5-4 cm. long.

Moist soil near Grand Rapids, *E. J. Cole* (No. 28 type), May 15 and September 9, 1902, May 15 and September 9, 1904, (No. 149-1) May 17, 1903, May 17 and September 5, 1904, (No. 155) September 21, 1904, May 17, 1905.

4. **Crataegus caesa**, Ashe, *Jour. Elisha Mitchell Sci. Soc.* xviii. 24 (1902).

Leaves ovate, acute or acuminate at the apex, rounded or abruptly cuneate at the broad base, sharply doubly serrate, and slightly divided into 5 or 6 pairs of small acuminate lateral lobes; more than half-grown when the flowers open about the 20th of May and then thin, yellow-green, roughened above by short white hairs and nearly glabrous below, and at maturity thin but firm in texture, dull dark green and smooth on the upper surface, paler and slightly villose on the lower surface along the thin prominent midribs and primary veins deeply impressed on the upper side of the leaf, 6-7 cm. long and 4-5 cm. wide; petioles slender, slightly wing-margined at the apex, villose while young, becoming nearly glabrous, 1.5-2 cm. in length; leaves on vigorous shoots broadly ovate, rounded or cordate at the base, often 7-8 cm. long and 5-6 cm. wide. Flowers 1.8-2 cm. in diameter, on slender slightly villose pedicels, in compact mostly 10-12-flowered hairy corymbs, with lanceolate often falcate glandular bracts and bractlets often persistent until after the flowers open, the lower peduncles from the axils of upper leaves; calyx-tube narrowly obconic, glabrous, the lobes gradually narrowed from the base, acuminate, glandular-serrate, glabrous on the outer, villose on the inner surface, reflexed after anthesis; stamens usually 10; anthers dark rose color; styles 2-4, surrounded at the base by a narrow ring of pale hairs. Fruit ripening about the 10th of October, on stout erect slightly hairy pedicels, in 4 or 5-fruited clusters, short-oblong to slightly obovate, full and rounded at the apex, concave at the insertion of the pedicel, scarlet, lustrous, marked by numerous pale dots, about 1 cm. long and 9-9.5 mm. in diameter; calyx prominent, with a deep narrow cavity, and elongated erect and slightly incurved persistent lobes; flesh thick, yellow, sweet and juicy; nutlets 3 or 4, narrowed and rounded at the ends or acute at the apex, ridged on the back, with a high narrow ridge, 7-8 mm. long and 5-5.5 mm. wide.

A tree 7-8 m. high, with a trunk from 2-2.5 dm. in diameter covered with dark scaly bark, stout spreading or ascending branches forming a broad open irregular head, and slender nearly straight branchlets, light orange-green when they first appear, becoming light chestnut-brown, lustrous and marked by pale lenticels in their first season and dark gray the following year, and armed with few stout nearly straight gray-brown spines 2.5-3 cm. long, becoming branched and persistent on old stems.

Border of woods in sandy soil near the shores of the St. Clair River at Port Huron, *C. K. Dodge* (No. 49; type tree), May 25 and October 9, 1902, May 18 and October 13, 1903, (No. 22 A) May 25 and October 9, 1902, May 18 and October 13, 1903, (No. 34) May 25 and October 9, 1903, (No. 36) May 25 and October 9, 1902, (No. 41) May 20 and September 18, 1903, (No. 65 with 6-9 stamens) May 15 and September 6, 1903 (No.

77) May 29 and September 28, 1904; near Grand Rapids, *E. J. Cole* (No. 40), May 15 and September 7, 1905.

5. **Crataegus Pringlei**, Sargent, *Rhodora,* iii, 21 (1901); *Silva N. Am.* xii, 111, t. 672; *Proc. Rochester Acad. Sci.*, iv, 112; *Man.*, 446 f. 363.

Leaves oval, acute, rounded or often abruptly narrowed and cuneate at the base, coarsely and often doubly serrate, with glandular teeth, and occasionally irregularly divided above the middle into short broad acute lobes; as they unfold covered with soft white hairs and more or less tinged with red, when the flowers open, usually in the last week of May, roughened above by short closely appressed pale hairs and glabrous below with the exception of a few hairs on the slender midribs and remote primary veins, and at maturity thin, glabrous, bright yellow-green on the upper surface, pale on the lower surface, 5-6 cm. long, 4.5-5 cm. wide, usually conspicuously concave by the gradual turning down of the blades from the midribs to the margins, and drooping on long thin slender glandular petioles, at first villose, becoming glabrous, and 2.5-4 cm. in length; leaves on vigorous shoots sometimes truncate or slightly cordate at the base and frequently 7.5 to 8 cm. long and broad. Flowers about 2 cm. in diameter, on stout hairy pedicels, in many-flowered compound villose corymbs; calyx-tube narrowly obconic, villose particularly toward the base, the lobes narrow, acuminate, coarsely glandular-serrate, villose, or sometimes glabrous on the outer surface, reflexed after anthesis; stamens 10, occasionally 5-10; anthers small, dark rose color; styles 3-5, surrounded at the base by conspicuous tufts of pale tomentum. Fruit ripening and falling late in September or early in October, on stout hairy pedicels, in erect mostly few-fruited clusters, short-oblong, dark dull red and marked by occasional dark dots, hairy at the ends, with long scattered pale hairs, about 2 cm. long and 1.5-1.6 cm. in diameter; calyx little enlarged, with a deep narrow cavity, and acuminate glandular-serrate, usually persistent lobes gradually narrowed from broad bases and spreading or often erect; flesh thick, yellow, dry and acid; nutlets 3-5, gradually narrow or acute at the ends or rounded at the apex, rounded and slightly ridged on the back, 7-7.5 mm. long and 4.5-5 mm. wide.

A tree occasionally 8 m. high, with a tall trunk 2.5-3 dm. in diameter, with thin bark readily separating into large flakes covered by small loose dark red-brown scales, stout branches forming a wide symmetrical head, and slightly zigzag branchlets at first dark green and villose, soon becoming glabrous, chestnut-brown and lustrous, and bright orange-brown in their second year, and armed with thick straight or somewhat curved chestnut-brown spines often 3-4 cm. long.

Agricultural College, *C. F. Wheeler* (No. 8), September 28, 1898; near Port Huron, *C. K. Dodge,* (No. 51), May 27, 1904; also southern New Hampshire through southern Vermont to western Massachusetts, western New York, and northeastern Illinois.

### VII. INTRICATAE.

Stamens at least 10.
  Anthers pale yellow.
    Fruit obovate, orange color. 1. C. Wheeleri.
    Fruit short-oblong, crimson. 2. C. pusilla.
  Anthers rose color; fruit short-oblong, dark orange-red. 3. C. Bealii.
Stamens 5-8; anthers pale yellow; fruit subglobose to short-oblong, dull yellow. 4. C. flavida.

1. **Crataegus Wheeleri**, n. sp.

Glabrous with the exception of a few soft caducous hairs on the upper surface of the young leaves. Leaves ovate to oval, acuminate, gradually or abruptly narrowed and concave-cuneate at the entire or glandular base, finely doubly serrate above, with straight glandular teeth, and divided into 3 or 4 pairs of short acute lateral lobes; nearly fully grown when the flowers open about the 1st of June and then thin, yellow-green, slightly hairy above, with soft caducous hairs most abundant on the midribs and veins, and at maturity thin, yellow-green, smooth and lustrous on the upper surface, pale on the lower surface, 3.5-4.5 cm. long and 2.5-3.5 cm. wide, with slender orange-colored midribs, and thin primary veins arching obliquely to the points of the lobes; petioles slender, slightly wing-margined at the apex, sparingly hairy on the upper side while young, soon glabrous, glandular, with minute persistent glands, often rose-colored in the autumn, 1-1.4 cm. in length. Flowers 1.5-1.8 cm. in diameter, on slender pedicels, in compact mostly 4- or 5-flowered corymbs, with obovate to linear glandular bracts and bractlets fading brown and usually persistent until the flowers open, the lower peduncles from the axils of upper leaves; calyx-tube narrowly obconic, the lobes slender, acuminate, glandular-serrate above the middle, reflexed after anthesis; stamens 10; anthers pale yellow; styles 3 or 4. Fruit ripening the end of September, on long slender erect stems, in usually 3- or 4-fruited clusters, obovate, full and rounded at the apex, gradually or abruptly narrowed at the base, bright orange color, lustrous, marked by occasional large dark dots, 1-1.2 cm. long and 8-9 mm. in diameter; calyx little enlarged, with a wide deep cavity, and elongated closely appressed often deciduous lobes; flesh thin, dark yellow-green, dry and mealy; nutlets 3 or 4, full and rounded at the ends, ridged on the back, with a broad low grooved ridge, 7-7.5 mm. long and 4.5-5 mm. wide.

A shrub 5-10 dm. high, with slender slightly zigzag branchlets dark orange-green and marked by pale lenticels when they first appear, becoming light chestnut-brown and lustrous in their first season and dull gray-brown the following year, and armed with very slender straight purplish shining spines 2-4 cm. long.

Dry sandy soil, near Grand Rapids, *E. J. Cole* (No. 102-1 type), September 25, 1904, June 3, 1905, (No. 102), May 25, 1901, September 10, 1902.

This species is named for Charles F. Wheeler, a critical student of the plants of Michigan, long an associate of Professor Beal at the Michigan Agricultural College and with him the author of a *Flora of Michigan.*

2. **Crataegus pusilla**, n. sp.

Glabrous with the exception of a few hairs on the upper surface of the young leaves and on the inner surface of the calyx-lobes. Leaves oblong-ovate, acuminate, gradually or abruptly narrowed and concave-cuneate at the entire glandular base, finely doubly serrate above, with straight glandular teeth, and slightly divided into 4 or 5 pairs of small acute lobes; nearly fully grown when the flowers open during the first week of June and then yellow-green, smooth, lustrous and villose along the midribs and veins above and pale below, and at maturity thin, yellow-green, 4.5-5 cm. long and 3-3.5 cm. wide, with thin yellow midribs and primary veins; petioles slender, narrowly wing-margined sometimes nearly to the middle, glandular, with bright red glands, 1-2 cm. in length; leaves on vigorous shoots broadly ovate and often deeply lobed. Flowers 1.8-2 cm. in diameter, on long slender pedicels, in mostly 5-7 flowered corymbs, with linear-obovate to linear glandular-hispid rose-colored bracts and bractlets often persistent until after the flowers open; calyx-tube narrowly obconic, the lobes slender, acute, glandular-serrate, slightly villose on the inner surface, reflexed after anthesis; stamens 10; anthers pale yellow; styles 3 or 4, surrounded at the base by a ring of short white hairs. Fruit ripening early in October, on stout erect stems, in 2- or 3-fruited clusters, short-oblong, full and rounded at the ends, crimson, more or less blotched with green, lustrous, marked by large dark dots, 1.2-1.4 cm. in diameter; calyx prominent, with a deep narrow cavity, and spreading often persistent lobes; flesh thin, yellow, hard and dry; nutlets 3 or 4, gradually narrowed to the rounded ends, rounded and only slightly ridged on the back, about 6 mm. long, and 3.5-4 mm. wide.

A shrub 5-10 m. high, with slender nearly straight branchlets dark orange-green tinged with red when they first appear, becoming light chestnut-brown, lustrous and marked by dark lenticels during their first season and dull reddish-brown the following year, and armed with stout straight red-brown spines 2.5-3 cm. long.

Dry soil near Grand Rapids, *E. J. Cole* (Nos. 66-2 type, 66-1, 66-3), September 25, 1904, June 3, 1905.

3. **Crataegus Bealii**, n. sp.

Glabrous with the exception of the hairs on the young leaves. Leaves ovate to oval, acute or acuminate at the apex, rounded or abruptly cuneate at the broad entire or glandular base, doubly serrate above, with broad glandular teeth, and slightly divided into 3 or 4 pairs of short broad lateral lobes, about half-grown when the flowers open at the end of May and then thin, yellow-green and glabrous with the exception of a few soft caducous hairs along the upper side of the midribs and veins, and at maturity thick and firm to subcoriaceous, very dark yellow-green, smooth and lustrous on the upper surface, pale yellow-green on the lower surface, 5-8 cm. long and 4-7 cm. wide, with stout orange-colored midribs, and very thin primary veins extending to the points of the lobes; petioles stout, slightly wing-margined at the apex, villose along the upper side while young, soon becoming glabrous, glandular, with numerous persistent glands, often rose color in the autumn, 2-3 cm. in length; leaves on vigorous shoots coriaceous, coarsely serrate, more deeply lobed, often 8-9 cm. long and 7-8 cm. wide, with thick rose-colored midribs, stout petioles winged nearly to the base, with broad glandular-serrate wings, and foliaceous lunate coarsely glandular-serrate persistent stipules. Flowers 1.4-1.5 cm. in diameter, on long slender pedicels, in mostly 5-8-flowered narrow corymbs, with large oblong-obovate glandular-hispid rose-colored bracts and bractlets persistent until the flowers open, the long lower peduncles from the axils of upper leaves; stamens usually 10, rarely 10-16; anthers pink; styles 3-5, surrounded at the base by a broad ring of pale tomentum. Fruit ripening the end of September, on long stout erect pedicels, in few-fruited clusters, short-oblong to subglobose, dark orange-red, lustrous, marked by many large dark dots, 1-1.2 cm. long and about 1 cm. in diameter; calyx very prominent, with a wide deep cavity, enlarged spreading and often slightly incurved persistent lobes dark red on the upper side below the middle; flesh thin, yellow-green, hard and dry; nutlets 3-5, gradually narrowed and rounded at the ends, or when 5, acute at the ends, ridged on the back with a high narrow ridge, 7-8 mm. long and 4-5 mm. wide.

A shrub 1-2 m. high, with stout erect stems, and stout apparently unarmed branchlets light orange-green and marked by pale lenticels when they first appear, becoming bright chestnut-brown and lustrous in their first season, or when very vigorous light reddish brown.

Roadsides in dry sandy soil near Grand Rapids, *E. J. Cole* (No. 116 type), May 30 and June 2, 1901, May 30 and September 9, 1902, *E. J. Cole* and *C. S. Sargent,* September 25, 1901, *E. J. Cole* (No. 116-1), May 27 and September 9, 1902 (No. 46), June 2, 1901, (No. 46-1), September 13, 1902, (No. 103), May 25, 1901, and September 8, 1902.

This distinct and handsome species is named for William J. Beal, the distinguished professor of botany at the Agricultural College of Michigan, an authority on Grasses, and the author of many important works on the flora of the state.

4. **Crataegus flavida,** n. sp.

Glabrous with the exception of the short rigid white caducous hairs on the upper surface of the unfolding leaves. Leaves oblong-obovate, acute, gradually narrowed and concave-cuneate at the entire base, finely serrate above, with straight glandular teeth, and slightly divided above the middle into 3 or 4 pairs of small acute lobes; nearly fully grown when the flowers open about the first of June and then thin, glabrous and yellow-green, and at maturity thin but firm in texture, yellow-green, paler on the lower than on the upper surface, 3.5-4 cm. long and 1.5-3 cm. wide, with thin yellow midribs and primary veins; petioles slender, narrowly wing-margined at the apex, occasionally glandular, often rose color in the autumn, 1.5-2 cm. in length; leaves on vigorous shoots subcoriaceous, broadly ovate to semiorbicular, short-pointed at the apex, rounded or cuneate at the base, coarsely serrate, more deeply lobed, with broad acuminate lobes, often 5-6 cm. long and wide, with stout broadly winged petioles. Flowers about 1.5 cm. in diameter, on long slender pedicels, in mostly 7-12-flowered lax corymbs, the lower peduncle from the axil of an upper leaf; stamens 5-8; anthers pale yellow; styles 3-5. Fruit ripening at the end of September, on long spreading or erect pedicels, in few-fruited clusters, subglobose to short-oblong, full and rounded at the ends, dull yellow or orange-yellow, occasionally slightly tinged with red, 1-1.2 cm. in diameter, sometimes rather broader than high; calyx little enlarged, with a wide shallow cavity, and spreading appressed usually persistent lobes; flesh thin, yellow-green, dry and mealy; nutlets 3-5, full and rounded or when 5 narrowed at the ends, ridged on the back, with a high broad ridge, 6-7 mm. long and about 5 mm. wide.

A shrub 2-3 m. high, with numerous intricately branched stems covered with ashy gray bark and forming a wide dense head, and stout slightly zigzag branchlets light orange-green tinged with red when they first appear, becoming light chestnut-brown, lustrous and marked by small pale lenticels in their first season and dull reddish brown the following year, and armed with numerous slender nearly straight purplish shining spines 4.5-5.5 cm. long.

Near St. Clair, *C. K. Dodge* (Nos. 9 A, 102, 108, 113, 127, 134 and 20), 1903-1906; also near London, Ontario.

### VIII. COCCINEAE.

Stamens 10 or less; anthers pale yellow. 1. C. Dodgei.

1. **Crataegus Dodgei**, Ashe, *Jour. Elisha Mitchell, Sci. Soc.*, xix. 26 (March, 1903). Sargent, *Proc. Phil. Acad. Sci.*, 1905, 632; *Rhodora*, vii. 213.

*Crataegus Gravesii*, Sargent, *Rhodora*, v. 159 (June, 1903).

*Crataegus fallens*, Gruber, *Proc. Berks County Nat. Sci. Club*, i. 19 (October, 1903).

Glabrous with the exception of a few hairs on the inner surface of the calyx-lobes. Leaves broadly obovate, acute, gradually narrowed and concave-cuneate at the entire base, finely serrate above, with straight or incurved glandular teeth, and divided above the middle into 4 or 5 pairs of short broad acute lobes; slightly tinged with red when they unfold, nearly fully grown when the flowers open at the end of May and then thin and yellow-green, and at maturity thin but firm in texture, dark yellow-green and lustrous on the upper surface, paler on the lower surface, 3-4 cm. long and 2-3 cm. wide, with slender midribs, and thin primary veins extending obliquely to the points of the lobes; petioles slender, slightly wing-margined at the apex, occasionally glandular while young, with minute caducous red glands, 1.5-2 cm. in length; leaves on vigorous shoots thicker, ovate, coarsely serrate, more deeply lobed and often 4-5 cm. long and broad. Flowers 1.2-1.4 cm. in diameter, on slender pedicels, in compact mostly 10-12-flowered corymbs, the lower peduncles from the axils of upper leaves; calyx-tube narrowly obconic, the lobes slender, acuminate, minutely glandular-serrate, reflexed after anthesis; stamens 7-10, usually 10; anthers pale yellow; styles 2 or 3, surrounded at the base by a broad ring of pale tomentum. Fruit ripening in October, on short stout red spreading pedicels, in few-fruited clusters, subglobose to short-oblong, crimson, lustrous, marked by small pale dots, 1-1.2 cm. in diameter; calyx little enlarged, with a deep narrow cavity, and small spreading incurved lobes dark red on the upper side toward the base and generally persistent on the ripe fruit; flesh thick, yellow, dry and mealy; nutlets 2 or 3, full and rounded at the ends, ridged on the back, with a broad grooved ridge, 5-6 mm. long and 3.5-4 mm. wide.

A broad round-topped shrub 2-3 m. high, with stout intricately branched stems covered with dark scaly bark, and slender nearly straight branchlets light orange-green and marked by small pale lenticels when they first appear, becoming bright chestnut-brown and lustrous in their first season and dull reddish brown the following year, and armed with numerous stout straight or slightly curved purplish shining spines 2.5-5.5 cm. long.

Sandy soil near Port Huron and St. Clair, St. Clair County, Michigan, common, *C. K. Dodge* (No. 6), May 21 and October 24, 1903, (No. 9), May 19 and September 24, 1903, (No. 109), October 2, 1904, May 28, 1905, (No. 124), June 4, 1905, (No. 126), May 26, 1905, (No. 134), September 21, 1905, May 29, 1906. Agricultural College, *W. J. Beal,* (Nos. 6 and 26), 1900 and 1901; Grand Rapids, *E. J. Cole,* (Nos. 126 and 126-1), 1901 and 1902; also through Ontario and western New York to eastern Massachusetts, southern Connecticut and eastern Pennsylvania.

With this species, which is now known to be one of the most widely distributed Thorns of the northern states, Mr. Ashe has associated the name of C. K. Dodge of Port Huron who for several years has carefully and systematically studied Crataegus in St. Clair County.

Crataegus Dodgei, var. lumaria, n. var.
*Crataegus lumaria,* Ashe, *Jour. Elisha Mitchell Sci. Soc.,* xix. 25 (1903).
Port Huron, *C. K. Dodge* (No. 35 type plant), May 25 and October 9, 1902, May 25 and October 3, 1903, May 31, 1905.

*Crataegus lumaria* was established on a single small shrub growing in sandy soil within the limits of the city of Port Huron, and although it differs from *C. Dodgei,* which is common in this region, in its slightly villose pedicels, rather less lustrous leaves and somewhat smaller fruit, it may perhaps best be considered a variety of that species, at least until other individuals are found.

### IX. ANOMALAE.

Stamens usually 20; anthers pale pink.
  Leaves broadly ovate to rhombic or obovate; fruit short-oblong. 1. C. urbana.
  Leaves ovate to oval; fruit subglobose, sometimes broader than high. 2. C. Coleæ.
Stamens 5-10; anthers light rose color.
  Leaves ovate, usually rounded or truncate at the broad base; pedicels densely villose; fruit subglobose, not more than 8 mm. in diameter. 3. C. honesta.
  Leaves oblong-ovate to oval, usually cuneate at the base; pedicels slightly villose; fruit short-oblong, 1-1.2 cm. long. 4. C. pinguis.

1. **Crataegus urbana,** n. sp.

Glabrous with the exception of the hairs on the upper surface of the young leaves. Leaves broadly ovate to rhombic or obovate, acute or acuminate at the apex, abruptly cuneate or more rarely rounded at the entire base, sharply doubly serrate above, with glandular teeth, and divided usually only above the middle into 3 or 4 pairs of short acute lobes; more than half-grown when the flowers open from the 15th to the 20th of May and then thin, yellow-green, lustrous and roughened above by short glistening white hairs, and pale bluish green below, and at maturity thin but firm in texture, dark yellow-green, smooth and lustrous on the upper surface, pale on the lower surface, 4.5-7 cm. long and 3.5-5.5 cm. wide, with thin yellow midribs and primary veins; petioles slender, wing-margined at the apex, glandular, with occasional minute glands, 2-2.5 cm. in length, leaves on vigorous shoots ovate to oval, long-pointed and acuminate at the apex, usually gradually narrowed and rounded at the base, more deeply lobed, often 7-8 cm. long and 5-6 cm. wide. Flowers 1.8-2 cm. in diameter, on long slender pedicels, in broad mostly 15-20-flowered crowded corymbs, the lower peduncles from the axils of upper leaves; calyx-tube narrowly obconic, the lobes slender, acuminate, finely glandular-serrate, reflexed after anthesis; stamens 13-20, usually 20; anthers pale pink; styles 2 or 3, surrounded at the base by a broad ring of lustrous white hairs. Fruit ripening the end of September, on long slender drooping pedicels, in few-fruited clusters, short-oblong, full and rounded at the ends, crimson, lustrous, marked by large pale dots, 1.1-1.3 cm. long and 9-10 mm. in diameter; calyx little enlarged, with a deep narrow cavity, and spreading something slightly incurved persistent lobes; flesh thin, yellow, rather juicy; nutlets 2 or 3, usually 3, full and rounded at the ends, ridged on the back with a low slightly grooved ridge, marked on the inner faces by large shallow depressions, 6-7 mm. long and 3.5-4 mm. wide.

A shrub 3-4 m. high, with numerous stems spreading into broad thickets, and stout nearly straight branchlets dark orange-green and marked by pale lenticels when they first appear, becoming light chestnut-brown and very lustrous in their first season and dull reddish-brown the following year, and armed with many stout straight or slightly curved chestnut-brown shining spines 3-5 cm. long.

Moist ground near Grand Rapids, *E. J. Cole* (No. 3 type), May 20, 1901, September 20, 1903, (Nos. 3-1 and 3-2), May 16, 1901, September 20, 1901, (No. 6), May 20, 1901 and September 5, 1904.

2. **Crataegus Coleae,** Sargent, *Trees and Shrubs*, i. 7, t. 4 (1902).

Glabrous with the exception of the hairs on the upper surface of the young leaves and on the calyx-lobes. Leaves ovate to oval, acute, abruptly cuneate at the broad entire base, finely often doubly serrate above, with incurved glandular teeth, and divided into numerous short acute lateral lobes; more than half-grown when the flowers open about the 20th of May and then bright yellow and lustrous above and pale below, and at maturity thin, dark green and lustrous on the upper surface, pale and somewhat glaucous on the lower surface, 4.5-5 cm. long and 3-3.5 cm. wide; petioles slender, slightly wing-margined at the apex, 1.2-1.5 cm. in length; stipules linear, coarsely glandular-serrate, caducous; leaves on vigorous shoots often rounded at the broad base, more coarsely serrate and more deeply lobed. Flowers 1.8-2 cm. in diameter, on long slender pedicels, in broad mostly 8-12 flowered corymbs, with linear-obovate to linear conspicuously glandular-serrate caducous bracts and bractlets, the lower peduncles from the axils of upper leaves; calyx-tube broadly obconic, the lobes gradually narrowed from wide bases, acuminate, glandular-serrate, with small bright red stipitate glands, villose on the inner surface particularly toward the base, reflexed after anthesis; stamens 18-20; anthers large, tinged with pink; styles 2-5, usually 2-4, surrounded at the base by a broad ring of pale tomentum. Fruit ripening the end of September, on slender drooping stems, in many-fruited clusters, subglobose but often somewhat broader than high, bright orange-red marked by small pale dots, 8-10 mm. in diameter; calyx enlarged and prominent, with a broad deep tube and elongated reflexed lobes sometimes deciduous before the fruit falls; nutlets 2-5, broad, full and rounded at the ends, prominently ridged on the back, with a high broad ridge, slightly penetrated by shallow depressions, 7-8 mm. long.

A broad treelike shrub 4-5 m. high, with numerous stout spreading stems covered with close dark bark, and slender nearly straight or slightly zigzag branchlets marked by oblong pale lenticels, light yellow-green when they first appear, bright red-brown and very lustrous during their first season and dark gray-brown the following year, and armed with numerous stout nearly straight lustrous spines 2.5-4.5 cm. long and often pointed toward the base of the branch.

Hillsides in rich moist soil near Grand Rapids, *E. J. Cole* (No. 8-1 type), May and September, 1901.

This handsome shrub is named for Miss E. J. Cole of Grand Rapids, the author of *The Grand Rapids Flora* and a careful and industrious student of the plants of southern Michigan, where she has made a number of other important discoveries.

3. **Crataegus honesta**, n. sp.

Leaves ovate, acuminate, cuneate, rounded or truncate at the broad base, finely often doubly serrate above, with straight glandular teeth, and divided into 5 or 6 pairs of narrow acuminate spreading lateral lobes, not more than one-third grown when the flowers open about the middle of May and then membranaceous, yellow-green and roughened above by short white hairs and glabrous below, and at maturity thin, yellow-green and scabrate on the upper surface, pale yellow-green on the lower surface, 4.5-5 cm. long and 3.5-4 cm. wide, with thin yellow midribs and primary veins; petioles slender, slightly wing-margined at the apex, glabrous, occasionally glandular, 1.5-2.5 cm. in length; leaves on vigorous shoots broadly ovate, gradually narrowed and rounded at the base, more coarsely serrate and more deeply lobed, often 5-6 cm. long and 4.5-5 cm. wide, with stout broad-winged petioles. Flowers 1-1.2 cm. in diameter, on slender densely villose pedicels, in compact hairy mostly 10-15-flowered corymbs, the lower peduncles from the axils of upper leaves; calyx-tube narrowly obconic, hairy at the base, glabrous above, the lobes slender, elongated, acuminate, irregularly glandular-dentate usually only above the middle or entire, glabrous on the outer, villose on the inner surface, reflexed after anthesis; stamens 5-10; anthers light rose color; styles 2-4. Fruit ripening early in September, on stout still slightly hairy pedicels, in broad drooping clusters, subglobose or a little longer than broad, cherry red, lustrous, marked by pale dots, 7-8 mm. in diameter; calyx prominent with a broad shallow cavity, a long spreading often incurved generally persistent lobes; flesh thin, yellow, dry and hard; nutlets 2-4, full and rounded at the ends, or when more than 2, narrowed at the apex, ridged on the back, with a broad high deeply grooved ridge, marked on the inner faces by broad depressions, 6.5-7 mm. long and 3.5-4 mm. wide.

A shrub 2-3 m. high, with stout slightly zigzag branchlets, dark orange-green and sparingly villose when they first appear, soon glabrous, becoming light chestnut-brown and marked by small pale lenticels in their first season and dull reddish brown the following year, and armed with numerous stout nearly straight chestnut-brown shining spines 2.5-3 cm. long.

Low moist soil near Grand Rapids, *E. J. Cole* (No. 4 type) May 16, 1901, September 5, 1904 (No. 5), May 16, 1901, May 24 and September 5, 1904.

4. **Crataegus pinguis,** n. sp.

Leaves oblong-ovate to oval, acuminate, abruptly cuneate or rounded at the entire base, sharply doubly serrate above, with straight glandular teeth, and very slightly divided into 5 or 6 pairs of small acute lateral lobes; not more than one-third grown when the flowers open from the 10th to the 15th of May, and then membranaceous, yellow-green and roughened above by short rigid white hairs and glabrous below, and at maturity very thin, yellow-green, lustrous and scabrate on the upper surface and paler on the lower surface, 5-5.7 cm. long and 5-6 cm. wide, with slender yellow midribs, and 5 or 6 pairs of thin primary veins arching obliquely to the points of the lobes; petioles slender, slightly wing-margined at the apex, sparingly villose while young, soon becoming glabrous, often rose color in the autumn, 2.5-3 cm. in length. Flowers 8-10 mm. in diameter, on very slender slightly villose pedicels, in wide hairy mostly 10-15-flowered corymbs, with small linear-obovate to linear-glandular bracts and bractlets fading brown and often persistent until the flowers open, the long slender lower peduncles from the axils of upper leaves; calyx-tube narrowly obconic, covered with long scattered pale hairs, the lobes small, acuminate and rose-colored at the apex, finely glandular-serrate, glabrous on the outer, slightly hairy on the inner surface, reflexed after anthesis; stamens 5 or 6; anthers dark rose color; styles 2 or 3. Fruit ripening the end of September, on long slender reddish spreading or erect stems, in few-fruited clusters, short-oblong, full and rounded at the ends, crimson, slightly pruinose, becoming lustrous, marked by large pale dots, 1-1.2 cm. long and 8-10 mm. in diameter; calyx little enlarged, with a narrow shallow cavity and small spreading and slightly incurved generally persistent lobes dark red on the upper side below the middle; flesh thick, yellow, soft and very succulent; nutlets 2 or 3, usually 2, full and rounded at the ends, ridged on the back, with a broad low deeply grooved ridge, marked on the inner faces by large irregular depressions, 6-7 mm. long and 4-4.5 mm. wide.

A tree sometimes 6 or 7 m. high, with a trunk often 1.5 dm. in diameter, covered with close dark gray bark, large spreading and ascending branches forming an open irregular head, and slender nearly straight glandular branchlets, light orange-green and marked by pale lenticels when they first appear, becoming light chestnut-brown and very lustrous in their first season and light red-brown the following year, and armed with many stout slightly curved dark chestnut-brown shining spines 4-5.5 cm. long; or sometimes shrubby in habit and only 2 or 3 m. high.

Moist bottom-lands, near Lowell, about twenty-five miles southwest of Grand Rapids, *E. J. Cole* (No. 161 type), August 22, 1902, September 24, 1904, May 13, 1905 (Nos. 162 and 164), September 25, 1904.

### X. TOMENTOSAE.

Leaves thin with midribs and veins only slightly impressed on their upper surface.
  Leaves pale-pubescent below at maturity; stamens 20.
    Anthers rose color or pink.
      Fruit obovate; corymbs villose; anthers dark rose color. 1. C. tomentosa.
      Fruit subglobose; corymbs hoary-tomentose; anthers pink. 2. C. pubifolia.
    Anthers pale yellow 3. C. structilis.
  Leaves glabrous at maturity; stamens 10; anthers rose color. 4. C. flammea.
Leaves subcoriaceous to coriaceous, with midribs and veins deeply impressed on their upper surface; stamens 20.
  Anthers rose color. 5. C. gemmosa.
  Anthers pale yellow. 6. C. Michiganensis.

1. **Crataegus tomentosa**, Linnaeus, *Spec.* 476 (1753); Sargent, *Silva N. Am.,* iv, 101, t. 183; *Proc. Phil. Acad. Sci.,* 1905, 656; *Man.,* 492, f. 406.

Leaves ovate to ovate-oblong, acute, abruptly acuminate or rarely rounded at the apex, gradually narrowed to the cuneate entire base, sharply and usually doubly serrate above, with broad spreading, often glandular teeth, and frequently divided above the middle into several short lateral lobes; nearly fully grown when the flowers open from the first to the middle of June, and at maturity thin but firm in texture, gray-green, puberulous or ultimately glabrous above, coated below with pale persistent pubescence, conspicuously reticulate, vinulose, 5-12 cm. long and 2.5-8 cm. wide, with broad midribs and primary veins; turning brilliant orange and scarlet in the autumn before falling; petioles stout, glandular, wing-margined, 1.3-2 cm. in length. Flowers 1.2-1.4 cm. in diameter, on slender villose pedicels, in broad compound many-flowered hairy corymbs; calyx-tube narrowly obconic, densely villose, the lobes lanceolate, acuminate, coarsely or pinnately serrate, usually glandular, reflexed after anthesis; stamens 20; anthers pale rose color; styles 2-5. Fruit ripening early in October, on slender erect pubescent pedicels, in broad many-fruited clusters, pear-shaped, dull orange-red, translucent when fully ripe, 1.2-1.4 cm. in diameter, mostly persistent on the branches until the following spring; calyx prominent, with a wide shallow cavity, and appressed usually persistent lobes; flesh thick, orange-yellow, sweet and succulent; nutlets 2-4, full and rounded at the ends, or when 3 or 4 gradually narrowed and acute at the ends or rounded at the apex; rounded and prominently ridged on the back, penetrated on the ventral faces by broad deep cavities, 6-7 mm. long and 3.4 mm wide.

A tree 3.5-7 m. high, with a trunk 1.2-1.5 dm. in diameter, covered with smooth pale gray or dark brown furrowed bark, slender spreading often horizontal smooth gray branches forming a wide flat head, and slender branchlets hoary-tomentose when they first appear, becoming dark orange color and puberulous in their first winter and ashy gray in their second year, and unarmed or armed with occasional slender straight dull ashy gray spines 2.5-3 cm. long.

Port Huron, *C. K. Dodge* (No. 31), June 14 and September 17, 1902 (No. 62), June 6 and October 1, 1903; near St. Clair (No. 8), June 5 and September 11, 1902; Belle Isle, Detroit, *O. A. Farwell* (No. 1078A), June 2, 1899, May and September, 1903; Lansing, *E. F. Smith*, 1879 and 1882; Agricultural College, *W. J. Beal* (No. 11), June 5, 1900; near Grand Rapids, *E. J. Cole* (Nos. 11 and 42), June and September, 1900; also near Troy, New York, to eastern Pennsylvania, and through central New York to southern Minnesota, Iowa, Missouri and eastern Kansas, and southward along the Appalachian Mountains to northern Georgia and central Tennessee.

2. **Crataegus pubifolia**, Ashe, *Bull N. Car. College of Argiculture and Mechanic Arts,* clxxv. 114 (1900).

Leaves ovate to obovate, acute or acuminate at the apex, cuneate at the entire base, sharply often doubly serrate above, with straight or incurved glandular teeth, and slightly divided usually only above the middle into 3-5 pairs of narrow acuminate lobes; thin, yellow-green, roughened above by short appressed hairs and soft-pubescent along the midribs and veins below, more than half-grown when the flowers open during the first week of June, and at maturity 6-7 cm. long and 5-6 cm. wide, with slender midribs and primary veins; petioles stout, wing-margined often to below the middle, villose-pubescent, glandular, with minute usually deciduous glands, 1-1.5 cm. in length; leaves on vigorous shoots thicker, ovate, rounded or abruptly cuneate at the broad base, more coarsely serrate and more deeply lobed, often 7-8 cm. long and 6-7 cm. wide. Flowers 1.2-1.4 cm. in diameter, on short stout densely hoary-tomentose pedicels, in wide many-flowered tomentose corymbs, the lower peduncles from the axils of upper leaves; calyx-tube narrowly obconic, thickly coated with matted white hairs, the lobes slender, acute, laciniately glandular-serrate, villose below and glabrous above the middle on the outer surface, tomentose on the inner surface, reflexed after anthesis; stamens 20; anthers pink; styles 2 or 3. Fruit ripening the end of September, on short pubescent pedicels, on long slender peduncles, in 15-20-fruited clusters, short-oblong to subglobose, orange red, lustrous, becoming translucent, 8-10 mm. in diameter; calyx little enlarged, with a wide shallow cavity, and spreading and recurved often deciduous lobes; flesh thick, orange color, soft and succulent; nutlets 2 or 3, full and rounded at the ends, or when 3 narrowed at the apex, ridged on the back, with a broad low slightly grooved ridge, penetrated on the inner faces by large deep cavities, 6-7 mm. long and 2.5-3 mm. wide.

A tree sometimes 5 or 6 m. high, with a trunk often 1.5 dm. in diameter, covered with dark gray bark, small spreading and ascending branches forming an open irregular head, and stout nearly straight branchlets hoary-tomentose when they first appear, becoming bright chestnut-brown marked by small pale lenticels and pubescent or puberulous during their first season, and darker-colored and still puberulous the following year, and armed with numerous stout nearly straight light chestnut-brown shining spines 4.5-5 cm. long.

Near Algonac, St. Clair county, *C. K. Dodge* (No. 64), June 6 and September 6, 1903, June 14 and September 19, 1904; also on Walpole Island, Lambton County, Ontario.

This species differs from *Crataegus tomentosa*, L., in the hoary-tomentose, not villose, corymbs, with stouter and shorter pedicels, in the lighter-colored anthers, and in the subglobose not narrow-obovate fruits. It is referred to *Crataegus pubifolia*, Ashe, which was described from a plant found in central Iowa, and which I have not seen, on the strength of the statement made by Mr. Dodge that Ashe declared that this was his *C. pubifolia*. Gruber's No. 127 from Kutztown, Pennsylvania, is probably the same species.

3. **Crataegus structilis**, Ashe, *Jour. Elisha Mitchell Sci. Soc.*, xix, 12 (1903); Sargent, *Proc. Phil. Acad. Sci.*, 1905, 656.

Leaves oblong-ovate to oval or obovate, acuminate, gradually narrowed to the slender concave-cuneate entire base, coarsely doubly serrate above, with straight glandular teeth, and slightly divided above the middle into numerous short acuminate lobes; nearly fully grown when the flowers open during the first week of June and then membranaceous, yellow-green and covered above by short soft white hairs most abundant on the midribs and veins, and pale and hoary-pubescent on the lower surface, and at maturity thin but firm in texture, dark green and glabrous or nearly glabrous on the upper surface and pale and puberulous on the slender midribs and primary veins below, 7-8 cm. long and 4.5-5 cm. wide; petioles stout, broadly wing-margined to below the middle, hoary-tomentose while young, becoming puberulous later in the season, 1-1.5 cm. in length. Flowers 1.4-1.8 cm. in diameter, on stout hoary-tomentose pedicels, in wide compact many-flowered tomentose corymbs, with linear acuminate glandular bracts and bractlets fading brown; calyx-tube broadly obconic, hoary-tomentose, the lobes narrow, acuminate, slightly serrate usually only near the middle, puberulous, reflexed after anthesis; stamens 20; anthers pale yellow; styles 2, surrounded at the base by a narrow ring of white tomentum. Fruit ripening about the 1st of October, and mostly persistent until after the leaves have fallen, on stout erect puberulous pedicels, in wide many-fruited erect or spreading clusters, oblong to obovate, narrowed at the ends, orange-scarlet, lustrous, 8-10 mm. long, 6-7 mm. in diameter; calyx prominent, with a deep narrow cavity, and spreading appressed pubescent lobes mostly deciduous from the ripe fruit; flesh thick, orange color, sweet and succulent; nutlets 2, rounded and obtuse at the ends, obscurely ridged on the broad rounded back, penetrated on the inner face by wide grooves, 5-6 mm. long and about 4 mm. wide.

A tree 5-6 m. high, with a tall slender stem covered with dark gray scaly bark, spreading or ascending branches forming a broad round-topped head, and slender nearly straight branchlets marked by many large pale lenticels, dark orange color and hoary-tomentose when they first appear, bright chestnut-brown and puberulous during their first winter and dark gray-brown the following year, and sparingly armed with slender dark gray spines 2-5 cm. long, becoming elongated and much-branched on old stems and branches.

Algonac, St. Clair County, *C. K. Dodge* (No. 105), June 14 and September 30, 1904; Belle Isle, Detroit, *O. A. Farwell* (Nos. 15 and 22), June 19 and September 23, 1902, June 6, 1903; also through Ontario and western New York to eastern Pennsylvania.

4. **Crataegus flammea,** n. sp.

Leaves obovate to rhombic, acuminate, gradually narrowed and concave-cuneate at the entire base, finely doubly serrate above, with straight glandular teeth, and slightly divided above the middle into 3 or 4 pairs of small spreading lobes; nearly fully grown when the flowers open the first week of June and then thin, light yellow-green, lustrous and slightly roughened above by short white hairs most abundant along the midribs, and paler and sparingly villose along the midribs and veins below, and at maturity thin, dark yellow-green, lustrous and scabrate on the upper surface, pale and nearly glabrous on the lower surface, 5-7 cm. long and 4-5 cm. wide, with slender rose-colored midribs, and thin primary veins extending very obliquely toward the apex of the leaf; petioles stout, wing-margined nearly to the base, villose on the upper side, 1-1.5 cm. in length; leaves on vigorous shoots subcoriaceous, broadly obovate, usually long-pointed, concave-cuneate at the base, coarsely serrate, more deeply lobed, often 7-8 cm. long and 6-7 cm. wide, with broadly winged petioles. Flowers 1.5 cm. in diameter, on long slender slightly hairy pedicels, in compact mostly 12-15-flowered hairy corymbs, with linear-obovate to linear glandular caducous bracts and bractlets fading brown; calyx-tube narrowly obconic, glabrous, the lobes gradually narrowed from a broad base, acuminate, minutely glandular dentate, glabrous on the outer, densely villose on the inner surface, reflexed after anthesis; stamens 10; anthers rose color; styles usually 3, surrounded at the base by a narrow ring of pale tomentum. Fruit ripening about the 10th of October, on slender slightly hairy pedicels, in wide erect many-fruited clusters, short-oblong to subglobose, orange-red, marked by pale dots, 1-1.1 cm. in diameter; calyx prominent, with a short tube, a wide shallow cavity, and reflexed closely appressed usually persistent lobes; flesh thin, orange-red, sweet and edible; nutlets usually 3, thick, full and rounded at the ends, ridged on the back, with a low grooved ridge, penetrated on the inner faces by broad shallow cavities, 6-7 mm. long and 3.5-4 mm. wide.

An arborescent shrub sometimes 4-5 m. high, with stout ascending stems covered with rough dark bark, small spreading branches forming a round-topped head, and slender slightly zigzag glabrous branchlets light orange-yellow when they first appear, becoming light chestnut-brown, very lustrous, and marked by occasional pale lenticels in their first season and dull red-brown the following year, and armed with few stout nearly straight purplish ultimately dark gray spines 3-4 cm. long.

Near St. Clair, St. Clair County, *C. K. Dodge* (No. 110), September 21, 1904, May 27, 1906; also on the banks of the St. Clair River below Sarnia, Ontario, (*C. K. Dodge* No. 98 A type).

5. **Crataegus gemmosa,** Sargent, *Bot. Gazette.* xxxiii. 119 (1902); *Silva N. Am.* xiii. 141, t. 686; *Proc. Rochester Acad. Sci.* iv. 133; *Man.* 498, f. 412.

Leaves broadly oval or rarely broadly obovate, acute or acuminate, gradually narrowed and cuneate or occasionally rounded at the entire base, sharply and usually doubly serrate above the middle, with straight glandular teeth, and often slightly divided toward the apex into short acute lobes; dark red and covered with pale hairs as they unfold, nearly fully grown when the flowers open from the middle to the end of May and then thin, light yellow-green, nearly glabrous above and pale and villose below, and at maturity thick and firm to subcoriaceous, very dark dull green on the upper surface, pale and pubescent on the lower surface along the stout yellow midribs deeply impressed and occasionally puberulous above, and along the 4 or 5 pairs of slender primary veins extending obliquely to the end of the leaf, 4-6 cm. long and 2.5-5 wide; petioles stout, slightly wing-margined at the apex, villose or pubescent, glandular while young, with bright red caducous glands, usually rose color in the autumn, 7-14 mm. in length; leaves on vigorous shoots more coarsely serrate, frequently divided into short acute lateral lobes often 10 cm. long and 5 cm. wide, with rose-colored midribs and stout spreading primary veins, and foliaceous lunate acuminate coarsely glandular-serrate stipules. Flowers 1.2-1.5 cm. in diameter, on slender villose pedicels, in broad open compound hairy many-flowered corymbs, with lanceolate or oblanceolate acuminate glandular-serrate conspicuous bracts and bractlets; calyx-tube narrowly obconic, more or less covered with matted pale hairs or nearly glabrous, the lobes lanceolate, acuminate, glabrous or villose on the outer surface, villose on the inner surface, coarsely glandular-serrate, reflexed after anthesis; stamens 20; anthers small, rose color; styles 2 or 3, surrounded at the base by a narrow ring of pale tomentum. Fruit ripening early in October and becoming very succulent just before falling, on long slender pedicels, in drooping many-fruited glabrous or puberulous clusters, subglobose to short-oblong, scarlet, lustrous, 1.2-1.4 cm. in diameter; calyx prominent, with an elongated tube, a deep narrow cavity and reflexed villose lobes bright red toward the base on the upper side; flesh thick, bright yellow, sweet and usually succulent; nutlets usually 3, or 2, full and rounded at the ends, or somewhat narrowed at the base, ridged on the back, with a broad low rounded slightly grooved ridge, penetrated on the inner faces by deep broad cavities, 6-6.5 mm. long and 3.5-4 mm. wide.

A tree occasionally 10 m. high, with a tall trunk often 3 dm. in diameter, covered with dark brown scaly bark, stout spreading or ascending branches forming a broad rather open symmetrical head, and stout zigzag glabrous red-brown or gray-brown lustrous branchlets, armed with straight or slightly curved thick chestnut-brown spines, usually about 5 cm. long, and winter-buds sometimes 6 mm. in diameter.

Grand Rapids, common, *E. J. Cole*, 1876-1901, *C. W. Fallass*, May 15, 1895; Agricultural College, *W. J. Beal*, May 25, 1899; south of Sarnia, Lambton County, Ontario on the bank of St. Clair River, *C. K. Dodge* (No. 98), October 4, 1903, June 4, 1905; also through Ontario and Northern Ohio to western New York.

6. **Crataegus Michiganensis**, Ashe, *Bull. N. Car. College of Agriculture and Mechanic Arts*, clxxv, 111 (1900).

Leaves obovate and rounded at the apex to rhombic and acute at the apex, cuneate at the entire base, sharply doubly serrate above, with straight glandular teeth, and sometimes slightly divided above the middle into 4 or 5 pairs of small acuminate lobes; more than half-grown when the flowers open about the 1st of June and then thin, light yellow-green and slightly hairy above especially along the midribs, and pale and sparingly villose below through the season along the stout midribs, and prominent primary veins, and at maturity subcoriaceous, very dark green, smooth, glabrous and lustrous on the upper surface, pale or glaucous on the lower surface, 5-6 cm. long and 4-5 cm. wide; petioles stout, wing-margined to below the middle, slightly hairy along the upper side while young, becoming glabrous, 1.5-2 cm. in length; leaves on vigorous shoots coriaceous, oval to obovate, rounded or acute at the apex, more coarsely serrate, often 7-8 cm. long and 5.5-6.5 cm. wide. Flowers 1.6-1.8 cm. in diameter, on long stout slightly hairy pedicels, in mostly 18-20-flowered corymbs becoming lax after the flowers open; calyx-tube narrowly obconic, sparingly villose below, glabrous above, the lobes foliaceous, wide, acuminate, laciniately glandular-serrate, glabrous on the outer, slightly villose on the inner surface, reflexed after anthesis; stamens 20; anthers white; styles 2-4. Fruit ripening the middle of October, on long slender slightly hairy reddish pedicels, in wide erect many-fruited clusters, subglobose to short-oblong, crimson, lustrous, villose at the ends, with long scattered white hairs 1-1.2 cm. in diameter; calyx prominent, with a narrow deep cavity, and large spreading and reflexed coarsely serrate persistent lobes; flesh thin, yellow, sweet and succulent; nutlets 2-4, almost orbicular, full and rounded at the ends, ridged on the back with a broad doubly grooved low ridge, penetrated on the inner faces by large deep cavities, about 5 mm. long and 3-4 mm. wide.

A shrub 3-4 m. high, with numerous small erect stems covered with smooth pale gray bark, and spreading into broad thickets, small erect branches forming a wide irregular head and slender nearly straight glabrous branchlets, orange-green and marked by pale lenticels when they first appear, becoming light chestnut-brown and lustrous in their first season and dull reddish-brown the following year, and armed with numerous stout, straight or slightly curved light chestnut-brown shining spines 3-4 cm. long, and persistent and branched on old stems.

Low sandy shores of the St. Clair River at Port Huron, *C. K. Dodge* (No. 121 type plant), May 29 and September 15, 1902 and 1903.

Ashe describes the flowers as scarcely more than 1 cm. in diameter, which is certainly a mistake, and the corymbs as glabrous or nearly so.

**Crataegus oxyacantha** L., the European hawthorn, has become sparingly naturalized in southern Michigan, and has been reported from Detroit by O. A. Farwell, and from the vicinity of Ann Arbor by C. A. Davis.

Arnold Arboretum,
February, 1907.

# INDEX.

# INDEX.

(See also list of species, p. 513.)

A.

Page

Agricultural College.... 519, 551, 556, 561, 564
Algonac.... 545, 562
Ann Arbor.... 565
Appalachian Mts.... 521, 561
Ashe, W. M.... 515, 516, 518
Atkins Station.... 522

B.

Beal, W. J., report on Crataegus.... 511, 519, 554, 556, 561, 564
Beal's Michigan Flora.... 515
Belle Isle.... 515, 519, 520, 546, 561, 563
Black River.... 524

C.

Camp, D. R.... 521
Camp, J. H.... 521
Chateaugay River, Quebec.... 521
Cole, E. J.... 515, 519, 526, 528, 530, 532, 535, 541, 546, 550–554, 556–561, 564
Connecticut.... 556
Crataegus, southern Michigan.... 515
    species, list of.... 513

D.

Davis, C. A., report on Crataegus.... 511, 565
Detroit.... 516, 519, 520, 561, 563, 565
Detroit River.... 515
Dodge, C. K.... 515, 519, 521–524, 527–531, 533–540, 542–551, 555, 556, 561–565

E.

European hawthorn.... 565

F.

Fallass, C. W.... 564
Farwell, O. A.... 515, 516, 519, 520, 544, 546, 561, 563, 565

G.

Genesee River, New York.... 515
Georgia.... 521, 561
Grand Rapids.... 515, 516, 519, 526, 528, 530, 532, 535, 541, 546, 550–554, 556–561, 564

H.

Hubbardston.... 544

I.

Illinois.... 521, 546, 551
Iowa.... 561, 562
Island Lake.... 516

J.

Jackson County.... 521

K.

Kansas.... 544, 561
Keweenaw County.... 515
Kutztown, Pa.... 562

L.

Lansing.... 561
London, Ontario.... 522, 523, 555
Lowell.... 560

# INDEX.

M.

Page

Massachusetts 532, 551, 556
Michigan Academy of Sciences 516
Michigan, southern 515, 521
Minnesota 561
Missouri 544, 561

N.

Nebraska 544
Newcomb, F. C., report on Crataegus 511
New England 521, 537, 539
New Hampshire 551
New York 515, 521, 534, 537, 539, 547, 551, 556, 561, 563, 564
Niagara River 515

O.

Ohio 521, 544, 564
Ontario 515, 534, 537, 539, 546, 547, 556, 563, 564

P.

Pennsylvania 556, 561, 563
Port Huron 515, 519, 521–524, 527–531, 533, 534, 536, 537, 539, 542, 543, 546–551, 556, 561, 565

Q.

Quebec 521

S.

St. Clair 519, 522, 529, 535, 538, 539, 544, 555, 556, 561, 563
St. Clair County 515, 516
St. Clair River 519, 531, 539, 548, 550, 563–565
Sargent, C. S. 511, 515, 522, 526, 532, 541, 546, 554
Sarnia, Ontario 548, 563, 564
Smith, E. F. 544, 561
Southern Michigan 515, 521

T.

Tennessee 521, 561
Troy, New York 561

V.

Vermont 551

W.

Walpole Island 562
Wheeler, C. F. 516, 551, 552

Y.

Ypsilanti 544

EIGHTH ANNUAL REPORT

OF THE

# STATE GEOLOGIST,

ALFRED C. LANE

TO THE

# BOARD OF GEOLOGICAL SURVEY

FOR THE YEAR 1906.

ACCOMPANYING THE PRECEDING PAPERS.

# CONTENTS.

Page
Finance.................................................... 577
Publications.................................................... 578
Work practically ready for publication.................................................... 578
Gold in Michigan, by W. M. Courtis.................................................... 581
Laurentian.................................................... 584
Calciferous.................................................... 585
Bayport Limestone.................................................... 585
Earthquakes.................................................... 586
Clay.................................................... 587
Water.................................................... 587
Coal.................................................... 588
Oil.................................................... 588
Sand Lime Brick.................................................... 589
Winchell Notes.................................................... 589
Examination of Specimens.................................................... 589
Biological Survey.................................................... 590
Joint Topographic Survey.................................................... 591
Recommendations.................................................... 592

# ANNUAL REPORT FOR 1906.

OFFICE OF THE STATE GEOLOGIST,
LANSING, MICHIGAN, NOV. 14, 1906.

*To the Honorable the Board of Geological Survey of the State of Michigan:*

HON. F. M. WARNER, *President.*
HON. W. J. MCKONE.
HON. P. H. KELLEY, *Secretary.*

Gentlemen—I beg to submit my report for the fiscal year July 1, 1905, to June 30, 1906, inclusive, and for the field season of 1906.

The following is the usual statement of expenditures from the annual appropriation:

FINANCES.

| | Salaries. | Field. | Office. | Total. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| July | $595 50 | $154 09 | $48 62 | $798 21 |
| August | 667 50 | 351 27 | 93 68 | 1,112 45 |
| September | 463 32 | 80 73 | 29 61 | 573 66 |
| October | 388 59 | 122 09 | 53 90 | 564 49 |
| November | 373 67 | 22 09 | 44 23 | 439 99 |
| December | 438 50 | 17 01 | 18 80 | 474 31 |
| January | 392 20 | 97 81 | 52 80 | 542 81 |
| February | 603 84 | 42 04 | 37 81 | 683 69 |
| March | 392 20 | 66 15 | 239 58 | 697 93 |
| April | 384 80 | 27 74 | 269 35 | 681 89 |
| May | 370 40 | 35 02 | 64 36 | 469 78 |
| June | 612 06 | 318 19 | 130 54 | 960 79 |
| | $5,682 49 | $1,234 23 | $1,083 28 | $8,000 00 |

| | |
|---|---|
| In addition to this we had: For the year 1905-6, to be used in the topographical survey through the United States Geological Survey | $2,000 00 |
| Of this there was expended in the survey of the Marquette quadrangle | 1,683 79 |

Concerning the value of this see letter below.

The balance, together with $3,000 for 1906-7, is being expended in Oakland and Livingston counties—Rochester, Pontiac, Milford and Howell quadrangles.

The appropriation for biological survey, Act 250, Session 1905, was expended as follows:

| | |
|---|---|
| To C. A. Davis, for botanical work in connection with a study of peat producing plants of the bogs, including all his expenses in accompanying Prof. Russell in the Upper Peninsula | $1,000 00 |
| To T. L. Hankinson and his assistants, under the direction of Prof. J. G. Reighard, in a survey of the fauna and flora of Walnut Lake, Oakland County, with especial regard to the food habits of the Whitefish | 1,000 00 |
| Of publication funds there remains for reprinting reports—not enough to do anything | 93 27 |

Our annual reports now come out of the general fund and there is no special provision for continuing the series of green volumes.

## PUBLICATIONS.

On the new system, practically the sole publication of the Board is its annual report. The report for 1905 which should be out in November, 1906, will therefore be almost double the size of its predecessors—a book of some 600 pages. Besides my personal report it contains a report of the University expedition to Isle Royale and the Porcupines, W. F. Cooper's report on Bay County with valuable maps showing thickness of the drift, and the report of Bryant Walker on the land snails of the State.

We have also issued a good many copies of the small geological map of the State for which there is a steady demand. We have given this away one at a time. But as it is used in teaching, when enough to supply a whole class is asked, it seems fairer to ask cost price. The money thus received, however, goes into the general fund.

Of the Joint Topographic Survey a small provisional edition of the Marquette sheet in black and white for the use of engineers has been issued. The Dexter, South Lyon, Saline, Ypsilanti, Wayne, Detroit, Wyandotte, Romulus and Grosse Point sheets have also been issued.

I also prepared for the Lake Superior Mining Institute a brief description of the geology of Keweenaw Point with a general map,[1] reprints of which I have found of value in distributing to enquirers.

The reports by Robert E. Horton to the Michigan Engineering Society of the State, on water power, and various publications of the United States Geological Survey referred to later, will also afford valuable information to the seeker and are to be obtained from the United States Geological Survey at Washington, D. C.

## WORK PRACTICALLY READY FOR PUBLICATION.

Your annual report for 1906 will also be a considerable volume, and it may contain at least the following reports:

1. The report of Prof. I. C. Russell on the surface geology of the Iron

---

[1] Printed in Vol. XII of their transactions.

Mountain district, a posthumous report and perhaps the last which will appear from that able and interesting writer.

2. The report of C. A. Davis on peat and the peat producing flora. This report not only gives a concise summary of the state of the peat industry and its prospects in the State, but describes a new variety of peat of great interest in connection with the origin of coal. It also emphasizes several new or little regarded facts, that peat will absorb up to 15 per cent. of moisture, even when under cover, and therefore need not be dried below that point, that the sphagnum moss is not the principal ingredient of peat, but that the moss creeps over the already nearly filled up bog, etc.

3. The report of W. C. Gordon on the Black River section of the Keweenawan rocks north of Bessemer, with some additions by myself in the way of general correlation, calling attention to a region of copper bearing rocks hardly at all explored.

4. Prof. Hankinson's report on the biological survey of Walnut Lake, Sherzer's report on Wayne County, Davis' report on Tuscola County, Grabau's on the Traverse limestone, Gregory's on Arenac County, and Prof. Ries' on moulding sands; also Kaufmann's report on the fleshy fungi (mushrooms), are in a more or less advanced state of preparation, and represent the work of the year in greater or less part.

## CO-OPERATION.

As far as possible I have tried to work hand in hand with the agencies and individuals who are studying the resources of the State scientifically.

A list of these may serve as a useful guide to those places in the literature where information regarding Michigan may be found.

The United States Department of Agriculture under Milton Whitney has been making a soil survey of Cass County, and have issued a soil map of the Oxford area.

The Typographic Survey, under A. M. Walker has practically finished the Rochester and Pontiac sheets, and made a start on the Milford and Howell sheets.

With the Hydrographic Division in various branches there has been exchange of information, especially with Mr. Frank Leverett, in getting out a series of water supply papers to replace Nos. 30 and 31 by A. C. Lane, now entirely out of print. No. 160 on the water supply of the region north of Lake Michigan is out. Nos. 182 and 183 on the Lower Peninsula will soon appear.

We have also taken up the collection of well records which the United States Geological Survey for lack of funds has been compelled to drop.

I have done all I could to help Prof. C. A. Palache, who prepared an erudite study of calcites for Volume VI of your reports, in his further studies[1] for the United States Geological Survey.

We have tried to keep informed of our work the Detroit Engineering Society, the Michigan Engineering Society, the Lake Superior Mining Institute, the Michigan Academy of Sciences, the Pioneer and Historical Society, etc.[2]

---

[1] A note on quartz from Hancock recently appeared in the Neues Jahrbuch. BB 13, p. 155.

[2] In many cases we have reprints of their papers for general distribution.

The State of Illinois has recently revised its Geological Survey, appropriating therefor $25,000 per annum, and at the invitation of the newly appointed State Geologist, J. Foster Bain, a meeting of the State Geologists of the Mississippi Valley was called to consider topics of common interest, such as common names, relations to the Federal Survey, etc.

Informal co-operation with the University, Agricultural College and College of Mines is always in progress. The biological survey has been largely conducted by and under the University teachers of botany and zoology.

The main co-operation with the College of Mines has been in connection with Pres. McNair's interesting tests of the weight of the earth. A pendulum swung at the bottom of one of the deep shafts has a notably different rate owing to the less force of gravity, nearly 5,000 feet of the earth's crust being above it. If we know the exact weight and shape of the crust immediately above the pendulum, we can from its lessened rate of vibration infer what the density and weight of the whole may be. I have helped in the needful examination of the rocks, and Mr. A. H. Meuche is preparing a contour map of the surface of the adjacent country. Both pieces of work have geological value independent of Mr. McNair's researches.

Analyses have been made for us at the various State institutions under the same arrangements that have heretofore prevailed. They mainly find their fit place in special reports—those of W. F. Cooper and others.

A number of tests of mine waters and other brines are to be incorporated in a bulletin I am preparing on that subject. Some preliminary notes were read before the Geological Society of America and appeared in the Journal of Geology.[1]

We may, in some cases, be able to date our rocks by the character of the water contained.[2]

## WORK OF THE SURVEY.

During the past year Mr. W. F. Cooper has been mainly employed getting out his Bay County report, and quite largely in editorial work, indexing, etc., on the annual report for 1905. But there has also been time to compile deep well records, etc.

Mr. W. C. Gordon nearly finished his report on the Black River section, and then resigned to take a position with the Oliver Iron Mining Co., leaving me to add a little on the intrusives and iron bearing rock.

Mr. A. H. Meuche was appointed in his place, and continued contour work around Calumet, with the assistance of Mr. Leon Meuche, and work on copper country sections.

Prof. C. A. Davis has continued the study of the surface deposits of the Upper Peninsula to the broken but intensely interesting region of the Huron Mountains, upon which the ice sheet which crept down from the Labrador Highlands over the Lake Superior basin seems barely to have lapped. I may note that he finds that, owing to less evaporation probably, light sandy soils seem to do unusually well in the Upper Peninsula, and support hardwood timber.

---

[1] XIV, 3, April, 1906, p. 221.

[2] Further notes on this subject appeared in the Portage Lake Mining Gazette, March 3, 1905. Trans. Lake Superior Mining Institute, Vol. XII.

While there is, as we have seen, a large demand for the map of the surface geology of the State, there is even a larger demand from teachers of physical geography from the Agricultural Department and from numerous private sources, for the map of the surface geology of the State upon which Prof. Davis is at work. In fact we should not wait for the completion of the whole State, but get out sheets as far and as fast as possible. The work of preparation of these have been in the hands of Mr. J. F. Nellist, who informs me that he will soon be ready to send to press, but has been delayed by a variety of circumstances.

### GOLD.

But Prof. Davis' studies also have bearing in my mind on the development of our gold resources. When we know just how and in what direction the ice moved over the State we can tell in what direction we are most likely to find in the gravel the gold of the gold quartz veins known to exist, and vice versa may be able from the results of panning to trace gold to its source. Mr. W. M. Courtis, A. I. M. E., of Detroit, has prepared the following summary for us. His plan of campaign commends itself to follow Prof. Davis' studies.

I have inserted one or two places in his list.

## GOLD IN MICHIGAN.

BY W. M. COURTIS.

Dear Sir:—

At your request I am sending you a list of the newspaper clippings I have in regard to gold discoveries in Michigan, both quartz and placers or gold in gravel.

The little map shows places where reports say gold has been found in the gravel. Some of these I have authenticated myself, washing out the particles of gold. In two cases, Ionia and Hillsdale, found not substantiated, I found in the former place what appeared a large nugget taken from 20 feet down in a well. By my test it proved to be brass, and history shows a building burnt down here many years before, probably melting some brass, which gradually sunk through the fine sand there.

At Hillsdale, in digging a ditch bright flakes were found that looked like gold dust. Tests on these showed that they were brass filings that had been washed down from some workshop and in high water had been spread along the small creek bars. Many of the gold quartz finds when looked up proved to be pieces of float quartz and when not wilful swindle were float ore from up the lake country as native copper was also found in these deep gravel beds.

At Lowell and along the Grand River there is gold in a certain channel that crosses the river near this place. This gravel is composed of a different kind of pebbles from the gravel found in the high banks along the river which rise in some places two or three hundred feet above. The gold in the Grand River begins at Maple River and was found down to Ada Creek and probably down to the lake, no gold being found in the most favorable bars above the former place.

These high bluffs are stratified in some places, at others irregular deposits. None of these strata would pan gold even taking the ferruginous seams, the most promising, except in the lower seams a few colors were found.

The gravel in the old river channel seems sufficiently rich to work with dredges in some parts where the land is not too valuable and as this old channel apparently comes from the northwest, it is worth looking into by the Geological Survey, as its course may be found and prove rich on bed rock. There seemed to be a steady increase in the colors of gold as depth is gained—pans running from four to thirty colors. The total average of all our tests was about three cents per cubic yard, though very little digging was done, only taking up the mussels and panning the gravel. The estimate of three cents included all the barren dirt that was tested, barren gravel that overlays the old bed and is not any criterion of what the river channel would run, which should be tested with six holes. The gold was much coarser than I would suspect, some of it being like mustard seed.

I thought it had been "salted" but I walked out a rod or two from the shore, dug up the mussels and alone washed the dirt. Here I got but one to four colors to the pan. This gravel contains a large amount of black, magnetic sand, iron, garnets, zircons and is analogous to those deposits worked in Russia which in their richest parts yield from two to four dollars per cubic yard.

The following is a list of the places where gold is said to have been found in the gravel:

Washed by myself.

Maple River, Ionia County.
Lowell, Kent County.
Ada Creek, Kent County.
Grand River, below Lyons, Ionia County.
Flat River, Ontonagon County.
Iron River.
Ishpeming, Marquette County.

Reported discoveries.

Ionia and Hillsdale (brass mistaken for gold).
Birmingham, Oakland County.
Union City Branch, to the S. E. and S. W. (?).
Marcellus, St. Joseph County.
Burr Oak, St. Joseph County (pyrites likely).
Grand Haven, Ottawa County.
Allegan, Allegan County.
Greenville, Montcalm County.
Howard City, Montcalm County.
County Line, Newaygo County.
Muskegon River, Newaygo County.

Whitehall, Oceana County.
White River, Oceana County.
Elbridge, Hart, June 7, 1906.
Little Sable River, Manistee County.
West Summit, Wexford County.
Manistee River, Manistee and Wexford Counties.
Walton, Kalkaska County.
Rapid River, Kalkaska, Kalkaska County.
Leelanau County, near Lake.
Antrim County, same river (nuggets, reliable).
Boyne River, Charlevoix County.
Little Traverse, Emmet County.
Victoria Copper Mine (large nugget).
Ishpeming district, near gold mines, perhaps good placers.

The following places were reported but believed to be only pyrites:

Cheboygan, Cheboygan County.[1]
Alpena, Presque Isle County.[1]
Caseville, Genesee County.[1]
Flushing, Genesee County.[1]
Caro, Tuscola County.[1]
Near Fargo, St. Clair County.
T. 8 N., R. 14 E., ($6.00 a ton?)
N. E. ½ S. E. ¼ Sec. 33, T. 49 N., R. 42 W., Tr. Au. 15c Ag.

It can easily be seen how many places report the discovery of gold in the gravel, and if it should be proved it came from an old channel, also why some of the tests have failed in the same district.

It is certainly worth the expense to test the gravels at different points on the west side of Michigan. If the testing were successful, and it seems certain it will be, as some of the finds were by men who understood placer washing, and in one place in Antrim County, quite large nuggets were gotten from the gravel by an experienced man who intended to have gone back the following summer but died during the winter. He had told one of the wealthy pine lands men, who asked me if it were possible but did not know the exact stream where the find had been made.

A systematic examination of the river would soon plot out the source and course of the river. A party of six men with a camp outfit and light star drill rig on wheels with two mining students who would work for their expenses and experience, and keep records, would do a great deal of work in one summer and perhaps all that would be necessary to start up a new industry which would repay the State many times the outlay.

Having laid out such work in San Domingo, where I surveyed the gold field of Mont Pueble, Columbus' gold field (though he got most of his gold robbing the graves), I learned how quickly it could be done.

It was finished much quicker than estimated for each river being platted as barren or gold bearing, the district was soon surrounded and measured out.

---

[1] Iron pyrites, examined.

A rocker, small sluice box with balances and blowpipe outfit, measuring box for fraction of a cubic yard made our kit.

A jointed hand drill of gas pipe with auger end fifty feet long in five foot lengths with movable handle costing about $15.00 is very convenient for determining the depth of clay, sand or marl.

The information would be useful in other ways as determining beds of clay, marl or bog ore that might be met with and the character of the surface gravel with their depth. The survey could begin at Lowell in early spring, working north with warm weather and south again from Lowell in the fall.

Very truly yours,

(Signed.) W. M. COURTIS.

P. S. Also on lands south of the Gogebic iron fields.

Have assayed many ores from N. M. (North Michigan), which carry gold up to $250, not at Ishpeming.

Ishpeming ore sample ran into thousands—$2.99. Average 50 tons.

---

At Williamston, Ingham County, Mr. Taylor found a little nugget at bed rock. Mr. Jas. B. Seager reports having washed as many as 20 colors to a pan in the Huron Mountains, where most of the drift is very local, while tests I made of Lake Superior sands gave no visible result.

### LAURENTIAN.

These were made in the course of a brief visit to the Keewatin-Laurentian areas north of Marquette, meeting Prof. Davis and E. R. Downing and looking over their results.

The results of my studies of the Keewatin-Laurentian agree so closely with those of another working geologist on the other hemisphere that I am tempted to quote, verbatim but condensing, as my own experience, the words of F. P. Mennell in the Geological Magazine for June, 1906 (p. 255):

"The great granite masses," like those north and south of the Marquette range, "as a rule indicate anticlinal or domelike structures" and "the relative distances of the different rocks from the granites may be taken as one of the chief aids in determining the succession." Any indication, however, of marked transgression on the part of the igneous rock . . . . . prevents such a criterion being relied on. Metamorphosed igneous intrusions figuring amongst the schists"—the greenstone schists and amphibolites for instance—"may behave as rocks of any date earlier than their real period of formation. Their intrusive character has to be inferred from (1) petrological character, (2) unexpected appearances among the old sediments, (3) traces of central action, (4) absence of pebbles from them in conglomerate beds." "Very few developments fail to show important conglomerate beds" "invaluable as datum lines." "Their pebbles afford important evidence of their age." "At their roots granite masses do not show those features which we have learned to regard as characteristic of intrusion where we have seen them invading normal sediments. Actual dikes do not extend far from the main mass of the rock. The characteristic feature of this invasion of crystalline schists is in fact the production of lit-par-lit injection." "The off shoots from the deep seated portions must corrode their way into the surrounding rocks or insinuate their material between their laminas. The last process is the usual one and even the few large dikes that are seen are mere feeders by which the injection is carried on, and which soon became exhausted in their process."

They therefore scarcely ever extend beyond the zone of injection "lit-par-lit."

### CALCIFEROUS.

I also visited near Marquette, the Upper Peninsula Experiment Station, intelligently presided over by Mr. L. Geismar.

The United States Department of Agriculture have recently made a soil map of this area with his aid. The station is situated on a number of terraces where the bed rock comes close to the surface.

This bed rock is on the Calciferous formation, which for Michigan may be conceived as taking its locality name from Calciferous station of the Marquette & Southeastern R. R., outcropping also extensively at Eben, the junction with the Chicago & Northwestern R. R. and extending from the Lake Superior sandstone below up to the St. Peter sandstone, or an unconformity where the St. Peter sandstone should be, above which comes the well marked "Trenton," Ordovician or lower Silurian fossils. It is represented by the beds about 404 to 642 feet in the Gladstone well, from about 320 to 550' at Marinette, and probably from 280 to 630 feet in the Rapid River well, being thus about 230 feet thick. According to Rominger the Calciferous is "Cambrian-Primordial."

In connection with this Calciferous lime-bearing formation it is interesting to note that Mr. L. Geismar informs me that over it the soil is much better than over the Lake Superior sandstones which lie outside it, and Mr. Harris, the intelligent and wide awake manager of the Marquette & Southeastern R. R. changed the preliminary location of a spur of that line several miles to the south at Mr. Geismar's suggestion upon examining a geological map of the State, in order to bring it into the region of a better land.

### BAYPORT LIMESTONE.

Another term which has come up for definition has been the Upper Grand Rapids. The United States Geological Survey objected to my using the Ohio term, Maxville, on the ground that its equivalence with the Upper Grand Rapids has not been proved, though I know no respect in which they can be seen to differ, and suggested that I had already used the term Bayport limestone, which indeed I had, as a commercial and local term applied to the well-known and valuable quarries without really meaning thereby to introduce formally a new geologic term, a thing I am slow to do. But as they rather insisted, the term Bayport may be used for that upper part of the Grand Rapids characterized by the predominance of light colored high grade limestone (90% $CaCO_3$) and white sandstone, and freedom from gypsum and much shale.

It includes the upper 60 feet of the Huron County and South Bay City sections, and about the same thickness at Saginaw.[1]

### EARTHQUAKES.

For some time there have been earth disturbances in the copper country, of which exaggerated sensational reports have been wired abroad. Few (see report Peter Dawe, Mine Inspector, Houghton County), have been hurt thereby, and in fact the shocks are often less noticeable in the mines than on the surface. Still they have for some time been felt at a distance of several miles from any mining, indeed, perhaps, outside the copper country. There was a notable shake, breaking window glass in Calumet, in August, 1905, upsetting bottles in Dr. W. S. Whislers' office on the north wall but not on the west, so that I got some idea of its direction. At that time, following a hint of Mr. McNaughton, I put a pencil in a dish of sand in the basement vault of the Geological Survey building (125 East street, Houghton), which was upset February 8, 1905, to S. 30° E. This shock was also felt at Calumet but was not so severe as the previous August. Other shocks occurred April 18-20, and on May 26 it was again upset away from the Atlantic mine lode in section 9, the South Pewabic lode, which at that time was closed and went out of commission. The tracks crossing the lode were buckled so as to indicate a shortening of some six feet and while there was some indication of tension further back from the mine I failed to find as much stretching as compression. It may, however, have been diffused. There are three theories in explanation.

First, that the shakes are purely local, due to the yielding of pillars and caving in of huge masses of rocks overhanging the mines, only a fraction of an inch, however, at a shock.

Secondly, that these waves are set off by shocks from some distant point.

Thirdly, that there is really a state of compression and unrest in the rocks of the copper country, while mining operations have provided lines of weakness along which it relieves itself. One side of the copper range is bounded by a famous old break or fault, and the country around the Great Lakes is known to be tilting.

On this matter there was a lively discussion at the Lake Superior Mining Institute meeting in August, 1906. I do not see how there can be any settling of the question definitely until we have installed near the copper country, at Marquette or Calumet or Houghton, a modern instrument for the careful record of earth waves (seismograph). The United States Weather Bureau is installing a number of such instruments in their stations, but only where the Federal Government owns the building, and I would earnestly recommend that all those interested join with me in doing what we can to secure the location of at least two such instruments in the Upper Peninsula.

We may note that in the iron country there are immense caves which alter the whole appearance of nature, to which anything in the copper country is not a circumstance. Nor is the Lower Peninsula exempt. Complaint is already made of settling over coal mines beneath Saginaw and Bay City, and the salt caverns at Manistee are already said to be causing settling there and breakage of water mains. We may expect to see the same thing along Detroit and St. Clair rivers, and anywhere where salt is made, not by pumping an already existing brine, but by pumping down water on rock salt and dissolving it out. It do not know whether it would be worth while to have the water mains of South Detroit with elastic joints yet.

---

[1] At East Saginaw 399 — 451 = 52 feet; at Plate Glass Works 550—625 = 75 feet; at Mt. Pleasant 970 — 1,020 = 50 feet. See Volume VIII, Part II, Plate I, pp. 12, 13, 97, 98, 112, 213-215.

My personal work, besides the executive routine of answering letters, writing and editing reports, in which I have been helped by Mr. Cooper, and the papers on the work of the Survey for the various State societies, has been mainly in the study of the grain of rocks, the composition of mine waters, the origin and distribution of copper in connection therewith, and especially the examination of samples variously located.

### MOULDING SAND.

In my annual report for 1902 there were some comments on moulding sands. In the course of a preliminary investigation it seemed to me curious and perhaps needless that so many foundries should go way out of the State to the Ohio River for their moulding sand, while others found a supply nearer by. It seemed fitting therefore, to employ a special expert, Prof. H. Ries, of Cornell University, to investigate the matter for a few weeks and report upon the distribution of such sands at a cost not to exceed $500.

### CLAY.

Samples of surface clays from the Sault to the southern line have generally proved to be calcareous, though often very fine and gritless, approaching in character a slip clay. The ordinary Michigan surface clay is about one-fourth limestone flour. Such a clay from near Cheboygan, sent by A. M. Gerow, is said, however, to make a good material for art pottery, and shale clays near Grand Ledge, Omer, Turner and Cheboygan, are, I understand, to be further exploited for paving brick, etc.

### WATER.

Our work on waters will be found largely in the water supply papers of the United States Geological Survey Nos. 160, 182 and 183. The subject of mine waters will make a special report. I published a preliminary article on it in the Portage Lake Mining Gazette, March 8, 1906, to be reprinted in the Lake Superior Mining Institute proceedings, and also an abstract of a paper at Ottawa, in the Journal of Geology, 1906, p. 221.

Besides advancing the rock salt developments around Alpena, we have made a number of visits to the rock salt shaft at Oakwood, where E. F. Bradt and Mr. Luke have been pluckily fighting their way against very great obstacles. The shaft is now down over 300 feet and the rock is less likely to be creviced as the work proceeds.

In the exploitation of mineral and other waters it is becoming more and more common to consult this office. Among the wells of exceptional interest are:

(1). One at Grand Lake near Alpena, by F. B. Preston, giving a section from the Bell shale the base of the Traverse down into the

Salina. Alpena with its wealth of salt and suitable limestone at hand to shipping facilities is, as I have said, an ideal place for the manufacture of soda.

(2). A group at the Saginaw Plate Glass Works, and one at the Saginaw High School, which give us a better set of samples than we have had before.

This last well is interesting since it is for salt baths, a great preventive of cold after exercise or manual training. There is not a town in Lower Michigan that could not have salt baths if they chose.

Pamphlets on the water supply of Ann Arbor, by Prof. I. C. Russell and W. H. Sherzer have appeared recently and Battle Creek still discusses the advisability of using artesian wells. The experience of Bay City and the Green Bay towns indicates the inadvisability of using surface waters, even of the Great Lakes, without adequate filtration. Regarding the use of artesian wells, referring to the water supply papers 182 and 183 for details, I would emphasize two points. First, they will practically always be hard and charged with carbonates so as to attack pipes. Second, they will always flow more at the beginning than later, their permanent flow being determined by the porosity of the rock, and the area of the drainage basin. The old well points will clog with lime, and with the growth of the cities, new wells will be required. This has been true this past year at Lansing and Owosso. It is from a geological point of view a decided advantage to scatter these wells so that they will not interfere with each other so much. This can be readily done by using electrically driven pumps such as the one used at Houghton.

## COAL.

The usual development of coal fields within the coal basin has gone on, and—in spite of what geological reports show—also in the Devonian black shales. I wish especially to record and commend the courtesy of those who remembered to write me that I was right in my forecasts, even the unfavorable, and send records of their work. Every drilled well record is of geological interest, and is likely to throw light on valuable deposits of shale and limestone, and on the water possibilities if nothing else. Reports of 11 foot coal seams and of anthracite have never proved reliable. The only new work concerning which I am in doubt is near Cadillac. There, coal has been reported a few miles outside the coal basin as mapped, and as the whole region is covered with drift with no outcrops the map may be in error, though the reports are certainly premature.

## OIL.

The development of the Port Huron field by new wells of modest yield goes on. The report of a development of a paying field of oil on Manitoulin Island has naturally led to the exploration of the country south of Sault Ste. Marie of similar geological structure.

The first well close to Pickford is at this writing down some 800 feet, having struck an artesian flow at 600 feet.

### SAND LIME BRICK.

This has become an established industry and the use of the bricks is spreading. There are, counting some failures, 16 plants in the State. The difficulties have been in maintaining even quality and size, and securing also even pressure on each brick. But practice is making perfect. At the Manistee plant 94 per cent sand and 6 per cent quick lime is used. The brick are steamed at 125 pounds steam pressure. The sand is improved by being ground in a tube mill with French pebbles, thus giving a greater variety in size and permitting closer packing. About 25 per cent will pass 100 mesh sieve, 50 per cent a 75 mesh sieve, all a 20 mesh sieve. The pressure per brick is 150 tons, and the resulting brick has a crushing strength of 2,000-3,000 pounds per square inch and 8 per cent. absorption. They sell at $6.00 per thousand.

In regard to crushing the sand, I have had sent in from Ypsilanti, from L. C. Holden at Sault Ste. Marie and other places, samples often taken for clay which proved to be merely fine sand, such as would do very well to mix with coarser sand to make a less porous brick.

### WINCHELL NOTES.

I received this year from Prof. N. H. Winchell, a ledger containing a copy of the notes of work which he did for your Board in 1869. Owing presumably to the fact that his brother soon after ceased to direct the Survey none of that work was published, though quite a little of it is still of value, and should be issued. It includes observations on the Lake Michigan and Green Bay shores, around Alpena and down the Au Sable.

### EXAMINATION OF SPECIMENS.

The examination of specimens from wells and otherwise is becoming more and more important. It is customary for all geological surveys to name gratis all specimens sent them—not going into complete and expensive examination, the cost of which should be paid by the one benefitted, but such an opinion as an experienced man may give in a few moments, as to whether a sample is likely to have value and if so what kind of examination should be given to it, thus saving useless expense to those perhaps ill able to afford it. Especially since the time of C. E. Wright has the Survey taken pains to collect samples from churn drills, and records of such borings for oil, gas, salt or salt water, coal, etc.

On the other hand where mining companies desire we examine extensive suites of the cylindrical rock cores extracted by the diamond drill. It is often more convenient for both parties, for them to pay my expenses to visit the cores as our Houghton office is crowded. In fact, I have examined the past year the cores from over 20,000 feet of drilling already and this has been the largest piece of work of the kind I have had. It is a pity that we have not better accommodations for them, for there are thousands of feet of drill cores costing tens, perhaps hundreds of thousands of dollars, stored in temporary wooden buildings scattered over the Upper Peninsula, of very great scientific as well as practical value, exposed to great fire risks, often in damp places so that the boxes rot and can hardly be handled, and where the cores coat with mold so that they can scarcely be recognized, which would, as appears from letters submitted, be freely donated to the State and to science if we only had any place to take care of them. I would earnestly plead for a fireproof building of concrete and steel for their preservation, a stone library for a library of stone.

Not only the smaller companies but the larger companies such as the Quincy, the Keweenaw and others would be glad to send cores which have cost thousands of dollars to such a place for examination and preservation, as will appear from letters which I submit to you. To try to keep pace with the exploring done by the great iron companies is, however, so large a task that the money needed would be out of the question. And besides, these great companies employ able geologists for their exclusive service.

There is no work of the Survey that pays the State better, besides being of direct benefit to the individual, even though there is no printed work to show for it, than information leading to judicious exploration. Fruitless exploration is a waste of labor. More than that it may give a region an undeservedly bad name. When Mr. Jas. McNaughton, manager of the Calumet & Hecla Mining Co., writes: "Your advice," based on the study of the grain of some drill cores, "was valuable inasmuch as we at once found the lode and at practically the distance from the shaft which you indicated, for which we are exceedingly obliged," it justifies the time I have spent on the study of the grain of the traps of Keweenaw Point.

## BIOLOGICAL SURVEY.

This seems to me to have started off remarkably well with the modest means at hand. The first paper, the only one published, that of C. C. Adams and others of the University expedition to Isle Royale and the Porcupines is already in good demand.

At this writing Walker's paper on the snails of the State is printed but not bound.

The extensive peat report already mentioned as ready for the printer, is needed, judging from the inquiries for information.

The work this summer under the direction of Prof. Reighard, by Prof. T. L. Hankinson and his assistants, Elmer McDonald and E. L. Michael, bids fair to tell us under what conditions whitefish will thrive in deep, cold ponds, like many of our marl lakes, where the water is kept aerated and in circulation by bottom springs and so capable of supporting the proper fish food as well as the fish themselves. Assistance has also been had from Prof. J. G. Needham, of Lake Forest University, who made a short stay, Prof. N. H. Harvey, of Ypsilanti, Prof. W. B. Barrows, of the Michigan Agricultural College, and numerous other members of the biological department of the University, and Dr. John F. Eastwood, of the medical chemical laboratory. A careful map of the lake was prepared by A. Adams, of the civil engineering department of the University.

### JOINT TOPOGRAPHIC SURVEY.

The Joint Topographic Survey does not extend as far as its usefulness would. The Marquette sheet, though as yet only issued in a not very clear black and white edition has been of value: to the scientific departments of the Normal school, as witnessed by a letter from Prof. Downing; to the city of Marquette as witnessed by letters from J. E. Sherman, chairman of the Electric Light and Water Board; and to engineers generally, as witnessed by the following letter of J. E. Jopling, chief engineer of the Cleveland-Cliffs Co., which suggests some of its uses:

Ishpeming, Nov. 1, 1906.

Dr. Alfred C. Lane, State Geologist, Lansing, Michigan:

Dear Sir:—The work so far accomplished by the State Geologist and through the cooperation of the United States Government has resulted in a topographic sheet covering Marquette and its vicinity. The topographer in charge of the work, Mr. Whitman, has taken great pains in doing the work accurately and has made us a map which we as engineers have found extremely useful in many ways. During the past summer the opportunity has arisen to check a good deal of this work by means of surveys for different projects, and it is with pleasure that we can state that the work so far carried on has been of great use and our only wish is that it could be extended throughout the county.

The work above alluded to was in connection with projective improvements of the company's water power in the neighborhood of Marquette, and it has occurred to me that for this industry alone the State would largely benefit from an extended survey over a large part of this territory.

Another instance in which the map is very useful is the new location of wagon roads, as before the work of improving existing roads is undertaken it would always be well to ascertain if a better route is not obtainable, which can be determined very often by the use of the topographic map.

The development of the mining resources of northern Michigan could well be helped by a map, as we have always found that business men as well as engineers continually refer to these maps in talking over mining projects.

In case it should be determined to extend the survey in Marquette county, part of the information which large holdings have obtained in the way of correct levelling and location of township and section corners might be used. The men connected with these enterprises have expressed their view of the subject to me and I feel sure that their cooperation, can be relied upon. Some of this information is so extensive that the State could be saved the expense over several square miles, leaving the appropriation to cover a still larger area.

Such topographic maps are almost useless in a rough and uncultivated country such as is to be found in a good deal of this district without the true location of the section corners. You will remember that on the Marquette sheet, Mr. Whitman connected his work with these corners, although it had not been customary to do so.

Very truly yours,

(Signed) J. E. Jopling,

Mining Engineer.

Hon. Chas. Ward wrote of their value to him in planning for the water power development of the Huron River and if they were only ready they would be of great use in preparing electric road projects, automobile maps, drainage projects, and assessments.

Ann Arbor, May 12, 1905.

Prof. A. C. Lane, Lansing, Michigan:

Dear Sir:—I notice that you are asking the Legislature for an appropriation to continue the very commendable work in surveying and mapping the topography of this State.

I am interested in the development of water powers in this vicinity and your recently published map of the Ann Arbor quadrangle has been of practical daily assistance to me in my work.

The future prosperity of Michigan manufactures will depend very largely on the development of the water power that is now running to waste and to that end alone a continuation of your work is valuable. I trust that you will be successful in securing your appropriation.

Very truly,

(Signed) CHAS. A. WARD.

Students of physical geography like Prof. Jefferson, of Ypsilanti, are at the same time the most earnest advocates of these maps, and the most lynx eyed of critics, and we owe him gratitude in each capacity. There is not one of the Normal schools of the State from which does not come a demand for topographic maps.

### RECOMMENDATIONS.

In making the following suggestions as to special appropriations that might be asked from the Legislature and could be expended wisely and with profit to the State, I add a brief statement of the reasons for each.

Cases, cement walk, electric wiring and brick veneer to present building, $1,000.00.

The Auditor General rules that such items require special appropriation. The risk of fire is greater than it was originally.

Addition to our present lot, $750.00.

The land adjacent to it has been under option to the College of Mines. But since the Legislature did not provide for its purchase it has been plotted into lots. Not merely for the sake of the drill core stack but for protection we should secure this lot directly in the rear.

Fire-proof stack for drill cores, of concrete and steel, $10,000.00.

This will be very plain, but of capacity to hold nearly 5,000 boxes each holding core from 25-50 feet of hole, and should have room for all that may come in twenty-five years, if we do not get too many iron country cores and at times only save selections.

The following sample letter presents the appeal for this. The arguments are briefly the cost of the cores—$3.00 to $5.00 a foot—the risk of loss by fire and disarrangement, the greater accessibility and ease and closeness of comparison if brought together.

Houghton, Mich., Oct. 22, 1906.

Alfred C. Lane, Houghton, Michigan:

Dear Sir:—It has occurred to me since talking with other mining men that there ought to be some central place for the storing of diamond drill cores taken out by the different mines which seldom have a suitable place for their safe keeping. If your office, for instance, had such a place, I have no doubt that you could get the cores from the different mines for storing, and this would be of value to your office as well as conferring a favor upon us.

Kindly let me know whether you now have a suitable place for the safe keeping of diamond drill cores. We drilled some ten thousand feet in the Arcadian Copper Co.'s lands and the cores are now stored in the basement of our office in wooden boxes. If the office should be destroyed by fire of course they never could be replaced.

We have no objection to allowing the States to examine these cores and so you can see it would be a mutual advantage.

Yours very truly,
(Signed) R. H. Shields,
Superintendent.

For continuance of the biological survey—the survey of the plants and animals of the State—as authorized by Act 250 of the Session of 1905, per annum, in accordance with recommendation of Board of Scientific Advisors, $4,100.00.

With only $1,000 per annum you have gained information as to peat and as to where whitefish will thrive which will be worth many times its cost to the State.

Of course in scientific work one cannot be sure of so prompt valuable results. We seem to have been exceptionally fortunate.

Yet there are other problems which would sooner or later be answered by such a survey, for instance, the limits of venomous reptiles, and the malaria infested mosquitoes the practical value of which it needs no specialist to see.

For United States Geological Survey, to continue joint topographic survey, per annum, $10,000.00.

I do not need to repeat the arguments of these maps, which have been set forth in memorials of the Michigan Engineering Society, Michigan Academy of Science, etc., as well as other State societies and the National Survey.

Illinois is now spending $15,000 per annum; Ohio, $25,000. To say nothing of their value in schools, drainage assessments, map making, electric road promotion, city water supplies, the one item of the power developments they suggest may often repay in taxes all their cost, and secure a loss of power never to be regained rather than lead to a waste of resources never to be restored. The Marquette sheet as I am informed led to the project of a $500,000 dam. Three years' taxes on such a plant would repay the cost of the map, and of course the taxes collected are but a minute fraction of the benefit to the community of such a plant.

But scientific work has paid in the long run in every way, though the motive thereof is never primarily commercial but rather a better conception and knowledge of the world around us, in which we live and move and have our being.

To meet as far as might be without legislation certain desires of the Academy of Sciences discussed in my last annual report, the Board appointed the following Board of Scientific Advisors:

Dr. L. L. Hubbard, of Houghton, and Prof. I. C. Russell, of Ann Arbor, geologists.

Prof. W. J. Beal, of Agricultural College and Prof. F. C. Newcombe, of Ann Arbor, botanists.

Prof. W. B. Barrows, of Agricultural College and Prof. J. Reighard, of Ann Arbor, zoologists.

To these gentlemen[1] as well as to my co-employes and many friends of science and mining men outside the Survey, I wish to express my hearty thanks for advice and assistance.

Very respectfully,
ALFRED C. LANE.

---

[1] Though Prof. Russell has passed, at the prime of his life, usefulness and fame, being this year president of the Geological Society, beyond the reach of earthly thanks.

# INDEX.

# INDEX.

A. Page

Ada creek, gold 582
Adams, A., map, Walnut Lake 590
Adams, C. C., biological survey 590
Allegan, gold 582
Alpena, gold 583
Alpena, notes 589
Alpena, soda manufacture 588
Ann Arbor, water supply 588
Antrim county, gold 583
Arcadian Copper Company's land, drilling 593
Arenac County, report on 579
Atlantic Mine, earthquakes 586
Au Sable, notes 589

B.

Bain, J. Foster, co-operation 580
Barrows, W. B., biological survey 590
    Scientific Advisors 594
Bay City, settling 586
Bay County, report 580
Bayport, limestone 585
Beal, W. J., Scientific Advisor 594
Bell shale, Grand Lake 587
Bessemer, Keweenawan rocks north of 579
Biological survey 590
    recommendations 593
Birmingham, gold 582
Black River section, report on 579
Board of Scientific Advisors 594
Boyne River, gold 583
Bradt, E. F., Oakwood salt shaft 587
Burr Oak, gold 582

C.

Cadillac, coal 588
Calciferous 585
Calumet, earthquakes 586
Caro, gold 583
Caseville, gold 583
Cass County, soil survey 579
Caves 586, 587
Cheboygan, clay 587
    gold 583
Clay 587
Coal 588
Cooper, W. F., references 578, 580, 587
Co-operation 579
County Line, gold 582
Courtis, W. M., gold 581

D. Page

Davis, C. A., peat report, etc. 578–581
Dawe, P., earthquakes 586
Detroit, settling 587
Detroit sheet, issued 578
Dexter sheet, issued 578
Diamond drill, examination of cores of 589, 593
Downing, E. R., Marquette sheet 591

E.

Earth, weight of 580
Earthquakes 586
Eastwood, John F., biological survey 590
Elbridge, gold 583
Expenditures, Michigan Geological Survey 577

F.

Fargo, gold 583
Flat River, gold 582
Fleshy fungi, report 579
Flushing, gold 583
Fungi, fleshy 579

G.

Geismar, L 585
Gerow, clay 587
Gold, W. M. Courtis 581
Gordon, W. C., report Black River section 579, 580
Grabau, A. W., Traverse limestone 579
Grand Haven, gold 582
Grand Lake, mineral well 587
Grand Ledge, shale 587
Grand River, gold 581, 582
Green Bay, notes 589
Greenville, gold 582
Gregory, W. M., Arenac County 579
Grosse Point sheet, issued 578

H.

Hankinson, T. L., Walnut Lake report 578, 579, 590
Harvey, N. H., biological survey 590
Hillsdale, gold 581, 582
Holden, L. C., sand lime brick 589
Horton, Robert E., reports on water supply 578
Houghton, earthquakes 586
Howard City, gold 582
Howell quadrangle, survey 577, 579
Hubbard, L. L., Scientific Advisor 594
Huron County, Bayport limestone 586
Huron Mountains, gold 584

I.

Illinois, State of, Geological Survey 580
    topographic survey 593
Ionia, gold 582
Iron Mountain district, surface geology 578
Iron River, gold 582
Ishpeming, gold 582, 583
Isle Royale, biological survey 590

J. Page

Jefferson, M. S. W., topographic work.... 592
Jopling, J. E., Marquette sheet.... 591

K.

Kaufman, C. H., report on fleshy fungi.... 579
Keewatin-Laurentian.... 584
Keweenaw Point, geology.... 578

L.

Lake Michigan, notes.... 589
Lake Superior Mining Institute, earthquakes.... 586
Lane, A. C., water supply.... 579
Laurentian.... 584
Leelanau County, gold.... 583
Leverett, Frank, water supply, papers.... 579
Little Sable River, gold.... 583
Little Traverse, gold.... 583
Livingston County, topographic survey.... 577
Lowell, gold....581, 582
Luke, Mr., Oakwood salt shaft.... 587

M.

McDonald, E., biological survey.... 590
McNair, F. W., weight of earth.... 580
McNaughton, Jas., earthquakes.... 586
rock cores.... 590
Manistee, sand lime brick.... 589
settling.... 586
Manistee River, gold.... 583
Maple River, gold.... 582
Marcellus ,gold.... 582
Marquette.... 585
Marquette sheet....578, 591, 593
Maxville.... 585
Mennell, F. P., Laurentian.... 584
Meuche, A. H., contour map.... 580
Leon, field work.... 580
Michael, E. L., biological survey.... 590
Milford quadrangle, survey....577, 579
Mine waters, tests.... 580
Moulding sand, report....579, 587
Mushrooms, report on.... 579
Muskegon River, gold.... 582

N.

Needham, J. G., biological survey.... 590
Nellist, J. F., map work.... 581
Newcombe, F. C., Scientific Advisor.... 594

O.

Oakland County, topographic survey.... 577
Oakwood, salt shaft.... 587
Ohio, topographic survey.... 593
Oil.... 588
Omer, shale.... 587
Oxford area.... 579

P.

Palache, C. A., calcites.... 579
Pickford, oil.... 588

Page
Pontiac quadrangle, survey ... 577, 579
Porcupines, biological survey ... 590
Port Huron, oil ... 588
Preston, F. B., mineral well ... 587

R.

Rapid River, gold ... 583
Recommendations ... 592
Reighard, J., biological survey ... 590
    Scientific Advisor ... 594
Ries, H., moulding sands ... 579, 587
Rochester quadrangle, survey ... 577, 579
Rock cores, examination of ... 589
Romulus sheet, issued ... 578
Russell, I. C., Scientific Advisor ... 594
    surface geology ... 578
    water supply ... 588

S.

Saginaw, Bayport limestone ... 586
    settling ... 586
St. Clair River, settling ... 587
Saline sheet, issued ... 578
Salt baths ... 588
Sand lime brick ... 589
Sands, moulding ... 579
Sault Ste. Marie, oil ... 588
    sand lime brick ... 589
Scientific Advisors, Board of ... 594
Seager, J. B., gold ... 584
Sherman, E. R., Marquette sheet ... 591
Sherzer, W. H., Ann Arbor water supply ... 588
    Wayne County ... 579
Shields, R. H., diamond drill cores ... 593
Soda manufacture, Alpena ... 588
South Bay City, Bayport limestone ... 586
South Lyon sheet, issued ... 578
South Pewabic lode, earthquake ... 586
Surface geology map ... 581

T.

Taylor, Mr., gold ... 584
Topographic survey ... 577–579, 591
    recommendations ... 593
T. 8 N., R. 14 E., gold ... 583
T. 49 N., R. 42 W., gold ... 583
Traverse limestone, report on ... 579
Turner, shale ... 587
Tuscola County, report on ... 579

U.

United States Department of Agriculture ... 579
Upper Grand Rapids ... 585

V.

Victoria Copper Mine, gold ... 583

W.

Walker, A. M., topographic survey ... 579
Walker, Bryant, land snails ... 578, 590

Page

Walnut Lake, report on........ 579
Walton, gold........ 583
Ward, Chas., topographic work........ 592
Water Supply papers ........579, 587, 588
Wayne County, Sherzer's report........ 579
Wayne sheet, issued........ 578
Weight of earth........ 580
Well records........ 579
West Summit........ 583
Whistler, Dr. W. S., earthquakes........ 586
White River, gold........ 583
Whitefish........ 590
Whitehall, gold........ 583
Whitney, Milton, soil survey........ 579
Williamston, gold........ 584
Winchell, N. H., notes........ 589
Wyandotte sheet, issued........ 578

Y.

Ypsilanti, sand lime brick........ 589
    sheet, issued........ 578